

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-25

Data Integrity

Identifying and Protecting Assets Against Ransomware and Other Destructive Events

Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B); and How-To Guides (C)

Jennifer Cawthra
Michael Ekstrom
Lauren Lusty
Julian Sexton
John Sweetnam

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/data-integrity/identify-protect>.



NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-25

Data Integrity: Identifying and Protecting Assets Against Ransomware and Other Destructive Events

Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B); and How-To Guides (C)

Jennifer Cawthra
National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIST

Michael Ekstrom
Lauren Lusty
Julian Sexton
John Sweetnam
The MITRE Corporation
McLean, Virginia

DRAFT

January 2020



U.S. Department of Commerce
Wilbur Ross, Secretary

National Institute of Standards and Technology
Walter Copan, NIST Director and Undersecretary of Commerce for Standards and Technology

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-25A

Data Integrity

Identifying and Protecting Assets Against Ransomware
and Other Destructive Events

Volume A:
Executive Summary

Jennifer Cawthra

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIST

Michael Ekstrom

Lauren Lusty

Julian Sexton

John Sweetnam

Anne Townsend

The MITRE Corporation

McLean, Virginia

January 2020

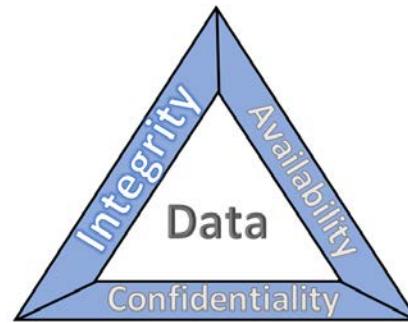
DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/data-integrity/identify-protect>.

1 Executive Summary

2 The CIA triad represents the three pillars of information security: confidentiality, integrity, and
 3 availability, as follows:

- 4 ■ Confidentiality – preserving authorized restrictions on
 5 information access and disclosure, including means for
 6 protecting personal privacy and proprietary
 7 information
- 8 ■ Integrity — guarding against improper information
 9 modification or destruction and ensuring information
 10 non-repudiation and authenticity
- 11 ■ Availability – ensuring timely and reliable access to and
 12 use of information



13 This series of practice guides focuses on data integrity: the property that data has not been altered in an
 14 unauthorized manner. Data integrity covers data in storage, during processing, and while in transit.

15 (Note: These definitions are from National Institute of Standards and Technology ([NIST Special](#)
 16 [Publication \(SP\) 800-12 Rev 1, An Introduction to Information Security.](#))

- 17 ■ Destructive malware, ransomware, malicious insider activity, and even honest mistakes all set
 18 the stage for why organizations need to properly identify and protect against events that impact
 19 data integrity. Businesses must be confident that data is protected and safe.
- 20 ■ Attacks against an organization's data can compromise emails,
 21 employee records, financial records, and customer
 22 information—impacting business operations, revenue, and
 23 reputation.
- 24 ■ Examples of data integrity attacks include unauthorized
 25 insertion, deletion, or modification of data to corporate
 26 information such as emails, employee records, financial
 27 records, and customer data.
- 28 ■ The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) at the
 29 National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) built a
 30 laboratory environment to explore methods to effectively
 31 identify and protect against data integrity attacks in various
 32 information technology (IT) enterprise environments to prevent impacts to business operations.
- 33 ■ This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates how organizations can develop and
 34 implement appropriate actions before a detected data integrity cybersecurity event.



35 CHALLENGE

36 Some organizations have experienced systemic attacks that force operations to cease. One variant of a
 37 data integrity attack—ransomware—encrypts data, rendering it unusable. This type of impact to data
 38 affects business operations and often leads them to shut down. Other variants of data integrity attacks
 39 can steer organizations to make decisions that can impact the bottom line or execute ill-fated decisions.

40 For example, adversarial actors could create backdoor accounts in company login systems, change
41 payroll information to their benefit, or expose the company with unsafe software updates for their own
42 benefit.

43 SOLUTION

44 NIST published version 1.1 of the Cybersecurity Framework in April 2018 to provide guidance on
45 protecting and developing resiliency for critical infrastructure and other sectors. The framework core
46 contains five functions, listed below.

- 47 ▪ **Identify** – develop an organizational understanding
48 to manage cybersecurity risk to systems, people,
49 assets, data, and capabilities
- 50 ▪ **Protect** – develop and implement appropriate
51 safeguards to ensure delivery of critical services
- 52 ▪ **Detect** – develop and implement appropriate
53 activities to identify the occurrence of a
54 cybersecurity event
- 55 ▪ **Respond** – develop and implement appropriate
56 activities to take action regarding a detected
57 cybersecurity incident
- 58 ▪ **Recover** – develop and implement appropriate
59 activities to maintain plans for resilience and to restore any capabilities or services that were
60 impaired due to a cybersecurity incident



61 For more information, see the [*Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity*](#).

62 Applying the Cybersecurity Framework to data integrity, this practice guide informs organizations of
63 how to identify and protect against a data integrity attack, and in turn understand how to manage data
64 integrity risks and implement the appropriate safeguards.

65 The NCCoE developed and implemented a solution that incorporates multiple systems working in
66 concert to identify and protect against detected data integrity cybersecurity events. The solution
67 isolates the opportunities that would allow for the cybersecurity events to occur and implements
68 strategies to remediate the opportunities. Also, the solution applies additional protections from
69 cybersecurity events to IT infrastructure.

70 In developing this solution, the NCCoE sought existing technologies that provided the following
71 capabilities:

- 72 ▪ backups
- 73 ▪ integrity monitoring
- 74 ▪ inventory
- 75 ▪ logging
- 76 ▪ maintenance

- 77 ▪ secure storage
 78 ▪ vulnerability management
- 79 While the NCCoE used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does not
 80 endorse these particular products, nor does it guarantee compliance with any regulatory initiatives. Your
 81 organization's information security experts should identify the products that will best integrate with
 82 your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that
 83 adheres to these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and
 84 implementing parts of a solution.

85 **BENEFITS**

86 This practice guide can help your organization:

- 87 ▪ develop a strategy for identifying and protecting against a data integrity cybersecurity event
 88 ▪ facilitate comprehensive protection from adverse events to maintain operations and ensure the
 89 integrity of data critical to supporting business operations and revenue-generating activities
 90 ▪ manage enterprise risk (consistent with foundations of the *NIST Framework for Improving
 91 Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity*)

92 **SHARE YOUR FEEDBACK**

93 You can view or download the guide at <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/data-integrity/identify-protect>. Help the NCCoE make this guide better by sharing your thoughts with us as
 94 you read the guide. If you adopt this solution for your own organization, please share your experience
 95 and advice with us. We recognize that technical solutions alone will not fully enable the benefits of our
 96 solution, so we encourage organizations to share lessons learned and best practices for transforming the
 97 processes associated with implementing this guide.

99 To provide comments or to learn more by arranging a demonstration of this example implementation,
 100 contact the NCCoE at ds-nccoe@nist.gov.

101 **TECHNOLOGY PARTNERS/COLLABORATORS**

102 Organizations participating in this project submitted their capabilities in response to an open call in the
 103 Federal Register for all sources of relevant security capabilities from academia and industry (vendors
 104 and integrators). The following respondents with relevant capabilities or product components (identified
 105 as "Technology Partners/Collaborators" herein) signed a Cooperative Research and Development
 106 Agreement (CRADA) to collaborate with NIST in a consortium to build this example solution.



108 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company
 109 logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an
 110 experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special
 111 status or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it

- 112 intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available
113 for the purpose.

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity challenges. Through this collaboration, the NCCoE develops modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions demonstrating how to apply standards and best practices using commercially available technology.

LEARN MORE

Visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov>
nccoe@nist.gov

301-975-0200

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-25B

Data Integrity

Identifying and Protecting Assets Against Ransomware
and Other Destructive Events

Volume B:
Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics

Jennifer Cawthra
National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIST

Michael Ekstrom
Lauren Lusty
Julian Sexton
John Sweetnam
The MITRE Corporation
McLean, Virginia

January 2020

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/data-integrity/identify-protect>.

1 **DISCLAIMER**

2 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company
3 logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an
4 experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special sta-
5 tus or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it in-
6 tended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available
7 for the purpose.

8 National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-25B, Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol.
9 Spec. Publ. 1800-25B, 50 pages, (January 2020), CODEN: NSPUE2

10 **FEEDBACK**

11 You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your
12 own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

13 Comments on this publication may be submitted to: ds-nccoe@nist.gov.

14 Public comment period: January 27, 2020 through February 25, 2020

15 All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act.

16 National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
17 National Institute of Standards and Technology
18 100 Bureau Drive
19 Mailstop 2002
20 Gaithersburg, MD 20899
21 Email: nccoe@nist.gov

22 **NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE**

23 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards
24 and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and
25 academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This
26 public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific
27 industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under
28 Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from
29 Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in information technology security—the
30 NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity
31 solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in
32 the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cybersecurity Framework
33 and details the steps needed for another entity to re-create the example solution. The NCCoE was
34 established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County,
35 Maryland.

36 To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/>. To learn more about NIST, visit
37 <https://www.nist.gov>.

38 **NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES**

39 NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication 1800 series) target specific cybersecurity
40 challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the
41 adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information
42 security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant
43 standards and best practices, and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other
44 information they need to implement a similar approach.

45 The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that
46 businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations
47 or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

48 **ABSTRACT**

49 Ransomware, destructive malware, insider threats, and even honest user mistakes present ongoing
50 threats to organizations. Organizations' data, such as database records, system files, configurations, user
51 files, applications, and customer data, are all potential targets of data corruption, modification, and
52 destruction. Formulating a defense against these threats requires two things: a thorough knowledge of
53 the assets within the enterprise, and the protection of these assets against the threat of data corruption
54 and destruction. The NCCoE, in collaboration with members of the business community and vendors of
55 cybersecurity solutions, has built an example solution to address these data integrity challenges.

56 Multiple systems need to work together to identify and protect an organization's assets against the
57 threat of corruption, modification, and destruction. This project explores methods to effectively identify
58 assets (devices, data, and applications) that may become targets of data integrity attacks, as well as the
59 vulnerabilities in the organization's system that facilitate these attacks. It also explores methods to
60 protect these assets against data integrity attacks using backups, secure storage, integrity checking
61 mechanisms, audit logs, vulnerability management, maintenance, and other potential solutions

62 **KEYWORDS**

63 *attack vector; asset awareness; data integrity; data protection; malicious actor; malware; ransomware.*

64 **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

65 We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Kyle Black	Bay Dynamics
Sunjeet Randhawa	Broadcom Inc.
Peter Romness	Cisco Systems
Matthew Hyatt	Cisco Systems
Hans Ismirnioglou	Cryptonite
Sapna George	Cryptonite
Justin Yackoski	Cryptonite
Steve Petruzzo	GreenTec USA
Steve Roberts	Micro Focus
Timothy McBride	NIST

Name	Organization
Christopher Lowde	Semperis
Thomas Leduc	Semperis
Darren Mar-Elia	Semperis
Kirk Lashbrook	Semperis
Mickey Bresman	Semperis
Jim Wachhaus	Tripwire
Humphrey Christian	Symantec Corporation
Jon Christmas	Symantec Corporation
Kenneth Durbin	Symantec Corporation
Matthew Giblin	Symantec Corporation
Nancy Correll	The MITRE Corporation
Chelsea Deane	The MITRE Corporation
Sallie Edwards	The MITRE Corporation
Milissa McGinnis	The MITRE Corporation
Karri Meldorf	The MITRE Corporation
Denise Schiavone	The MITRE Corporation

Name	Organization
Anne Townsend	The MITRE Corporation

66 The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in
 67 response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product
 68 components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with
 69 NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
Symantec Corporation	Symantec Data Loss Prevention v15.1
Cisco Systems	Cisco ISE v2.4, Cisco Web Security Appliance v10.1
GreenTec USA	GreenTec WORMdisk v151228
Tripwire	Tripwire Log Center v7.3.1, Tripwire Enterprise v8.7, Tripwire IP360 v9.0.1
Micro Focus	Micro Focus ArcSight Enterprise Security Manager v7.0 Patch 2
Cryptonite	CryptoniteNXT v2.9.1
Semperis	Semperis Active Directory Forest Recovery v2.5, Semperis Directory Services Protector v2.7

70 **Contents**

71	1 Summary.....	1
72	1.1 Challenge.....	2
73	1.2 Solution.....	2
74	1.3 Benefits.....	3
75	2 How to Use This Guide	4
76	2.1 Typographic Conventions.....	5
77	3 Approach	6
78	3.1 Audience.....	6
79	3.2 Scope	6
80	3.3 Assumptions	7
81	3.4 Risk Assessment	7
82	3.4.1 Risk.....	8
83	3.4.2 Security Control Map	9
84	3.5 Technologies.....	14
85	4 Architecture	17
86	4.1 Architecture Description	17
87	4.1.1 High-Level Architecture	17
88	4.1.2 Architecture Components.....	18
89	5 Security Characteristic Analysis.....	22
90	5.1 Assumptions and Limitations	22
91	5.2 Build Testing	22
92	5.3 Scenarios and Findings	22
93	5.3.1 Ransomware via Web Vector and Self-Propagation.....	23
94	5.3.2 Destructive Malware via USB Vector	24
95	5.3.3 Accidental VM Deletion via Maintenance Script	24
96	5.3.4 Backdoor Creation via Email Vector	25
97	5.3.5 Database Modification via Malicious Insider	26

98	5.3.6 File Modification via Malicious Insider	27
99	5.3.7 Backdoor Creation via Compromised Update Server	28
100	5.3.8 New Employee	28
101	6 Future Build Considerations	29
102	Appendix A List of Acronyms	30
103	Appendix B Glossary	31
104	Appendix C References	35
105	Appendix D Functional Evaluation.....	37
106	D.1 Data Integrity Functional Test Plan.....	37
107	D.2 Data Integrity Use Case Requirements	38
108	D.3 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-1	42
109	D.4 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-2	43
110	D.5 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-3	44
111	D.6 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-4	45
112	D.7 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-5	46
113	D.8 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-6	47
114	D.9 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-7	48
115	D.10 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-8	49
116	List of Figures	
117	Figure 4-1 DI Identify and Protect High-Level Architecture.....	17
118	List of Tables	
119	Table 3-1 DI Reference Design Cybersecurity Framework Core Components Map	10
120	Table 3-2 Products and Technologies.....	15
121	Table 6-1 Test Case Fields.....	37
122	Table 6-2 Capability Requirements	38

123	Table 6-3 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-1.....	42
124	Table 6-4 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-2.....	43
125	Table 6-5 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-3.....	44
126	Table 6-6 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-4.....	45
127	Table 6-7 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-5.....	46
128	Table 6-8 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-6.....	47
129	Table 6-9 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-7.....	48
130	Table 6-10 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-8.....	49

131 1 Summary

132 Businesses face a near-constant threat of destructive malware, ransomware, malicious insider activities,
133 and even honest mistakes that can alter or destroy critical data. These types of adverse events
134 ultimately impact data integrity (DI). It is imperative for organizations to be able to identify assets that
135 may be impacted by a DI attack and to protect their enterprise against such attacks.

136 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) at the National Institute of Standards and
137 Technology (NIST) built a laboratory environment to explore methods to identify and protect assets
138 from a data corruption event in various information technology (IT) enterprise environments. The
139 example solution outlined in this guide describes the solution built in the NCCoE lab. It encourages
140 identification of vulnerabilities and assets that may be present in the enterprise, as well as several
141 protections that can significantly mitigate the effects of DI attacks before they occur.

142 The goals of this NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide are to help organizations confidently:

- 143 ■ identify systems, users, data, applications, and entities on the network
- 144 ■ identify vulnerabilities in enterprise components and clients
- 145 ■ baseline the integrity and activity of enterprise systems, in preparation for an attack
- 146 ■ create backups of enterprise data in advance of an attack
- 147 ■ protect these backups and other potentially important data against alteration
- 148 ■ manage enterprise health by assessing machine posture

149 For ease of use, a short description of the different sections of this volume follows.

- 150 ■ Section 1: Summary presents the challenge addressed by the NCCoE project, with an in-depth
151 look at our approach, the architecture, and the security characteristics we used; the solution
152 demonstrated to address the challenge; benefits of the solution; and technology partners that
153 participated in building, demonstrating, and documenting the solution. The Summary also
154 explains how to provide feedback on this guide.
- 155 ■ [Section 2](#): How to Use This Guide explains how readers—business decision makers, program
156 managers, and IT professionals (e.g., systems administrators)—might use each volume of the
157 guide.
- 158 ■ [Section 3](#): Approach offers a detailed treatment of the scope of the project and describes the
159 assumptions on which the security platform development was based, the risk assessment that
160 informed platform development, and the technologies and components that industry
161 collaborators gave us to enable platform development.
- 162 ■ [Section 4](#): Architecture describes the usage scenarios supported by project security platforms,
163 including Cybersecurity Framework [1] functions supported by each component contributed by
164 our collaborators.

- 165 ■ [Section 5](#): Security Characteristics Analysis provides details about the tools and techniques we
166 used to perform risk assessments.
- 167 ■ [Section 6](#): Future Build Considerations is a brief treatment of other Data Security
168 implementations NIST considers consistent with Framework Core Functions: Identify, Protect,
169 Detect and Respond, and Recovery.

170 **1.1 Challenge**

171 Thorough collection of quantitative and qualitative data is important to organizations of all types and
172 sizes. It can impact all aspects of a business, including decision-making, transactions, research,
173 performance, and profitability. When these data collections sustain a DI attack caused by unauthorized
174 insertion, deletion, or modification of information, the attack can affect emails, employee records,
175 financial records, and customer data, rendering them unusable or unreliable. Some organizations have
176 experienced systemic attacks that caused a temporary cessation of operations. One variant of a DI
177 attack—ransomware—encrypts data and holds it hostage while the attacker demands payment for the
178 decryption keys.

179 Before DI events occur, organizations should identify their assets and vulnerabilities and have defenses
180 and preparations in place to preemptively mitigate the events. This reduces the workload of actions to
181 take during and after an attack occurs, as well as the enterprise’s data loss and number of successful
182 attacks.

183 **1.2 Solution**

184 The NCCoE implemented a solution that incorporates appropriate actions before the start of a DI event.
185 The solution comprises systems working together to identify and protect assets against a data
186 corruption event in standard enterprise components. These components include mail servers,
187 databases, end user machines, virtual infrastructure, and file share servers. Essential to protection of
188 assets is understanding of what those assets are and what vulnerabilities they have.

189 The NCCoE sought existing technologies that provided the following capabilities:

- 190 ■ Inventory
- 191 ■ Policy Enforcement
- 192 ■ Logging
- 193 ■ Backups
- 194 ■ Vulnerability Management
- 195 ■ Secure Storage
- 196 ■ Integrity Monitoring

197 In developing our solution, we used standards and guidance from the following sources, which can also
198 provide your organization with relevant standards and best practices:

- 199 ■ NIST Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity (commonly known as the
200 NIST Cybersecurity Framework) [\[1\]](#)
- 201 ■ NIST Interagency or Internal Report (NISTIR) 8050: Executive Technical Workshop on Improving
202 Cybersecurity and Consumer Privacy [\[2\]](#)
- 203 ■ NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-30 Rev. 1: Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments [\[3\]](#)
- 204 ■ NIST SP 800-37 Rev. 1: Guide for Applying the Risk Management Framework to Federal
205 Information Systems: A Security Life Cycle Approach [\[4\]](#)
- 206 ■ NIST SP 800-39: Managing Information Security Risk [\[5\]](#)
- 207 ■ NIST SP 800-40 Rev. 3: Guide to Enterprise Patch Management Technologies [\[6\]](#)
- 208 ■ NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4: Security and Privacy Controls for Federal Information Systems and
209 Organizations [\[7\]](#)
- 210 ■ Federal Information Processing Standard 140-3: Security Requirements for Cryptographic
211 Modules [\[8\]](#)
- 212 ■ NIST SP 800-86: Guide to Integrating Forensic Techniques into Incident Response [\[9\]](#)
- 213 ■ NIST SP 800-92: Guide to Computer Security Log Management [\[10\]](#)
- 214 ■ NIST SP 800-100: Information Security Handbook: A Guide for Managers [\[11\]](#)
- 215 ■ NIST SP 800-34 Rev. 1: Contingency Planning Guide for Federal Information Systems [\[12\]](#)
- 216 ■ Office of Management and Budget, Circular Number A-130: Managing Information as a Strategic
217 Resource [\[13\]](#)
- 218 ■ NIST SP 800-61 Rev. 2: Computer Security Incident Handling Guide [\[14\]](#)
- 219 ■ NIST SP 800-83 Rev. 1: Guide to Malware Incident Prevention and Handling for Desktops and
220 Laptops [\[15\]](#)
- 221 ■ NIST SP 800-150: Guide to Cyber Threat Information Sharing [\[16\]](#)
- 222 ■ NIST SP 800-184: Guide for Cybersecurity Event Recovery [\[17\]](#)

223 **1.3 Benefits**

224 The NCCoE's practice guide can help your organization:

- 225 ■ develop a plan for identifying assets and vulnerabilities and protecting these assets from a
226 cybersecurity event
- 227 ■ facilitate easier detection, response, and recovery from a DI event by collecting information
228 about the enterprise before an attack occurs

- 229 ■ maintain integrity and availability of data critical to supporting business operations and
230 revenue-generating activities
231 ■ manage enterprise risk (consistent with the foundations of the NIST Cybersecurity Framework)

2 How to Use This Guide

232 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a standards-based reference design and provides
233 users with the information they need to replicate the DI identify-and-protect solution. This reference
234 design is modular and can be deployed in whole or in part.

235 This guide contains three volumes:

- 236 ■ NIST SP 1800-25A: *Executive Summary*
237 ■ NIST SP 1800-25B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics* – what we built and why
238 (**you are here**)
239 ■ NIST SP 1800-25C: *How-To Guides* – instructions for building the example solution

240 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

241 **Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers**, will be interested in the
242 *Executive Summary*, NIST SP 1800-25A, which describes the following topics:

- 243 ■ challenges that enterprises face in identifying assets and protecting them from DI events
244 ■ example solution built at the NCCoE
245 ■ benefits of adopting the example solution

246 **Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess,
247 and mitigate risk will be interested in this part of the guide, NIST SP 1800-25B, which describes what we
248 did and why. The following sections will be of particular interest:

- 249 ■ [Section 3.4.1](#), Risk, provides a description of the risk analysis we performed.
250 ■ [Section 3.4.2](#), Security Control Map, maps the security characteristics of this example solution to
251 cybersecurity standards and best practices.

252 You might share the *Executive Summary*, NIST SP 1800-25A, with your leadership team members to help
253 them understand the importance of adopting a standards-based solution to identify and protect assets
254 from DI attacks.

255 **IT professionals** who want to implement such an approach will find the whole practice guide useful. You
256 can use the how-to portion of the guide, NIST SP 1800-25C, to replicate all or parts of the build created
257 in our lab. The how-to portion of the guide provides specific product installation, configuration, and
258 integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not re-create the product

260 manufacturers' documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we
 261 incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

262 This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the
 263 enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does
 264 not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to
 265 these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing
 266 parts of a DI identify-and-protect solution. Your organization's security experts should identify the
 267 products that will best integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope you will
 268 seek products that are congruent with applicable standards and best practices. [Section 3.5](#),
 269 Technologies, lists the products we used and maps them to the cybersecurity controls provided by this
 270 reference solution.

271 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe "the" solution, but a possible solution. This is a
 272 draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and
 273 success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to ds-nccoe@nist.gov.

275 Acronyms used in figures can be found in the Acronyms appendix.

2.1 Typographic Conventions

277 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	file names and path names; references to documents that are not hyperlinks; new terms; and placeholders	For language use and style guidance, see the <i>NCCoE Style Guide</i> .
Bold	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose File > Edit .
Monospace	command-line input, onscreen computer output, sample code examples, and status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
Monospace Bold	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	service sshd start
blue text	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST's NCCoE are available at https://www.nccoe.nist.gov .

278 **3 Approach**

279 Based on key points expressed in NISTIR 8050, *Executive Technical Workshop on Improving Cybersecurity*
280 and *Consumer Privacy* (2015), the NCCoE is pursuing a series of DI projects to map the Core Functions of
281 the NIST Cybersecurity Framework. This project is centered on the Core Functions of Identify and
282 Protect, which consist of identifying and protecting assets from DI attacks. For instance, the first step in
283 building a strategy requires an organization to inventory its assets. This involves identifying systems,
284 applications, data sources, users, and other relevant entities that may be targets or facilitators of DI
285 attacks. Once this exercise is complete, an organization can then create a customized strategy to protect
286 the identified assets against the possibility of data corruption, modification, and destruction. NCCoE
287 engineers working with a community of interest (COI) defined the requirements for this DI project.

288 Members of the COI, which include participating vendors referenced in this document, contributed to
289 development of the architecture and reference design, providing technologies that meet the project
290 requirements and assisting in installation and configuration of those technologies. The practice guide
291 highlights the approach used to develop the NCCoE reference solution. Elements include risk assessment
292 and analysis, logical design, build development, test and evaluation, and security control mapping. This
293 guide aims to provide practical guidance to any organization interested in implementing a solution for
294 identifying and protecting assets against a cybersecurity event.

295 **3.1 Audience**

296 This guide is intended for individuals responsible for implementing security solutions in organizations' IT
297 support activities. Current IT systems, particularly in the private sector, often lack the ability to
298 comprehensively identify enterprise assets that need protection from integrity attacks, as well as the
299 protections themselves. The platforms demonstrated by this project, and the implementation
300 information provided in these practice guides, permit integration of products to implement a data
301 identification and protection system. The technical components will appeal to system administrators, IT
302 managers, IT security managers, and others directly involved in the secure and safe operation of
303 business IT networks.

304 **3.2 Scope**

305 The guide provides practical, real-world guidance on developing and implementing a DI solution
306 consistent with the principles in the NIST *Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity*,
307 Volume 1 [1], specifically the Core Functions of Identify and Protect. The Identify Function emphasizes
308 the development and implementation of the appropriate activities to discover and manage an
309 organization's assets, services, and the threats to these assets and services. The Protect Function
310 emphasizes development and implementation of activities that protect these assets and services from
311 cybersecurity events. Examples of outcomes within these Functions include asset inventory, logging,
312 backups, vulnerability management, policy enforcement, and file/system integrity management.

313 **3.3 Assumptions**

314 This project is guided by the following assumptions:

- 315 ▪ The solution was developed in a lab environment. The environment is based on a generic
316 organization's IT enterprise—it uses services found commonly across typical enterprises, such as
317 a database, a domain controller, a mail/web server, etc. It does not reflect the complexity of a
318 production environment, for example, building across numerous physical locations,
319 accommodating for extreme working conditions, or configuring systems to meet specific
320 network/user needs. These demands can all increase the level of complexity needed to
321 implement a DI solution.
- 322 ▪ An organization has access to the skills and resources required to implement an asset
323 identification and protection system.
- 324 ▪ An organization is seeking to preemptively mitigate the damage a DI event would cause.

325 **3.4 Risk Assessment**

326 [NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1, Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments](#) states that risk is “a measure of the
327 extent to which an entity is threatened by a potential circumstance or event, and typically a function of:
328 (i) the adverse impacts that would arise if the circumstance or event occurs; and (ii) the likelihood of
329 occurrence.” The guide further defines risk assessment as “the process of identifying, estimating, and
330 prioritizing risks to organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, reputation),
331 organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, and the Nation, resulting from the operation of
332 an information system. Part of risk management incorporates threat and vulnerability analyses, and
333 considers mitigations provided by security controls planned or in place.”

334 The NCCoE recommends that any discussion of risk management, particularly at the enterprise level,
335 begins with a comprehensive review of [NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, Risk Management Framework for](#)
336 [Information Systems and Organizations](#)—material available to the public. The [Risk Management](#)
337 [Framework \(RMF\)](#) guidance, as a whole, proved to be invaluable in giving us a baseline to assess risks,
338 from which we developed the project, the security characteristics of the build, and this guide.

339 We performed two types of risk assessments:

- 340 ▪ Initial analysis of the risk factors discussed with financial, retail, and hospitality institutions: this
341 analysis led to creation of the DI project and desired security posture. See NISTIR 8050,
342 *Executive Technical Workshop on Improving Cybersecurity and Consumer Privacy*, for additional
343 participant information.
- 344 ▪ Analysis of how to secure the components within the solution and minimize any vulnerabilities
345 they might introduce: see [Section 5](#), Security Characteristic Analysis.

346

3.4.1 Risk

347 Using the guidance in NIST's series of publications concerning risk, we worked with financial institutions
348 and the Financial Sector Information Sharing and Analysis Center to identify the most compelling risk
349 factors encountered by this business group. We participated in conferences and met with members of
350 the financial sector to define the main security risks to business operations. From these discussions
351 came identification of an area of concern—DI. We produced the practice guide *Data Integrity:*
352 *Recovering from Ransomware and Other Destructive Events*, which primarily focused on the recovery
353 aspect of DI. From responses to the recovery project, we also identified a need for guidance in
354 identifying and protecting assets from DI attacks.

355 When considering risk from the perspective of identifying and protecting assets prior to a cybersecurity
356 event, we must consider not only the impact of an event on an organization's assets but also the threats
357 to those assets and the potential vulnerabilities these threats could exploit.

358 When discussing threats to an organization's assets from the perspective of DI, we consider the
359 following factors:

- 360 ■ malware
- 361 ■ insider threats
- 362 ■ accidents caused by human error
- 363 ■ compromise of trusted systems

364 Types of vulnerabilities we consider in relation to these threats are:

- 365 ■ zero-day vulnerabilities
- 366 ■ vulnerabilities due to outdated or unpatched systems
- 367 ■ custom software vulnerabilities/errors
- 368 ■ social engineering and user-driven events
- 369 ■ poor access control

370 Finally, we consider the potential impact on an organization from a DI event:

- 371 ■ systems incapacitated
- 372 ■ modification/deletion of organization's assets
- 373 ■ negative impact on the organization's reputation

374 Analyses of the threats, vulnerabilities, and potential impact to an organization give us an understanding
375 of the risk to an organization with respect to DI. NIST SP 800-39, *Managing Information Security Risk*,
376 focuses on the business aspect of risk, namely at the enterprise level. This understanding is essential for

377 any further risk analysis, risk response/mitigation, and risk monitoring activities. The following summary
378 lists the strategic risk areas we identified and their mitigations:

- 379 ▪ Impact on system function: ensuring the availability of accurate data or sustaining an acceptable
380 level of DI reduces the risk of systems' availability being compromised.
- 381 ▪ Cost of implementation: implementing asset identification and protection from DI events once
382 and using it across all systems may reduce system continuity costs.
- 383 ▪ Compliance with existing industry standards contributes to the industry requirement to
384 maintain a continuity of operations plan.
- 385 ▪ Maintenance of reputation and public image helps reduce level and likelihood of impact as well
386 as facilitates the information required for impact reduction.
- 387 ▪ Increased focus on DI includes not just loss of confidentiality but also harm from unauthorized
388 alteration of data (per NISTIR 8050).

389 We subsequently translated the risk factors identified to security Functions and Subcategories within
390 the NIST Cybersecurity Framework. In [Table 3-1](#), we mapped the categories to NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4
391 controls.

392 **3.4.2 Security Control Map**

393 As explained in [Section 3.4.1](#), we identified the Cybersecurity Framework Functions and Subcategories
394 that we wanted the reference design to support, through a risk analysis process. This was a critical first
395 step in designing the reference design and example implementation to mitigate the risk factors. [Table 3-](#)
396 [1](#) lists the addressed Cybersecurity Framework Functions and Subcategories and maps them to relevant
397 NIST standards, industry standards, and controls and best practices. The references provide solution
398 validation points in that they list specific security capabilities that a solution addressing the
399 Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories would be expected to exhibit. Organizations can use [Table 3-1](#)
400 to identify the Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories and NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 controls they are
401 interested in addressing.

402 When cross-referencing Functions of the Cybersecurity Framework with product capabilities used in this
403 practice guide, it is important to consider:

- 404 ▪ This practice guide, though primarily focused on Identify/Protect Functions also uses DE.CM-8
405 and RS.MI-3, Detect and Respond Subcategories respectively. This is primarily because these
406 two Subcategories deal with vulnerability discovery and mitigation, which are techniques used
407 to prevent future damage and are not as useful for preventing attacks previously exploited a
408 given vulnerability. Often, it is unlikely that an organization will be able to resolve a newly
409 discovered vulnerability during an attack; for attacks where patches are available, it can be
410 dangerous to allow updates on a compromised system.

- 411 ▪ Not all the guidance of Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories can be implemented using
 412 technology. Any organization executing a DI solution would need to adopt processes and
 413 organizational policies that support the reference design. For example, some of the
 414 Subcategories within the Cybersecurity Framework Function known as Identify are processes
 415 and policies that should be developed prior to implementing recommendations.

416 **Table 3-1 DI Reference Design Cybersecurity Framework Core Components Map**

Cybersecurity Framework v1.1				Standards and Best Practices	
Func-tion	Category	Subcategory	NIST SP 800-53 R4	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	NIST SP 800-181
IDEN-TIFY (ID)	Asset Management (ID.AM)	ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried.	CM-8, PM-5	A.8.1.1, A.8.1.2	OM-STS-001
		ID.AM-2: Software platforms and applications within the organization are inventoried.	CM-8, PM-5	A.8.1.1, A.8.1.2, A.12.5.1	OM-STS-001
	Risk Assessment (ID.RA)	ID.RA-1: Asset vulnerabilities are identified and documented.	CA-2, CA-7, CA-8, RA-3, RA-5, SA-5, SA-11, SI-2, SI-4, SI-5	A.12.6.1, A.18.2.3	PR-VAM-001
		ID.RA-2: Cyber threat intelligence is received from information sharing forums and sources.	SI-5, PM-15, PM-16	A.6.1.4	CO-OPL-002
		ID.RA-5: Threats, vulnerabilities, likelihoods, and impacts are used to determine risk.	RA-2, RA-3, PM-16	A.12.6.1	SP-SYS-001

Cybersecurity Framework v1.1				Standards and Best Practices	
Function	Category	Subcategory	NIST SP 800-53 R4	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	NIST SP 800-181
PROTECT (PR)	Access Control (PR.AC)	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are issued, managed, verified, revoked, and audited for authorized devices, users, and processes.	AC-1, AC-2, IA-1, IA-2, IA-3, IA-4, IA-5, IA-6, IA-7, IA-8, IA-9, IA-10, IA-11	A.9.2.1, A.9.2.2, A.9.2.3, A.9.2.4, A.9.2.6, A.9.3.1, A.9.4.2, A.9.4.3	SP-DEV-001, OV-PMA-003
		PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed.	AC-1, AC-17, AC-19, AC-20, SC-15	A.6.2.1, A.6.2.2, A.11.2.6, A.13.1.1, A.13.2.1	SP-SYS-001, OM-ADM-001
		PR.AC-4: Access permissions and authorizations are managed, incorporating the principles of least privilege and separation of duties.	AC-1, AC-2, AC-3, AC-5, AC-6, AC-14, AC-16, AC-24	A.6.1.2, A.9.1.2, A.9.2.3, A.9.4.1, A.9.4.4, A.9.4.5	OM-STS-001
		PR.AC-5: Network integrity is protected (e.g., network segregation, network segmentation).	AC-4, AC-10, SC-7	A.13.1.1, A.13.1.3, A.13.2.1, A.14.1.2, A.14.1.3	OM-NET-001
	Data Security (PR.DS)	PR.DS-1: Data-at-rest is protected.	MP-8, SC-12, SC-28	A.8.2.3	OM-DTA-002
		PR.DS-2: Data-in-transit is protected.	SC-8, SC-11, SC-12	A.8.2.3, A.13.1.1, A.13.2.1, A.13.2.3, A.14.1.2, A.14.1.3	OM-DTA-002, PR-CDA-001

Cybersecurity Framework v1.1				Standards and Best Practices	
Function	Category	Subcategory	NIST SP 800-53 R4	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	NIST SP 800-181
Information Protection Processes and Procedures (PR.IP)		PR.DS-6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.	SC-16, SI-7	A.12.2.1, A.12.5.1, A.14.1.2, A.14.1.3, A.14.2.4	OM-DTA-001
		PR.IP-1: A baseline configuration of information technology/industrial control systems is created and maintained, incorporating security principles (e.g., concept of least functionality).	CM-2, CM-3, CM-4, CM-5, CM-6, CM-7, CM-9, SA-10	A.12.1.2, A.12.5.1, A.12.6.2, A.14.2.2, A.14.2.3, A.14.2.4	SP-ARC-001
		PR.IP-3: Configuration change control processes are in place.	CM-3, CM-4, SA-10	A.12.1.2, A.12.5.1, A.12.6.2, A.14.2.2, A.14.2.3, A.14.2.4	SP-DEV-001, OM-ANA-001
		PR.IP-4: Backups of information are conducted, maintained, and tested.	CP-4, CP-6, CP-9	A.12.3.1, A.17.1.2, A.17.1.3, A.18.1.3	SP-SYS-001
		PR.IP-9: Response plans (Incident Response and Business Continuity) and recovery plans (Incident Recovery and Disaster Recovery) are in place and managed.	CP-2, CP-7, CP-12, CP-13, IR-7, IR-8, IR-9, PE-17	A.16.1.1, A.17.1.1, A.17.1.2, A.17.1.3	PR-CIR-001
		PR.IP-10: Response and recovery plans are tested.	CP-4, IR-3, PM-14	A.17.1.3	SP-SYS-001

Cybersecurity Framework v1.1				Standards and Best Practices	
Function	Category	Subcategory	NIST SP 800-53 R4	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	NIST SP 800-181
Protective Technology (PR.PT)	Maintenance (PR.MA)	PR.IP-12: A vulnerability management plan is developed and implemented.	RA-3, RA-5, SI-2	A.12.6.1, A.14.2.3, A.16.1.3, A.18.2.2, A.18.2.3	SP-RSK-002
		PR.MA-1: Maintenance and repair of organizational assets are performed and logged, with approved and controlled tools.	MA-2, MA-3, MA-5, MA-6	A.11.1.2, A.11.2.4, A.11.2.5, A.11.2.6	OM-ADM-001
	Protective Technology (PR.PT)	PR.MA-2: Remote maintenance of organizational assets is approved, logged, and performed in a manner that prevents unauthorized access.	MA-4	A.11.2.4, A.15.1.1, A.15.2.1	SP-TRD-001
		PR.PT-1: Audit/log records are determined, documented, implemented, and reviewed in accordance with policy.	AU Family	A.12.4.1, A.12.4.2, A.12.4.3, A.12.4.4, A.12.7.1	OV-LGA-002
		PR.PT-3: The principle of least functionality is incorporated by configuring systems to provide only essential capabilities.	AC-3, CM-7	A.9.1.2	PR-CDA-001, OM-ANA-001

Cybersecurity Framework v1.1				Standards and Best Practices	
Function	Category	Subcategory	NIST SP 800-53 R4	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	NIST SP 800-181
		PR.PT-4: Communications and control networks are protected.	AC-4, AC-17, AC-18, CP-8, SC-7, SC-19, SC-20, SC-21, SC-22, SC-23, SC-24, SC-25, SC-29, SC-32, SC-36, SC-37, SC-38, SC-39, SC-40, SC-41, SC-43	A.13.1.1, A.13.2.1, A.14.1.3	SP-ARC-002
DETECT (DE)	Security Continuous Monitoring (DE.CM)	DE.CM-8: Vulnerability scans are performed.	RA-5	A.12.6.1	SP-TRD-001
RE-SPOND (RS)	Mitigation (RS.MI)	RS.MI-3: Newly identified vulnerabilities are mitigated or documented as accepted risks.	CA-7, RA-3, RA-5	A.12.6.1	PR-CIR-001

417 **3.5 Technologies**

418 [Table 3-2](#) lists all the technologies used in this project and provides a mapping among the generic
 419 application term, the specific product used, and the security control(s) the product provides. Refer to
 420 [Table 3-1](#) for an explanation of the NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory codes.

421 Please note that PR.AC-4 is not included in this table. Access controls are detailed more thoroughly in
 422 other NCCoE practice guides [\[18\]](#), [\[19\]](#). For the purposes of this practice guide, we assume a minimal
 423 Active Directory setup with an administrator and several users.

424 Table 3-2 Products and Technologies

Component	Product	Function	Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories
Inventory	Cisco ISE v2.4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identification and status information for users • Identification and status information for devices • Identification and status information for software • Identification and status information for data assets 	ID.AM-1, ID.AM-2, PR.AC-1, PR.PT-2
	Symantec Data Loss Prevention (DLP) v15.1		
Vulnerability Management	Tripwire IP360 v9.0.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identification for vulnerabilities on various systems in the enterprise • An interface for managing/prioritizing vulnerabilities, based on organizational needs 	ID.RA-1, ID.RA-5, PR.IP-12, DE.CM-8, RS.MI-3
Policy Enforcement	Cisco ISE v2.4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enforce machine posture across an enterprise • Quarantine machines that do not comply with organizational policy 	ID.RA-1, PR.AC-3, PR.MA-1, PR.MA-2, RS.MI-3
Integrity Monitoring	Tripwire Enterprise v8.7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Baselines integrity activity for data • Baselines integrity activity for Active Directory • Provides file hashes and integrity baselines for files and software, regardless of file type 	PR.DS-6, PR.IP-3, PR.PT-1
	Semperis Directory Services Protector (DSP) v2.7		
Logging	Micro Focus ArcSight Enterprise Security Manager (ESM) v7.0 Patch 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provides auditing and logging capabilities configurable to corporate policy • Provides logs of baseline network operations 	PR.IP-1, PR.IP-3, PR.PT-1

Component	Product	Function	Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories
	Tripwire Log Center v7.3.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Provides logs of database activity and database backup operations Provides logs of integrity changes Provides logs of some user activity of monitored systems 	
Backups	Semperis Active Directory Forest Recovery (ADFR) v2.5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Backs up Active Directory information Backs up systems Backs up configurations Backs up organizational data 	PR.DS-1, PR.IP-3, PR.IP-4, PR.IP-9, PR.IP-10
	FileZilla v0.9.60.2 OPEN SOURCE		
	Duplicati v2.0.3.3 OPEN SOURCE		
Secure Storage	GreenTec WORMdisk v151228	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Provides immutable storage Provides configurable prevention of backup modification 	PR.DS-1, PR.IP-4
Network Protection	CryptoniteNXT v2.9.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prevents unapproved network communication Prevents malicious reconnaissance Quarantines unauthorized machines on the network 	ID.AM-1, PR.AC-1, PR.AC-3, PR.AC-5, PR.DS-2, PR.PT-4
Blacklisting	Cisco Web Security Appliance v10.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Provides capability to blacklist websites Provides capability to blacklist communication with malicious or disallowed IP addresses 	PR.AC-3, PR.AC-5, PR.DS-2, PR.PT-4

425 4 Architecture

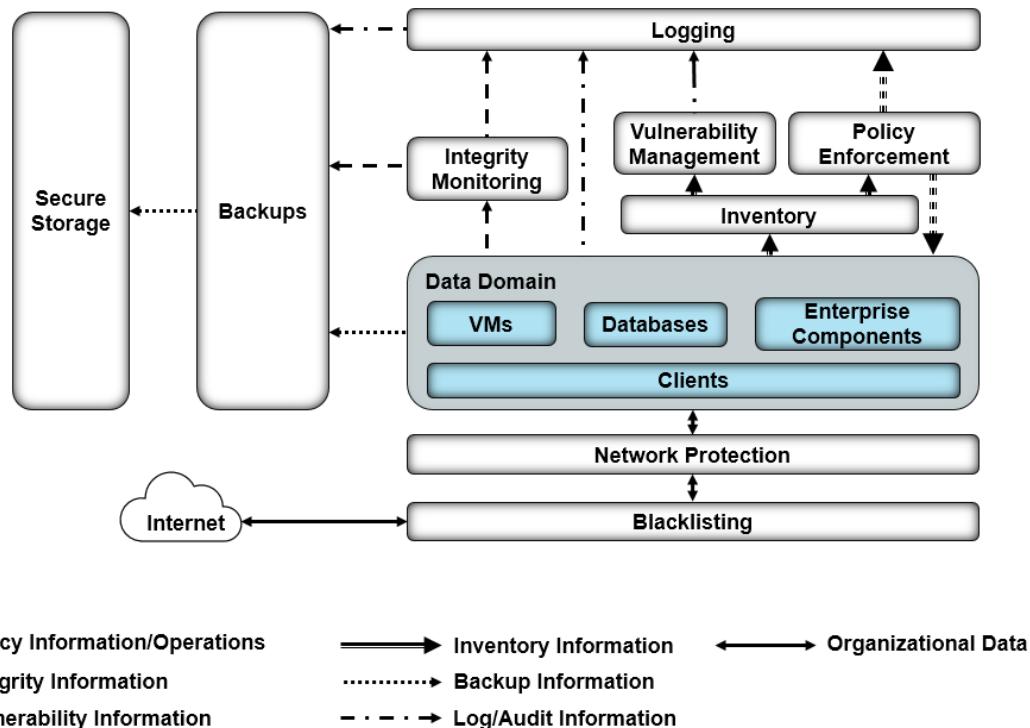
426 This section presents the high-level architecture used for implementation of a DI solution that identifies
427 and protects assets from ransomware and other destructive events.

428 4.1 Architecture Description

429 4.1.1 High-Level Architecture

430 The DI solution is designed to address the security Functions and Subcategories described in Table 3-1
431 and is composed of the capabilities illustrated in Figure 4-1.

432 **Figure 4-1 DI Identify and Protect High-Level Architecture**



- 433
 - Inventory allows discovering and keeping track of devices connected to the enterprise.
- 434
 - Vulnerability Management provides a mechanism for analyzing various system and network
- 435
 - components, for a better understanding of resolved and unresolved vulnerabilities in the
- 436
 - enterprise.
- 437
 - Policy Enforcement uses feedback from logs and vulnerability management to target machines
- 438
 - with unresolved vulnerabilities and maintain overall enterprise health.

439 ■ Integrity Monitoring establishes baselines of file/system integrity.
440 ■ Logging records and stores all the log files produced by the components within the enterprise.
441 ■ Backups allow components within the enterprise to produce backups.
442 ■ Secure Storage allows data storage with additional data protection measures, such as Write
443 Once Read Many (WORM) technologies. Data encryption can also be used, but this will not
444 inherently protect data against corruption.
445 ■ Network Protection can defend an enterprise network against both intrusion and lateral
446 movement of malicious actors and programs.
447 ■ Blacklisting can filter allowed programs or network communications. Often, this may be
448 provided in the form of a firewall or even a white list, but products exist that allow finer-grained
449 control over these filters.

450 These capabilities work together to provide the Functions of Identify and Protect for the reference
451 architecture. The Inventory capability allows accurate and complete discovery and status reporting of all
452 network assets. The Inventory capability feeds into Vulnerability Management, which analyzes the
453 assets and network for vulnerabilities. Vulnerability Management feeds its information into Logging,
454 which aggregates and collects logs from various sources for use as a baseline of normal system
455 operations. Policy Enforcement uses information from Logging and Vulnerability Management, to repair
456 vulnerabilities found in the enterprise and maintain the system with up-to-date patches. Integrity
457 Monitoring records normal file/system integrity information to be used as a baseline in the event of an
458 attack and forwards this information to the Logging capability as part of the organization's baseline.
459 Backups create periodic backups of organizational data to be used in a cybersecurity event. Secure
460 Storage allows storing files—such as backups, gold images, logs, or configuration files—in a format that
461 cannot be corrupted, because files cannot be altered or changed while in storage.

462 4.1.2 Architecture Components

463 4.1.2.1 *Inventory*

464 The Inventory capability allows discovering and visualizing the enterprise's network as well as the
465 present network devices. This component also informs the other components in the enterprise,
466 providing information such as what systems to monitor, back up, and scan for vulnerabilities. This
467 component provides the basic knowledge of what assets there are to protect.

468 For the Inventory capability, we use a combination of two products: Cisco ISE and Symantec DLP. Cisco
469 ISE provides inventory capabilities for machines, devices, and users on its network and can use that
470 information in tandem with other capabilities. Symantec DLP provides data asset inventory, allowing
471 organizations to identify potentially sensitive data.

472 ***4.1.2.2 Vulnerability Management***

473 The Vulnerability Management capability allows scanning and managing vulnerabilities across the
474 enterprise. It provides a priority system for these vulnerabilities, as well as logs on existing
475 vulnerabilities and potentially resolved vulnerabilities. The information produced by this capability
476 informs the Policy Enforcement capability, which aims to fix the discovered vulnerabilities or quarantine
477 the machine until they are fixed.

478 For the Vulnerability Management capability, we use Tripwire IP360. Tripwire IP360 is a vulnerability
479 scanner and management tool, which can scan a variety of hosts for known vulnerabilities and report on
480 the results. Furthermore, the tool can manage and assign risk levels to these vulnerabilities, allowing
481 security teams to effectively manage vulnerabilities throughout the enterprise.

482 ***4.1.2.3 Policy Enforcement***

483 Through various mechanisms, the Policy Enforcement capability maintains the health of the enterprise.
484 Policy Enforcement acts on log information provided by the Inventory and Vulnerability Management
485 capabilities, often with the help of a security team, to ensure the health and compliance of enterprise
486 systems. This can include mechanisms such as pushing software updates, resolving vulnerabilities, or
487 quarantining noncompliant machines, but the capabilities of policy enforcement tools vary from product
488 to product.

489 For Policy Enforcement, we use Cisco ISE. Cisco ISE can identify machines on its network and perform a
490 posture check on these machines. This can entail checking that certain services are enabled, that anti-
491 malware is installed, or that certain files are present. Using this information, Cisco ISE can then disable
492 network access to noncompliant machines.

493 ***4.1.2.4 Integrity Monitoring***

494 Integrity monitoring provides the ability to test, understand, and measure attacks that occur on files and
495 components within the enterprise. When considering DI from the perspective of protecting assets prior
496 to an attack, it is important to establish an integrity baseline for files and systems across the enterprise,
497 to be used in comparison with daily operations. The value of integrity monitoring becomes clear both
498 during and after an attack. Alerts can be set to notify the security team to act when abnormal changes
499 are detected to a file or system, such as changes made at abnormal times or by users who typically do
500 not make changes to these assets. Furthermore, the information produced by integrity monitoring
501 systems can be used to inform a recovery process; they provide information about what changes
502 happened, when changes began to take place, as well as what programs were involved in the changes.

503 For Integrity Monitoring, we use a combination of two tools: Tripwire Enterprise and Semperis Directory
504 Services Protector. Tripwire Enterprise is a file integrity monitoring tool that establishes a baseline for
505 integrity activity within the enterprise. This baseline is used in the event of an attack, to detect and alert
506 on changes within the enterprise as well as aid recovery should it be necessary. Semperis Directory

507 Services Protector also provides integrity monitoring, but for Active Directory it allows granular rollbacks
508 of Active Directory changes and provides a baseline for any attacks on the enterprise account
509 configuration.

510 *4.1.2.5 Logging*

511 Logging from each enterprise component serves several functions in an architecture that aims to
512 identify and protect assets. Logs are produced through Integrity Monitoring, which aids in establishing a
513 baseline for the enterprise's daily activity. Logs are also produced through vulnerability scanning and
514 asset inventory, which inform Policy Enforcement: maintaining up-to-date systems requires information
515 about what systems exist in the enterprise and their status.

516 For Logging, we use a combination of two tools: Micro Focus ArcSight and Tripwire Log Center (TLC).
517 While TLC's purpose in this build is primarily to collect, transform, and forward logs from Tripwire IP360
518 and Tripwire Enterprise to ArcSight, ArcSight performs a wider function. ArcSight collects logs from
519 various sources in the enterprise, such as Vulnerability Management, Backups, Network Protection,
520 Blacklisting, Inventory, Integrity Monitoring, as well as Windows event logs and Ubuntu syslogs. This
521 widespread collection aims to provide a baseline for activity throughout the enterprise. ArcSight can
522 analyze and alert, which can be used in the event of an attack, but it requires thorough log collection
523 from all components of the enterprise.

524 *4.1.2.6 Backups*

525 The Backups capability backs up both the organization's data and data from other components, such as
526 logs and integrity information. These backups are most often used as part of the Recover Function as
527 part of the restoration process. Backups must be taken prior to an event to be useful, though; the
528 restoration process requires backups from before the event to adequately restore a system.

529 The configuration of this capability needs to align with the tempo of the enterprise. For example, if an
530 enterprise performs thousands of transactions per hour per day, then a backup solution that performs a
531 backup only once a day would not adequately provide for the enterprise. This type of configuration
532 would allow a potentially large data loss. If backups occur every morning and a loss of DI happened at
533 the end of the day, then a full day's worth of transactions would be lost. The decision for the correct
534 configuration of backups is determined by an organization's risk tolerance.

535 For the Backups capability, we use a combination of two open-source tools: FileZilla and Duplicati.
536 FileZilla is a user-based File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server with the option to force FTP over TLS. It allows
537 control over where individual users/groups store files, and its primary purpose in this build is as a
538 receptacle for backups produced by Duplicati. Duplicati is a client-based backup system configured on
539 individual hosts to back up to a provided FTP server. It packages and encrypts backups before sending
540 them to the FTP server, potentially on a schedule.

541 We also use Semperis ADFR to provide more fine-grained backups for Active
542 Directory. As Active Directory is often critical to enterprise operations, Semperis ADFR is designed to work off-site in the
543 event of a disaster.

544 *4.1.2.7 Secure Storage*

545 Secure Storage stores the most critical files for an enterprise. These include backup data, configuration
546 files, logs, golden images, and other files critical to both system operation and the organization's
547 mission. Additional measures need to be applied to provide increased security to these files so they are
548 not subject to attacks or corruption.

549 For Secure Storage, we use GreenTec's WORMdisk, a transparent hard disk that can prevent any data
550 deletion and modification at a firmware level. WORMdisks provide an easy-to-use graphical user
551 interface and a command line interface for automating locking and disk rotation. In this architecture
552 they are used primarily to store backups to prevent any damage to the backups, but they can be used at
553 the discretion of the organization to store other critical files.

554 *4.1.2.8 Network Protection*

555 Network Protection defends the network against threats that require network movement. This should
556 preemptively protect against lateral movement, in which malware or a malicious actor attempts to
557 spread across machines in the network. Furthermore, it should also protect against external threats
558 attempting to gain access to the network.

559 For Network Protection, we use CryptoniteNXT. CryptoniteNXT provides zero-trust moving-target
560 defense for the network it protects. This means that all enterprise communication goes through the
561 CryptoniteNXT device, which provides granular access control for allowed types of communication. This
562 allows defense against lateral propagation. Furthermore, as internet protocol (IP) addresses are dynamic
563 and managed by CryptoniteNXT, reconnaissance is significantly more difficult for attackers on and
564 outside the network.

565 *4.1.2.9 Blacklisting*

566 Blacklisting enables control of allowed communications and applications within an enterprise. This may
567 include restricting installed software on enterprise machines to a predefined list or specifically
568 disallowing software. Furthermore, it should restrict network communication with websites, servers, or
569 external actors as well as restrict based on protocol or port usage. Some of these capabilities are
570 covered by firewalls, but further control can allow more complex policies based on the organization's
571 needs.

572 For the Blacklisting capability we use Cisco Web Security Appliance (WSA). Cisco WSA enables
573 enterprises to blacklist web traffic through a proxy. This allows for prevention of malware downloads
574 from known malicious websites as identified by site reputation updates from Cisco Talos threat

575 intelligence. These websites can also be identified through the implementation of a Detect and Respond
576 build and can also be provided by an integration with other information sharing services.

577 **5 Security Characteristic Analysis**

578 The purpose of the security characteristic analysis is to understand the extent to which the project
579 meets its objective of demonstrating a DI identify-and-protect solution. In addition, it seeks to
580 understand the security benefits and drawbacks of the example solution.

581 **5.1 Assumptions and Limitations**

582 The security characteristic analysis has the following limitations:

- 583 ▪ It is neither a comprehensive test of all security components nor a red-team exercise.
- 584 ▪ It cannot identify all weaknesses.
- 585 ▪ It does not include the lab infrastructure. It is assumed that devices are hardened. Testing these
586 devices would reveal only weaknesses in implementation that would not be relevant to those
587 adopting this reference architecture.

588 **5.2 Build Testing**

589 The purpose of the security characteristic analysis is to understand the extent to which the building
590 block meets its objective of identifying enterprise assets and vulnerabilities. Furthermore, the project
591 aims to protect these assets prior to the start of an attack. In addition, it seeks to understand the
592 security benefits and drawbacks of the reference design. To accomplish this, we created a set of use
593 cases—each an individual attack on DI with different aspects to test various parts of the build.

594 When doing this, we aim not to test individual components for their capabilities but rather for the ability
595 of the architecture to deal with these use cases. Furthermore, as this architecture is focused on
596 defending against attacks before they happen, the resolutions to these use cases are primarily
597 preventative rather than responsive.

598 **5.3 Scenarios and Findings**

599 One aspect of our security evaluation involved assessing how well the reference design addresses the
600 security characteristics it was intended to support. The Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories were
601 used to provide structure to the security assessment by consulting the specific sections of each standard
602 that are cited in reference to a Subcategory. The cited sections provide validation points that the
603 example solution would be expected to exhibit. Using the Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories as a
604 basis for organizing our analysis allowed us to systematically consider how well the reference design
605 supports the intended security characteristics.

606 Below is a list of the scenarios created to test various aspects of this architecture. More detailed
607 resolutions and mappings of these scenarios' requirements to the Cybersecurity Framework can be
608 found in [Appendix D](#).

609 [5.3.1 Ransomware via Web Vector and Self-Propagation](#)

610 [5.3.1.1 Scenario](#)

611 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture's defense against ransomware.

612 A user mistakenly downloads ransomware from an external web server. When the user executes this
613 malicious software, it generates a cryptographic key, which is sent back to the external web server. The
614 malware then utilizes a privilege escalation exploit to propagate across the network. The malicious
615 software encrypts files on the machines it propagated to, and it demands payment in exchange for
616 decrypting these files.

617 [5.3.1.2 Resolution](#)

618 This build provides a significant defense in depth against this use case to prevent the majority of its
619 functions from taking place.

620 The **Blacklisting** capability is used to prevent the user from reaching the malicious site that hosts the
621 ransomware, preventing the download before it happens.

622 The **Vulnerability Management** capability is used to detect the vulnerability exploited by the
623 ransomware to propagate, allowing resolution before the attack occurs.

624 The **Network Protection** capability is used to prevent the ransomware's propagation by disallowing
625 network traffic between computers on the network, through a traffic white-list policy.

626 The **Inventory** capability is used to identify the enterprise's assets for backup and monitoring.

627 The **Backups** capability is used to take backups of potential ransomware targets before the attack hits,
628 nullifying the effects of potential attacks on files.

629 The **Integrity Monitoring** capability, in tandem with the **Logging** capability, is used to take a baseline of
630 the file system, so that an attack on the file system is detected and the scope can be identified.

631 [5.3.1.3 Other Considerations](#)

632 Malware comes in many forms and from many places, and as a result, requires a defense in depth
633 against it. For example, though preventing a piece of malware from getting on enterprise systems may
634 be as simple as blacklisting a website, it is often impossible to have full knowledge of all malicious
635 websites before an attack happens. Because of this, other tools are necessary to prevent the effects of
636 malware at every step of its potential execution, and preparation is necessary to mitigate effects.

637 It is important to improve upon these capabilities over time by learning from attacks on the enterprise
638 and from attacks on other enterprises. Both information-sharing technologies and after-the-fact analysis
639 of attacks can inform capabilities to prevent future attacks.

640 5.3.2 Destructive Malware via USB Vector

641 5.3.2.1 Scenario

642 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture's defense against destructive malware.
643 A user finds an unmarked Universal Serial Bus (USB) device and inserts it into his or her system. The USB
644 device contains malicious software that may run automatically or with user interaction. The malicious
645 software modifies and deletes the user's files, removing text from text files and entirely deleting any
646 media files it finds. The software does not offer a recovery mechanism as ransomware might, aiming
647 only to corrupt files.

648 5.3.2.2 Resolution

649 This build provides two main layers of defense against this scenario: Backups and Integrity baselining.
650 The **Integrity Monitoring** capability provides a baseline for file system activity as a point of comparison
651 post-modification/deletion.
652 The **Logging** capability provides a baseline for events across the enterprise, including typical USB and file
653 modification activity.
654 The **Backups** capability provides the ability to take backups of the file system, allowing restoration of
655 files after the incident is resolved.

656 5.3.2.3 Other Considerations

657 A use case involving USBs is often best prevented through organizational training. In some cases, just
658 the action of inserting the USB is enough to destroy an entire system on a physical level. Furthermore,
659 not all malicious USBs will be simple file systems with auto-run malware on them—they can come
660 disguised as keyboards or use lower-level attacks. Because of this, it is important for organizations to
661 educate members on the dangers of unknown USB insertion, while also preparing if the attack occurs
662 anyway.

663 5.3.3 Accidental VM Deletion via Maintenance Script

664 5.3.3.1 Scenario

665 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture's defense against DI events that occur on
666 virtual machines (VMs).

667 A routine maintenance script on the system causes an error. During a move operation in the Hyper-V
668 system, the script deletes an important VM. A maintenance script with an error of this type could be a
669 side effect of a normal system function or an error made by a member of the organization. The build is
670 expected to mitigate the damage caused to VMs in such an incident.

671 *5.3.3.2 Resolution*

672 This build provides two main layers of defense against this scenario: Backups and Integrity baselining.

673 The **Integrity Monitoring** capability provides a baseline for virtual machine activity, as a point of
674 comparison post-deletion.

675 The **Logging** capability provides a baseline for events across the enterprise, including typical Hyper-V
676 activity.

677 The **Backups** capability enables backups of entire VMs. In the event of a deletion, these backups can be
678 used to restore the VMs.

679 *5.3.3.3 Other Considerations*

680 The Backups capability can also be installed on individual VMs, given proper networking, to back up the
681 contents of VMs if desired. This will likely depend on the needs of the organization.

682 *5.3.4 Backdoor Creation via Email Vector*

683 *5.3.4.1 Scenario*

684 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture's defense against malicious email
685 attachments.

686 A user unknowingly opens a malicious attachment they received in an email. When opened, the
687 attachment quietly fetches files from an external web server. It then creates several unapproved
688 backdoor accounts on the authentication server. The build is expected to mitigate the impacts of such
689 an incident.

690 *5.3.4.2 Resolution*

691 The build provides several layers of defense against this use case. The **Integrity Monitoring** capability
692 provides a baseline for Active Directory as a point of comparison against a compromised system.
693 Furthermore, it also provides a baseline of the file system, to aid in identifying the malicious file during
694 and after the attack has happened.

695 The **Logging** capability provides a baseline for activity across the enterprise, including the name of the
696 account used to create the backdoors.

697 Lastly, the **Blacklisting** capability is used to prevent web requests to the malicious web server. This
698 capability is informed by capabilities in the Respond Category of the Cybersecurity Framework.

699 *5.3.4.3 Other Considerations*

700 Note that for this scenario, prevention of the downloads before an attack happens requires
701 organizations to know what web servers are “known bad.” Organizations can acquire this knowledge in
702 two ways: through threat-sharing services and through self-information as part of the Respond Category
703 of the Cybersecurity Framework. The former refers to services that collect the names of malicious
704 domains and share them with customers. The latter refers to the addition of known-bad websites to the
705 blacklist after they are detected as malicious through the organization’s own logs and analytics during or
706 after an event. This build allows protecting against attacks given this knowledge, but the knowledge
707 must be gained in some way first.

708 Another defense that can partially prevent this use case is simply blacklisting the sender of the phishing
709 email or sorting it into spam. However, as this is typically a function of the email provider and not a
710 separate security solution, it is out of scope for this build.

711 *5.3.5 Database Modification via Malicious Insider*

712 *5.3.5.1 Scenario*

713 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture’s defense against unwanted database
714 modification.

715 A malicious insider has access to an enterprise database through a web page. The insider leverages a
716 vulnerability in the web page to delete a large portion of the database. Though this scenario deals with a
717 web vulnerability, other vulnerabilities could be used to modify the database undesirably. The build is
718 expected to mitigate a user’s potential impact on the database.

719 *5.3.5.2 Resolution*

720 This build provides two main layers of defense against this scenario: Backups and Integrity baselining.

721 The **Integrity Monitoring** capability provides a baseline for database activity as a point of comparison
722 post-deletion.

723 The **Logging** capability provides a baseline for events across the enterprise, including typical database
724 activity.

725 The **Backup** capability enables backups of the entire database. In the event of a deletion, these backups
726 can be used to restore the database.

727 *5.3.5.3 Other Considerations*

728 Creating backups of the entire database may, in some cases, be undesirable, particularly for enterprises
729 that heavily use the database. For these cases, we recommend built-in database backups. Microsoft
730 Structured Query Language databases have built-in backups that can be more granular than a full
731 database backup.

732 For many applications, though, a periodic backup of the entire database is sufficient and potentially can
733 be used in tandem with built-in database backups.

734 *5.3.6 File Modification via Malicious Insider*735 *5.3.6.1 Scenario*

736 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture's defense against malicious file and backup
737 modification.

738 A malicious insider is assumed to have stolen administrator-level credentials through nontechnical
739 means. The insider, using these credentials, uses remote Windows PowerShell sessions to uniformly
740 modify employee stock information across several machines, to the insider's benefit. This attack will also
741 target the enterprise's backups system, to modify all records of the previous stock information. The
742 aspects of the build described above are expected to mitigate the ability of the user to target and
743 modify enterprise data and backups. The method of securing administrator credentials will be
744 considered out of scope for this solution.

745 *5.3.6.2 Resolution*

746 The build provides several layers of defense against this use case. Because this use case specifically
747 targets the backups, the solution includes mechanisms for protecting and monitoring the backups.

748 The **Inventory** capability is used to identify potentially sensitive information across the enterprise.

749 The **Integrity Monitoring** capability is used to baseline file activity, both for backups and for
750 organizational files.

751 This information is forwarded to the **Logging** capability for analysis.

752 The **Backups** capability is used to take encrypted backups of the file system, preventing targeted attacks
753 against information in the backups.

754 The **Secure Storage** capability is used to prevent write-access to the backups once taken, allowing a
755 guarantee of modification/deletion protection for backups stored on the disk.

756 *5.3.6.3 Other Considerations*

757 A significant trade-off between memory and frequency of backups occurs when implementing a secure
758 storage solution for backups. As WORM space may be limited by the number of disks purchased or by a
759 cloud service's limitations, it is important for organizations to consider the cost of storing all backups in
760 secure storage, especially for organizations that frequently take backups to reduce the loss of data.

761 *5.3.7 Backdoor Creation via Compromised Update Server*762 *5.3.7.1 Scenario*

763 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture's defense against compromised update
764 servers.

765 An update server that services an enterprise machine is compromised and provides an update to the
766 enterprise machine that contains a backdoor. The update contains a vulnerable version of vsftpd,
767 allowing a malicious actor root access into the machine updated by the compromised server. The build is
768 expected to mitigate the impact of a compromised update server.

769 *5.3.7.2 Resolution*

770 The build provides several layers of defense against this use case. The **Integrity Monitoring** capability is
771 used to baseline the integrity of both files and programs, as an intrusion via compromised update server
772 can potentially affect both. This aids in early detection and recovery.

773 The **Backups** capability is used to back up the file system, to preemptively mitigate the damage done by
774 the intrusion.

775 The **Blacklisting** capability is used to blacklist the compromised update server, to prevent use of the
776 update server by other machines.

777 *5.3.7.3 Other Considerations*

778 To prevent updates through Blacklisting, organizations should either use their blacklisting capability as a
779 transparent proxy or ensure that the update mechanism uses the proxy; the process for configuring this
780 will differ between update mechanisms. The Blacklisting and Network Protection capabilities are
781 especially important in the event of a breach, as these two can help prevent the spread of the intrusion.

782 *5.3.8 New Employee*783 *5.3.8.1 Scenario*

784 The following scenario was simulated to test the architecture's identification capabilities with respect to
785 machines and vulnerabilities.

786 A new employee joins the organization and connects his or her machine to the network. The machine,
787 however, is not up-to-date on its patches and poses a security risk to the organization. The build is
788 expected to be able to identify the machine and its noncompliance with organizational maintenance
789 policy.

790 *5.3.8.2 Resolution*

791 The build provides several layers of defense against this use case. The **Inventory** capability provides logs
792 and information about newly connected machines, including operating system, MAC address, IP
793 address, and date of login. It also generates logs for the **Logging** capability to collect and use for
794 comparison against a baseline in the event of an incident.

795 The **Policy Enforcement** capability provides the ability to grant or deny network access based on the
796 machine's posture—essentially, this verifies existence of security software and machine update status
797 before the machine is ever allowed to use the network.

798 Lastly, the **Vulnerability Management** capability detects and keeps track of vulnerabilities on the newly
799 discovered machine, allowing better understanding of the machine's vulnerabilities before and after it is
800 allowed onto the network.

801 *5.3.8.3 Other Considerations*

802 Though this use case primarily targets desktops, similar considerations should be taken for enterprises
803 that aim to include employee-owned mobile devices. These devices should be inventoried and scanned
804 for relevant security posture, before being allowed to join the network.

805 **6 Future Build Considerations**

806 The NCCoE is creating an overarching guide to combining the architectures of the various DI projects:
807 Identify and Protect, Detect and Respond, and Recover. These architectures have some commonalities,
808 such as integrity monitoring, as well as some potential integrations and cycles that could not be
809 expressed in just one of the practice guides. The different functions of the Cybersecurity Framework are
810 intended to prepare and inform one another, and the overarching guide addresses those issues.

811 The NCCoE is also considering additional data security projects that map to the Cybersecurity
812 Framework Core Functions of Identify, Protect, Detect, Respond, and Recover. These projects will focus
813 on data confidentiality—the defense of enterprise systems from attacks that would compromise the
814 secrecy of data.

815 **Appendix A List of Acronyms**

COI	community of interest
DI	data integrity
DSP	Directory Services Protector
ESM	Enterprise Security Manager
IT	Information Technology
ISO/IEC	International Organization for Standardization/International Electrotechnical Commission
NCCoE	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NIST IR	NIST Interagency Report
RMF	Risk Management Framework
SP	Special Publication
TLC	Tripwire Log Center
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VM	Virtual Machine
vsftpd	Very Secure File Transfer Protocol Daemon
WORM	Write Once Read Many
WSA	Web Security Appliance

816 Appendix B Glossary

Access Control The process of granting or denying specific requests to: 1) obtain and use information and related information processing services; and 2) enter specific physical facilities (e.g., federal buildings, military establishments, border crossing entrances)

SOURCE: Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 201; CNSSI-4009

Architecture A highly structured specification of an acceptable approach within a framework for solving a specific problem. An architecture contains descriptions of all the components of a selected, acceptable solution while allowing certain details of specific components to be variable to satisfy related constraints (e.g., costs, local environment, user acceptability).

SOURCE: FIPS 201-2

Audit Independent review and examination of records and activities to assess the adequacy of system controls and ensure compliance with established policies and operational procedures

SOURCE: CNSSI 4009-2015

Backdoor An undocumented way of gaining access to a computer system. A backdoor is a potential security risk.

SOURCE: National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication (SP) 800-82 Rev. 2

Backup A copy of files and programs made to facilitate recovery if necessary

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-34 Rev. 1

Compromise Disclosure of information to unauthorized persons, or a violation of the security policy of a system in which unauthorized intentional or unintentional disclosure, modification, destruction, or loss of an object may have occurred

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-32

Continuous Monitoring	Maintaining ongoing awareness to support organizational risk decisions
	SOURCE: NIST SP 800-137
Cybersecurity	Prevention of damage to, protection of, and restoration of computers, electronic communications systems, electronic communications services, wire communication, and electronic communication, including information contained therein, to ensure its availability, integrity, authentication, confidentiality, and nonrepudiation
	SOURCE: CNSSI 4009-2015 (NSPD-54/HSPD-23)
Data	A subset of information in an electronic format that allows it to be retrieved or transmitted
	SOURCE: CNSSI-4009
Data Integrity	The property that data has not been changed, destroyed, or lost in an unauthorized or accidental manner
	SOURCE: CNSSI-4009
Information Security	The protection of information and information systems from unauthorized access, use, disclosure, disruption, modification, or destruction in order to provide confidentiality, integrity, and availability
	SOURCE: FIPS 199 (44 U.S.C., Sec. 3542)
Information Security Risk	The risk to organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, reputation), organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, and the Nation due to the potential for unauthorized access, use, disclosure, disruption, modification, or destruction of information and/or information systems
	SOURCE: CNSSI 4009-2015 (NIST SP 800-30 Rev. 1)
Information System	A discrete set of information resources organized for the collection, processing, maintenance, use, sharing, dissemination, or disposition of information
	SOURCE: FIPS 200 (44 U.S.C., Sec. 3502)
Insider	An entity inside the security perimeter that is authorized to access system resources but uses them in a way not approved by those who granted the authorization

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-82 Rev. 2 (RFC 4949)

Kerberos An authentication system developed at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Kerberos is designed to enable two parties to exchange private information across a public network.

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-47

Log A record of the events occurring within an organization's systems and networks

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-92

Malware A program that is inserted into a system, usually covertly, with the intent of compromising the confidentiality, integrity, or availability of the victim's data, applications, or operating system

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-111

Privacy Assurance that the confidentiality of, and access to, certain information about an entity is protected

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-130

Risk The level of impact on organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), organizational assets, or individuals resulting from the operation of an information system given the potential impact of a threat and the likelihood of that threat occurring

SOURCE: FIPS 200

Risk Assessment The process of identifying the risks to system security and determining the probability of occurrence, the resulting impact, and additional safeguards that would mitigate this impact. Part of Risk Management and synonymous with Risk Analysis

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-63-2

Risk Management Framework The Risk Management Framework (RMF), presented in NIST SP 800-37, provides a disciplined and structured process that integrates information security and risk management activities into the system development life cycle.

SOURCE: NIST SP 800-82 Rev. 2 (NIST SP 800-37)

Security Control	A protection measure for a system SOURCE: NIST SP 800-123
Virtual Machine	Software that allows a single host to run one or more guest operating systems SOURCE: NIST SP 800-115
Vulnerability	Weakness in an information system, system security procedures, internal controls, or implementation that could be exploited or triggered by a threat source SOURCE: FIPS 200 (Adapted adapted from CNSSI 4009)

817 **Appendix C References**

- 818 [1] Sedgewick, *Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity*, Version 1.1, National
819 Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, Apr. 2018, 55 pp. Available:
820 <https://www.nist.gov/cyberframework/framework>.
- 821 [2] L. Kauffman, N. Lesser and B. Abe, *Executive Technical Workshop on Improving Cybersecurity
822 and Consumer Privacy*, NISTIR 8050, National Institute of Standards and Technology,
823 Gaithersburg, Maryland, April 2015, 155pp. Available:
824 <https://nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/nistir-8050-draft.pdf>.
- 825 [3] G. Stoneburner, *et al.*, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*, NIST Special Publication (SP), 800-
826 30 Revision 1, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland,
827 September 2012, 95 pp. Available: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-30r1>.
- 828 [4] R. Ross, *et al.*, *Guide for Applying the Risk Management Framework to Federal Information
829 Systems*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-37, National Institute of Standards and Technology,
830 Gaithersburg, Maryland, February 2010, 101pp. Available:
831 <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-37r1>.
- 832 [5] R. Ross *et al.*, *Managing Information Security Risk*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-39, National
833 Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, March 2011, 87pp. Available:
834 <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-39>.
- 835 [6] M. Souppaya *et al.*, *Guide to Enterprise Patch Management Technologies*, NIST Special
836 Publication (SP) 800-40 Revision 3, National Institute of Standards and Technology,
837 Gaithersburg, Maryland, July 2013, 25pp. Available: [http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-40r3](http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-
838 40r3).
- 839 [7] R. Ross *et al.*, *Security and Privacy Controls for Federal Information Systems and Organizations*,
840 NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-53 Revision 4, National Institute of Standards and Technology,
841 Gaithersburg, Maryland, April 2013, 461pp. Available: [https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-53r4](https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-
842 53r4).
- 843 [8] U.S. Department of Commerce. Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules, Federal
844 Information Processing Standards (FIPS) Publication 140-3, Mar. 2019, 65pp. Available:
845 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/fips/140/3/final>.
- 846 [9] K. Kent *et al.*, *Guide to Integrating Forensic Techniques into Incident Response*, NIST Special
847 Publication (SP) 800-86, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg,
848 Maryland, August 2006, 121pp. Available: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-86>.

- 849 [10] K. Kent and M. Souppaya, *Guide to Computer Security Log Management*, NIST Special
850 Publication (SP) 800-92, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg,
851 Maryland, September 2006, 72pp. Available: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-92>.
- 852 [11] P. Bowen *et al.*, *Information Security Handbook: A Guide for Managers*, NIST Special Publication
853 (SP) 800-100, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, October
854 2006, 178pp. Available: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-100>.
- 855 [12] M. Swanson *et al.*, Contingency Planning Guide for Federal Information Systems, NIST Special
856 Publication (SP) 800-34 Revision 1, National Institute of Standards and Technology,
857 Gaithersburg, Maryland, May 2010, 148pp. Available: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-34r1>.
- 859 [13] Office of Management and Budget (OMB), *Management of Federal Information Resources*, OMB
860 Circular No. A-130, November 2000. Available:
861 https://obamawhitehouse.archives.gov/sites/default/files/omb/assets/OMB/circulars/a130/a13_revised.pdf.
- 863 [14] P. Cichonski *et al.*, *Computer Security Incident Handling Guide*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-
864 61 Revision 2, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, August
865 2012, 79pp. Available: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-61r2>.
- 866 [15] M. Souppaya and K. Scarfone, *Guide to Malware Incident Prevention and Handling for Desktops
867 and Laptops*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-83 Revision 1, National Institute of Standards and
868 Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, July 2013, 46pp. Available:
869 <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-83r1>.
- 870 [16] C. Johnson *et al.*, *Guide to Cyber Threat Information Sharing*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-
871 150, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, October 2016,
872 42pp. Available: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-150>.
- 873 [17] M. Bartock *et al.*, *Guide for Cybersecurity Event Recovery*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-184,
874 National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, December 2016, 52pp.
875 <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-184>.
- 876 [18] J. Banoczi *et al.*, *Access Rights Management*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 1800-9, National
877 Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, October 2017. Available:
878 <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/access-rights-management>.
- 879 [19] B. Fisher *et al.*, *Attribute Based Access Control*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 1800-3, National
880 Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, Maryland, September 2017. Available:
881 <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/attribute-based-access-control>.

882 **Appendix D Functional Evaluation**

883 A functional evaluation of the data integrity (DI) example implementation, as constructed in our
884 laboratory, was conducted to verify that it meets its objective of identifying assets and vulnerabilities
885 within the enterprise. Furthermore, the project aims to protect these assets prior to an attack. The
886 evaluation verified that the example implementation could perform the following functions:

- 887 ■ discover assets on the network
- 888 ■ discover and mitigate vulnerabilities in assets on the network
- 889 ■ protect data from modification prior to an attack
- 890 ■ provide a baseline for daily activity and asset integrity

891 [Section D.1](#) describes the format and components of the functional test cases. Each functional test case
892 is designed to assess the capability of the example implementation to perform the functions listed
893 above and detailed in [Section D.1](#).

894 **D.1 Data Integrity Functional Test Plan**

895 One aspect of our security evaluation involved assessing how well the reference design addresses the
896 security characteristics it was intended to support. The Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories were
897 used to provide structure to the security assessment by consulting the specific sections of each standard
898 that are cited in reference to that Subcategory. The cited sections provide validation points that the
899 example solution is expected to exhibit. Using the Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories as a basis for
900 organizing our analysis allowed us to systematically consider how well the reference design supports the
901 intended security characteristics.

902 This plan includes the test cases necessary to conduct the functional evaluation of the DI example
903 implementation, which is currently deployed in a lab at the National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence.
904 The implementation tested is described in [Section 4](#).

905 Each test case consists of multiple fields that collectively identify the goal of the test, the specifics
906 required to implement the test, and how to assess the results of the test. Table 6-1 describes each field
907 in the test case.

908 **Table 6-1 Test Case Fields**

Test Case Field	Description
Parent Requirement	Identifies the top-level requirement or the series of top-level requirements leading to the testable requirement
Testable requirement	Drives the definition of the remainder of the test case fields. Specifies the capability to be evaluated.

Test Case Field	Description
Description	Describes the objective of the test case
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Lists the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication (SP) 800-53 Rev. 4 controls addressed by the test case
Preconditions	The starting state of the test case. Preconditions indicate various starting state items, such as a specific capability configuration required or specific protocol and content.
Procedure	The step-by-step actions required to implement the test case. A procedure may consist of a single sequence of steps or multiple sequences of steps (with delineation) to indicate variations in the test procedure.
Expected results	The expected results for each variation in the test procedure
Actual results	The observed results
Overall result	The overall result of the test as pass/fail. In some test cases, determination of the overall result may be more involved, such as determining pass/fail based on a percentage of errors identified.

909 **D.2 Data Integrity Use Case Requirements**

910 Table 6-2 identifies the DI functional requirements addressed in the test plan and associated test cases.

911 **Table 6-2 Capability Requirements**

Capability Requirement (CR) ID	Parent Requirement	Sub requirement 1	Test Case
CR 1	The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against malware that encrypts files and displays notice demanding payment.		
CR 1.a		Vulnerability in Active Directory server is identified.	Data Integrity IP-1
CR 1.b		User is blocked from visiting malicious site.	Data Integrity IP-1

Capability Requirement (CR) ID	Parent Requirement	Sub requirement 1	Test Case
CR 1.c		Downloads from site are blocked.	Data Integrity IP-1
CR 1.d		Vulnerability is patched.	Data Integrity IP-1
CR 1.e		Ransomware cannot send information to home server.	Data Integrity IP-1
CR 1.f		Backups are taken.	Data Integrity IP-1
CR 1.g		File integrity information is baselined.	Data Integrity IP-1
CR 2	The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against malware inserted via Universal Serial Bus (USB) that modifies and deletes user data.		Data Integrity IP-2
CR 2.a		Backups are taken.	Data Integrity IP-2
CR 2.b		File integrity information is baselined.	Data Integrity IP-2
CR 3	The DI example shall identify and protect virtual machines against deletion.		Data Integrity IP-3
CR 3.a		Backups of virtual machines are taken.	Data Integrity IP-3
CR 4	The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against malware received via phishing email.		Data Integrity IP-4

Capability Requirement (CR) ID	Parent Requirement	Sub requirement 1	Test Case
CR 4.a		Downloads from the spreadsheet are blocked.	Data Integrity IP-4
CR 4.b		Backups of configurations are taken.	Data Integrity IP-4
CR 4.c		Configuration integrity information is baselined.	Data Integrity IP-4
CR 5	The DI example implementation shall identify and protect the database against changes made through a web server vulnerability in custom code.		Data Integrity IP-5
CR 5.a		Vulnerability is identified.	Data Integrity IP-5
CR 5.b		Vulnerability is resolved.	Data Integrity IP-5
CR 5.c		Backups of database are taken.	Data Integrity IP-5
CR 5.d		Database integrity information is baselined.	Data Integrity IP-5
CR 6	The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against targeted modification by malicious insiders with elevated privileges.		Data Integrity IP-6
CR 6.a		Backups are taken.	Data Integrity IP-6
CR 6.b		File integrity information is baselined.	Data Integrity IP-6

Capability Requirement (CR) ID	Parent Requirement	Sub requirement 1	Test Case
CR 6.c		Backups are encrypted.	Data Integrity IP-6
CR 6.d		Backups are stored securely.	Data Integrity IP-6
CR 7	The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against an intrusion via compromised update server.		Data Integrity IP-7
CR 7.a		Downloads from site are temporarily blocked.	Data Integrity IP-7
CR 7.b		Backups are taken.	Data Integrity IP-7
CR 7.c		Program integrity information is baselined.	Data Integrity IP-7
CR 7.d		File integrity information is baselined.	Data Integrity IP-7
CR 8	The DI example implementation shall identify new and unmaintained assets on the network.		Data Integrity IP-8
CR 8.a		Machines that are new to the network are identified.	Data Integrity IP-8
CR 8.b		Machines that are not up-to-date are identified.	Data Integrity IP-8

912 **D.3 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-1**913 **Table 6-3 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-1**

Parent requirement	(CR 1) The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against malware that encrypts files and displays notice demanding payment.
Testable requirement	(CR 1.a) Vulnerability identification, (CR 1.b, 1.c, 1.e) Blacklisting, (CR 1.d) Maintenance, (CR 1.f) Backups, (CR 1.g) Integrity Baselining
Description	Show that the DI solution can identify and resolve vulnerabilities and protect against ransomware.
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	ID.AM-1, ID.AM-2, ID.RA-1, ID.RA-2, ID.RA-6, DE.CM-8, PR.IP-12, RS.MI-3, PR.IP-4, PR.DS-1, PR.DS-6, PR.PT-1, PR.MA-2
Preconditions	User navigates to a malicious website and clicks on an ad for a virus cleaner. The virus cleaner is actually ransomware, which propagates across the domain and encrypts user files.
Procedure	<p>The Blacklisting capability is used to prevent access to and downloads from known malicious sites.</p> <p>The Inventory capability is used to identify organizational assets and devices.</p> <p>The Network Protection capability is used to prevent the propagation of ransomware across the enterprise.</p> <p>The Vulnerability Management capability is used to identify vulnerabilities that allow malware to propagate.</p> <p>The Integrity Monitoring and Logging collect integrity information and baseline the file system.</p> <p>The Backups capability is used to take backups of the file system.</p>
Expected Results (pass)	<p>The vulnerability that allows the ransomware to propagate is identified (CR 1.a).</p> <p>The user cannot access the site when it is blocked (CR 1.b).</p>

	<p>The user cannot download the ransomware from the site when it is blocked (CR 1.c).</p> <p>The build can identify (and possibly execute) a fix for the vulnerability. When the fix is made, the ransomware is unable to propagate (CR 1.d).</p> <p>The ransomware is unable to communicate with its home server when the site is blocked (CR 1.e).</p> <p>The build can take backups of file systems (CR 1.f).</p> <p>The build can take and log integrity baselines of file systems (CR 1.g).</p>
Actual Results	<p>Cisco WSA (Blacklisting) stops the user from accessing the site when it is blocked.</p> <p>Cisco ISE (Inventory) is used to identify devices on the network.</p> <p>Symantec DLP (Inventory) is used to identify organizational data assets on monitored machines.</p> <p>CryptoniteNXT (Network Protection) prevents propagation of ransomware through a white list of allowed communications in the enterprise.</p> <p>Tripwire IP360 (Vulnerability Management) detects vulnerabilities in Active Directory that allow ransomware to propagate.</p> <p>Tripwire Enterprise (Integrity Monitoring) and ArcSight ESM (Logging) baseline critical data assets across the enterprise.</p> <p>Duplicati and FileZilla (Backups) create backups of organizational data as a contingency, should ransomware be able to affect any systems.</p>
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements for this use case are met.

914 **D.4 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-2**915 **Table 6-4 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-2**

Parent requirement	(CR 2) The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against malware inserted via USB that modifies and deletes user data.
--------------------	--

Testable requirement	(CR 2.a) Backups, (CR 2.b) Integrity Baselining
Description	Show that the DI solution can preemptively protect against destructive malware.
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	PR.IP-4, PR.DS-1, PR.DS-6, PR.PT-1
Preconditions	A user inserts an unidentified USB drive into their computer. They click on a file on the drive, which immediately destroys any files on their machine.
Procedure	<p>Backups schedules and creates backups of the user's documents.</p> <p>The Integrity Monitoring capability is used to take integrity baselines of the file system.</p> <p>Logging collects logs and baselines system activity.</p>
Expected Results (pass)	<p>The build can take backups of file systems (CR 2.a).</p> <p>The build can take and log integrity baselines of file systems (CR 2.b).</p>
Actual Results	<p>Duplicati and FileZilla (Backups) are used to take and store backups of the user's documents.</p> <p>Tripwire Enterprise (Integrity Monitoring) is used to take an integrity baseline of the user's file system prior to the malicious USB drive being inserted into the computer.</p> <p>ArcSight ESM (Logging) takes a baseline of system activity prior to the USB drive being inserted into the computer.</p>
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements for this use case are met.

916 **D.5 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-3**

917 **Table 6-5 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-3**

Parent requirement	(CR 3) The DI example implementation shall identify and protect virtual machines against deletion.
Testable requirement	(CR 3.a) Backups
Description	Show that the DI solution can preemptively protect against data integrity events that involve virtual machines (VMs).

Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	PR.IP-4, PR.DS-1
Preconditions	A routine maintenance script contains an error that accidentally deletes a VM.
Procedure	The Backups capability is used to schedule and create backups of a VM.
Expected Results (pass)	The build can take backups of VMs (CR 3.a).
Actual Results	Duplicati and FileZilla (Backups) take and store backups of VMs.
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements for this use case are met.

918 **D.6 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-4**

919 **Table 6-6 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-4**

Parent requirement	(CR 4) The DI example implementation shall identify and protect against malware received via phishing email.
Testable requirement	(CR 4.a, CR 4.b) Blacklisting, (CR 4.c) Backups, (CR 4.d) Integrity Baselingining
Description	Show that the DI solution can identify phishing emails and protect against configuration changes made by malicious attachments.
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	ID.AM-2, ID.AM-3, ID.RA-1, ID.RA-2, ID.RA-5, DE.CM-8, PR.IP-4, PR.DS-1, PR.PT-1
Preconditions	The user receives a phishing email with a malicious attached spreadsheet. The spreadsheet is downloaded and opened, causing account changes in Active Directory.
Procedure	<p>The Integrity Monitoring capability is used to baseline Active Directory activity.</p> <p>This information is forwarded to the Logging capability, along with other available Active Directory information.</p> <p>The Backups capability is used to take backups of the Active Directory configuration.</p>

	The malicious web server is added to the Blacklisting capability to prevent downloads.
Expected Results (pass)	<p>The spreadsheet cannot download files (CR 4.a).</p> <p>The build can take backups of configurations (CR 4.c).</p> <p>The build can take and log integrity baselines of configurations (CR 4.d).</p>
Actual Results	<p>Semperis DSP (Integrity Monitoring) successfully baselines Active Directory activity.</p> <p>ArcSight ESM (Logging) successfully logs activity from Active Directory, including log-ons and changes.</p> <p>When the external web server is added to the blacklist, Cisco WSA (Blacklisting) prevents the Excel sheet from downloading malicious files.</p> <p>Semperis ADFR (backups) is used to successfully take backups of the Active Directory configuration.</p>
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements for this use case are met.

920 D.7 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-5

921 Table 6-7 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-5

Parent requirement	(CR 5) The DI example implementation shall identify and protect the database against changes made through a web server vulnerability in custom code.
Testable requirement	(CR 5.c) Backups, (CR 5.d) Integrity Baselinining
Description	Show that the DI solution can protect the database against a vulnerability in the custom code of a web server.
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	PR.IP-4, PR.DS-1, PR.PT-1, PR.DS-6
Preconditions	A vulnerability in the source code of an intranet webpage is discovered by a malicious insider. The insider exploits this vulnerability to delete significant portions of the database.
Procedure	The Backups capability is used to take backups of the database.

	The Integrity Monitoring and Logging capabilities take baselines of the database, for comparison post-modification.
Expected Results (pass)	<p>The build can take backups of the database (CR 5.c).</p> <p>The build can take and log integrity baselines of the database (CR 5.d).</p>
Actual Results	<p>Duplicati and FileZilla (Backups) successfully backs up the database.</p> <p>Tripwire Enterprise (Integrity Monitoring) successfully detects changes in the database.</p> <p>ArcSight ESM (Logging) successfully logs changes to the database.</p>
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements for this use case are met.

922 D.8 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-6

923 Table 6-8 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-6

Parent requirement	(CR 6) The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against targeted modification by malicious insiders with elevated privileges.
Testable requirement	(CR 6.a) Backups, (CR 6.b) Integrity Baseling, (CR 6.c) Encrypted backups, (CR 6.d) Secure Storage
Description	Show that the DI solution can protect assets and backups against targeted modification by malicious insiders.
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	PR.IP-4, PR.DS-1, PR.PT-1, PR.DS-6
Preconditions	A malicious insider attempts to modify targeted information in both the enterprise systems and the backup systems, using elevated credentials obtained extraneously.
Procedure	<p>The Inventory capability is used to identify data assets.</p> <p>The Backups capability provides encrypted backups.</p> <p>Secure Storage prevents modification or deletion of backups.</p> <p>Integrity Monitoring and Logging collect integrity information and baseline the file system.</p>

Expected Results (pass)	<p>The build can take backups of the file system (CR 6.a).</p> <p>The build can take and log integrity baselines of the file system (CR 6.b).</p> <p>Backups are encrypted (CR 6.c).</p> <p>Backups are stored securely and cannot be modified or deleted (CR 6.d).</p>
Actual Results	<p>Symantec DLP (Inventory) identifies critical data assets across the enterprise.</p> <p>Duplicati and FileZilla (Backups) provide encrypted backups of the file system.</p> <p>GreenTec WORMdisks (Secure Storage) provide write-protection for backups, preventing them from being modified or deleted.</p> <p>Tripwire Enterprise (Integrity Monitoring) and ArcSight ESM (Logging) baseline critical data assets across the enterprise.</p>
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements of this use case are met.

924 D.9 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-7

925 Table 6-9 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-7

Parent requirement	(CR 7) The DI example implementation shall identify and protect assets against an intrusion via compromised update server.
Testable requirement	(CR 7.a) Blacklisting, (CR 7.b) Backups, (CR 7.c, 7.d) Integrity Baselingining
Description	Show that the DI solution can protect against compromised update server as well as intrusion made possible by vulnerable programs.
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	ID.RA-1, ID.RA-2, ID.RA-5, DE.CM-8, PR.IP-12, RS.MI-3, PR.IP-4, PR.DS-1, PR.PT-1, PR.DS-6, PR.MA-2
Preconditions	An external update server has been compromised, and a user workstation attempts to update from this server.
Procedure	<p>Integrity Monitoring capability is used to take baselines of the integrity of both the programs and the file systems.</p> <p>The Backups capability is used to back up the file system.</p>

	The Blacklisting capability is used to prevent communication between the update server and the machine.
Expected Results (pass)	<p>Machines cannot update from this site while it is blacklisted (CR 7.a).</p> <p>The build can take backups of file systems (CR 7.b).</p> <p>The build can take integrity baselines of programs (CR 7.c).</p> <p>The build can take integrity baselines of file systems (CR 7.d).</p>
Actual Results	<p>Tripwire Enterprise (Integrity Monitoring) successfully takes an integrity baseline of both programs and files.</p> <p>Duplicati and FileZilla (Backups) successfully takes backups of the file system.</p> <p>Cisco WSA (Blacklisting) successfully prevents communication between the update server and workstations.</p>
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements for this use case are met.

926 D.10 Test Case: Data Integrity IP-8

927 Table 6-10 Test Case ID: Data Integrity IP-8

Parent requirement	(CR 8) The DI example implementation shall identify new and unmaintained assets on the network.
Testable requirement	(CR 8.a) Asset Identification, (CR 8.b) Vulnerability Identification
Description	Show that the DI solution can identify machines new to the network, as well as unpatched machines.
Associated Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	ID.AM-1, ID.AM-2, ID.RA-1, ID.RA-2, ID.RA-5, DE.CM-8
Preconditions	A new machine with several critical patches missing is connected to the network for the first time.
Procedure	The Inventory capability is used to identify various aspects about the machine.

	<p>The Policy Enforcement identifies the existence of security solutions on the machine and grants/denies access to the network, based on their presence.</p> <p>The Vulnerability Management capability is used to scan for vulnerabilities on the new machine.</p>
Expected Results (pass)	<p>New machine is identified on the network (CR 8.a).</p> <p>New machine is identified as unmaintained, and required fixes are identified (CR 8.b).</p>
Actual Results	<p>Cisco ISE (Inventory) successfully logs information about new connections, including the user, date, device, and network information.</p> <p>Cisco ISE (Policy Enforcement) successfully prevents the new machine without 50 security software from connecting to the network.</p> <p>Tripwire IP360 (Vulnerability Management) successfully identifies vulnerabilities on the new machine.</p>
Overall Result	Pass. All requirements for this use case are met.

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-25C

Data Integrity

Identifying and Protecting Assets Against Ransomware
and Other Destructive Events

Volume C:
How-To Guides

Jennifer Cawthra
National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIST

Michael Ekstrom
Lauren Lusty
Julian Sexton
John Sweetnam
The MITRE Corporation
McLean, Virginia

January 2020

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/data-integrity/identify-protect>.

1 DISCLAIMER

2 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company
3 logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an
4 experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special sta-
5 tus or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it in-
6 tended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available
7 for the purpose.

8 National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-25C, Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol.
9 Spec. Publ. 1800-25C, 487 pages, (January 2020), CODEN: NSPUE2

10 FEEDBACK

11 You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your
12 own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

13 Comments on this publication may be submitted to: ds-nccoe@nist.gov.

14 Public comment period: January 27, 2020 through February 25, 2020

15 All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act.

22 **NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE**

23 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards
24 and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and
25 academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This
26 public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific
27 industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under
28 Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from
29 Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in information technology security—the
30 NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity
31 solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in
32 the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cybersecurity Framework
33 and details the steps needed for another entity to re-create the example solution. The NCCoE was
34 established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County,
35 Maryland.

36 To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/>. To learn more about NIST, visit
37 <https://www.nist.gov/>.

38 **NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES**

39 NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication 1800 series) target specific cybersecurity
40 challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the
41 adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information
42 security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant
43 standards and best practices, and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other
44 information they need to implement a similar approach.

45 The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that
46 businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe
47 regulations or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

48 **ABSTRACT**

49 Ransomware, destructive malware, insider threats, and even honest user mistakes present ongoing
50 threats to organizations. Organizations' data, such as database records, system files, configurations,
51 user files, applications, and customer data, are all potential targets of data corruption, modification, and
52 destruction. Formulating a defense against these threats requires two things: a thorough knowledge of
53 the assets within the enterprise, and the protection of these assets against the threat of data corruption
54 and destruction. The NCCoE, in collaboration with members of the business community and vendors of
55 cybersecurity solutions, has built an example solution to address these data integrity challenges.

56 Multiple systems need to work together to identify and protect an organization's assets against the
57 threat of corruption, modification, and destruction. This project explores methods to effectively identify
58 assets (devices, data, and applications) that may become targets of data integrity attacks, as well as the
59 vulnerabilities in the organization's system that facilitate these attacks. It also explores methods to
60 protect these assets against data integrity attacks using backups, secure storage, integrity checking
61 mechanisms, audit logs, vulnerability management, maintenance, and other potential solutions

62 **KEYWORDS**

63 *attack vector; asset awareness; data integrity; data protection; malicious actor; malware; ransomware.*

64 **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

65 We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Kyle Black	Bay Dynamics
Sunjeet Randhawa	Broadcom Inc.
Peter Romness	Cisco Systems
Matthew Hyatt	Cisco Systems
Hans Ismirnioglou	Cryptonite
Sapna George	Cryptonite
Justin Yackoski	Cryptonite
Steve Petruzzo	GreenTec USA
Steve Roberts	Micro Focus
Timothy McBride	NIST

Name	Organization
Christopher Lowde	Semperis
Thomas Leduc	Semperis
Darren Mar-Elia	Semperis
Kirk Lashbrook	Semperis
Mickey Bresman	Semperis
Jim Wachhaus	Tripwire
Humphrey Christian	Symantec Corporation
Jon Christmas	Symantec Corporation
Kenneth Durbin	Symantec Corporation
Matthew Giblin	Symantec Corporation
Nancy Correll	The MITRE Corporation
Chelsea Deane	The MITRE Corporation
Sallie Edwards	The MITRE Corporation
Milissa McGinnis	The MITRE Corporation
Karri Meldorf	The MITRE Corporation
Denise Schiavone	The MITRE Corporation

Name	Organization
Anne Townsend	The MITRE Corporation

66 The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in
 67 response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product
 68 components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with
 69 NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
Symantec Corporation	Symantec Data Loss Prevention v15.1
Cisco Systems	Cisco ISE v2.4, Cisco Web Security Appliance v10.1
GreenTec USA	GreenTec WORMdisk v151228
Tripwire	Tripwire Log Center v7.3.1, Tripwire Enterprise v8.7, Tripwire IP360 v9.0.1
Micro Focus	Micro Focus ArcSight Enterprise Security Manager v7.0 Patch 2
Cryptonite	CryptoniteNXT v2.9.1
Semperis	Semperis Active Directory Forest Recovery v2.5, Semperis Directory Services Protector v2.7

70	Contents	
71	1 Introduction	1
72	1.1 How to Use this Guide.....	1
73	1.2 Build Overview	2
74	Typographic Conventions.....	3
75	2 Product Installation Guides	3
76	2.1 Active Directory and Domain Name System (DNS Server)	4
77	2.1.1 Installing Features.....	4
78	2.1.2 Creating a Certificate Authority.....	19
79	2.1.3 Configure Account to Add Computers to Domain.....	34
80	2.1.4 Adding Machines to the Domain	41
81	2.1.5 Configure Active Directory to Audit Account Activity	46
82	2.1.6 Configure Reverse Lookup Zones	48
83	2.2 Microsoft Exchange Server.....	54
84	2.2.1 Install Microsoft Exchange.....	54
85	2.3 Windows Server Hyper-V Role	65
86	2.3.1 Production Installation	65
87	2.4 MS SQL Server	73
88	2.4.1 Install and Configure MS SQL.....	73
89	2.4.2 Open Port on Firewall.....	83
90	2.4.3 Add a New Login to the Database	88
91	2.5 Microsoft IIS Server	90
92	2.5.1 Install IIS.....	90
93	2.5.2 IIS Configuration	98
94	2.6 GreenTec WORMdisks.....	102
95	2.6.1 Format GreenTec WORMdisks	103
96	2.6.2 Obtain Status Information About GreenTec WORMdisks	103
97	2.6.3 Map GreenTec WORMdisks to Drive Letters.....	104
98	2.6.4 Activate Write Protection in GreenTec WORMdisks	105

99	2.7 CryptoniteNXT	109
100	2.7.1 Configure Cryptonite NXT	109
101	2.7.1.1 Verify a New Device.....	109
102	2.7.1.2 Create a New User.....	112
103	2.7.1.3 Create a New Policy.....	115
104	2.7.2 Integrate CryptoniteNXT with Active Directory.....	122
105	2.7.2.1 Generate a Keytab File	122
106	2.7.2.2 Import Keytab File to ACC	129
107	2.8 Backups.....	136
108	2.8.1 FileZilla FTPS Server Setup	136
109	2.8.2 FileZilla Configuration	139
110	2.8.3 Add a User to FileZilla	144
111	2.8.4 Duplicati Client Installation (Windows)	146
112	2.8.5 Duplicati Client Installation (Ubuntu)	149
113	2.8.6 Configure Duplicati	150
114	2.9 Semperis Active Directory Forest Recovery	155
115	2.9.1 Install Semperis ADFR	155
116	2.9.2 Create a Backup Schedule for the Domain Controller.....	164
117	2.9.3 Recover the Active Directory Forest from a Backup.....	167
118	2.10 Semperis Directory Services Protector	170
119	2.10.1 Configure Active Directory for Semperis DSP	170
120	2.10.2 Install Semperis DSP	183
121	2.11 Micro Focus ArcSight Enterprise Security Manager (ESM)	195
122	2.11.1 Install the ArcSight Console	196
123	2.11.2 Install Individual ArcSight Windows Connectors	209
124	2.11.3 Install Individual ArcSight Ubuntu Connectors.....	227
125	2.11.4 Install a Connector Server for ESM on Windows 2012 R2.....	240
126	2.11.5 Install Preconfigured Filters for ArcSight	253

127	2.11.5.1 Install Activate Base.....	253
128	2.11.5.2 Install Packages.....	255
129	2.11.6 Apply Filters to a Channel.....	256
130	2.12 Tripwire Enterprise.....	257
131	2.12.1 Install Tripwire Enterprise.....	257
132	2.12.2 Install the Axon Bridge.....	270
133	2.12.3 Install the Axon Agent (Windows)	270
134	2.12.4 Install the Axon Agent (Linux).....	271
135	2.12.5 Configure Tripwire Enterprise.....	272
136	2.12.5.1 Terminology.....	272
137	2.12.5.2 Tags.....	273
138	2.12.5.3 Rules	275
139	2.12.5.4 Tasks	279
140	2.13 Tripwire Log Center	283
141	2.13.1 Install Tripwire Log Center Manager	283
142	2.13.2 Configure Tripwire Log Center Manager	283
143	2.13.3 Install Tripwire Log Center Console	289
144	2.14 Cisco Web Security Appliance (WSA)	289
145	2.14.1 Network Configuration	289
146	2.14.2 System Setup	290
147	2.14.3 Using WSA to Proxy Traffic	298
148	2.14.3.1 Creating a PAC File.....	299
149	2.14.3.2 Setting Up WPAD (Web Proxy Auto Discovery).....	301
150	2.14.3.3 Configure Group Policy to Use Explicit Proxy	304
151	2.14.4 Blacklisting	309
152	2.15 Symantec Data Loss Prevention	316
153	2.15.1 Install Oracle 12c Enterprise	316
154	2.15.2 Create an Oracle Database for Symantec DLP.....	323
155	2.15.3 Configuring the Oracle Listener	324

156	2.15.4 Install Symantec DLP.....	336
157	2.15.5 Configure Symantec DLP.....	346
158	2.16 Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).....	347
159	2.16.1 Initial Setup	347
160	2.16.2 Inventory: Configure SNMP on Routers/Network Devices.....	347
161	2.16.3 Inventory: Configure Device Detection	347
162	2.16.4 Policy Enforcement: Configure Active Directory Integration	351
163	2.16.5 Policy Enforcement: Enable Passive Identity with AD	354
164	2.16.6 Policy Enforcement: Developing Policy Conditions	359
165	2.16.7 Policy Enforcement: Developing Policy Results.....	361
166	2.16.8 Policy Enforcement: Enforcing a Requirement in Policy	362
167	2.16.9 Policy Enforcement: Configuring a Web Portal	363
168	2.16.10 Configuring RADIUS with Your Network Device	364
169	2.16.11 Configuring an Authentication Policy	365
170	2.16.12 Configuring an Authorization Policy	367
171	2.17 Tripwire IP360	368
172	2.17.1 Installation	368
173	2.17.2 Web Portal.....	373
174	2.17.3 Scanning.....	374
175	2.18 Integration: Tripwire Log Center and Tripwire Enterprise.....	377
176	2.19 Integration: Tripwire Log Center (TLC) and Tripwire IP360	384
177	2.19.1 Configure IP360 and Log Center	384
178	2.19.2 Collect Tripwire IP360 Operational Logs	387
179	2.19.3 Configure Tripwire IP360 Scan Results Forwarding.....	399
180	2.20 Integration: Tripwire Enterprise and Backups	412
181	2.20.1 Export Configuration from Tripwire Enterprise.....	413
182	2.20.2 Back Up the Tripwire Enterprise Configuration.....	413
183	2.21 Integration: Cisco ISE and CryptoniteNXT	413
184	2.21.1 Requirements for Integrating Cisco ISE and CryptoniteNXT.....	413
185	2.21.2 Configuring CryptoniteNXT for RADIUS	414
186	2.22 Integration: Backups and GreenTec.....	415

187	2.22.1 Locate Backups with FileZilla and Duplicati	415
188	2.22.2 Back Up to a GreenTec Disk.....	417
189	2.22.3 Configure Network-Accessible GreenTec Disk.....	418
190	2.22.4 Secure Storage for Semperis ADFR.....	420
191	2.23 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and FileZilla.....	421
192	2.23.1 Enable Logs in FileZilla	421
193	2.23.2 Install Micro Focus ArcSight.....	423
194	2.24 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Tripwire	438
195	2.24.1 Install Micro Focus ArcSight.....	438
196	2.25 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Cisco WSA.....	451
197	2.25.1 Configure Cisco WSA to Forward Logs.....	451
198	2.26 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Cisco ISE.....	454
199	2.26.1 Configure Cisco ISE to Forward Logs.....	454
200	2.26.2 Select Logs for Forwarding	457
201	2.27 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Symantec DLP	458
202	2.27.1 Install Micro Focus ArcSight.....	458
203	2.27.2 Configure Symantec DLP to Forward Logs.....	468
204	2.28 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and CryptoniteNXT	472
205	2.28.1 Configure CryptoniteNXT to Forward Logs to ArcSight	472
206	2.29 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Semperis DSP	473
207	2.29.1 Configure Semperis DSP to Forward Logs	473
208	2.30 Integrations: CryptoniteNXT	474
209	2.30.1 Active Directory and DNS.....	475
210	2.30.2 Microsoft Exchange	476
211	2.30.3 FileZilla	477
212	2.30.4 GreenTec.....	477
213	2.30.5 Tripwire Enterprise	478
214	2.30.6 ArcSight ESM.....	478
215	2.30.7 Cisco ISE	479
216	2.30.8 Semperis DSP	480

217	2.30.9 Symantec DLP	480
218	2.30.10 Cisco WSA	481
219	2.30.11 Tripwire IP360.....	482
220	2.30.12 Tripwire Log Center, Tripwire IP360, Tripwire Enterprise, and ArcSight ESM.....	483
221	2.30.13 FileZilla and ArcSight.....	484
222	2.30.14 Cisco ISE and ArcSight.....	484
223	2.30.15 Cisco WSA and ArcSight	485
224	2.30.16 Semperis DSP and ArcSight.....	485
225	2.30.17 Symantec DLP and ArcSight	486

226 1 Introduction

227 The following volumes of this guide show information technology (IT) professionals and security
228 engineers how we implemented this example solution. We cover all of the products employed in this
229 reference design. We do not re-create the product manufacturers' documentation, which is presumed
230 to be widely available. Rather, these volumes show how we incorporated the products together in our
231 environment.

232 *Note: These are not comprehensive tutorials. There are many possible service and security*
233 *configurations for these products that are out of scope for this reference design.*

234 1.1 How to Use this Guide

235 This National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a
236 standards-based reference design and provides users with the information they need to replicate the
237 data integrity identify-and protect-solution. This reference design is modular and can be deployed in
238 whole or in part.

239 This guide contains three volumes:

- 240 ■ NIST SP 1800-25A: *Executive Summary*
- 241 ■ NIST SP 1800-25B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics* – what we built and why
- 242 ■ NIST SP 1800-25C: *How-To Guides* – instructions for building the example solution (**you are**
243 **here**)

244 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

245 **Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers**, will be interested in the
246 *Executive Summary* (NIST SP 1800-25A), which describes the following topics:

- 247 ■ challenges that enterprises face in identifying assets and protecting them from data integrity
248 events
- 249 ■ example solution built at the NCCoE
- 250 ■ benefits of adopting the example solution

251 **Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess,
252 and mitigate risk will be interested in NIST SP 1800-25B, which describes what we did and why. The
253 following sections will be of particular interest:

- 254 ■ Section 3.4.1, Assessing Risk Posture, provides a description of the risk analysis we performed.
- 255 ■ Section 3.4.2, Security Control Map, maps the security characteristics of this example solution
- 256 to cybersecurity standards and best practices.
- 257 You might share the *Executive Summary*, NIST SP 1800-25A, with your leadership team members to help
- 258 them understand the importance of adopting standards-based data integrity solutions.
- 259 **IT professionals** who want to implement an approach like this will find the whole practice guide useful.
- 260 You can use this How-To portion of the guide, NIST SP 1800-25C, to replicate all or parts of the build
- 261 created in our lab. This How-To portion of the guide provides specific product installation, configuration,
- 262 and integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not recreate the product
- 263 manufacturers' documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we
- 264 incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.
- 265 This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the
- 266 enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide
- 267 does not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that
- 268 adheres to these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and
- 269 implementing parts of a data integrity identify-and-protect solution. Your organization's security experts
- 270 should identify the products that will best integrate with your existing tools and IT system
- 271 infrastructure. We hope that you will seek products that are congruent with applicable standards and
- 272 best practices. Section 3.5 of Volume B, Technologies, lists the products we used and maps them to the
- 273 cybersecurity controls provided by this reference solution.
- 274 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe "the" solution, but a possible solution. This is a
- 275 draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and
- 276 success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to ds-nccoe@nist.gov.

278 1.2 Build Overview

279 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) built a hybrid virtual-physical laboratory

280 environment to explore methods to effectively identify assets and protect them against a data

281 corruption event in various IT enterprise environments. The NCCoE also explored identifying

282 vulnerabilities in advance of an incident. The servers in the virtual environment were built to the

283 hardware specifications of their specific software components.

284 The NCCoE worked with members of the Data Integrity Community of Interest to develop a diverse but
 285 noncomprehensive set of use case scenarios against which to test the reference implementation. These
 286 are detailed in Volume B, Section 5.2. For a detailed description of our architecture, see Volume B,
 287 Section 4.

288 **Typographic Conventions**

289 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	file names and pathnames; references to documents that are not hyperlinks; new terms; and placeholders	For language use and style guidance, see the <i>NCCoE Style Guide</i> .
Bold	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose File > Edit .
Monospace	command-line input, on-screen computer output, sample code examples, and status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
Monospace Bold	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	service sshd start
blue text	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST's NCCoE are available at https://nccoe.nist.gov .

290 **2 Product Installation Guides**

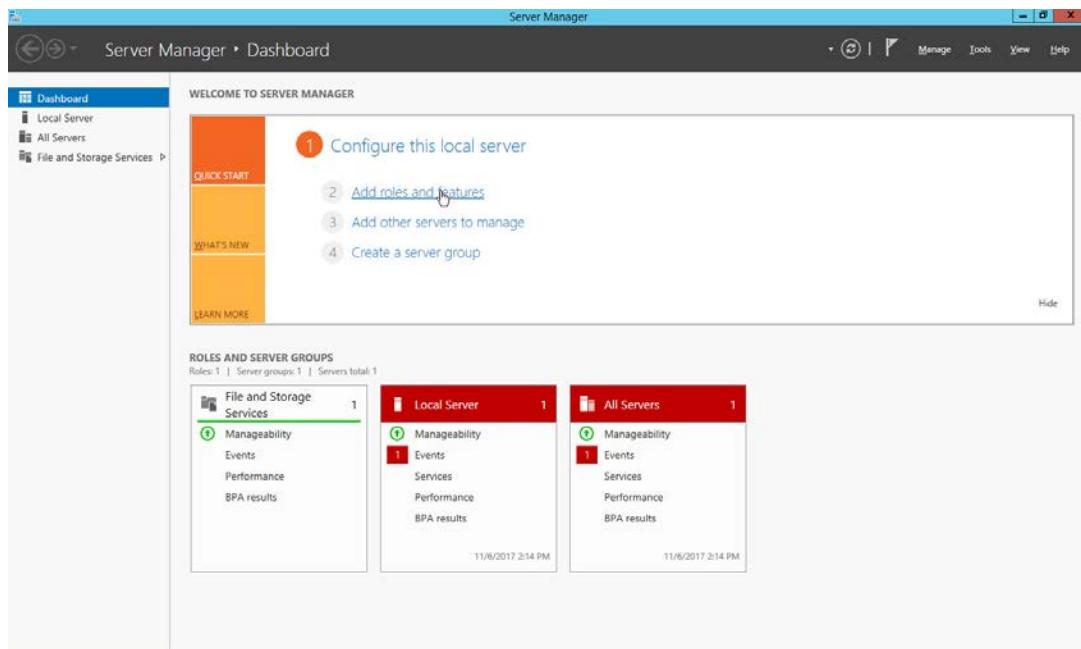
291 This section of the practice guide contains detailed instructions for installing and configuring all of the
 292 products used to build an instance of the example solution.

293 2.1 Active Directory and Domain Name System (DNS Server)

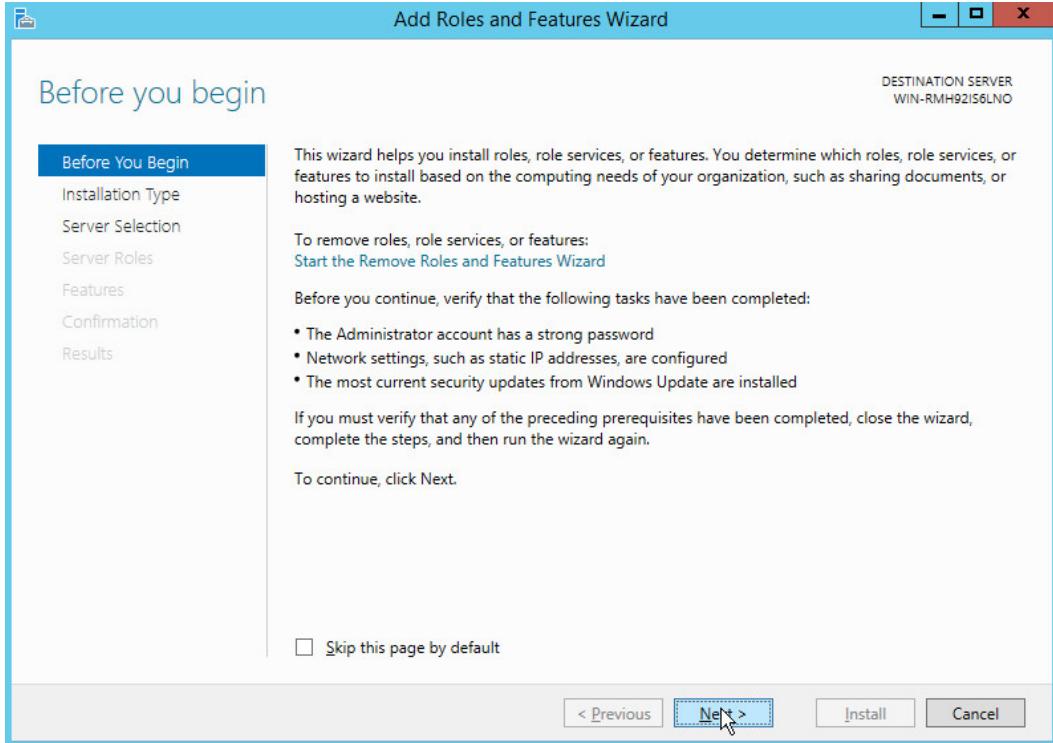
294 As part of our enterprise emulation, we included an Active Directory server that doubles as a DNS
295 server. This section covers the installation and configuration process used to set up Active Directory and
296 DNS on a Windows Server 2012 R2 machine.

297 2.1.1 Installing Features

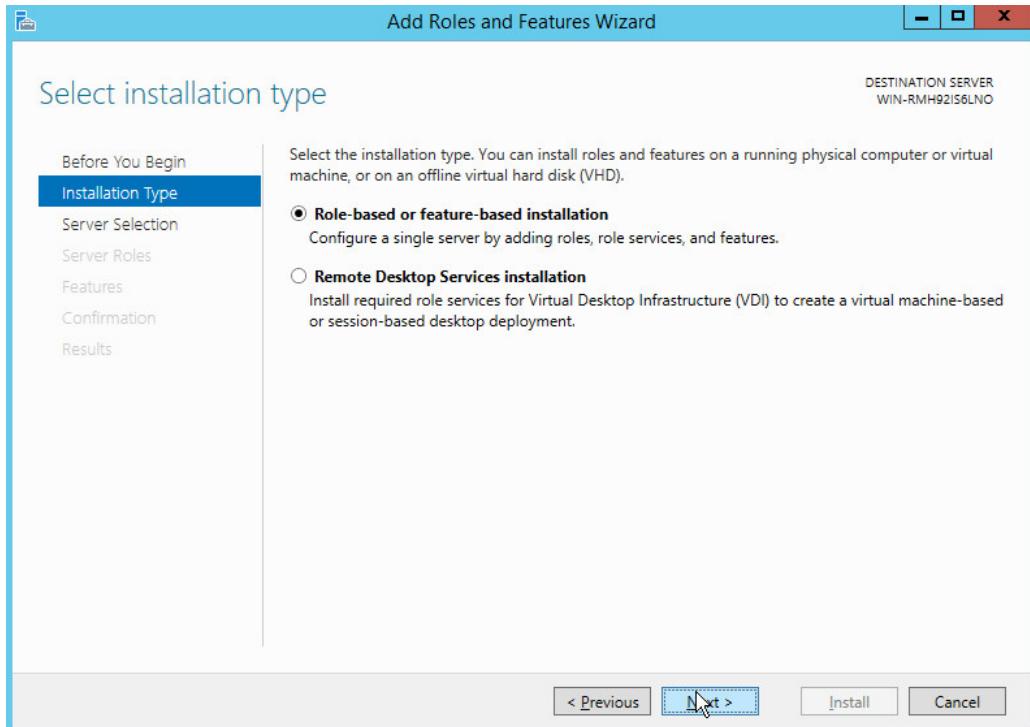
298 1. Open Server Manager.



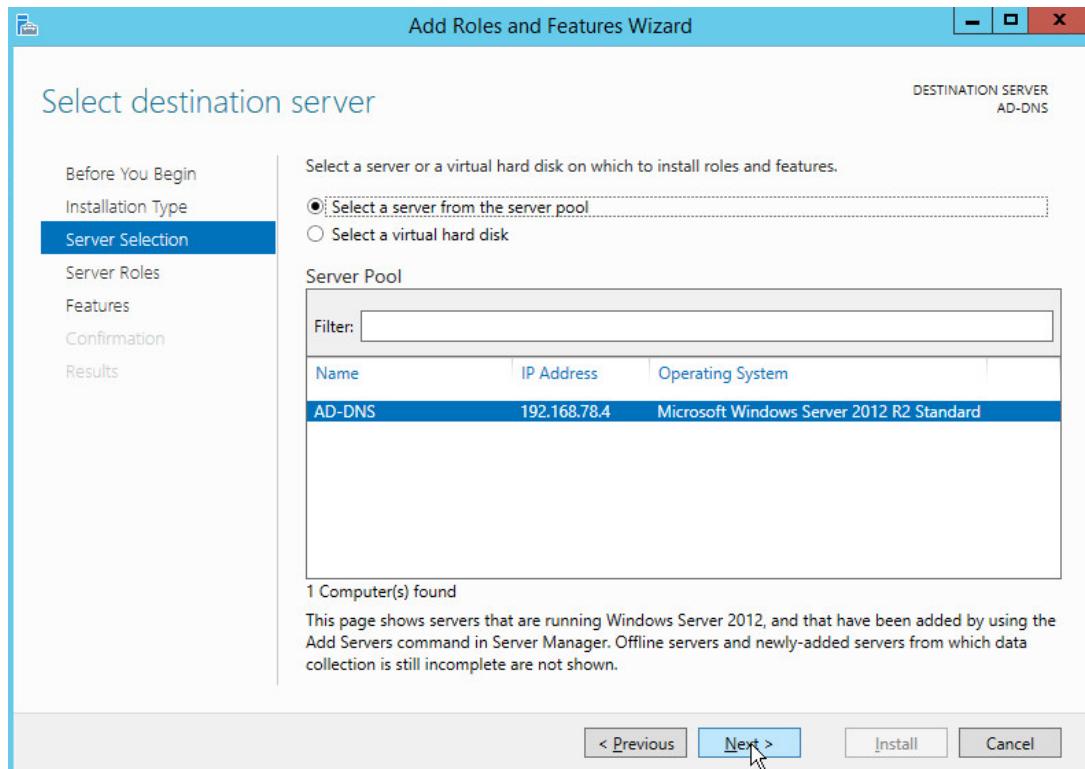
299 2. Click the link Add roles and features.



- 300 3. Click **Next**.
- 301 4. Select **Role-based or feature-based installation**.

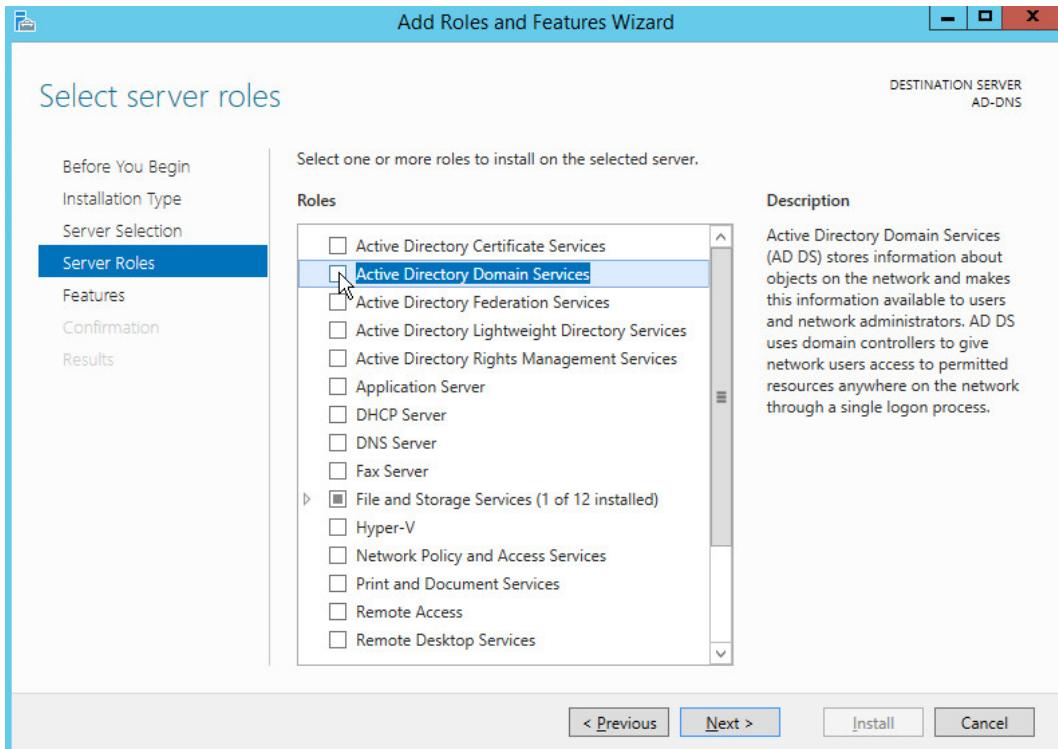


- 302 5. Click **Next**.
303 6. Select **Select a server from the server pool**.
304 7. Select the intended Active Directory server.

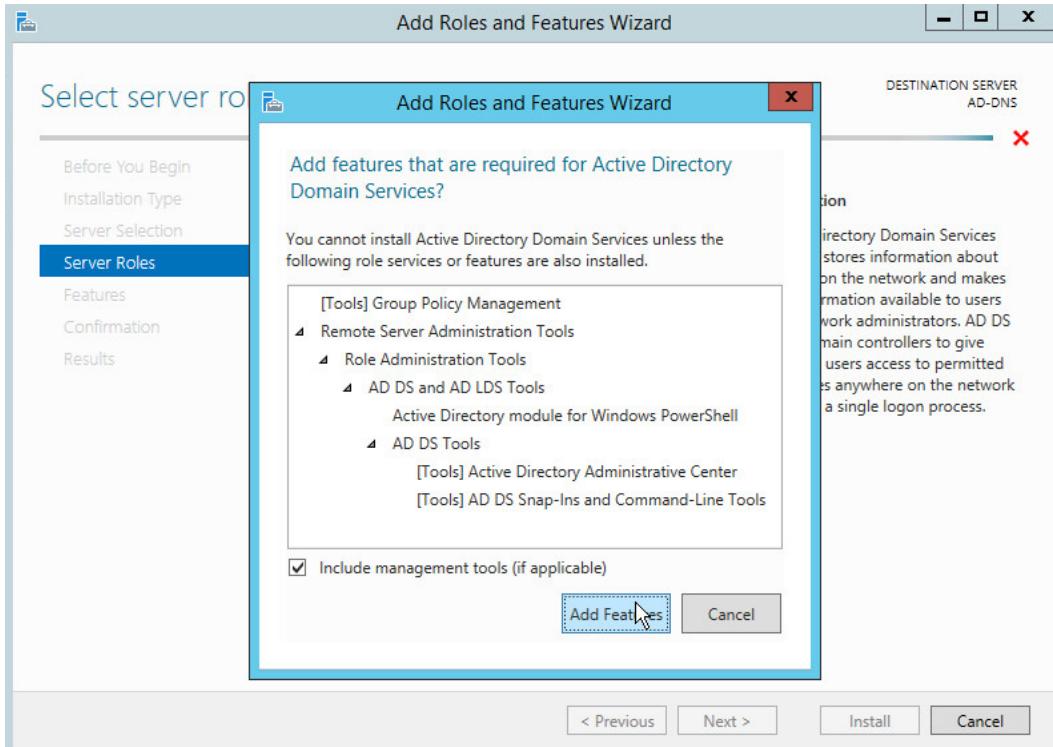


305

8. Click **Next**.

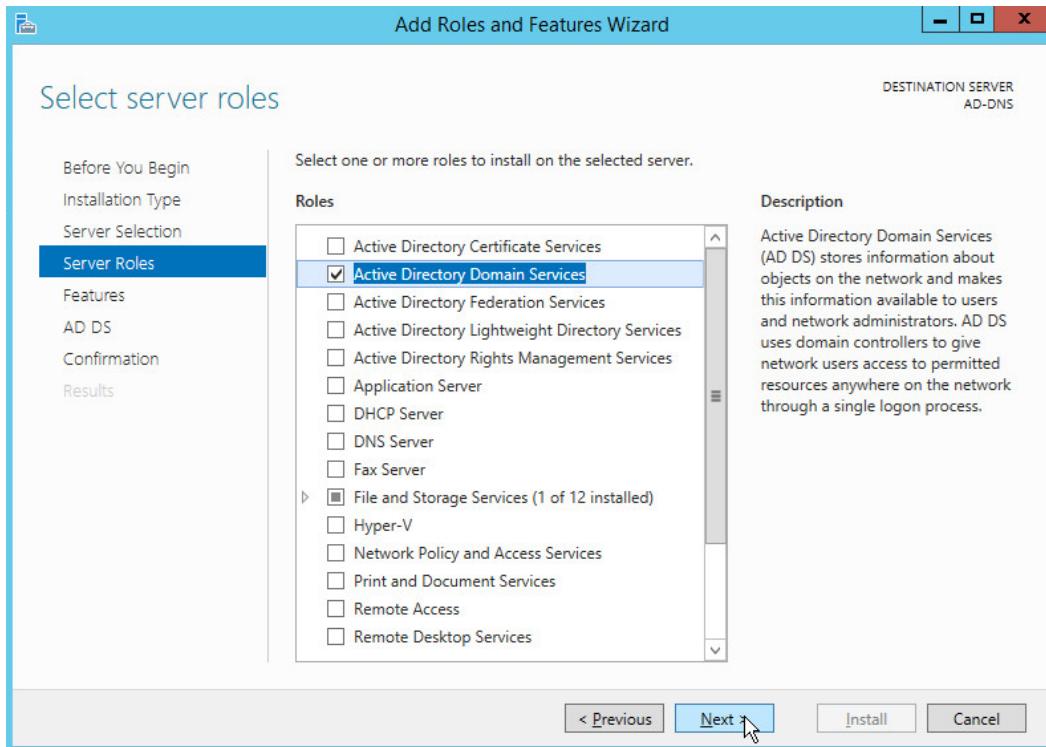


- 306 9. Check the box next to **Active Directory Domain Services**.



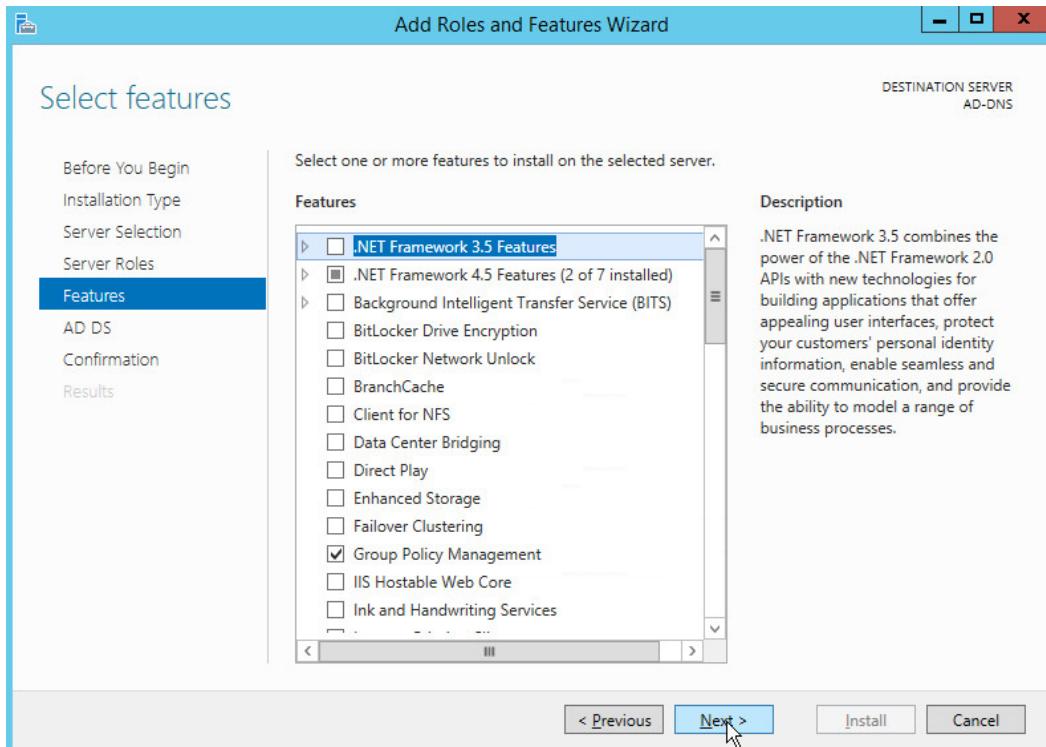
307

10. Click Add Features.



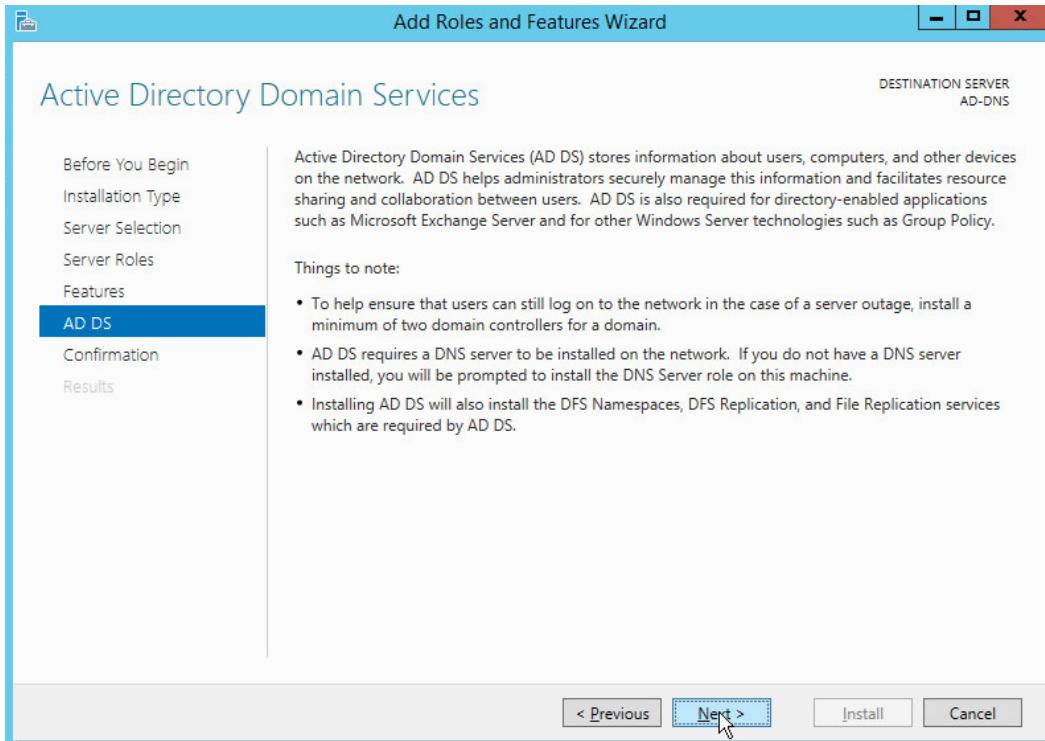
308

11. Click **Next**.



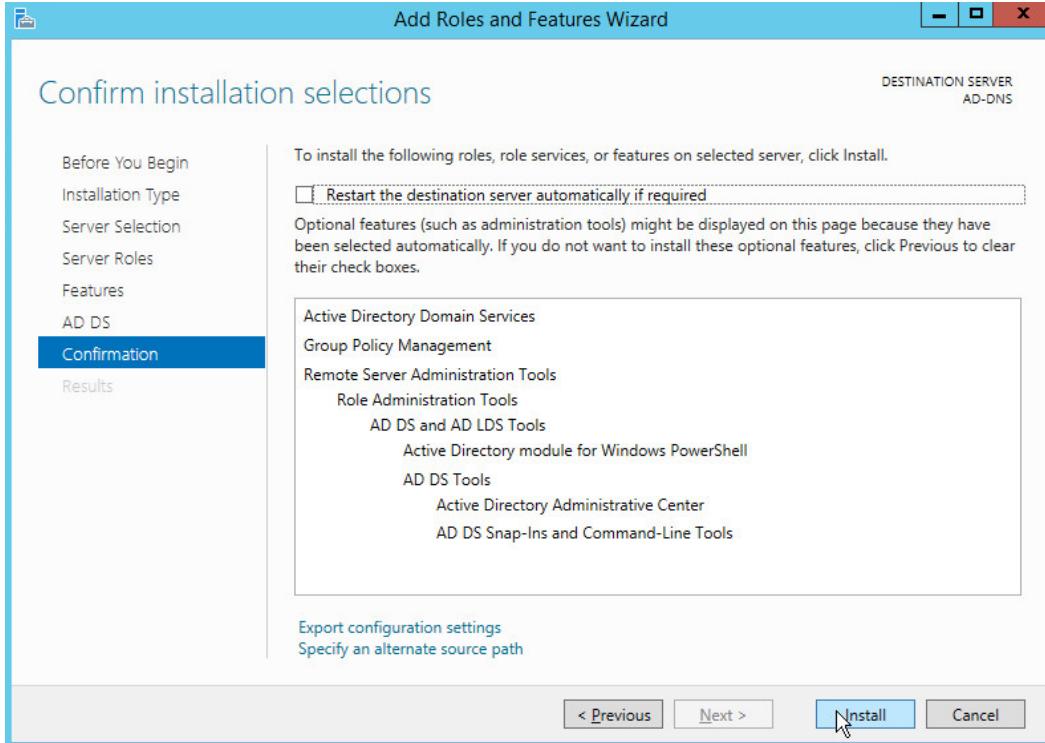
309

12. Click **Next**.

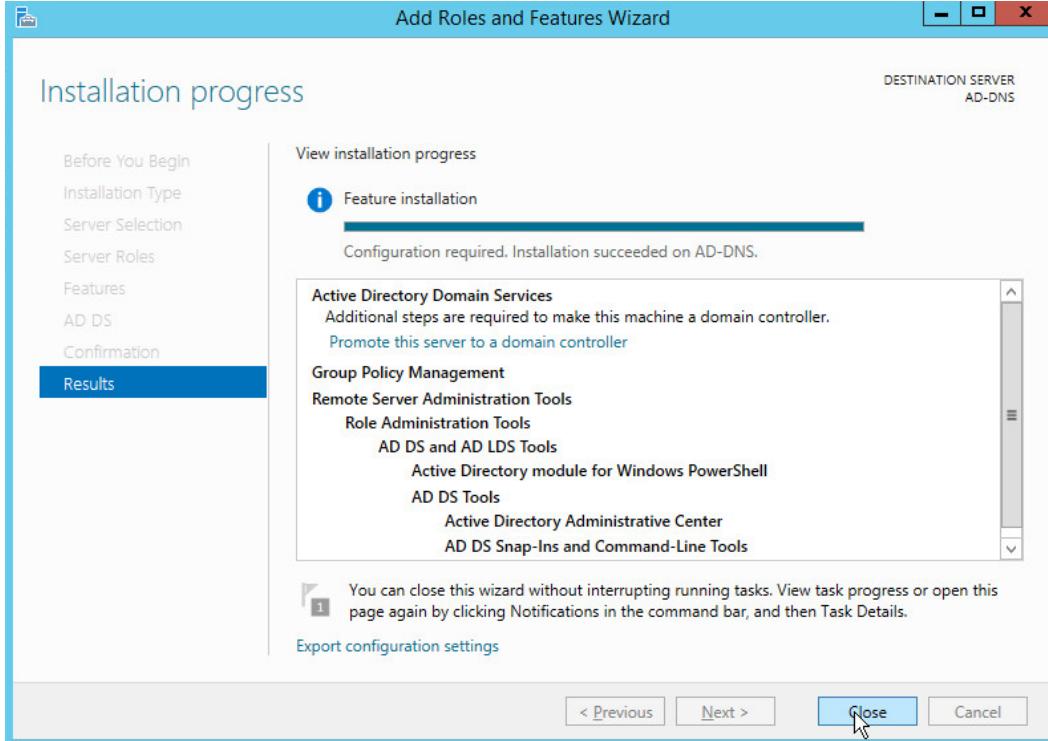


310

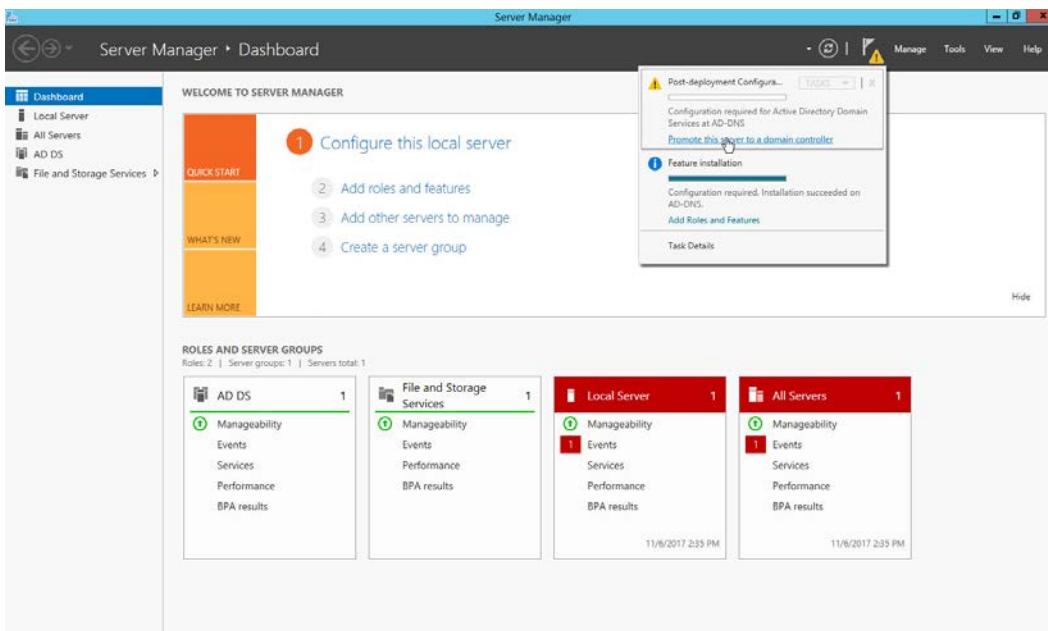
13. Click **Next**.



- 311 14. Click **Install**.
312 15. Wait for the installation to complete.



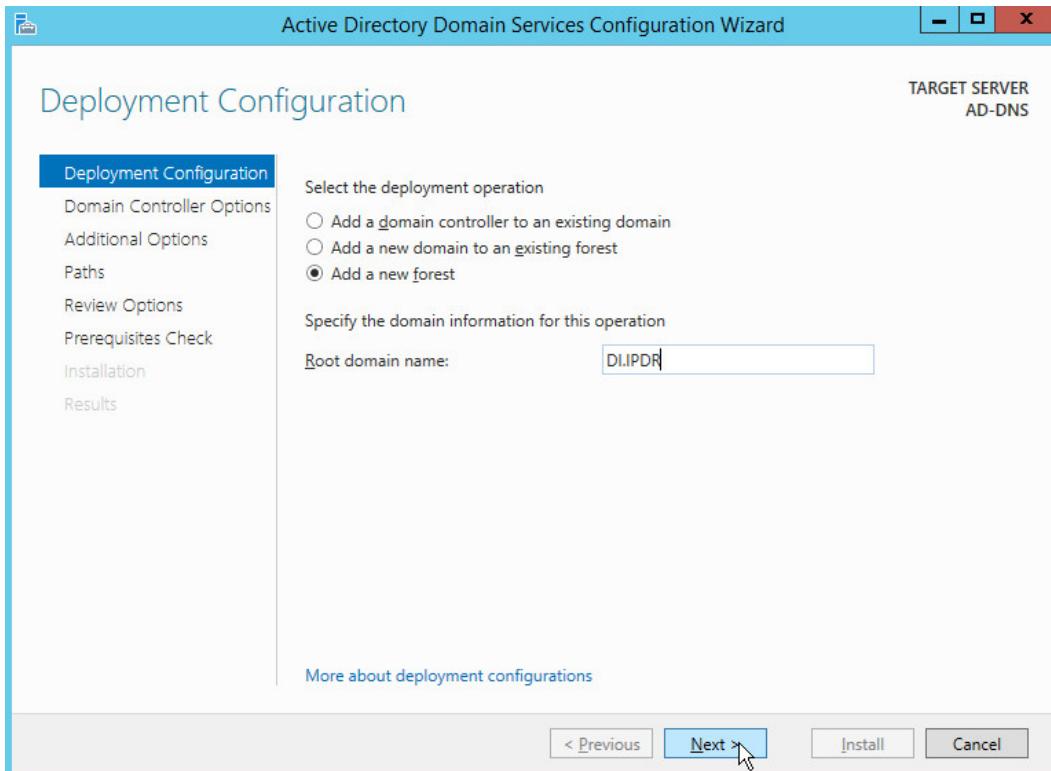
313 16. Click **Close**.



314 17. Click **Promote this server to a domain controller**.

315 18. Select **Add a new forest**.

316

19. Enter a **Root domain name**.

317

20. Click **Next**.

318

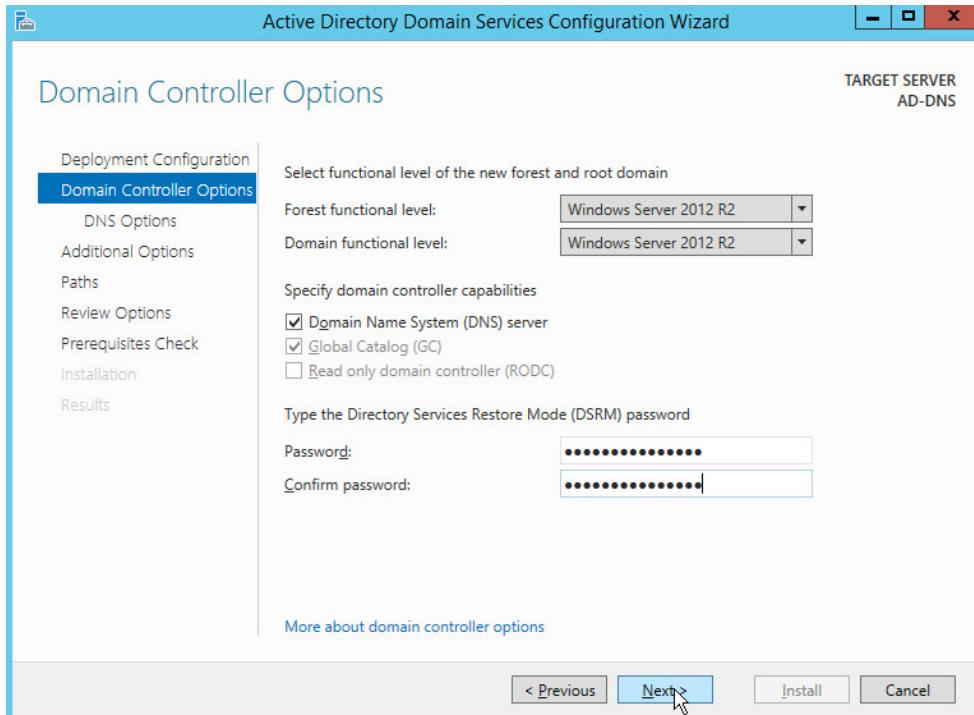
21. Select **Windows Server 2012 R2** for **Forest functional level** and **Domain functional level**.

319

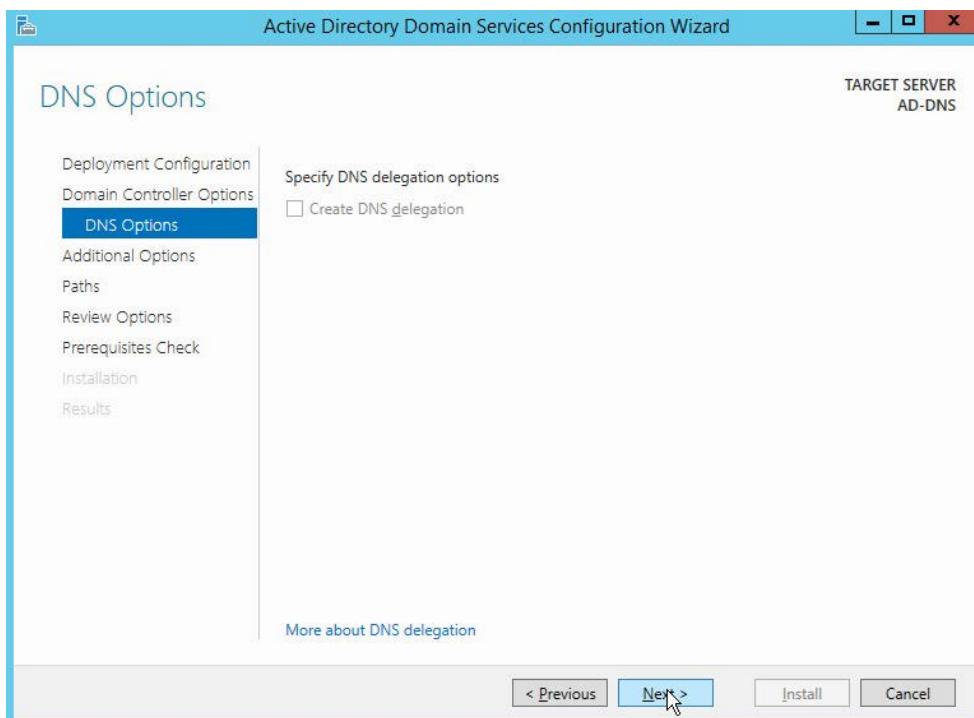
22. Check the box next to **Domain Name System (DNS) server**.

320

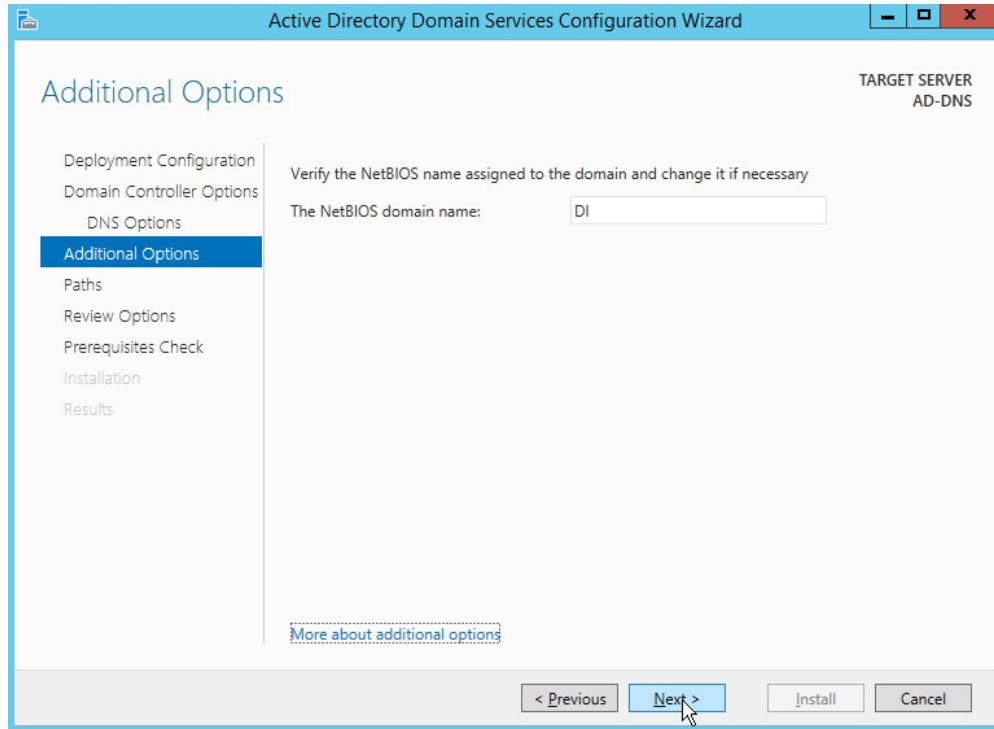
23. Enter a **password**.



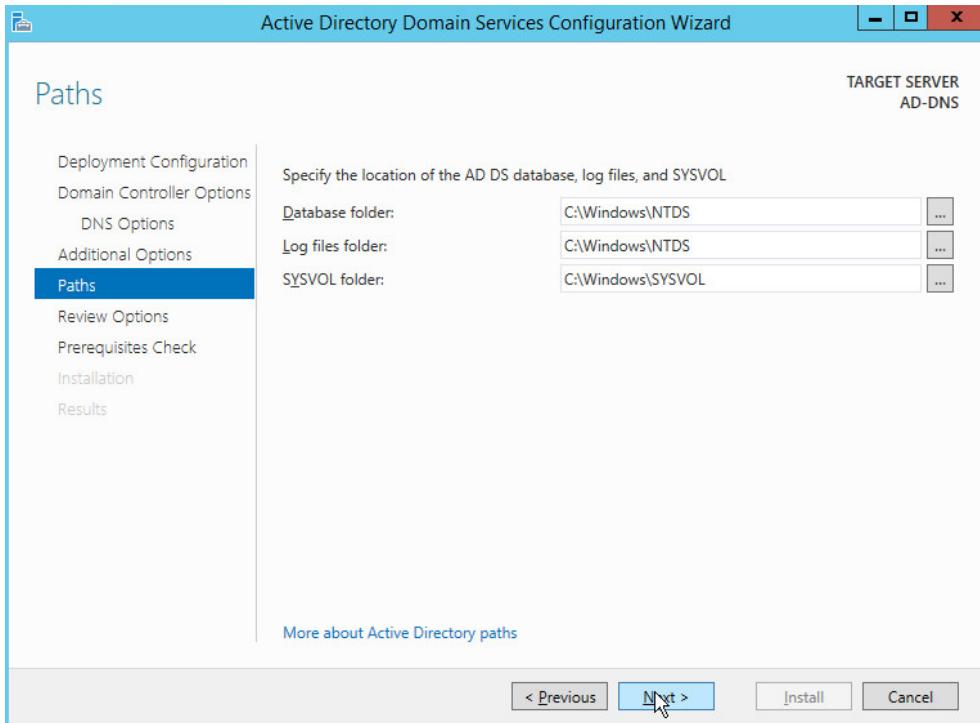
321 24. Click **Next**.



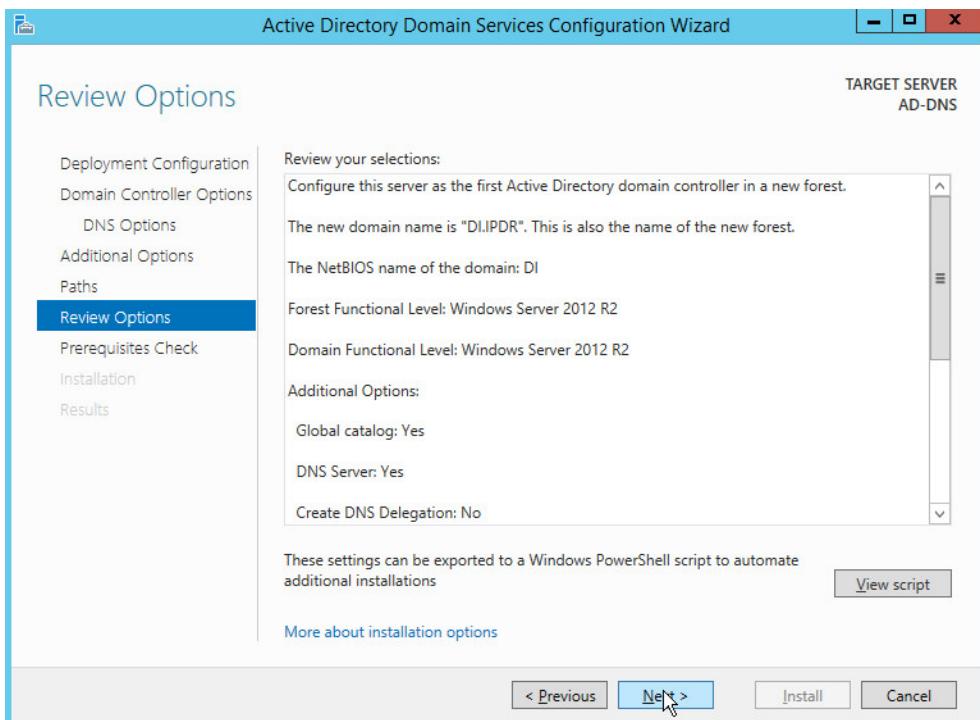
- 322 25. Click **Next**.
323 26. Verify the domain name.



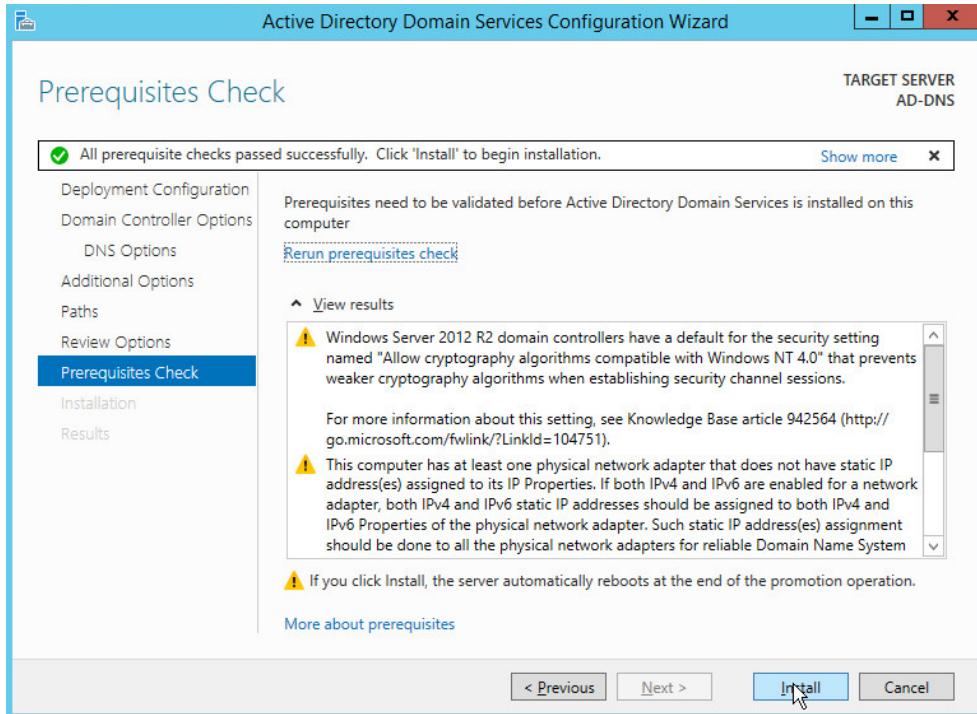
- 324 27. Click **Next**.



325

28. Click **Next**.

326

29. Click **Next**.

327

30. Click **Install**.

328

31. Wait for the installation to complete.

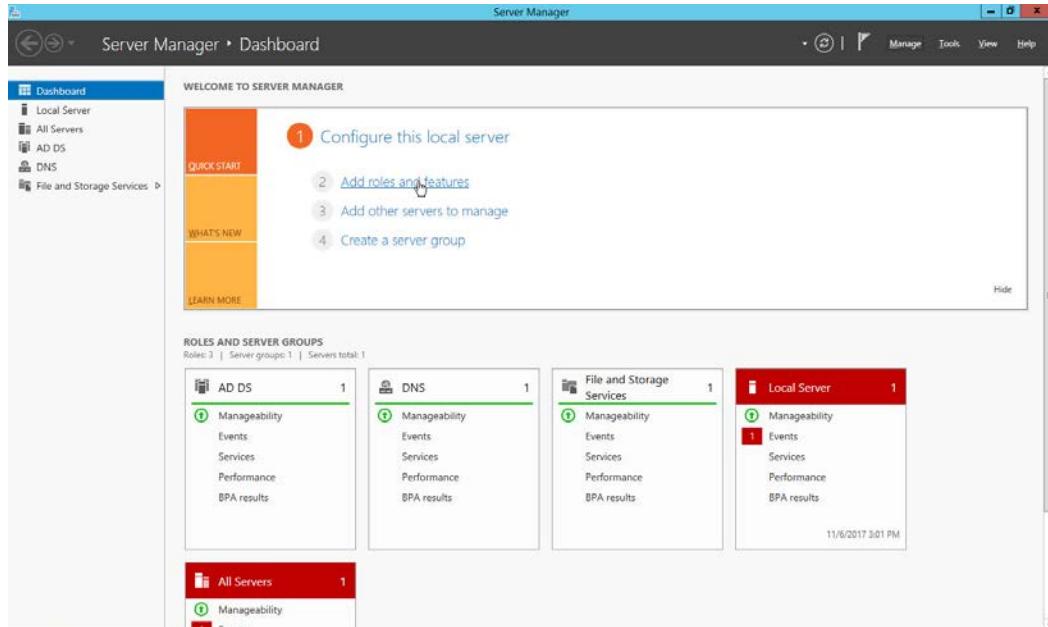
329

32. The server automatically reboots.

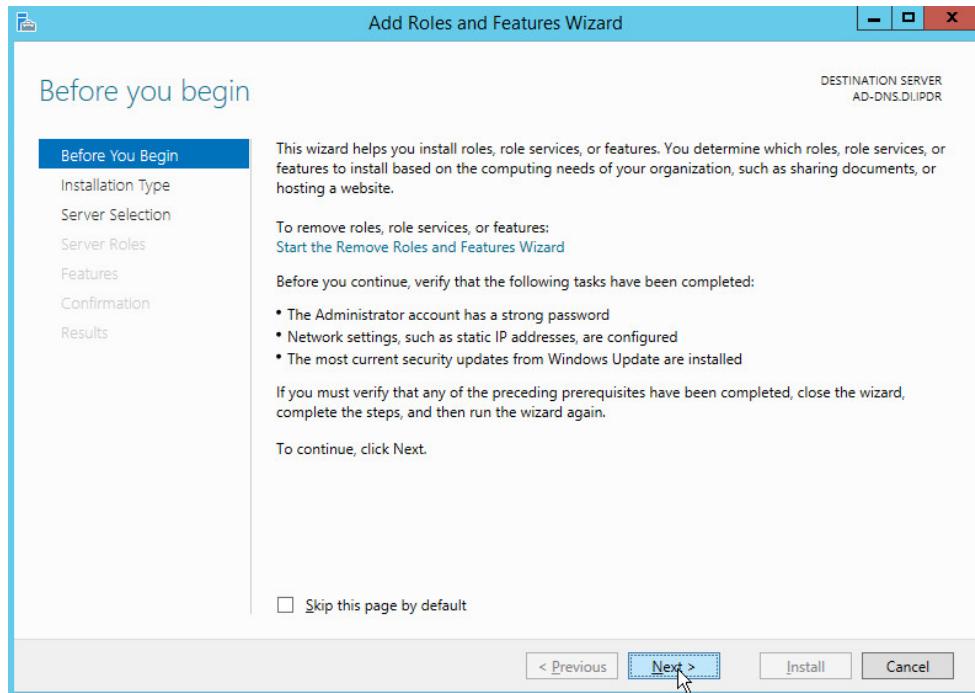
330 **2.1.2 Creating a Certificate Authority**

331

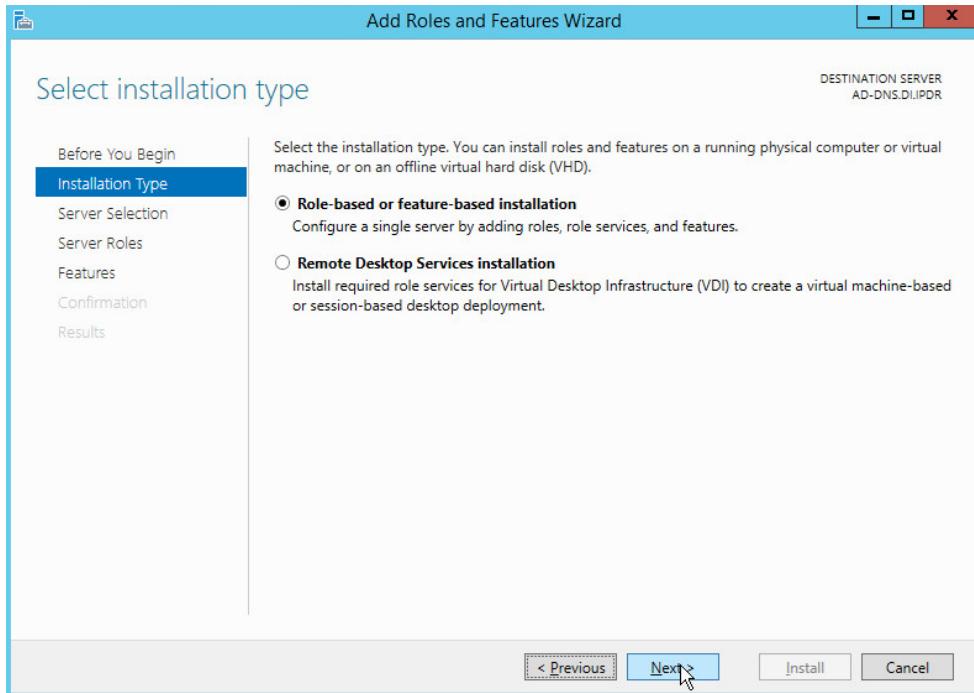
1. Open **Server Manager**.



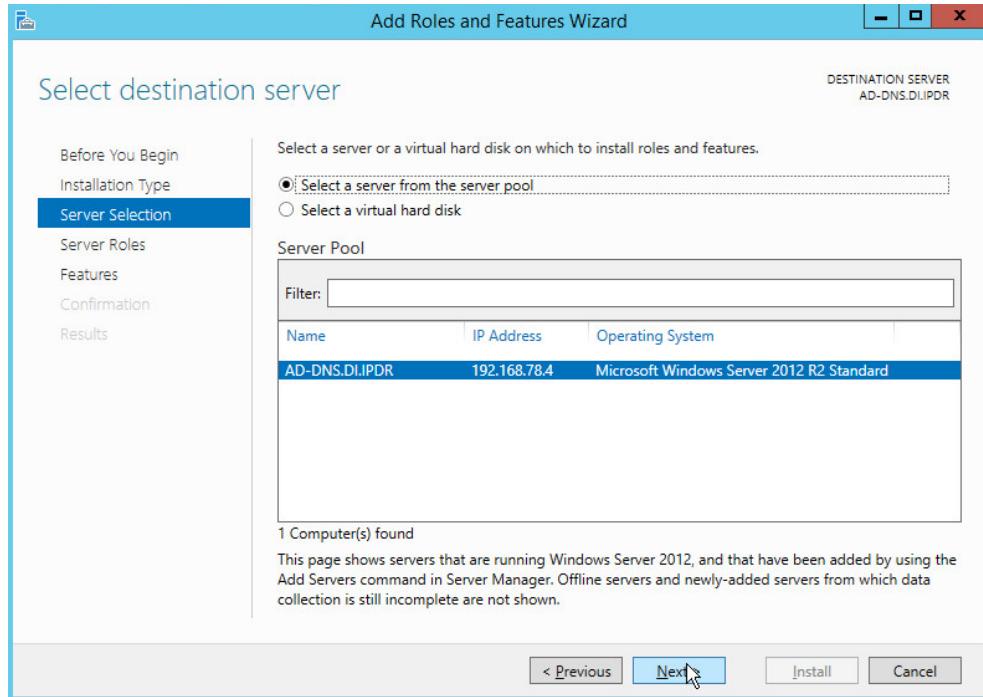
- 332 2. Click **Add roles and features**.



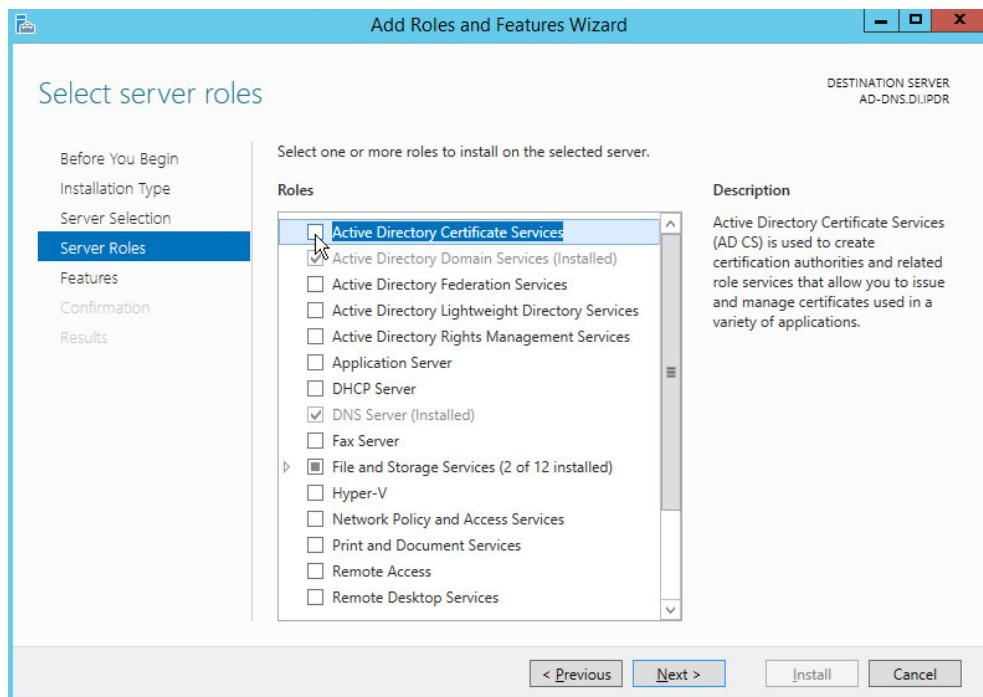
- 333 3. Click **Next**.
334 4. Select **Role-based or feature-based installation**.



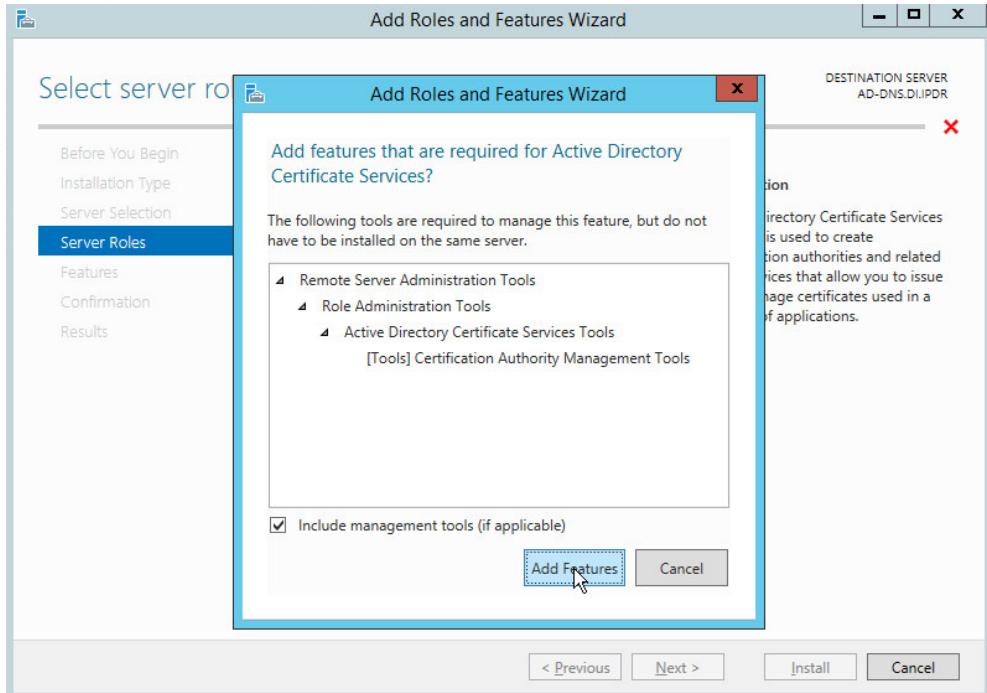
- 335 5. Click **Next**.
- 336 6. Select **Select a server from the server pool**.
- 337 7. Select the intended Active Directory server.



- 338 8. Click **Next**.

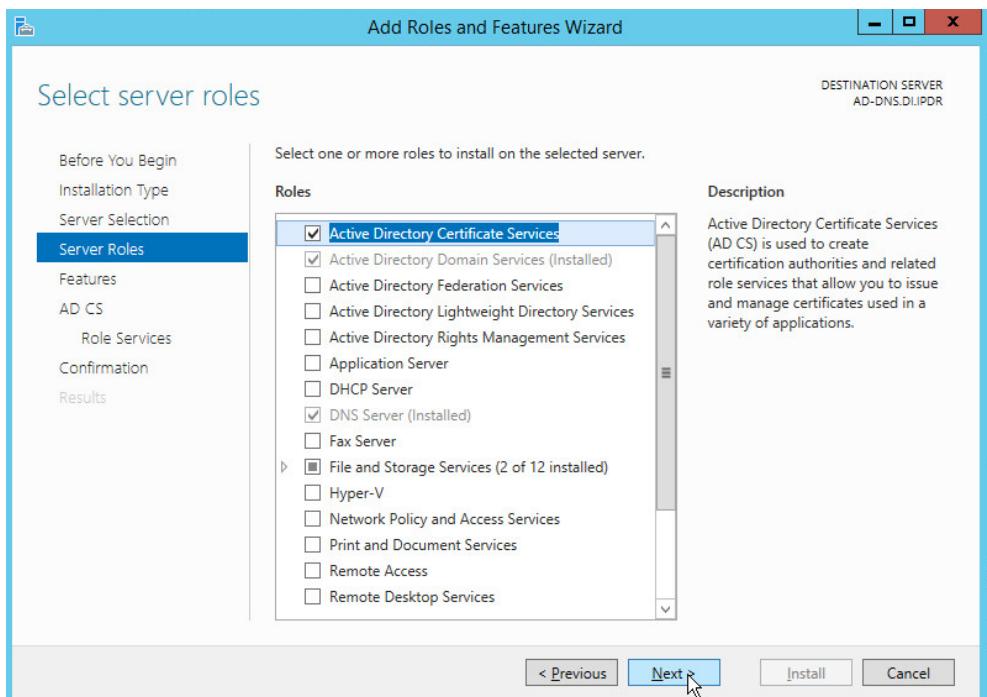


- 339 9. Check the box next to **Active Directory Certificate Services**.



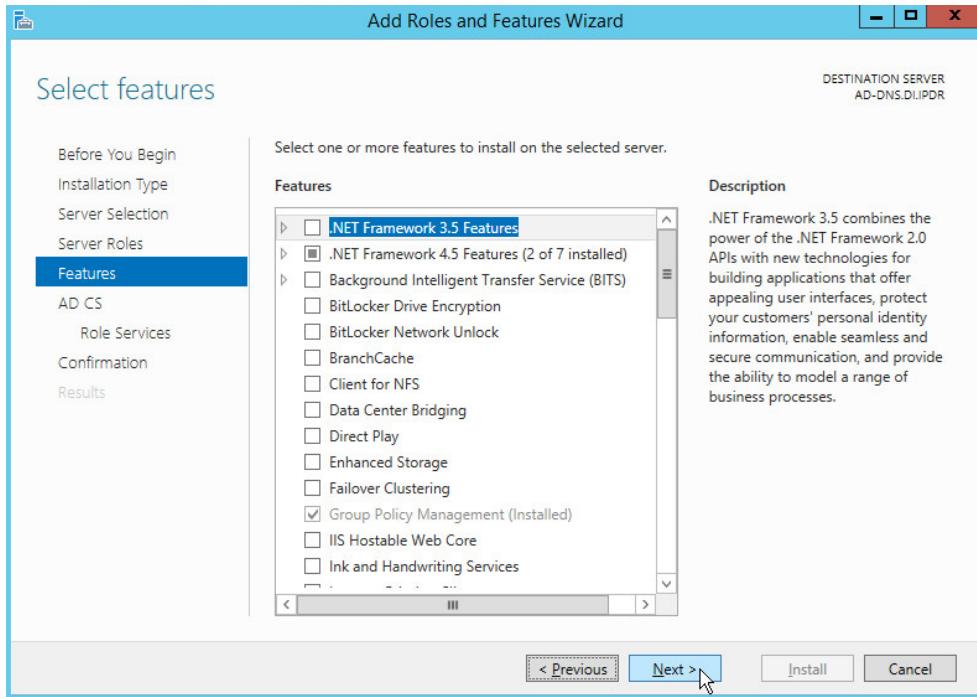
340

10. Click Add Features.

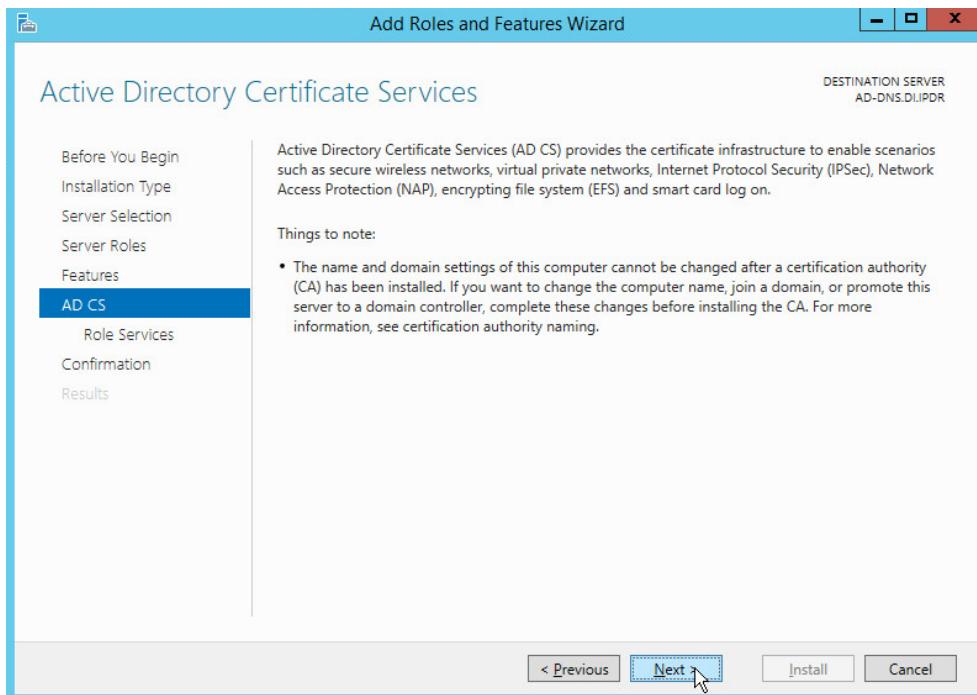


341

11. Click Next.



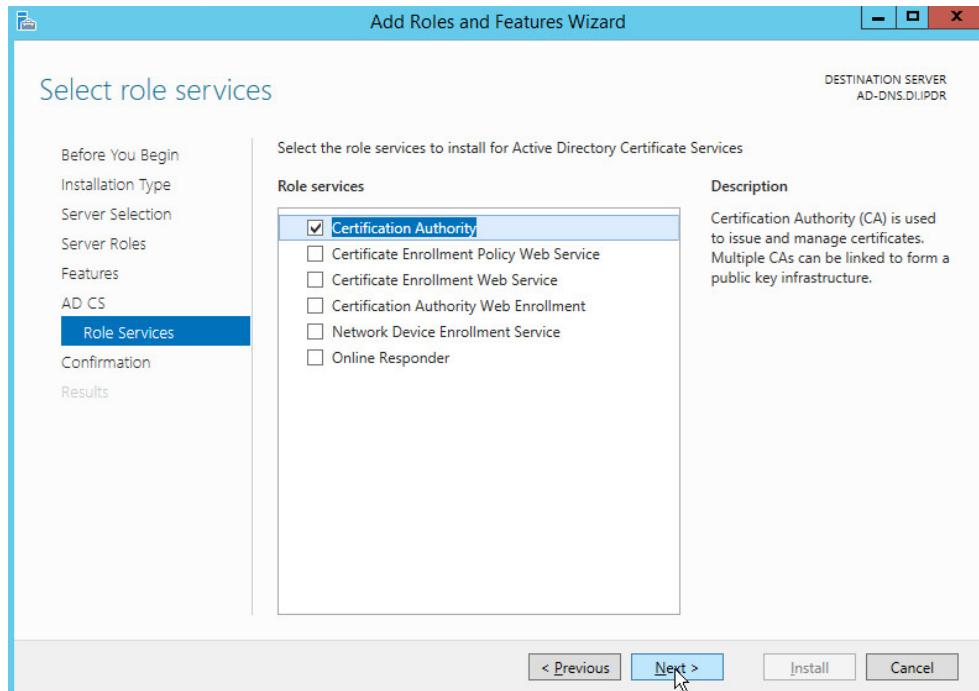
342

12. Click **Next**.

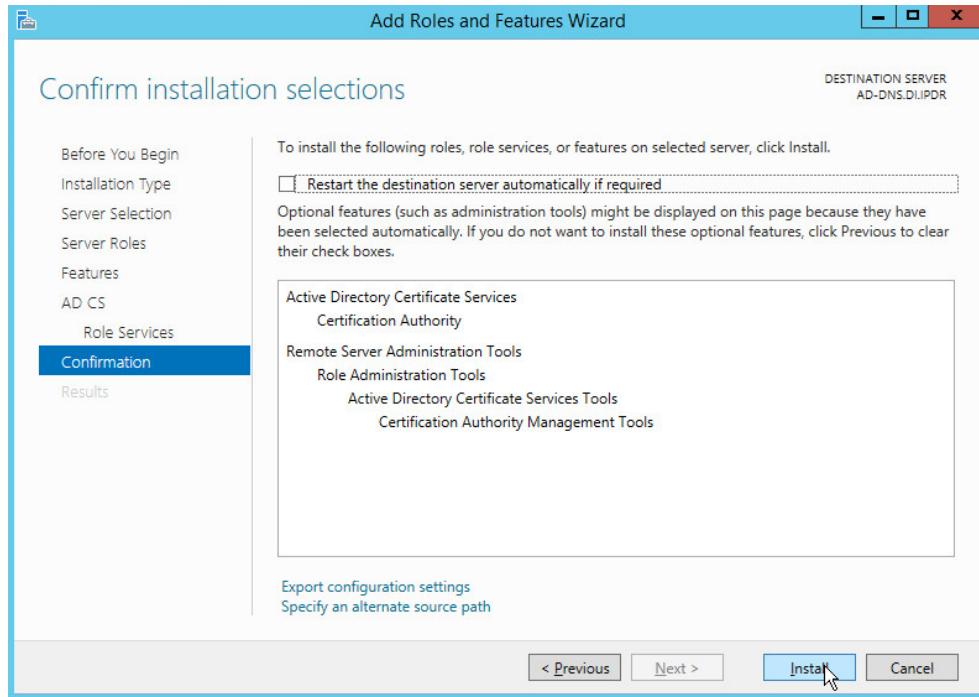
343

13. Click **Next**.

344

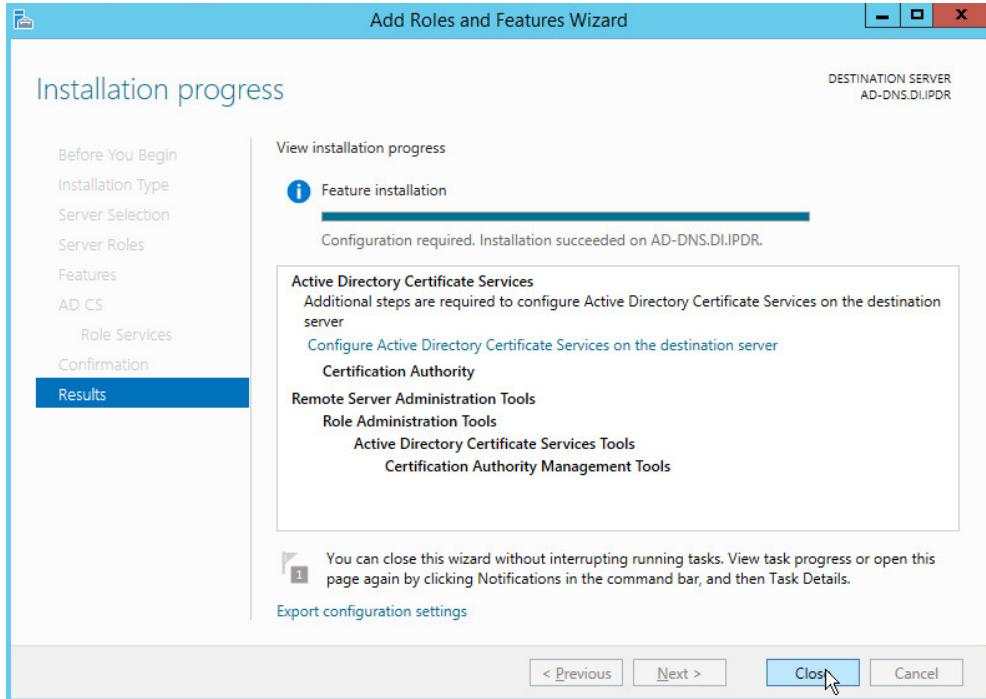
14. Check the box next to **Certification Authority**.

345

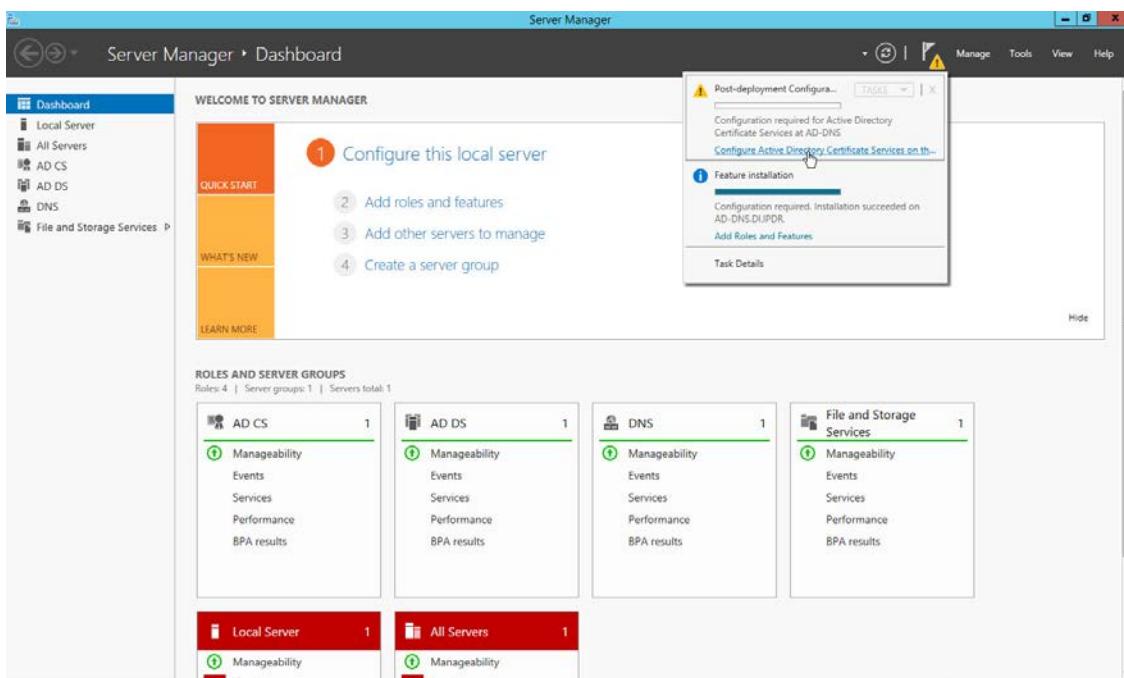
15. Click **Next**.

346 16. Click **Install**.

347 17. Wait for the installation to complete.

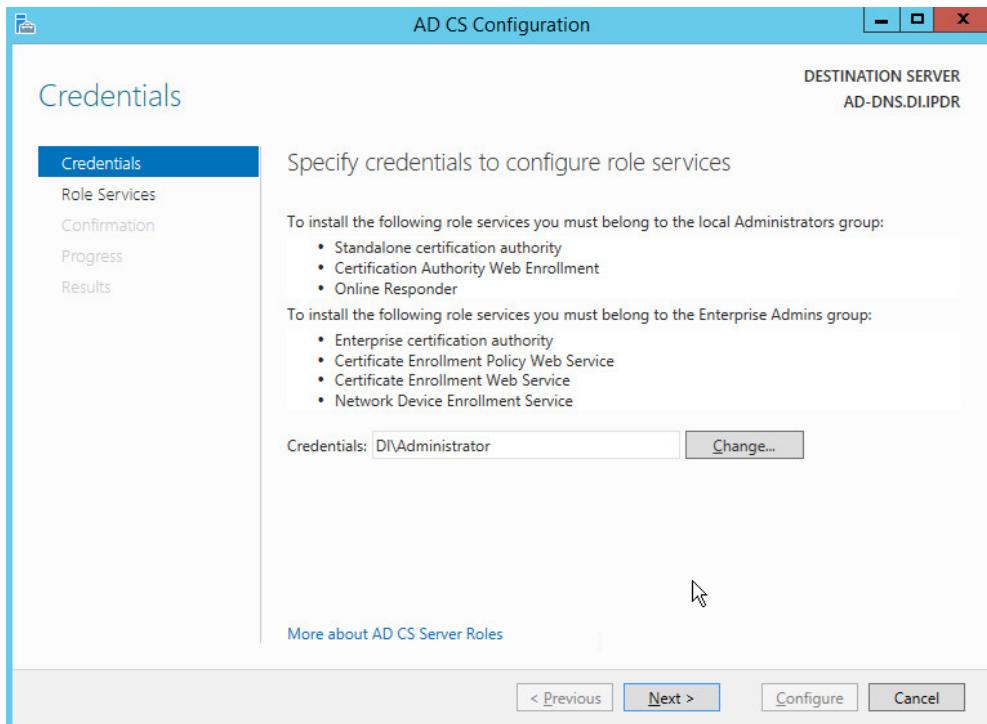


348 18. Click **Close**.



349

19. Click **Configure Active Directory Certificate Services on the destination server.**

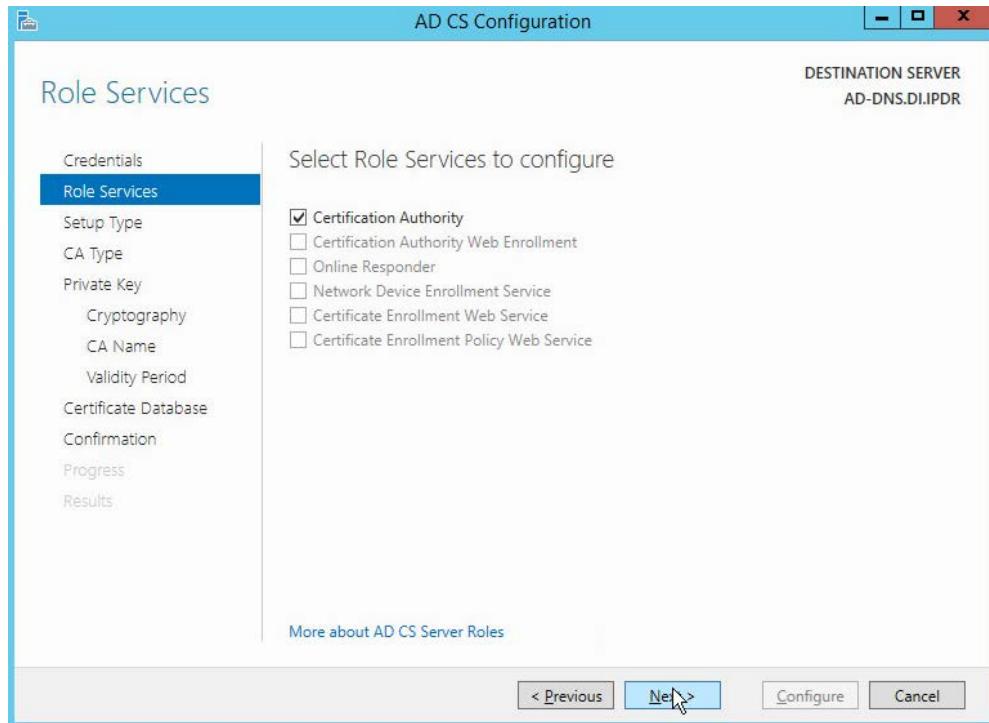


350

20. Click **Next**.

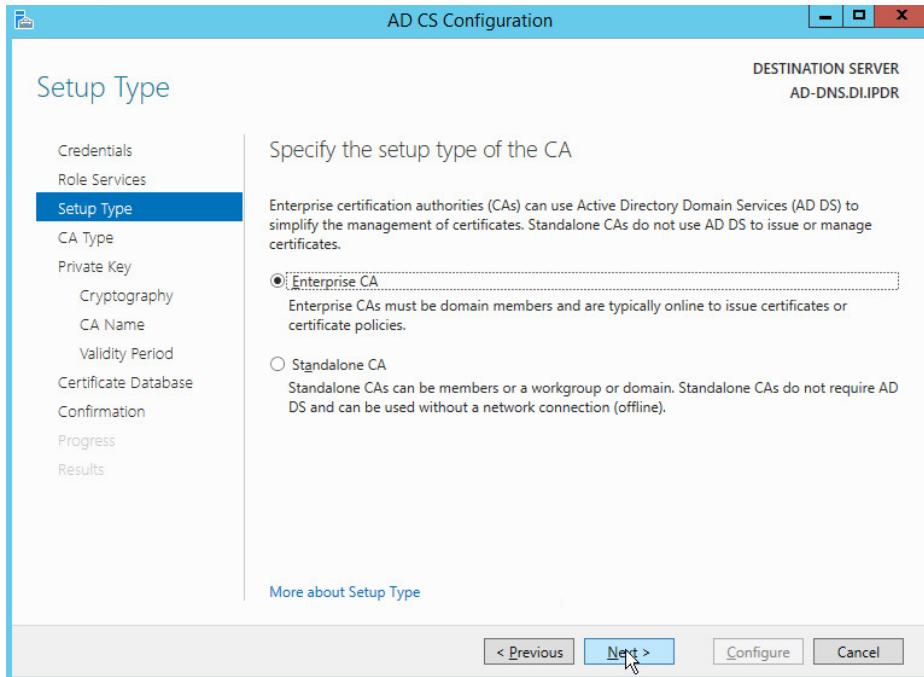
351

21. Check the box next to **Certification Authority**.



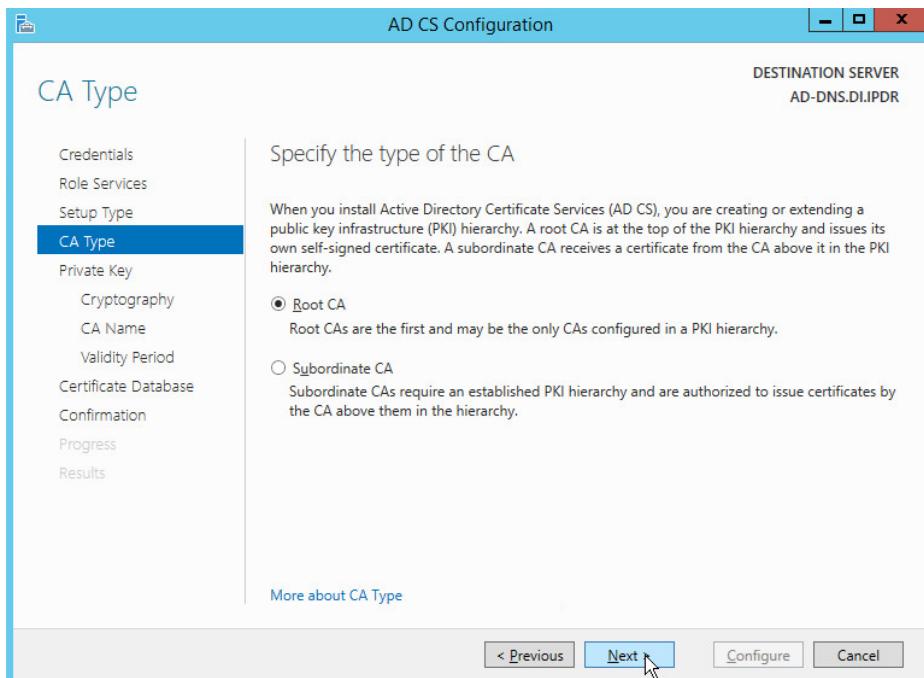
352 22. Click **Next**.

353 23. Select **Enterprise CA**.



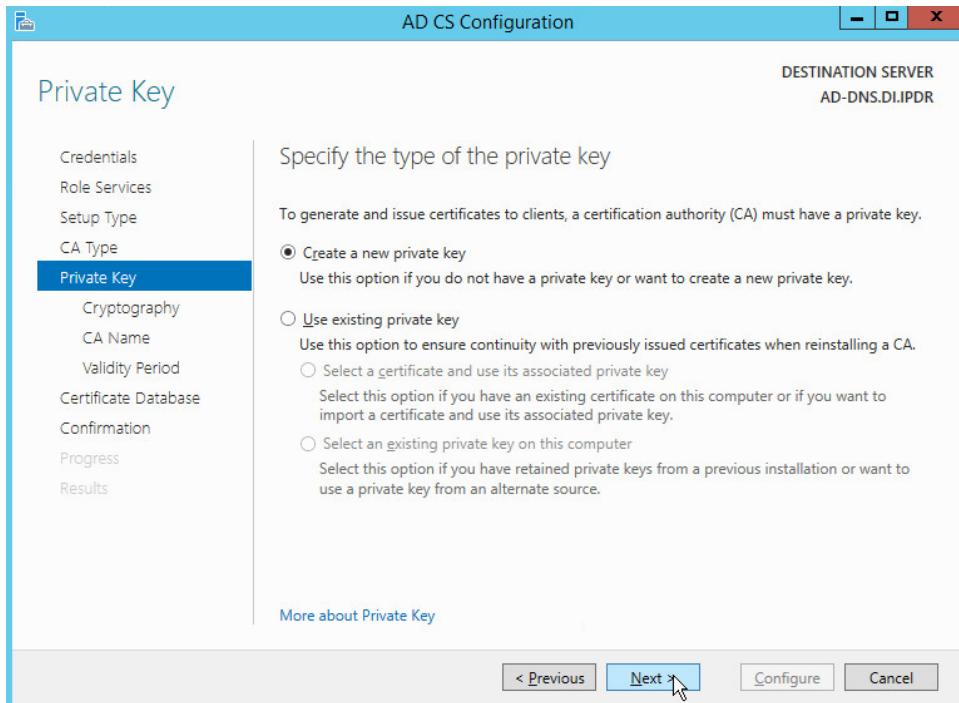
354 24. Click **Next**.

355 25. Select **Root CA**.



356 26. Click **Next**.

357 27. Select **Create a new private key**.

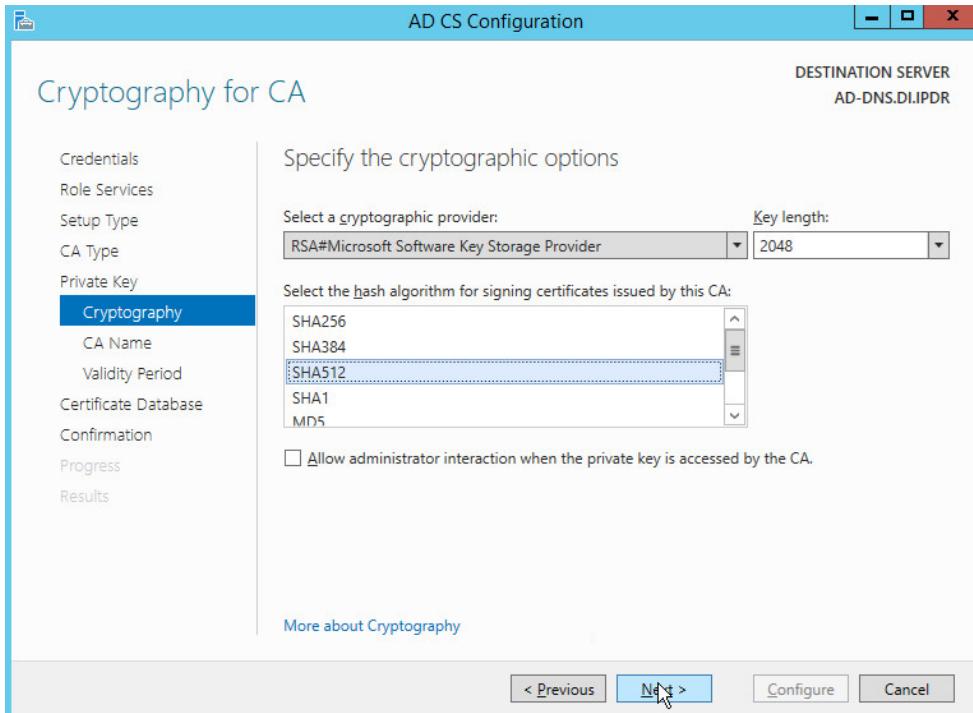


358 28. Click **Next**.

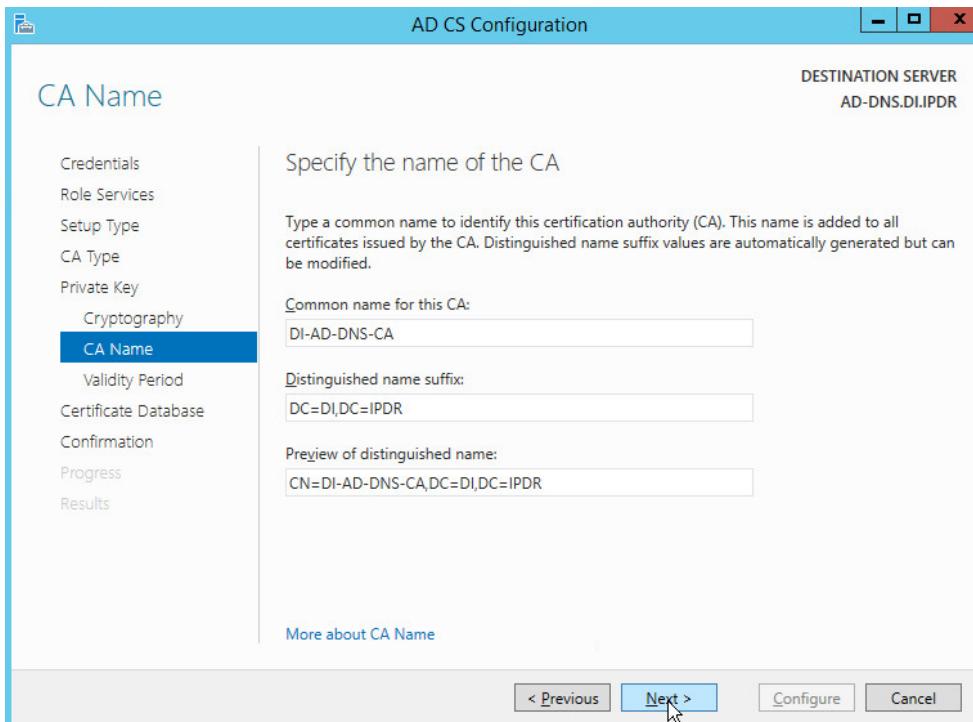
359 29. Select **RSA#Microsoft Software Key Storage Provider**.

360 30. Set the **Key length** to **2048**.

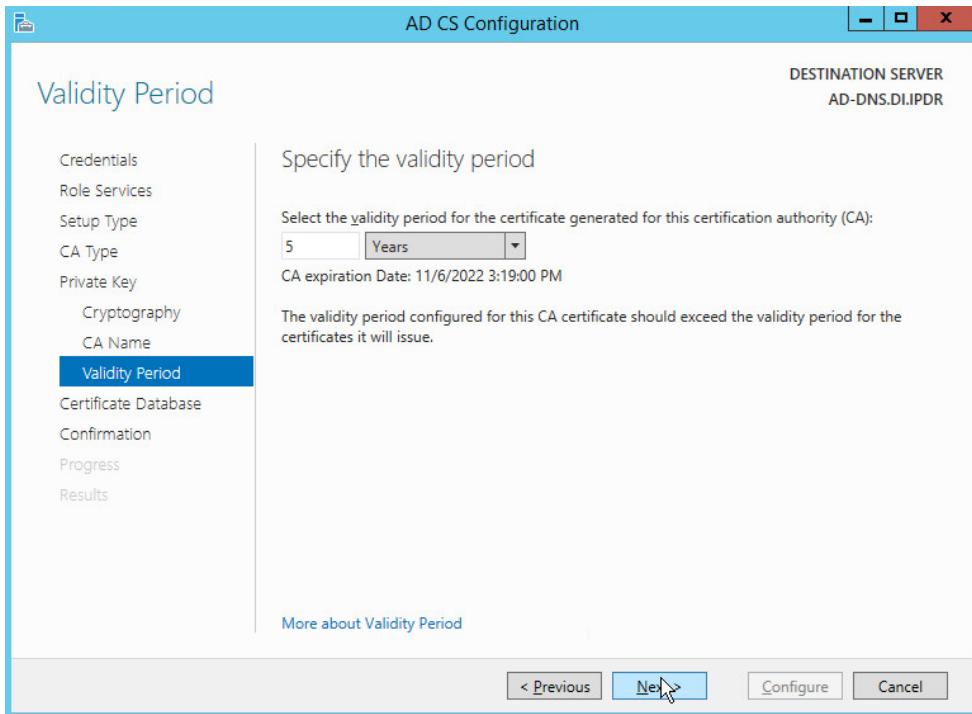
361 31. Select **SHA512** from the list.



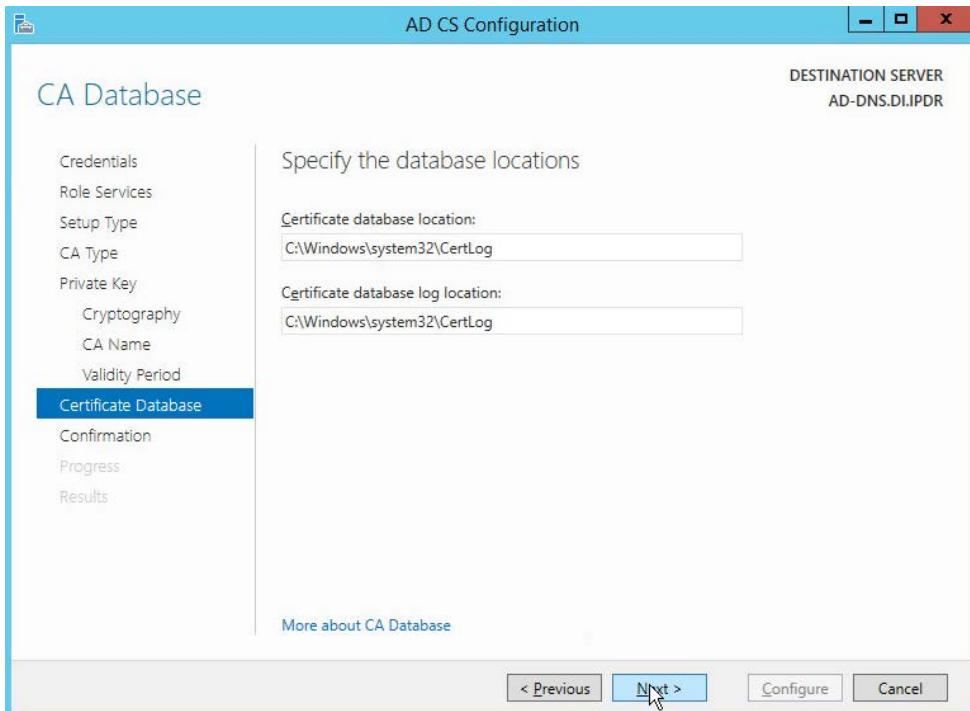
362 32. Click **Next**.



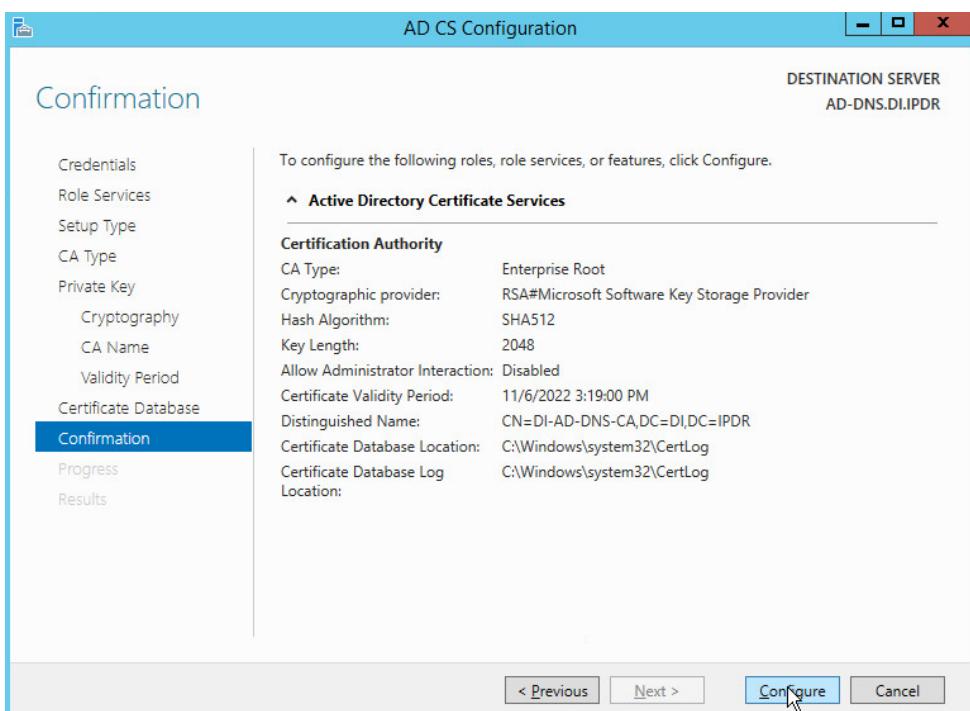
- 363 33. Click **Next**.
364 34. Set the time to 5 years.



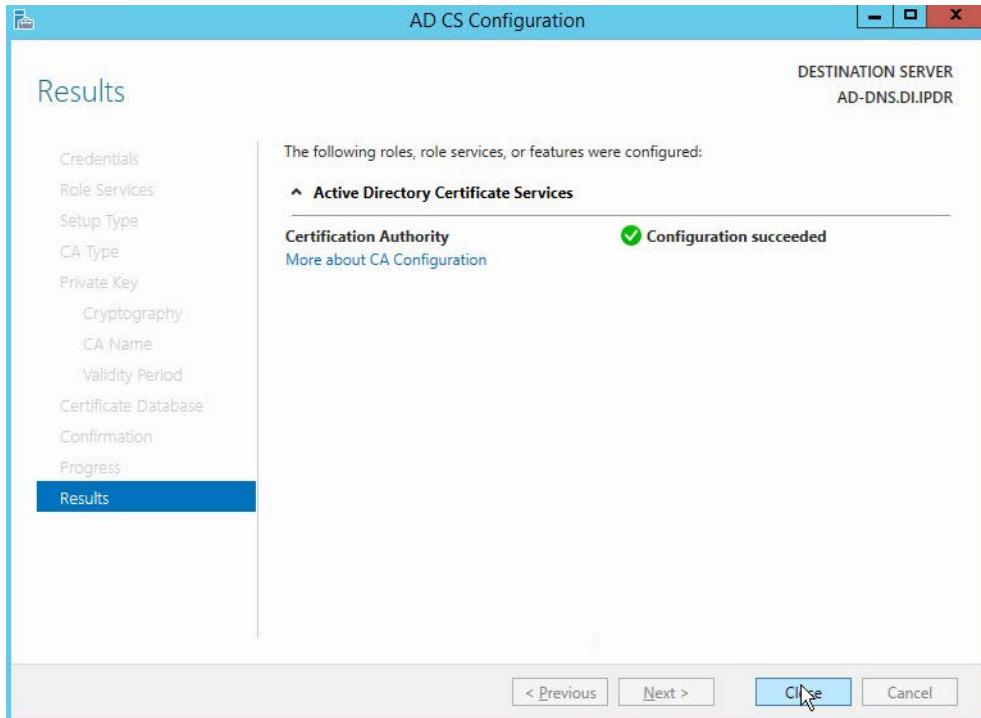
- 365 35. Click **Next**.



366 36. Click **Next**.



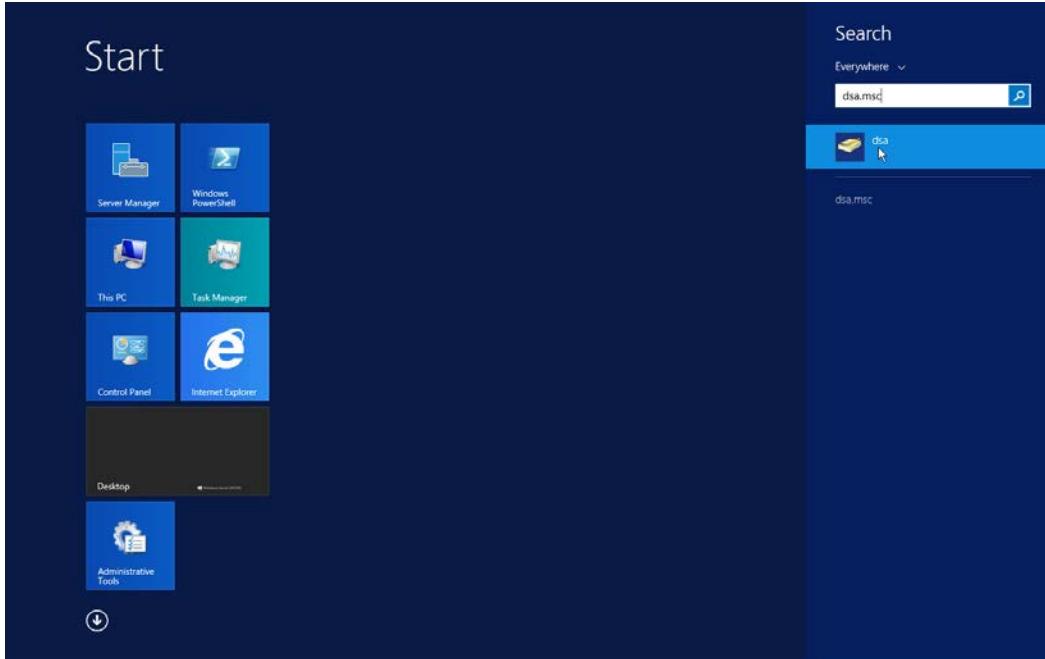
367 37. Click **Configure**.



368 38. Click **Close**.

369 2.1.3 Configure Account to Add Computers to Domain

- 370 1. Open the Start menu.
371 2. Enter **dsa.msc** and run the program.



372

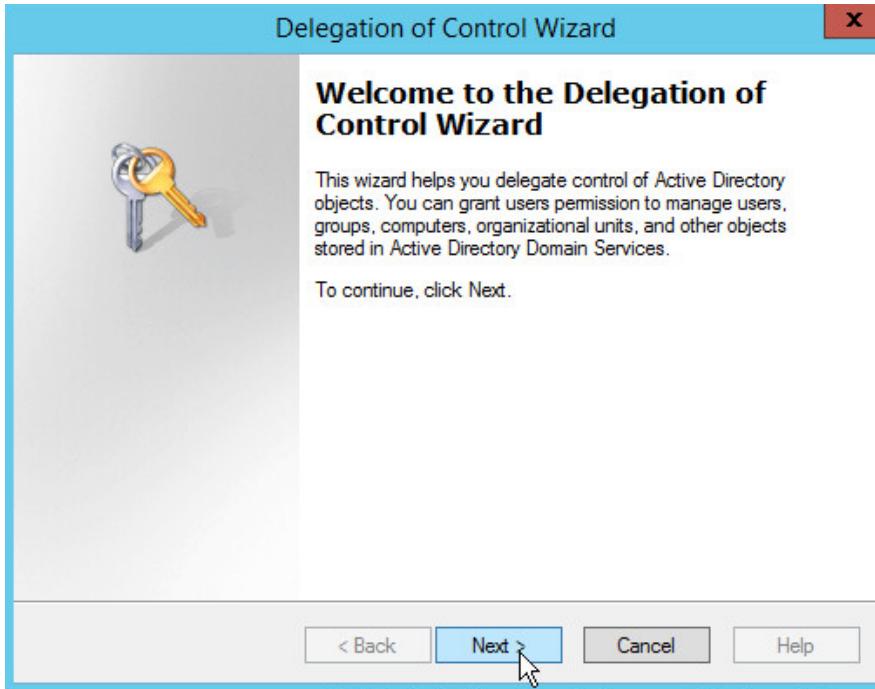
- Right-click on **Users** in the left panel.

The image shows the Active Directory Users and Computers snap-in window. The title bar says 'Active Directory Users and Computers'. The left pane shows a tree view with 'Active Directory Users and Computers' expanded, showing 'Saved Queries', 'DI.IPDR', 'Builtin', 'Computers', 'Domain Controllers', 'ForeignSecurityPrincipal', 'Managed Service Account', and 'Users'. The 'Users' folder is selected and highlighted with a blue border. The right pane is a table titled 'Name' with columns 'Name', 'Type', and 'Description'. It lists various security groups and users, such as Administrator, Allowed RO..., Cert Publish..., Cloneable D..., Denied ROD..., DnsAdmins, DnsUpdateP..., Domain Ad..., Domain Co..., Domain Con..., Domain Gue..., Domain Users, Enterprise A..., Enterprise R..., Group Polic..., Guest, Protected Us..., RAS and IAS ..., Read-only D..., Schema Ad..., and WinRMRem... .

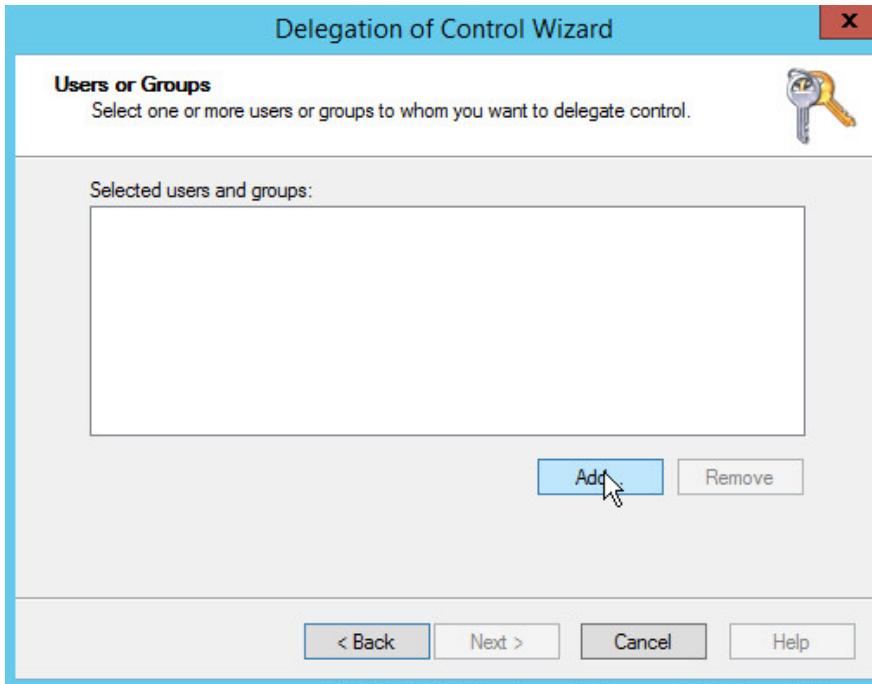
Name	Type	Description
Administrator	User	Built-in account for ad...
Allowed RO...	Security Group...	Members in this group c...
Cert Publish...	Security Group...	Members of this group ...
Cloneable D...	Security Group...	Members of this group t...
Denied ROD...	Security Group...	Members in this group c...
DnsAdmins	Security Group...	DNS Administrators Gro...
DnsUpdateP...	Security Group...	DNS clients who are per...
Domain Ad...	Security Group...	Designated administrato...
Domain Co...	Security Group...	All workstations and ser...
Domain Con...	Security Group...	All domain controllers i...
Domain Gue...	Security Group...	All domain guests
Domain Users	Security Group...	All domain users
Enterprise A...	Security Group...	Designated administrato...
Enterprise R...	Security Group...	Members of this group ...
Group Polic...	Security Group...	Members in this group c...
Guest	User	Built-in account for gue...
Protected Us...	Security Group...	Members of this group ...
RAS and IAS ...	Security Group...	Servers in this group can...
Read-only D...	Security Group...	Members of this group ...
Schema Ad...	Security Group...	Designated administrato...
WinRMRem...	Security Group...	Members of this group ...

373

- Click **Delegate Control**.



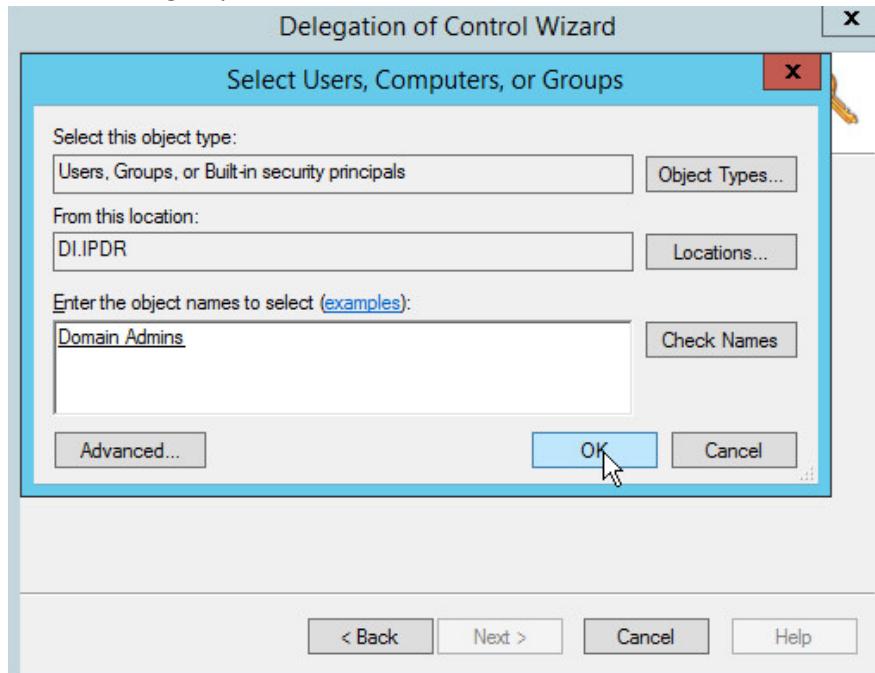
- 374 5. Click **Next**.



- 375 6. Click **Add** to select users or groups.

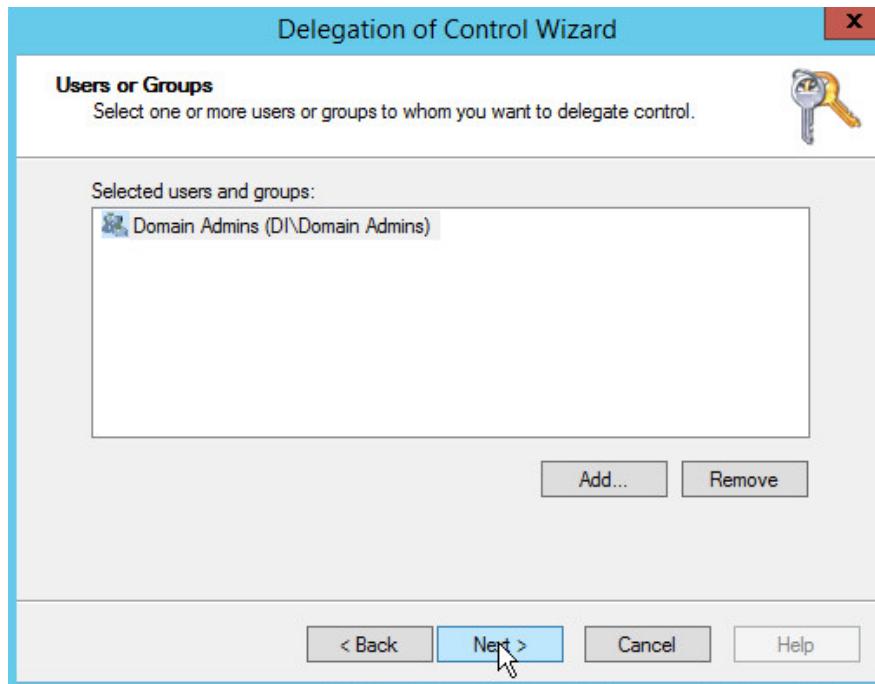
376

7. Add users or groups.



377

8. Click OK.

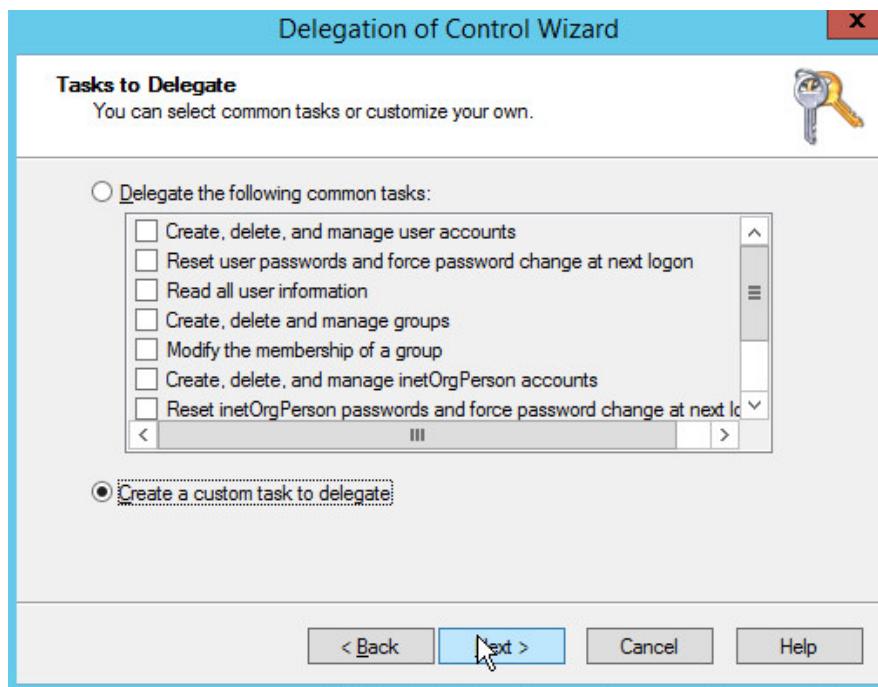


378

9. Click Next.

379

10. Choose **Create a custom task to delegate**.



380

11. Click **Next**.

381

12. Choose **Only the following objects in the folder**.

382

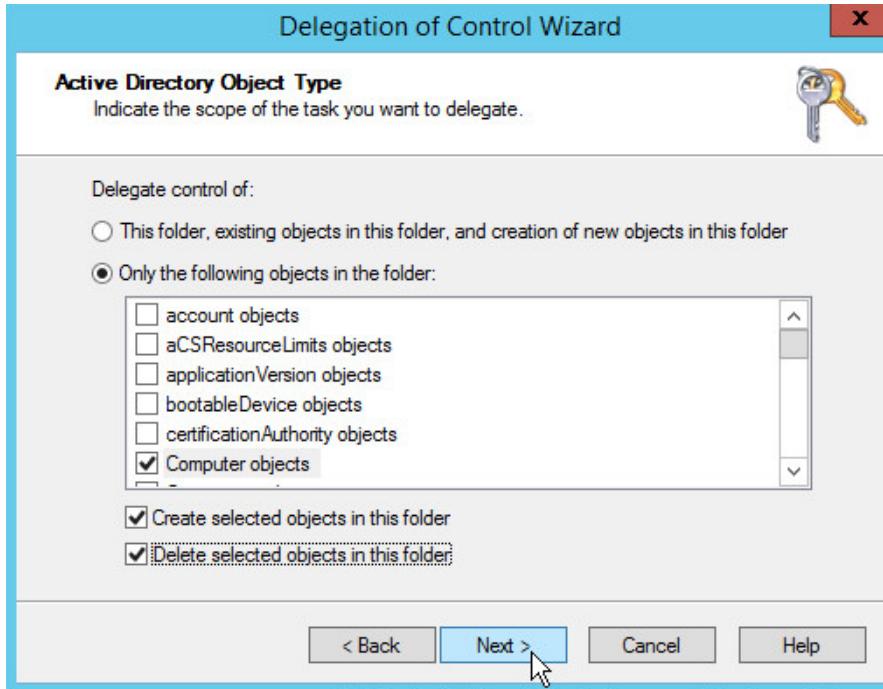
13. Check the box next to **Computer objects**.

383

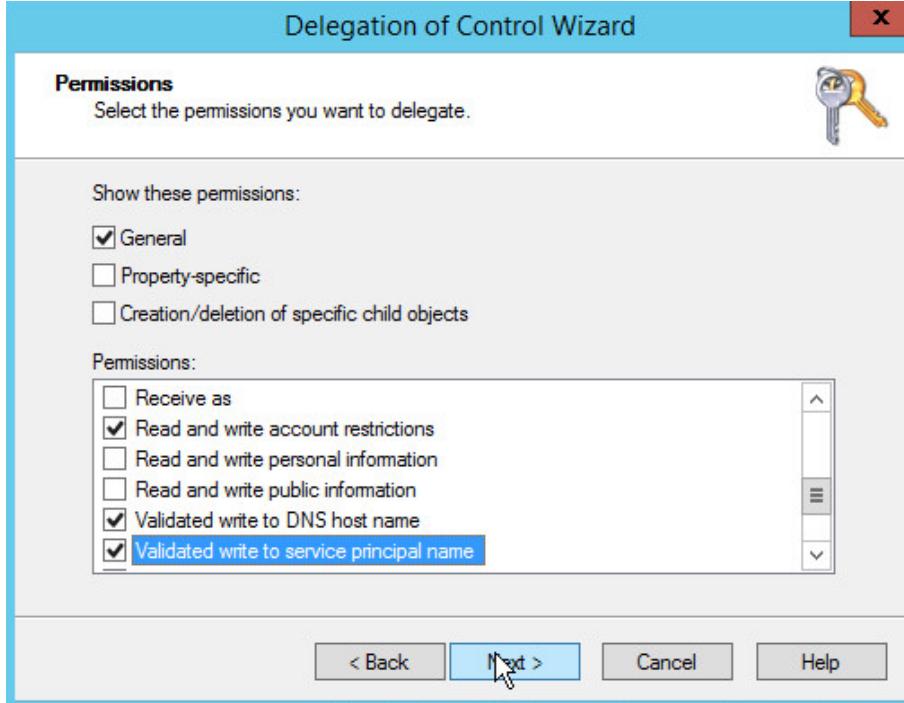
14. Check the box next to **Create selected objects in this folder**.

384

15. Check the box next to **Delete selected objects in this folder**.



- 385 16. Click **Next**.
- 386 17. Check the boxes next to **Reset password**, **Read and write account restrictions**, **Validated write to DNS host name**, and **Validated write to service principal name**.
- 387



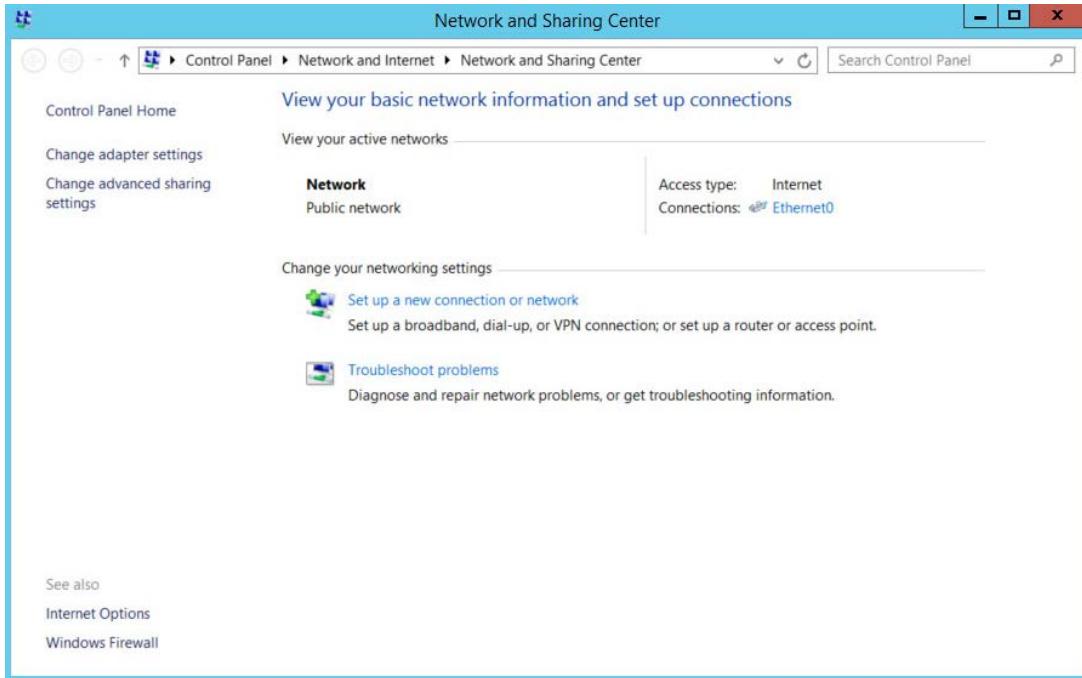
388 18. Click Next.



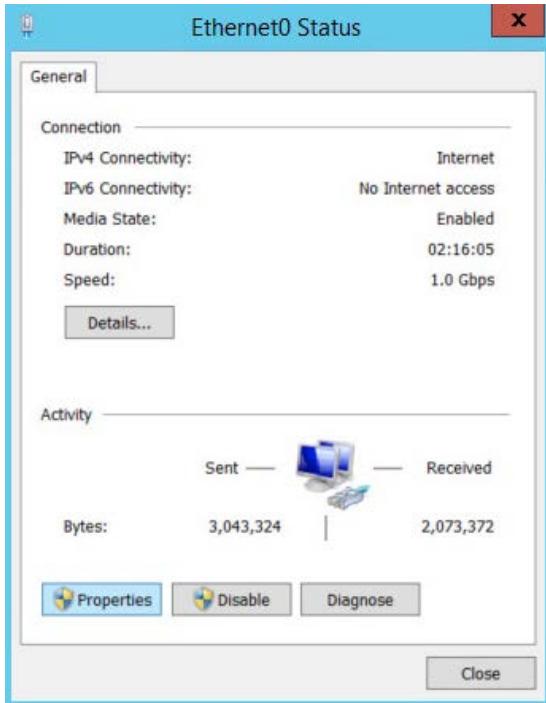
389 19. Click Finish.

390 2.1.4 Adding Machines to the Domain

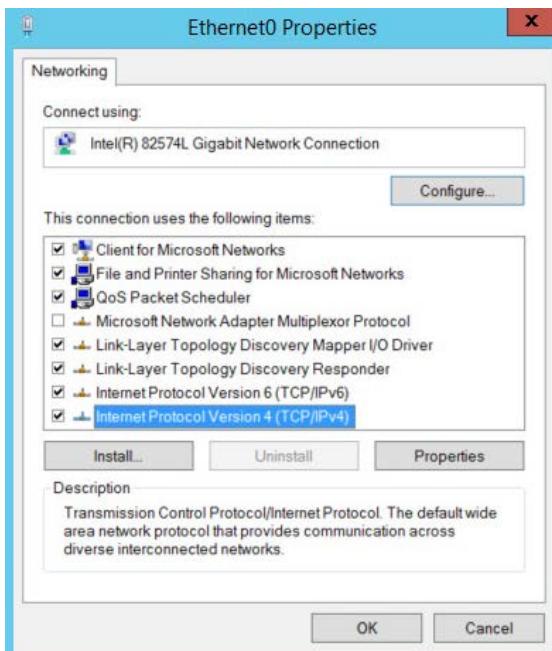
- 391 1. Right-click the network icon in the task bar on a computer that you wish to add to the domain.
- 392 2. Click **Open Network and Sharing Center**.



- 393 3. Click the name of the internet adapter.

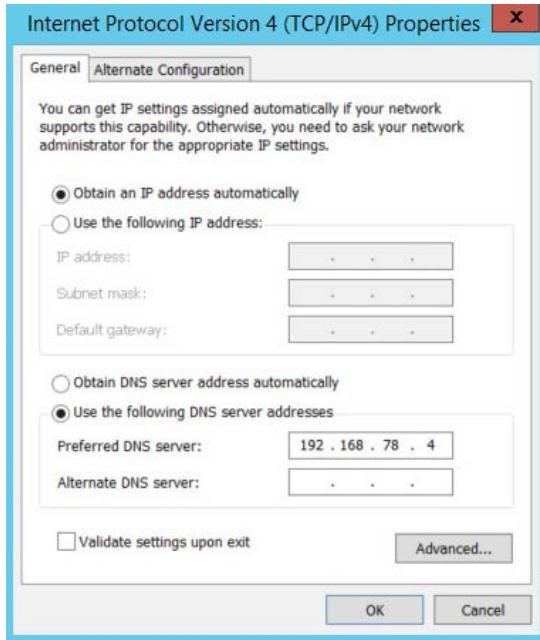


- 394 4. Click **Properties**.



- 395 5. Double-click **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)**.
 396 6. Select **Use the following DNS server addresses**.

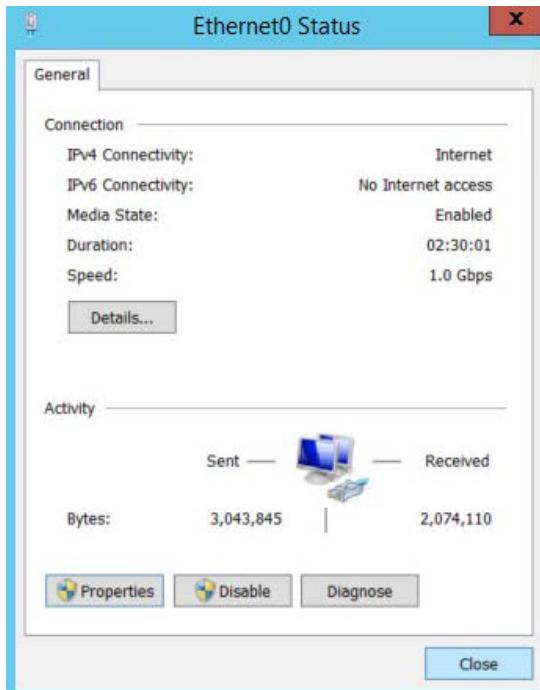
397 7. Enter the **IP address** of the DNS server.



398

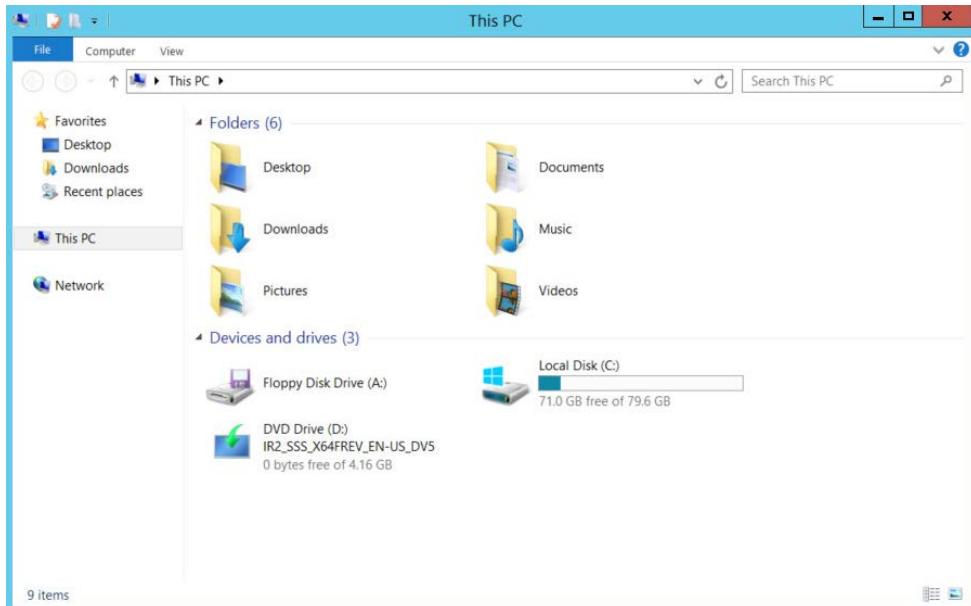
399 8. Click **OK**.

400 9. Click **OK**.

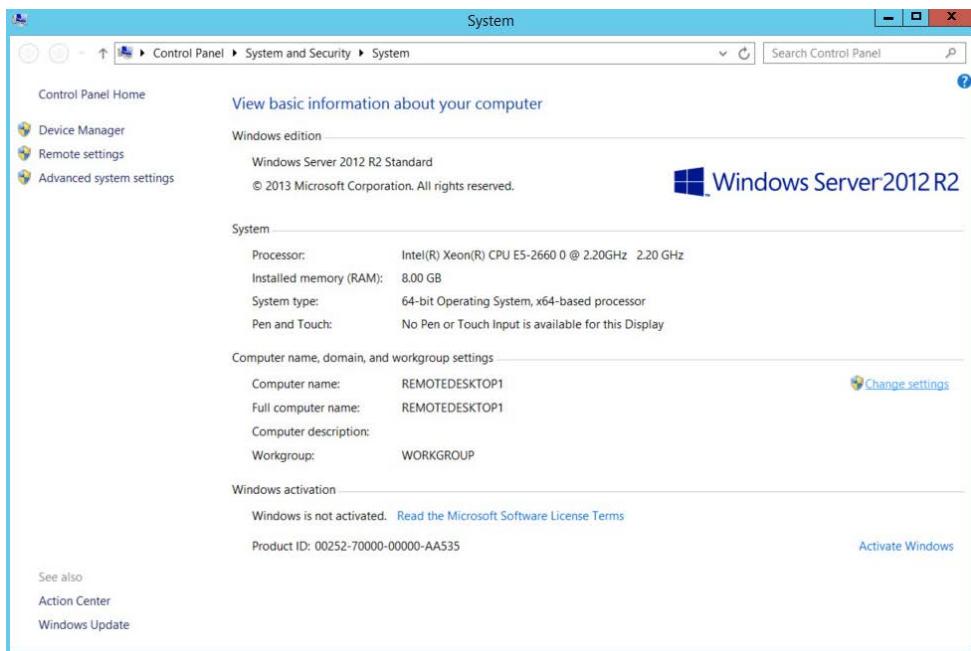


401

402 10. Click **Close**.

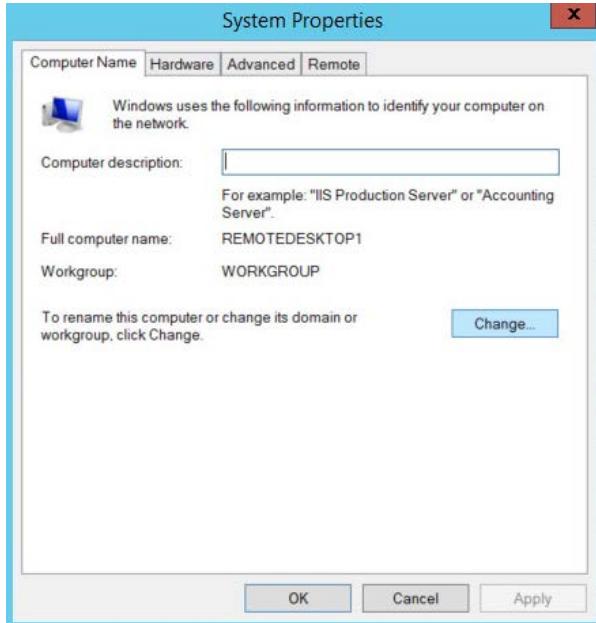
403 **11. Navigate to This PC.**

404

405 **12. Right-click in the window and click Properties.**

406

407 **13. Click Change Settings.**



408

14. Click **Change**.

409

15. Select **Domain**.

410

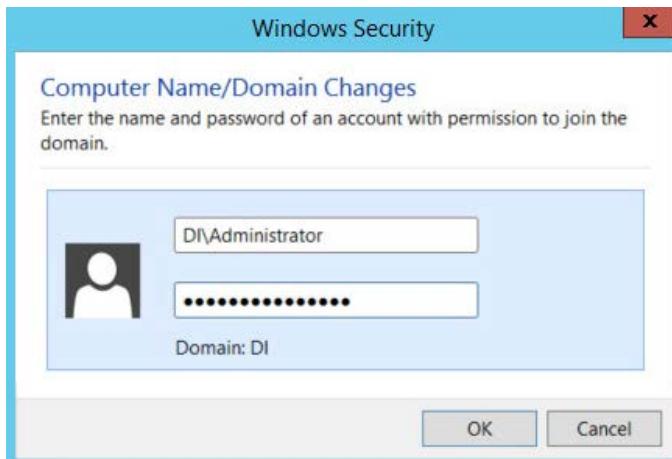
16. Enter the domain.



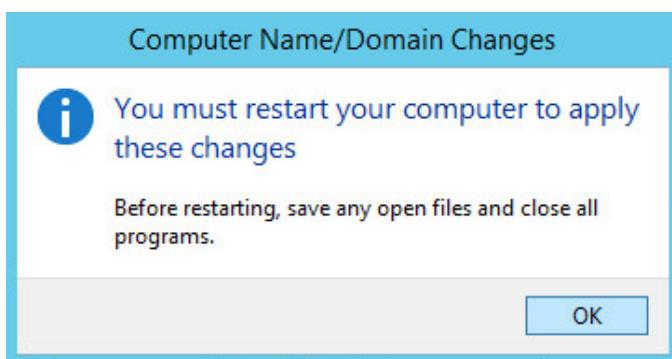
412

17. Click **OK**.

- 414 18. Enter the **username** and **password** of an account with privileges to add computers to the
415 domain.



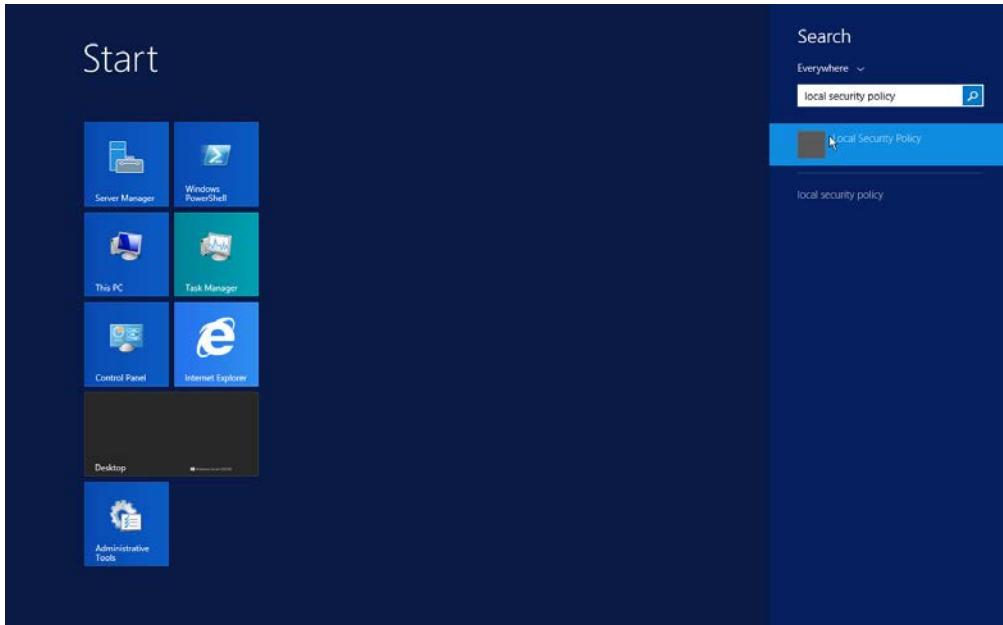
- 416
417 19. Click **OK**.



- 418
419 20. Click **OK** when prompted to restart the computer.

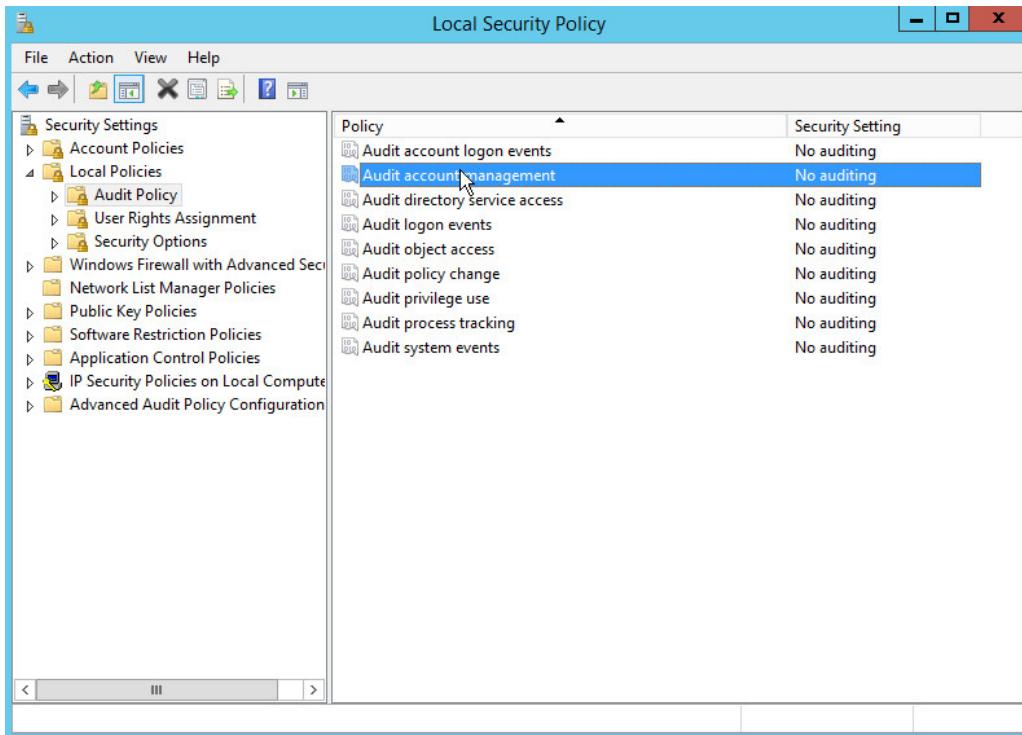
420 2.1.5 Configure Active Directory to Audit Account Activity

- 421 1. Open the Start menu.



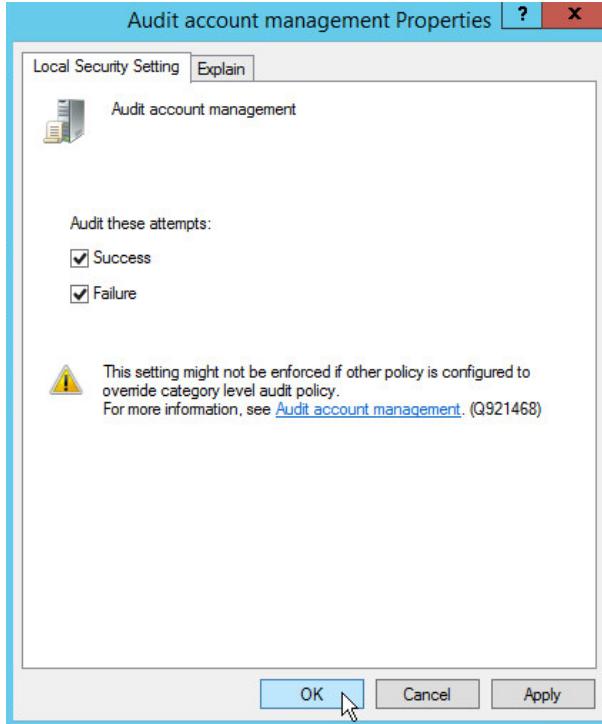
422

423 2. Enter “Local Security Policy” in the search bar and open the program.

424 3. Navigate to **Local Policies > Audit Policy**.425 4. Right-click **Audit account management**.

426

- 427 5. Click **Properties**.
428 6. Check the boxes next to **Success** and **Failure**.



- 429
430 7. Click **OK**.

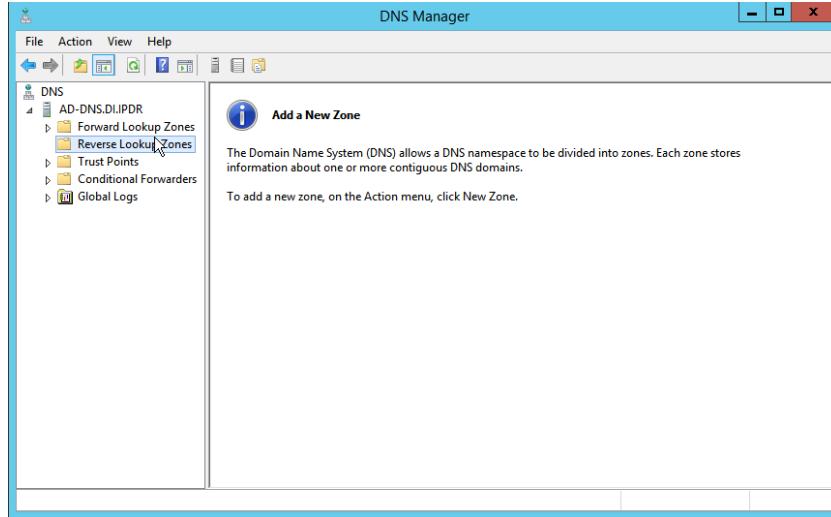
431 2.1.6 Configure Reverse Lookup Zones

- 432 1. Open **DNS Manager** by right-clicking the DNS server in **Server Manager**.
433 2. Click **Reverse Lookup Zones**.

434

435

3. Click Action > New Zone.



436

437

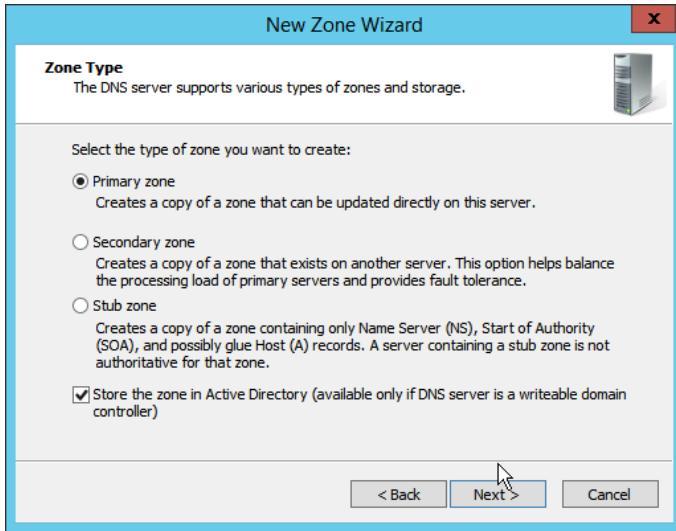
4. Click Next.



438

439

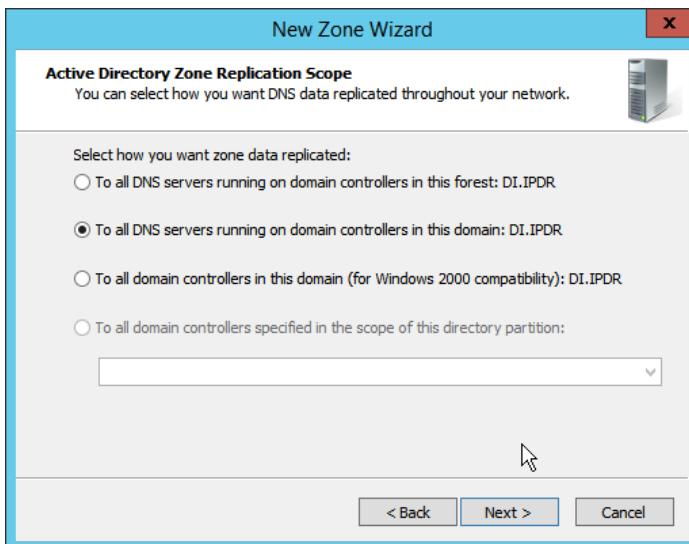
5. Click **Next**.

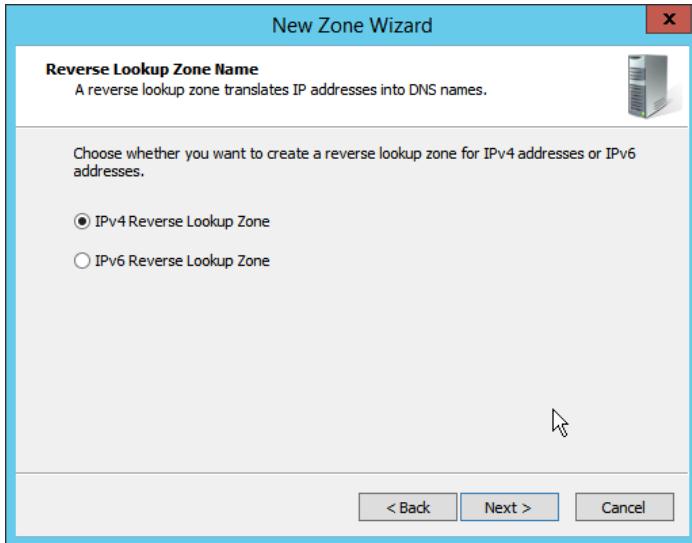


440

441

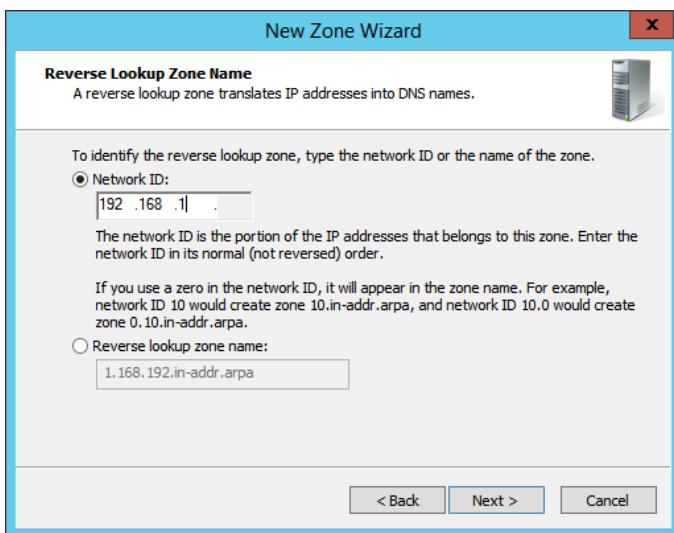
6. Click **Next**.





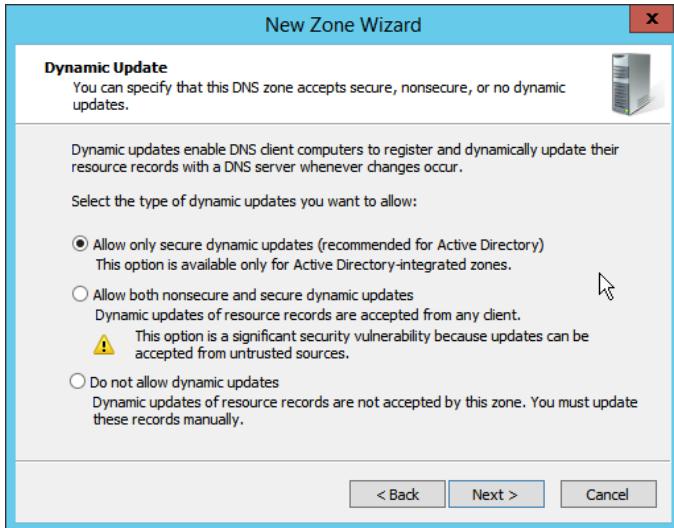
442

7. Click **Next**.
8. Enter the first three parts of the IP address of the Active Directory (AD)/DNS server (for example, 192.168.1).



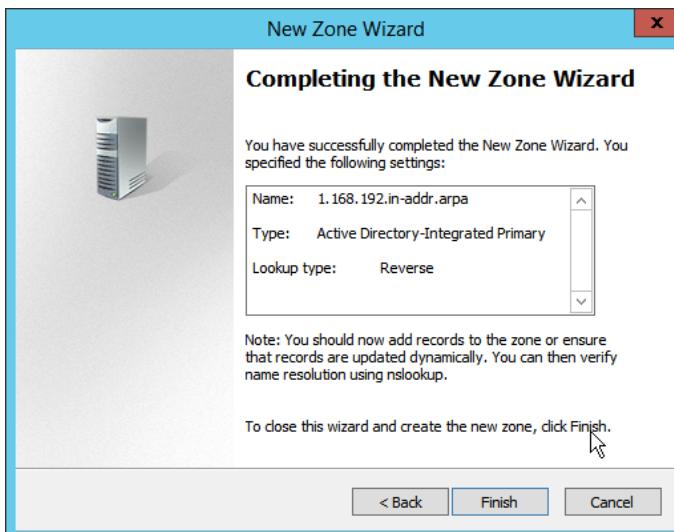
446

9. Click **Next**.



448

449

10. Click **Next**.

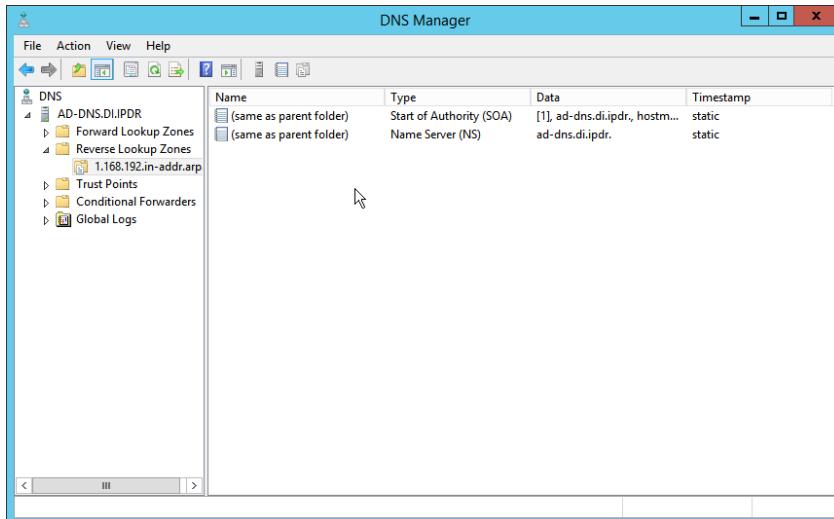
450

451

11. Click **Finish**.

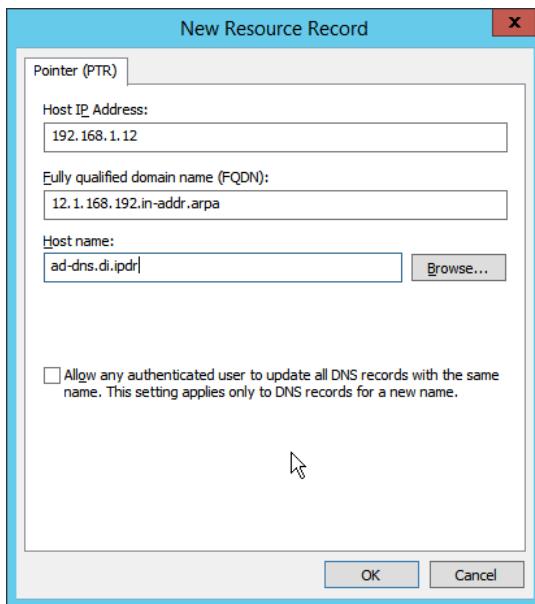
452

12. Click on the newly created reverse lookup zone.



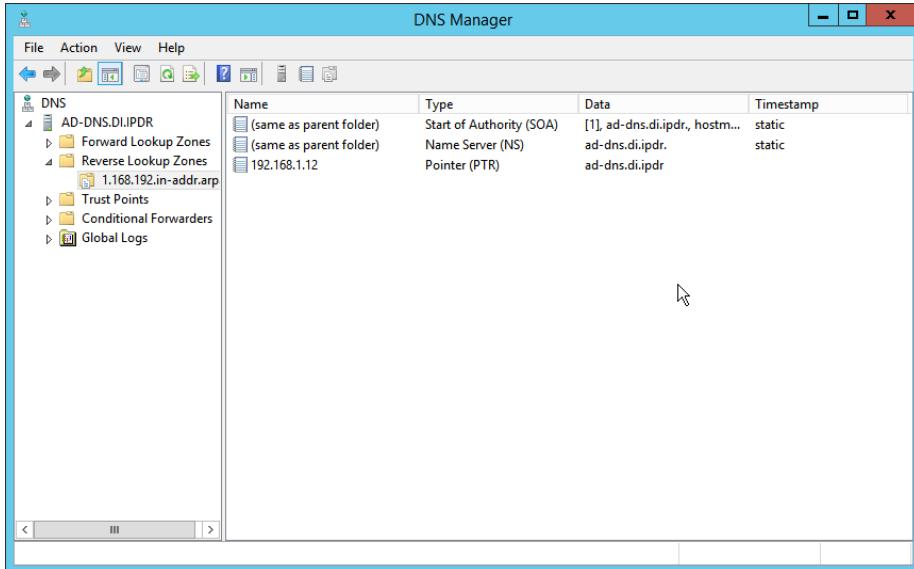
453

- 454 13. Right-click in the window and select **New Pointer (PTR)....**
- 455 14. Enter the **IP address** of the AD/DNS server.
- 456 15. Enter the **hostname** of the AD/DNS server.



457

- 458 16. Click **OK**.



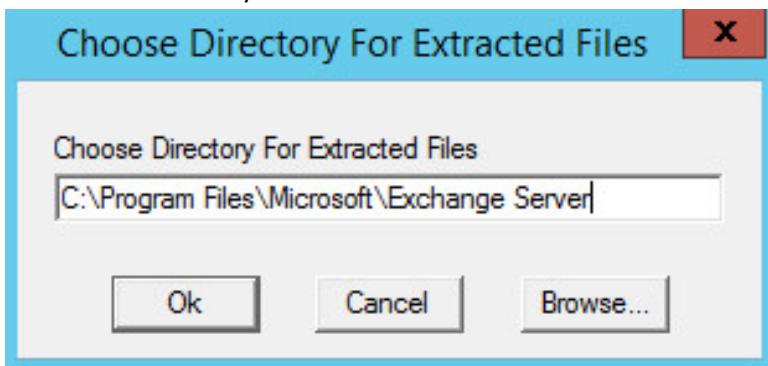
459

460 2.2 Microsoft Exchange Server

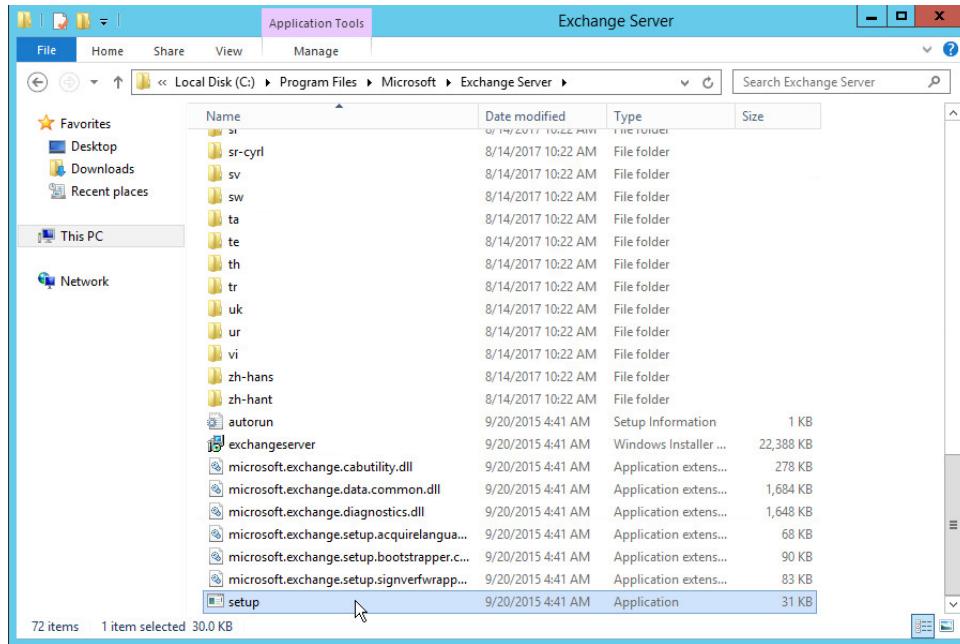
461 As part of our enterprise emulation, we include a Microsoft Exchange server. This section covers the
 462 installation and configuration process used to set up Microsoft Exchange on a Windows Server 2012 R2
 463 machine.

464 2.2.1 Install Microsoft Exchange

- 465 1. Run **Exchange2016-x64.exe**.
- 466 2. Choose the directory for the extracted files.

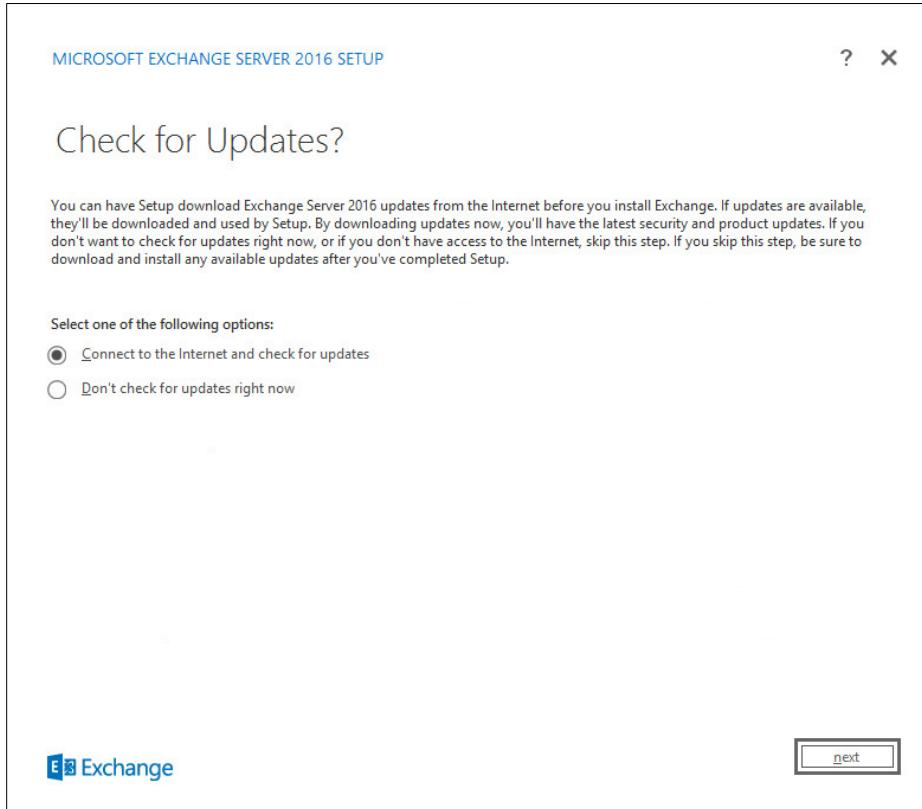


- 467 3. Click **OK**.
- 468



469

- 470 4. Enter the directory and run **setup.exe**.
471 5. Select **Connect to the Internet and check for updates**.

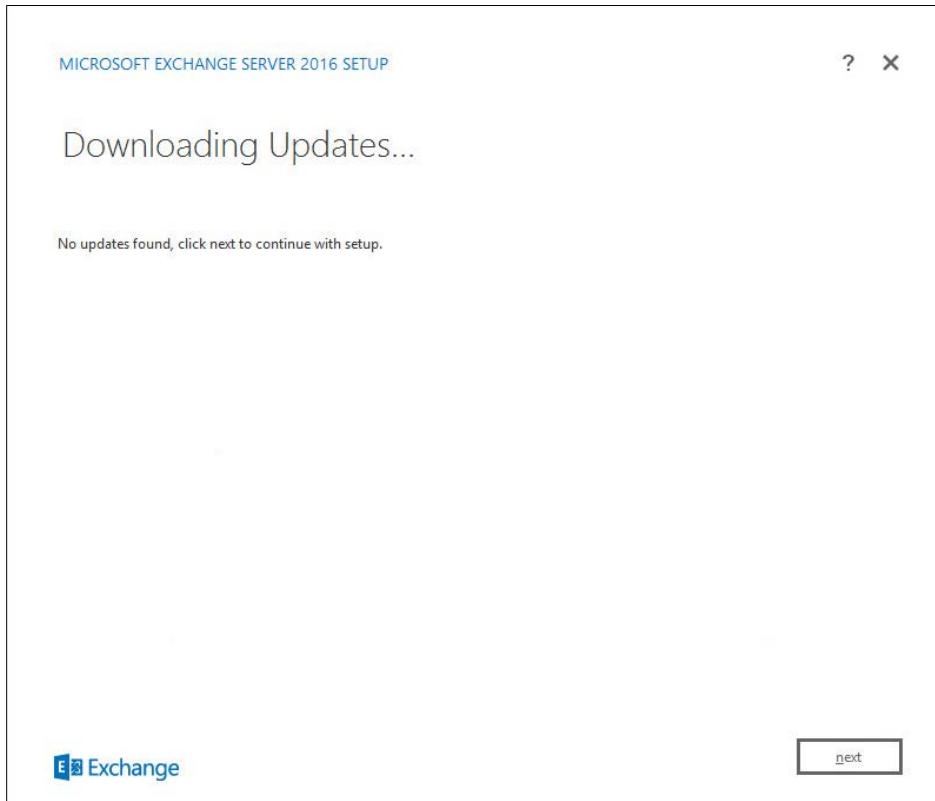


472

473

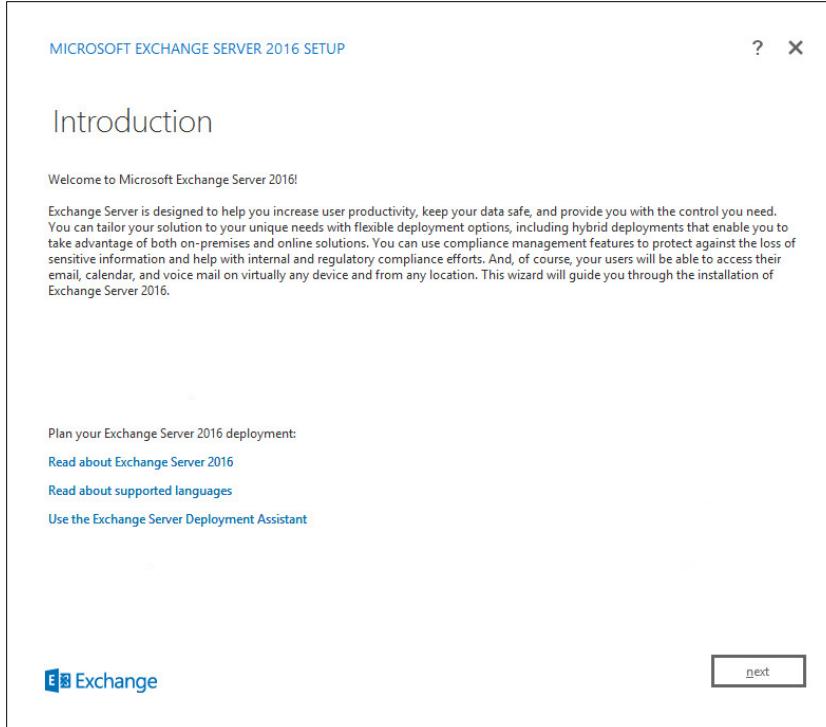
474

6. Click **Next**.
7. Wait for the check to finish.



475

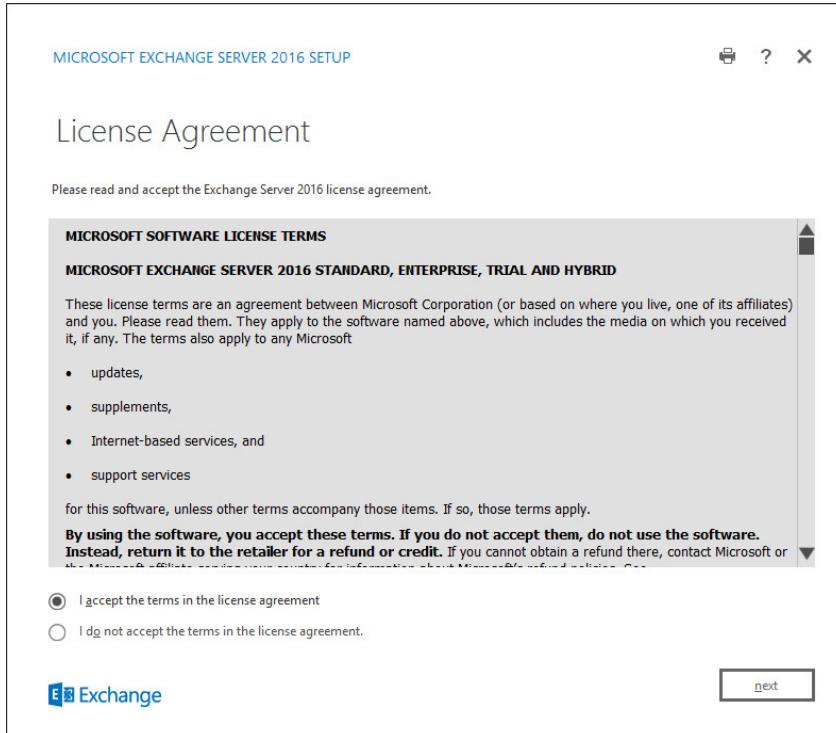
- 476 8. Click **Next**.
477 9. Wait for the copying to finish.



478

479 10. Click **Next**.

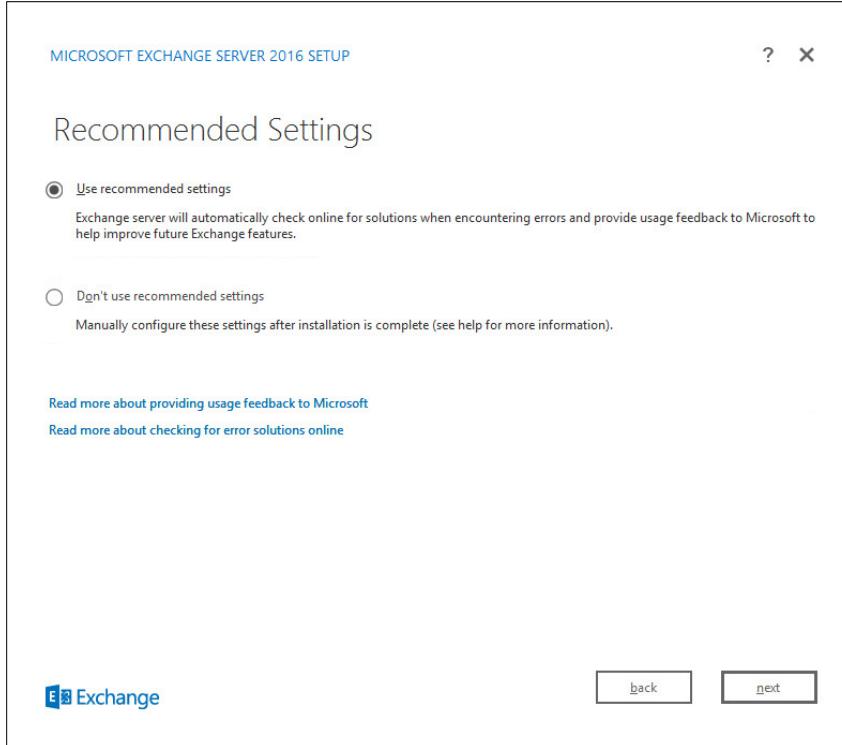
480 11. Click **I accept the terms in the license agreement.**



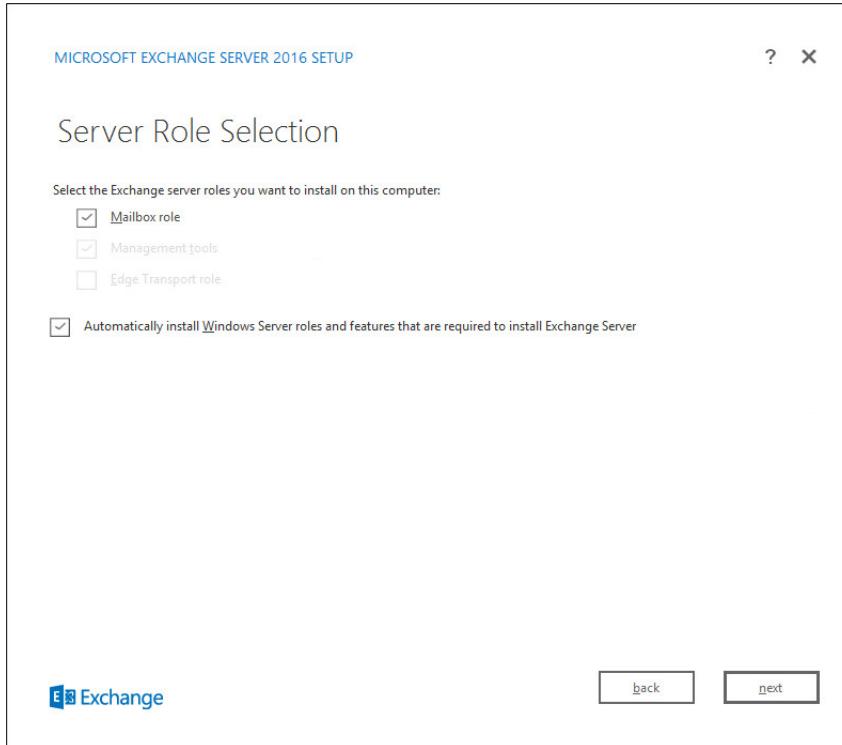
481

482 12. Click **Next**.

483 13. Click **Use Recommended Settings**.

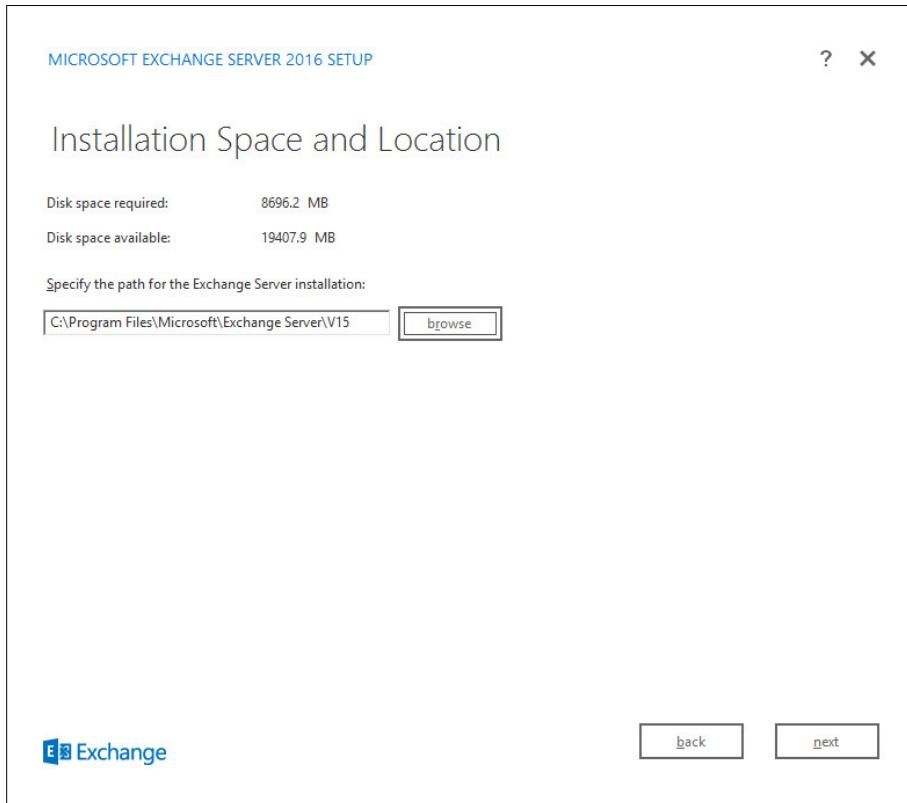


- 484
485 14. Click **Next**.
- 486 15. Check **Mailbox role**.
- 487 16. Check **Automatically install Windows Server roles and features that are required to install Exchange Server**.
- 488



489
490
491

17. Click **Next**.
18. Specify the installation path for MS Exchange.



492

493

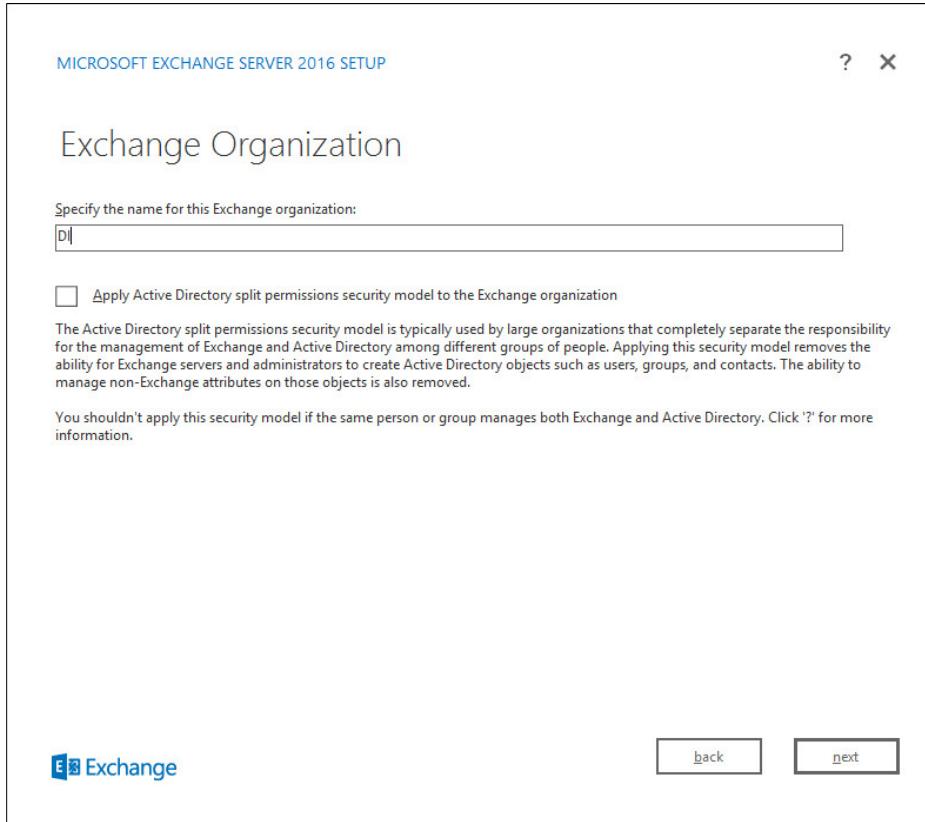
19. Click **Next**.

494

20. Specify the name for the Exchange organization, e.g., DI.

495

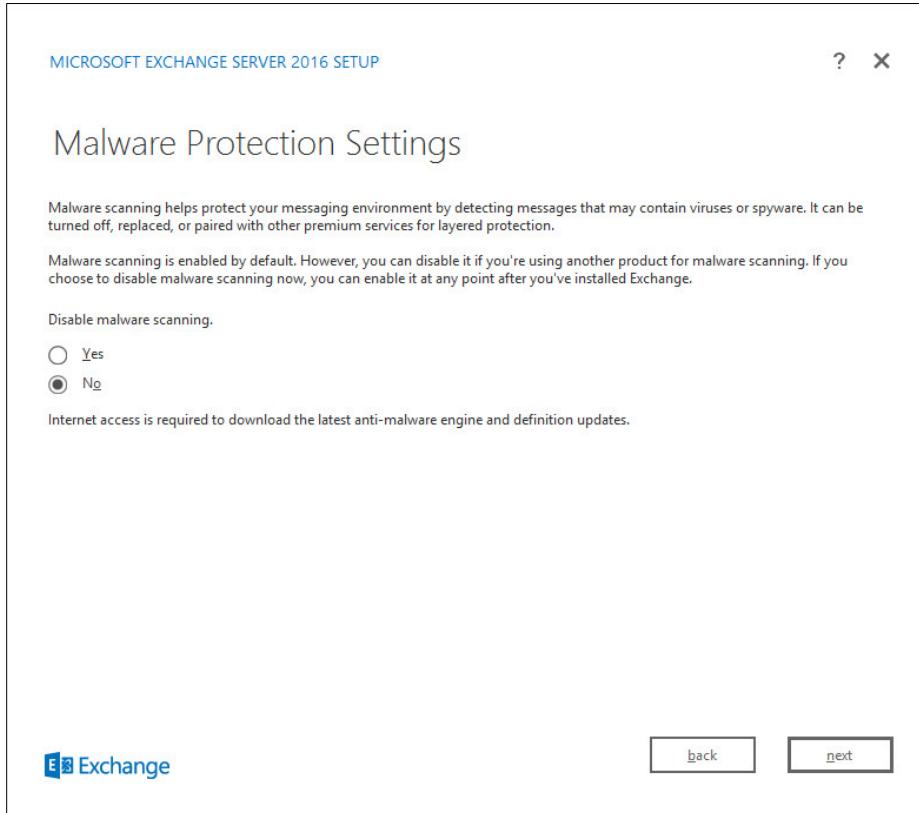
21. Decide whether to apply split permissions based on the needs of the enterprise.



496

497 22. Click **Next**.

498 23. Select **No**.



499

500

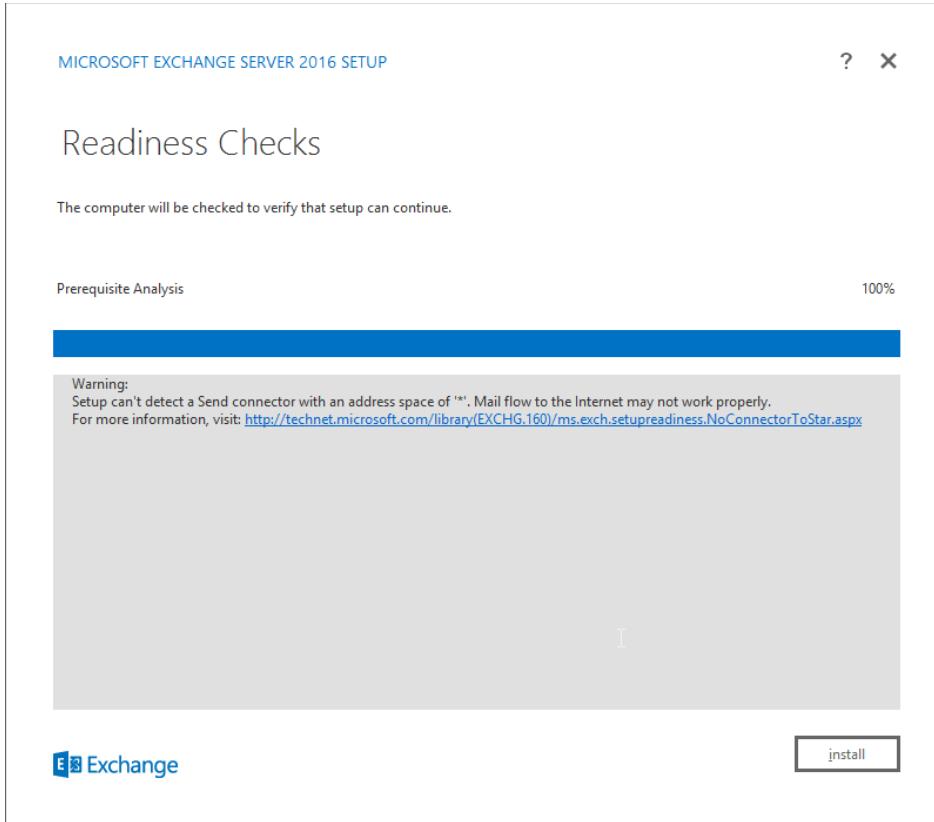
24. Click **Next**.

501

25. Install any **prerequisites** listed.

502

26. If necessary, restart the server and rerun **setup.exe**, following through steps 3–22 again.



503
504

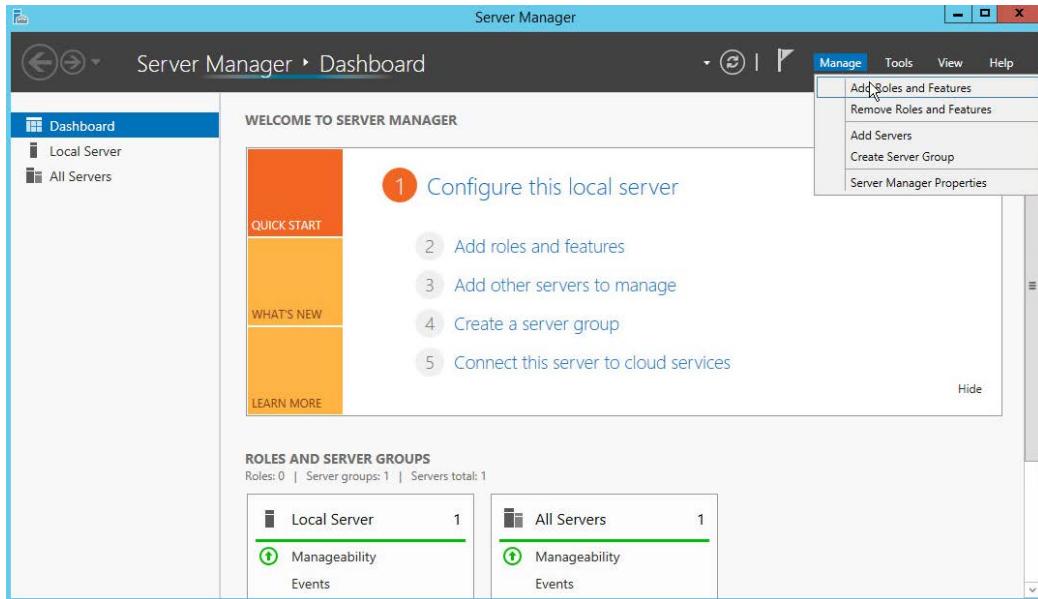
27. Click **Install**.

505 **2.3 Windows Server Hyper-V Role**

506 As part of our simulated enterprise, we include a Windows Hyper-V server. This section covers the
507 instructions for installing the Windows Server Hyper-V Role on a Windows Server 2012 R2 machine.
508 The instructions for enabling the Windows Server Hyper-V Role are retrieved from
509 [https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh846766\(v=ws.11\).aspx](https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh846766(v=ws.11).aspx) and are replicated below for
510 preservation and ease of use.

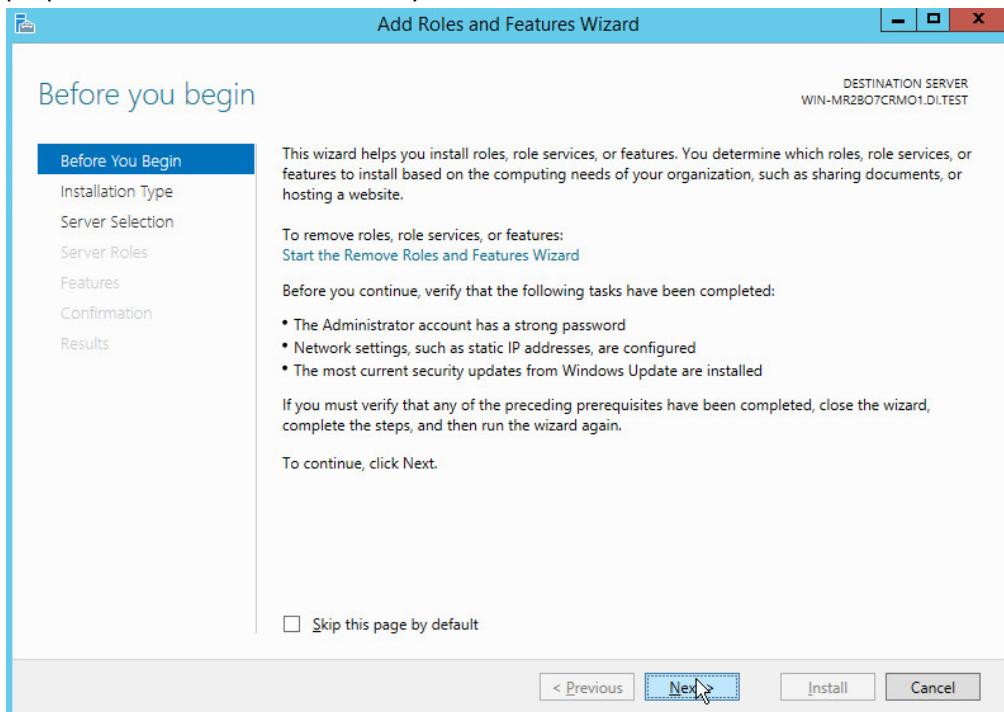
511 **2.3.1 Production Installation**

512 1. In **Server Manager** on the **Manage** menu, click **Add Roles and Features**.

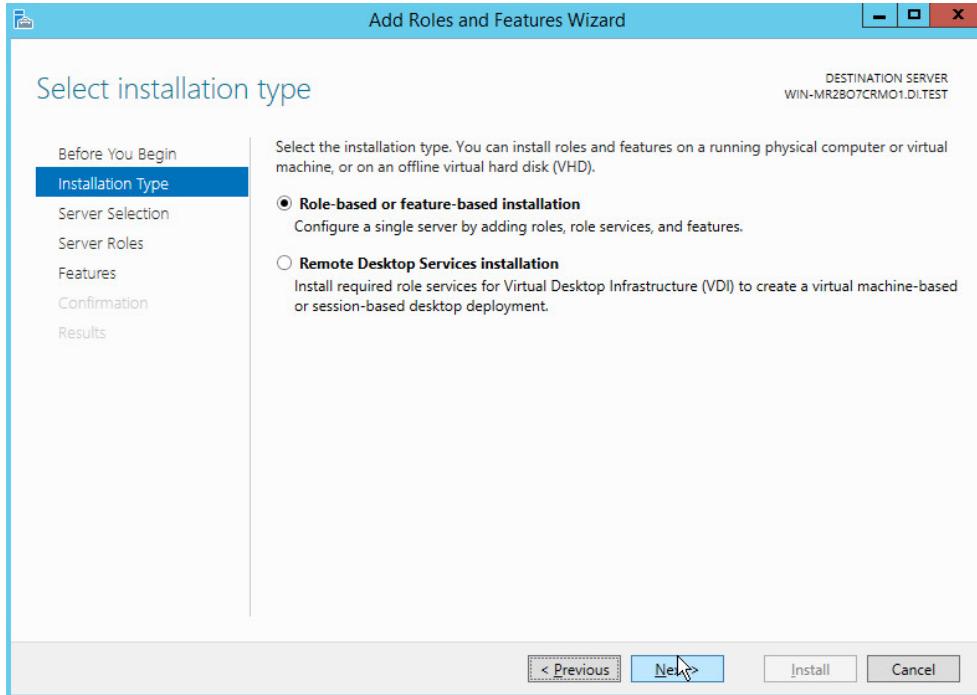


513
514
515

2. On the **Before you begin** page, verify that your destination server and network environment are prepared for the role and feature you want to install.



- 516
517
518
3. Click **Next**.
 4. On the **Select installation type** page, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**.

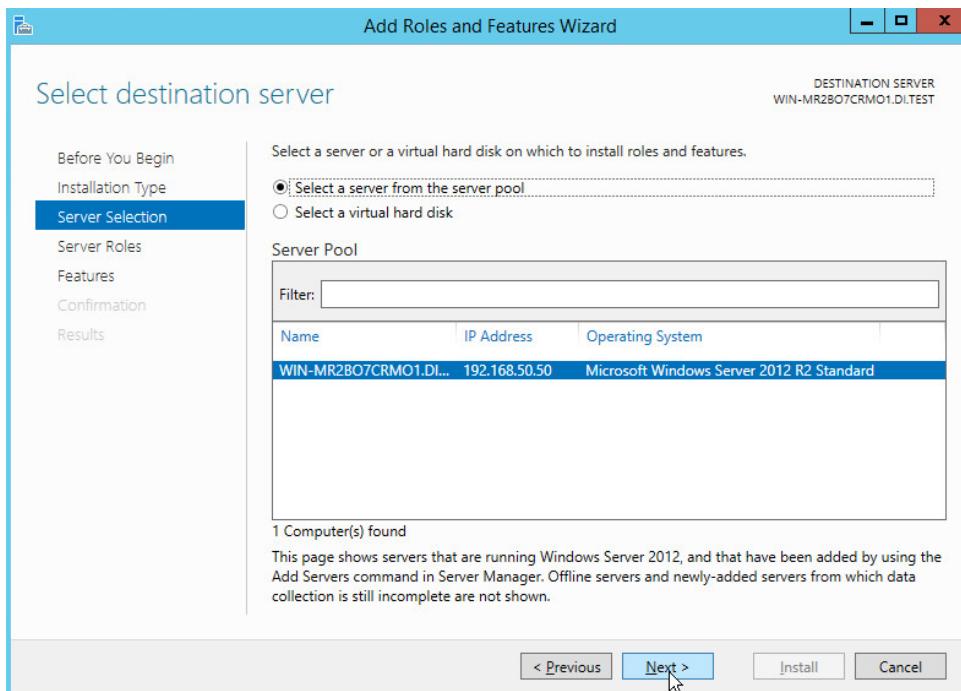


519

520

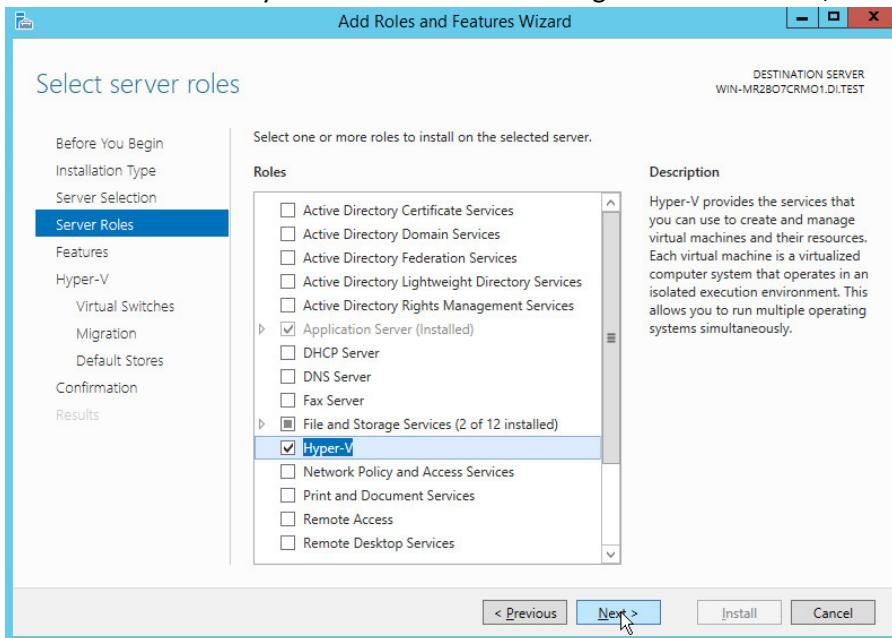
521

5. Click **Next**.
6. On the **Select destination server** page, select a server from the server pool.

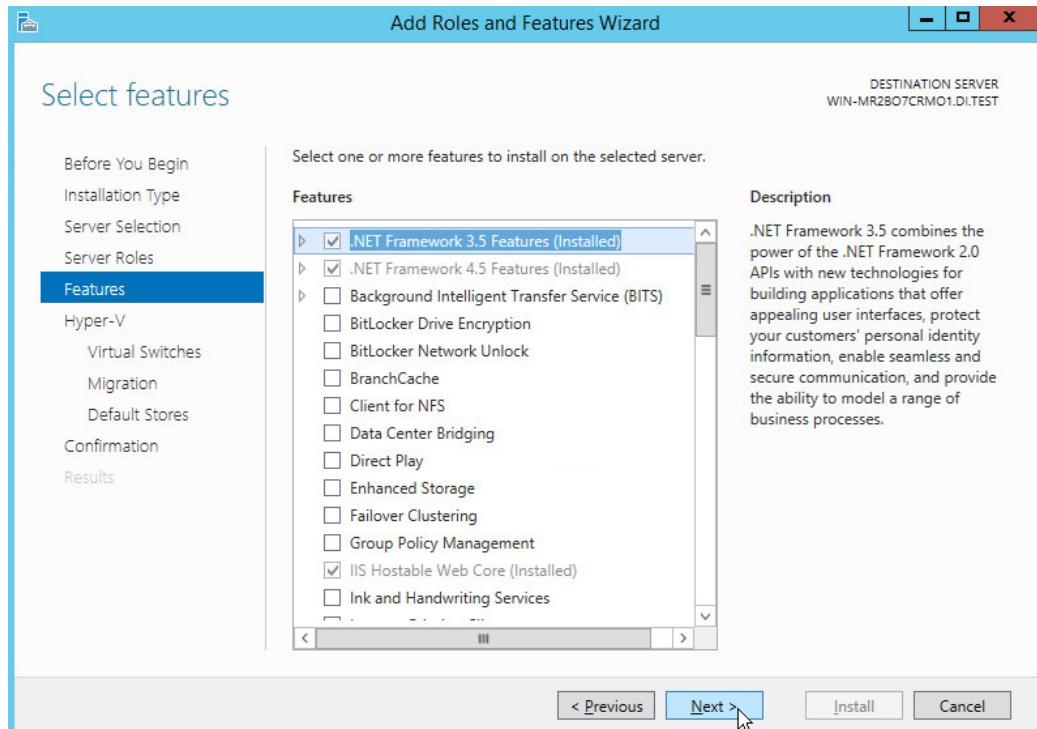


522

- 523 7. Click **Next**.
- 524 8. On the **Select server roles** page, select **Hyper-V**.
- 525 9. To add the tools that you use to create and manage virtual machines, click **Add Features**.



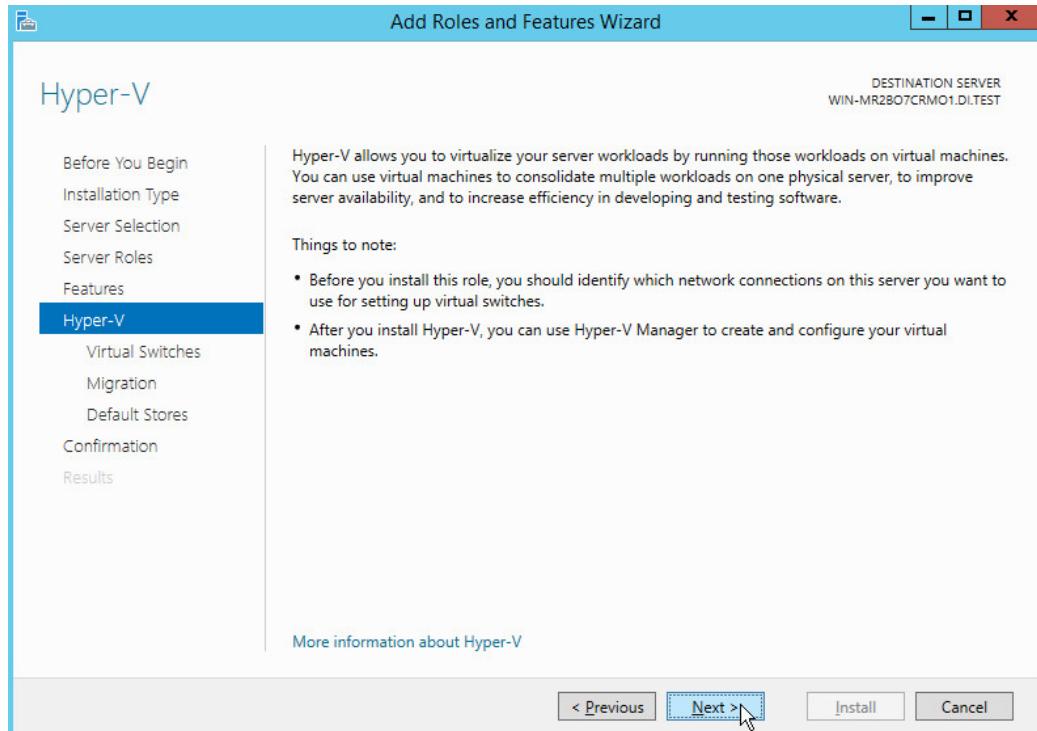
- 526 10. Click **Next**.
- 527



528

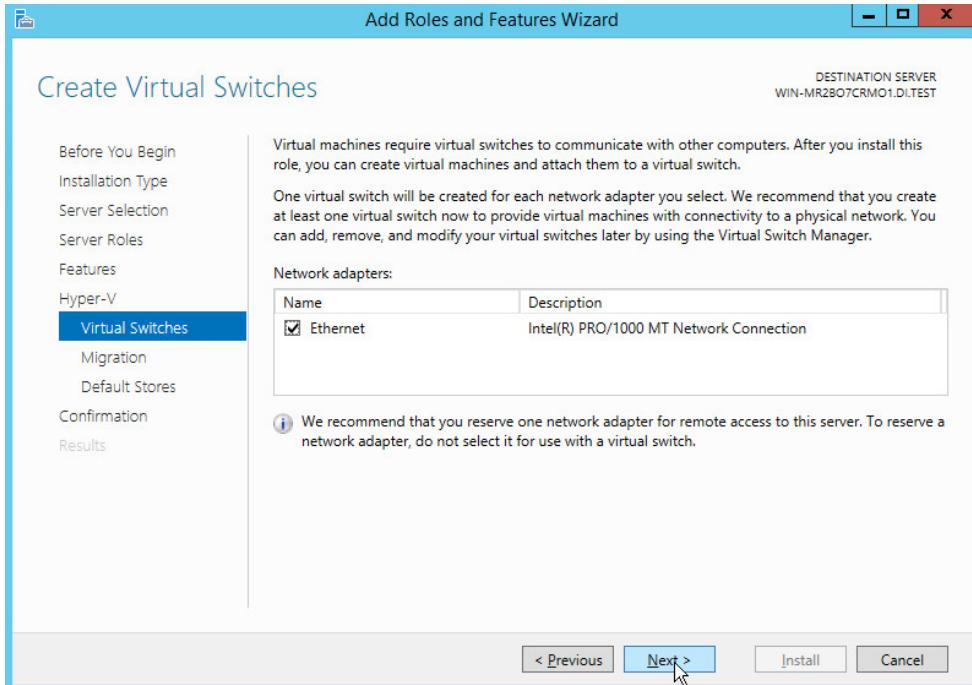
529

11. Click **Next**.



530

- 531 12. Click **Next**.
- 532 13. On the **Create Virtual Switches** page, select the appropriate options.

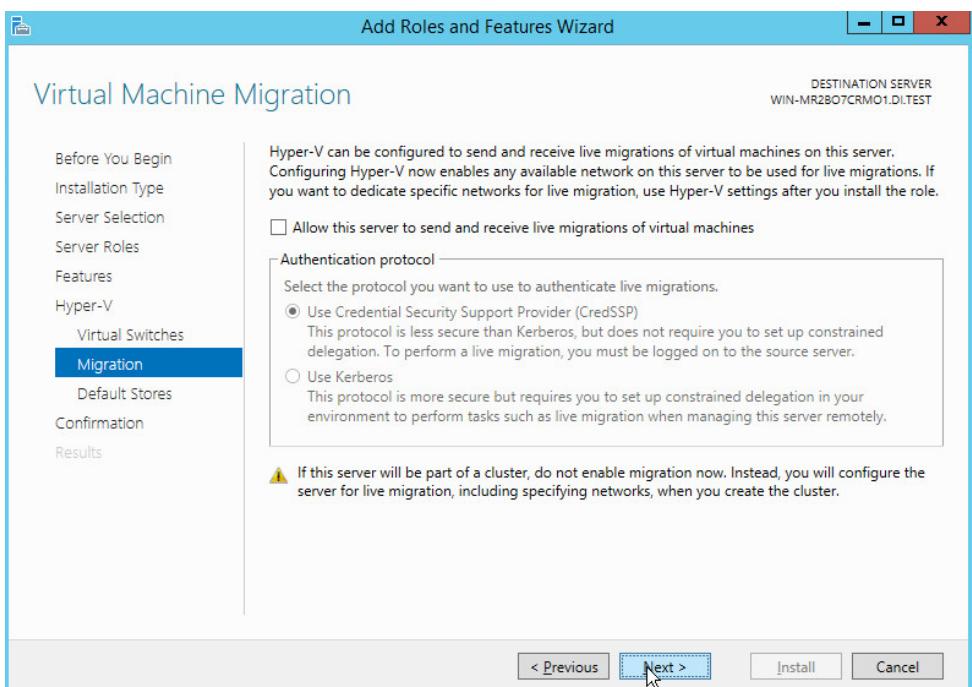


533

534

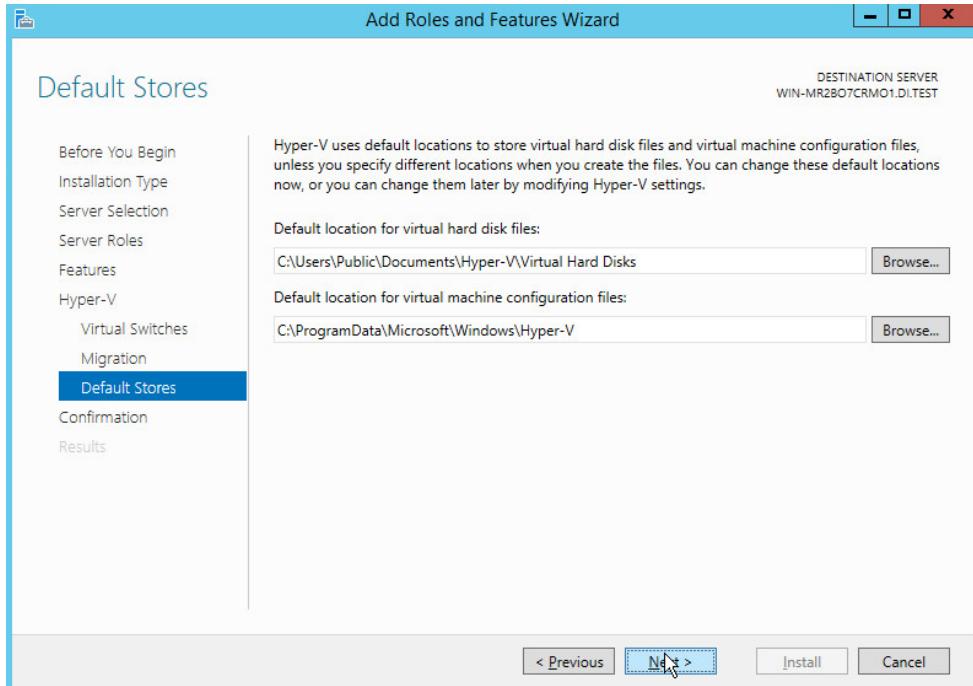
14. Click **Next**.

535

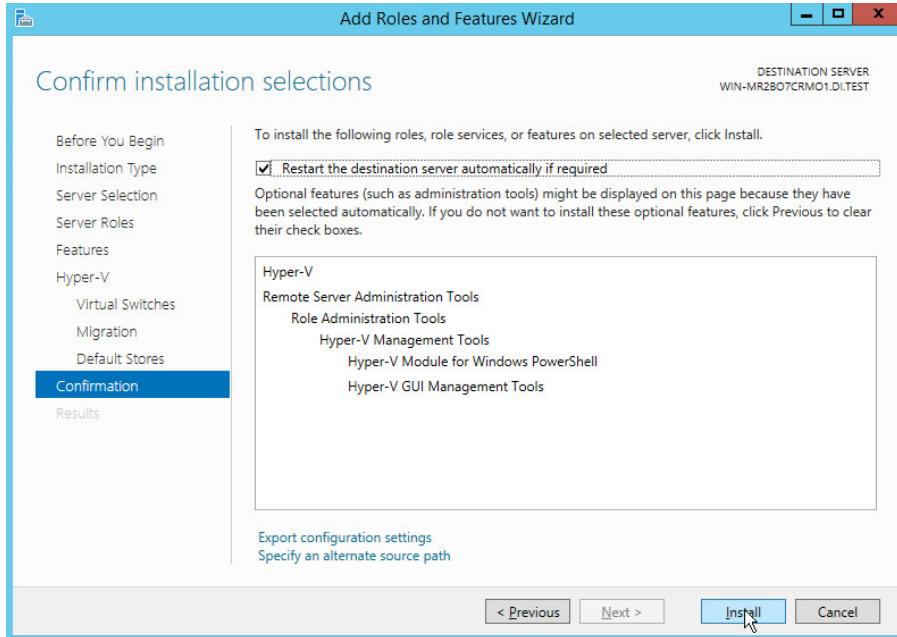
15. On the **Virtual Machine Migration** page, select the appropriate options.

536

- 537 16. Click **Next**.
- 538 17. On the **Default Stores** page, select the appropriate options.



- 539
- 540 18. Click **Next**.
- 541 19. On the **Confirm installation selections** page, select **Restart the destination server automatically if required**.
- 542



543

- 544 20. Click **Install**.
- 545 21. When installation is finished, verify that Hyper-V installed correctly. Open the **All Servers** page
546 in Server Manager, and select a server on which you installed Hyper-V. Check the **Roles and**
547 **Features** tile on the page for the selected server.

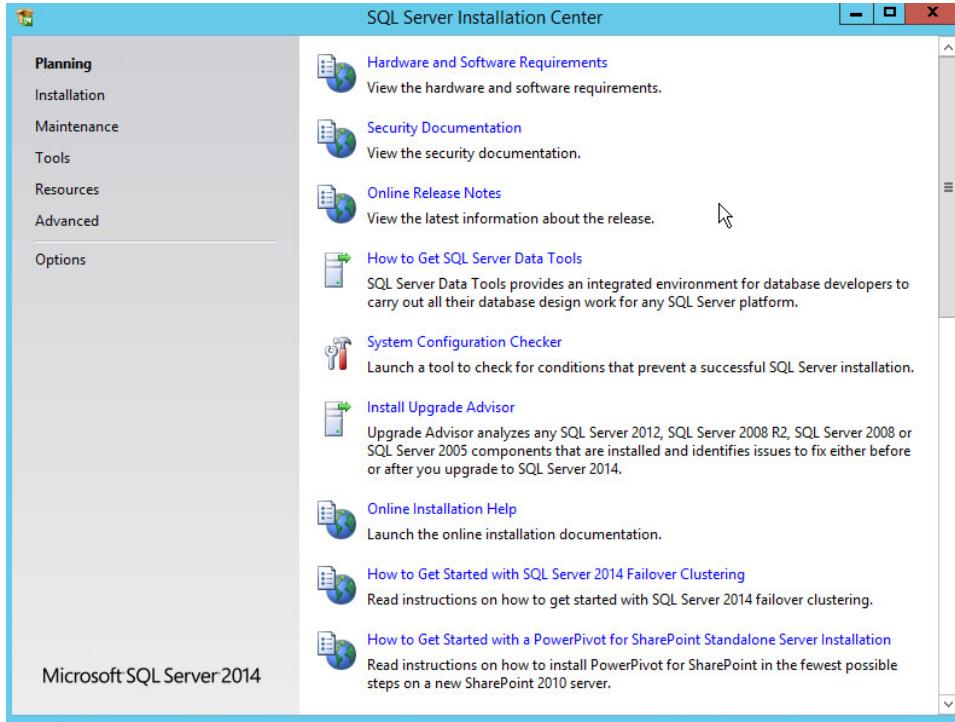
548 2.4 MS SQL Server

- 549 As part of both our enterprise emulation and data integrity solution, we include a Microsoft SQL Server.
550 This section covers the installation and configuration process used to set up Microsoft SQL Server on a
551 Windows Server 2012 R2 machine.

552 2.4.1 Install and Configure MS SQL

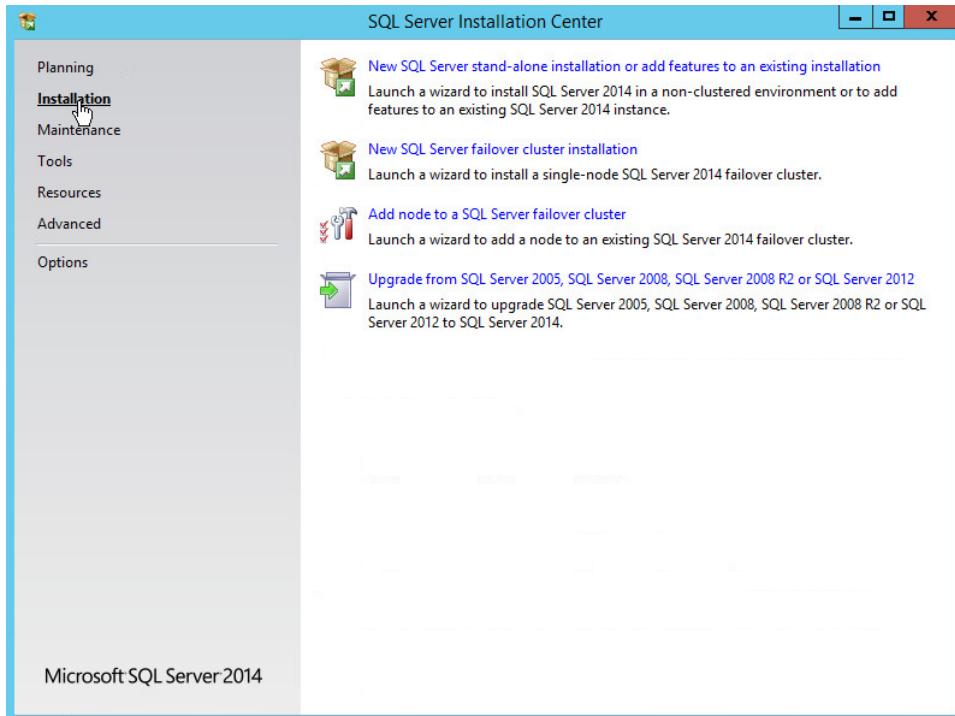
- 553 1. Acquire **SQL Server 2014 installation media**.
- 554 2. Locate the installation media in the machine and click on **SQL2014_x64_ENU** to launch **SQL**
555 **Server Installation Center**.

556



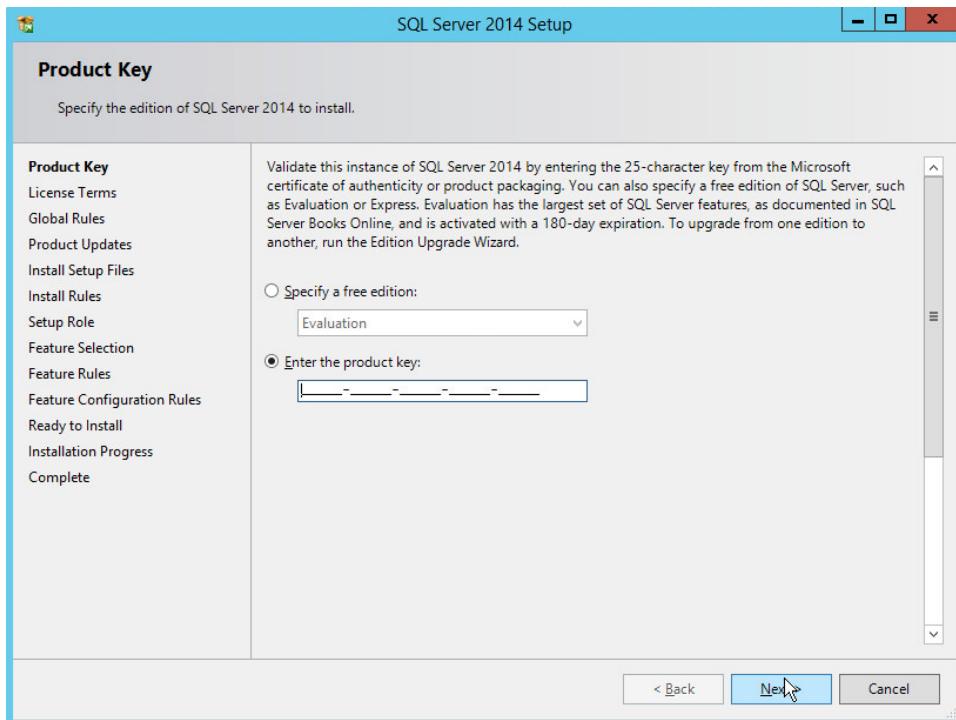
557

3. On the left menu, select **Installation**.

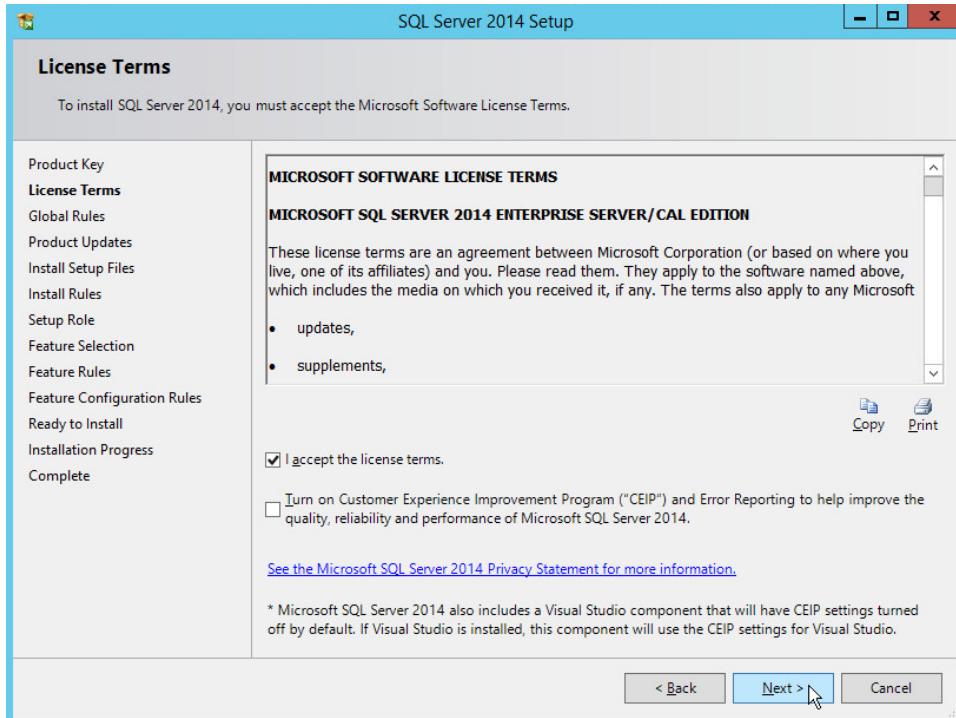


558

- 559 4. Select **New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation**. This
560 will launch the SQL Server 2014 setup.
561 5. In the **Product Key** section, enter your product key.

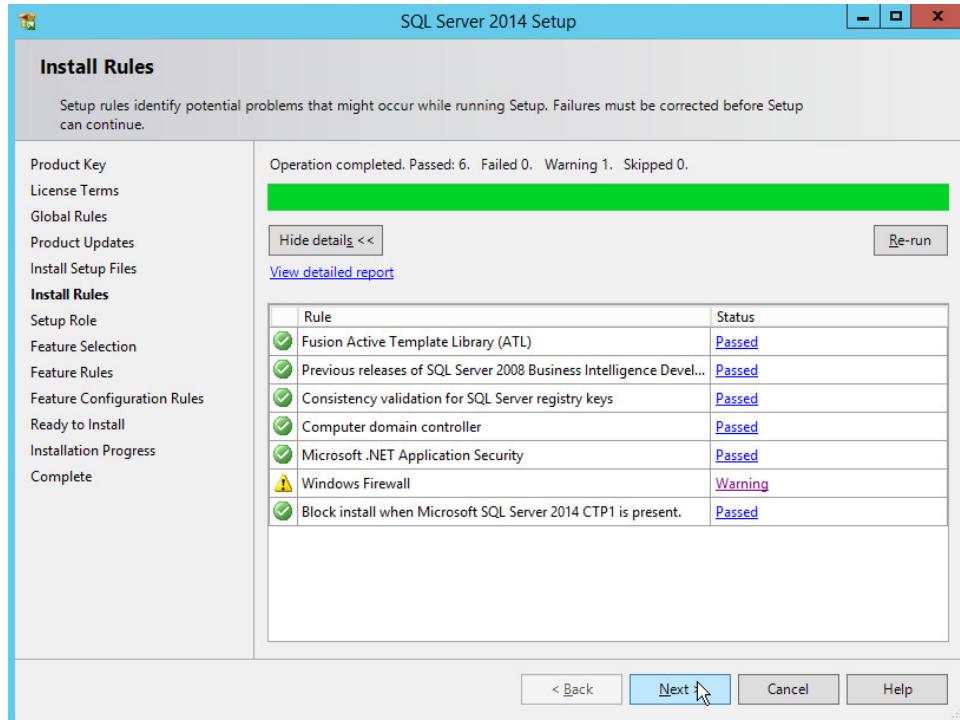


- 562
563 6. Click **Next**.
564 7. In the **License Terms** section, read and click **I accept the license terms**.



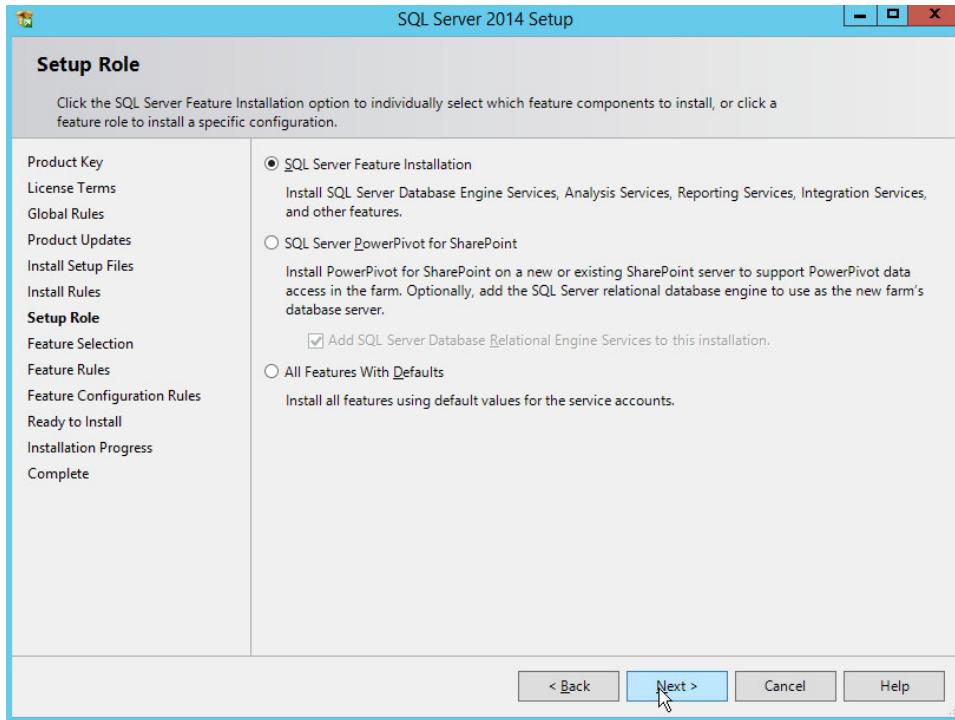
565

- 566 8. Click **Next**.
- 567 9. In the **Install Rules** section, note and resolve any further conflicts.



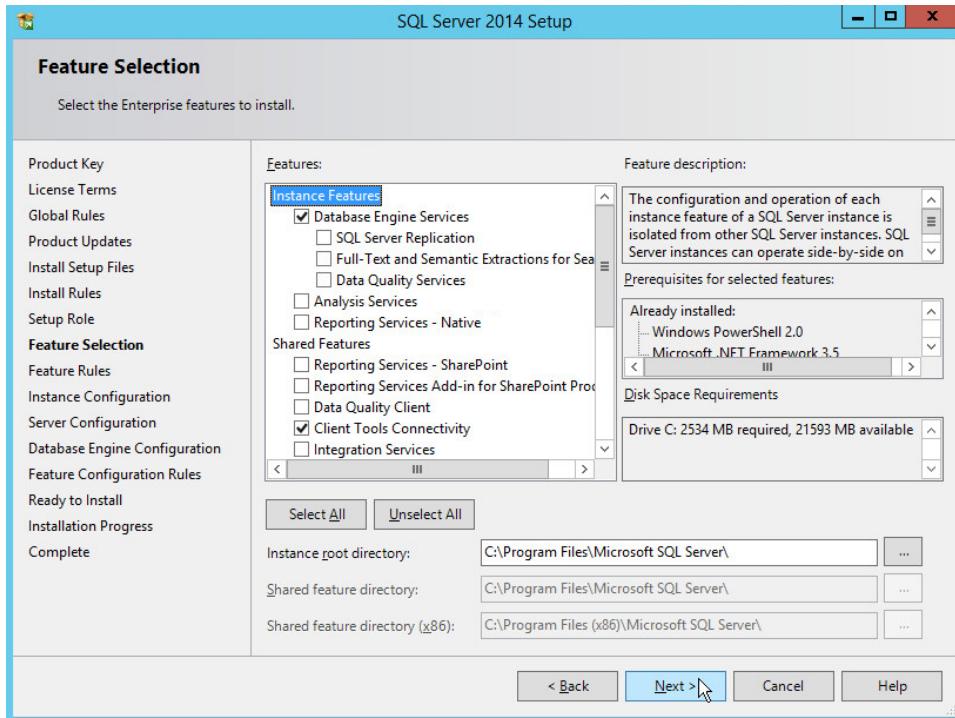
568

- 569 10. Click **Next**.
- 570 11. In the **Setup Role** section, select **SQL Server Feature Installation**.



571

- 572 12. Click **Next**.
- 573 13. In the **Feature Selection** section, select the following options:
- Database Engine Services**
 - Client Tools Connectivity**
 - Client Tools Backwards Compatibility**
 - Client Tools SDK**
 - Management Tools – Basic**
 - Management Tools – Complete**
 - SQL Client Connectivity SDK**
 - Any other desired features**



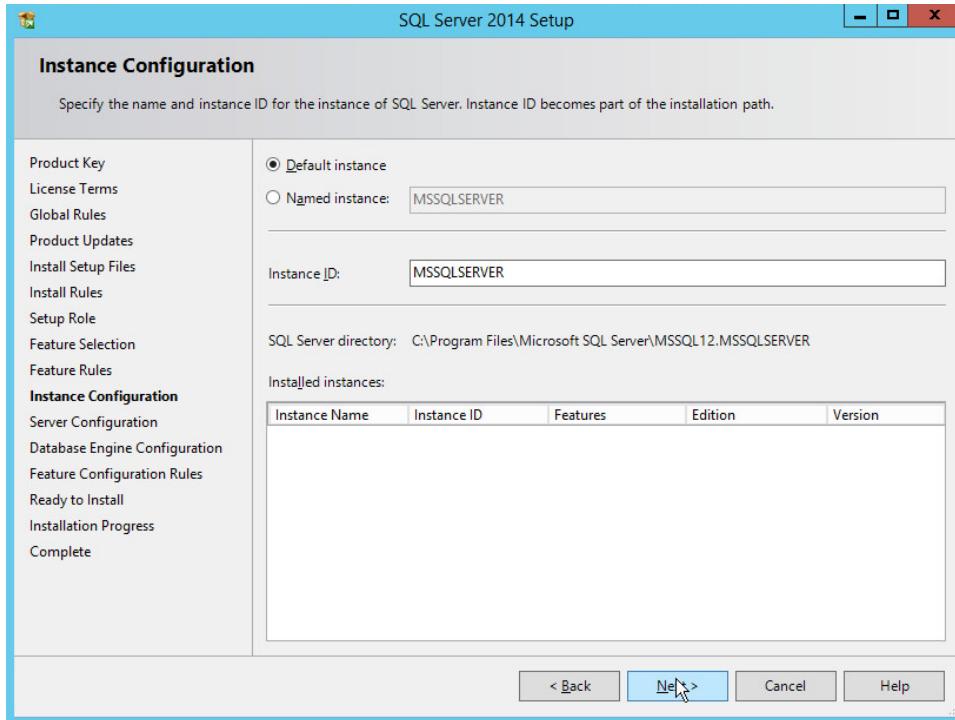
582

583

14. Click **Next**.

584

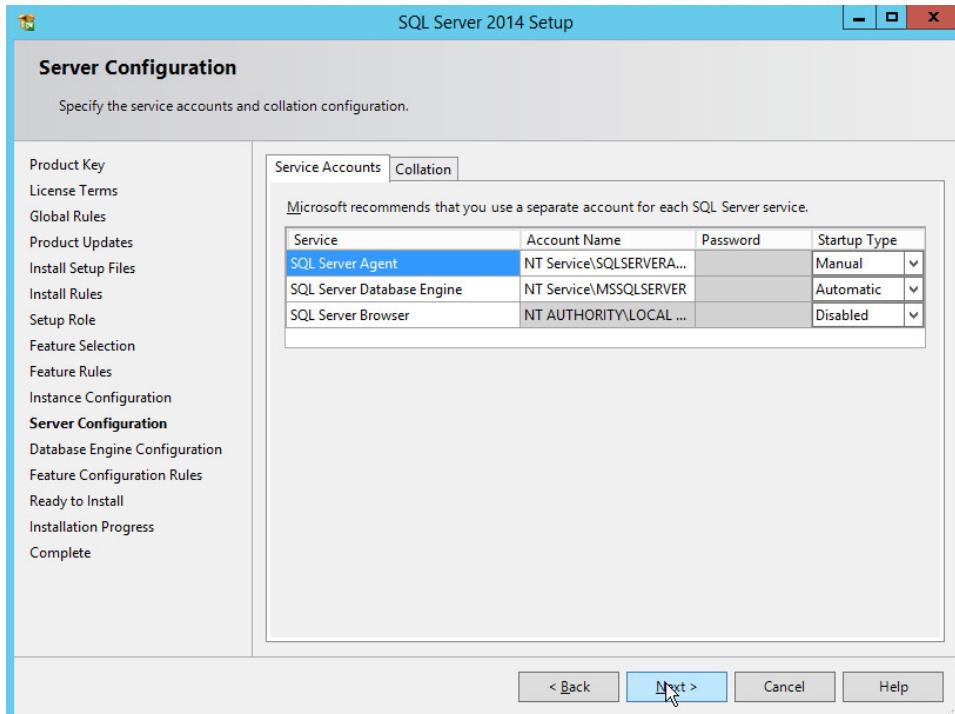
15. In the **Instance Configuration** section, select **Default instance**.



585

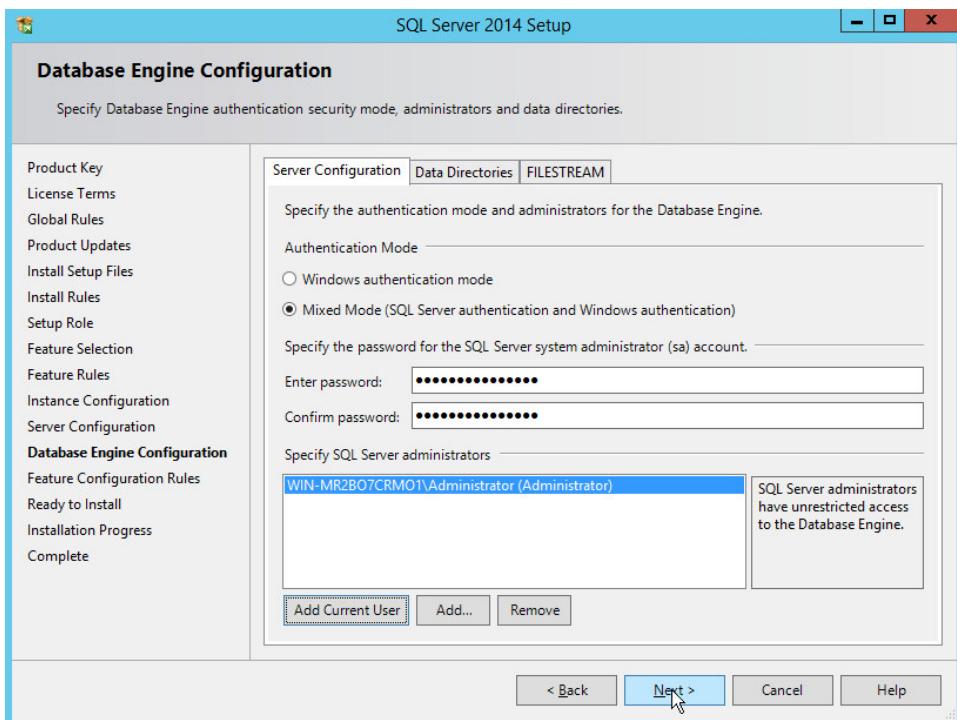
586

16. Click Next.



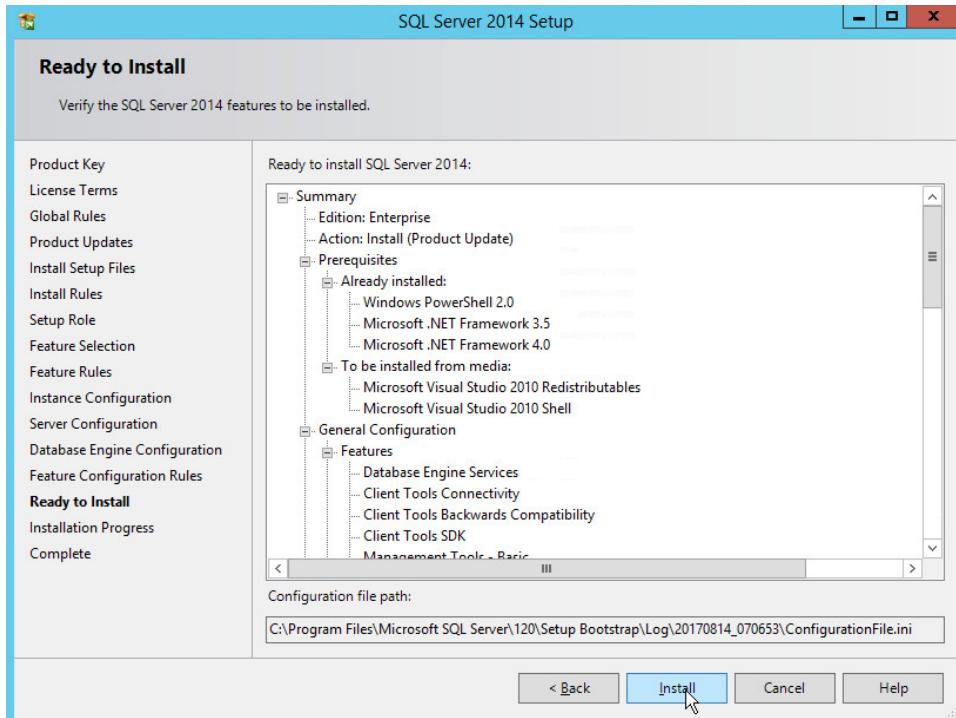
587

- 588 17. In the **Server Configuration** section, click **Next**.
589 18. In the **Database Engine Configuration** section, make sure **Mixed Mode** is selected.
590 19. Add all desired users as Administrators under **Specify SQL Server Administrators** by pressing
591 **Add Current User**.
592 a. For Domain accounts, simply type in **\$DOMAINNAME\\$USERNAME** into **Enter the**
593 **object names to select** text box.
594 b. Click **OK**.
595 c. For local computer accounts, click on **locations** and select the computer's name.
596 d. Click **OK**.
597 e. Type the username into the **Enter the object names to select** text box.
598 f. Once you are finished adding users, click **Next**.



599

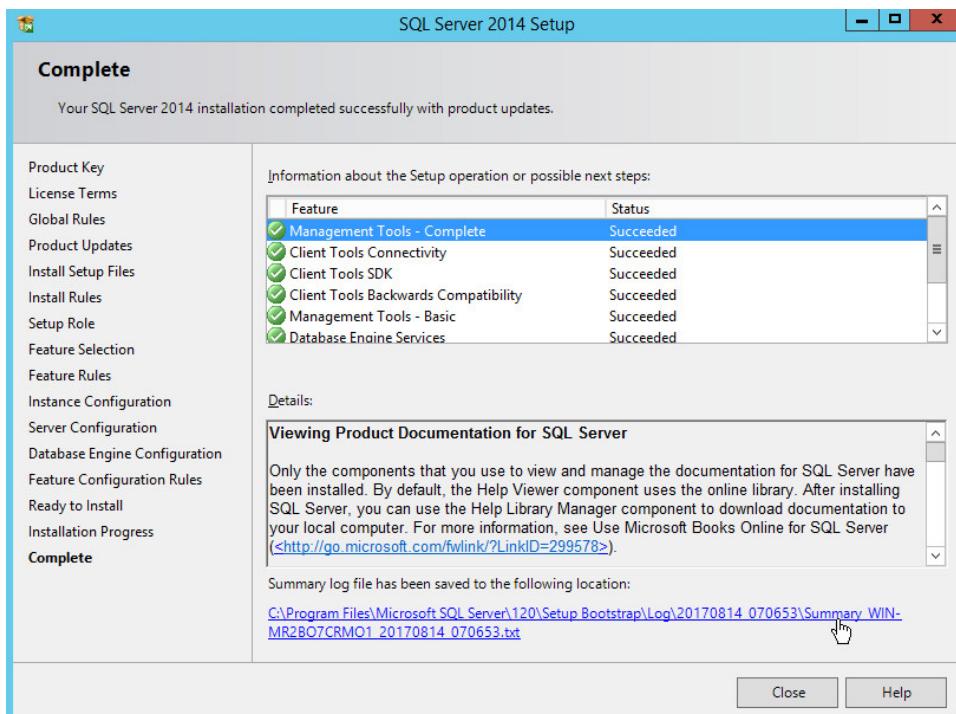
- 600 20. In the **Ready to install** section, verify the installation and click **Install**.



601

602

21. Wait for the installation to finish.

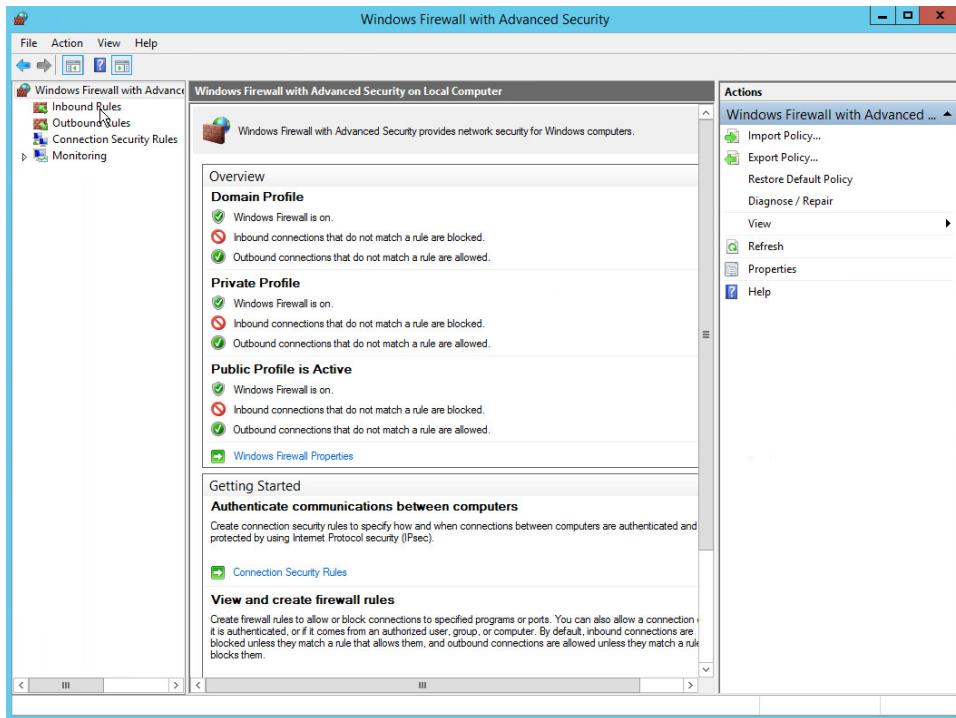


603

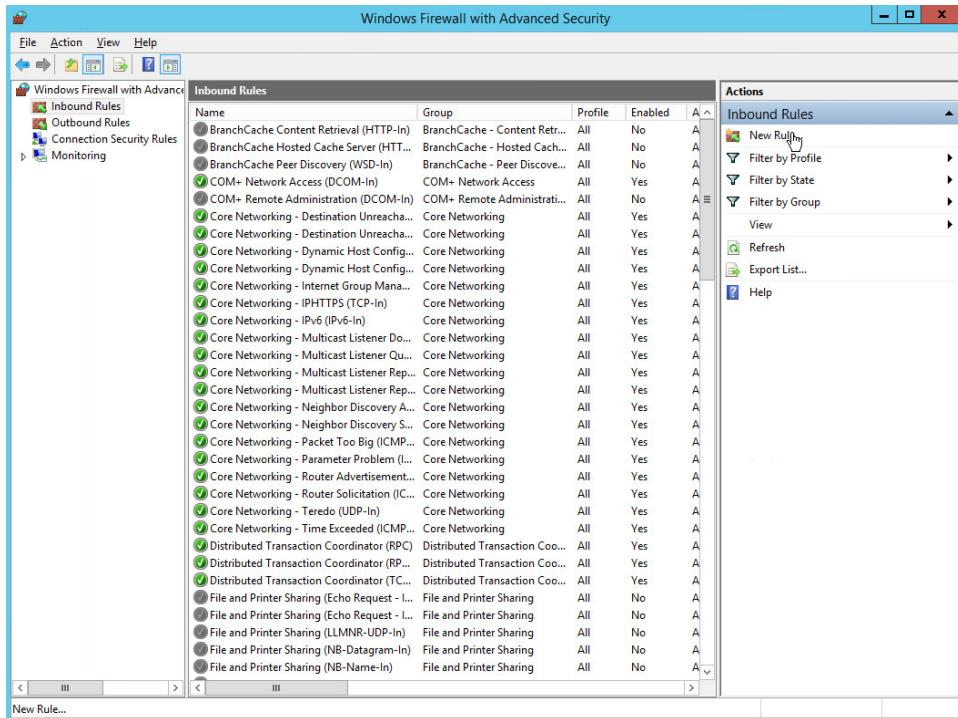
604 22. Click **Close**.

605 2.4.2 Open Port on Firewall

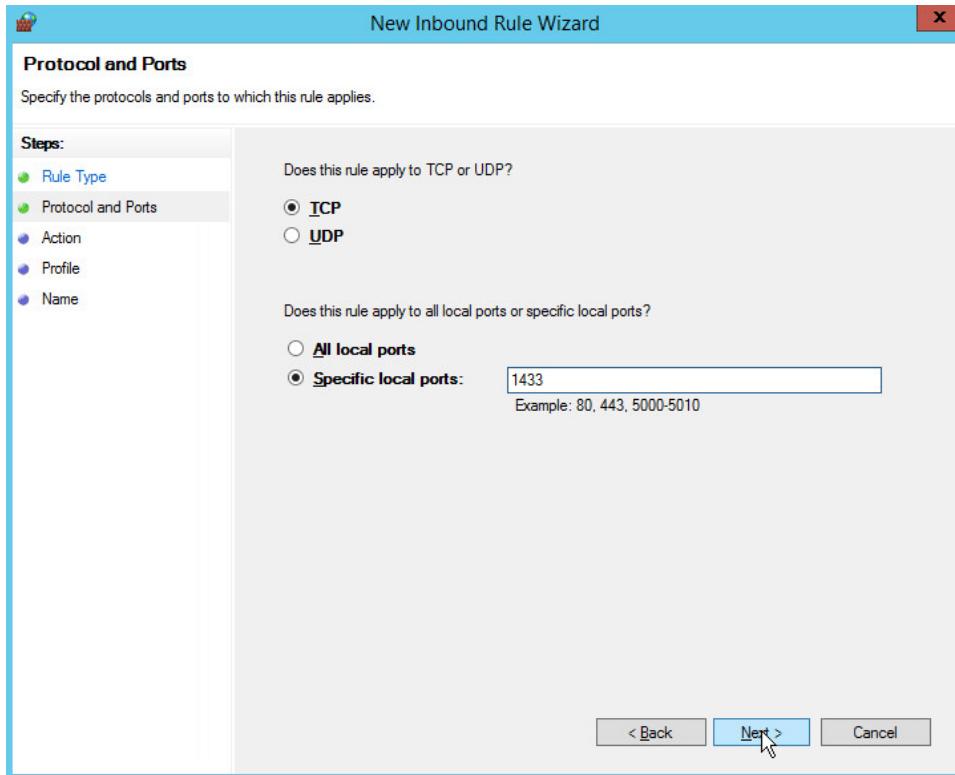
606 1. Open **Windows Firewall with Advanced Security**.



607
608 2. Click **Inbound Rules**.

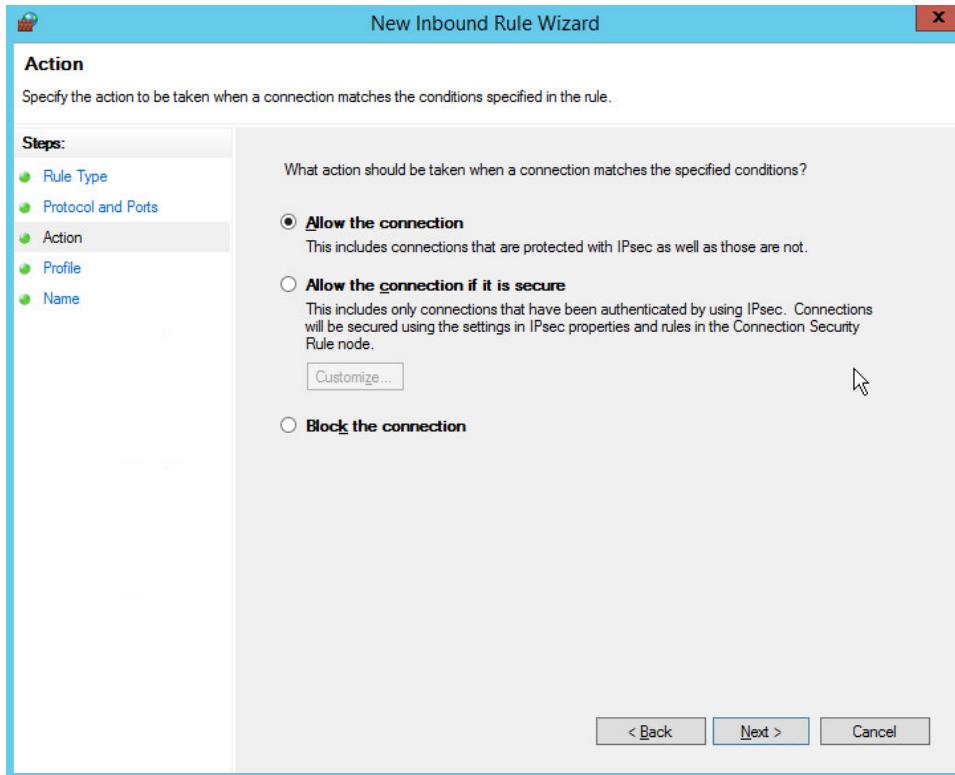


609
610 3. Click **New Rule**.
611 4. Select **Port**.
612 5. Click **Next**.
613 6. Select **TCP** and **Specific local ports**.
614 7. Type **1433** into the text field.



615

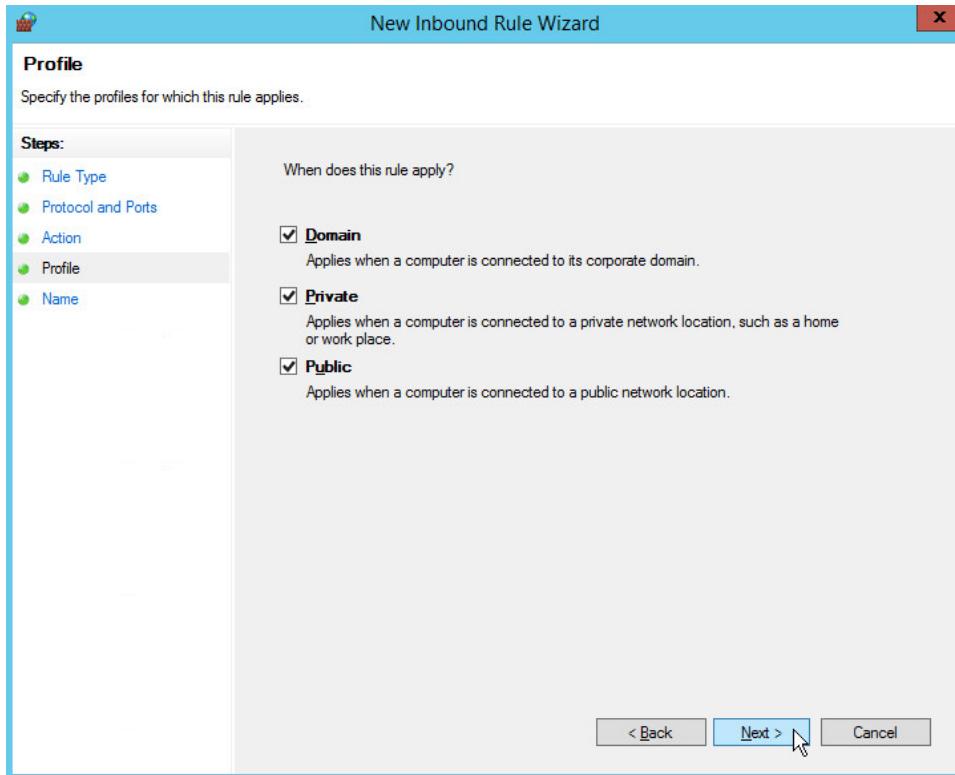
616 8. Click **Next**.617 9. Select **Allow the connection**.



618

619 10. Click **Next**.

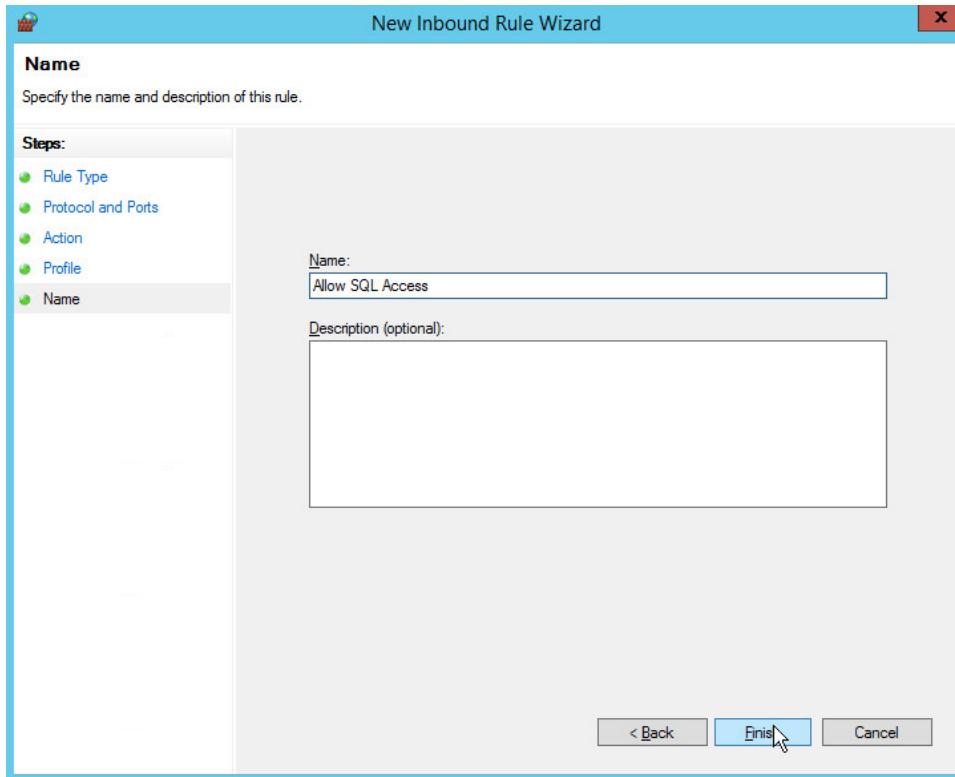
620 11. Select all applicable locations.



621

622 12. Click **Next**.

623 13. Name the rule **Allow SQL Access**.

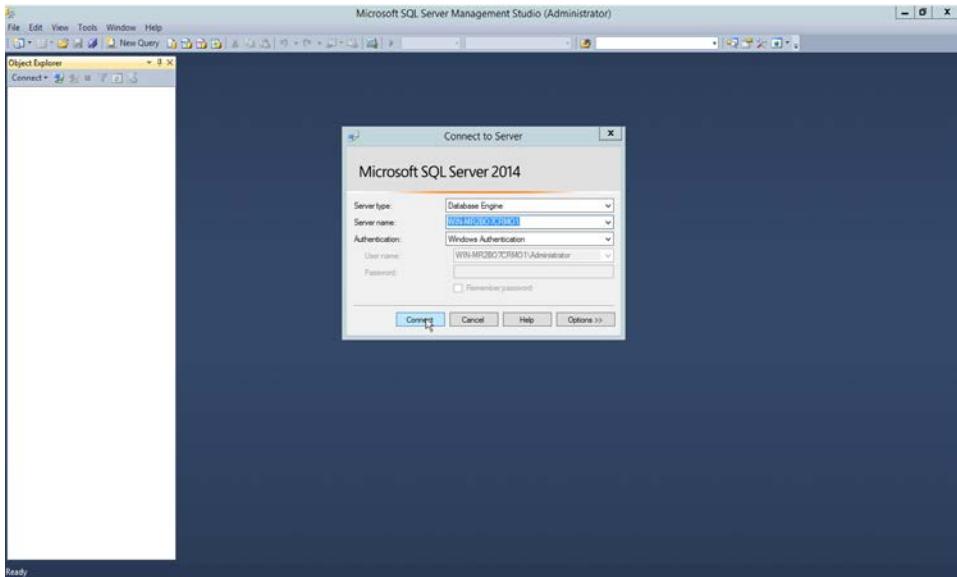


624

625 14. Click **Finish**.

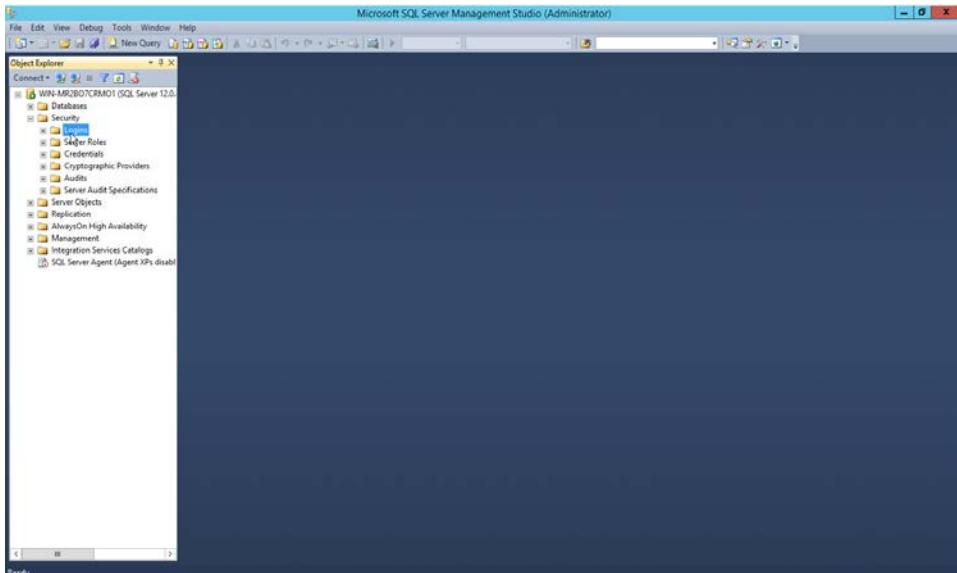
626 [2.4.3 Add a New Login to the Database](#)

627 1. Open **SQL Server Management Studio**.



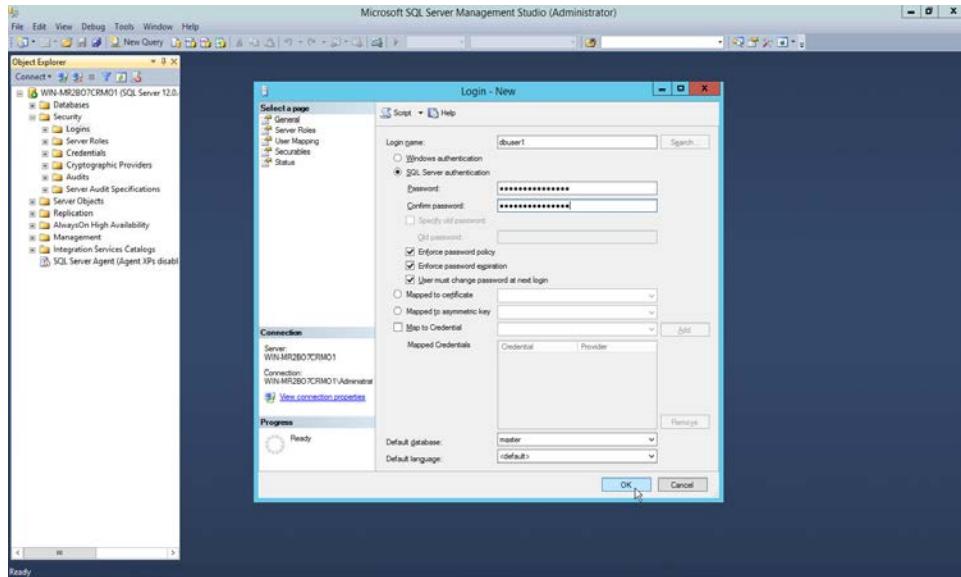
628

- 629 2. Click **Connect** to connect to the database.
- 630 3. In the **Object Explorer** window, expand the **Security** folder.



631

- 632 4. Right-click on the **Logins** folder and click **New Login....**
- 633 5. Input the desired user.



634

635 6. Click **OK**.636

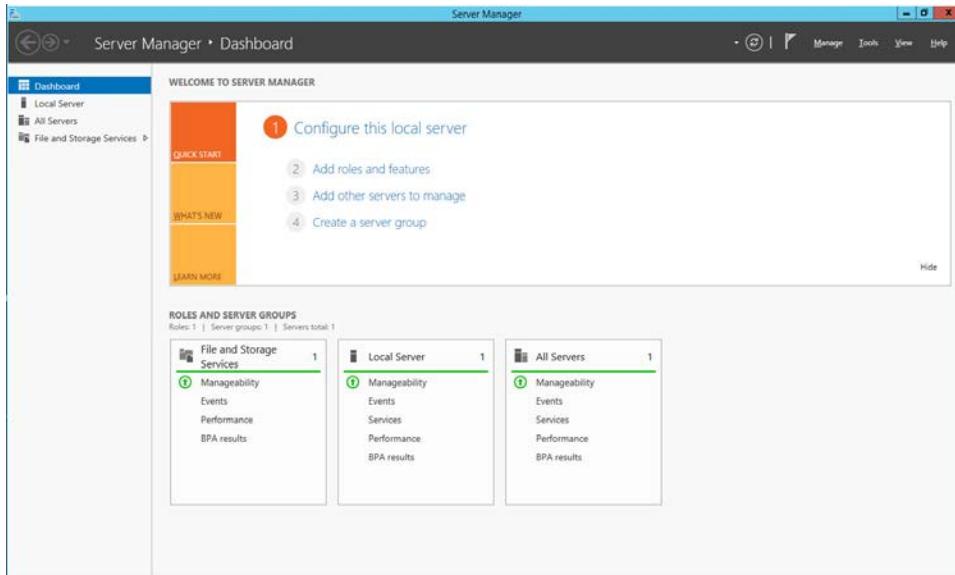
2.5 Microsoft IIS Server

637 As part of our enterprise emulation, we include a Microsoft IIS server. This section covers the
638 installation and configuration process used to set up Microsoft Exchange on a Windows Server 2012 R2
639 machine. This was conducted on the same machine as in Section 2.4.

640

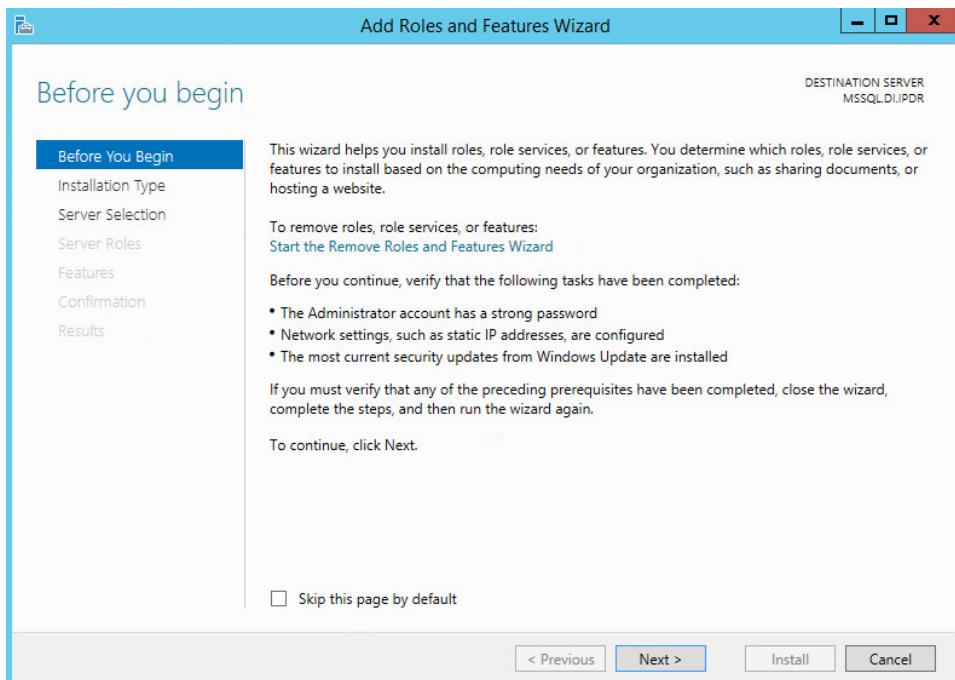
2.5.1 Install IIS

641 1. Open **Server Manager**.



642

- 643 2. Click **Add Roles and Features**.

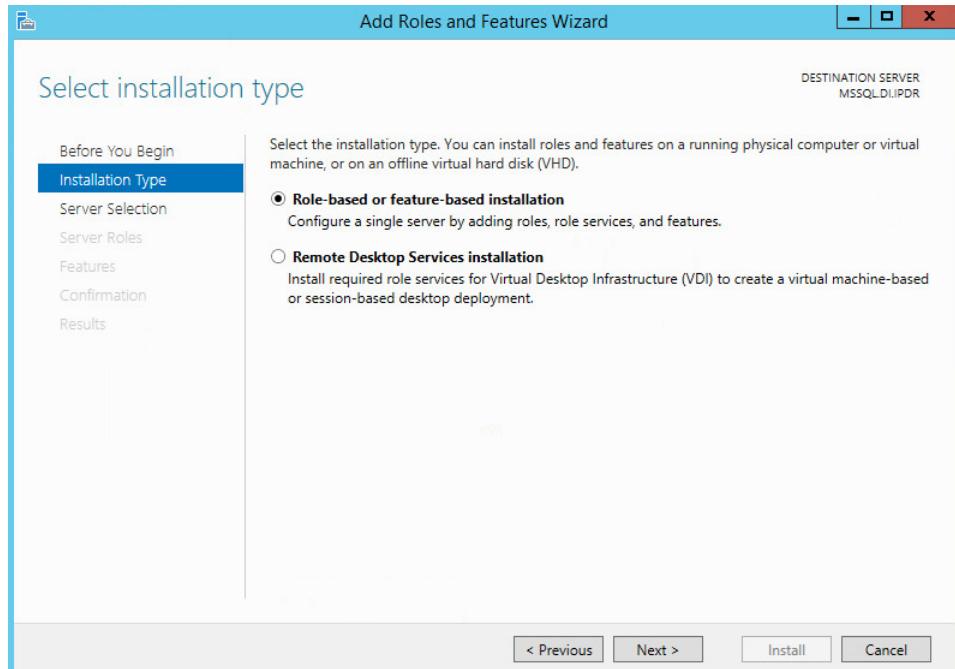


644

- 645 3. Click **Next**.

646

4. Select **Role-based or feature-based installation**.

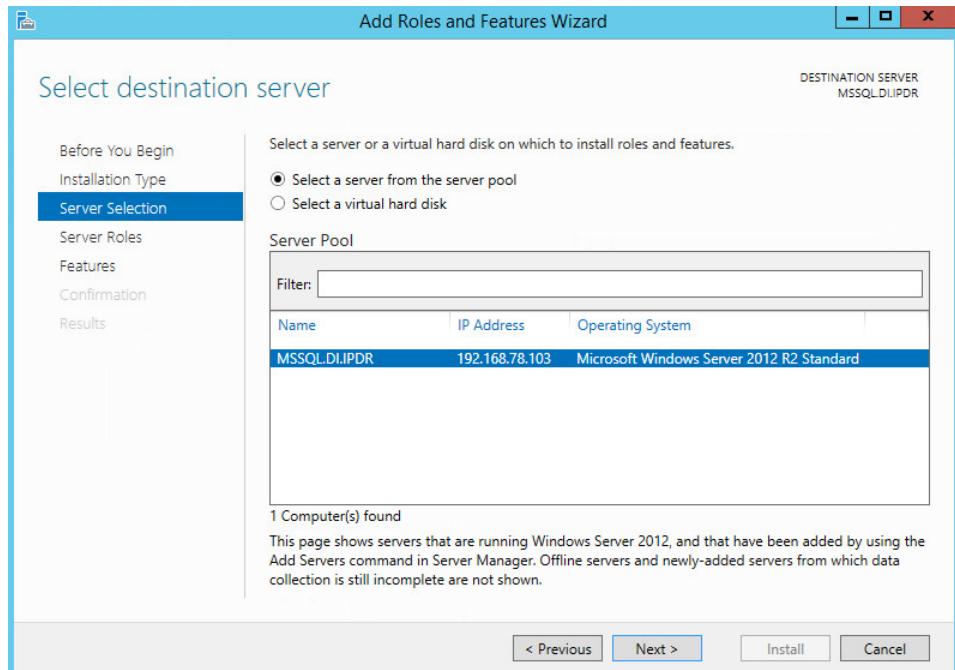


647

5. Click **Next**.

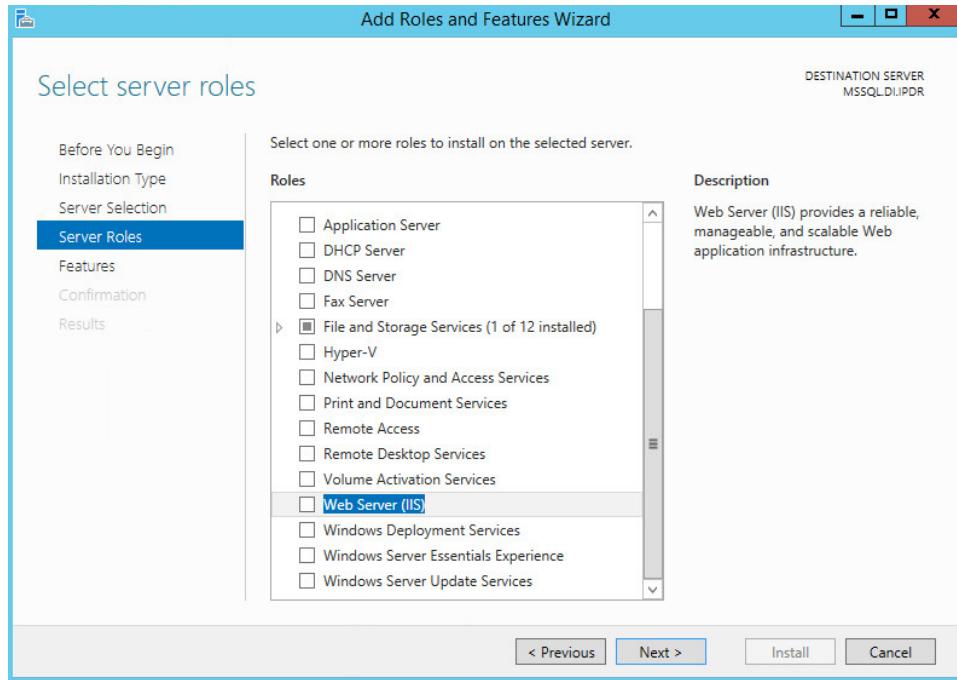
649

6. Select **MSSQL** (or the correct Windows Server name) from the list.



650

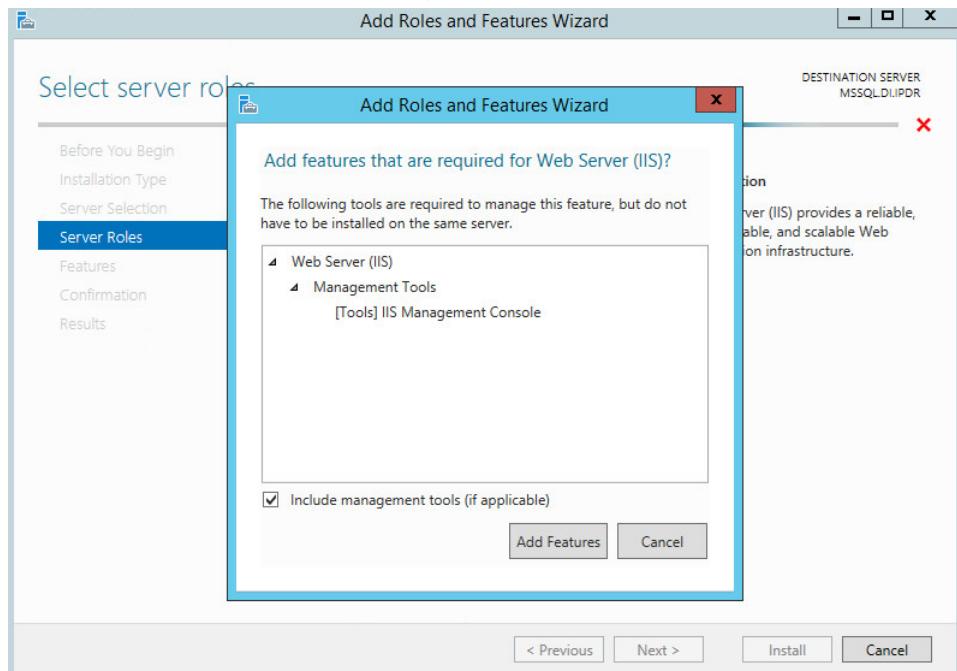
7. Click **Next**.



652

653

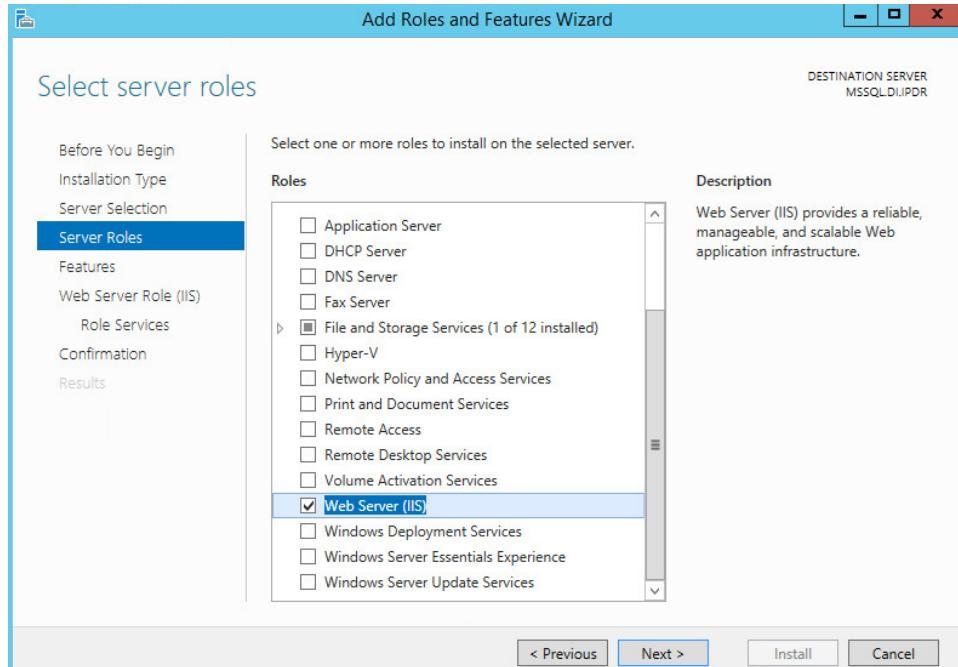
8. Check the box next to **Web Server (IIS)**.



654

655

9. Click Add Features.



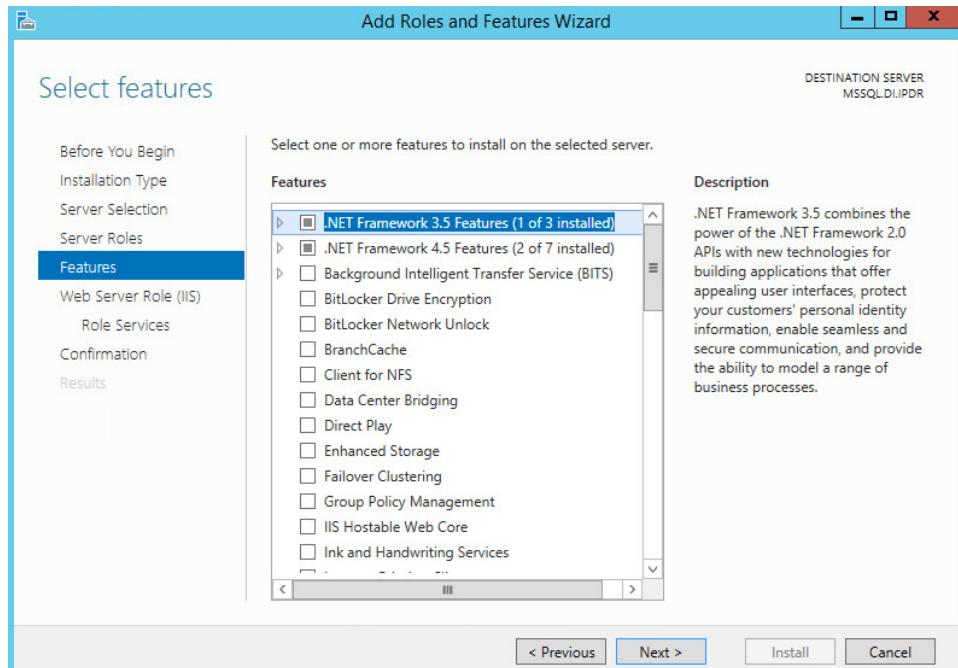
656

657

10. Click Next.

658

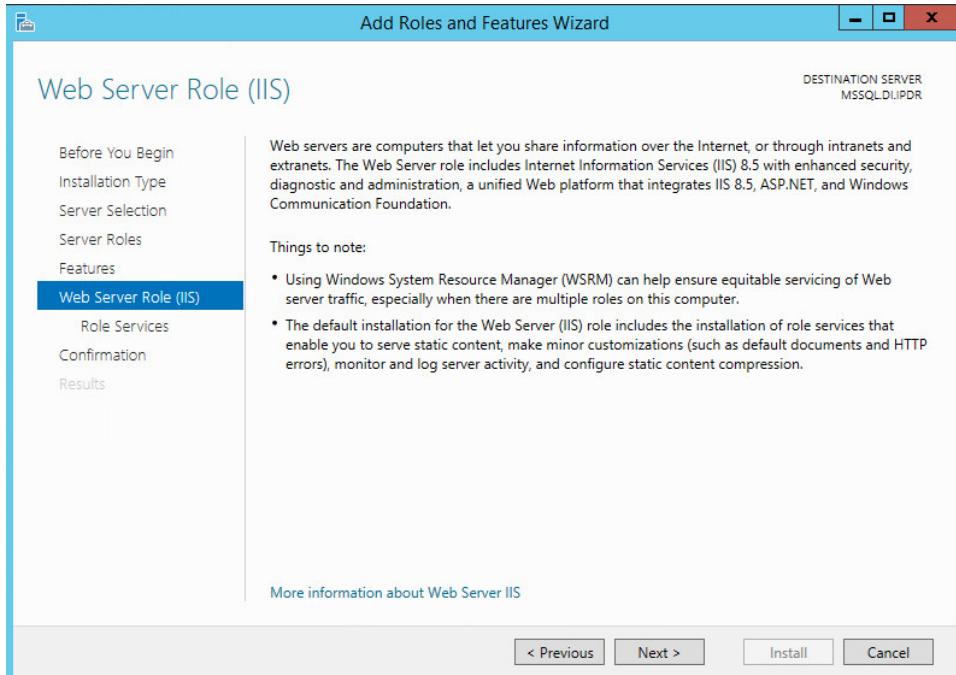
11. Ensure that all desired features are selected.



659

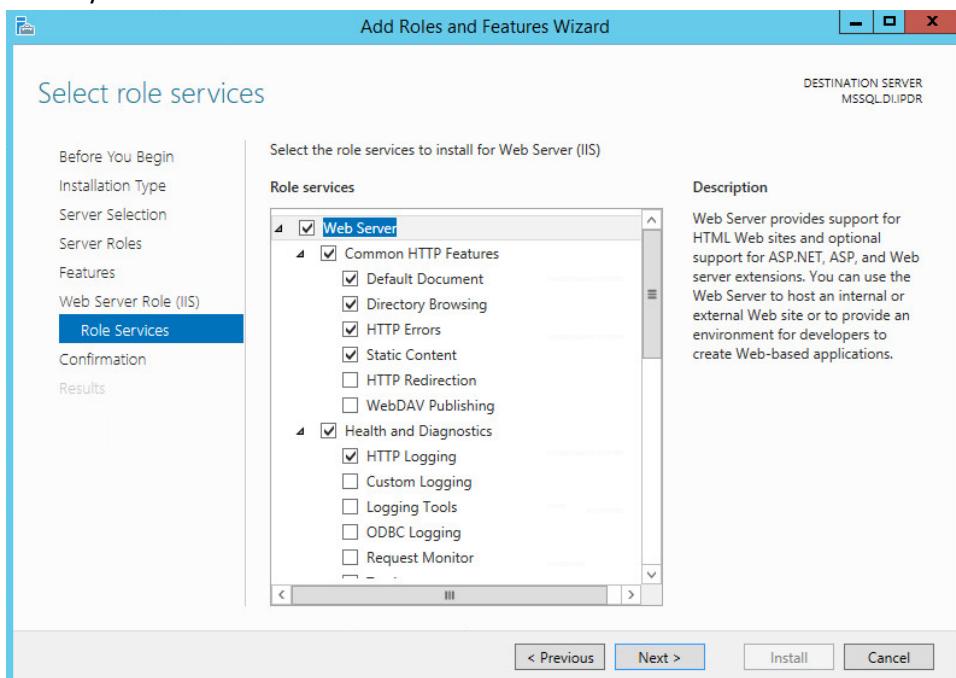
660

12. Click Next.



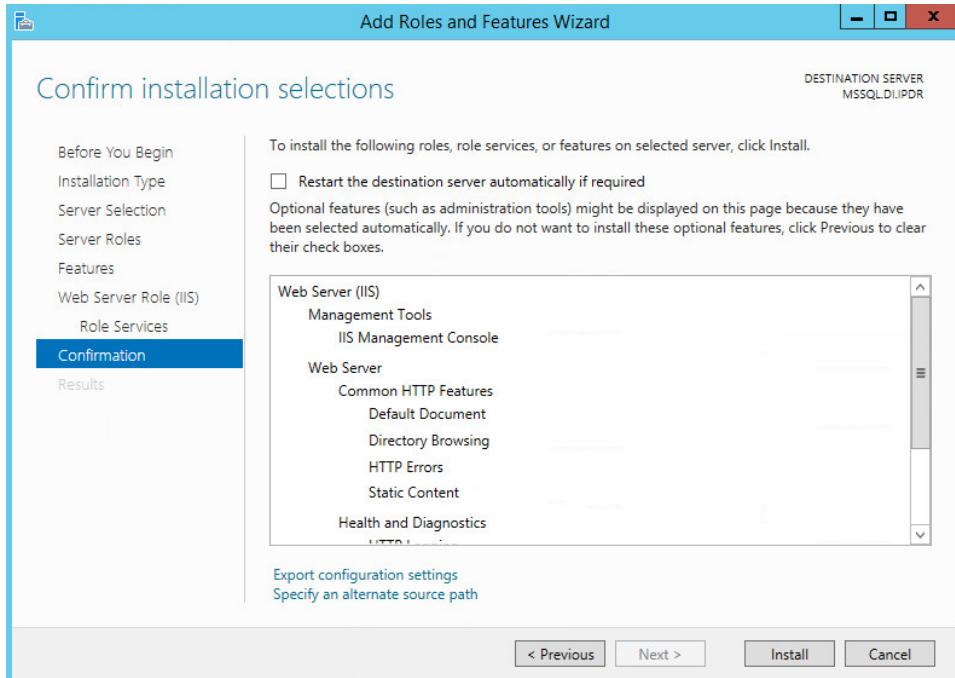
661

- 662 13. Click Next.
- 663 14. Ensure that **Default Document**, **Directory Browsing**, **HTTP Errors**, **Static Content**, **HTTP Logging**,
664 and any other desired Role services are selected.



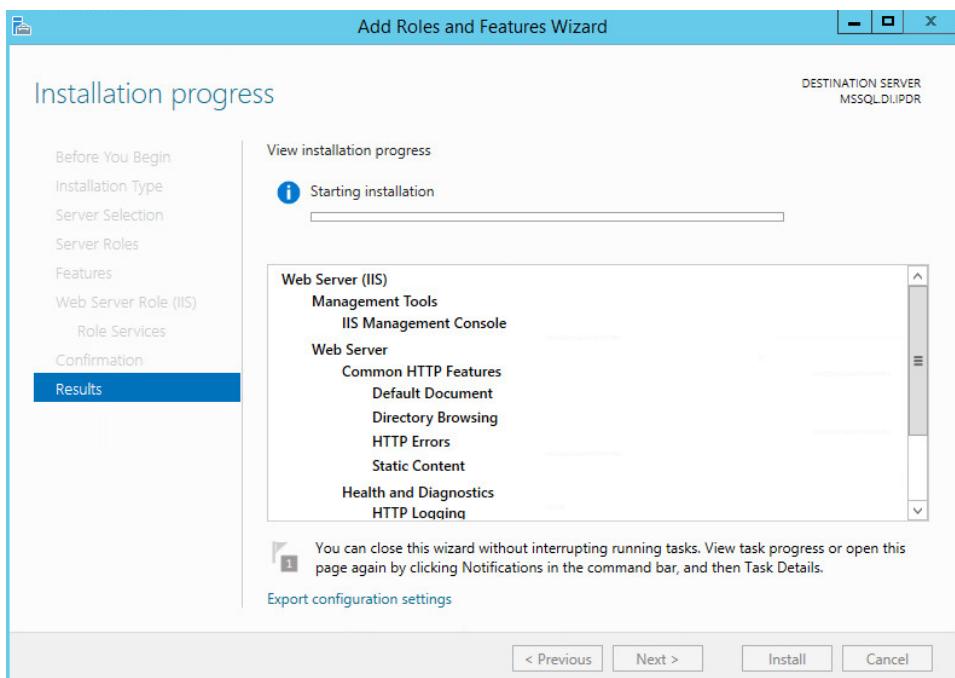
665

666 15. Click **Next**.



667

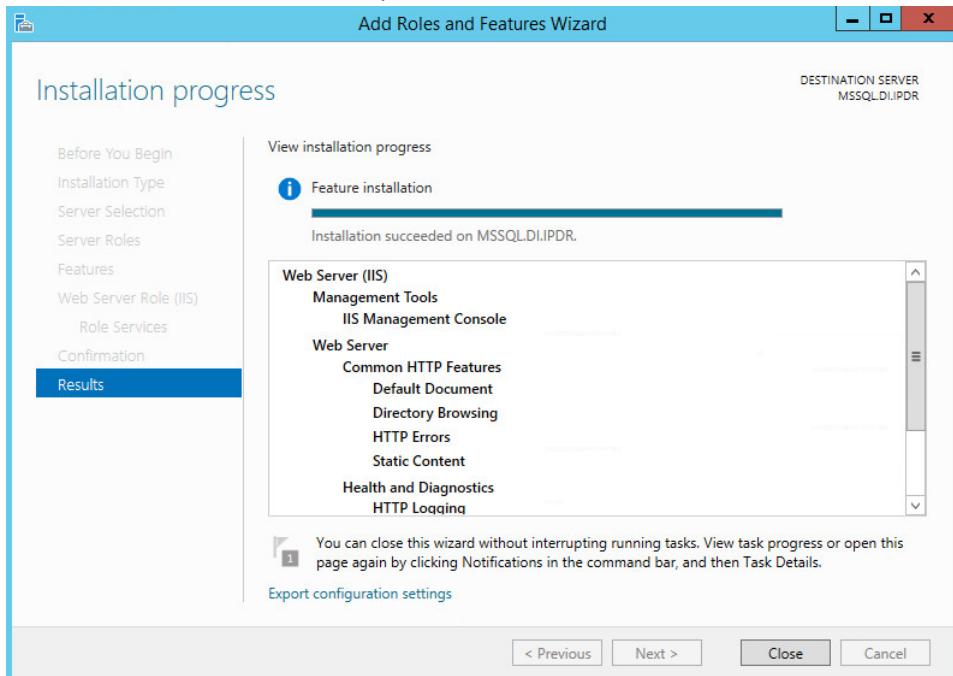
668 16. Click **Install**.



669

670

17. Wait for the installation to complete.



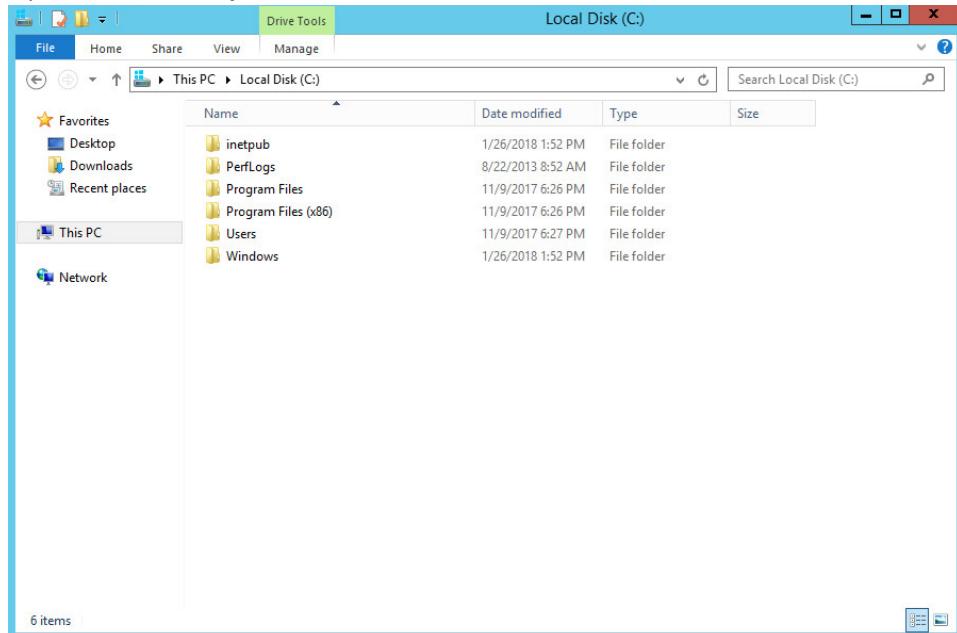
671

672

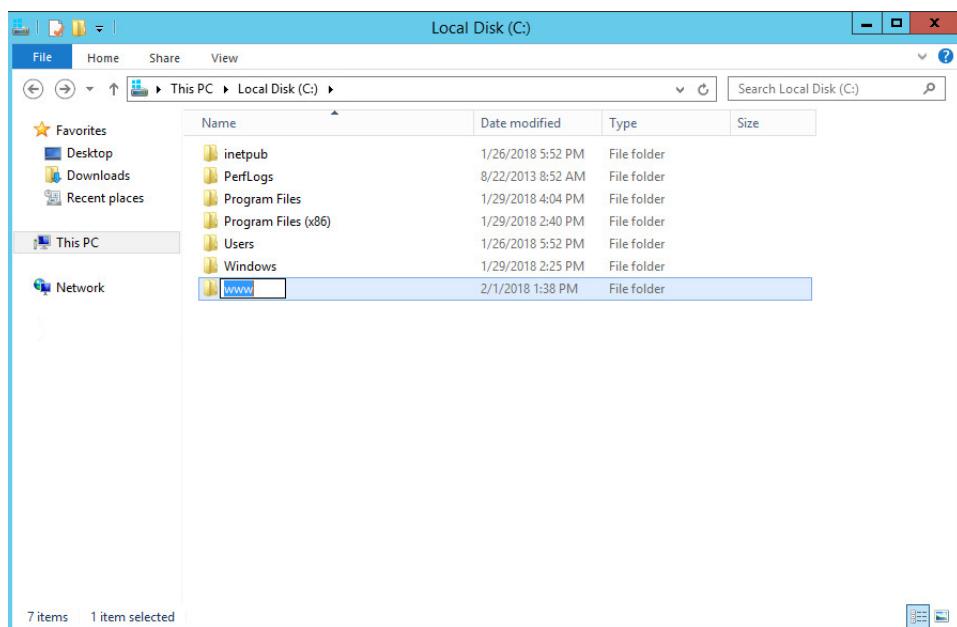
18. Click **Close**.

673 2.5.2 IIS Configuration

- 674 1. Open Windows Explorer and click This PC.



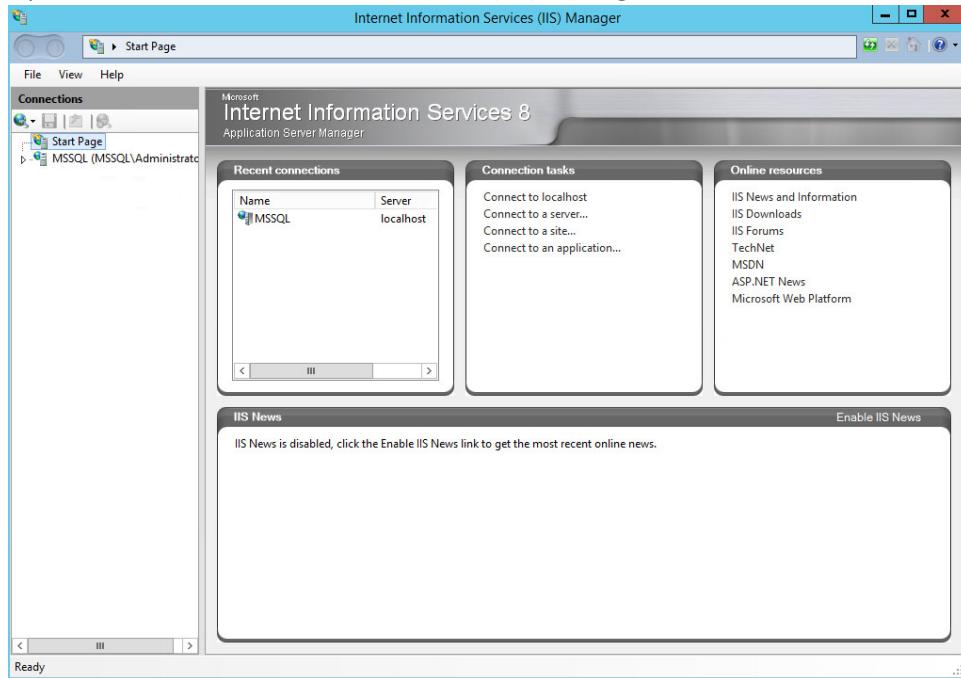
- 675
676 2. Right-click and select Create Folder.
677 3. Name the folder www.



678

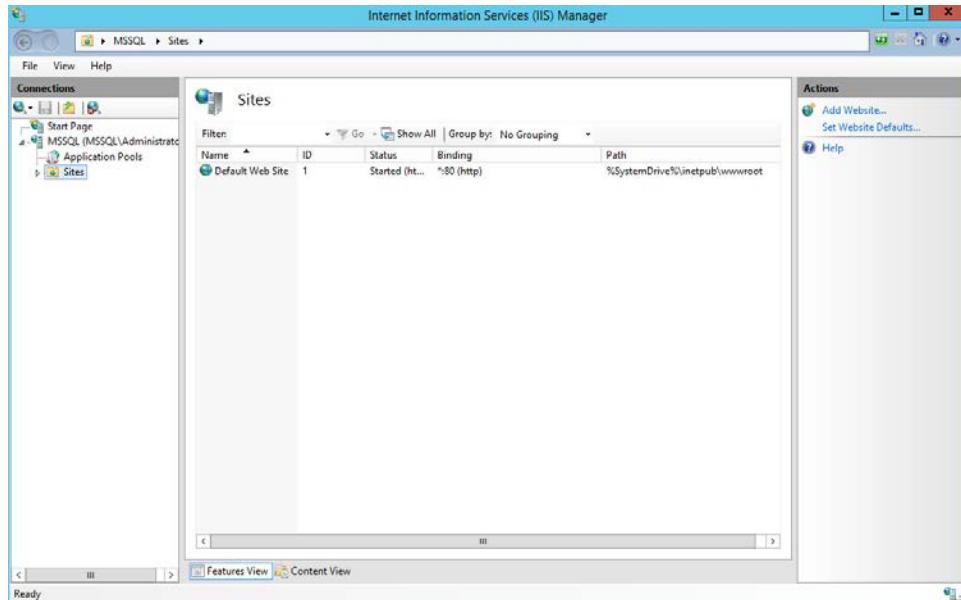
679

4. Open the **Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager**.



680

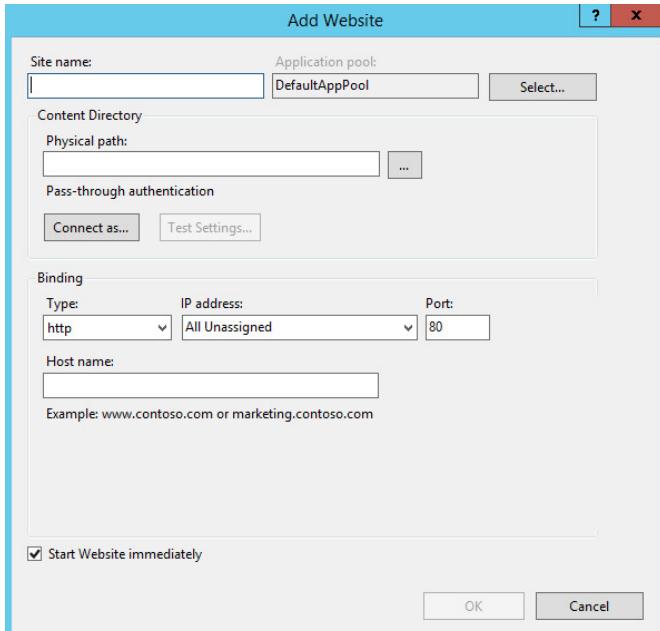
5. Click the arrow next to **MSSQL** (or the chosen name of the server).
 6. Click **Sites**.



683

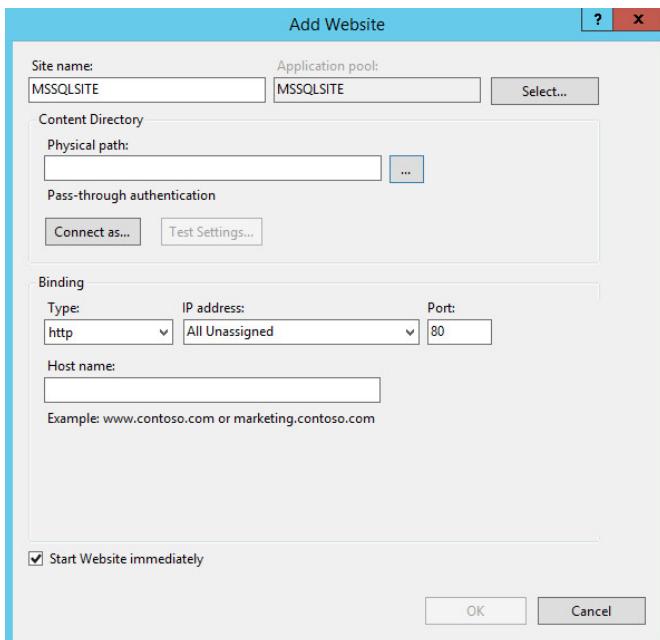
684

7. Click **Add Website....**



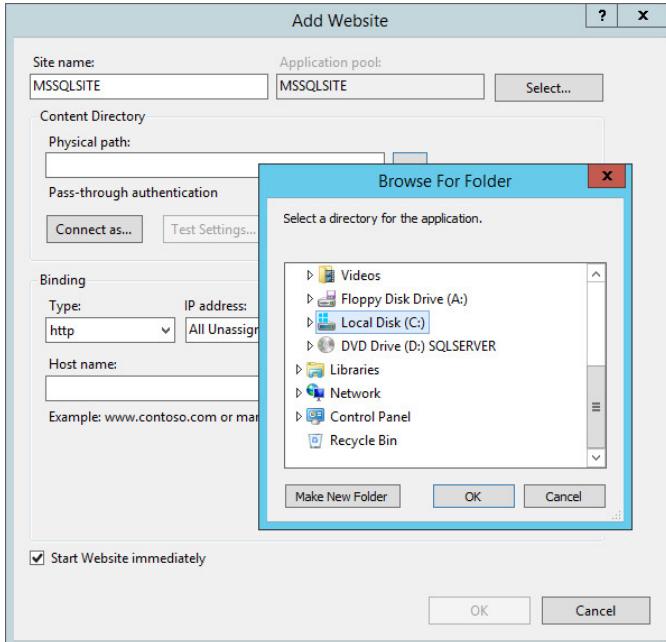
685
686

8. Enter the desired site name.



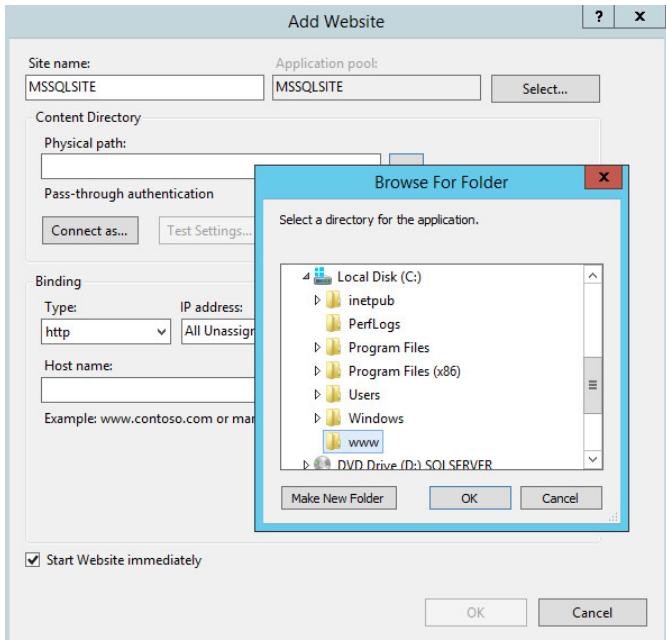
687
688

9. Click ... under Physical path:.



689

690 10. Locate and select the folder created in step 3.

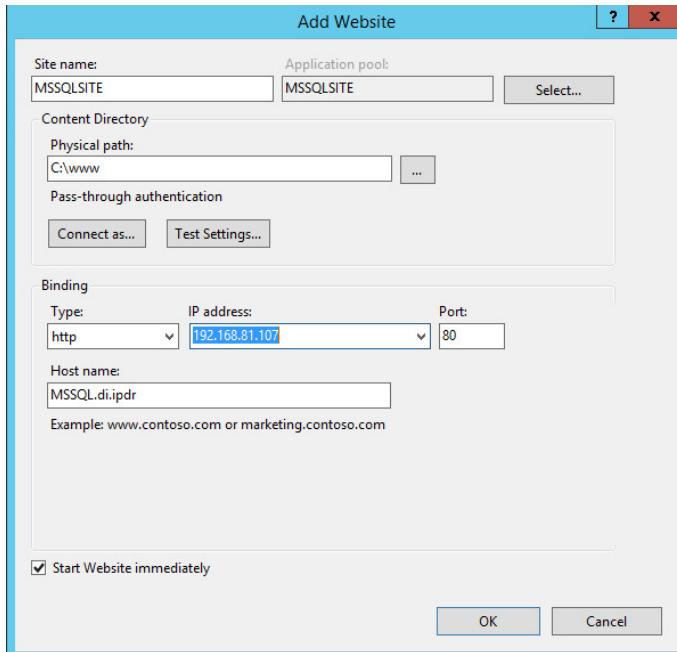


691

692 11. Click OK.

693 12. Set Type to http and Port to 80.

- 694 13. Ensure that the **IP address** and **Host name** fields are filled in with the correct information for
695 the machine.
696 14. Ensure that **Start Website immediately** is selected.



- 697
698 15. Click **OK**.
699

700 2.6 GreenTec WORMdisks

- 701 See the *Installation of GreenTec Command Line Utilities* document, which should accompany the
702 installation disk, for a detailed guide on how to install the GreenTec command line utilities.
703 Furthermore, refer to the *GT_WinStatus User Guide*, which should also accompany the installation disk,
704 for instructions on how to effectively use GreenTec WORMdisks to preserve data. Read these
705 instructions *carefully*, as locking GreenTec WORMdisks can result in making some or all of the disk or
706 the entire disk unusable. Having portions of the disk or the entire disk permanently locked is sometimes
707 desirable, but it is dependent on the needs of your organization, e.g., if you want to store backup
708 information or logs securely.
709 The *GT_WinStatus User Guide* provides instructions for locking and temporarily locking disk sectors. In
710 this practice guide, we will not include instructions on when to lock GreenTec WORMdisks. However, we
711 will provide instructions detailing how to save data to these disks and various commands used in

712 manipulating the disks. Below, find descriptions of some commands useful for automation of GreenTec
713 WORMdisks. Actual automation of these disks will vary per organization.

714 2.6.1 Format GreenTec WORMdisks

715 To format GreenTec WORMdisks for use, the following command can be used.

716 > **gt_format.exe <disk number> /parts:<number of parts> /label:<id>**

717 This command can be used to split a disk into a specified number of partitions, with each partition being
718 labeled according to the label id specified.

719 For example, this command will split drive 1 into four parts, labeled DI001, DI002, DI003, and DI004:

720 > **gt_format.exe 1 /parts:4 /label:DI**

721 Formatting drive 1 partition 1 file system NTFS label "DI001"

722 Format successful

723 Formatting drive 1 partition 2 file system NTFS label "DI002"

724 Format successful

725 Formatting drive 1 partition 3 file system NTFS label "DI003"

726 Format successful

727 Formatting drive 1 partition 4 file system NTFS label "DI004"

728 Format successful

729 2.6.2 Obtain Status Information About GreenTec WORMdisks

730 To verify information about GreenTec WORMdisks, use the following command.

731 > **wvlist.exe <drive number>**

732 This command can be used to display basic information about a drive, such as the amount of space of
733 each partition, whether it is a WORMdisk, whether they have been locked, and what drive letter to
734 which they are mapped.

735 For example, this command will list the characteristics of drive 1.

```
736 > wvlist.exe 1

737 WVLIST: List WORM Volume (WDV) Status on Physical WORMdisks(tm).

738 Copyright (C) 2015 GreenTec-USA, Inc. All rights reserved.

739 Drive#=1 Type=ATA F/W=GT5G Size=500{GB}

740 > IS WORM > IS *NOT* Finalized

741 ***** WORMdisk Volume (WDV) Info *****
742 WDV # TB ENFORCED GREENTEC TLOCKED
743 <----> <----> <-----> <-----> <----->
744 001 0.125 NO YES NO G:\ 
745 002 0.125 NO YES NO H:\ 
746 003 0.125 NO YES NO I:\ 
747 004 0.125 NO YES NO J:\ 
```

748 2.6.3 Map GreenTec WORMdisks to Drive Letters

749 1. To unmap a partition from a drive letter, use the following command:

```
750 > wvmap.exe <drive letter>:
```

751 For example,

```
752 > wvmap.exe H:
```

753 will unmap H:, making it available for mapping to another partition.

754 2. To map a partition to a drive letter, use the following command:

```
755 > wvmap.exe <drive letter>: <drive number>.<partition number>
```

756 For example,

```
757 > wvmap.exe H: 1.2
```

758 will map the second partition of drive 1 to H:, making files available through accessing that drive letter.

760 3. To map the next partition to a drive letter, use the following command:

```
761 > wvnext.exe <drive letter>:
```

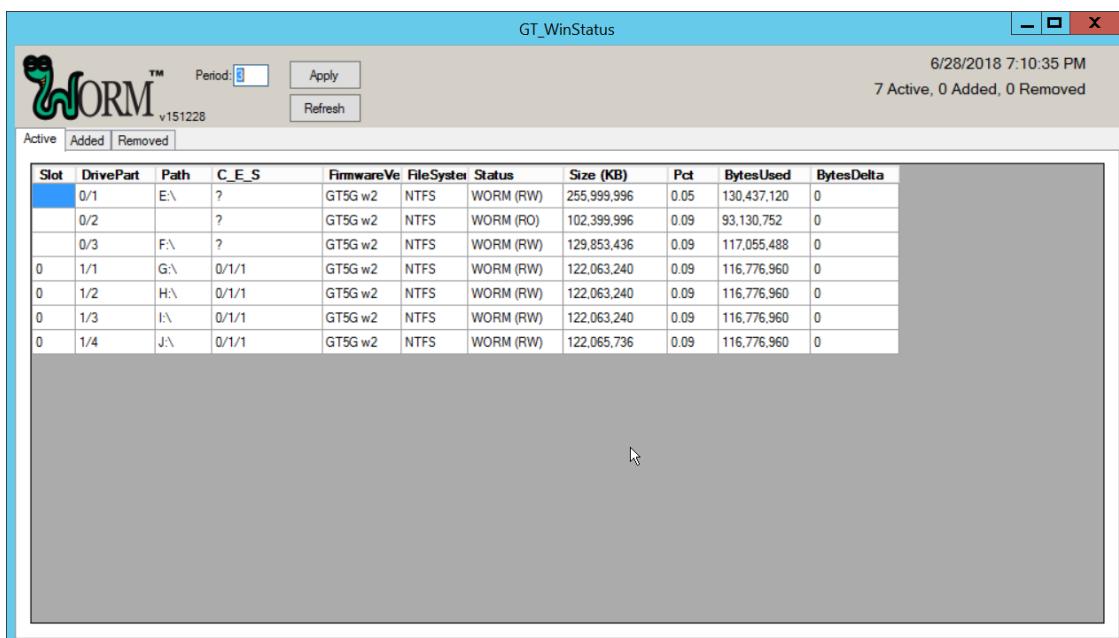
762 For example, if H: is mapped to partition 2 of drive 1 (1.2)

763 > **wvnext.exe H:**

764 will attempt to map H: to partition 3 of drive 1 (1.3).

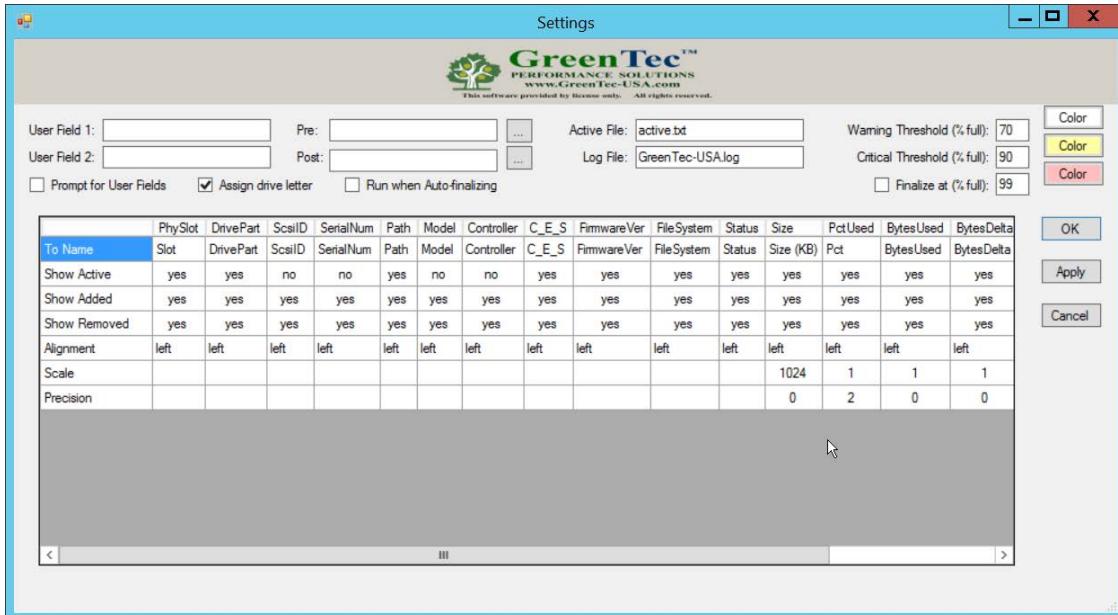
765 2.6.4 Activate Write Protection in GreenTec WORMdisks

- 766 1. Running GT_WinStatus.exe will open the Graphical User Interface (GUI), which displays various
767 information such as drive mappings, partitions, total space, and space used, as well as a range
768 of other options.



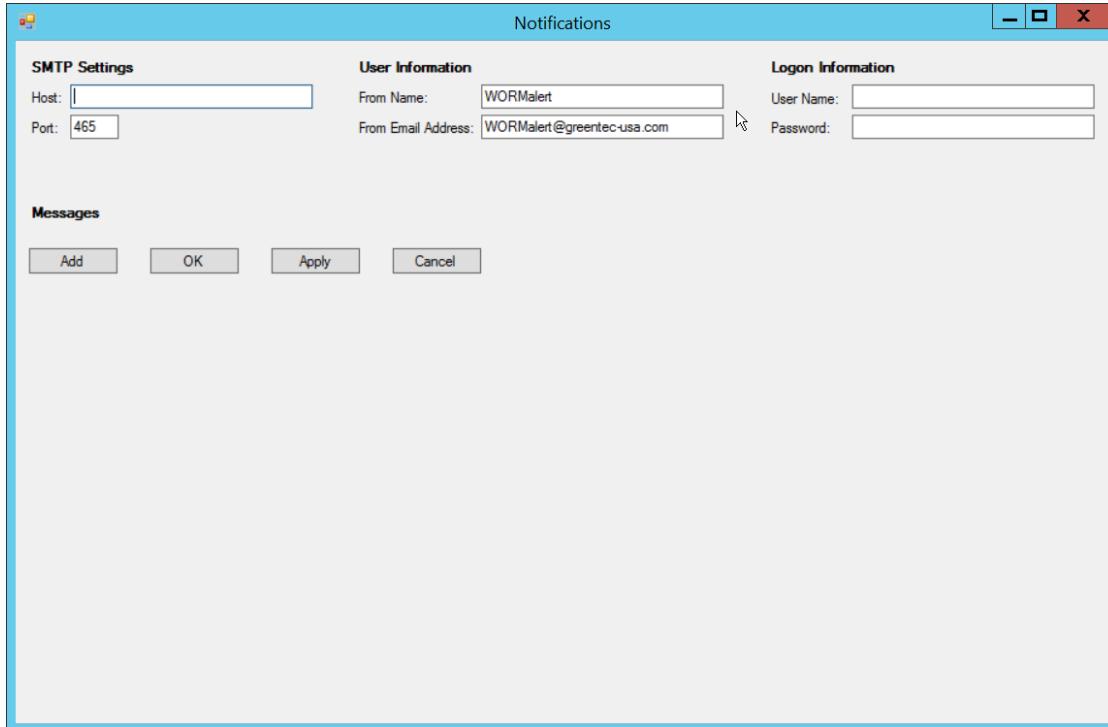
769

- 770 2. More columns can be added by right-clicking anywhere in the **Active** window, opening the
771 **Settings** window.



772

- 773 3. In the Settings window, **User Field 1** and **User Field 2** are for any metadata to be stored for a
 774 drive. **Pre:** runs a script prior to finalizing a drive, and **Post:** runs a script after finalizing a drive.
 775 4. Also, from the **Settings** window, right-clicking on **Critical Threshold** or **Warning Threshold** will
 776 allow the user to set up alert preferences for drives that are nearly full (at a configurable
 777 percent value).



778

779 5. To display the GUI with options to lock and enforce locks on drives, the following command
780 must be used to start the GUI:

781 > **GT_WinStatus.exe /tlock /enf**

- 782 6. This will add columns called **TLock** and **Enforce** (as well as the ability to use the **Finalize**
 783 column).

Slot	DrivePart	Path	C_E_S	FirmwareVer	FileSystem	Status	Size (KB)	Pct	BytesUsed	BytesDelta	TLock	Enforce	Finalize
0/1	E:\	?		GT5G w2	NTFS	WORM (RW)	255,999,996	0.05	130,437,120	0	TLOCK	ENFORCE	FINALIZE
0/2		?		GT5G w2	NTFS	WORM (RO)	102,399,996	0.09	93,130,752	0	UNLOCK	ENFORCE	FINALIZE
0/3	F:\	?		GT5G w2	NTFS	WORM (RW)	129,853,436	0.09	117,055,488	0	TLOCK	ENFORCE	FINALIZE
0/1/1	G:\	0/1/1		GT5G w2	NTFS	WORM (RW)	122,063,240	0.09	116,776,960	0	TLOCK	ENFORCE	FINALIZE
0/1/2	H:\	0/1/1		GT5G w2	NTFS	WORM (RW)	122,063,240	0.09	116,776,960	0	TLOCK	ENFORCE	FINALIZE
0/1/3	I:\	0/1/1		GT5G w2	NTFS	WORM (RW)	122,063,240	0.09	116,776,960	0	TLOCK	ENFORCE	FINALIZE
0/1/4	J:\	0/1/1		GT5G w2	NTFS	WORM (RW)	122,065,736	0.09	116,776,960	0	TLOCK	ENFORCE	FINALIZE

- 784
 785 7. The **TLock** column temporarily locks/unlocks a partition of the drive. This is useful to prevent
 786 modification during times when modification should be disallowed.

Important: The following functions in steps 8 and 9 will permanently lock portions of the drive, making them read-only.

The Enforce function permanently locks all volumes up to the enforced volume.

The Finalize function permanently locks the entire drive.

- 787
 788 8. The **Enforce** column is a *permanent incremental lock*. This means that it permanently prevents
 789 modification for the selected volume of a drive as well as all volumes that come before that
 790 volume on the drive. Once these sections are enforced, they cannot be written to ever again.
 791 This functionality is particularly useful in protecting data or backups that must never be
 792 modified, but as the enforce function is permanent, it must be used carefully.
 793 9. The **Finalize** column permanently locks the entire drive. This is useful when a drive is full and no
 794 longer needs to be written to. Data can still be read and copied from this drive to other places,
 795 but no write actions will be possible after this is used, so it also must be used carefully.

796 2.7 CryptoniteNXT

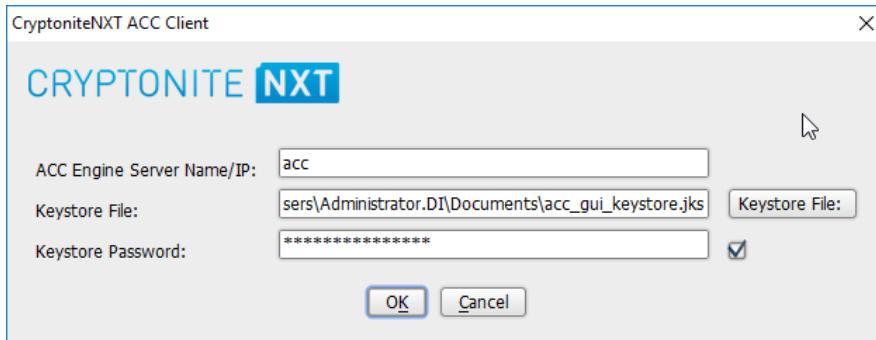
797 See the *CryptoniteNXT 2.6.2 Unified Installation Guide*, which should accompany the device for a
798 detailed guide on how to install **CryptoniteNXT** on the provided device.

799 The *CryptoniteNXT 2.6.2 Unified Installation Guide* provides a full installation on both the
800 **CryptoniteNXT** device and the management workstation. When finished, it should be possible to log in
801 on the management workstation and interact with the **CryptoniteNXT ACC GUI**. Instructions are
802 provided below for performing various useful functions, including adding new devices/users, as well as
803 creating policy, but specific recommendations for policy are not provided, as those will be specific to the
804 organization. Some integrations with other security products used in this guide will be provided, as
805 exceptions for those products in CryptoniteNXT are often necessary for their functionality.

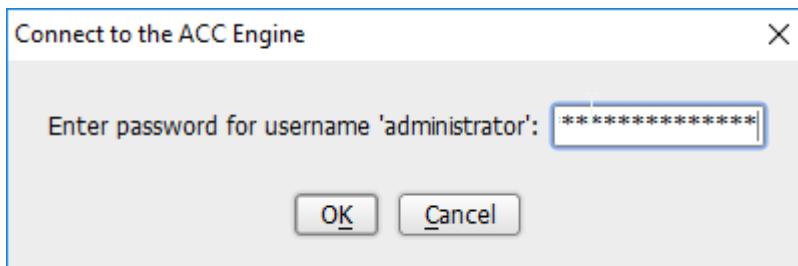
806 2.7.1 Configure Cryptonite NXT

807 2.7.1.1 Verify a New Device

- 808 1. Open the **CryptoniteNXT ACC GUI** application.

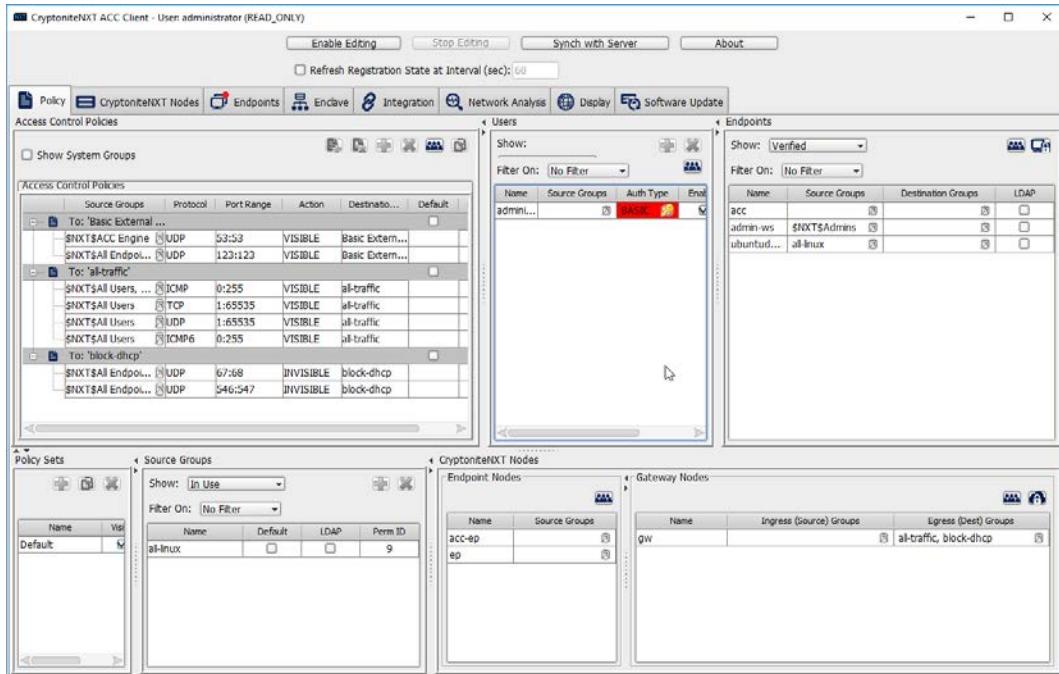


- 809
810 2. Click **OK**.
3. Enter the **password** for the account created during the installation.



811

4. Click **OK**.



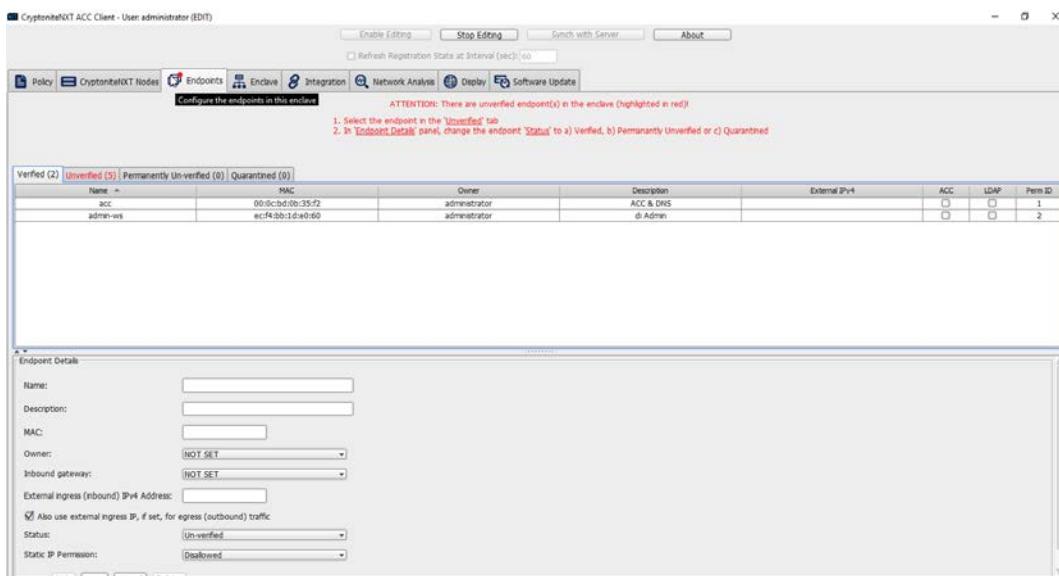
812

813

5. Click **Enable Editing** at the top of the application.

814

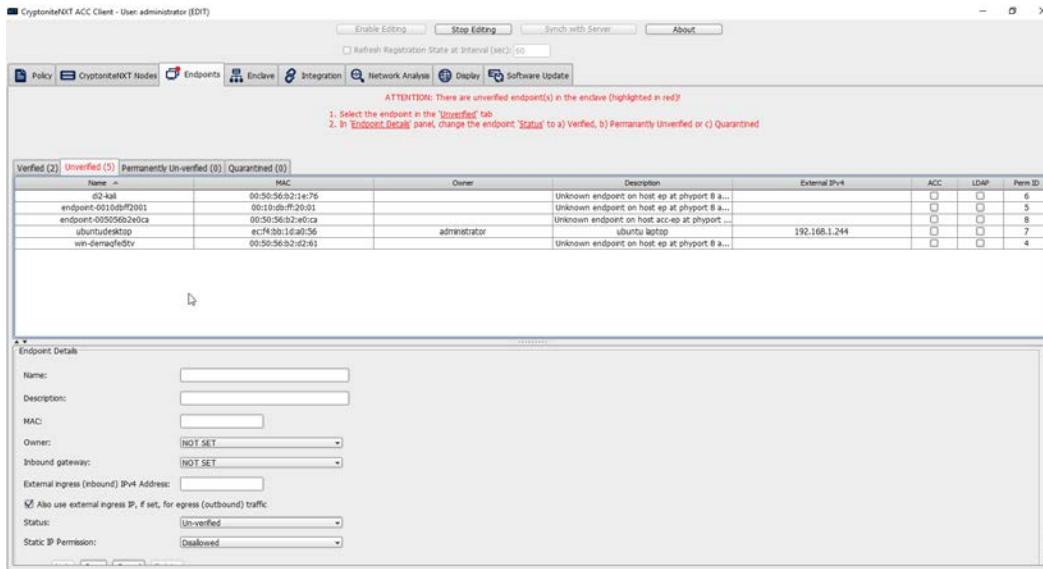
6. Click the **Endpoints** tab.



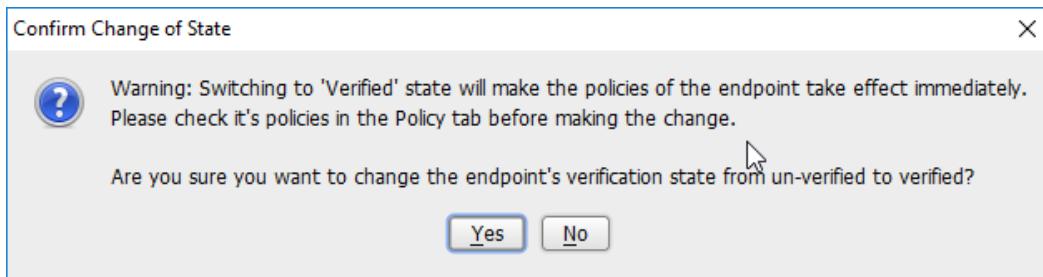
815

816
817

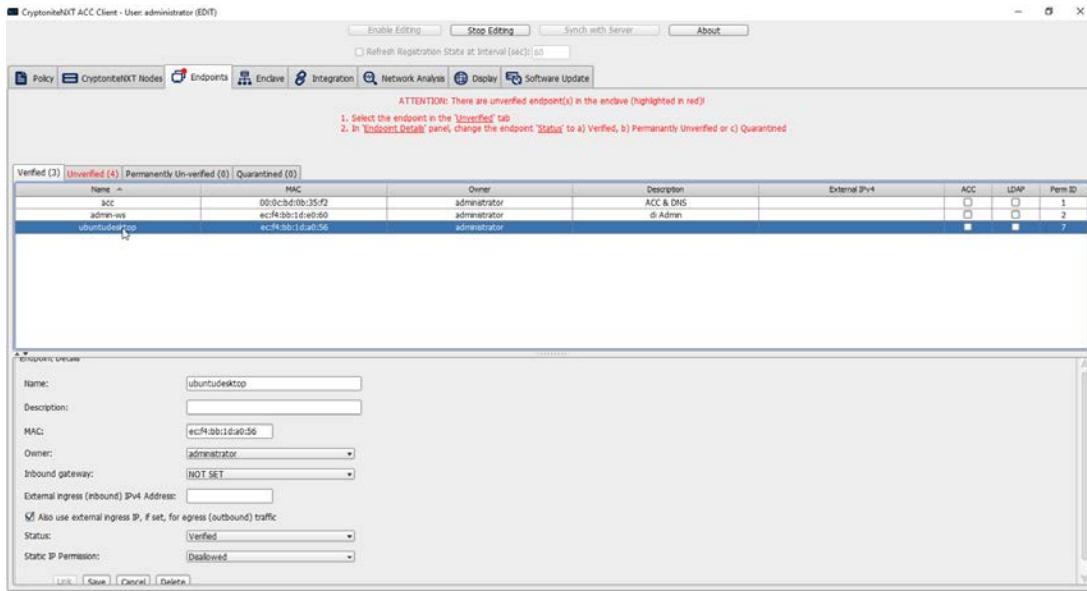
7. Click the **Unverified** tab. Any new devices connected to the network should appear here, if configured to use Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).



- 818
- 819 8. Click the machine to verify.
 - 820 9. Enter a **name**.
 - 821 10. Enter a **description** of the machine.
 - 822 11. Select an **owner** if desired. If not selected, the owner will be the first user to log in to CryptoniteNXT on the machine.
 - 823 12. Leave **Inbound gateway**: as **NOT SET** to have it choose a default gateway.
 - 824 13. Leave **External ingress (inbound) IPv4 Address**: blank.
 - 825 14. Ensure the box next to **Also use external ingress IP, if set, for egress (outbound) traffic** is checked.
 - 826 15. Set **Status**: to **Verified**.

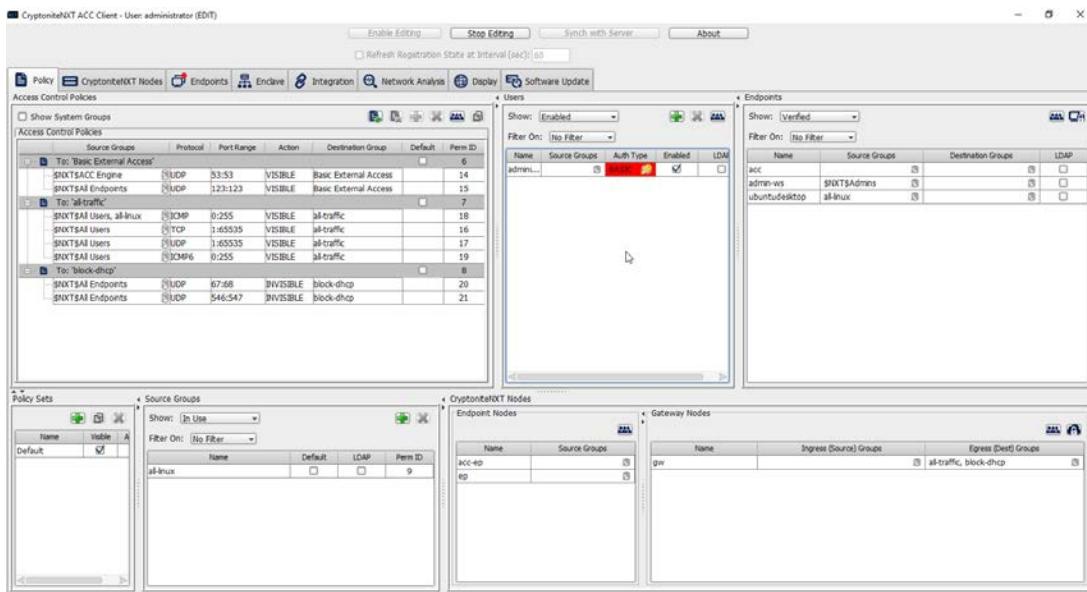


- 829
- 830 16. Click **Yes**.
 - 831 17. Click **Save**.
 - 832 18. The machine should now appear in the **Verified** tab.



833 2.7.1.2 Create a New User

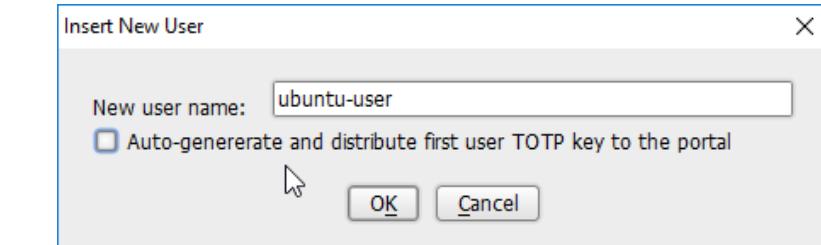
834 1. Go to the Policy tab.



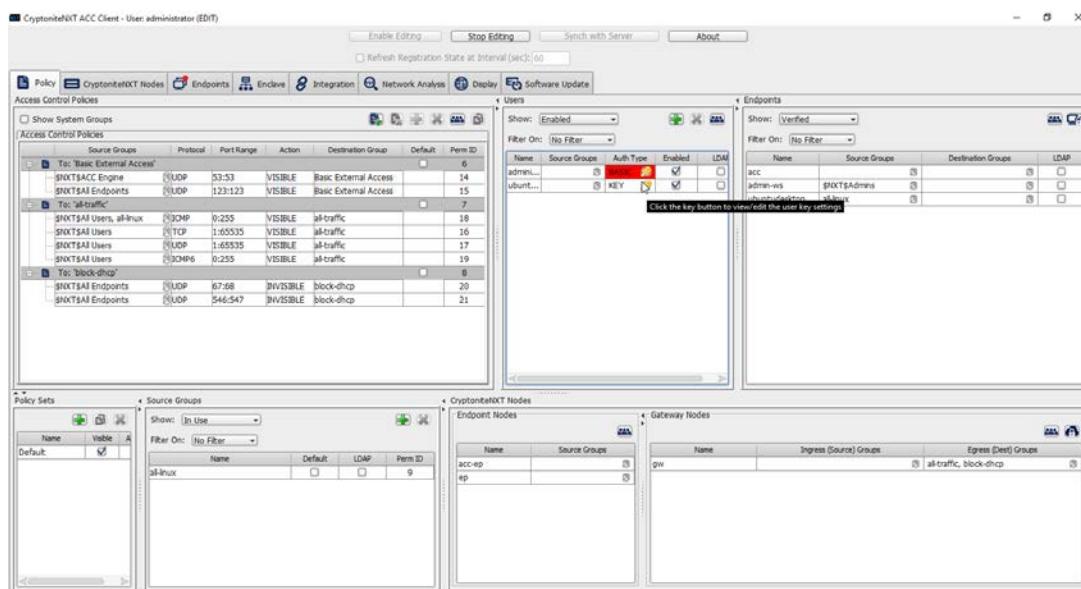
- 835
836 2. Right-click in the **Users** window and select **New User**.
837 3. Enter the username, and uncheck the box next to **Auto-generate and distribute first user TOTP key to the portal**.

839

840



4. Click **OK**.



841

842

5. The new user should show up in the **Users** window. Click the key icon for the newly created user under **Auth Type**.

843

844

845

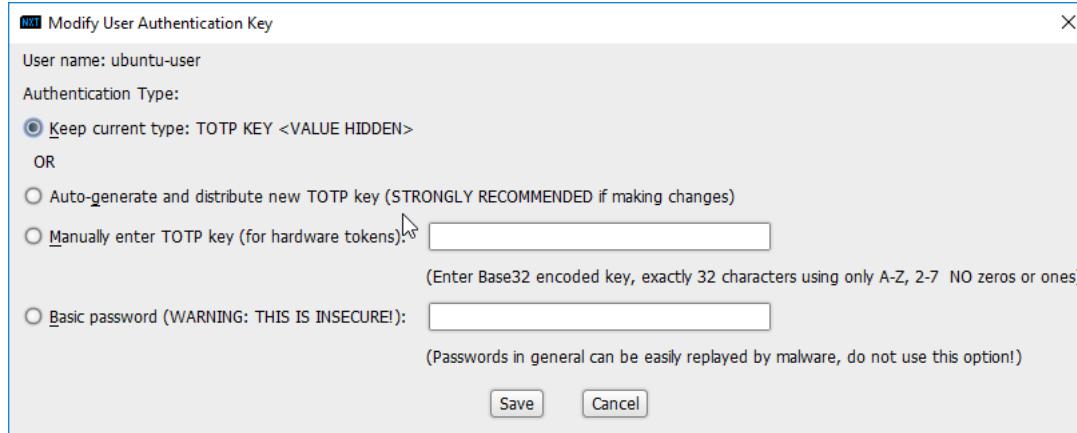
846

6. Decide on an authentication method for the user. (Note: It is not recommended to use passwords, but as this authentication decision depends on the needs of the organization, passwords are used for the purposes of this practice guide.)

847

848

7. Click Save.

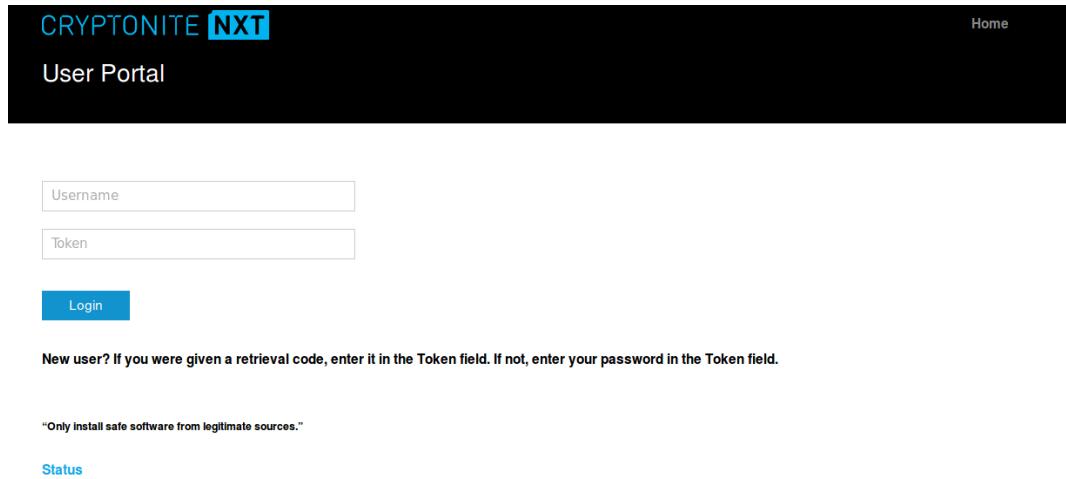


849

850

851

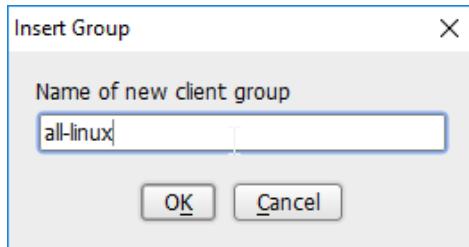
8. On the client machine, the user should be required to sign in on the CryptoniteNXT portal to access the internet. Authenticate using the newly created user.



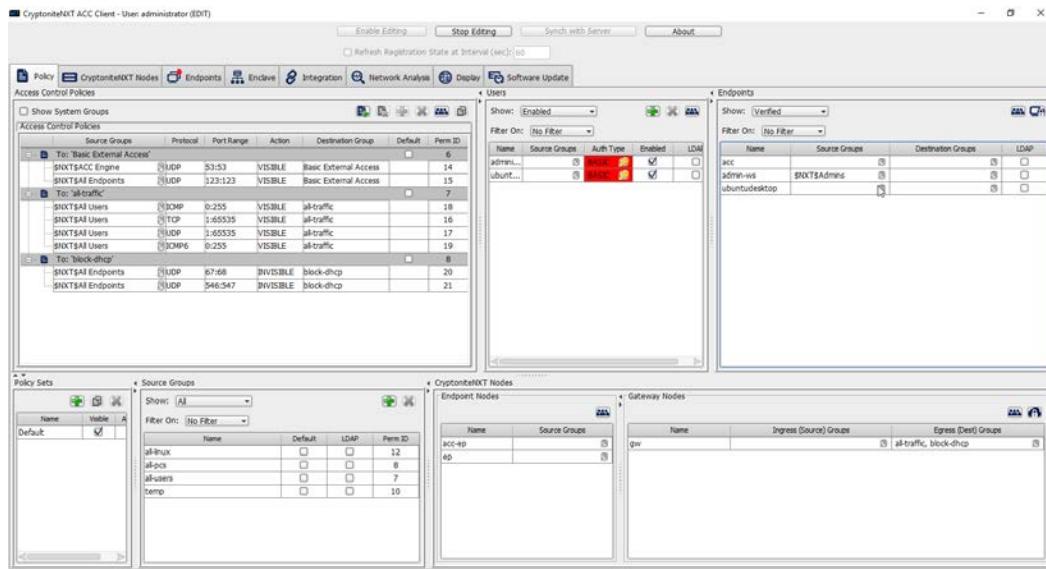
852 *[2.7.1.3 Create a New Policy](#)*

853 Creating policy in CryptoniteNXT essentially requires specifying allowed types of traffic. To do this,
854 source groups and destination groups are created.

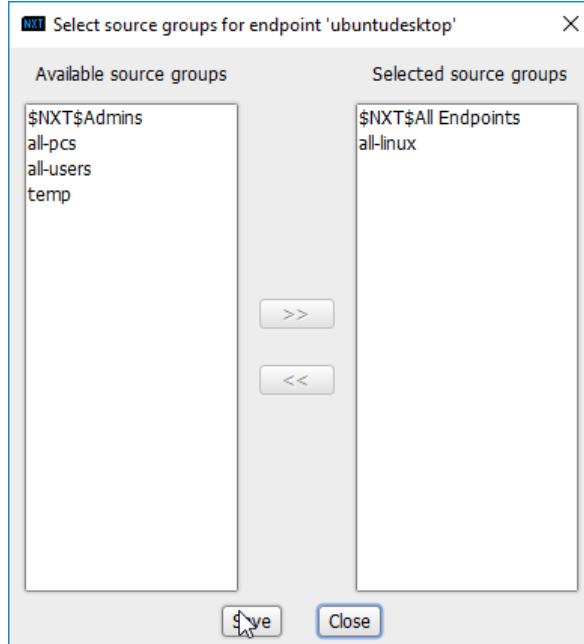
- 855 1. To create a source group, right-click in the **Source Groups** window and select **New Source
856 Group**.
857 2. Enter the name of the group.



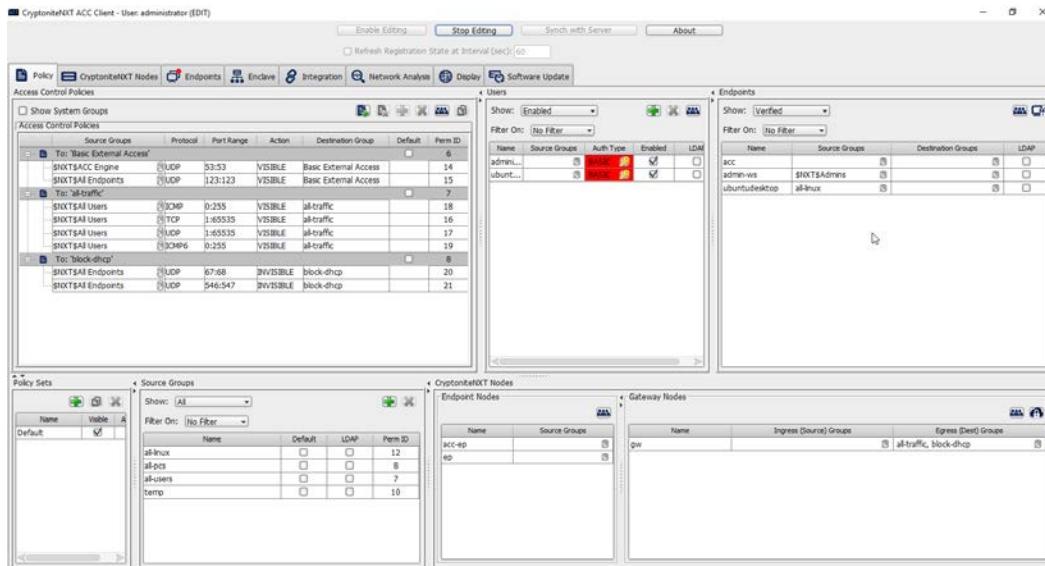
- 858
859 3. Click **OK**.
860 4. The newly created group should appear in the **Source Groups** window.



- 861 5. In the **Endpoints** window, click the arrow button under the **Source Groups** column for any machines to be added to this **Source Group**.
 862
 863
 864 6. Select the newly created group (or groups).
 7. Click the **>>** button to add the endpoint to this group.



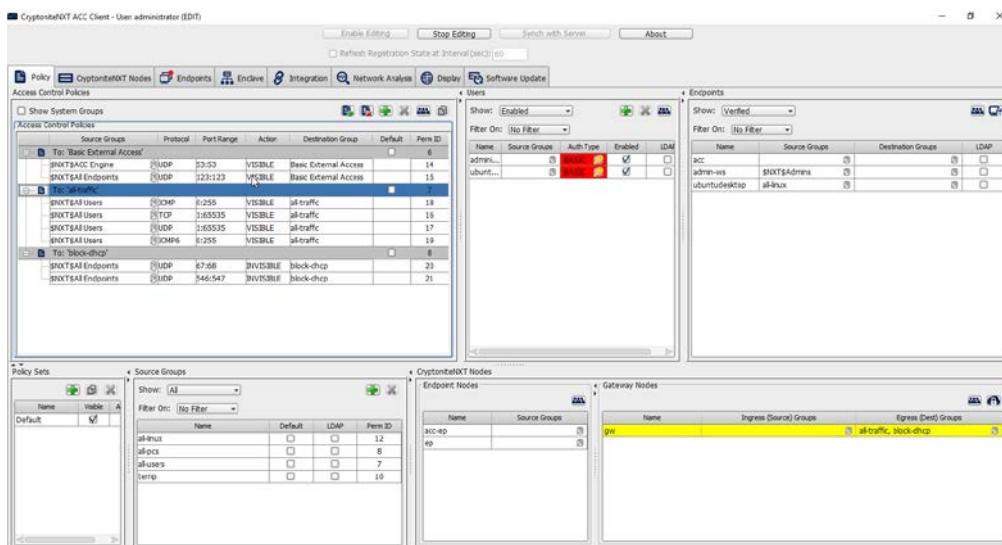
- 865
 866 8. Click **Save**.
 867 9. The group should show under the **Source Groups** column for those endpoints.



868

869 Destination groups are used to govern the allowed destinations of endpoints within certain source
870 groups. While destination groups can be created according to organizational property, this example
871 uses an existing group, **all-traffic**.

- 872 1. To allow or prevent the use of ping, we add it to the **all-traffic** group. In the **Access Control
873 Policies** window, right-click on the row labeled **To: 'all-traffic'** and select **New Access
874 Control Policy Entry**.

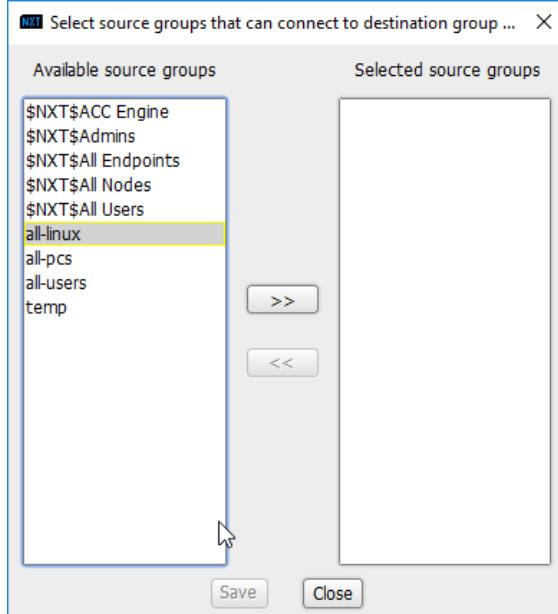


875

- 876 2. Click the arrow button under the **Source Groups** column.

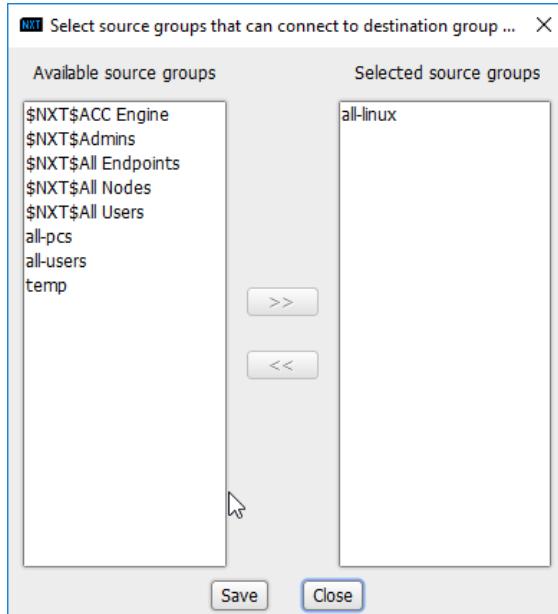
877 3. Select the newly created source group.

878



879

880 4. Click the >> button.



881

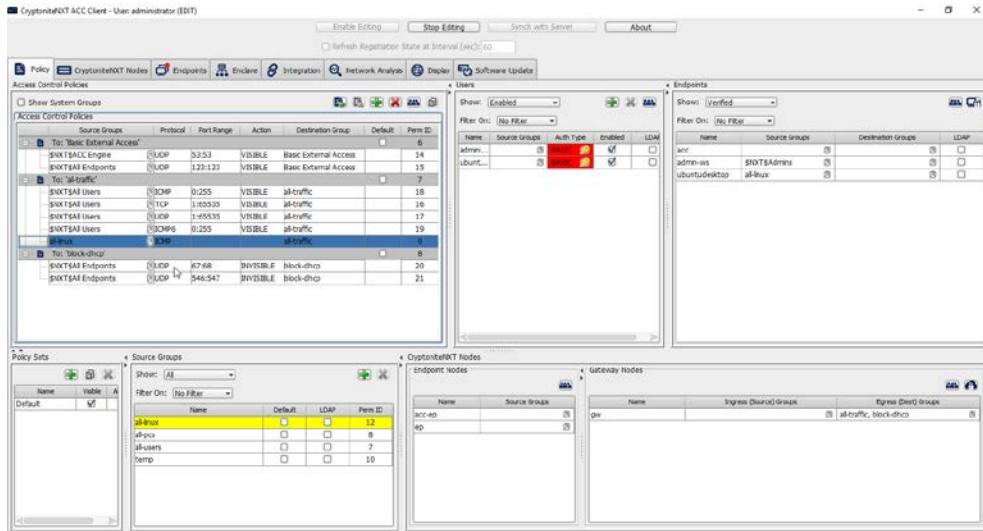
882 5. Click **Save**.

883 6. Select the **Protocol**. In this case, to prevent the machine from using ping, we choose **ICMP**.

884

885

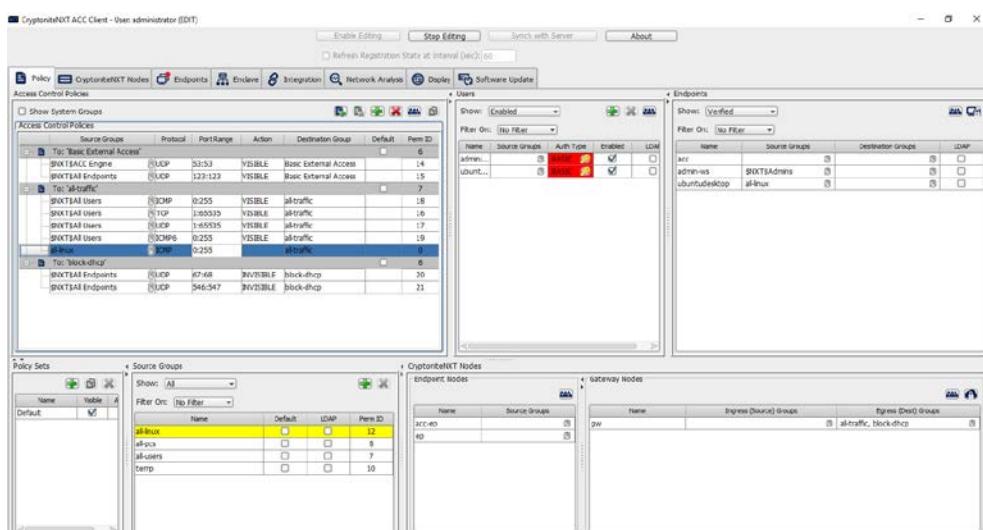
7. Enter the port range that this traffic can operate on.

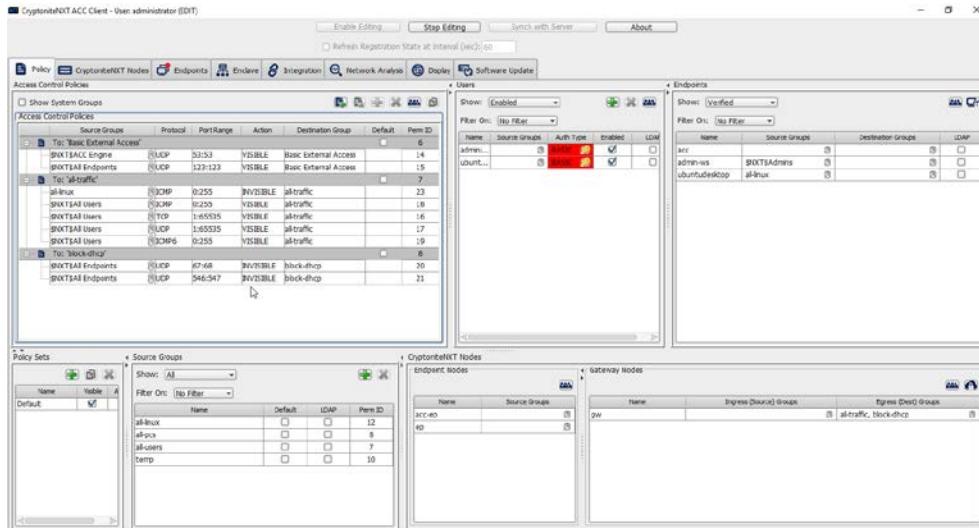


886

887

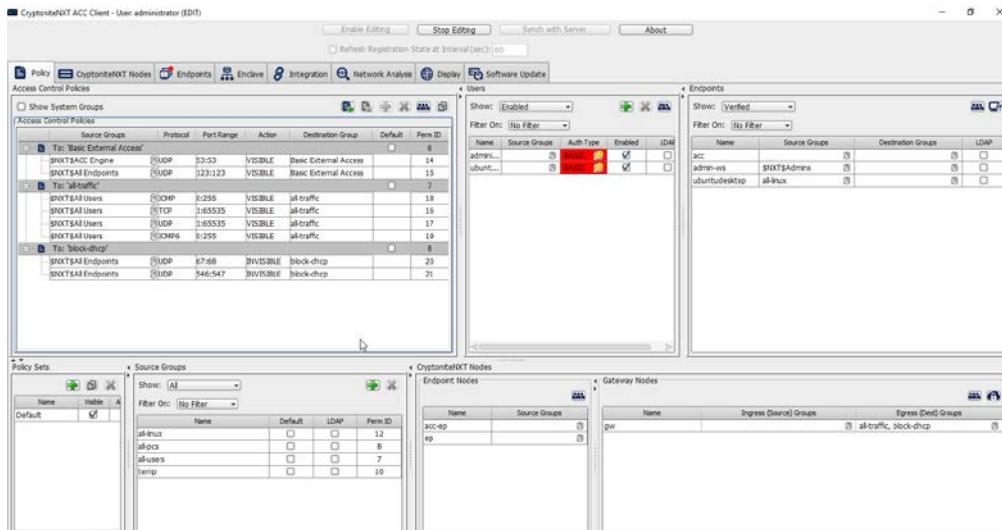
8. Select **INVISBLE** for the **Action** column.





888

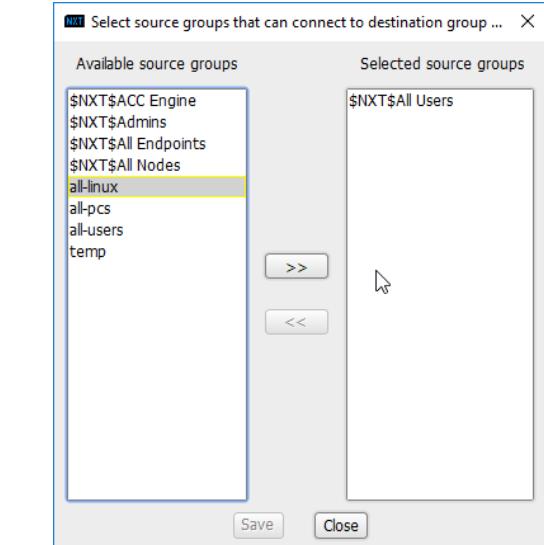
- 889 9. This will prevent the members of this group from using ping.
 890 10. To allow the members of this group to use ping, delete this rule. Right-click the entry and
 891 select **Delete Access Control Policy Entries**.



892

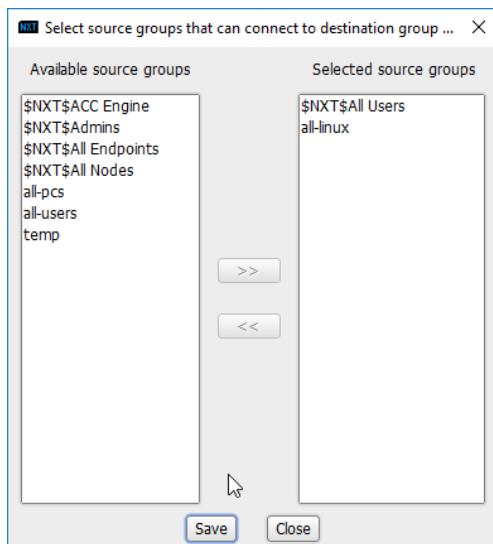
- 893 11. Add the newly created group to the existing policy entry by clicking the arrow for that entry
 894 under **Source Groups**.
 895 12. Select the newly created group.

896
897

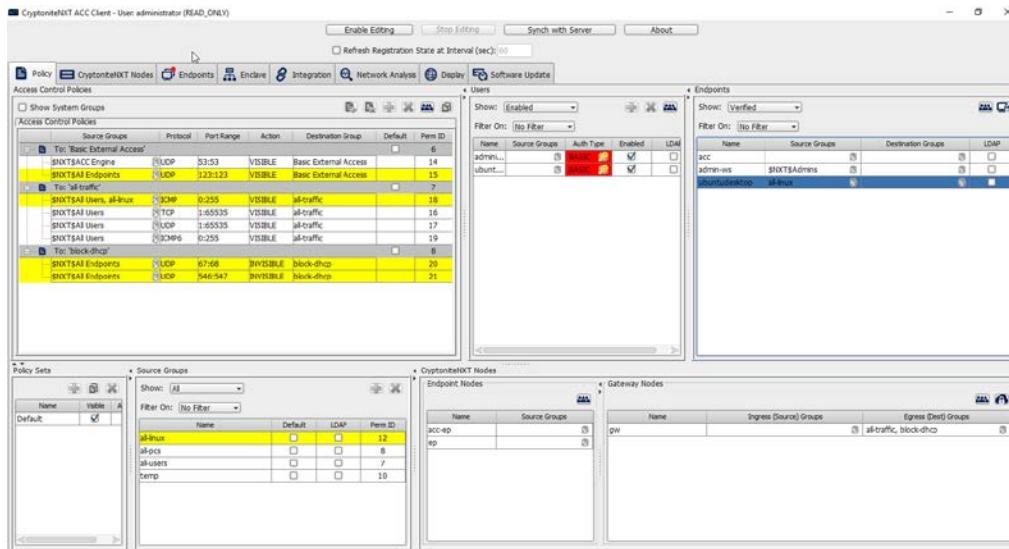


13. Click the >> button.

898
899
900



14. Click **Save**.
15. Click **Stop Editing** when finished.

901
902
903

16. Now, the new machine should be allowed to use ping. With these policies it is possible to manage all traffic through the specification of groups, ports, and protocols.

904

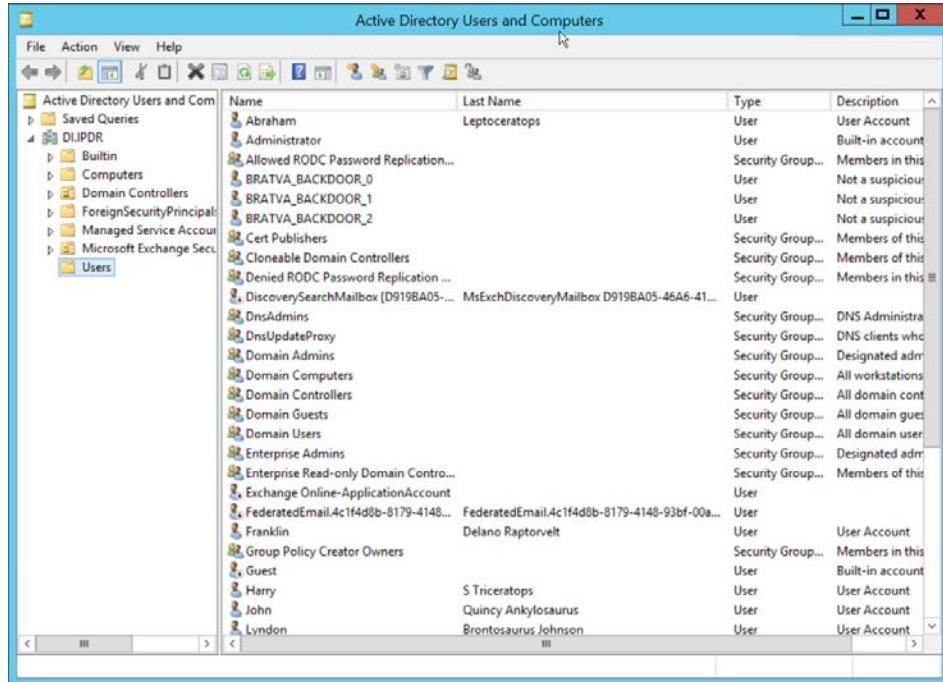
2.7.2 Integrate CryptoniteNXT with Active Directory

905 In this section, devices listed in Active Directory will be imported into CryptoniteNXT. For this to be
906 successful, the DNS server must have reverse lookup zones configured for the AD server. Please see
907 Section 2.1.6 for setting up reverse lookup zones on the AD/DNS server.

908

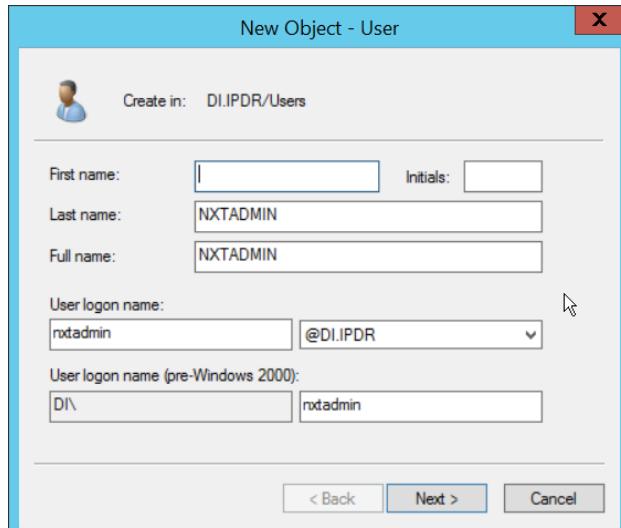
2.7.2.1 Generate a Keytab File

- 909 1. Open **Active Directory Users and Computers**.



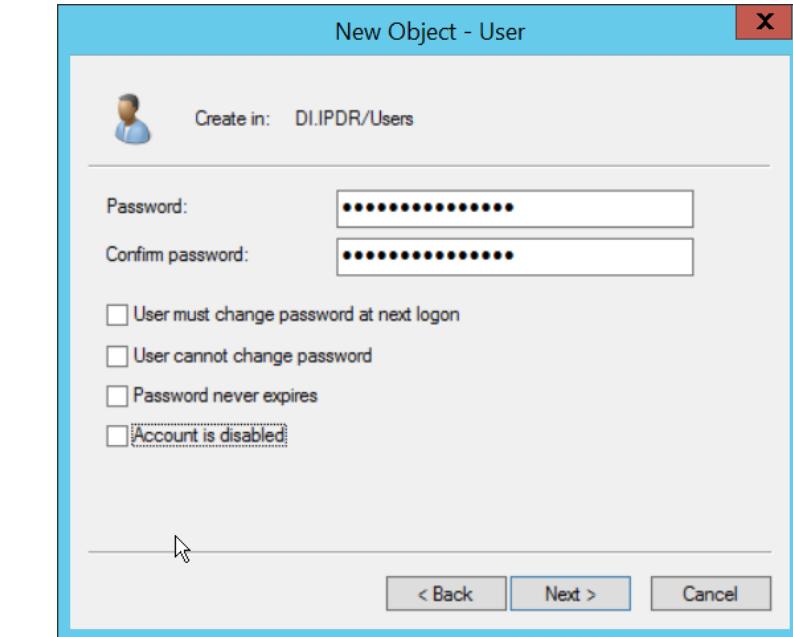
910

- 911 2. Right-click the **Users** folder in the left pane and select **New > User**.
- 912 3. Enter a **name** for this user, such as **nxtadmin**.

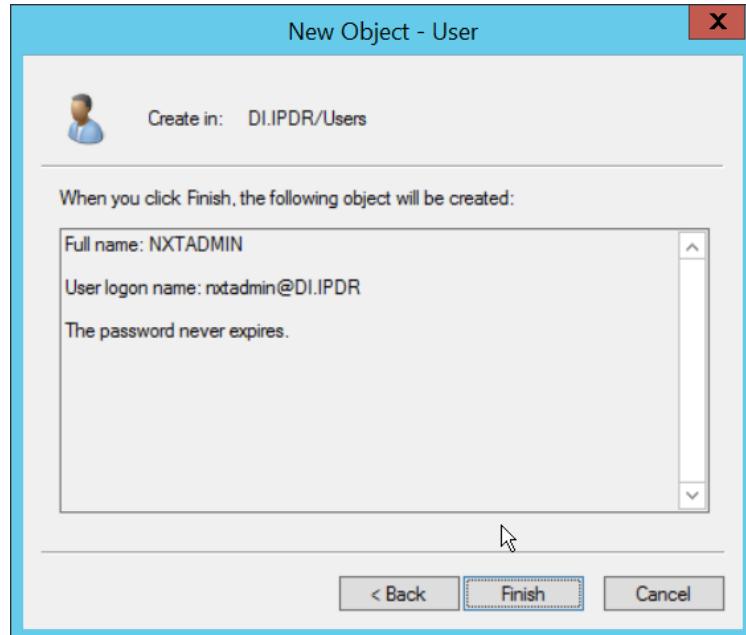


913

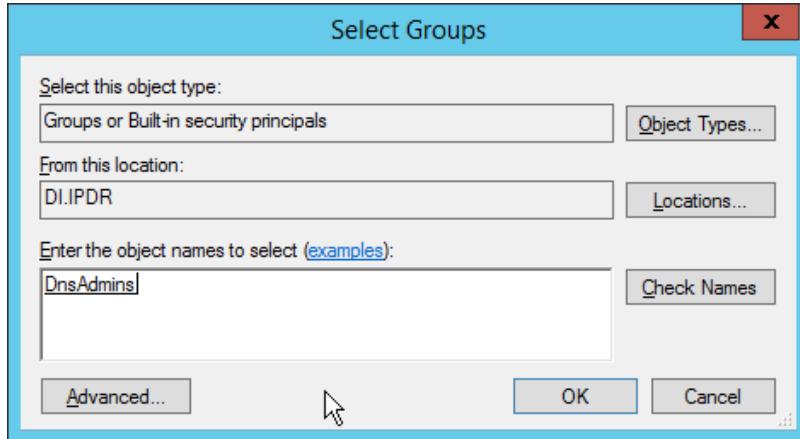
- 914 4. Click **Next**.
- 915 5. Enter a **password** for this user, and set the password policy.

916
917

6. Click
- Next**
- .

918
919
920
921

7. Click
- Finish**
- .
-
8. Right-click the newly created user and select
- Add to a group....**
-
9. Enter
- DnsAdmins**
- .



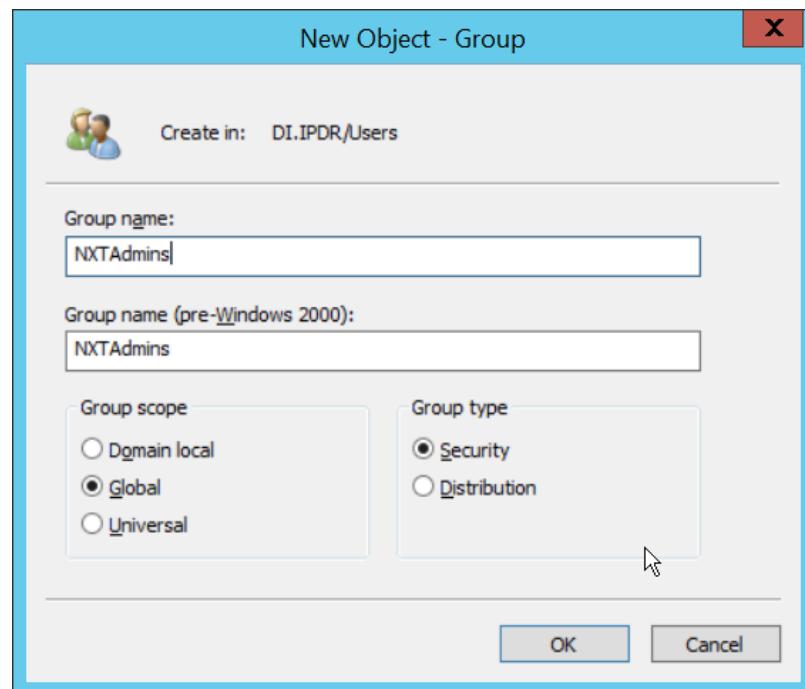
922

10. Click **OK**.

923

11. Right-click the **Users** folder in the left pane and select **New > Group**.

924

12. Enter **NXTAdmins** as the group name.

925

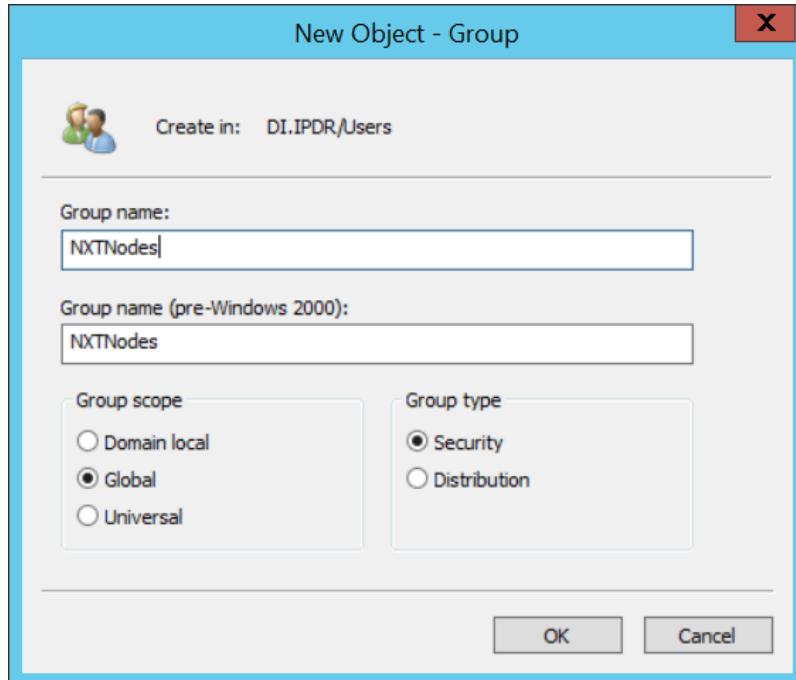
13. Click **OK**.

926

14. Right-click the **Users** folder in the left pane and select **New > Group**.

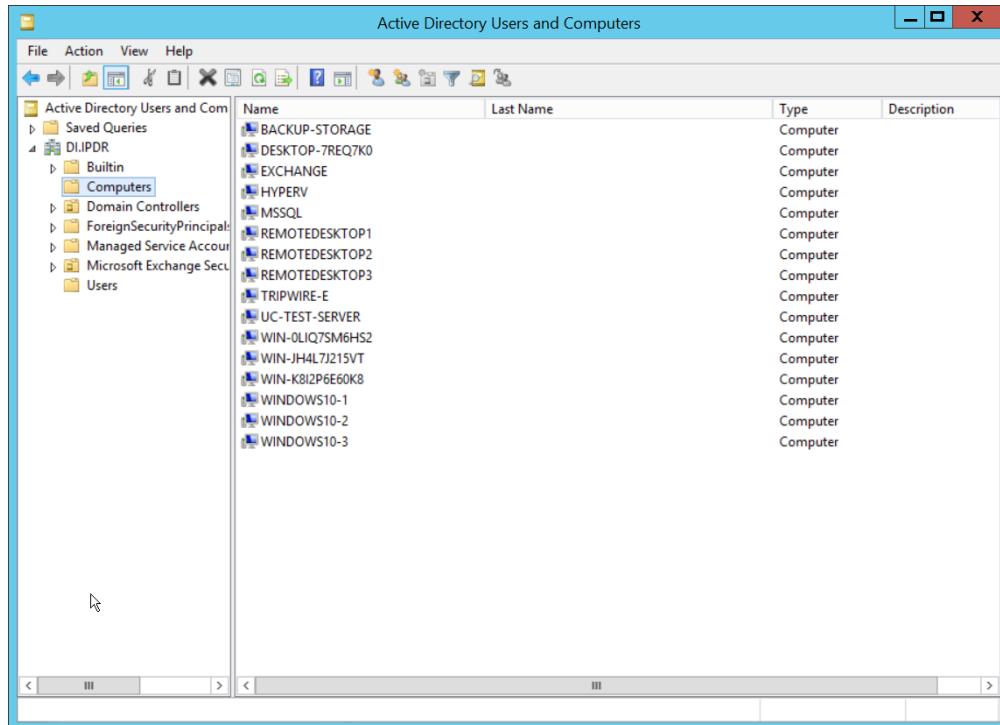
927

15. Enter **NXTNodes** as the group name.



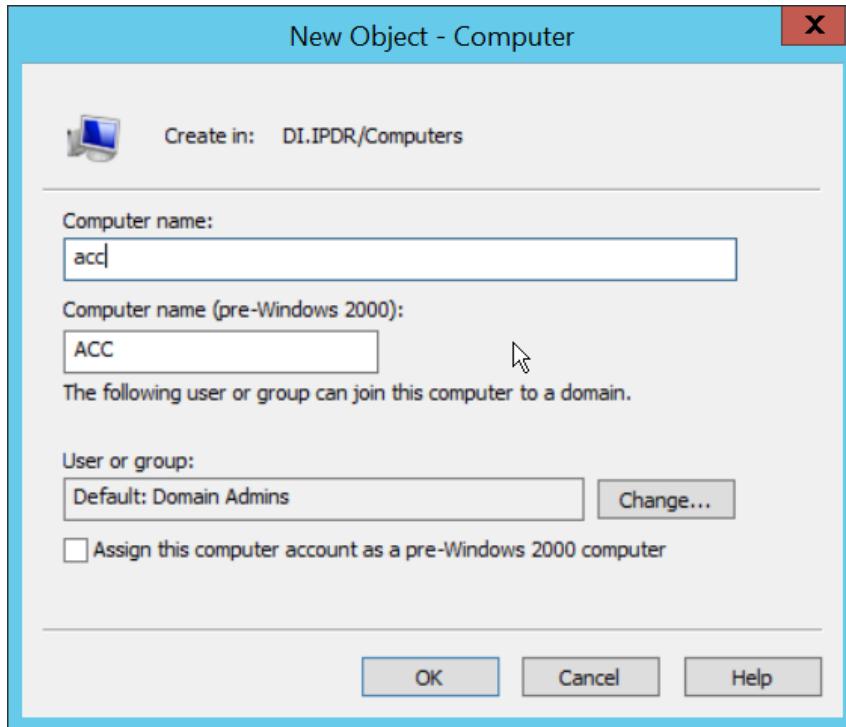
930

- 931 16. Click **OK**.
932 17. Click **Computers** in the left pane.



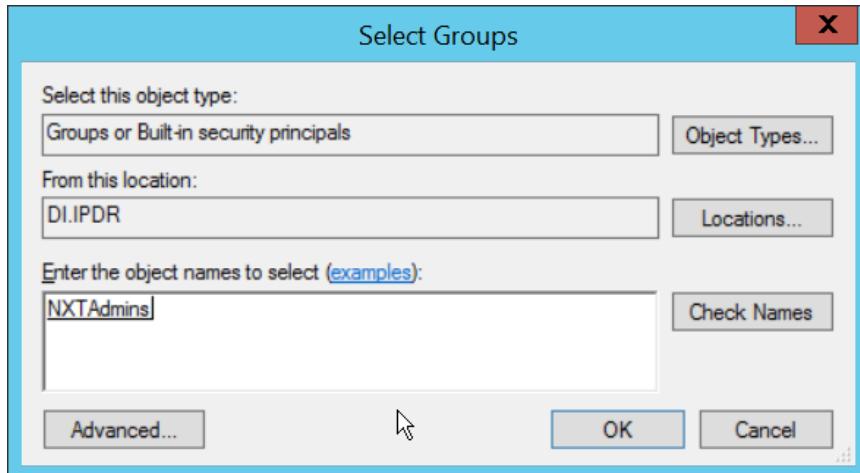
933

18. Right-click **Computers** in the left pane and select **New > Computer**.
19. Enter the name of the **acc** server for **CryptoniteNXT** (Node A).



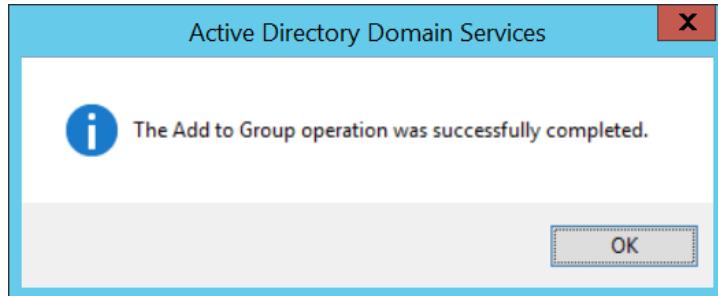
936

- 937 20. Click **OK**.
- 938 21. Right-click the newly created computer and select **Add to a group....**
- 939 22. Enter **NXTAdmins** in the box labeled **Enter the object names to select (examples):..**



940

- 941 23. Click **OK**.



942

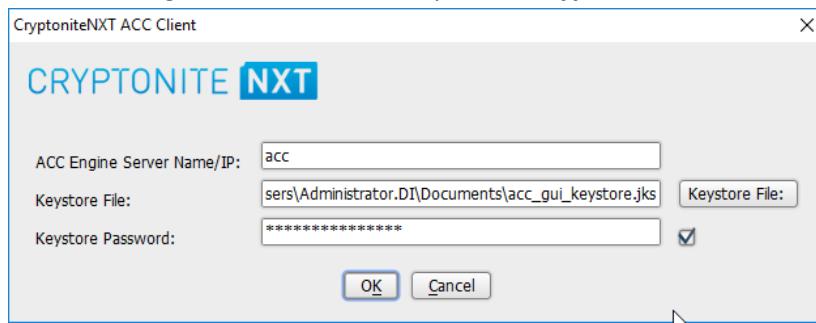
- 943 24. Click **OK**.
- 944 25. Open a new Administrator **PowerShell** window.
- 945 26. Enter the following command, using the newly created user in the **DnsAdmins** group:

```
> ktpass -princ DNS/<user>.<domain>@<DOMAIN> -mapuser
<user>@<domain> -pass <user password> -out .\<keytab filename>
-ptype krb5_nt_principal -crypto all
```
- 946
- 947
- 948
- 949
- 950 For example:

```
> ktpass -princ DNS/nxtadmin.di.ipdr@DI.IPDR -mapuser
nxtadmin@di.ipdr -pass password123 -out .\keytab.out -ptype
krb5_nt_principal -crypto all
```
- 951
- 952
- 953
- 954
- 955 27. This will produce a keytab file. Copy this file to the CryptoniteNXT Management
 workstation.
- 956

957 2.7.2.2 Import Keytab File to ACC

- 958 1. On the management workstation, open the **CryptoniteNXT ACC GUI**.



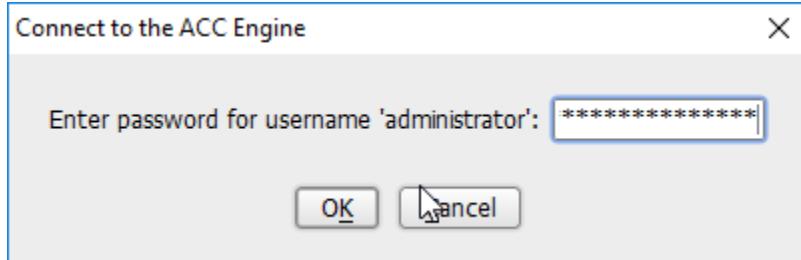
959
960
961

2. Click **OK**.
3. Enter the **password** configured during installation.

962

963

4. Click **OK**.



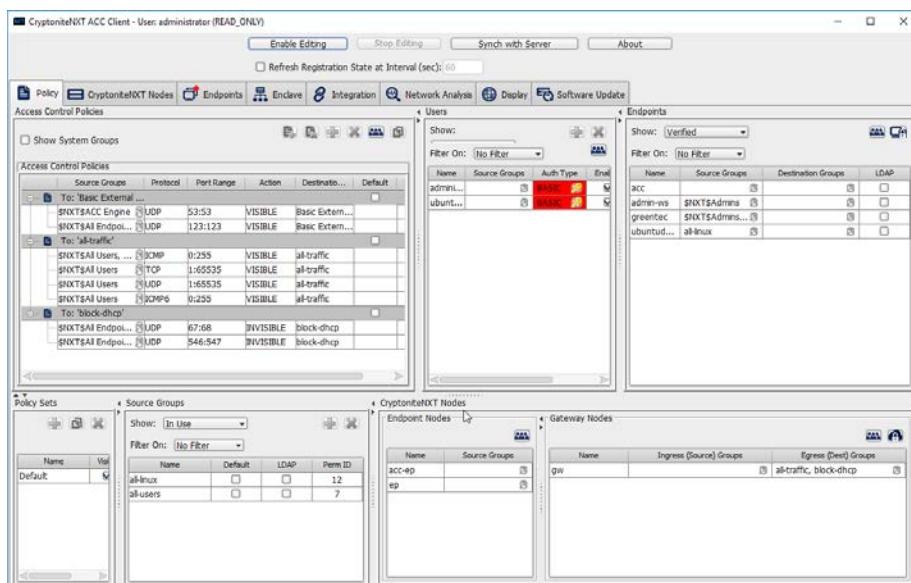
964

965

966

967

5. Click **Enable Editing**.
 6. Click the **Integration** tab.
 7. Check the box next to **Use Keytab file (for LDAP and/or DDNS):..**



968
969

8. Click Select New Keytab.

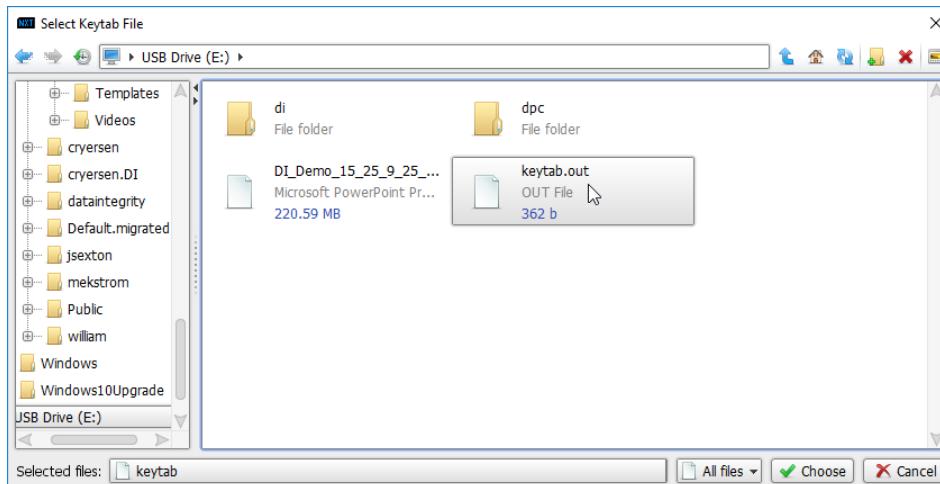
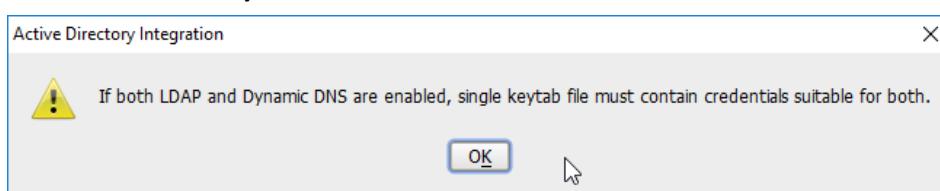
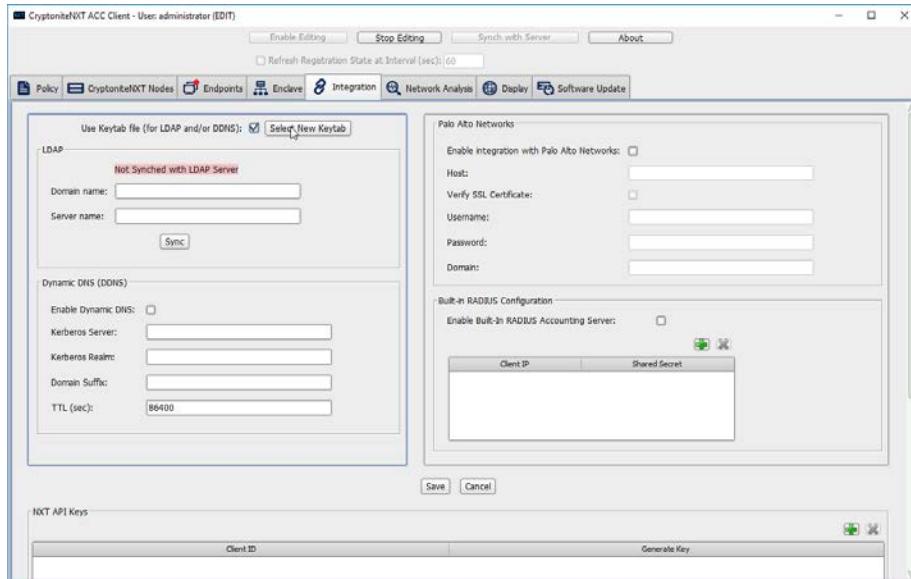
970
971
972

9. Click OK.

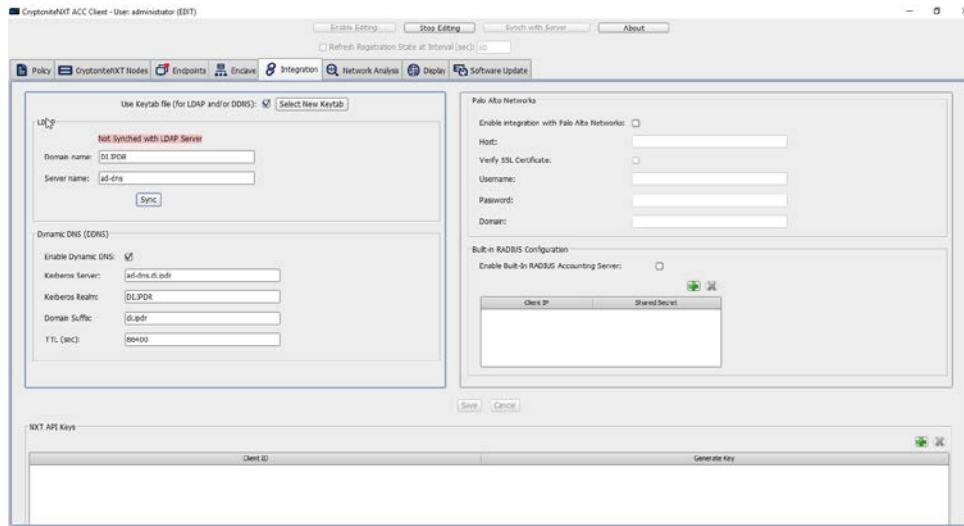
10. Navigate to the keytab file.

973
974
975

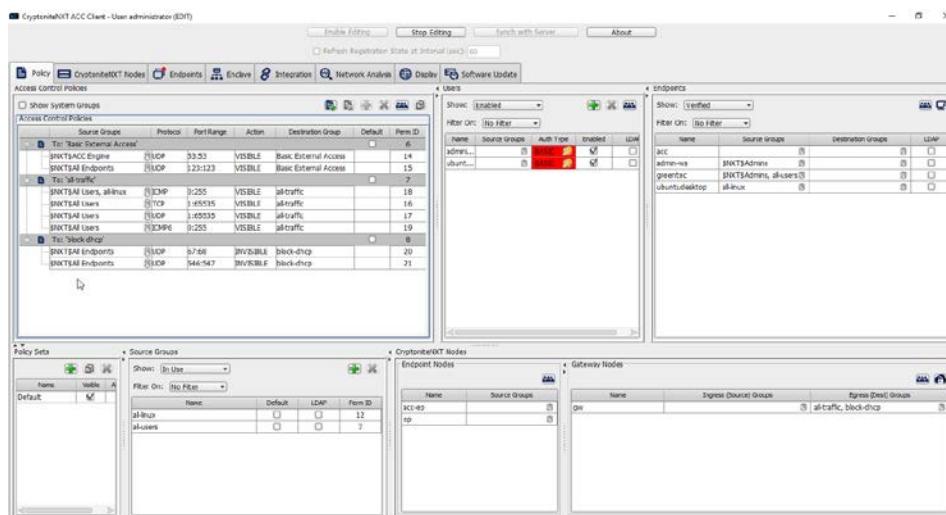
- 11. Click Choose.**
12. Click Save.



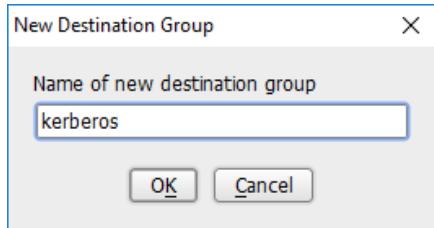
- 976 13. Under **LDAP**, enter the **Domain name** (such as DI.IPDR) and the **Server name** (such as ad-dns).
 977
 978 14. Check the box next to **Enable Dynamic DNS**:
 979 15. Enter the **fully qualified domain name** of the DNS server (such as ad-dns.di.ipdr).
 980 16. Enter the **Kerberos realm** (such as DI.IPDR).
 981 17. Enter the **domain suffix** (such as di.ipdr).



- 982
 983 18. Click **Save**.
 984 19. Click the **Policies** tab.

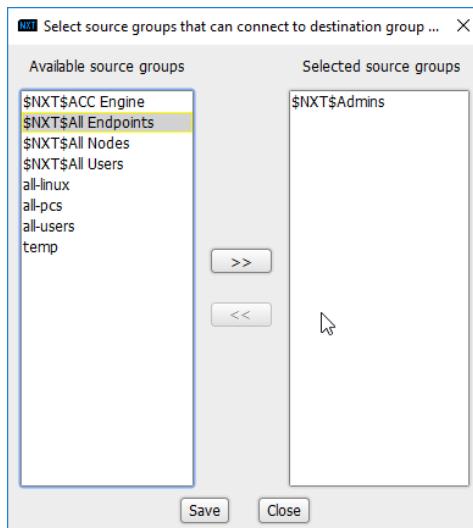


- 985
 986 20. Right-click in the **Access Control Policies Window** and select **New Destination Group**.
 987 21. Enter **kerberos**.



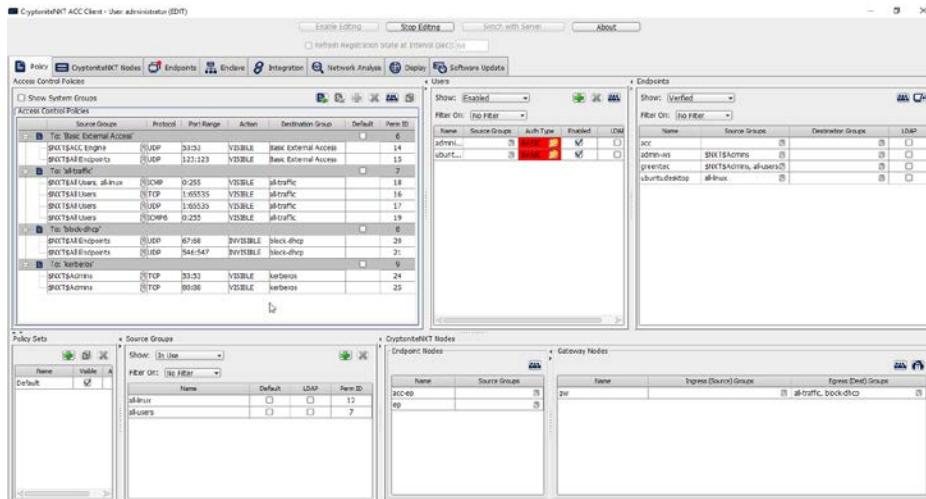
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995

22. Click **OK**.
23. Select **TCP** under **Action**.
24. Enter 53:53 under **Port Range**.
25. Select **VISIBLE** under **Action**.
26. Click the arrow under **Source Groups**.
27. Select **\$NXT\$Admins**.
28. Click the **>>** button.



996
997
998
999

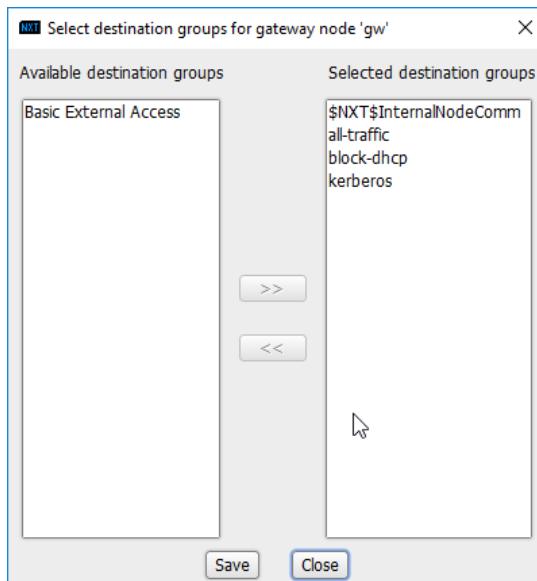
29. Click **Save**.
30. Right-click the **To: 'kerberos'** destination group, and select **New Access Control Policy Entry**.



1000

1001
1002
1003
1004

31. Repeat steps 21–29, but replace 53:53 with 88:88.
32. In the **Gateway Nodes** window, click the arrow under **Egress (Dest) Groups**.
33. Select “kerberos”.
34. Click the **>>** button.

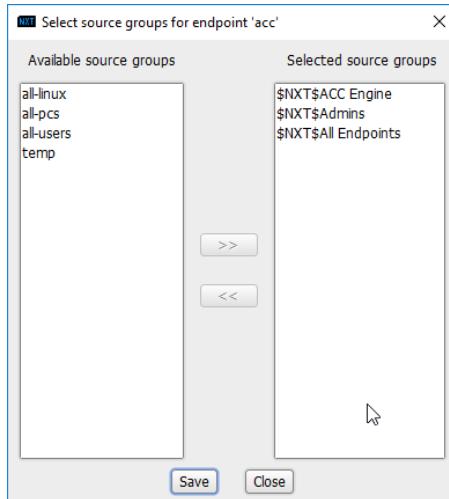
1005
1006
1007
1008
1009
1010

35. Click **Save**.
36. In the **Endpoints** window, click the arrow under **Source Groups** associated with the Administration Control Center (ACC).
37. Select **\$NXT\$Admins**.
38. Click the **>>** button.

1011

1012

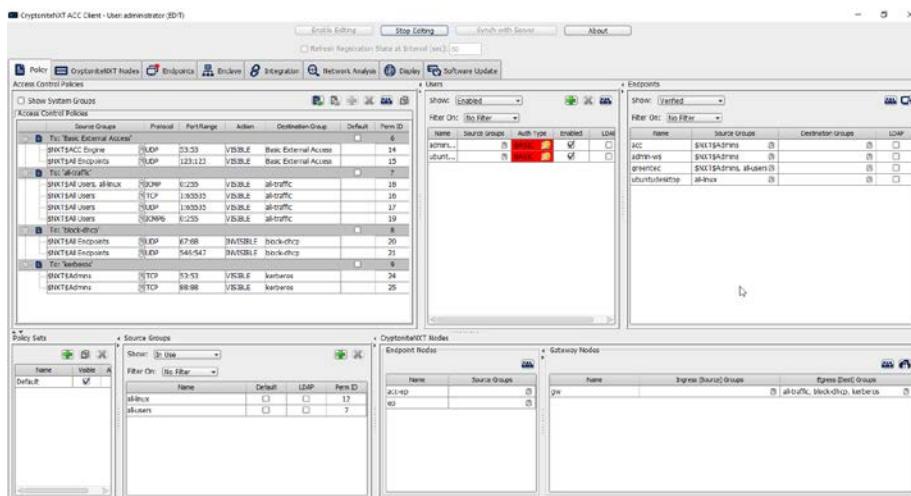
39. Click Save.

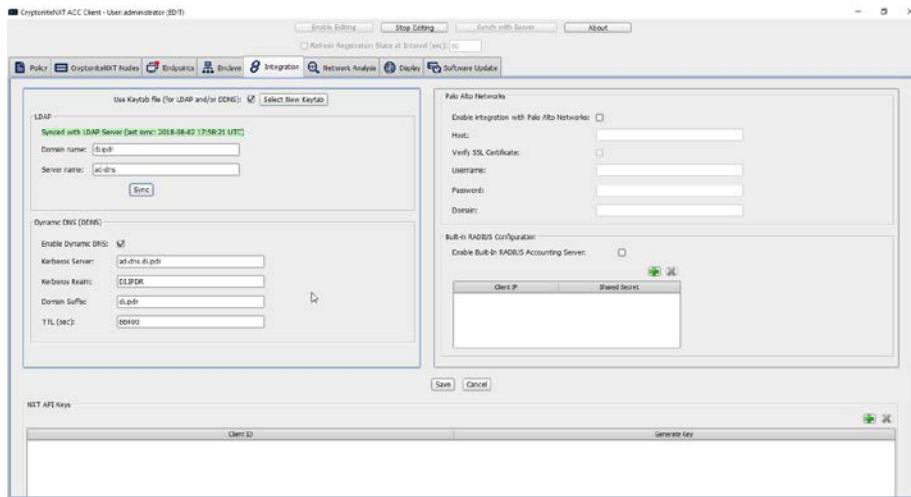


1013

1014

40. Return to the Integration tab.





1015

1016 41. Click **Sync.**1017

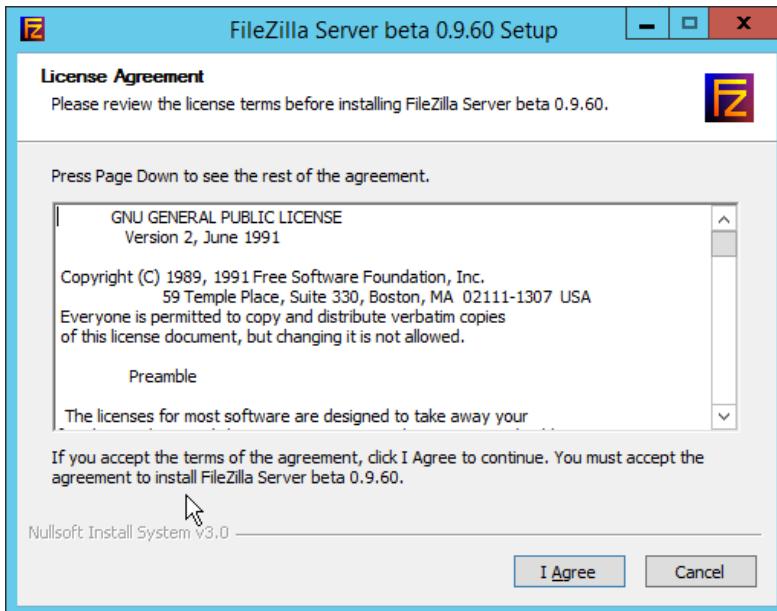
2.8 Backups

1018 For this capability we use an integration of two open-source tools: **Duplicati** and **FileZilla**. **FileZilla** acts
 1019 as a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) (over TLS) server component, while **Duplicati** acts as an encrypted
 1020 backup client. This section details the installation and integration of both tools, as well as the process
 1021 for creating a backup schedule, but does not provide specific recommendations on backup frequency or
 1022 backup targets as those are specific to the organization.

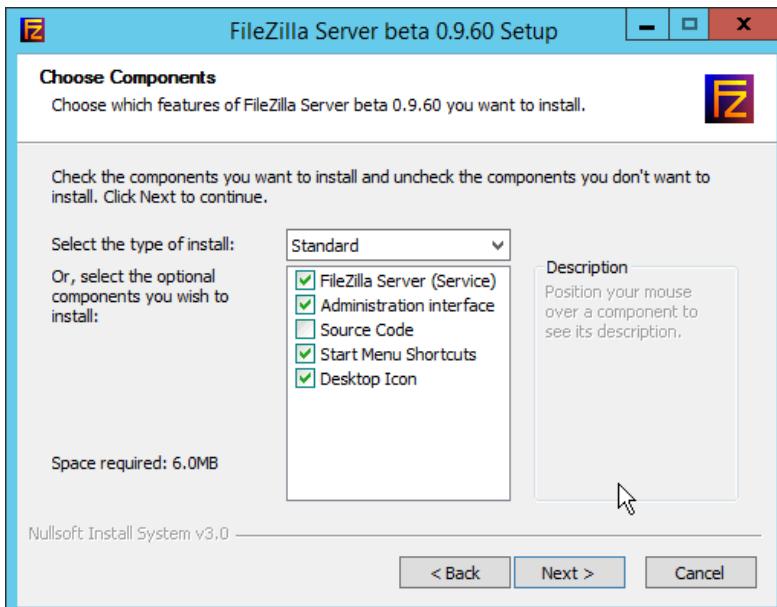
1023

2.8.1 FileZilla FTPS Server Setup

1024 1. Run **FileZilla_Server-0_9_60_2.exe**.

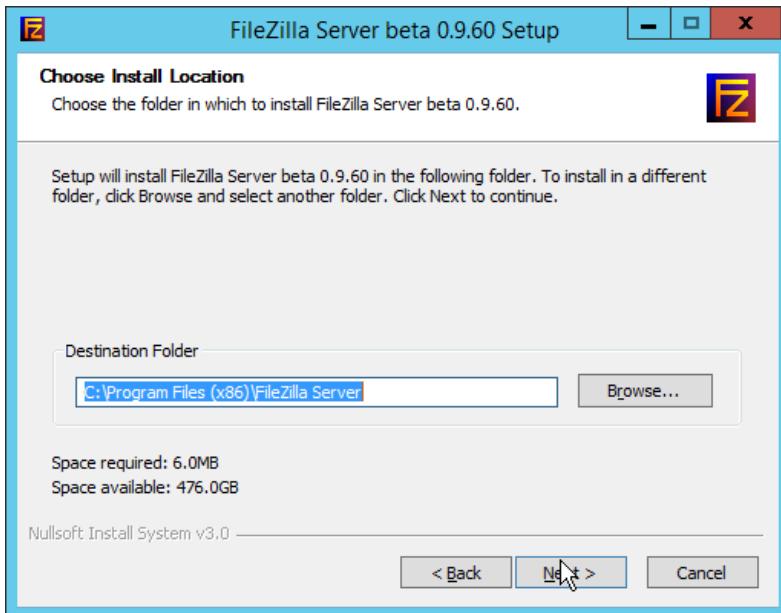


1025

1026 2. Click **I Agree**.1027 3. Select **Standard** from the drop-down menu.

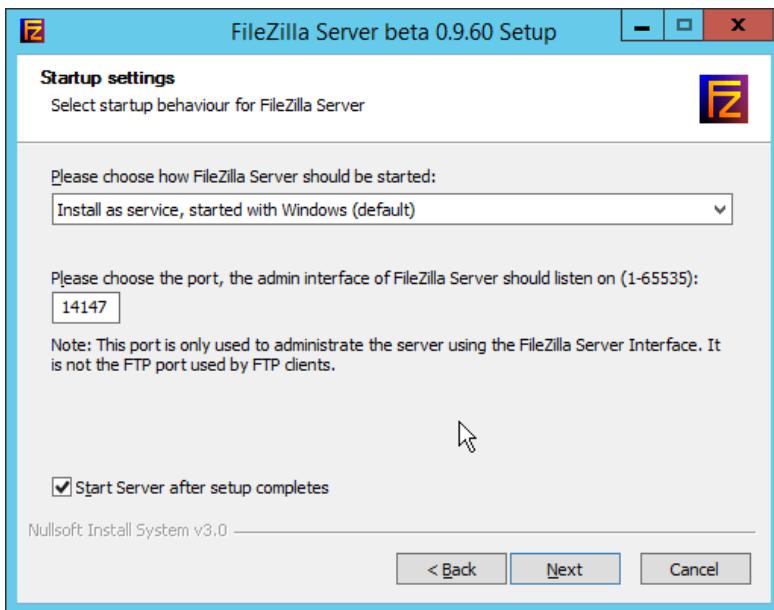
1028

1029 4. Click **Next**.



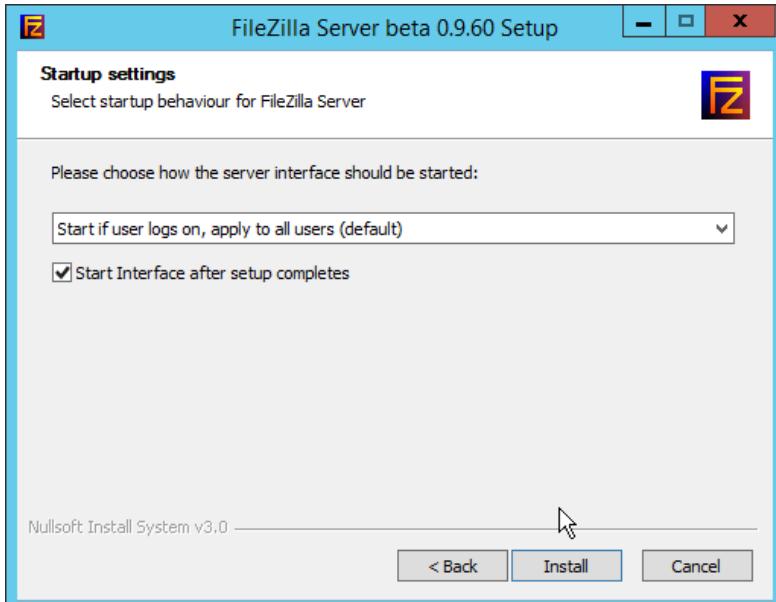
1030

- 1031 5. Click **Next**.
- 1032 6. Select **Install as service, started with Windows (default)** from the drop-down.
- 1033 7. Specify a port (for the administrator interface to run on) if desired (the default is 14147).
- 1034 8. Ensure the box next to **Start Server after setup completes** is checked.

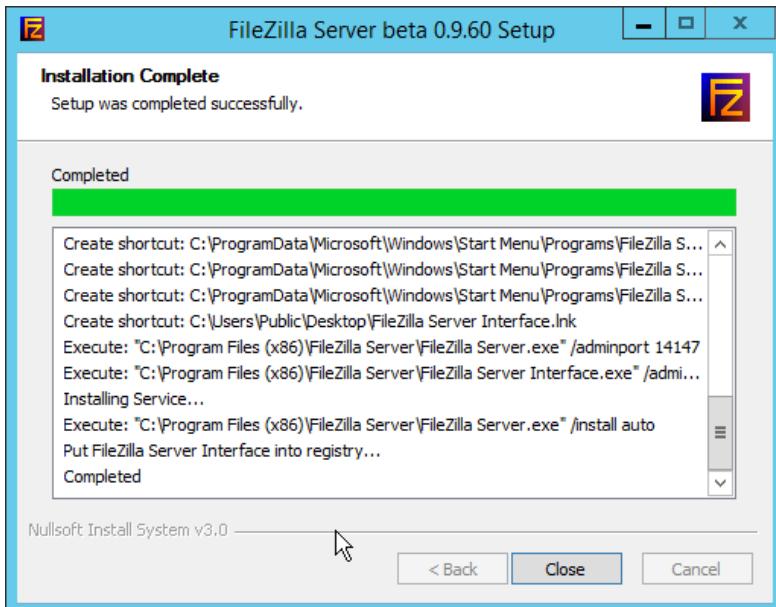


1035

- 1036 9. Click **Next**.



1037

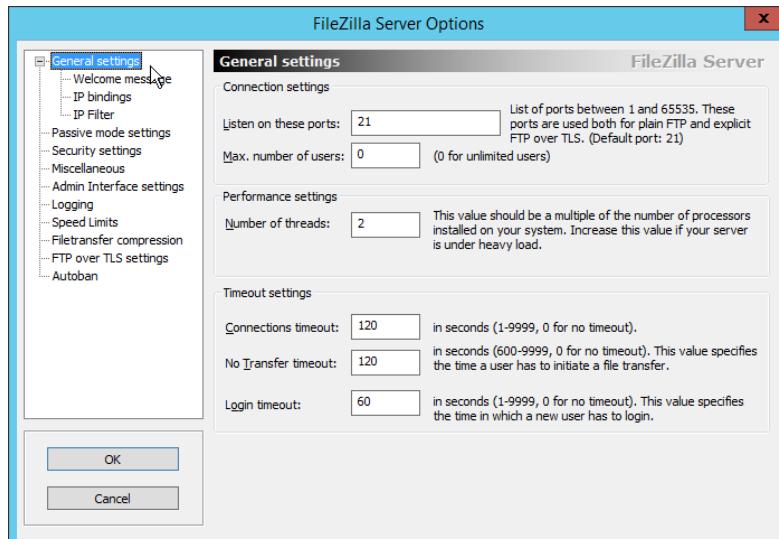
1038 10. Click **Install**.

1039

1040 11. Click **Close**.1041 **2.8.2 FileZilla Configuration**1042 1. When the administrator interface comes up, ensure that the port is correct and click **Connect**.

1043

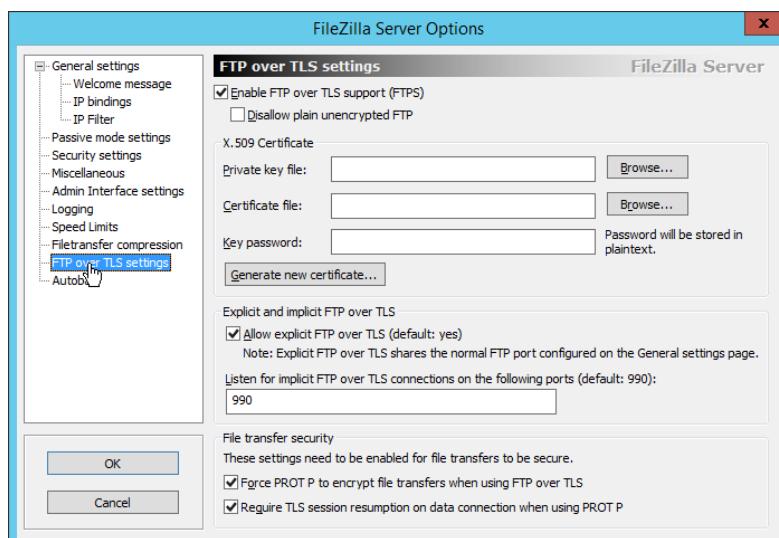
2. Click **Edit > Settings**.



1044

1045

3. Click **FTP over TLS settings**.



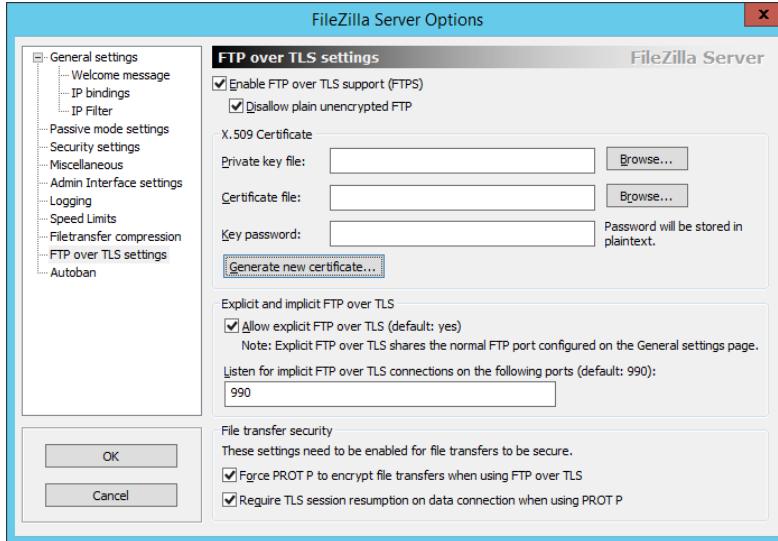
1046

1047

4. Check the box next to **Enable FTP over TLS support (FTPS)**.

1048

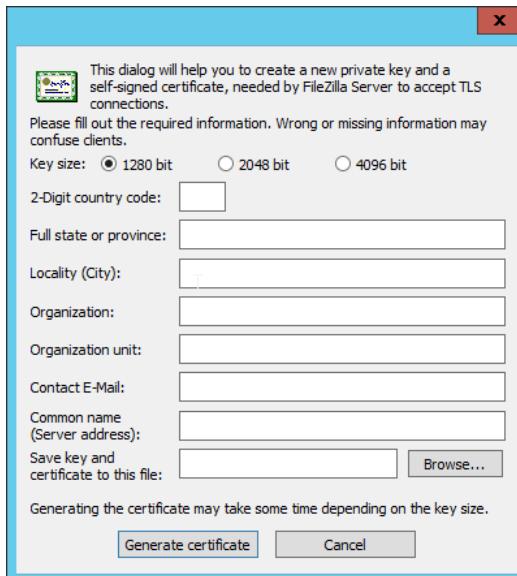
5. Check the box next to **Disallow plain unencrypted FTP**.



1049

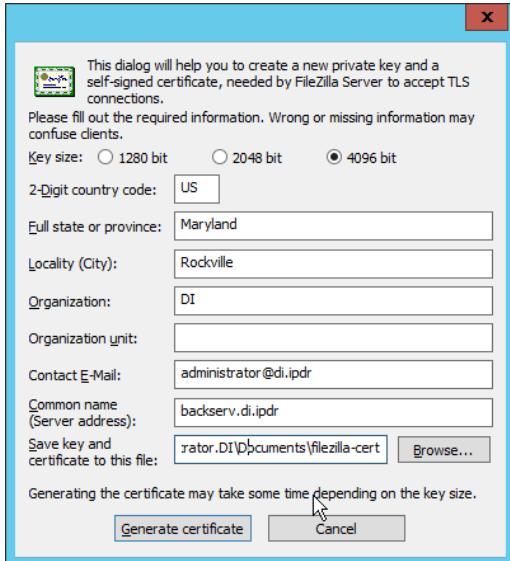
1050

6. Click **Generate new certificate.**



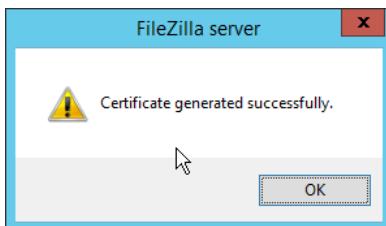
1051

7. Select **4096 bit** for **Key Size**.
 8. Enter the information for the certificate specific to your organization.
 9. For the **common name**, enter the address of the server on which this is installed.
 10. Click **Browse** and specify a file location for the certificate.



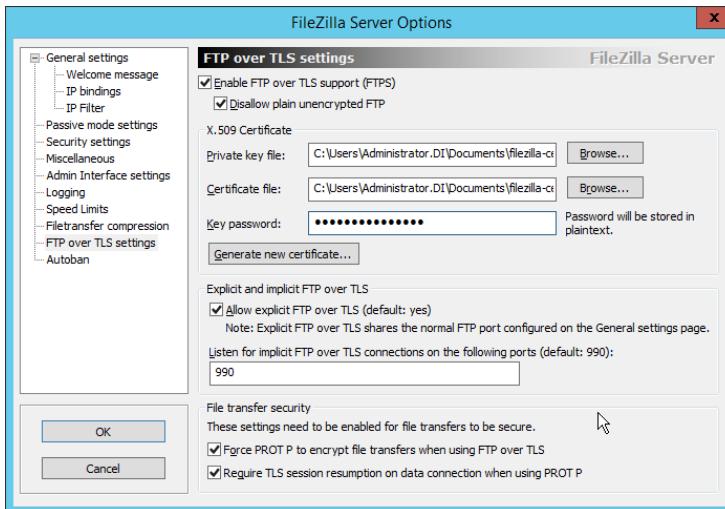
1056

- 1057 11. Click **Generate certificate**. (The file now contains both the private key and the certificate. These
1058 can be separated, for ease of use, as long as the correct file locations are specified in the
1059 settings.)

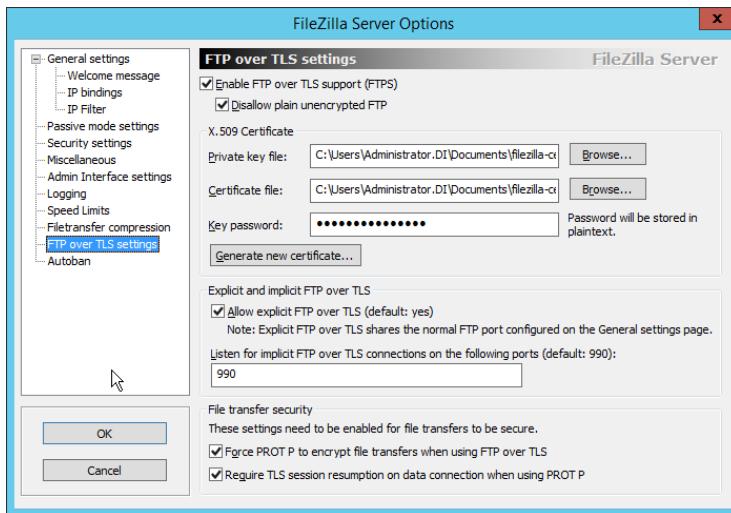


1060

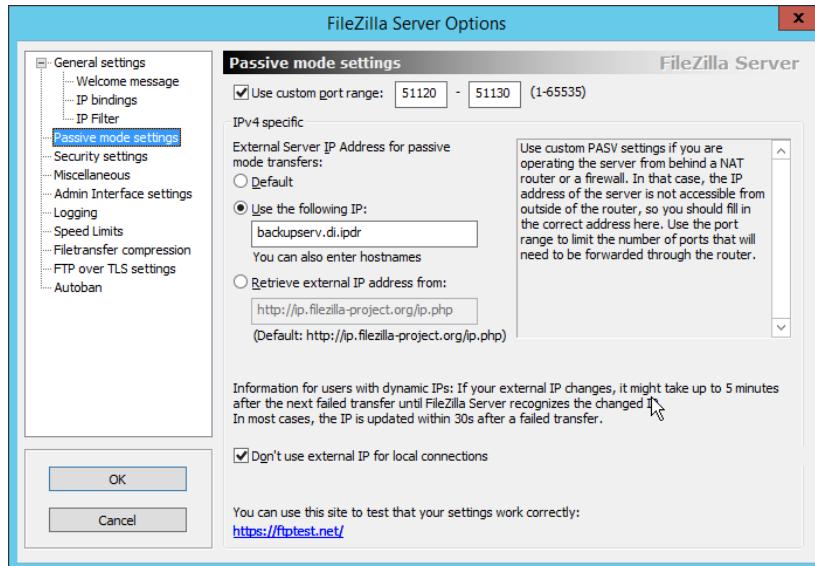
- 1061 12. Click **OK**.



- 1062 13. Enter a **password** for the key.
- 1063 14. Ensure the box next to **Force PROT P to encrypt file transfers when using FTP over TLS** is checked.
- 1064 15. Ensure the box next to **Require TLS session resumption on data connection when using PROT P** is checked.
- 1066



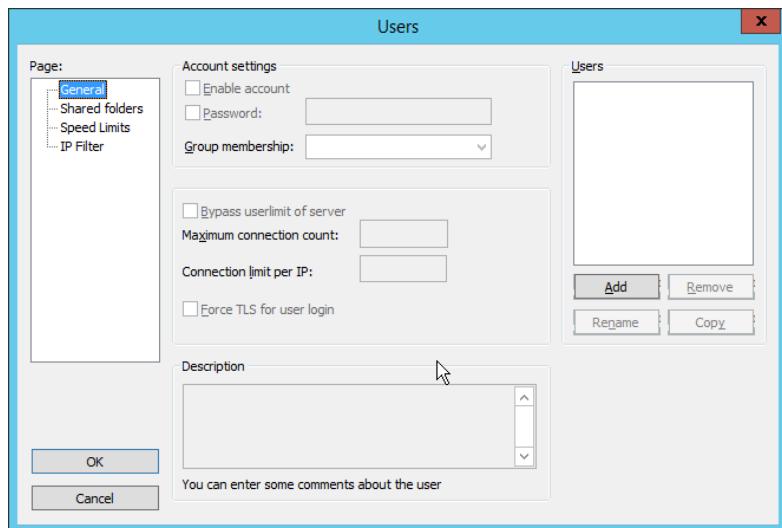
- 1067
- 1068 16. Click **Passive mode settings**. Check the box next to **Use custom port range**. (This is necessary in cases of a local server behind Network Address Translation (NAT) or a firewall.)
- 1069
- 1070 17. Enter a range of ports for passive mode to use. Ensure that these ports are allowed through the firewall.
- 1071
- 1072 18. Select **Use the following IP**.
- 1073 19. Enter the server address.



1074

1075 20. Click **OK**.

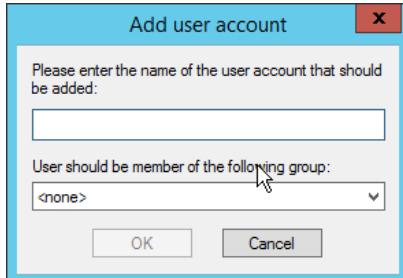
1076 2.8.3 Add a User to FileZilla

1077 1. In the FileZilla administrator interface, click **Edit > Users**.

1078

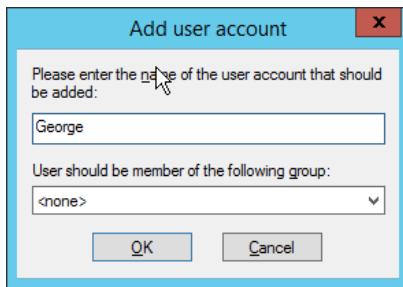
1079 2. Click **Add**.

1080



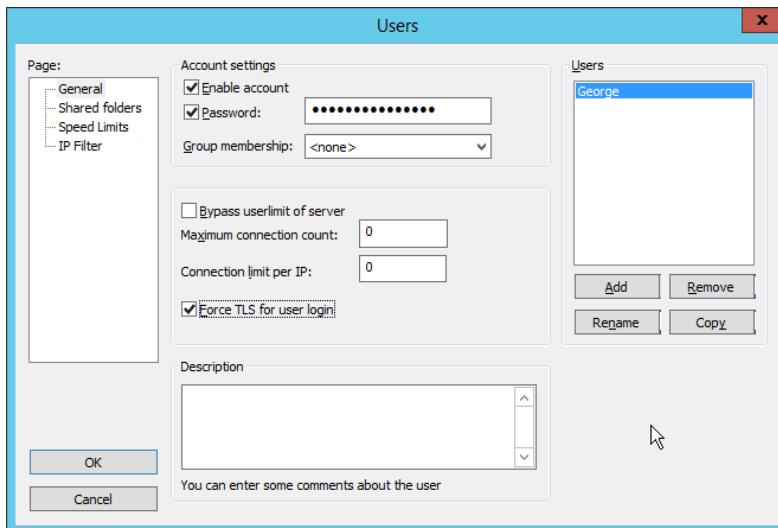
1081

3. Enter a **name** for the user.



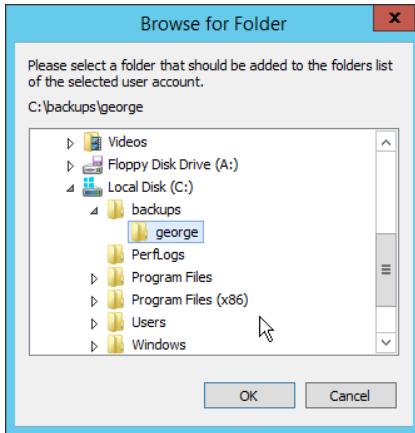
1082

4. Click **OK**.
5. Check the box next to **Password**.
6. Enter a **password** for the user.



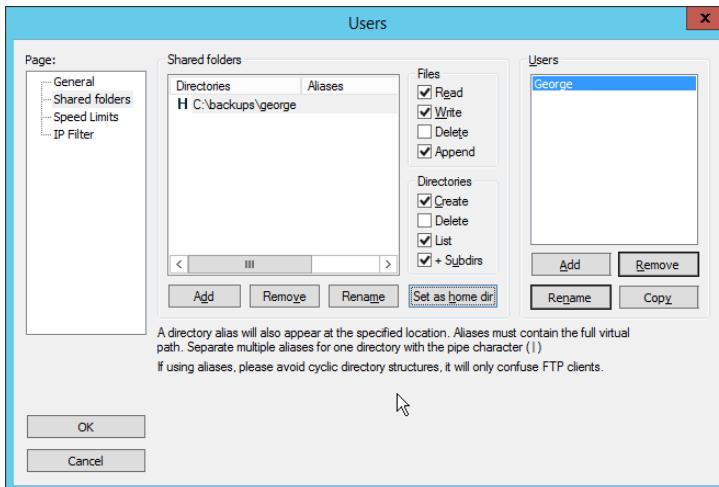
1086

7. Check the box next to **Force TLS for user login**.
8. Click **Shared Folders**.
9. Click **Add**, under **Shared Folders**.



1090

- 1091 10. Select a place for backups *for this user* to be stored.
- 1092 11. Check the boxes next to **Write** and **Append**, under **Files**.
- 1093 12. Check the box next to **Create**, under **Directories**.
- 1094 13. Select this entry and click **Set as home dir**.

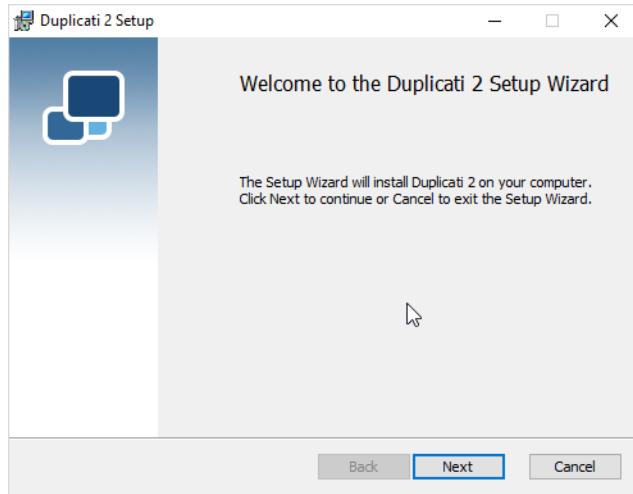


1095

- 1096 14. Click **OK**.

1097 2.8.4 Duplicati Client Installation (Windows)

1. On the client machine, run **duplicati-2.0.3.3_beta_2018-04-02-x64.msi**.



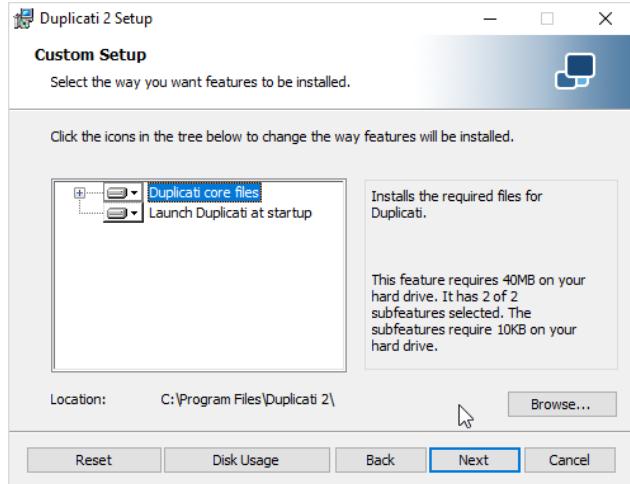
1099

- 1100 2. Click **Next**.
- 1101 3. Check the box next to **I accept the terms in the License Agreement**.



1102

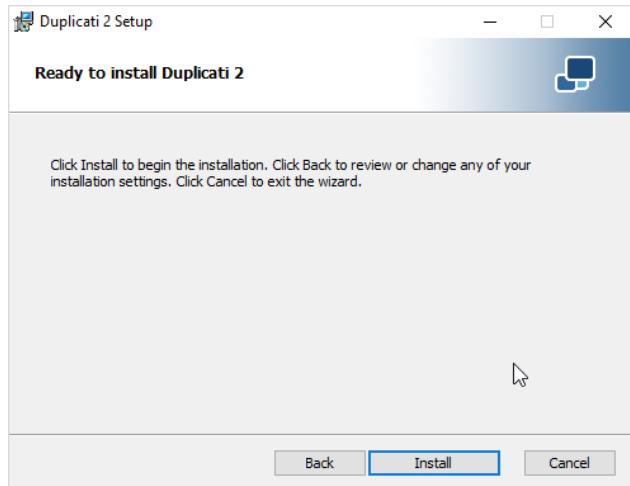
- 1103 4. Click **Next**.



1104

1105

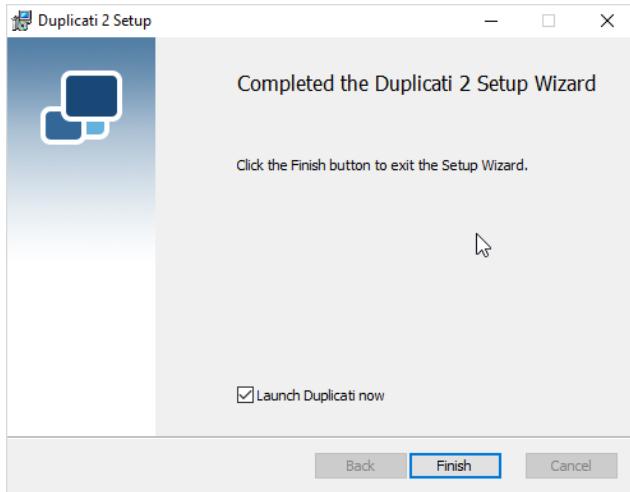
5. Click **Next**.



1106

1107

6. Click **Install**.



1108

1109 7. Click **Finish**.1110 8. Start **Duplicati** by going to **localhost:8200**.1111 **2.8.5 Duplicati Client Installation (Ubuntu)**

1112 1. Install mono by using the following command:

1113

1114 > sudo apt install mono-runtime

1115

1116 2. Download the Duplicati package by running the following command:

1117

1118 > wget

1119 https://github.com/duplicati/duplicati/releases/download/v2.0.3.9
1120 -2.0.3.9_canary_2018-06-30/duplicati_2.0.3.9-1_all.deb

1121

1122 3. Install Duplicati by using the following command:

1123

1124 > sudo dpkg -i duplicati_2.0.3.9-1_all.deb

1125

1126 4. Run Duplicati as a service by running the following command:

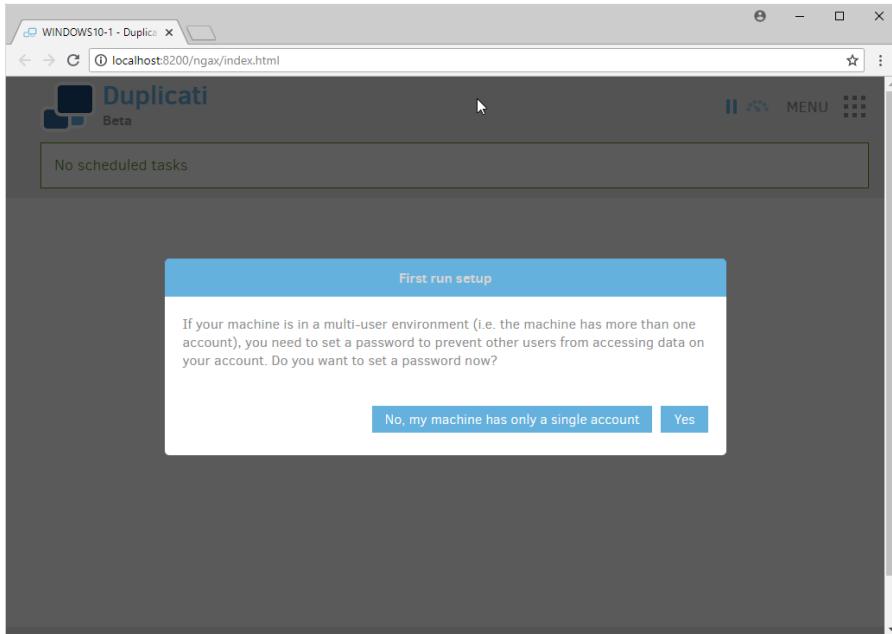
1127

1128 > sudo systemctl enable duplicati

1129

1130 2.8.6 Configure Duplicati

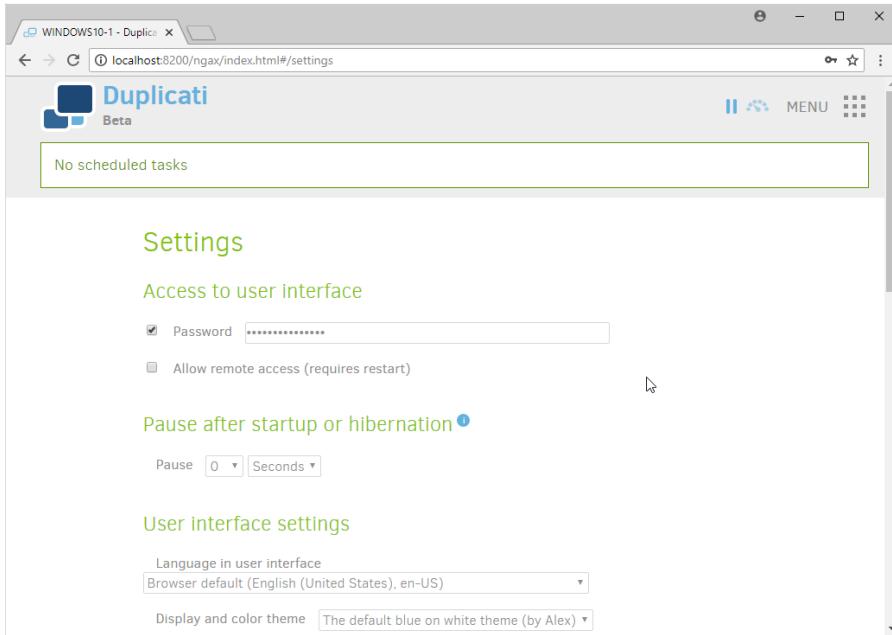
- 1131 1. When it first starts, Duplicati will have a **First run setup**.



1132

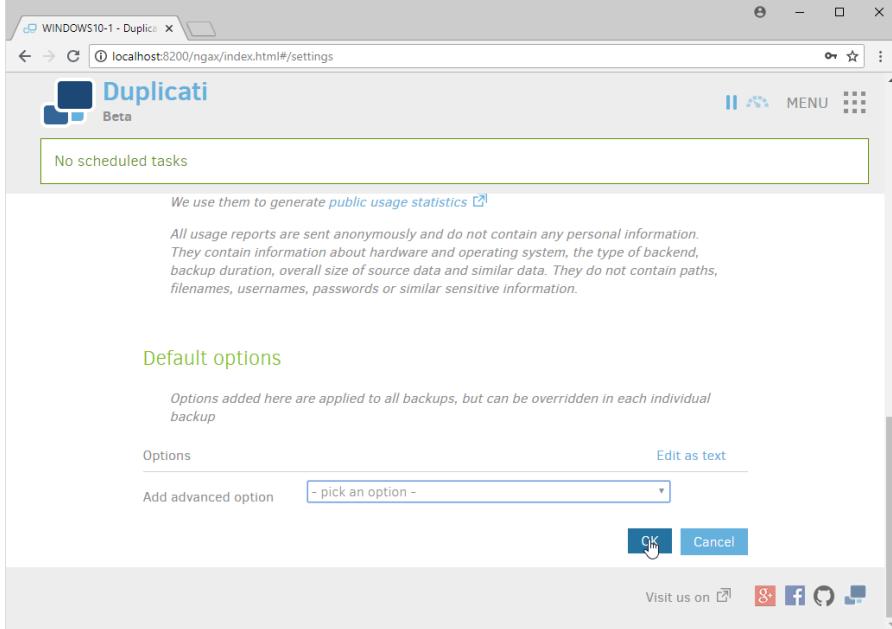
- 1133 2. Click **Yes**.

- 1134 3. Check the box next to **Password**.

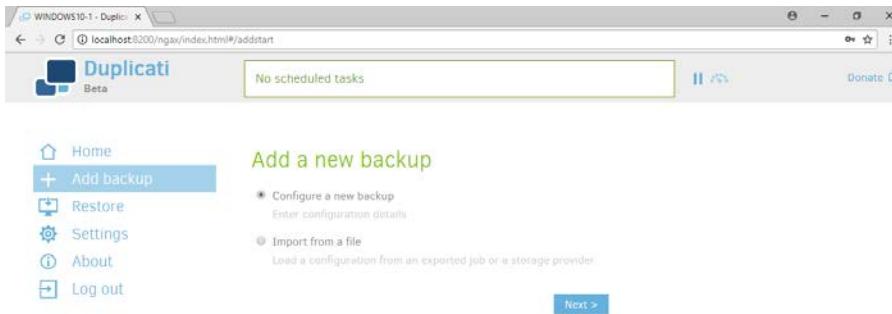


1135

- 1136 4. Enter a **password**.

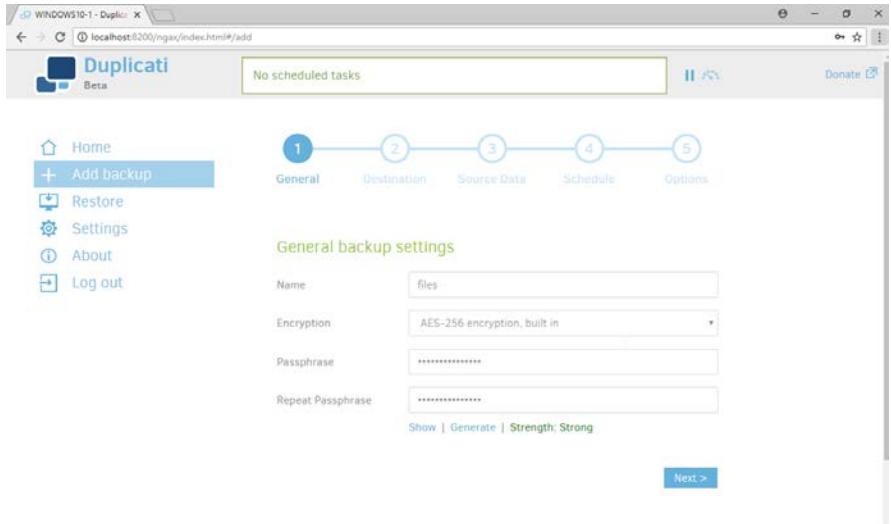


1137

1138 5. Click **OK**.1139 6. On the home page, click **Add backup**.1140 7. Select **Configure a new backup**.

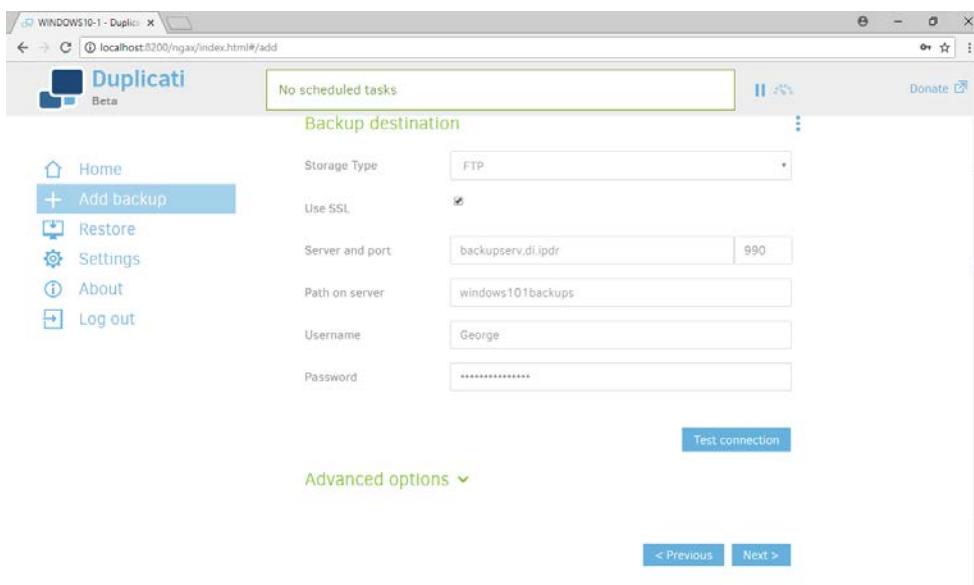
1141

1142 8. Click **Next**.1143 9. Enter a **name** for the backup.1144 10. Select **AES-256 encryption, built in** from the drop-down menu.1145 11. Enter a **password**.



1146

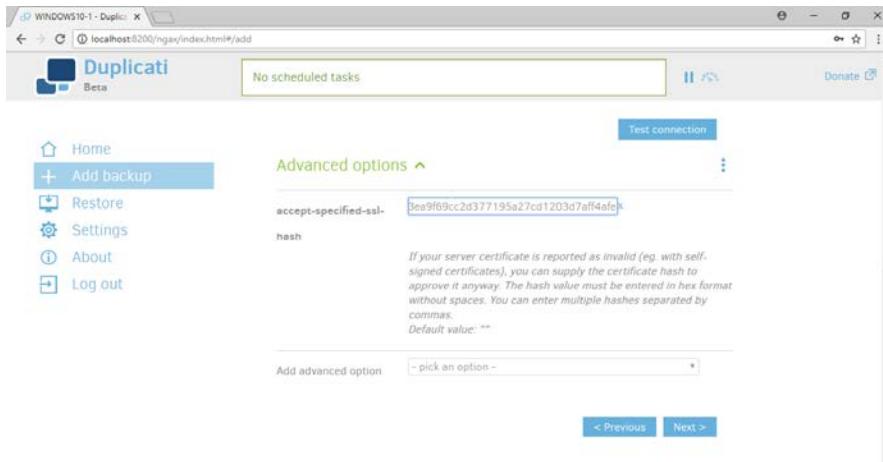
- 1147 12. Click **Next**.
- 1148 13. Select **FTP** for **Storage Type**.
- 1149 14. Check the box next to **Use SSL**.
- 1150 15. Enter the **server name** and **port** (default: 21) of the server running **FileZilla**.
- 1151 16. Enter a **path** for the backup to be stored in (within the specified shared directory of the user).
- 1152 17. Enter the **username** and **password** created for **FileZilla**.



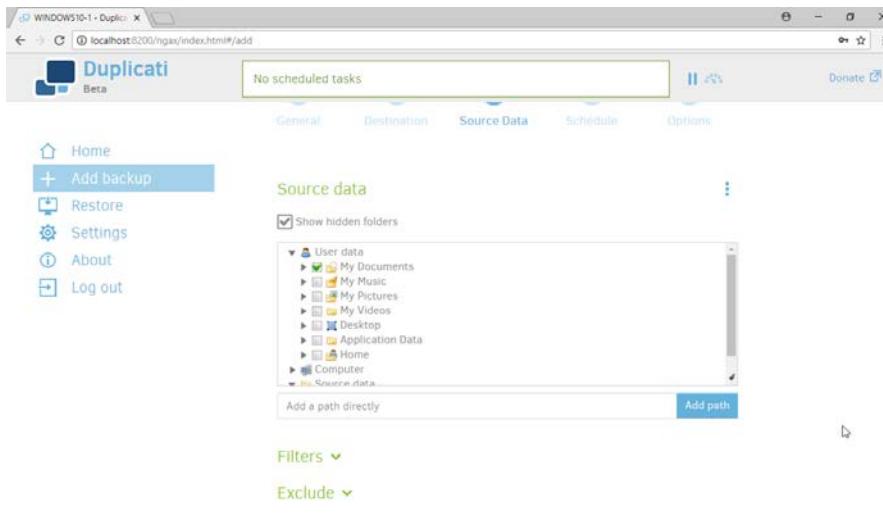
1153

- 1154 18. Click **Test Connection** (if the connection fails, ensure that the port is allowed in your server's firewall).

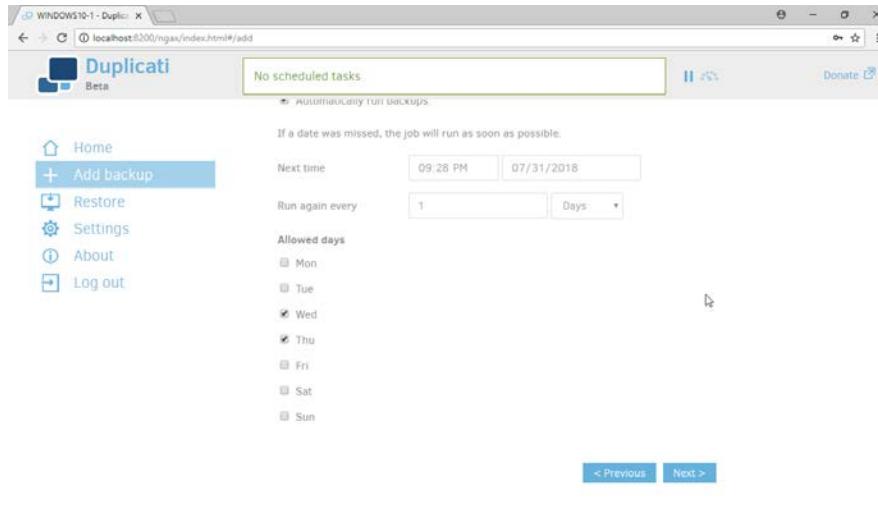
- 1156 19. If you receive an error about a certificate, you can go to **Advanced Options**, select **accept-specified-ssl-hash**, and enter the **thumbprint** from the server's certificate.



- 1158
1159 20. Click **Next**.
- 1160 21. Select the folders on the local machine to be backed up to the server according to your organization's needs.



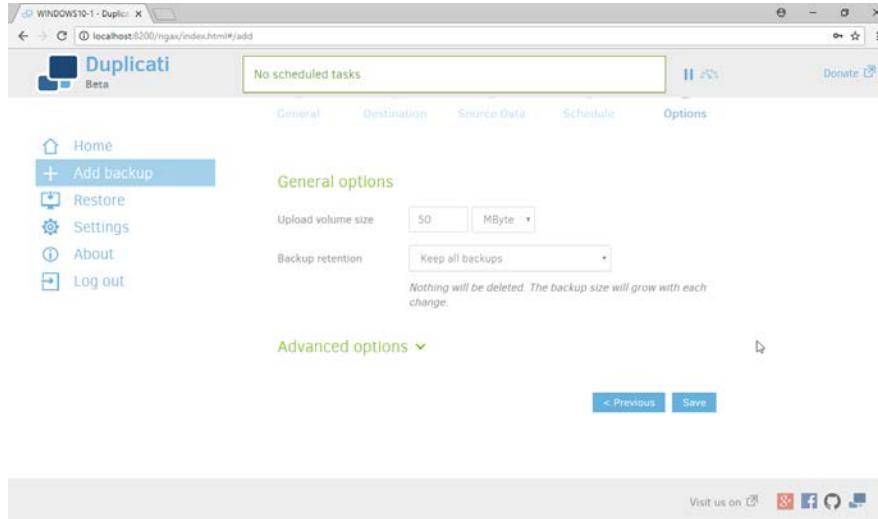
- 1162
1163 22. Click **Next**.
- 1164 23. Select a backup schedule according to your organization's needs.



1165

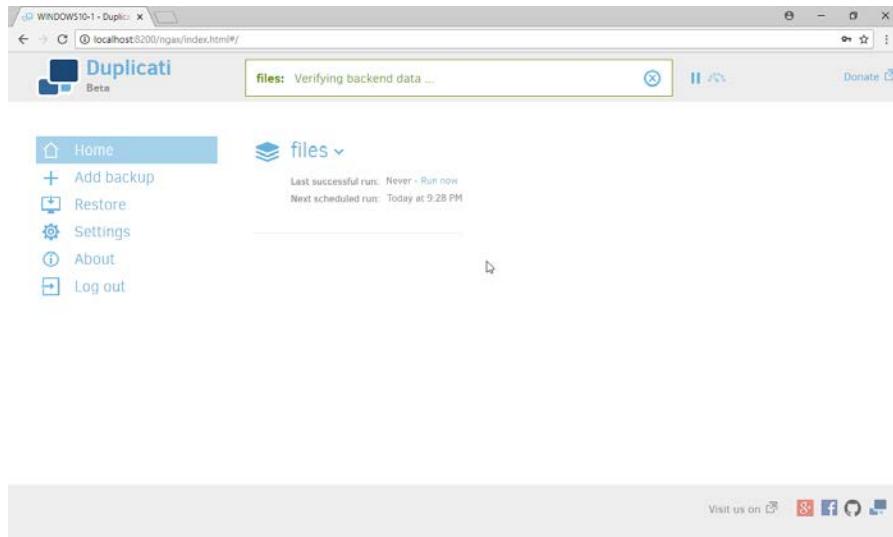
1166 24. Click **Next**.

1167 25. Select any other options according to your organization's needs.



1168

1169 26. Click **Save**.



1170

1171 27. When finished, you can choose to **Run now** to start a backup immediately.

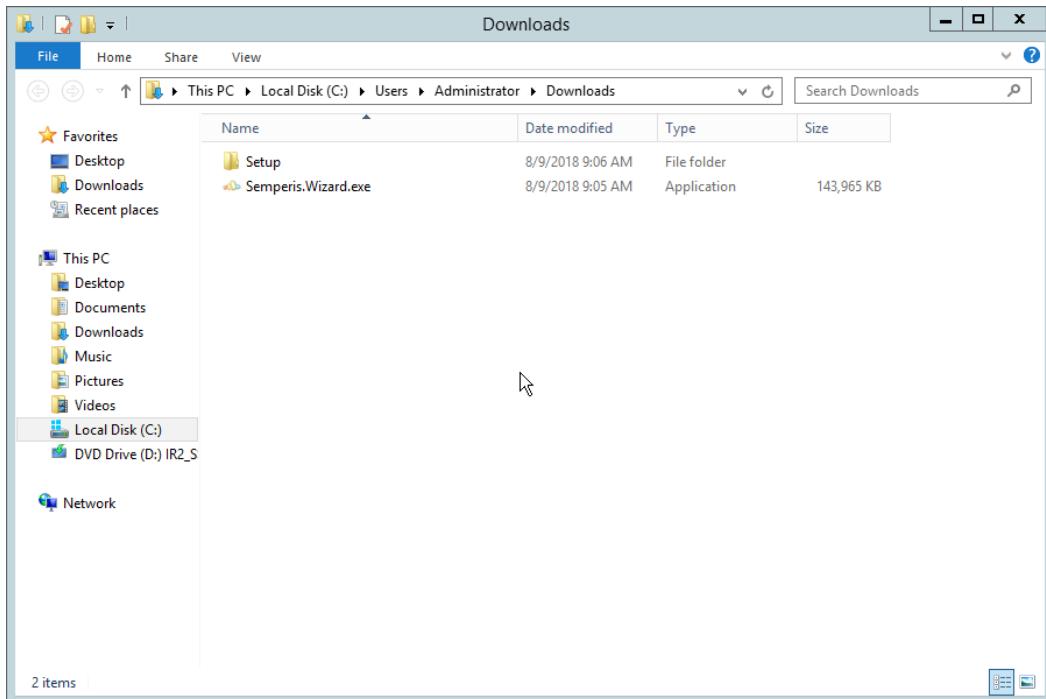
1172 2.9 Semperis Active Directory Forest Recovery

1173 This section details the installation of **Semperis Active Directory Forest Recovery (ADFR)**, a tool used
 1174 for backing up and restoring Active Directory forests. This installation requires both a copy of SQL Server
 1175 Express as well as the **Semperis Wizard**. See the **Semperis ADFR v2.5 Technical Requirements**
 1176 document for specifics on the requirements. For a Windows Server 2012 R2 installation, simply meet
 1177 the following requirements:

- 1178
 - .NET Framework Version 3.5 SP1
 - .NET Framework Version 4.5.2 or later
 - not joined to the Active Directory domain it is protecting
 - SQL Express is not installed on the machine, but the installer SQLEXPRESS_x64_ENU.exe is downloaded.

1183 2.9.1 Install Semperis ADFR

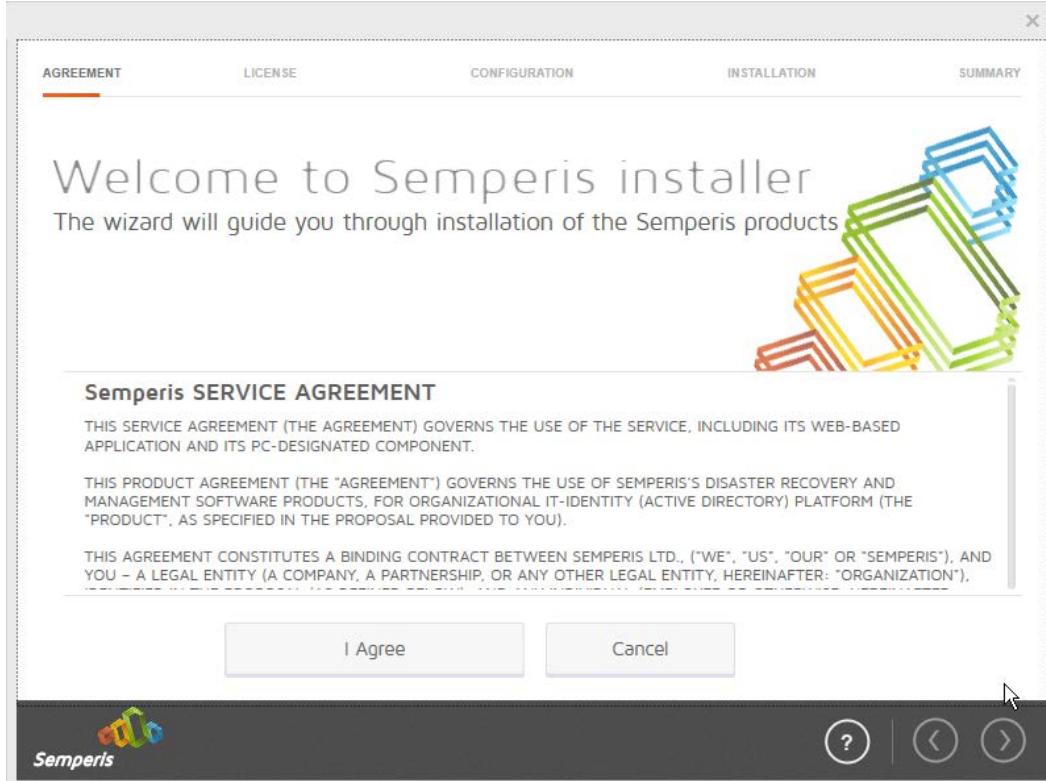
- 1184 1. Place the **SQLEXPRESS_x64_ENU.exe** installer in a directory called Setup, and ensure that the
 1185 **Semperis Wizard** is adjacent to the **Setup** folder (not inside it).



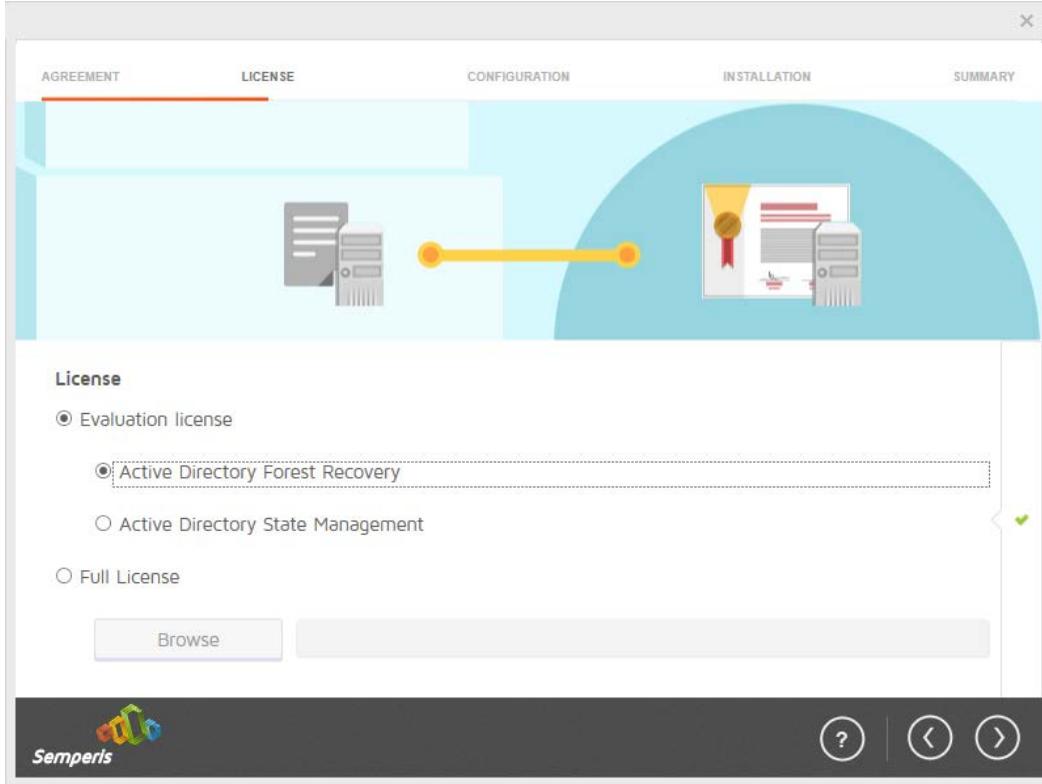
1186

1187

2. If prompted to restart the computer, do so.

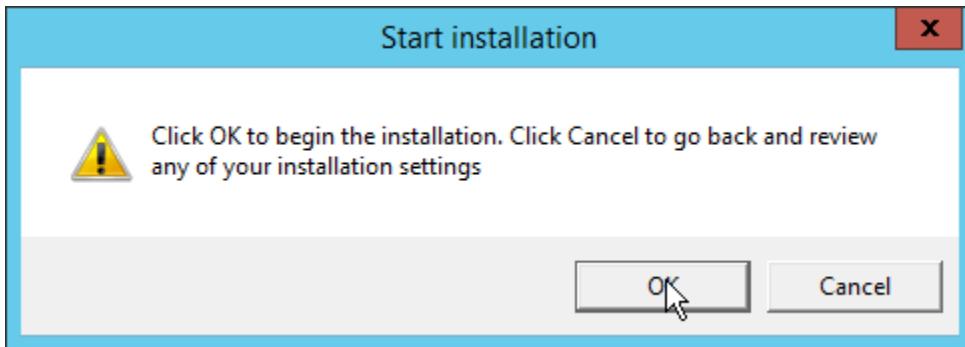


1188
1189 3. Click **I Agree**.
1190 4. Select **Evaluation License**.
1191 5. Select **Active Directory Forest Recovery**.



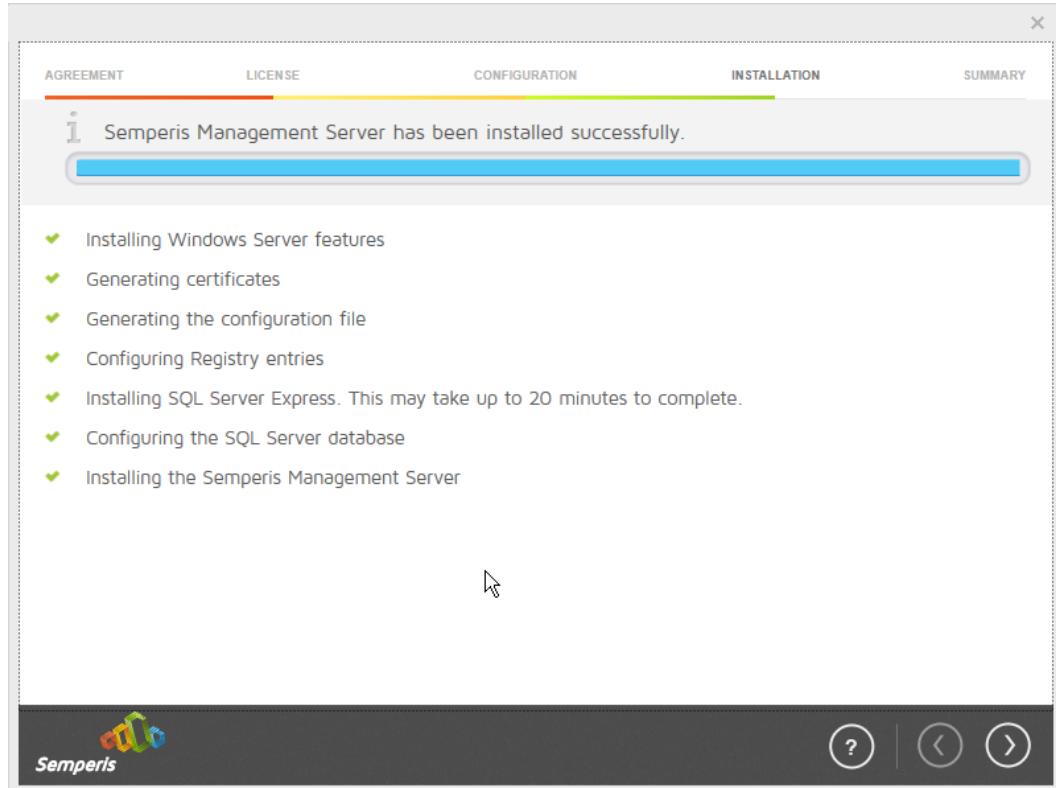
1192
1193

6. Click the > button.



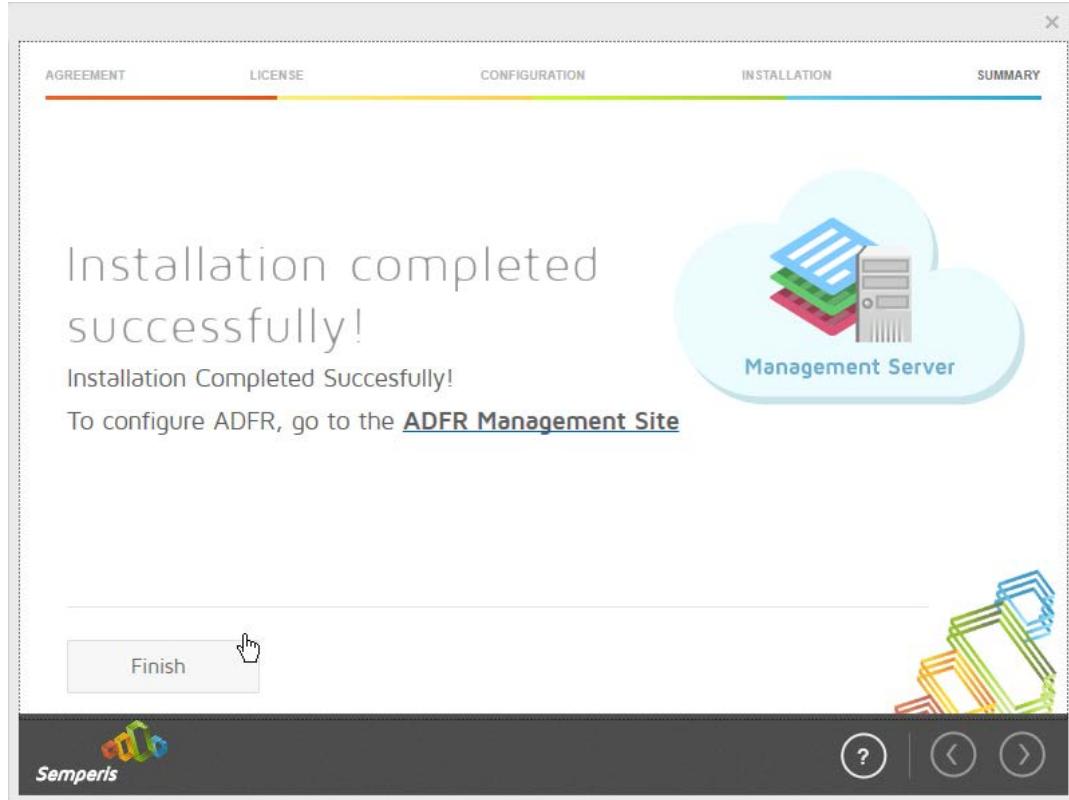
1194
1195
1196

7. Click **OK**.
8. Wait for the installation to complete.



1197
1198

9. Click the > button.



1199

- 1200 10. Click **Finish**.
- 1201 11. There should now be a shortcut on the desktop linking to the web console for **Semperis ADFR**.
- 1202 12. On the login page, enter the full domain as well as the NetBIOS name.
- 1203 13. Enter the **username** and **password** of an administrator on the domain.

1204

14. Click Login.

1205

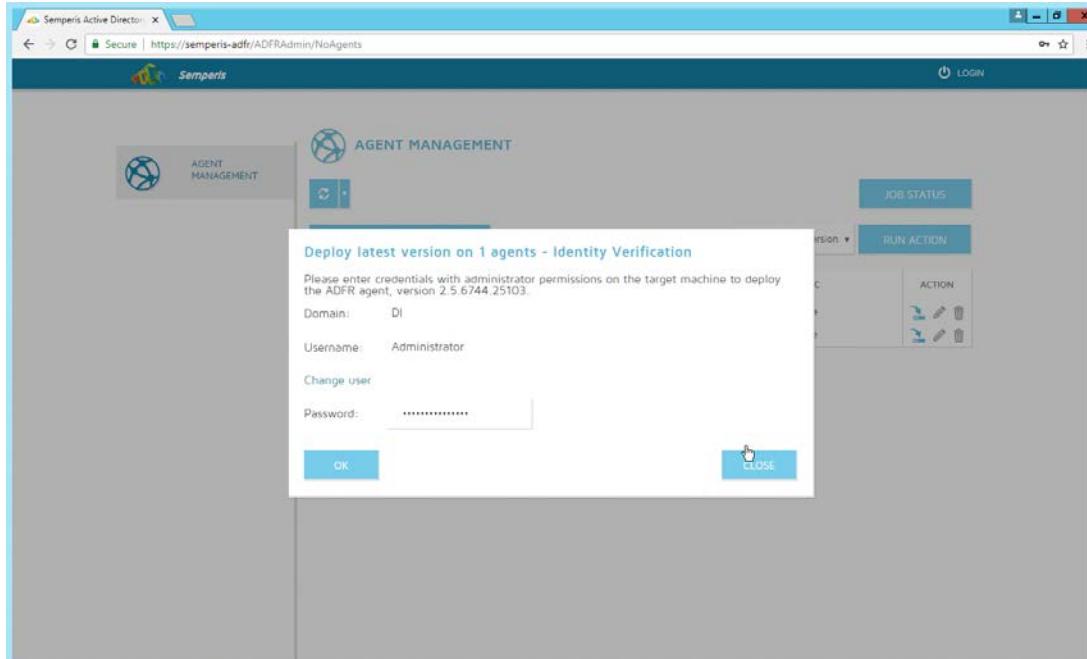
15. Check the box next to any domain controllers that should be backed up.

1207

16. Click Run Action.

1209

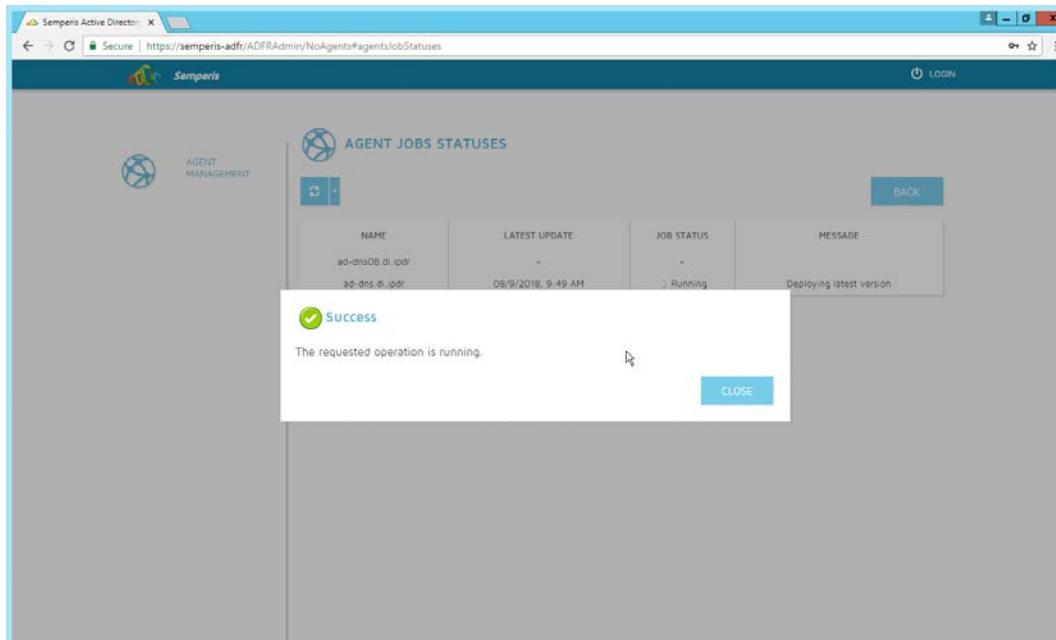
17. Enter the **password** in the prompt.



1210

1211

18. Click **OK**.



1212

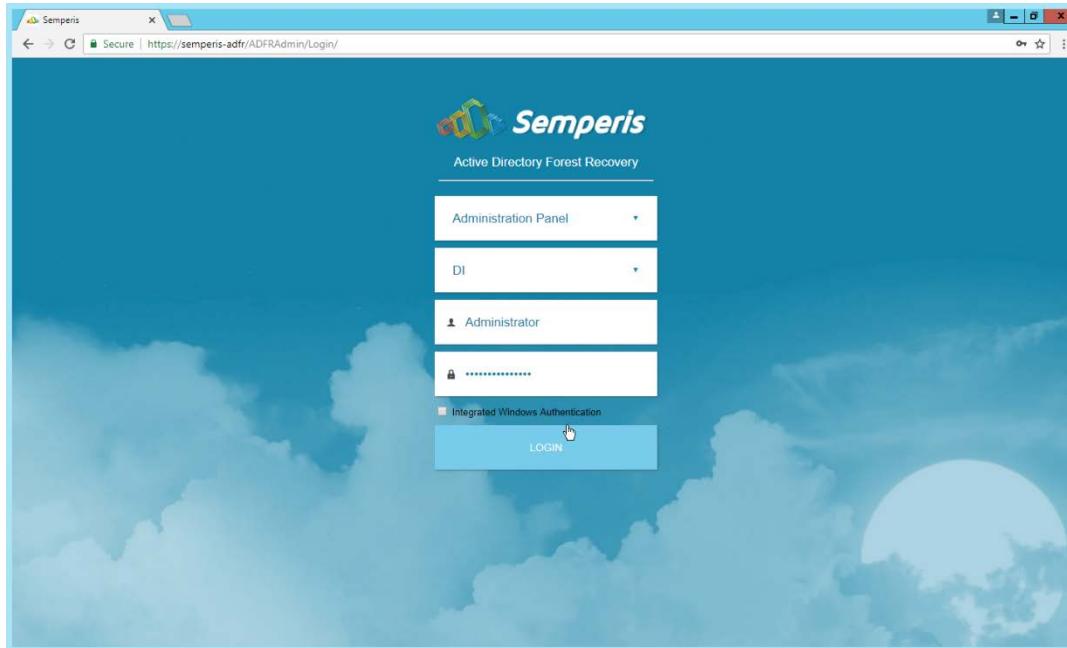
1213

19. Click **Close**.

1214

20. After the installation finishes, click **Login** at the top of the page.

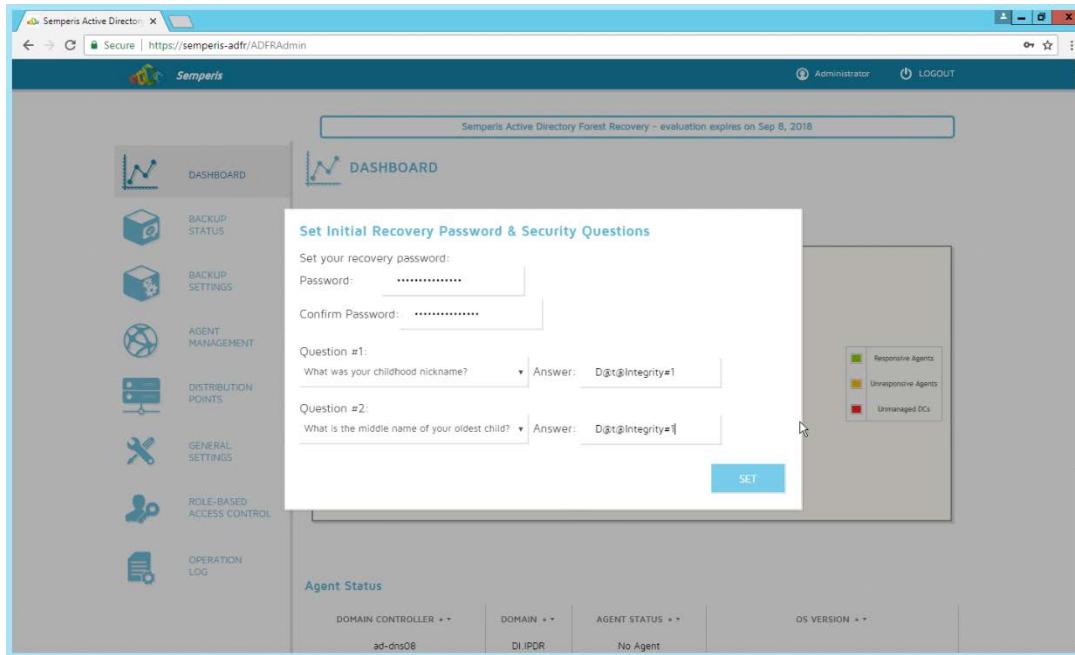
1215 21. Enter the login credentials for the domain.



1216

1217 22. Click **Login**.

1218 23. Create a recovery **password**. (Note: In the event of a restoration, Active Directory will
1219 potentially be unavailable, so a separate password that is not domain-associated is needed here
1220 for restorations.)

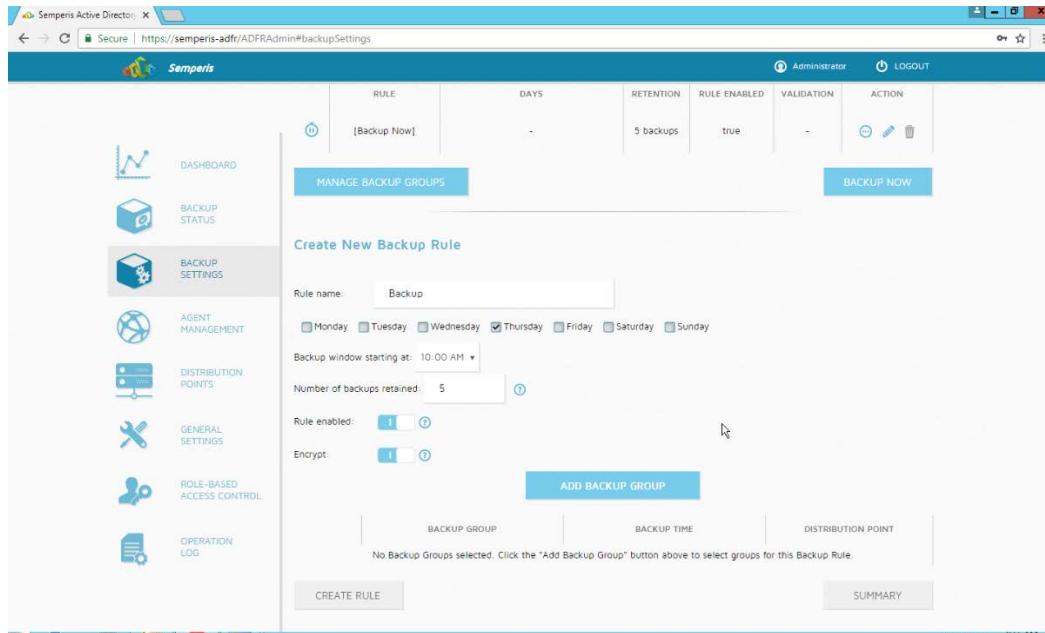


1221

1222 24. Set recovery questions for the password.

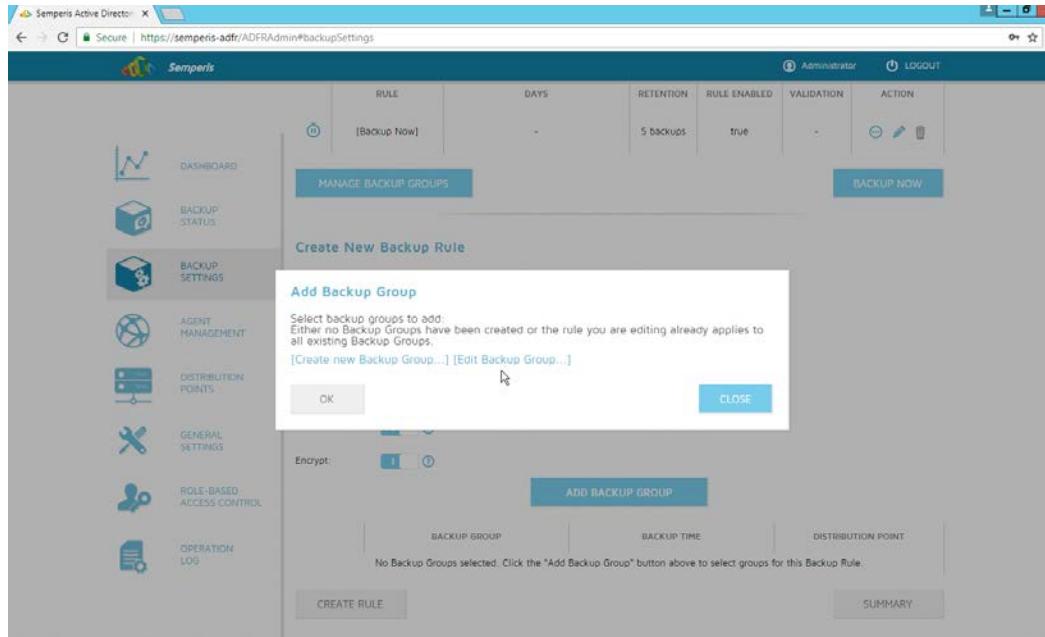
1223 25. Click **Set**.1224 **2.9.2 Create a Backup Schedule for the Domain Controller**

- 1225 1. Click the **Backup Settings** tab.
- 1226 2. Enter a **name** for the rule.
- 1227 3. Select the days and times that the domain controller should be backed up.
- 1228 4. Enter the maximum number of backups that should be kept. (Note: The oldest backup will be deleted upon creation of a new backup, which would exceed this maximum.)
- 1229 5. Ensure that **Encrypt** and **Rule enabled** are both turned on.



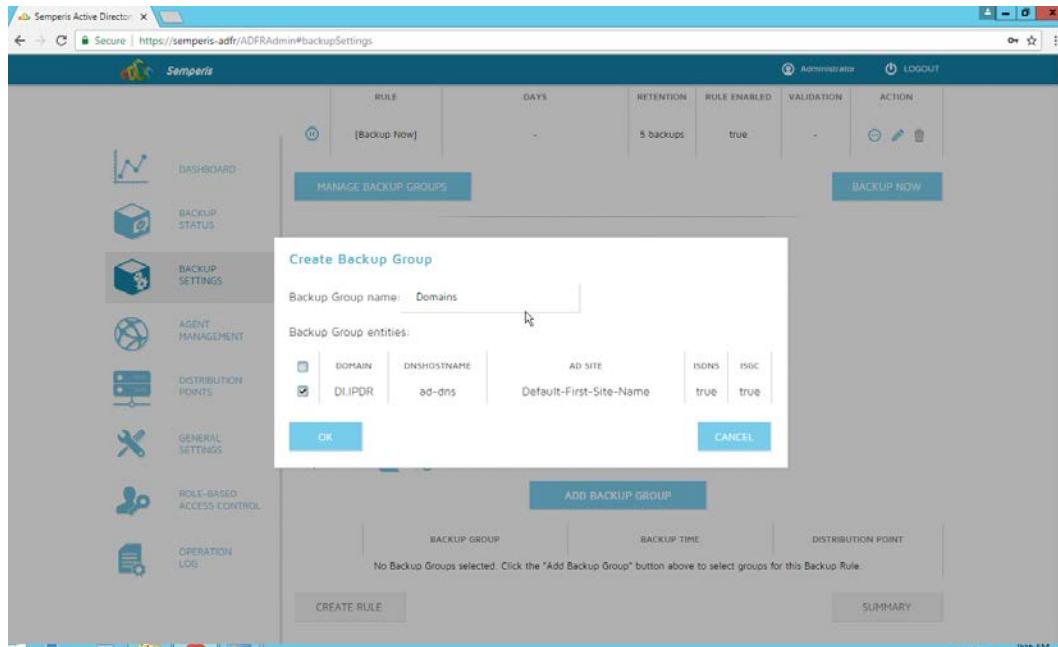
1231
1232

6. Click Add Backup Group.



1233
1234
1235
1236

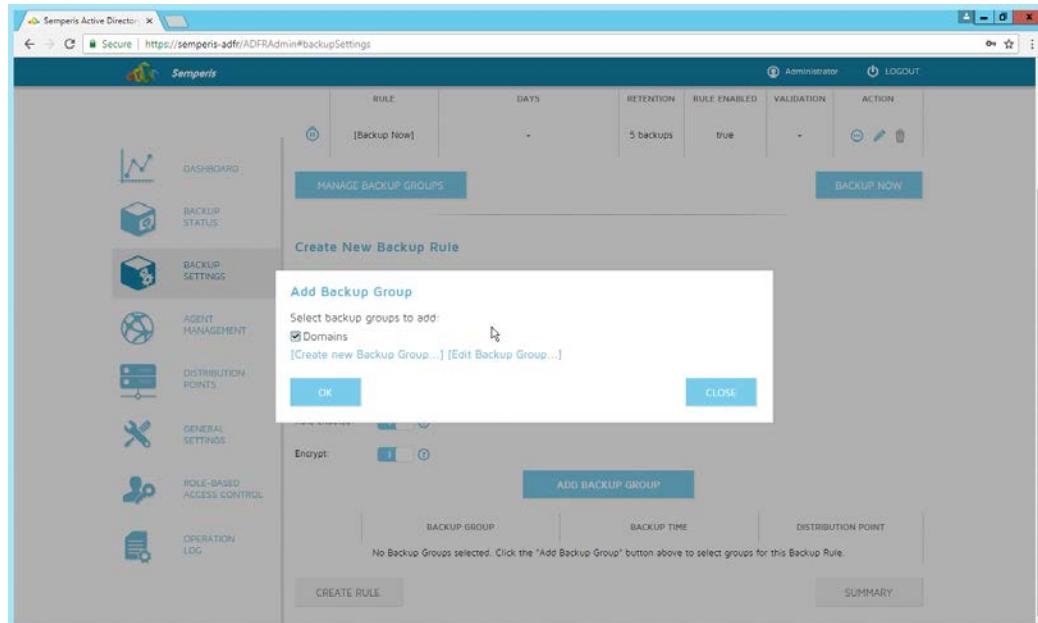
7. Click **Create new Backup Group.**
8. Enter a **name** for the backup group.
9. Select the domain controllers to be part of the backup group.



1237

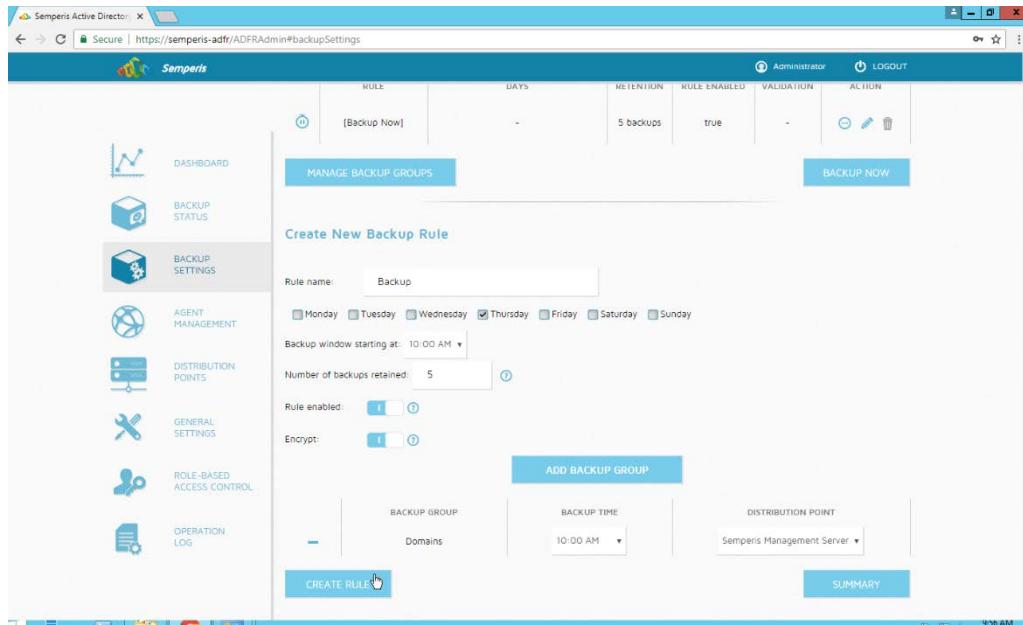
1238 10. Click **OK**.

1239 11. Select the newly created backup group.



1240

1241 12. Click **OK**.



1242

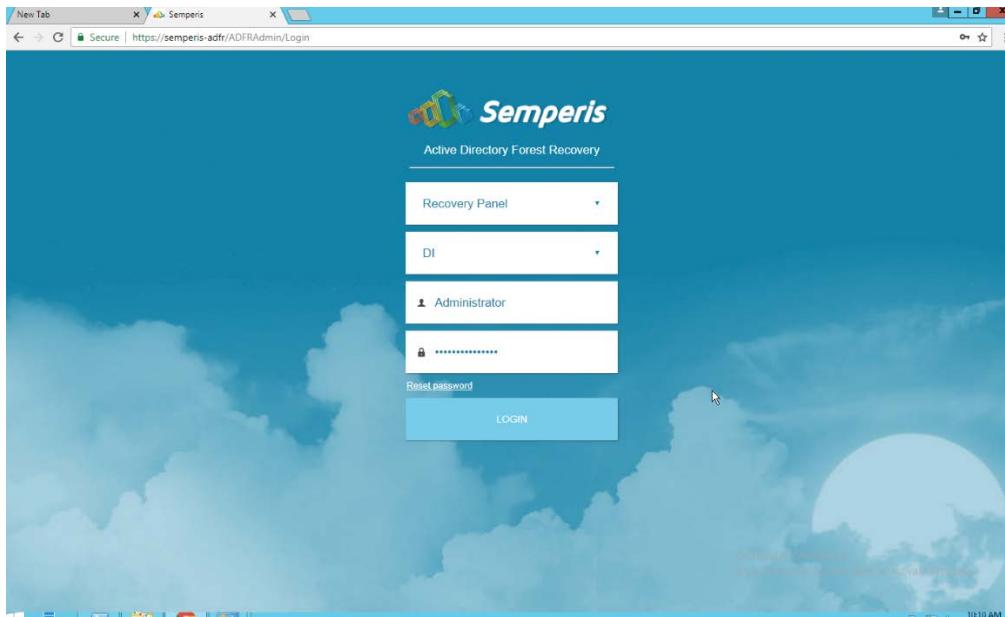
1243 13. Click **Create Rule**.1244 **2.9.3 Recover the Active Directory Forest from a Backup**

- 1245 1. Open the **Semperis ADFR** web console.
- 1246 2. Select **Recovery Panel** from the drop-down.
- 1247 3. Select the **Domain** that you wish to recover.
- 1248 4. Enter the **username** and **password**.

1249

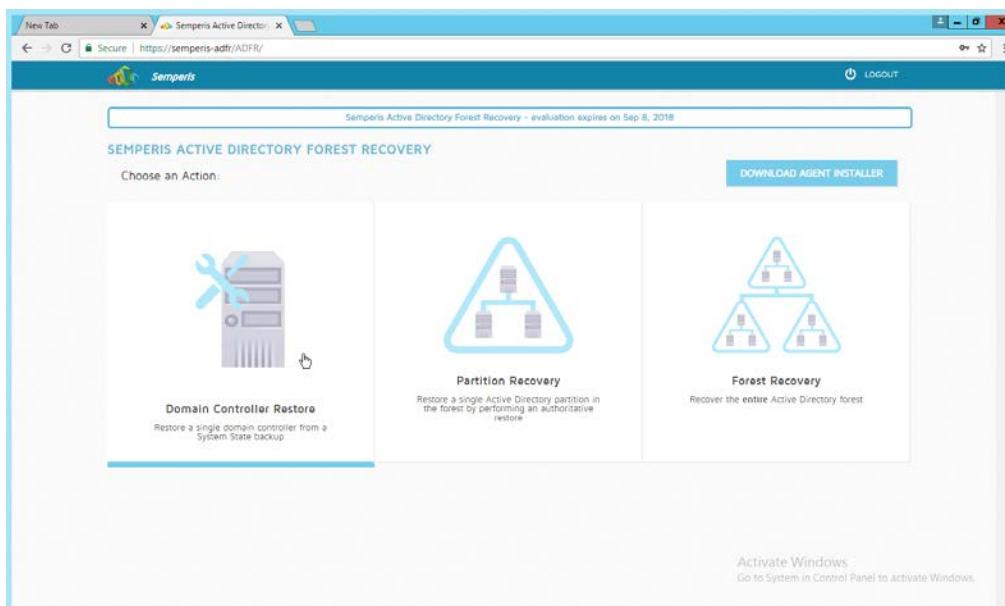
1250

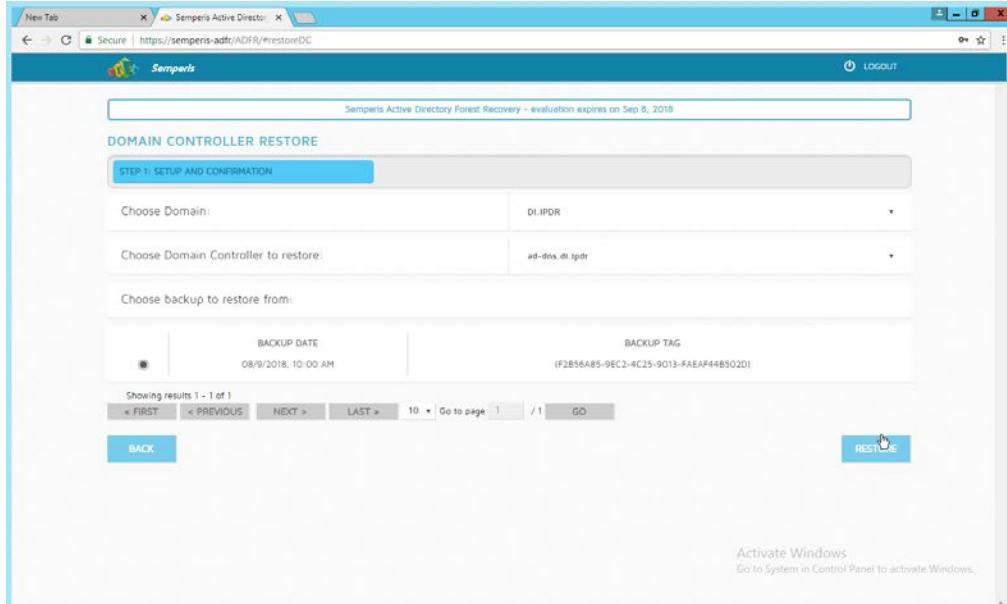
5. Click **Login**.



1251

- 1252 6. Select an action based on the recovery needs of the organization. In this example we select
1253 **Domain Controller Restore**.
1254 7. Provide the information for the restoration, namely the **domain**, the **domain controller**, and
1255 which backup to use.
1256

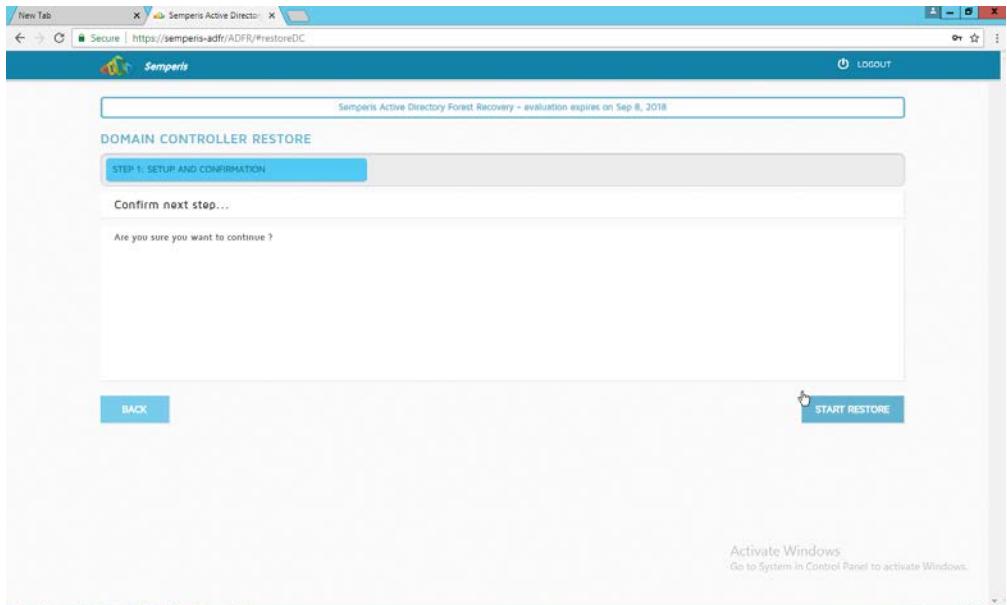




1257

1258

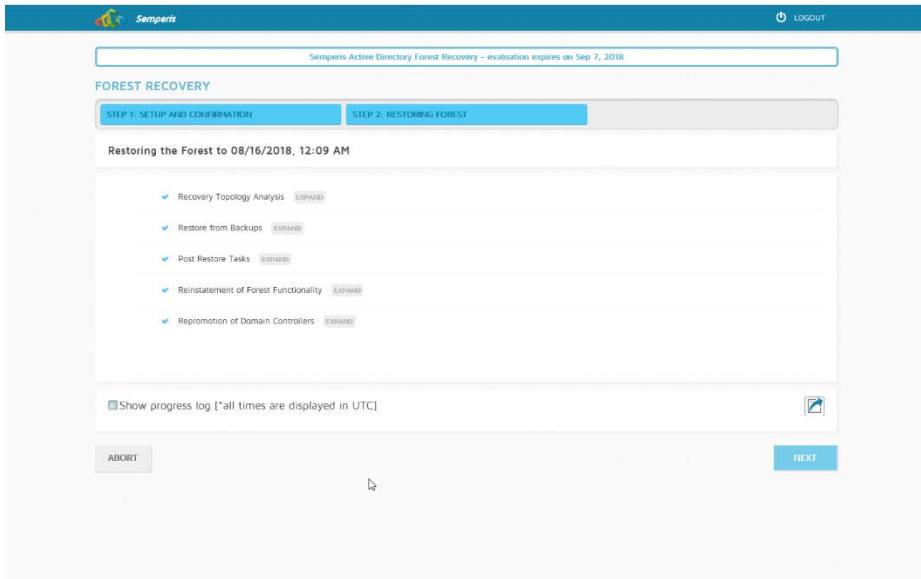
8. Click **Restore**.



1259

1260

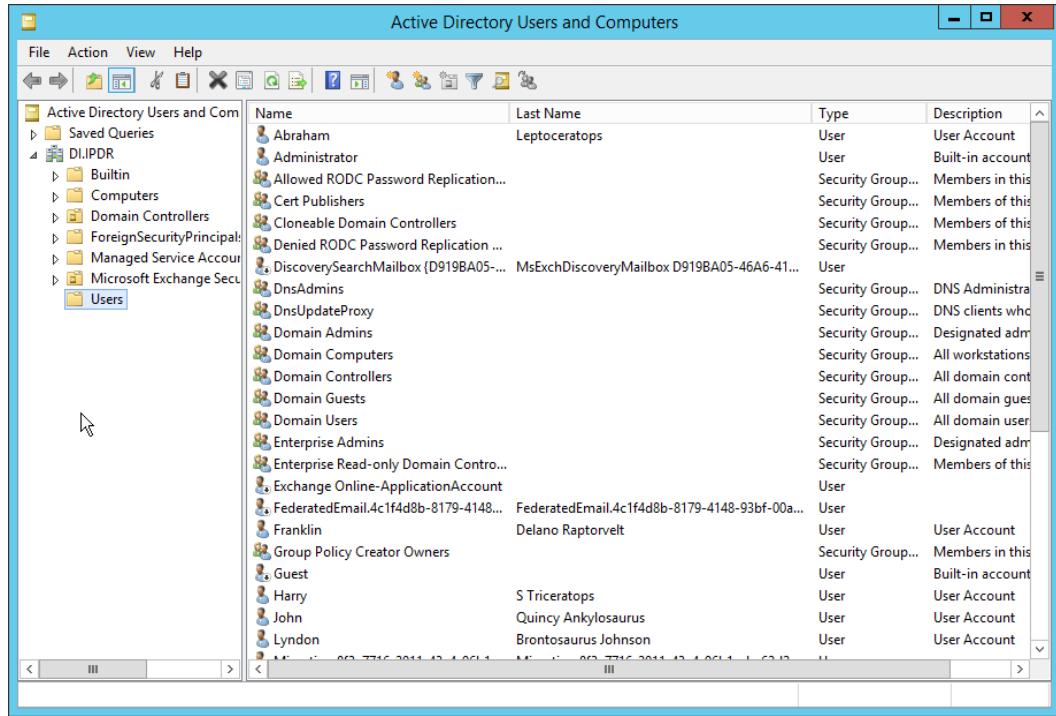
9. Click **Start Restore** to begin the restoration process.



- 1261
- 1262 10. Click **Next** when the restoration finishes.
- 1263

2.10 Semperis Directory Services Protector
- 1264 This section details the installation of **Semperis Directory Services Protector (DSP)**, a tool used for
1265 monitoring Active Directory environments. This installation requires both a copy of SQL Server Express
1266 as well as the **Semperis Wizard**. See the **Semperis DS Protector v2.5 Technical Requirements** document
1267 for specifics on the requirements. For a Windows Server 2012 R2 installation, simply meet the following
1268 requirements:
- 1269
 - .NET Framework Version 3.5 SP1
 - .NET Framework Version 4.5.2 or later
 - joined to the Active Directory domain it is protecting
 - either the installer for SQL Express Advanced or connection information and credentials for a
1273 full version of Microsoft SQL (MSSQL)
- 1274

2.10.1 Configure Active Directory for Semperis DSP
- 1275 1. Open **Active Directory Users and Computers**.

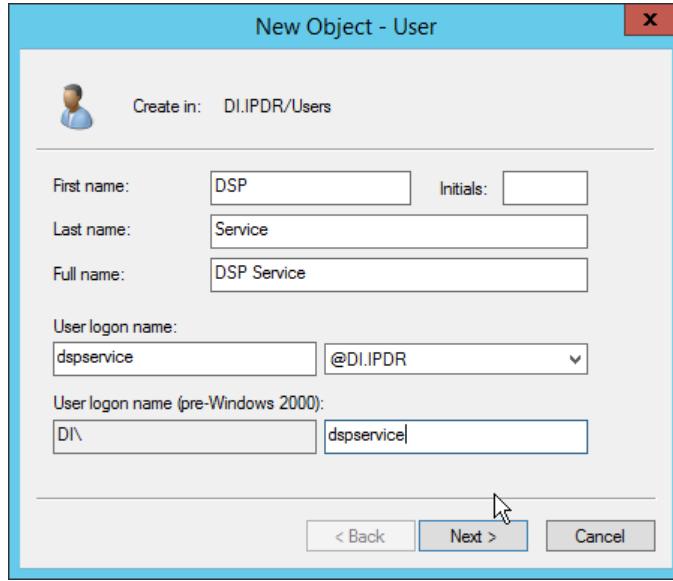


1276

2. Right-click **Users** in the left pane and select **New > User**.

1277

3. Enter the information for a new user for the DSP service.



1279

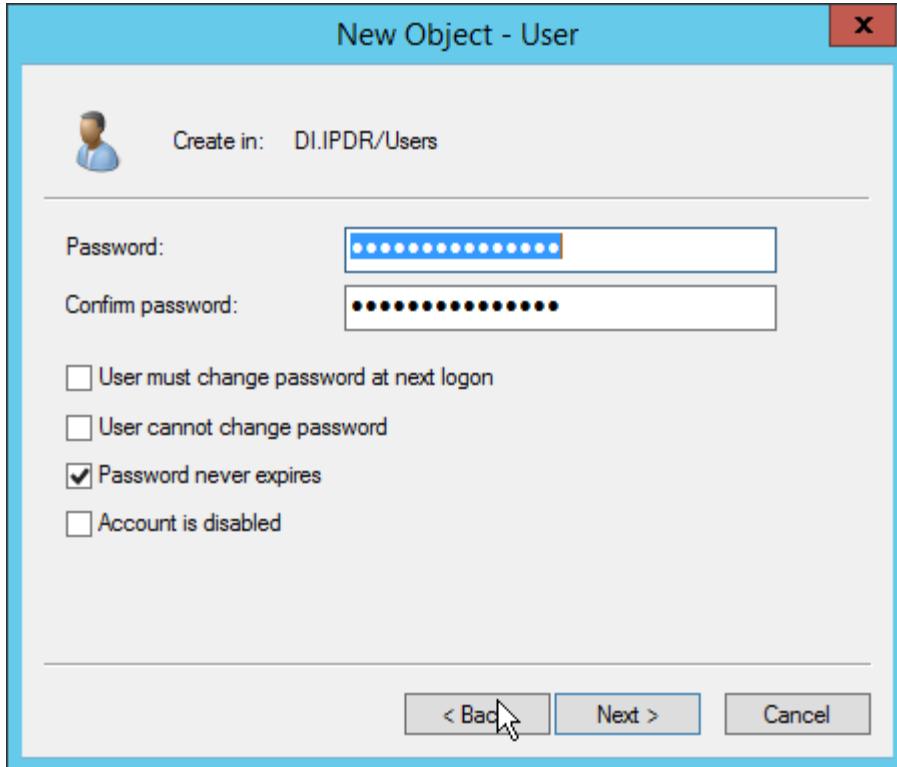
4. Click **Next**.

1280

5. Enter a **password** twice for this user.

1281

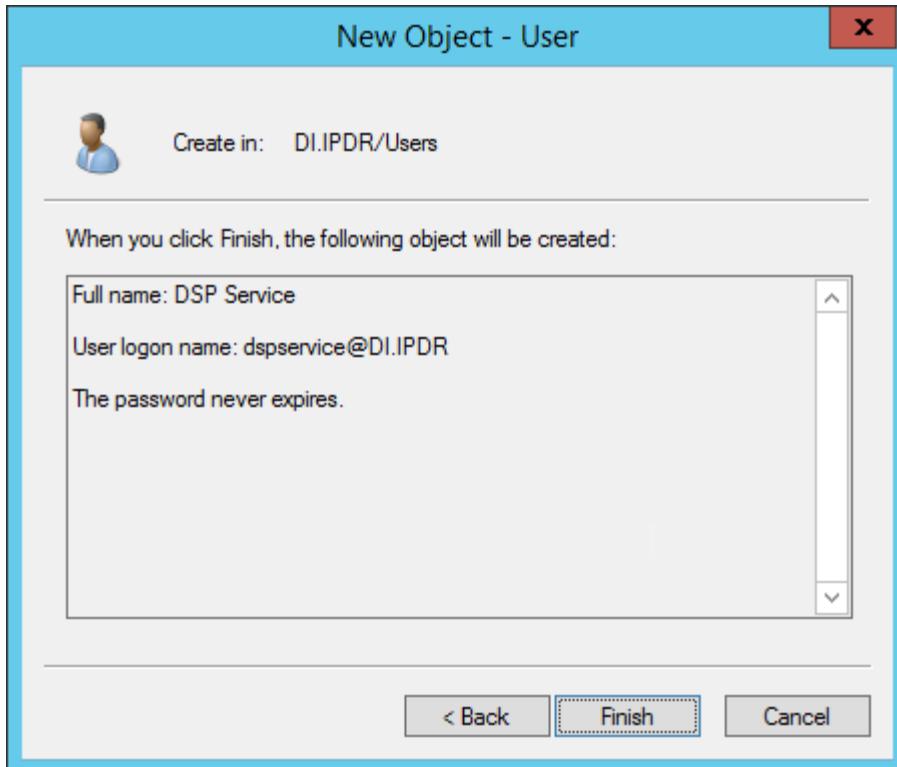
6. Set the password policy.



1283

1284

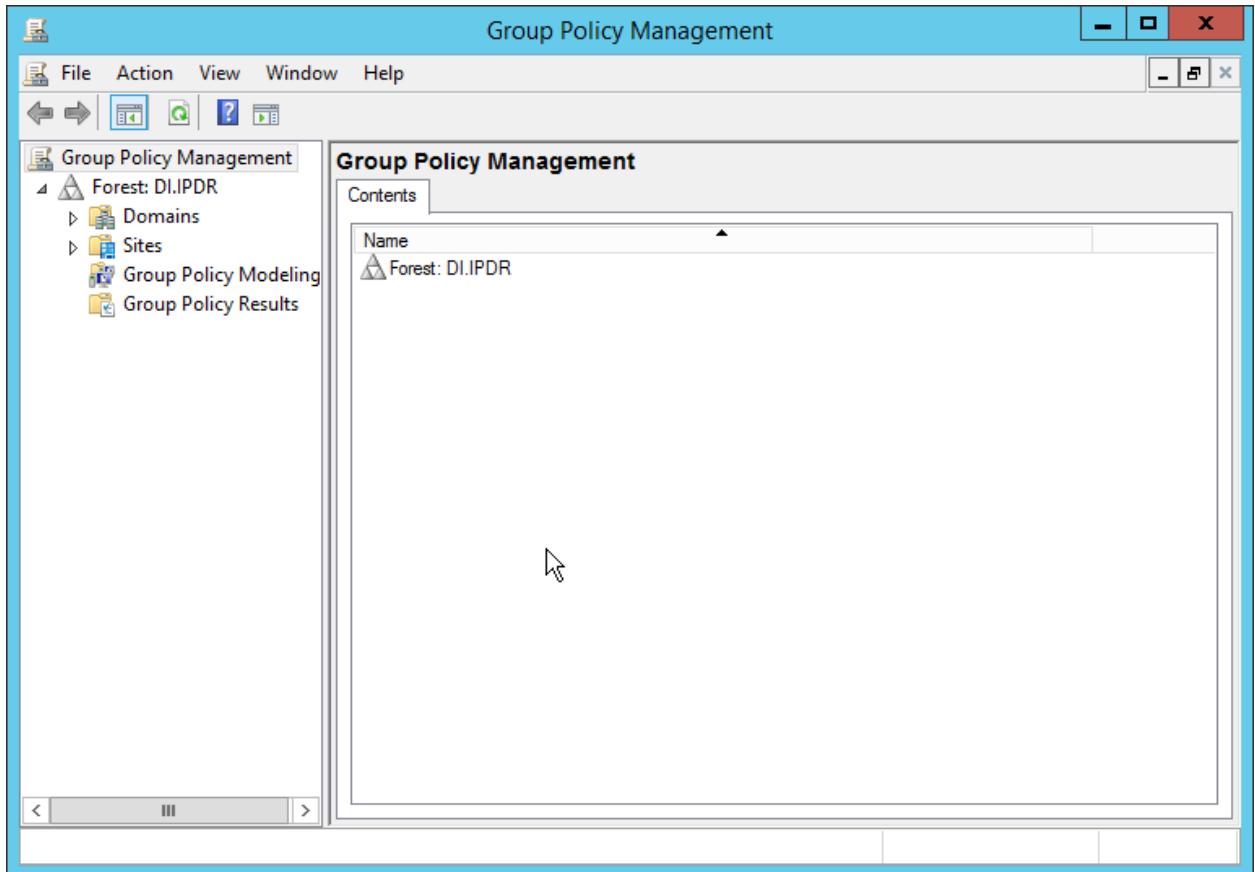
7. Click **Next**.



1285

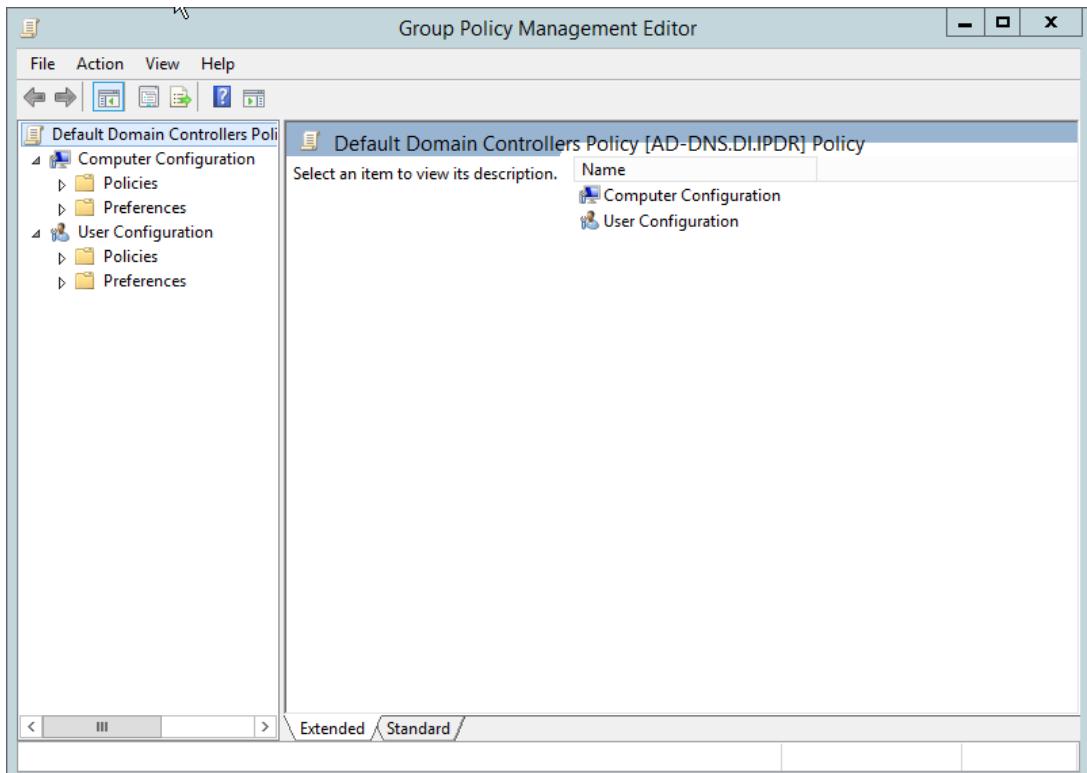
1286 8. Click **Finish**.

1287 9. Open **Group Policy Management**.



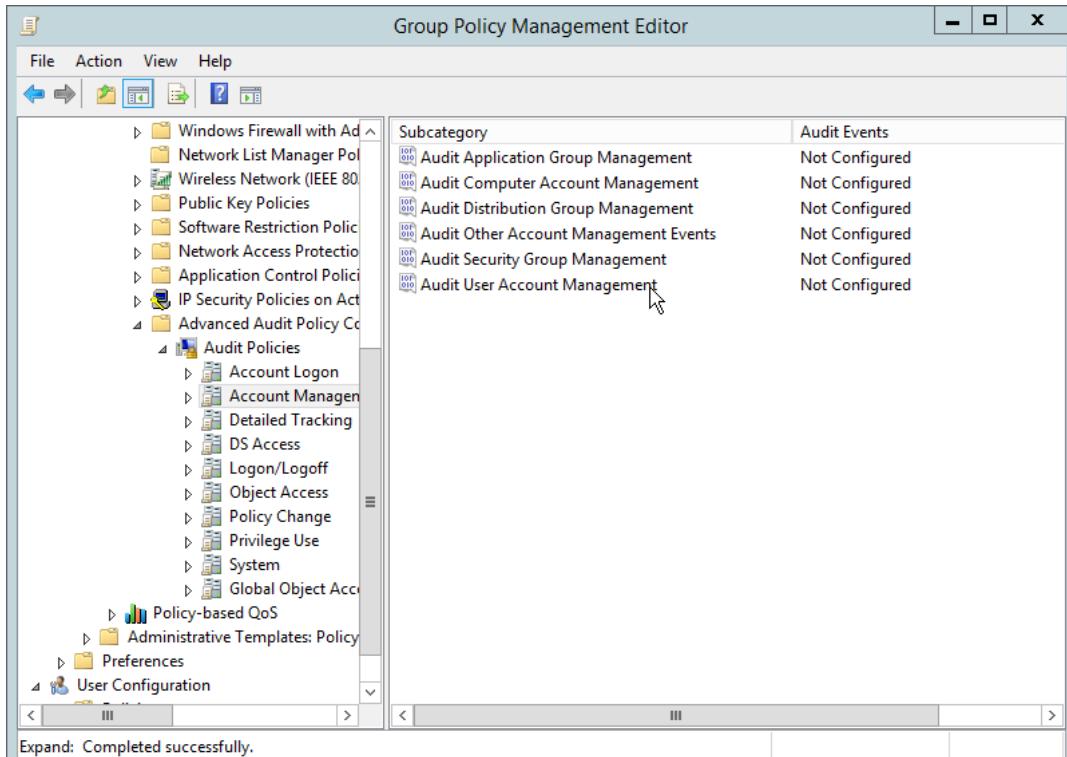
1288
1289
1290

10. Right-click **Domains > DI.IPDR > Domain Controllers > Default Domain Controllers Policy** and click **Edit**.



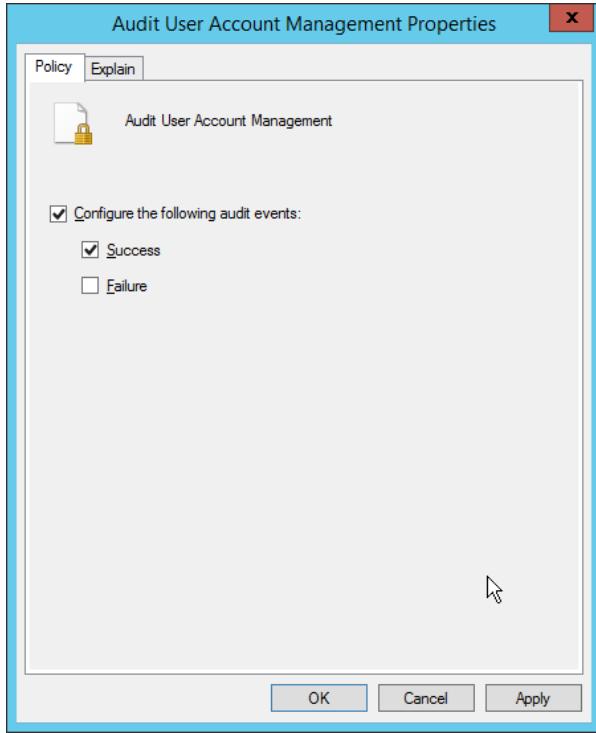
1291

1292 11. Navigate to **Computer Configuration > Policies > Windows Settings > Security Settings >**
1293 **Advanced Audit Policy Configuration > Audit Policies > Account Management.**



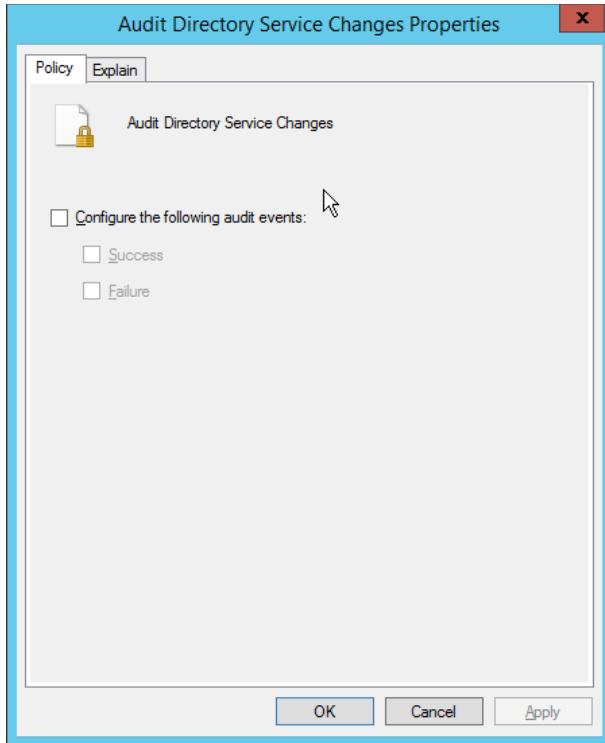
1294

- 1295 12. Edit the **Audit User Account Management** field by double-clicking it.
- 1296 13. Check the box next to **Configure the following audit events**.
- 1297 14. Check the box next to **Success**.



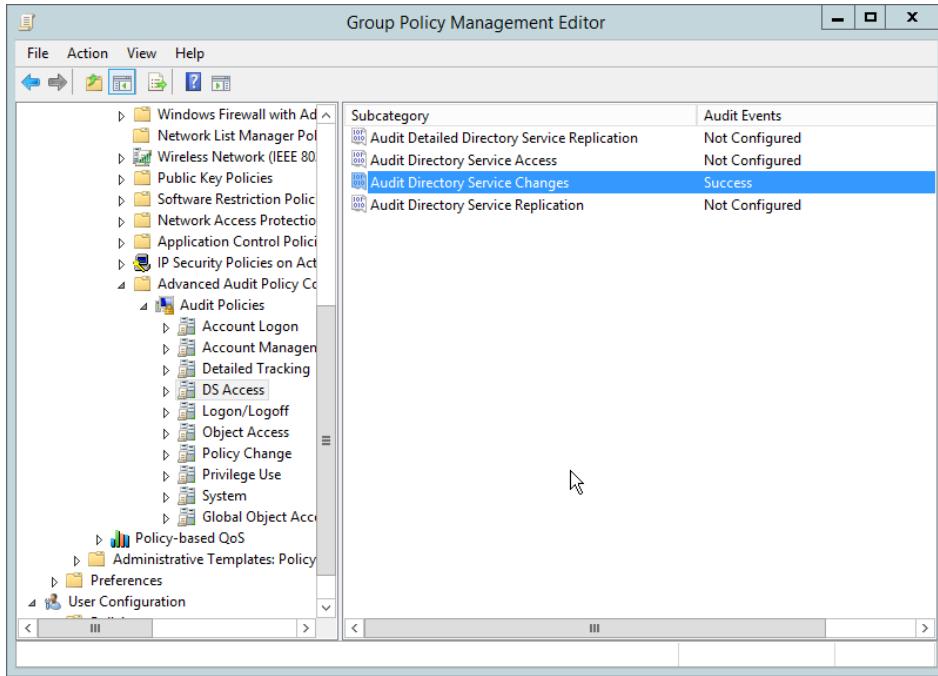
1298

- 1299 15. Click **OK**.
- 1300 16. Go to **Audit Policies > DS Access**.
- 1301 17. Double-click **Audit Directory Service Changes**.



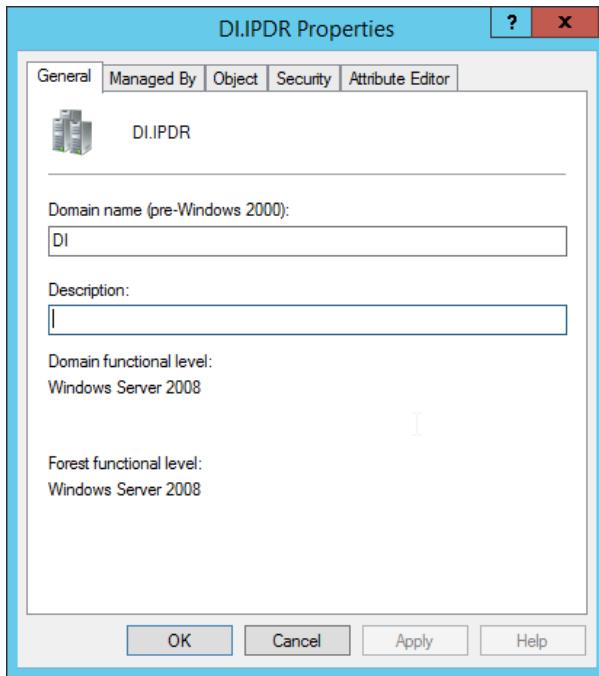
1302

18. Check the box next to **Configure the following audit events**.
19. Check the box next to **Success**.
20. Click **OK**.



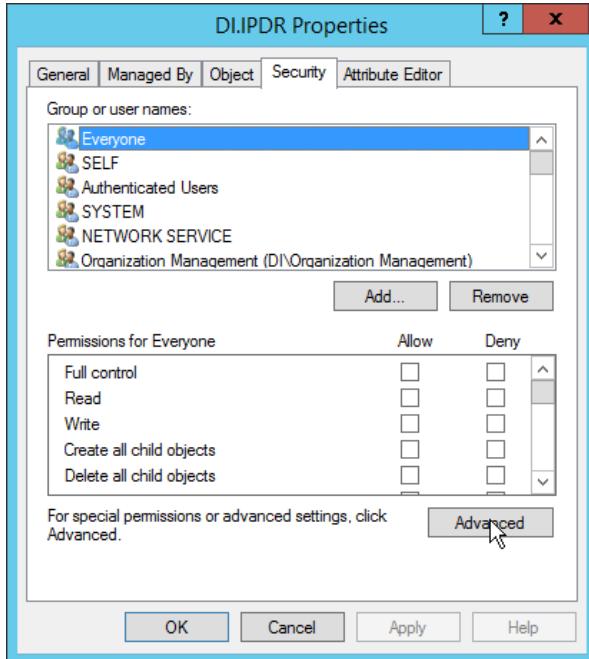
1306

21. Open **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
22. Ensure that **View > Advanced Features** is enabled.
23. Right-click the **domain** (for example, DI.IPDR) created earlier and click **Properties**.



1310

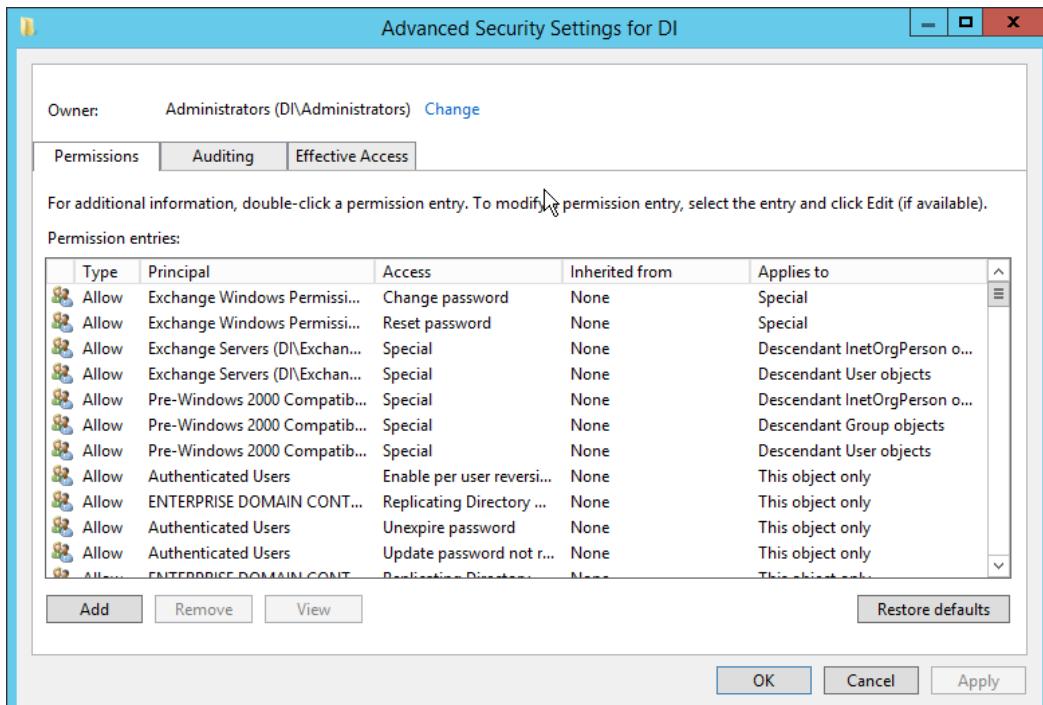
24. Click the **Security** tab.



1312

1313

25. Click Advanced.



1314

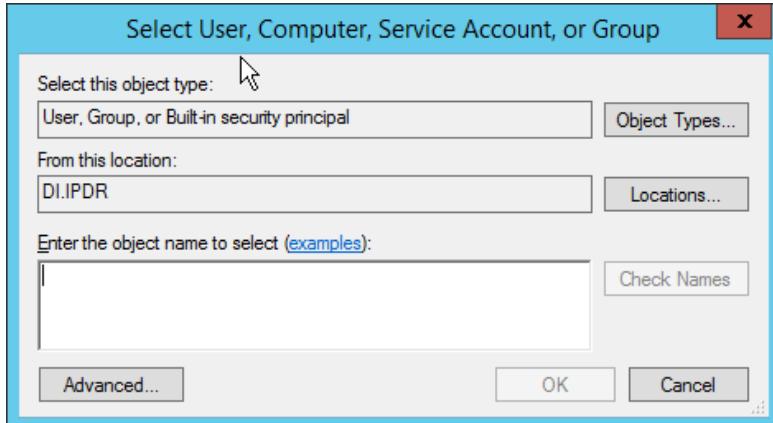
1315

26. Click the Auditing tab.

1316

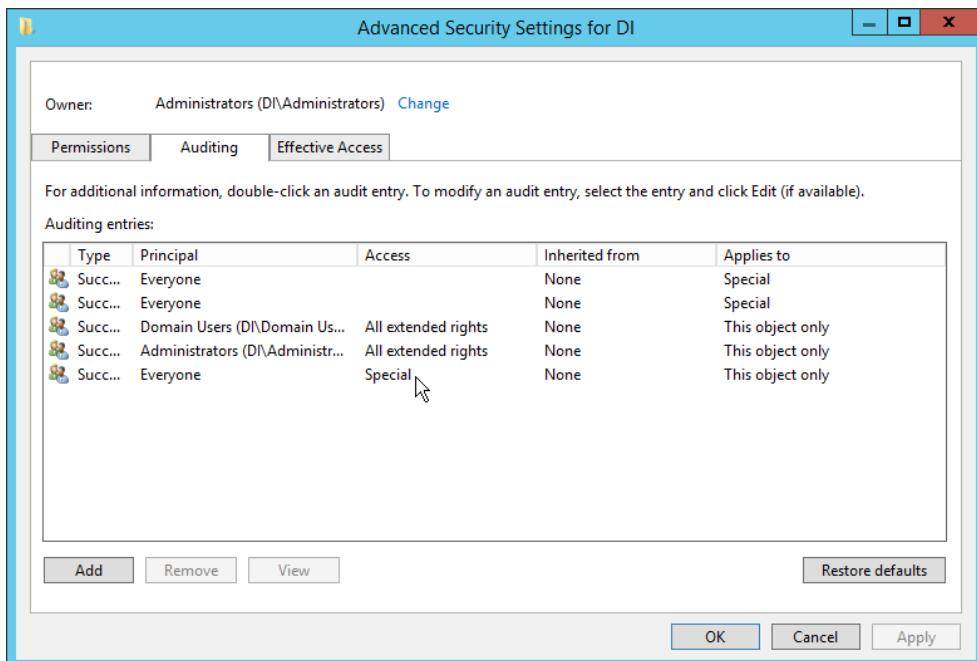
27. Click Add.

1317 28. Enter Everyone.



1318

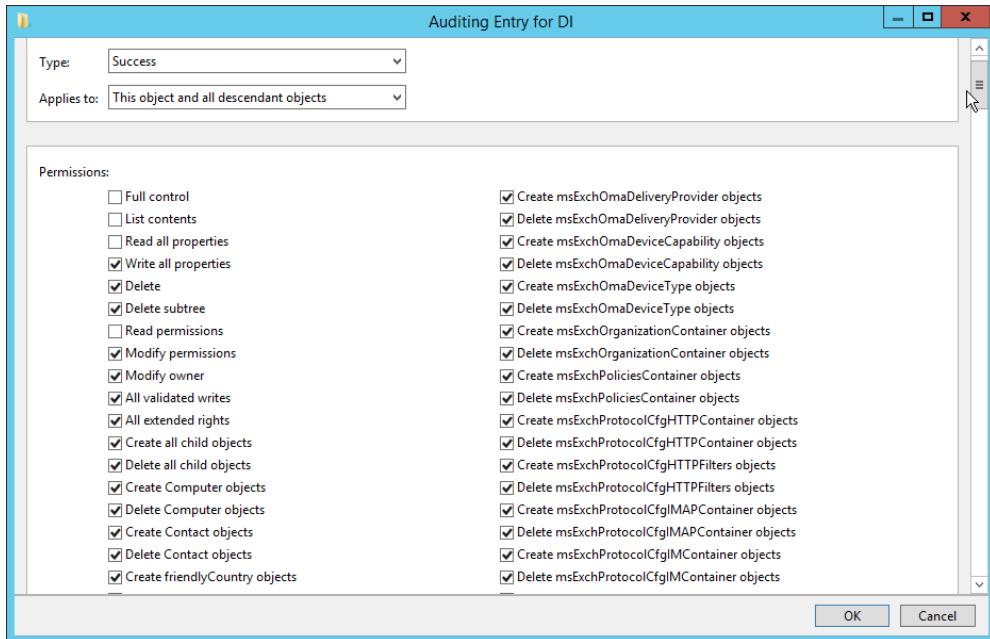
1319 29. Click OK.



1320

1321 30. Double-click Everyone.

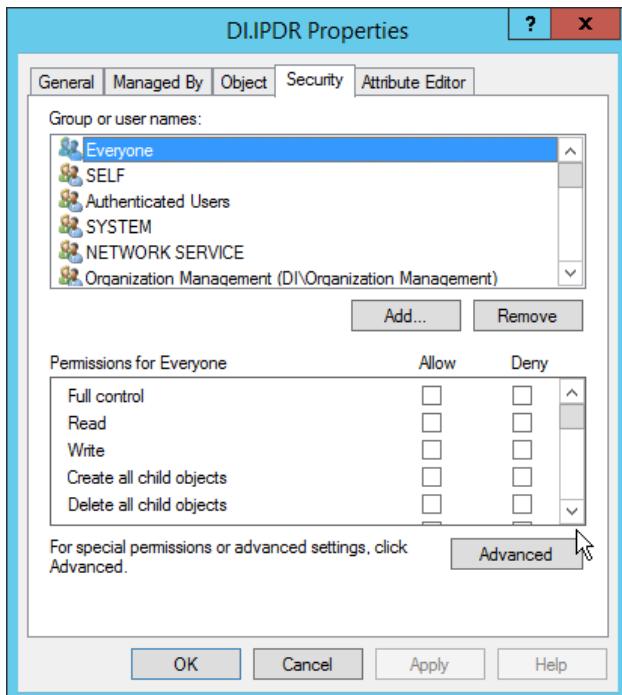
1322 31. Check the boxes next to **Write all properties, Delete, Delete subtree, Modify permissions, Modify owner, All validated writes, All extended rights, Create all child objects, Delete all child objects**.



1325

1326

32. Click OK.



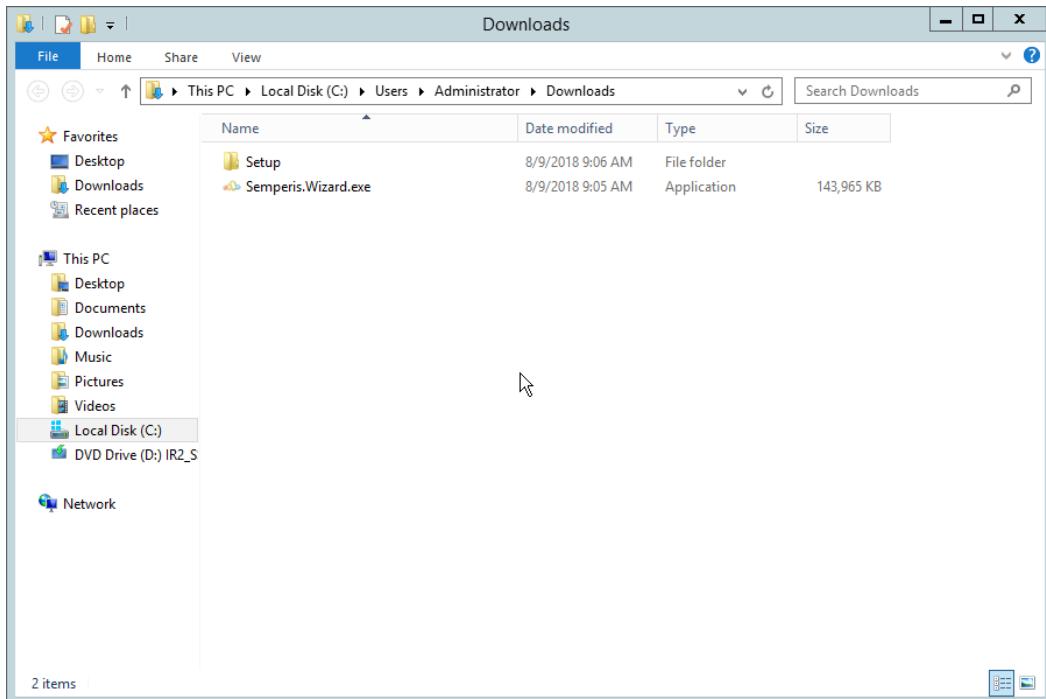
1327

1328

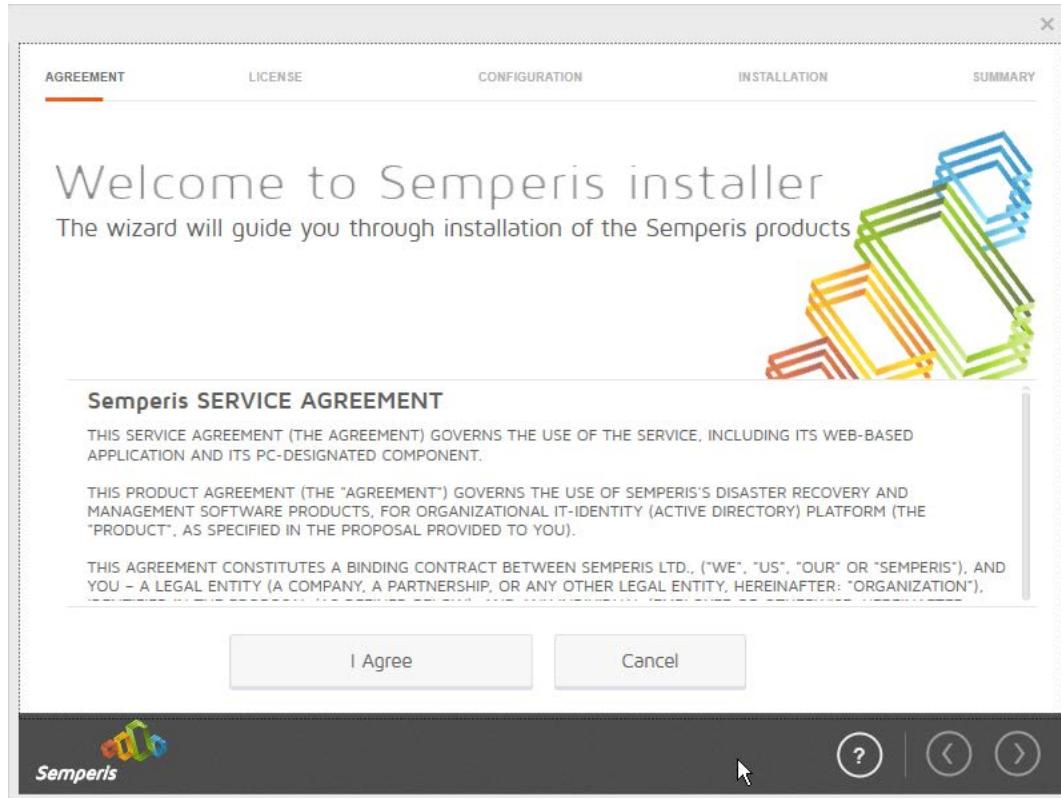
33. Click OK.

1329 2.10.2 Install Semperis DSP

- 1330 1. If you are using a local SQL Express Advanced server, place the **SQLEXPRAADV_x64_ENU.exe** installer in a directory called Setup, and ensure that the **Semperis Wizard** is adjacent to the **Setup** folder (not inside it). If an SQL Express Advanced server is not being used, no **Setup** folder is required.

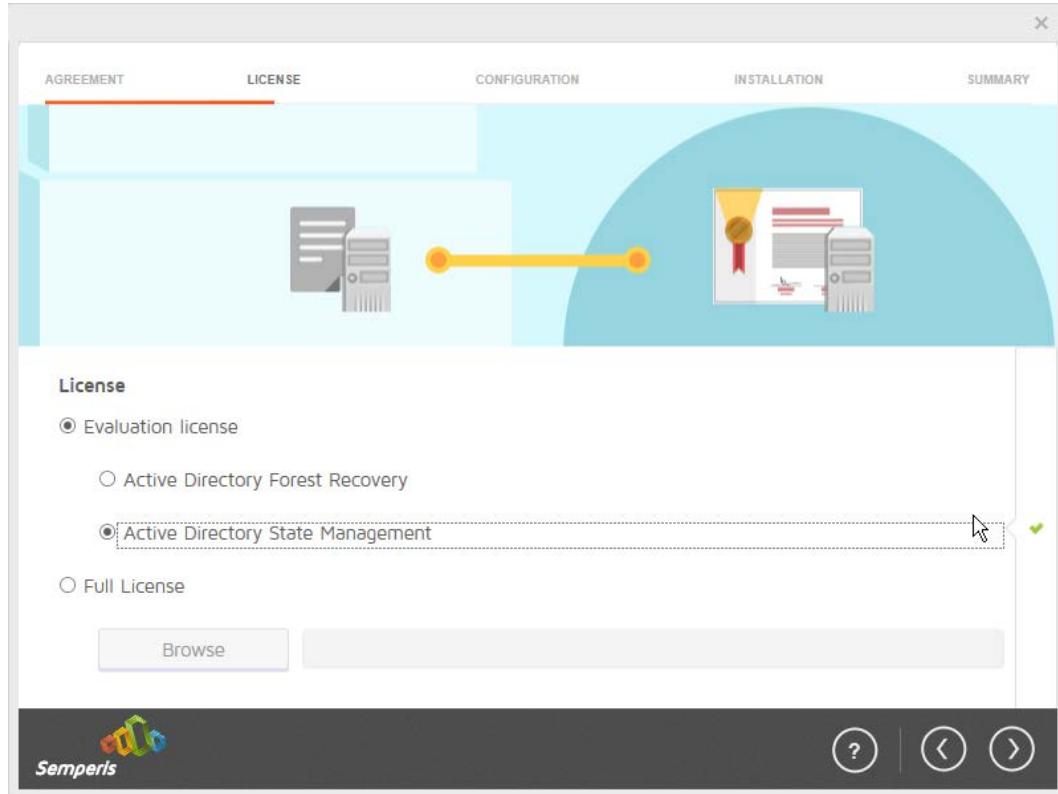


- 1334
1335 2. If prompted to restart the computer, do so.



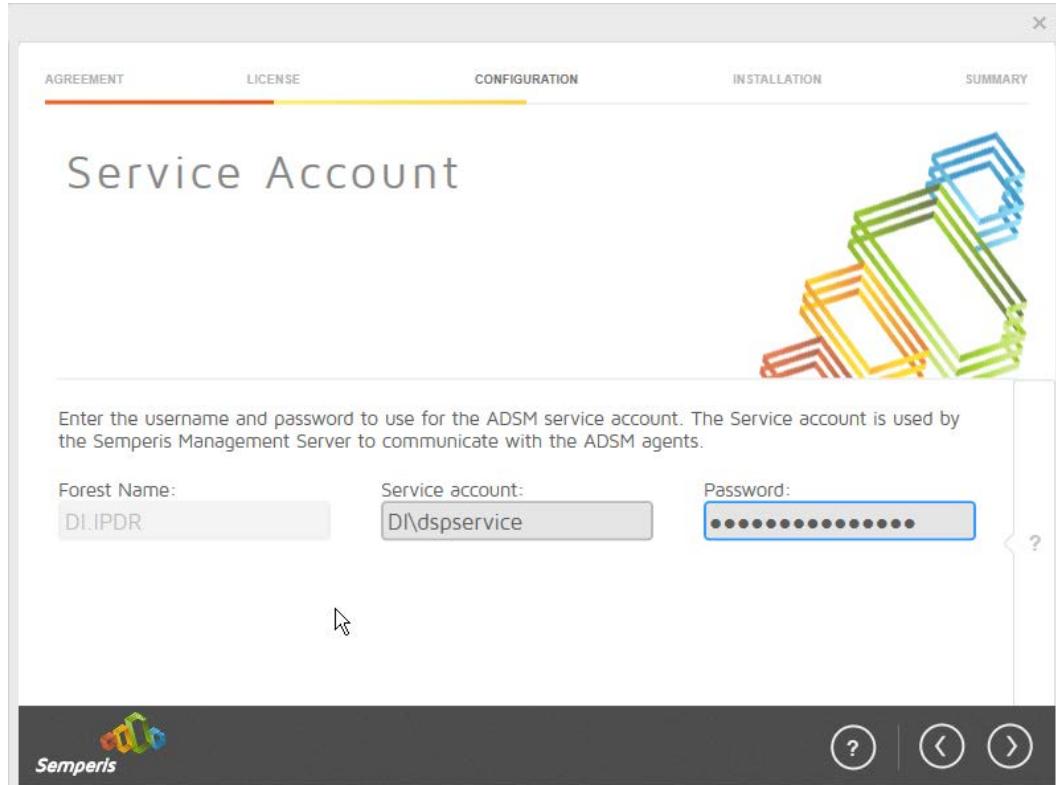
1336

- 1337 3. Click **I Agree**.
- 1338 4. Select **Evaluation License**.
- 1339 5. Select **Active Directory State Management**.



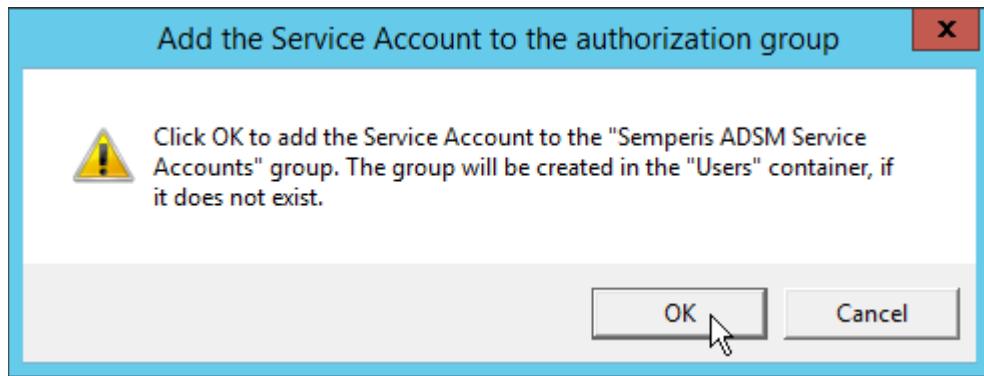
1340
1341
1342

6. Click the > button.
7. Enter the **username** and **password** of the account created earlier.



1343
1344

8. Click the > button.

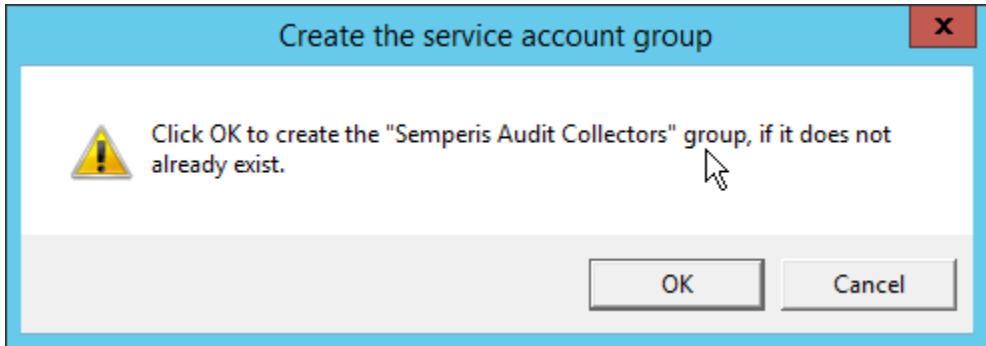


1345
1346
1347

9. Click **OK**.
10. Check the box next to **Create the following group**.

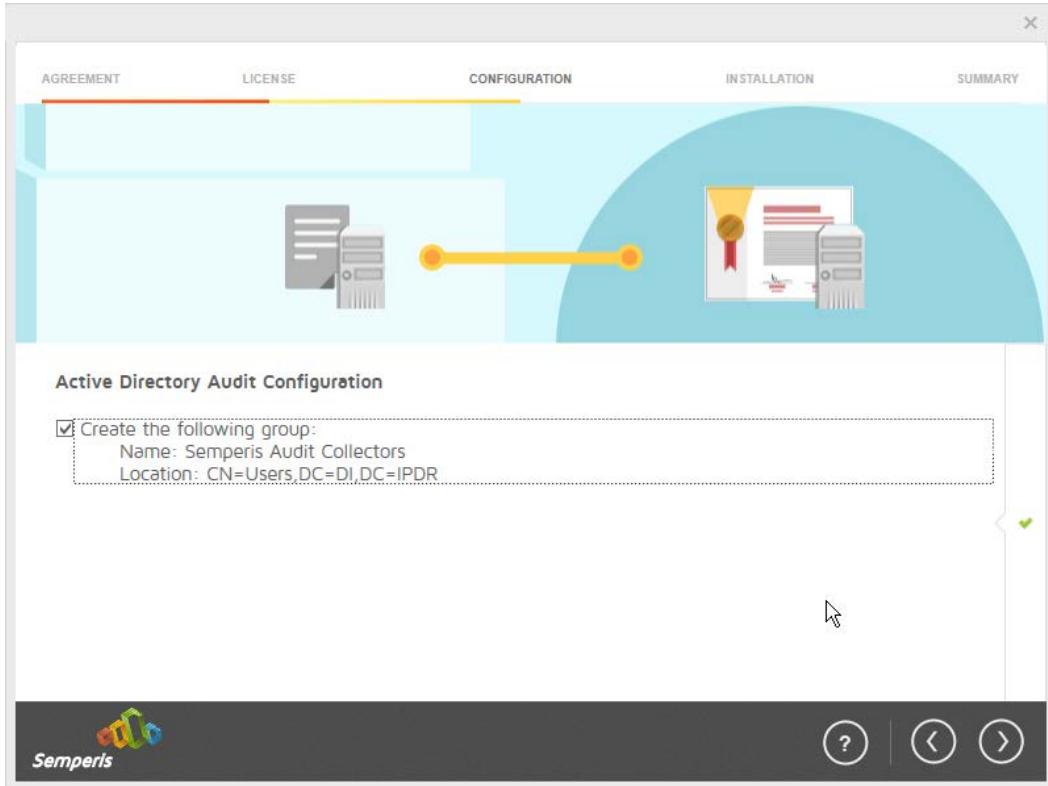
1348
1349

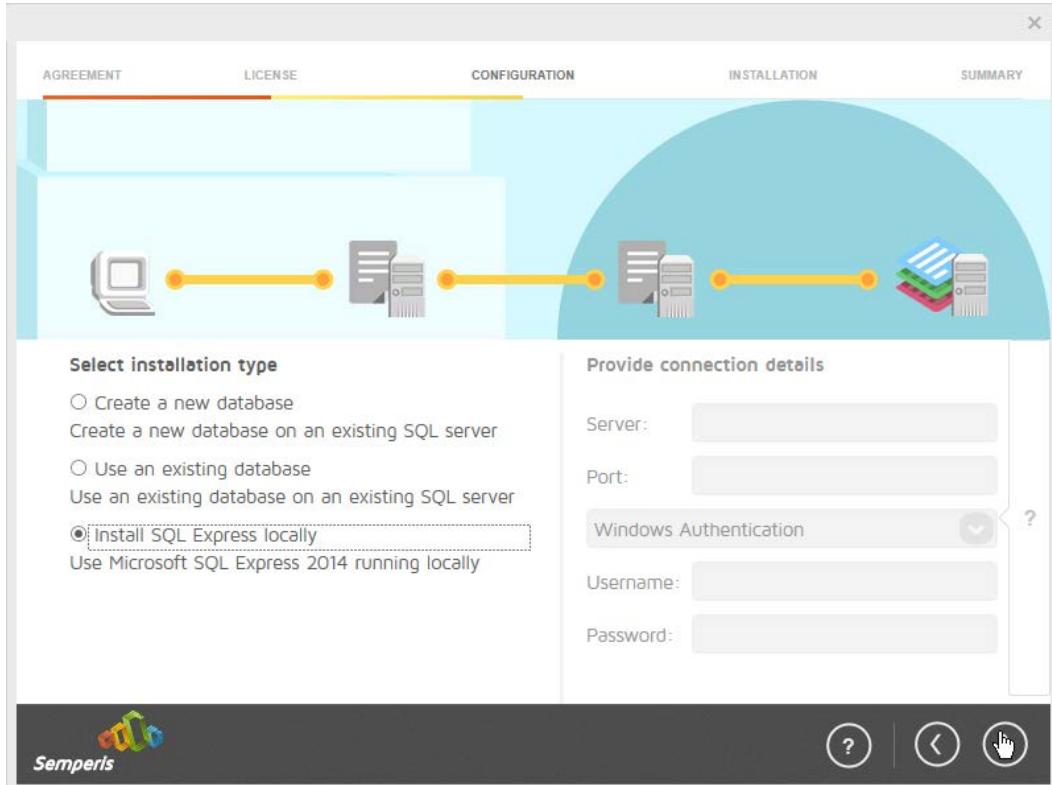
11. Click OK.



1350
1351
1352

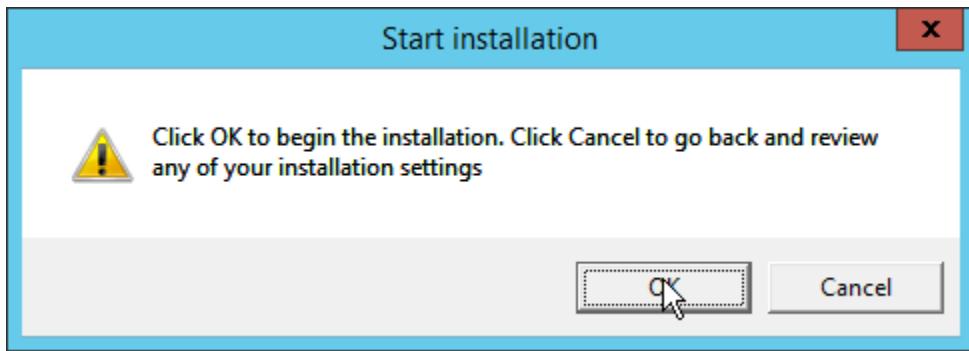
12. Click the > button.
13. Select the appropriate database option, and enter any required information.





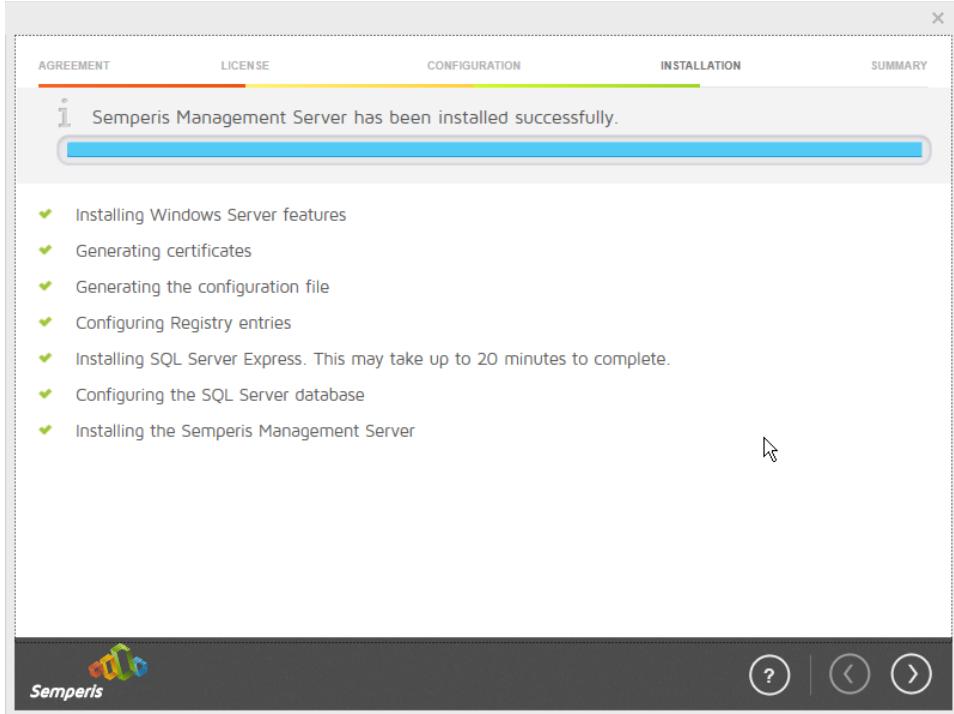
1353
1354

14. Click the > button.



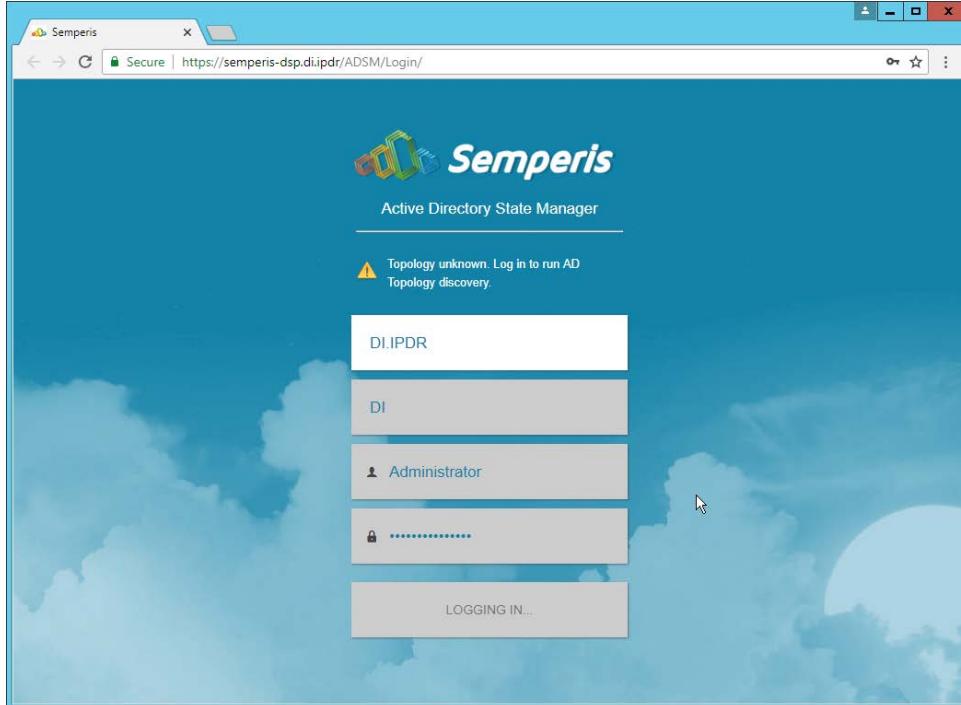
1355
1356

15. Click OK.



1357

- 1358 16. Click the > button after the installation completes.
- 1359 17. There should now be a shortcut on the desktop linking to the web console for **Semperis DS**
- 1360 **Protector.**
- 1361 18. On the login page, enter the full domain as well as the NetBIOS name.
- 1362 19. Enter the **username** and **password** of an administrator on the domain.



1363

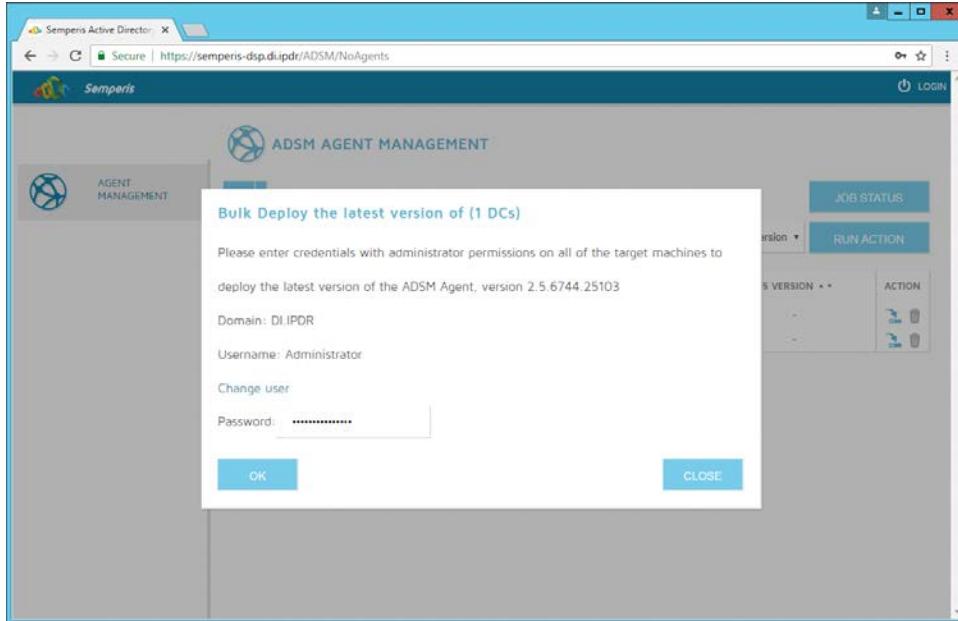
20. Click **Login**.

1364
21. Check the box next to the domain controllers that should be monitored by DSP.

1365

22. Click **Run Action**.

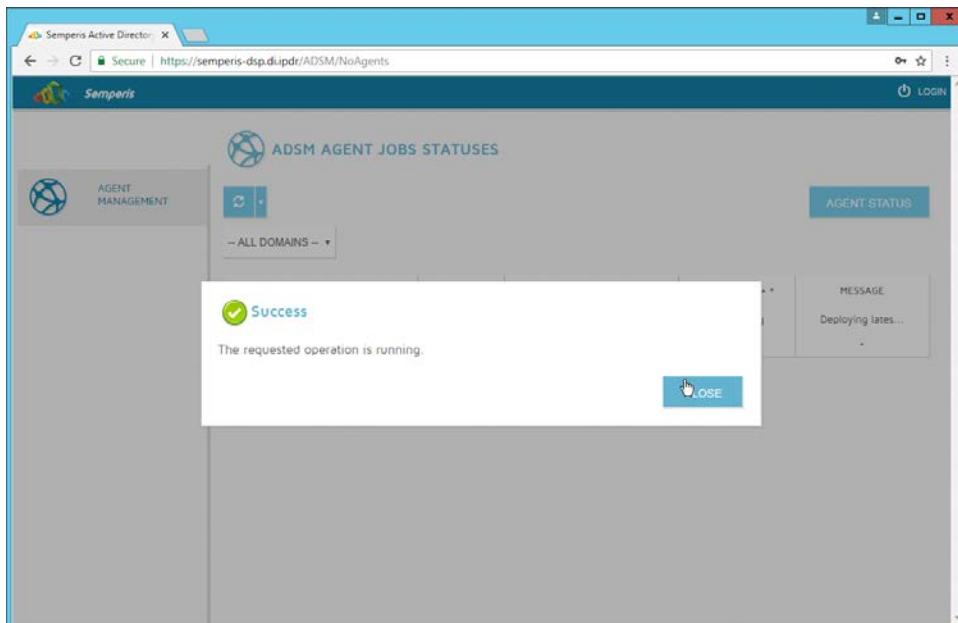
1366
1367
23. Enter the **password** for the account.



1369

1370

24. Click **OK**.



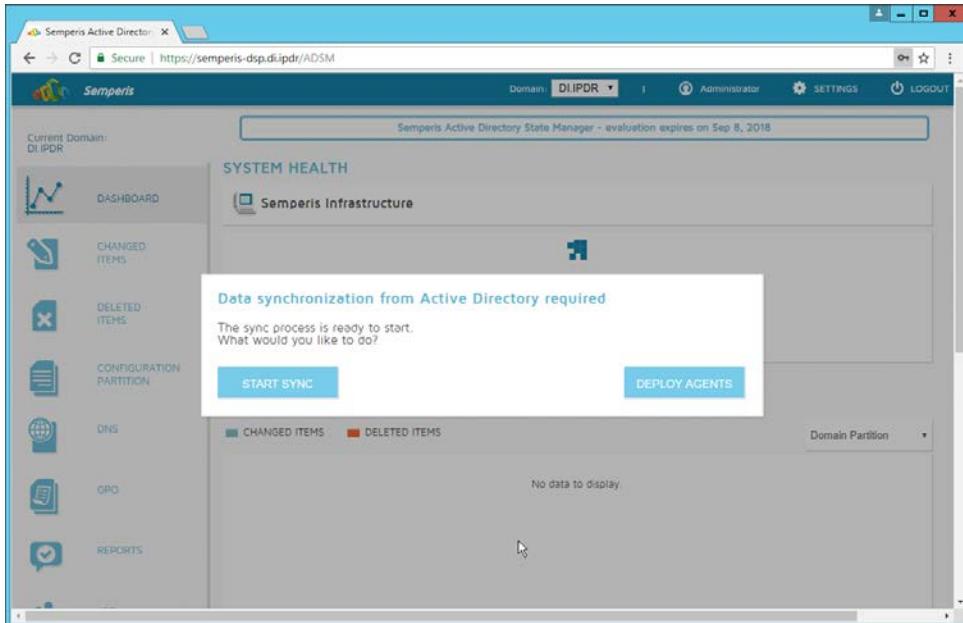
1371

1372

25. Click **Close**.

1373

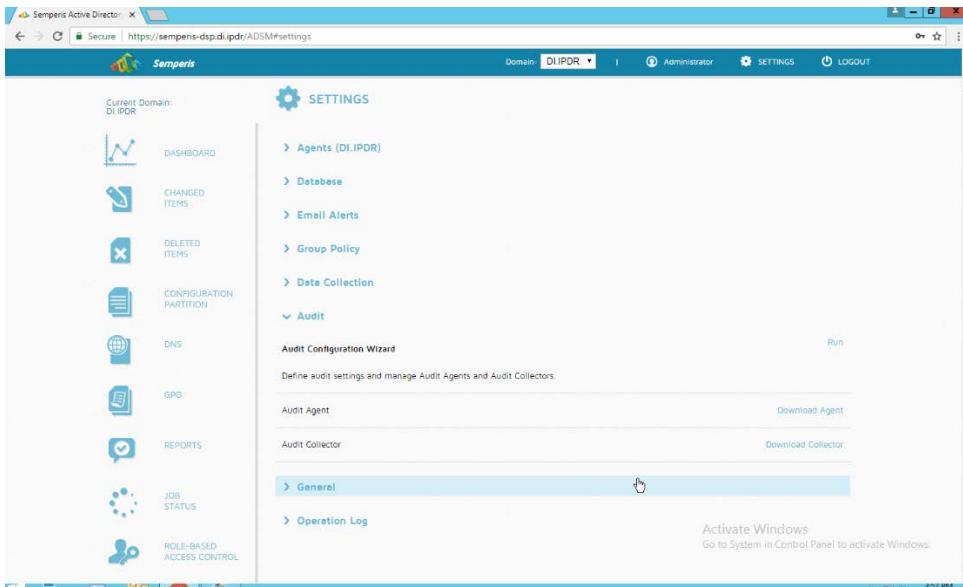
26. After the agent finishes deploying, click **Login** at the top of the page and log in.



1374

1375 27. Click **Start Sync**.

1376 28. After this completes, click **Settings** at the top of the page.



1377

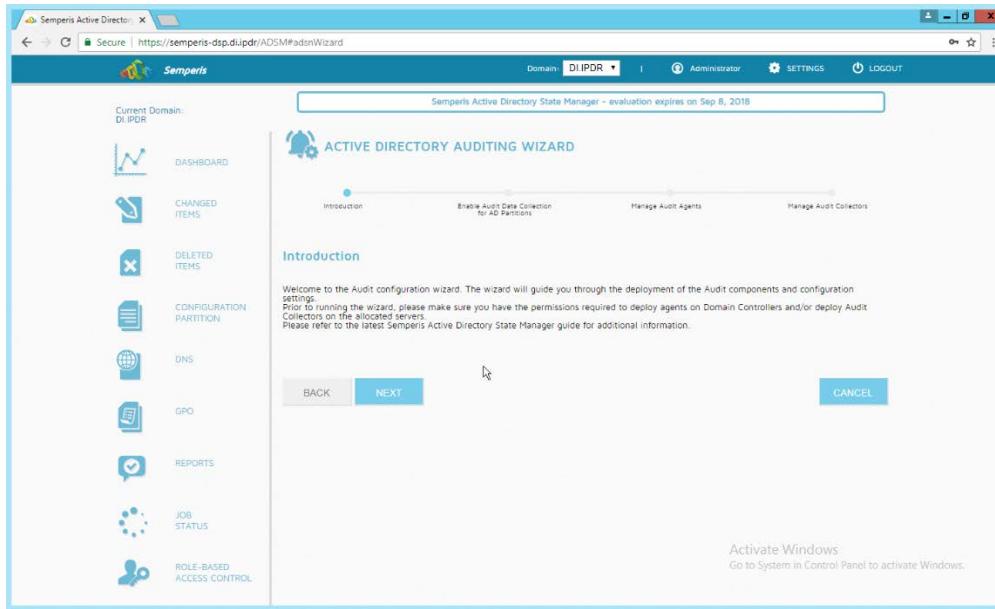
1378 29. Click **Audit**.

1379 30. Click **Run**.

1380

1381

31. Click Next.



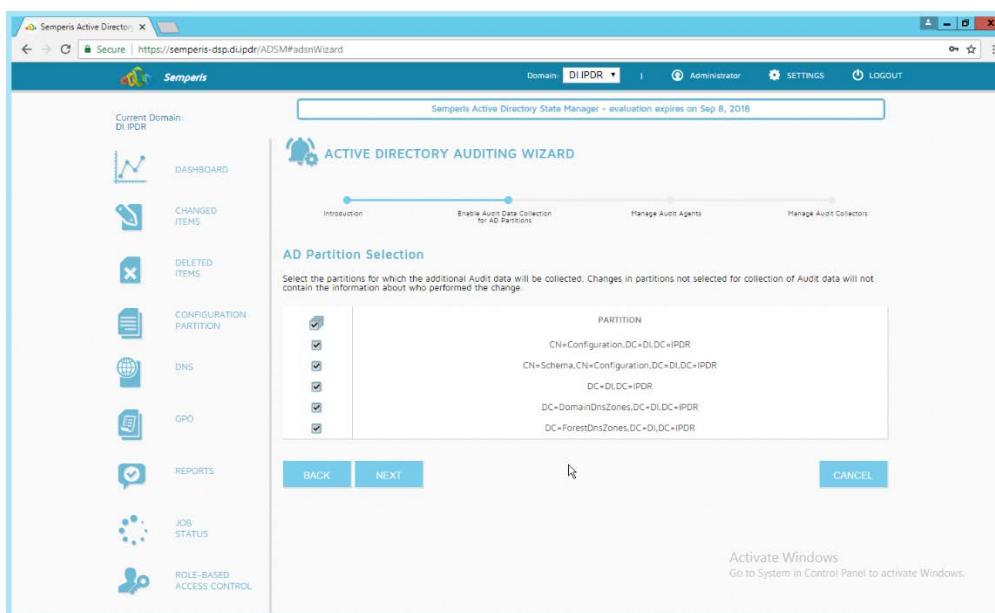
1382

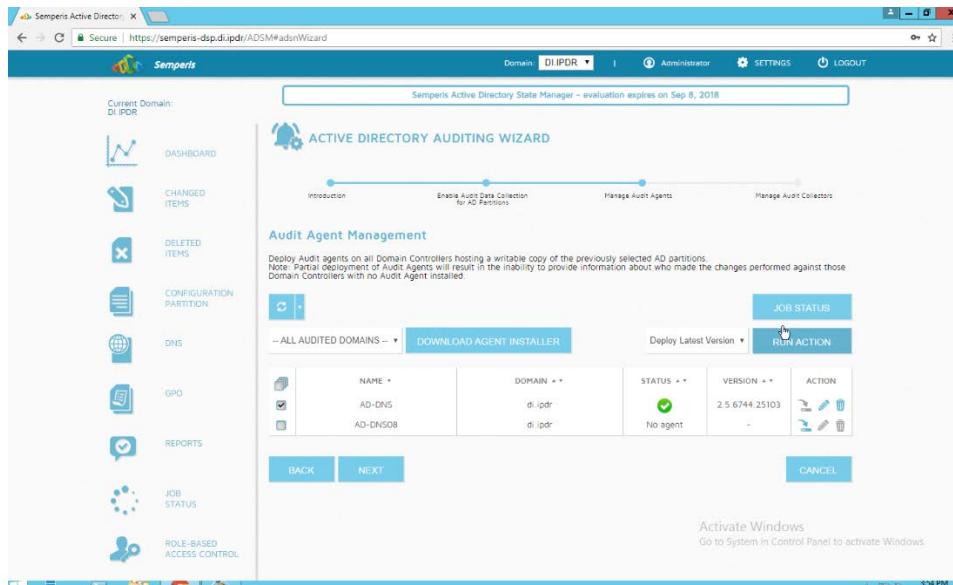
1383

32. Click Next.

1384

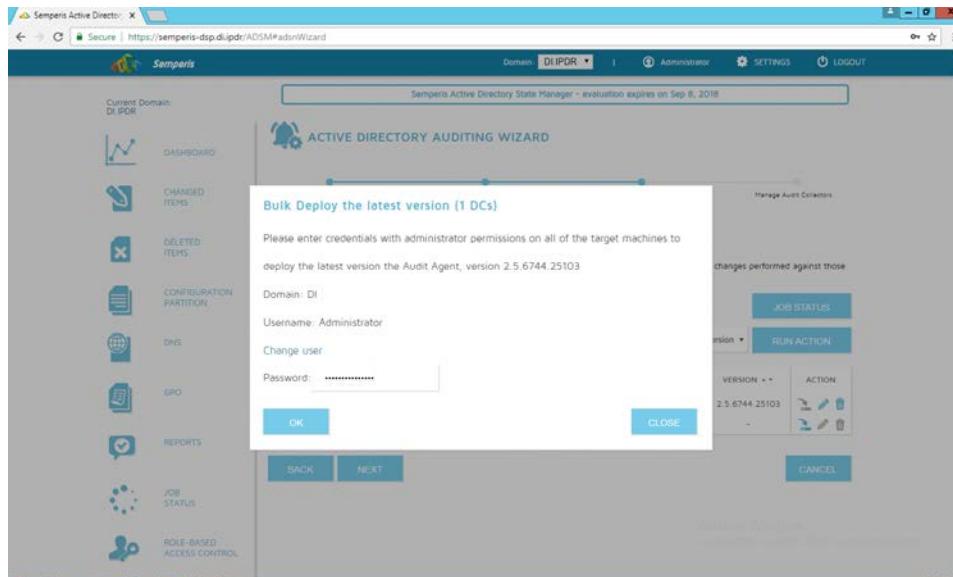
33. Check the boxes next to any Domain Controllers that should be monitored.





1385

34. Click Run Action.
35. Enter the password.

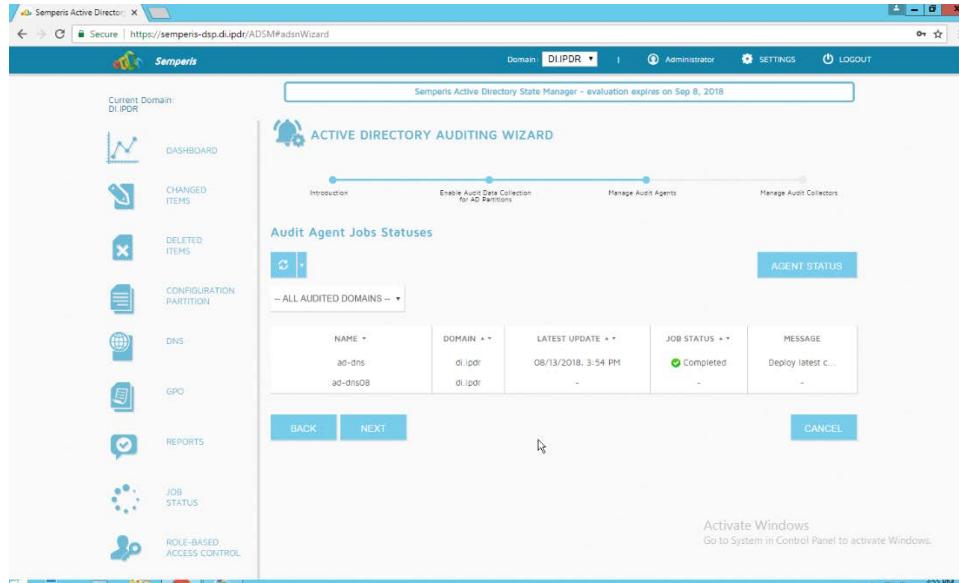


1388

36. Click OK.
37. Wait for the deployment to finish.

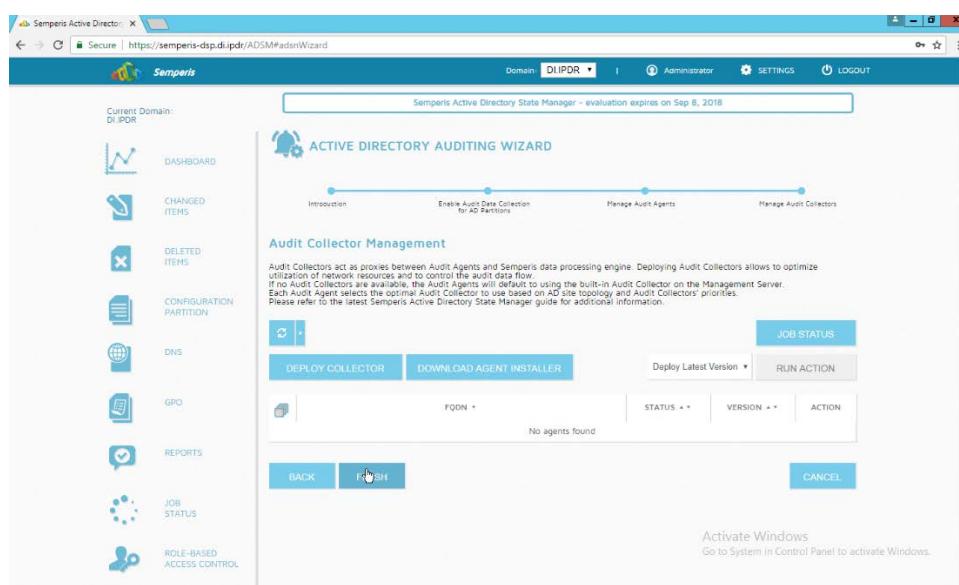
1391
1392

38. Click Next.



1393
1394

39. Click Finish.



1395 2.11 Micro Focus ArcSight Enterprise Security Manager

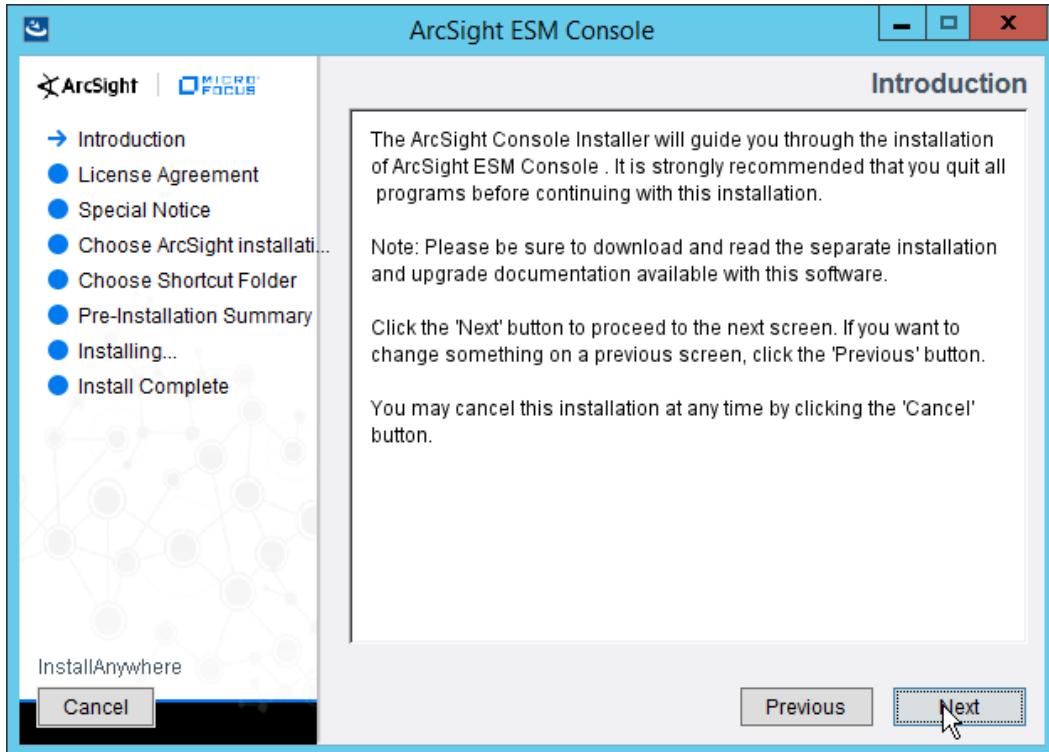
1396 Micro Focus ArcSight Enterprise Security Manager is primarily a log collection/analysis tool with
1397 features for sorting, filtering, correlating, and reporting information from logs. It is adaptable to logs
1398 generated by various systems, applications, and security solutions.

1399 This installation guide assumes a preconfigured CentOS 7 machine with Enterprise Security Manager
1400 (ESM) already installed and licensed. This section covers the installation and configuration process used
1401 to set up ArcSight agents on various machines, as well as some analysis and reporting capabilities.

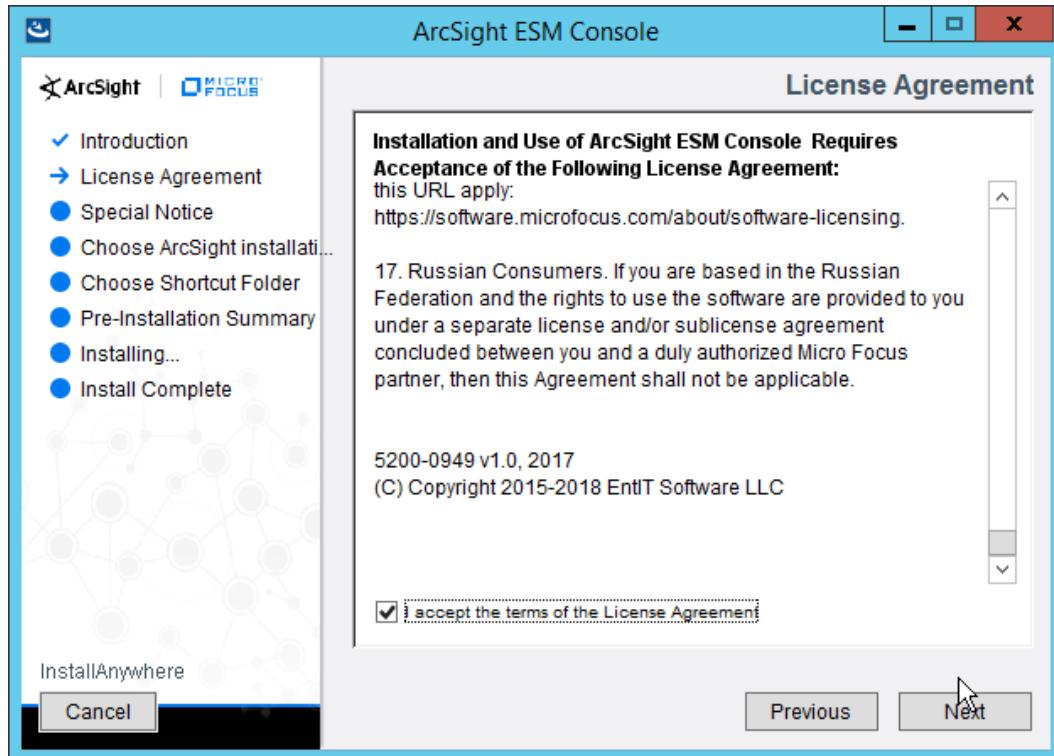
1402 Installation instructions are included for both Windows and UNIX machines, as well as for collecting
1403 from multiple machines. Furthermore, integrations with other products in the build are included in later
1404 sections.

1405 [2.11.1 Install the ArcSight Console](#)

1406 1. Run **ArcSight-7.0.0.2436.1-Console-Win.exe**.

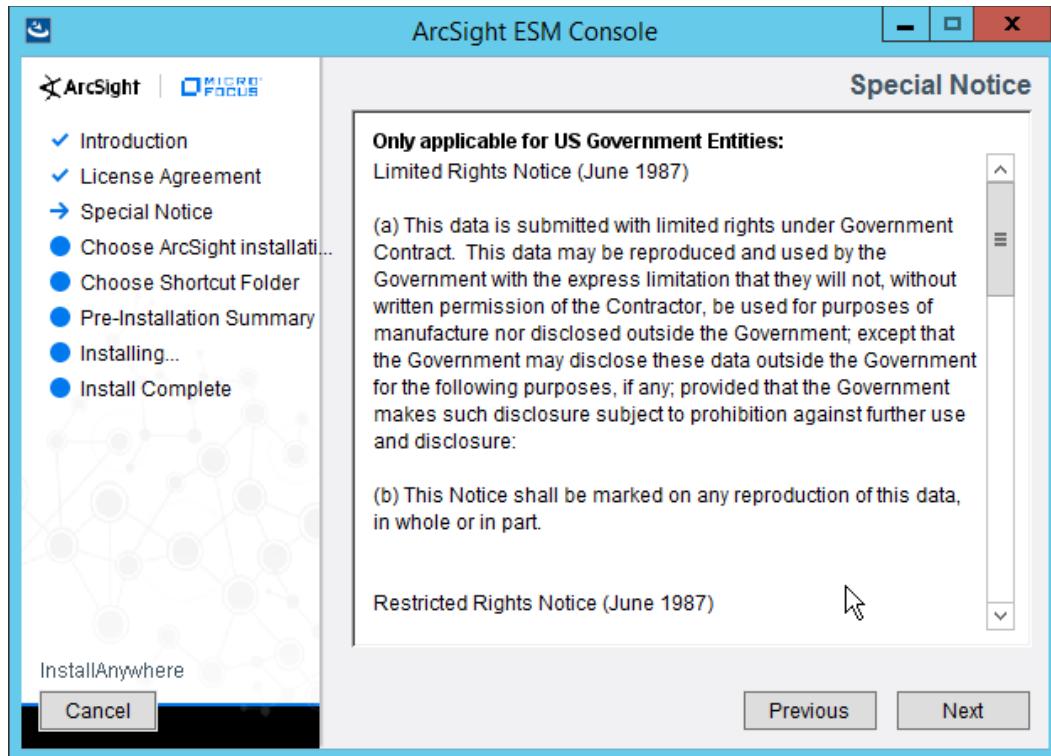


- 1407
1408 2. Click **Next**.
1409 3. Check the box next to **I accept the License Agreement**.



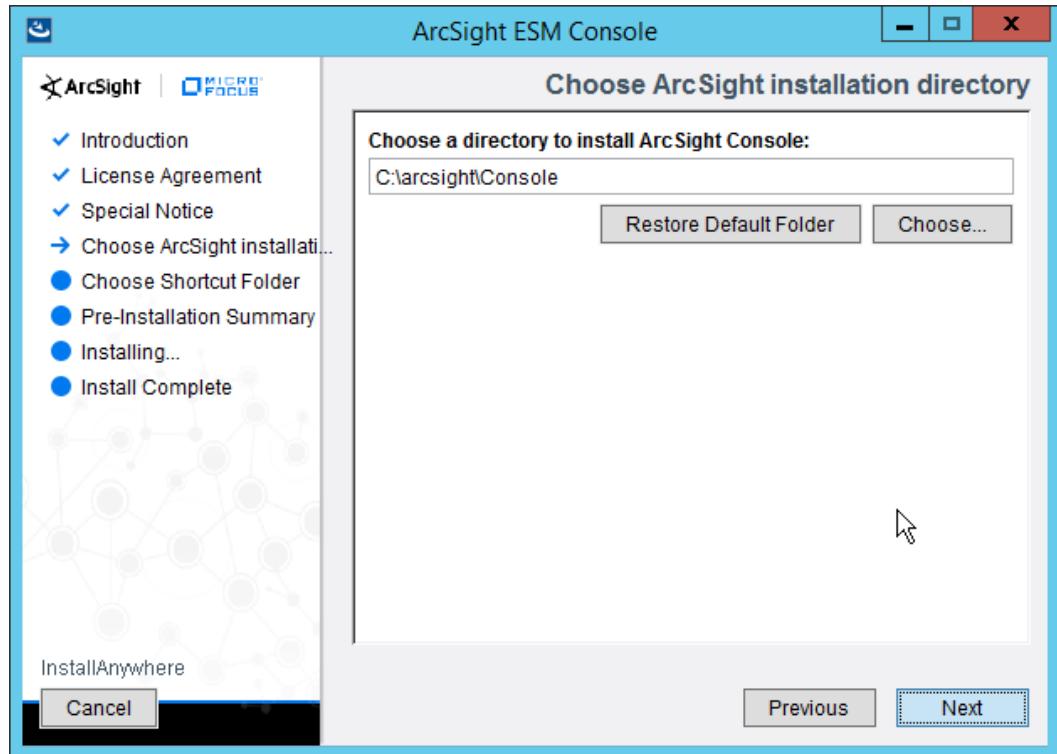
1410
1411

4. Click **Next**.



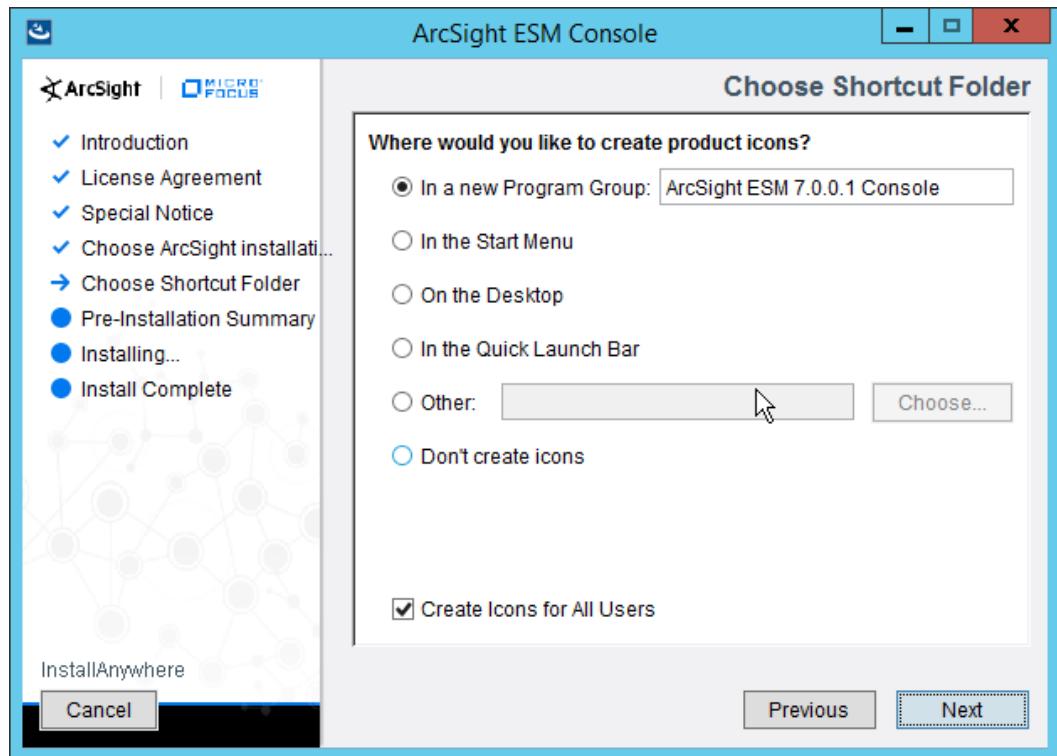
1412
1413

5. Click **Next**.



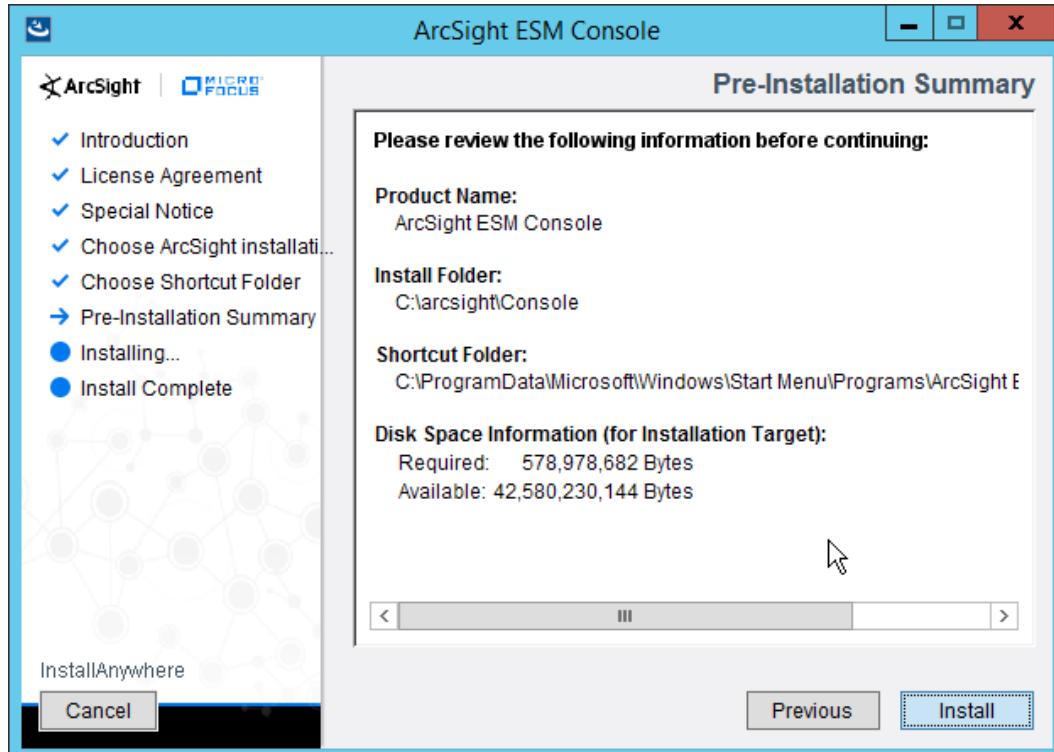
1414
1415

6. Click **Next**.



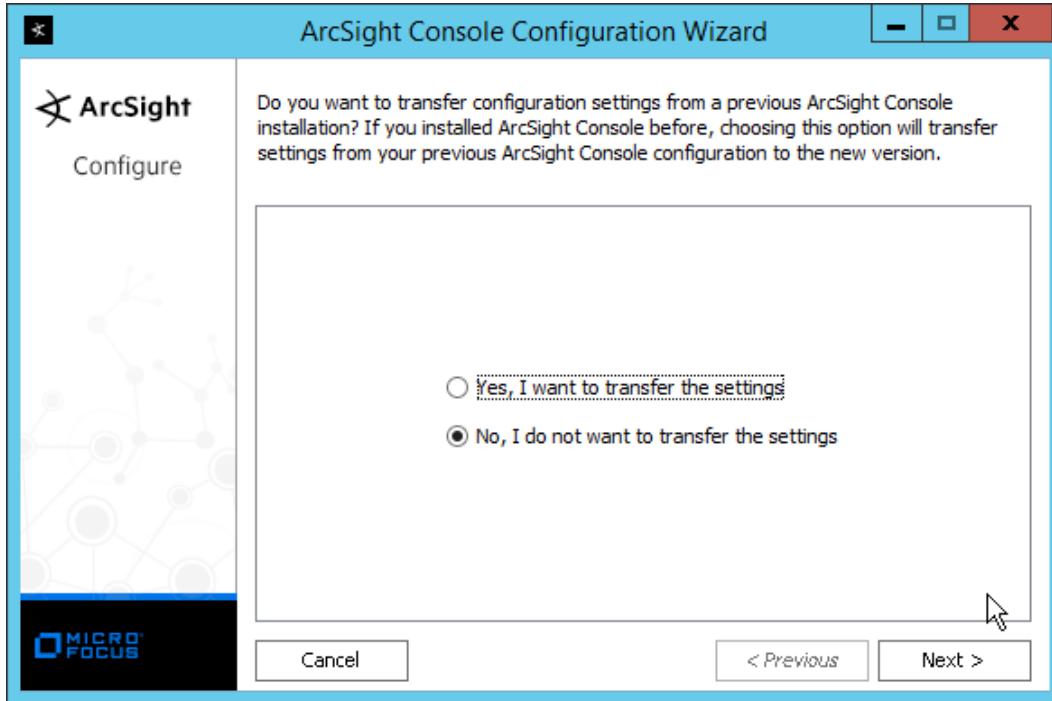
1416
1417

7. Click **Next**.



1418

1419 8. Click **Install**.1420 9. Select **No, I do not want to transfer the settings**.

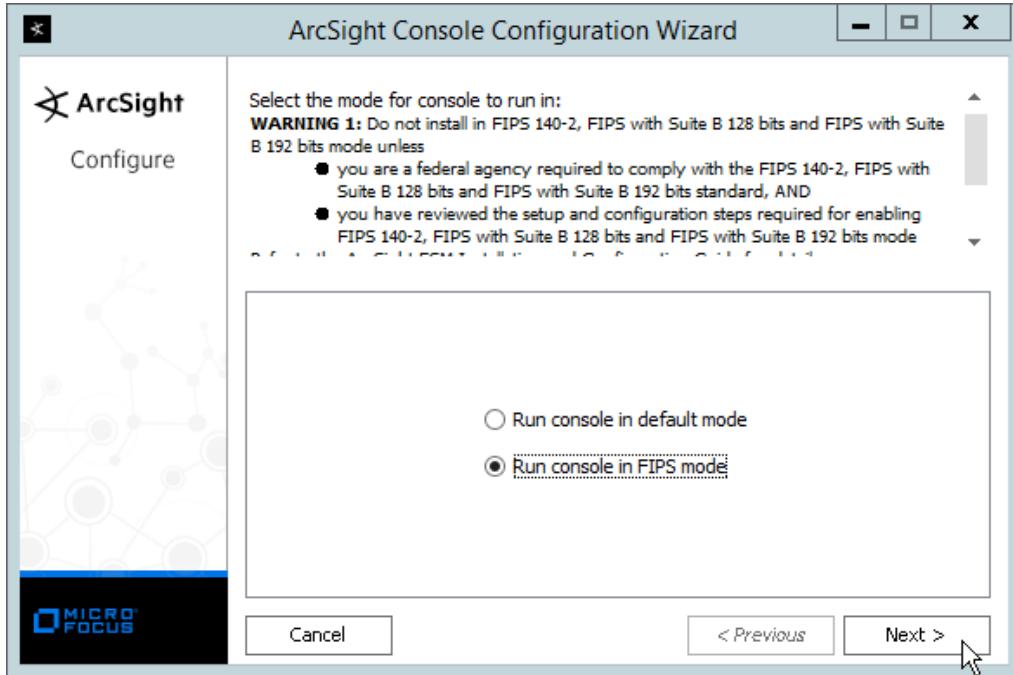


1421

1422

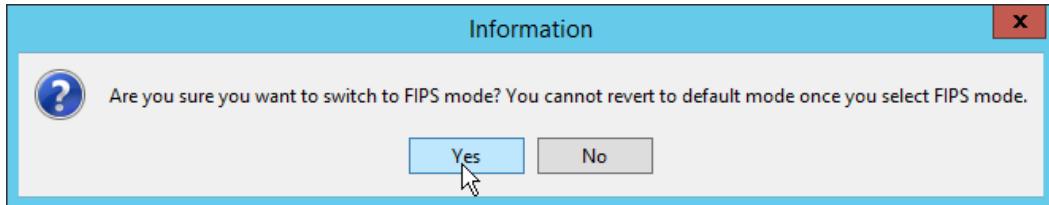
10. Click **Next**.

1423

11. Select **Run console in default mode**. (This can be changed later according to your organization's compliance requirements.)

1425

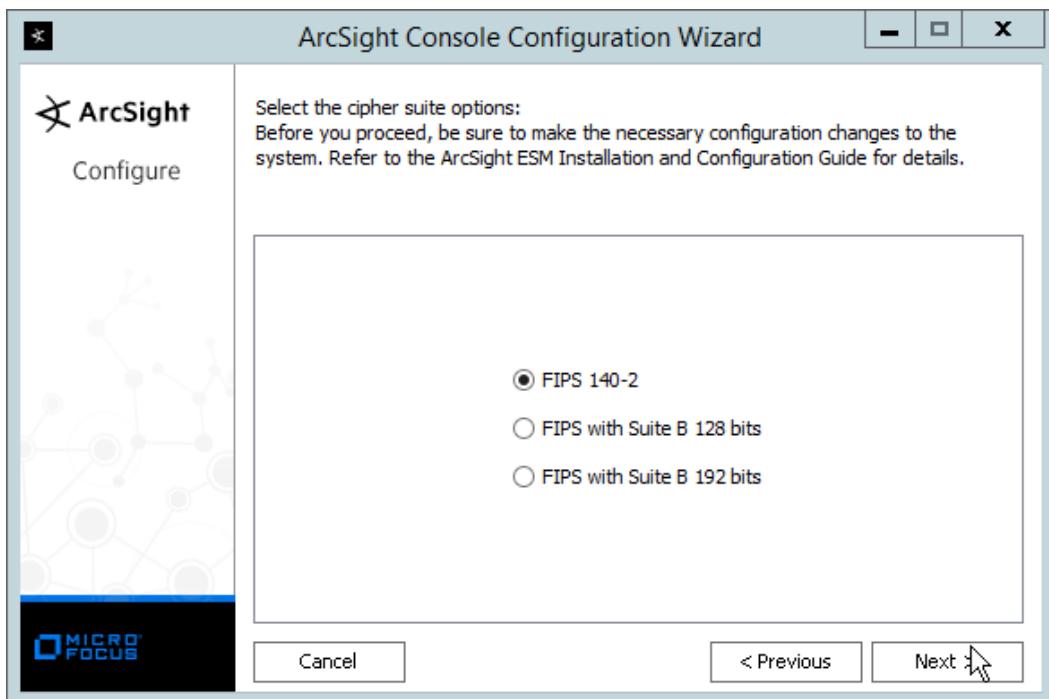
1426 12. Click **Next**.



1427

1428 13. Click **Yes**.

1429 14. Select **FIPS 140-2**.



1430

1431 15. Click **Next**.

1432 16. Enter the **hostname** of the ESM server for **Manager Host Name**.

1433 17. Enter the **port** that ESM is running on for **Manager Port** (default: 8443).

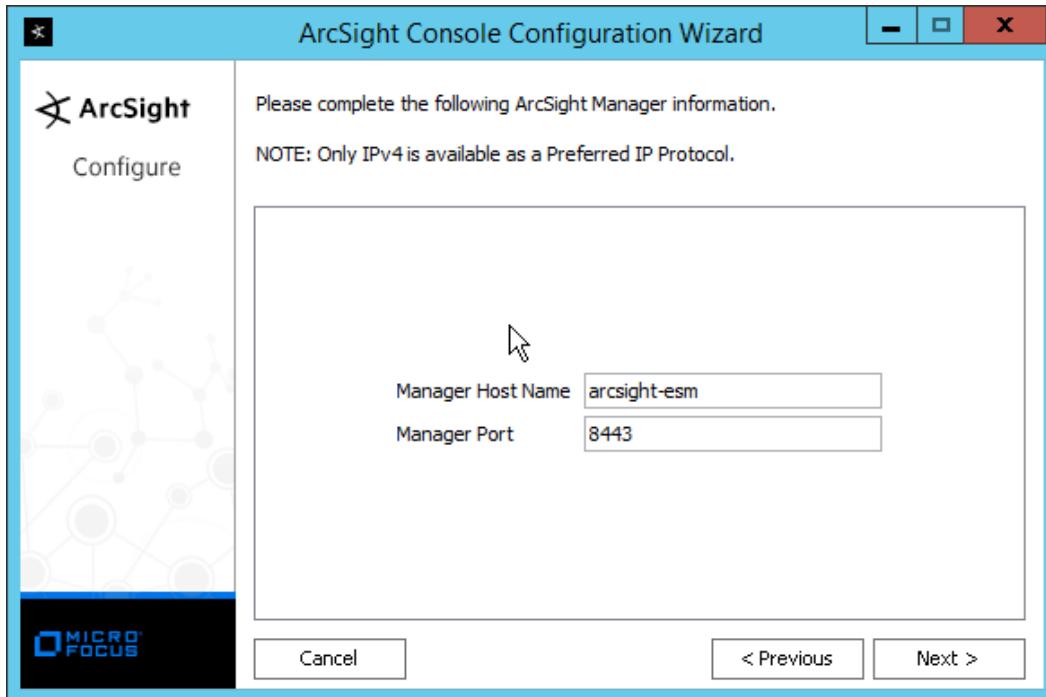
1434

1435

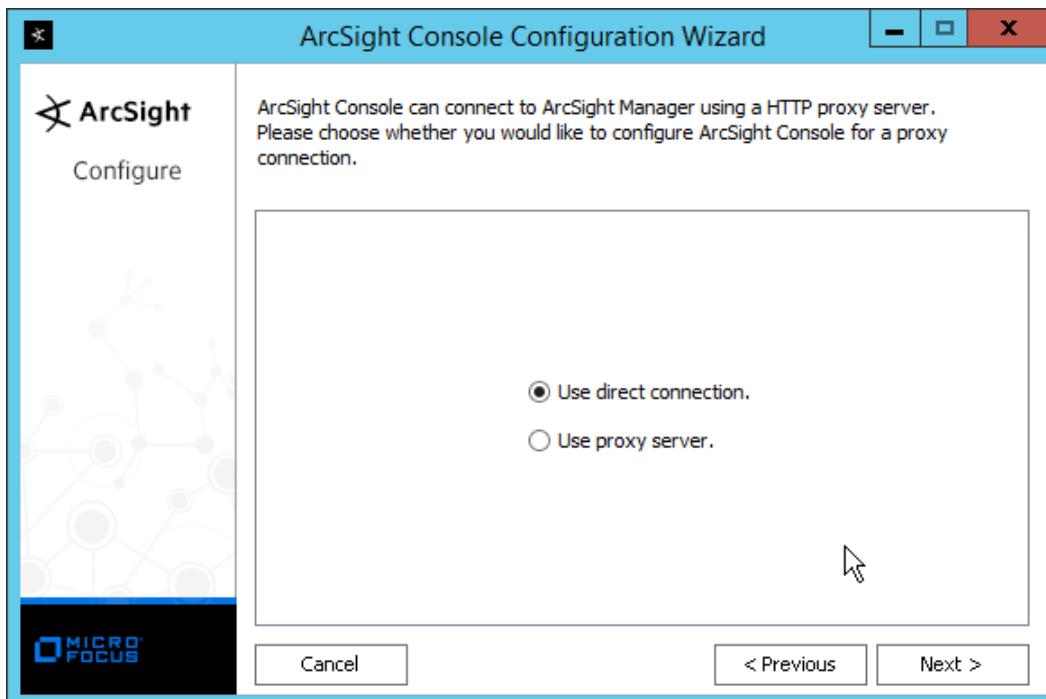
1436

18. Click **Next**.

19. Select **Use direct connection**.

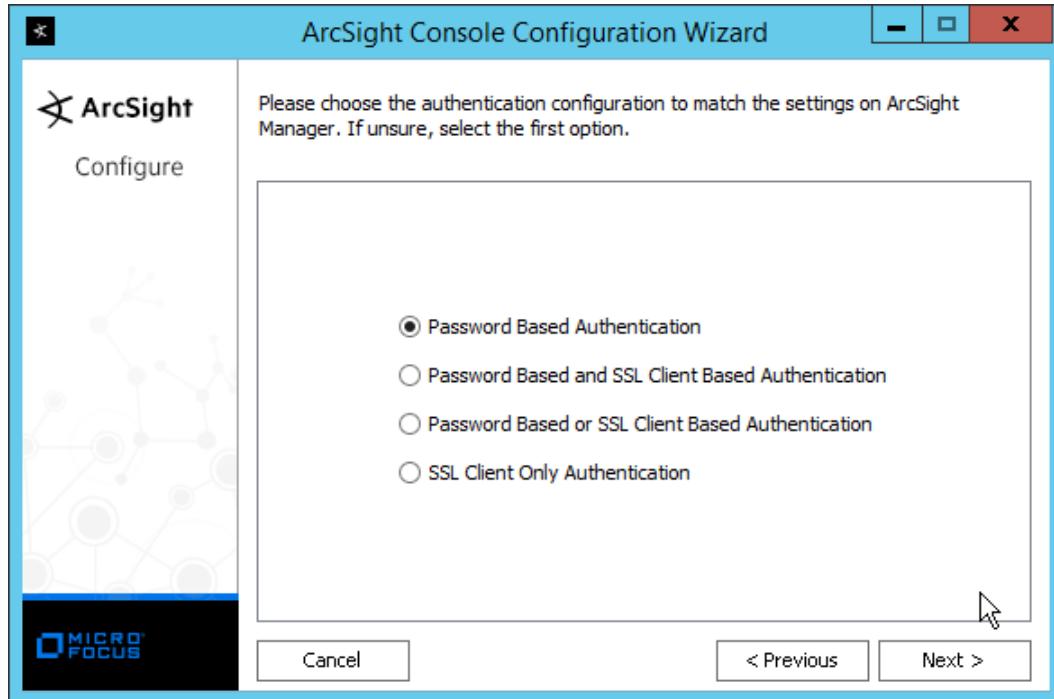


1437



1438

20. Click **Next**.



1439

21. Click **Next**.

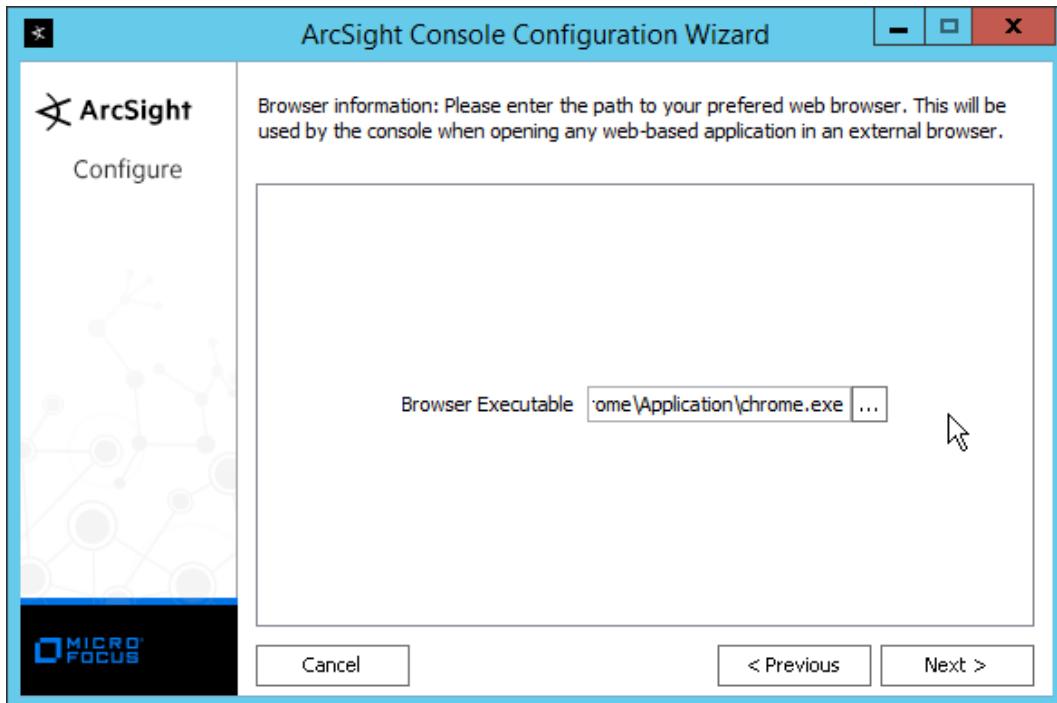
1440

22. Select your preferred browser.

1442

1443

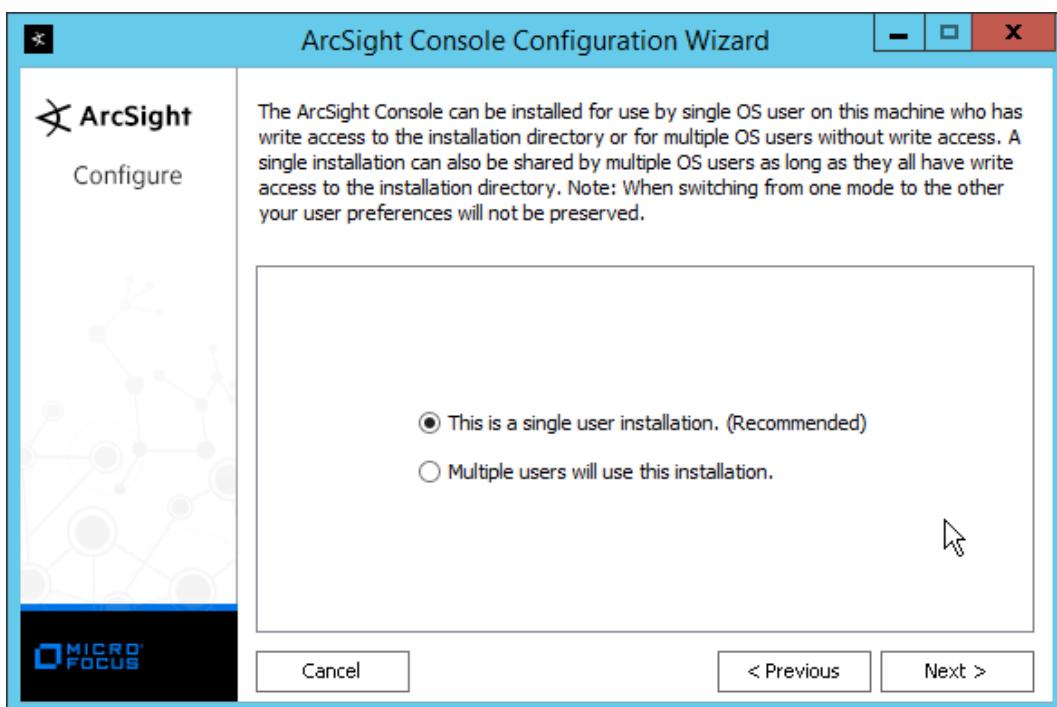
23. Click Next.



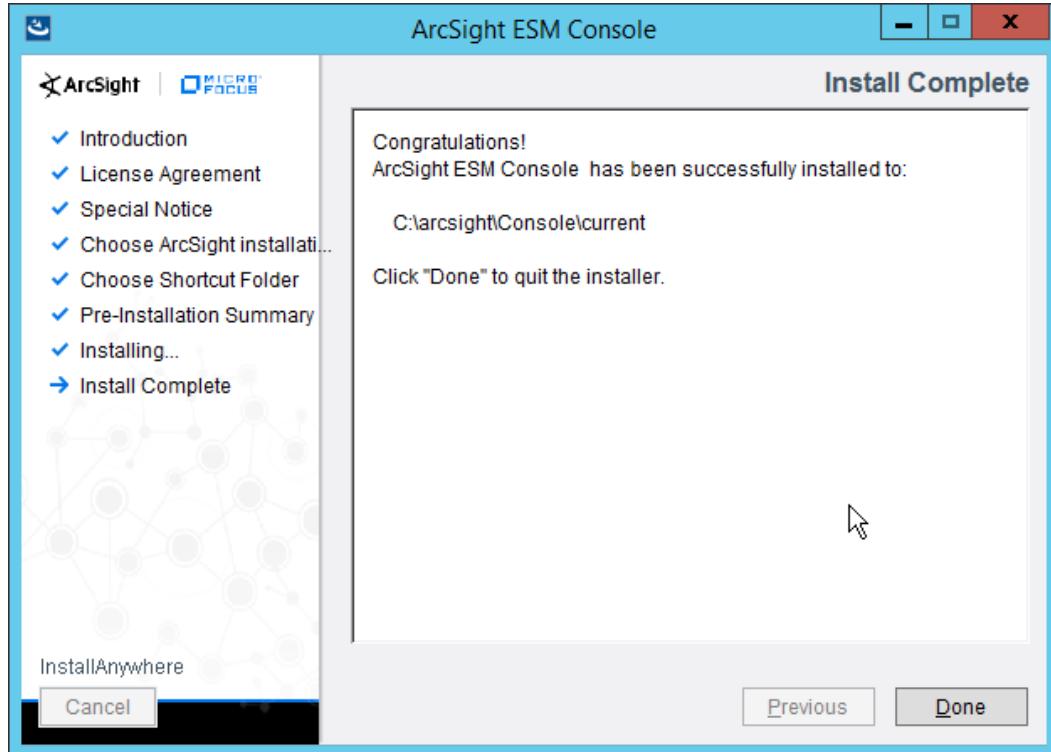
1444

1445

24. Click Next.



1446 25. Click **Finish**.

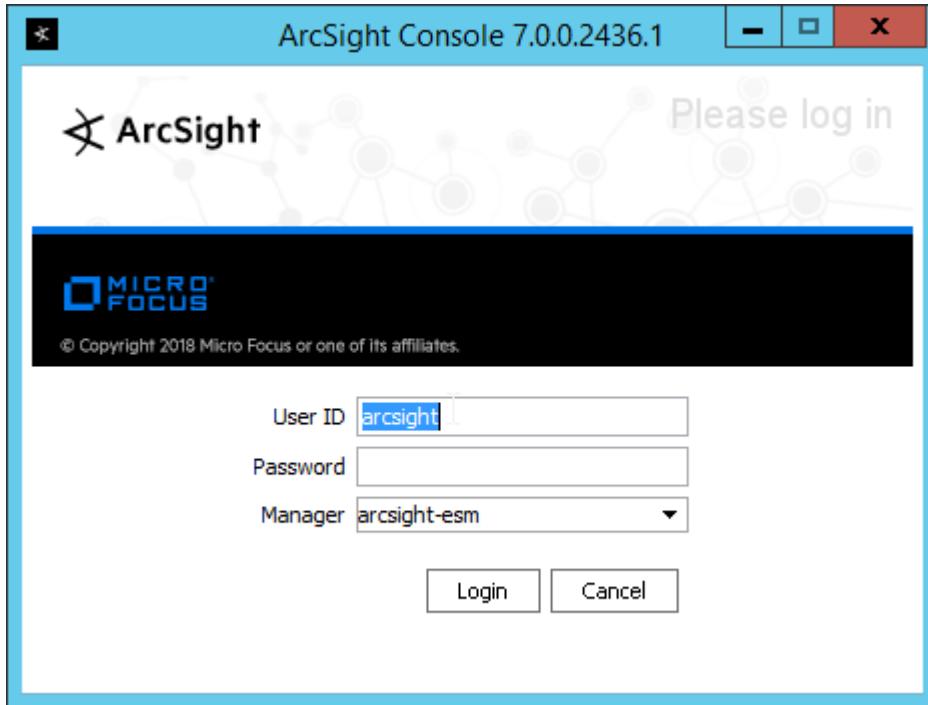


1447

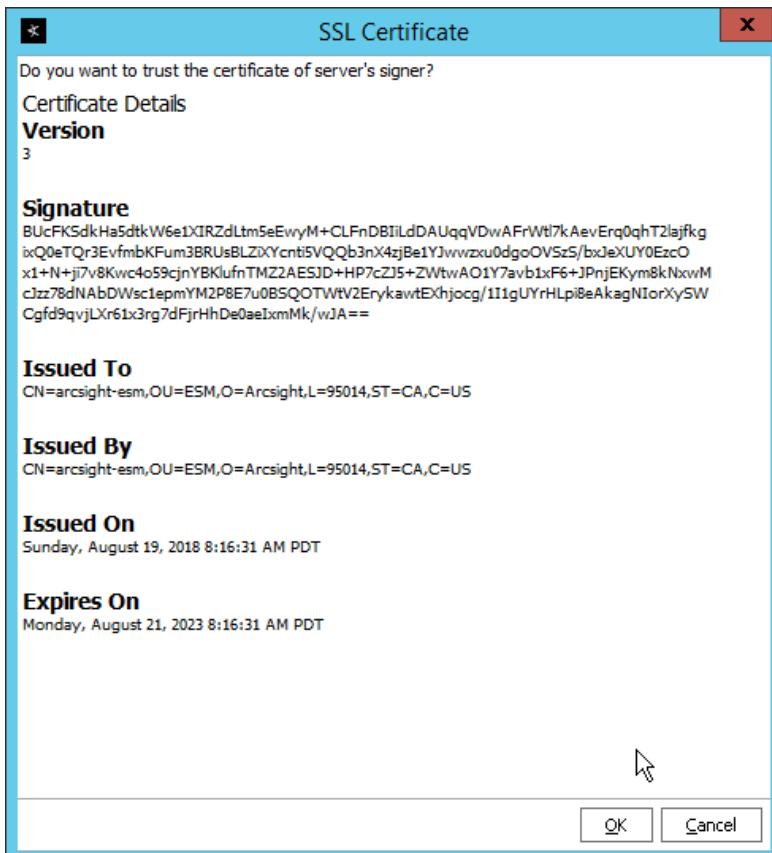
1448 26. Click **Done**.

1449 27. Run **ArcSight Console** from the Start menu.

1450 28. Enter the **username** and **password**.

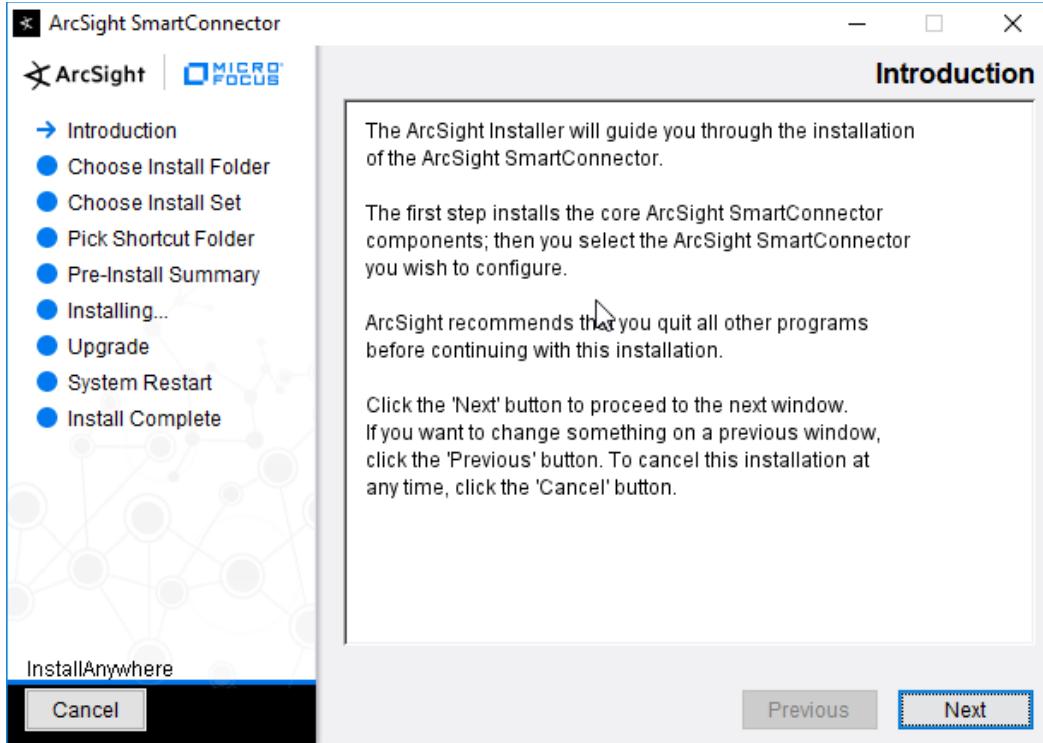


1451
1452 29. Click **Login**. (If you are unable to connect, ensure that the hostname of the ESM server is
1453 present in your DNS server.)



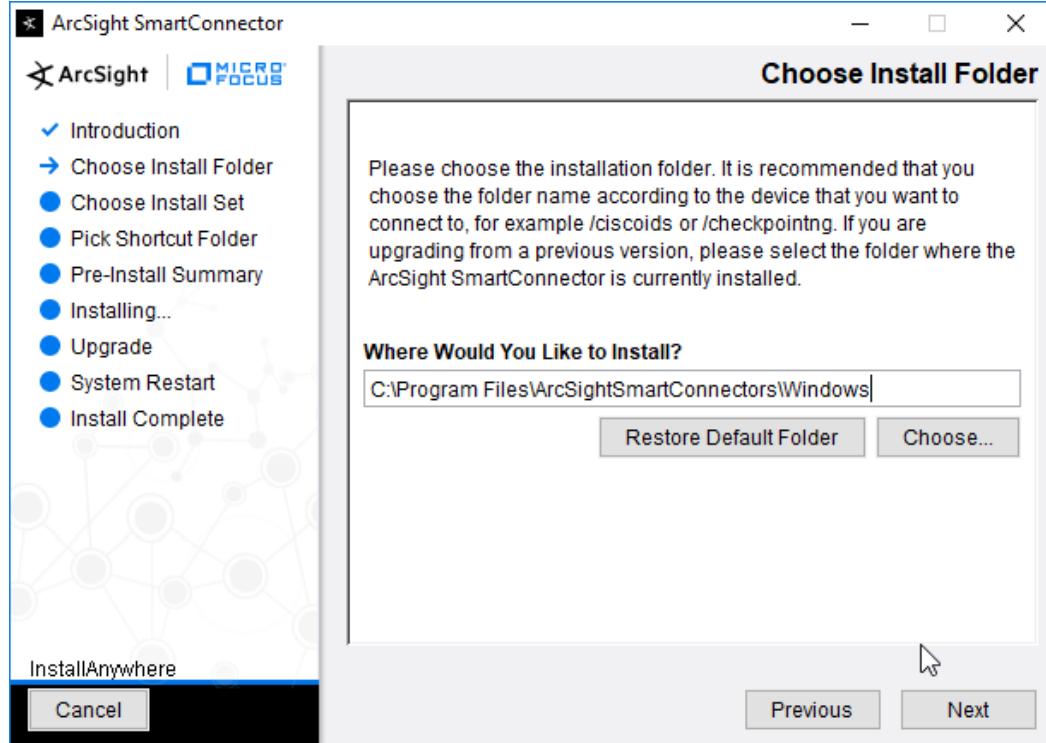
1454

1455 30. Click **OK**.1456 [2.11.2 Install Individual ArcSight Windows Connectors](#)1457 1. Run **ArcSight-7.9.0.8084.0-Connector-Win64.exe**.



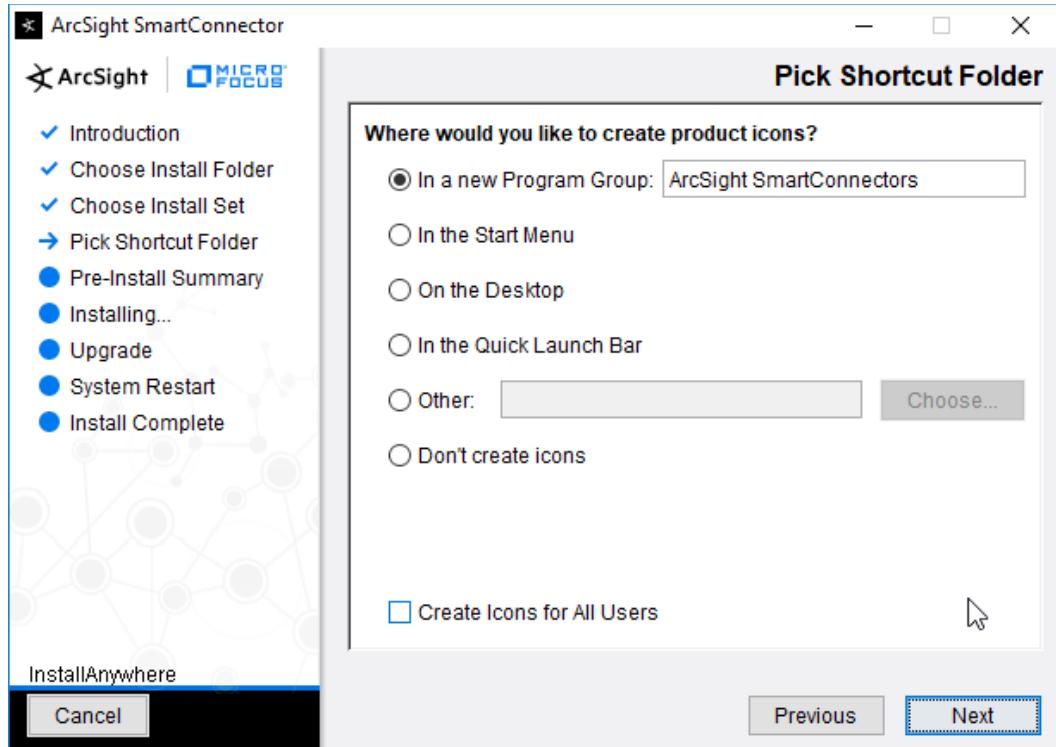
1458
1459
1460

2. Click **Next**.
3. Enter C:\Program Files\ArcSightSmartConnectors\Windows.



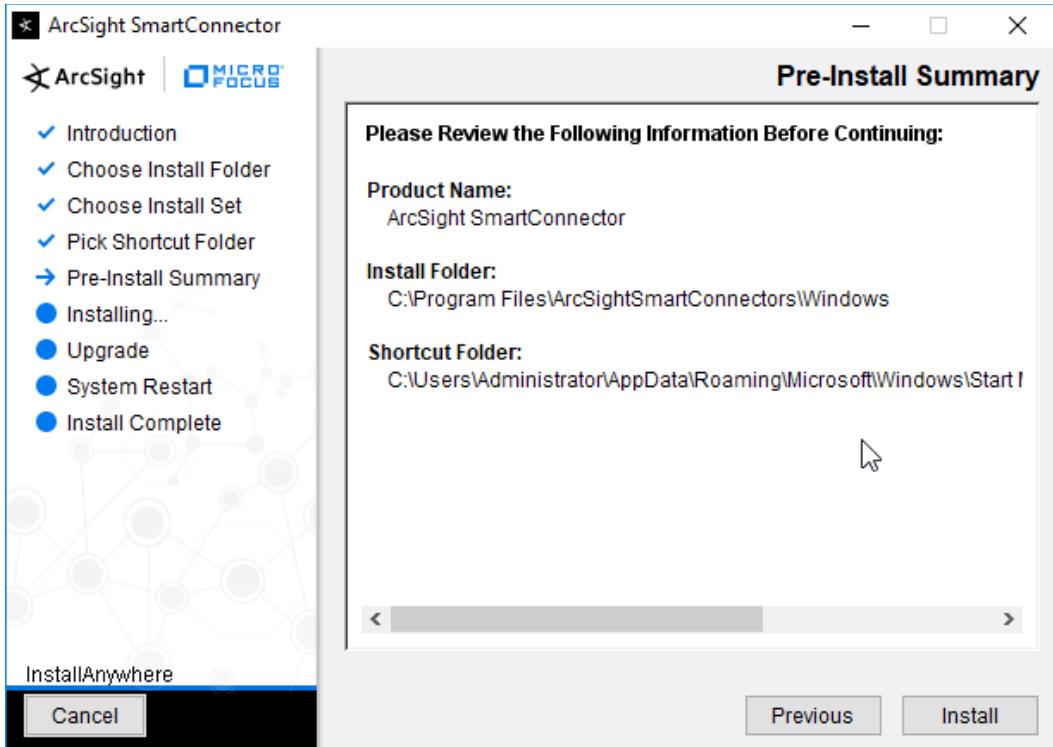
1461
1462

4. Click **Next**.

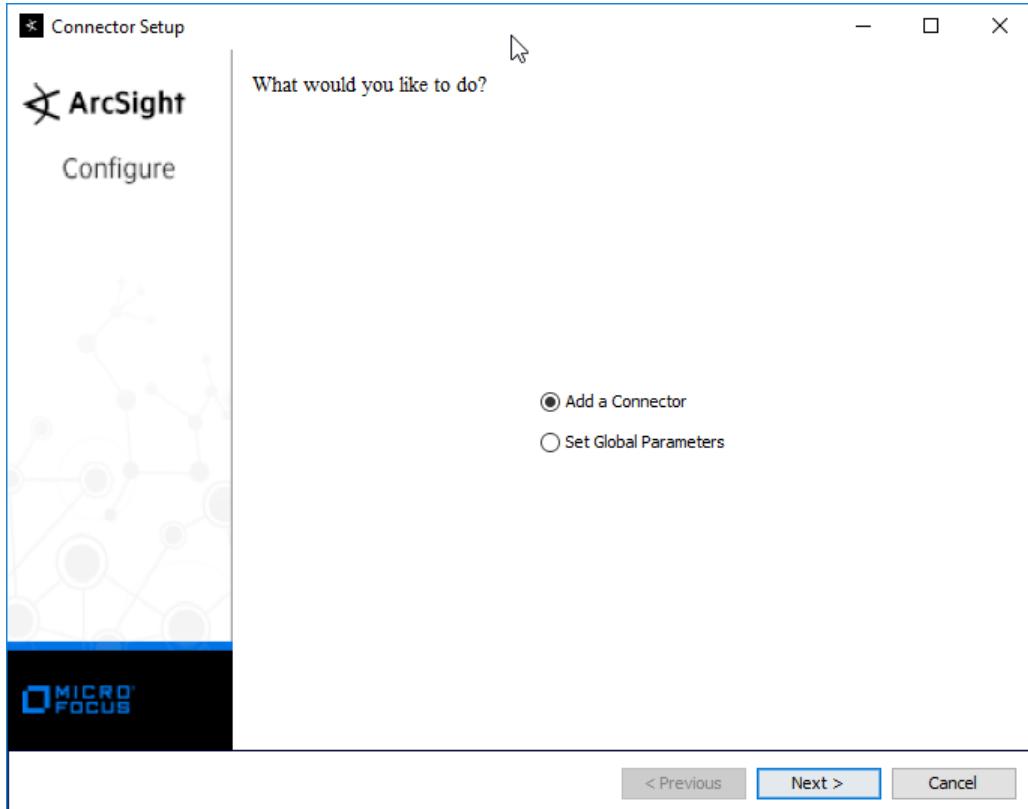


1463
1464

5. Click **Next**.



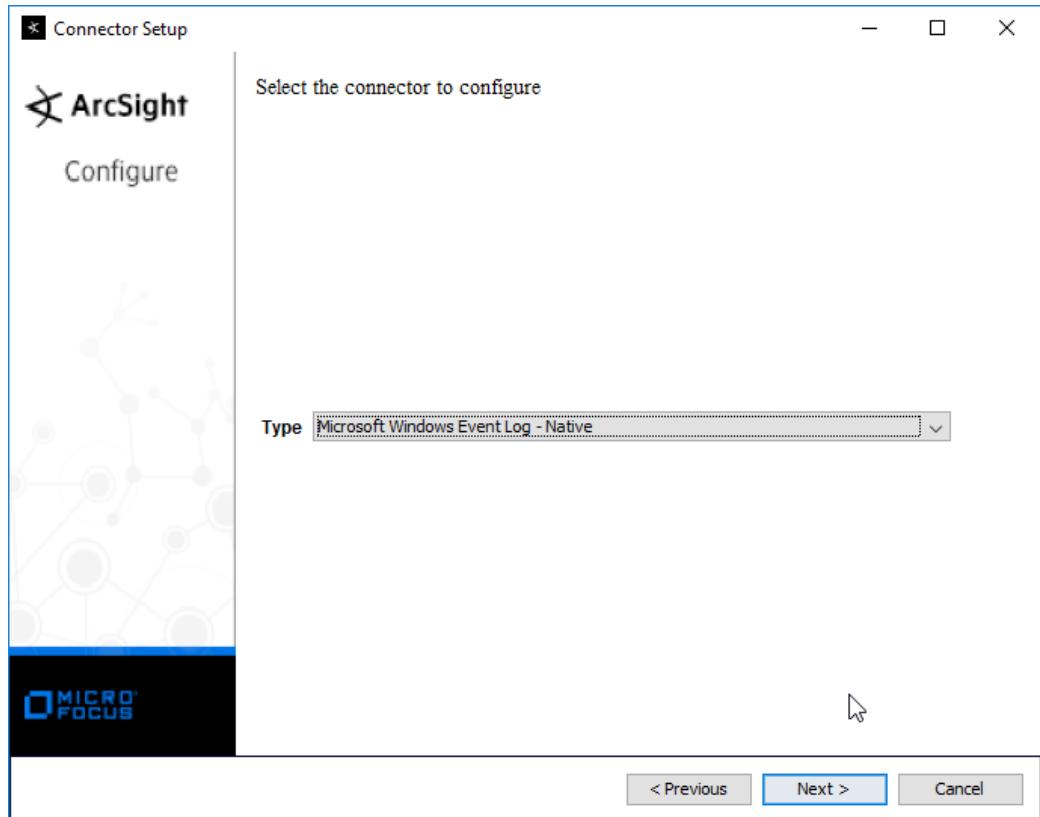
- 1465
1466 6. Click **Install**.
1467 7. Select **Add a Connector**.



1468

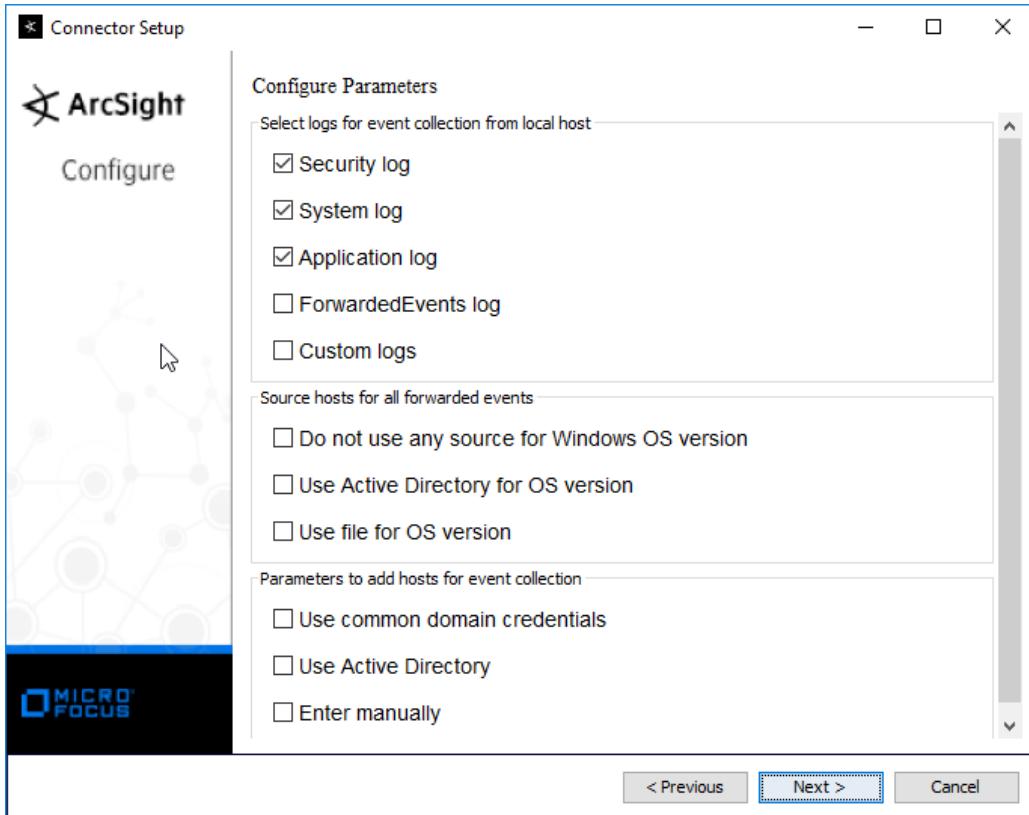
1469

8. Click **Next**.
9. Select **Microsoft Windows Event Log–Native**.



1471
1472

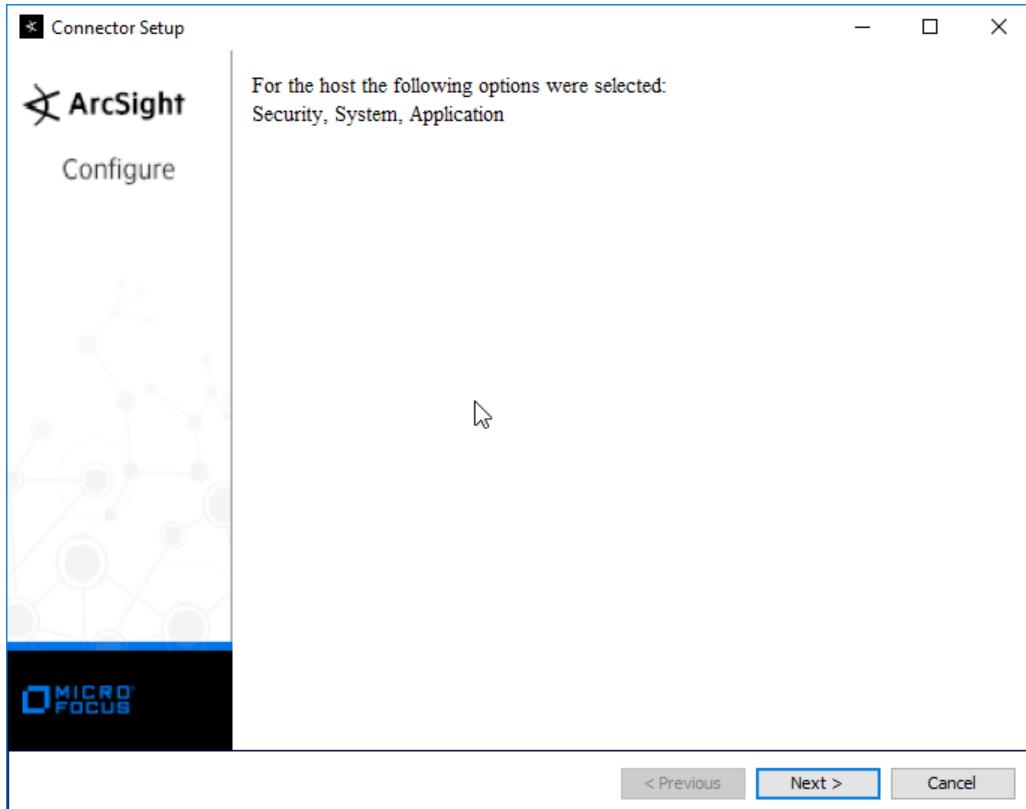
10. Click **Next**.



1473

1474

11. Click **Next**.



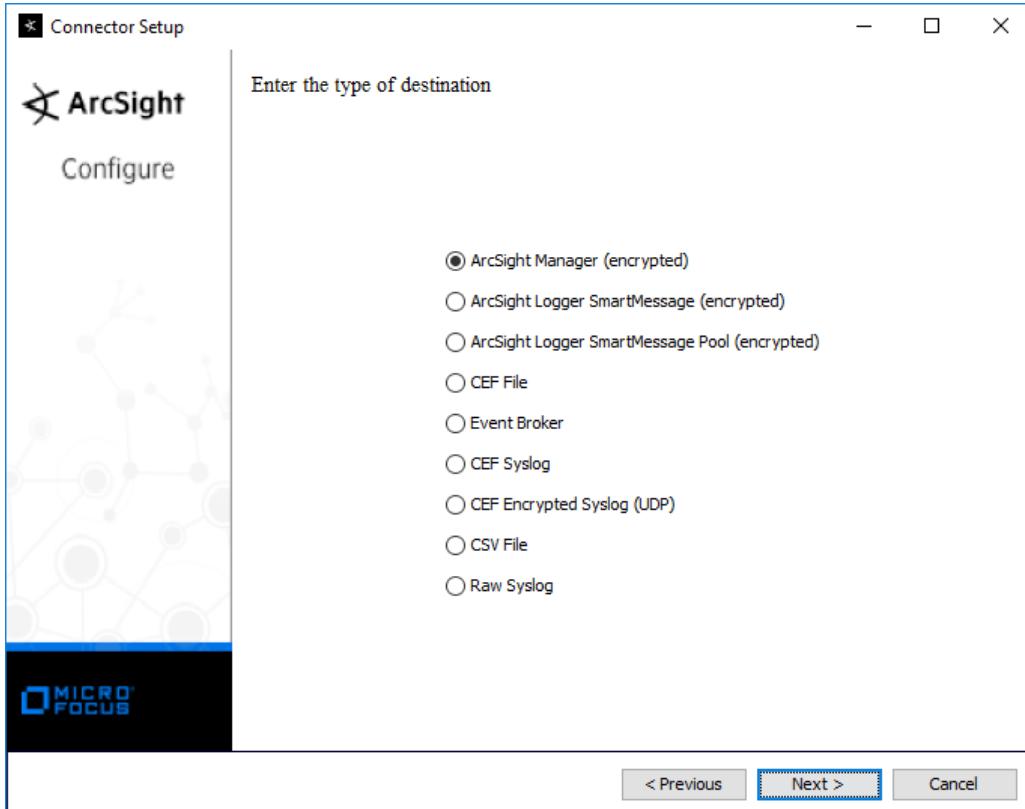
1475

1476

12. Click **Next**.

1477

13. Select **ArcSight Manager (encrypted)**.

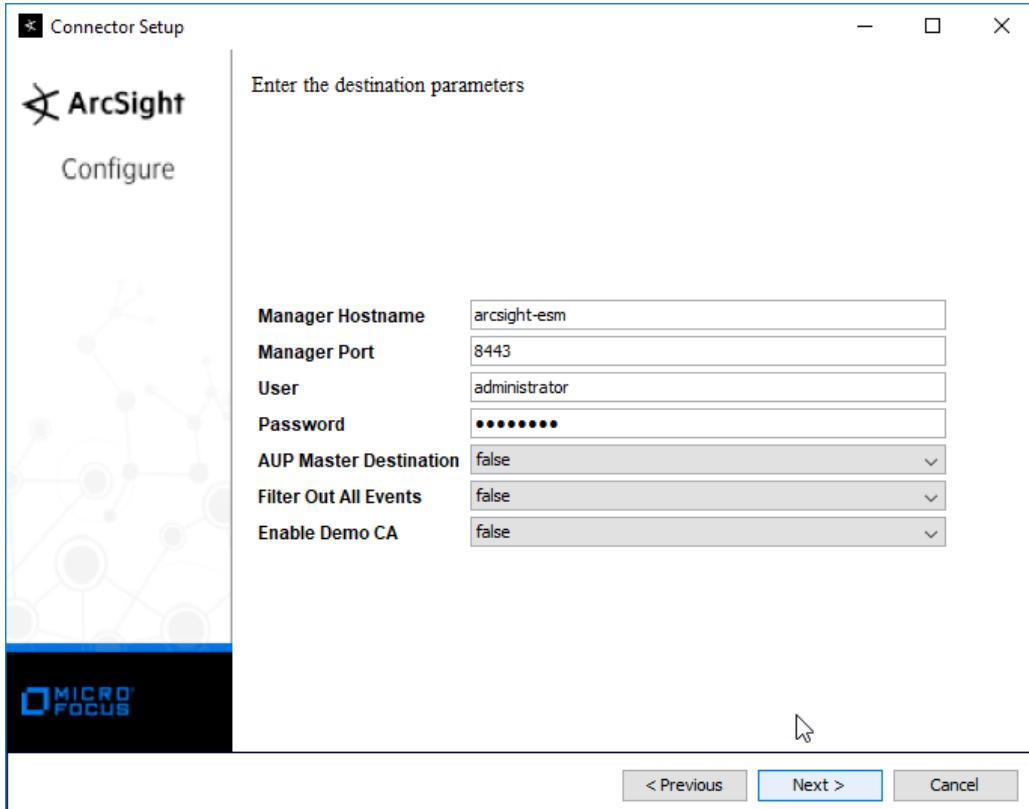


1478

1479 14. Click **Next**.

1480

15. Enter the **hostname**, **port**, **username**, and **password** for the ArcSight ESM server.

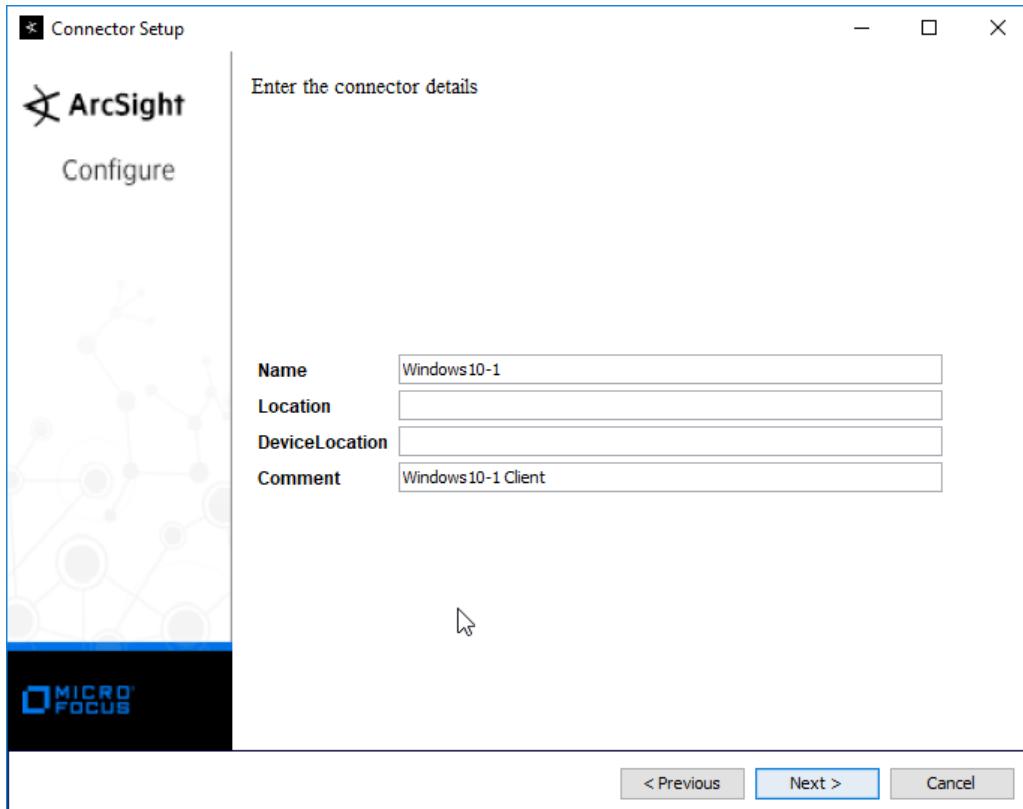


1481

16. Click **Next**.

1482

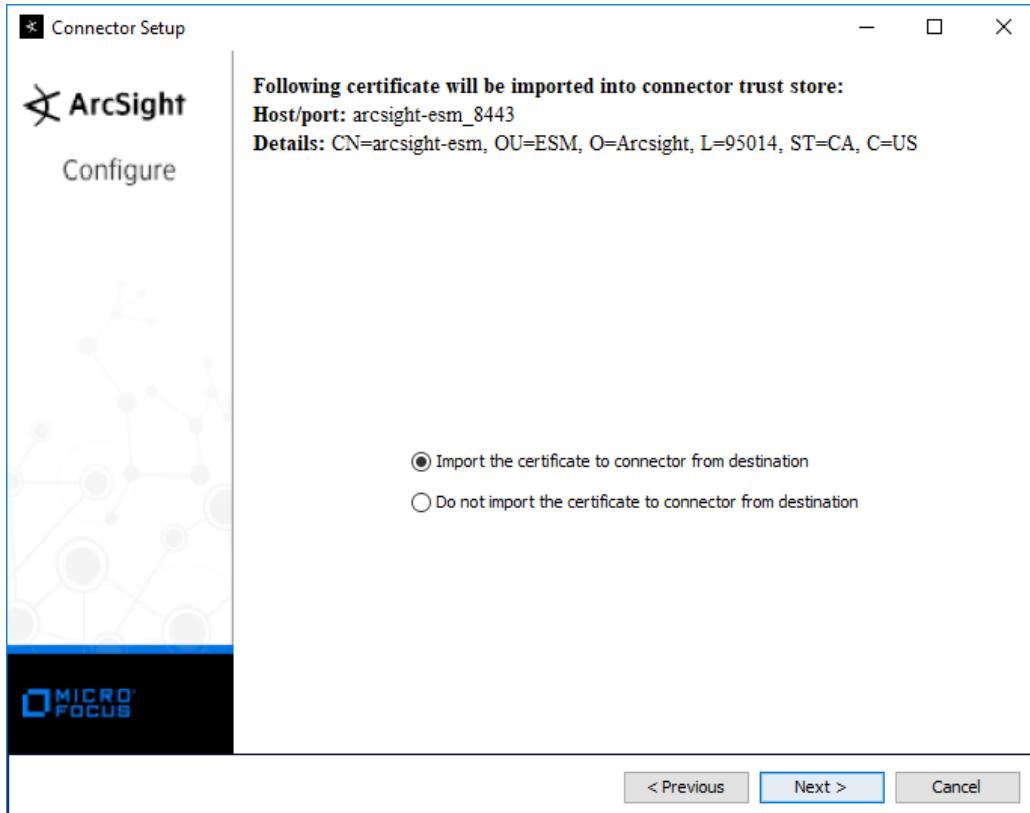
17. Enter identifying details about the system (only **Name** is required).



1484

1485 18. Click Next.

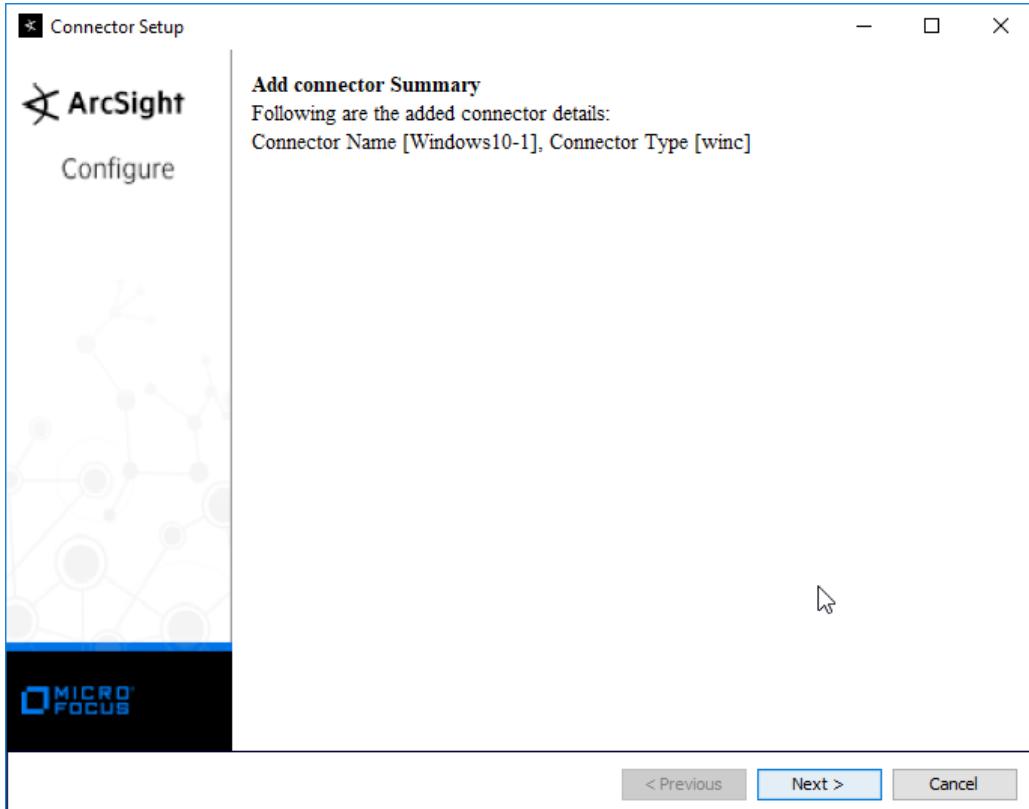
1486 19. Select **Import the certificate to connector from destination**.



1487

1488

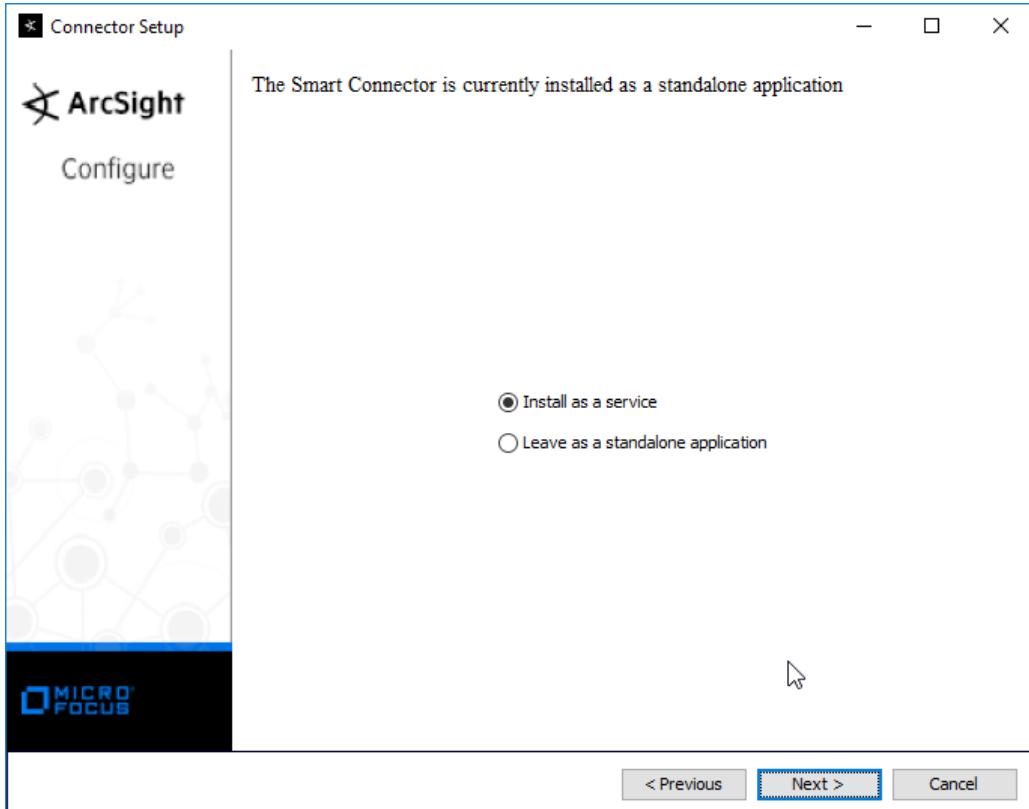
20. Click **Next**.



1489

1490 21. Click **Next**.

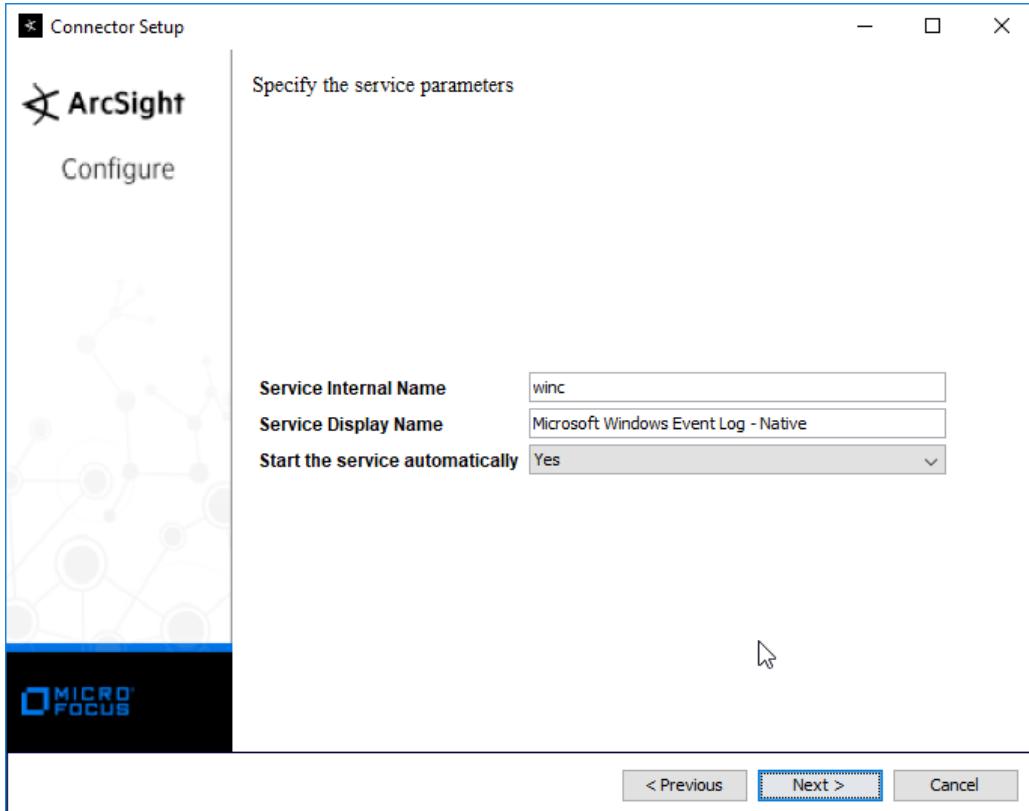
1491 22. Select **Install as a service**.



1492

1493

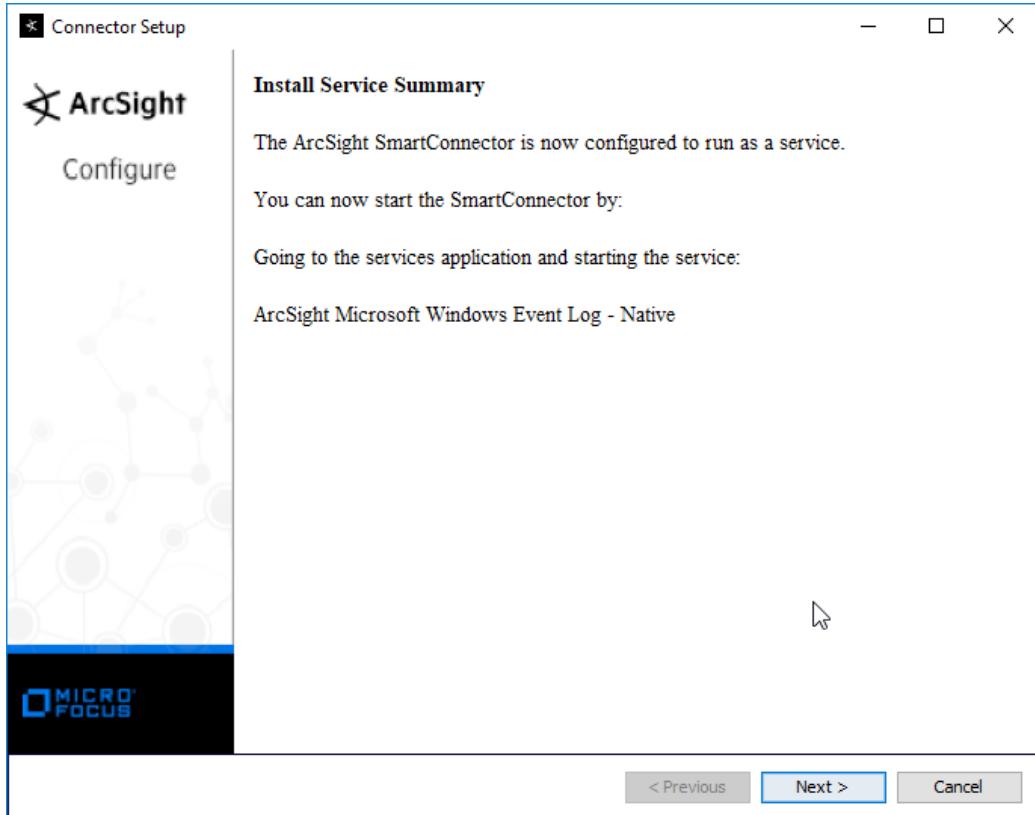
23. Click **Next**.



1494

1495

24. Click **Next**.



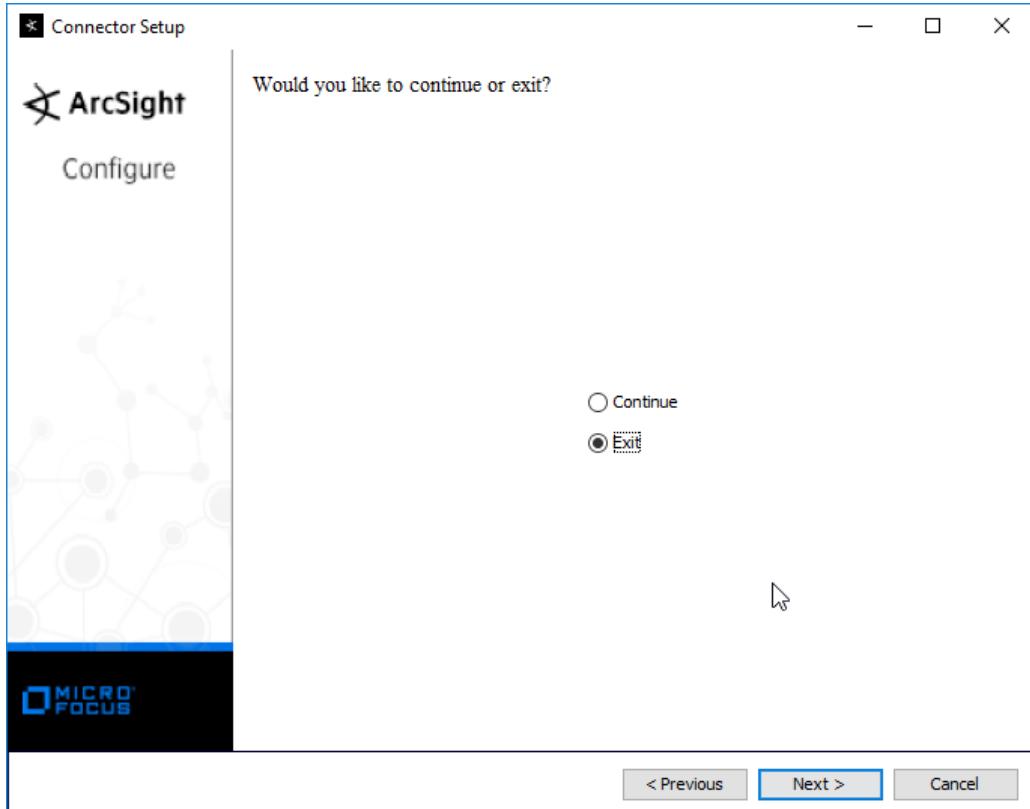
1496

1497

25. Click **Next**.

1498

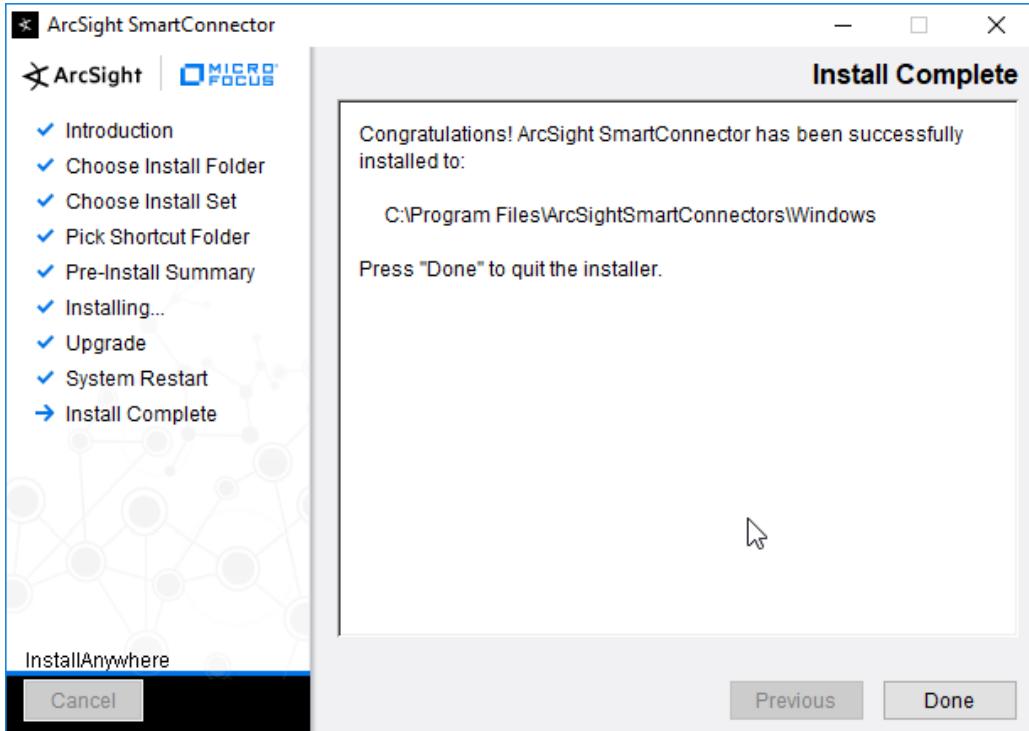
26. Select **Exit**.



1499

1500

27. Click **Next**.



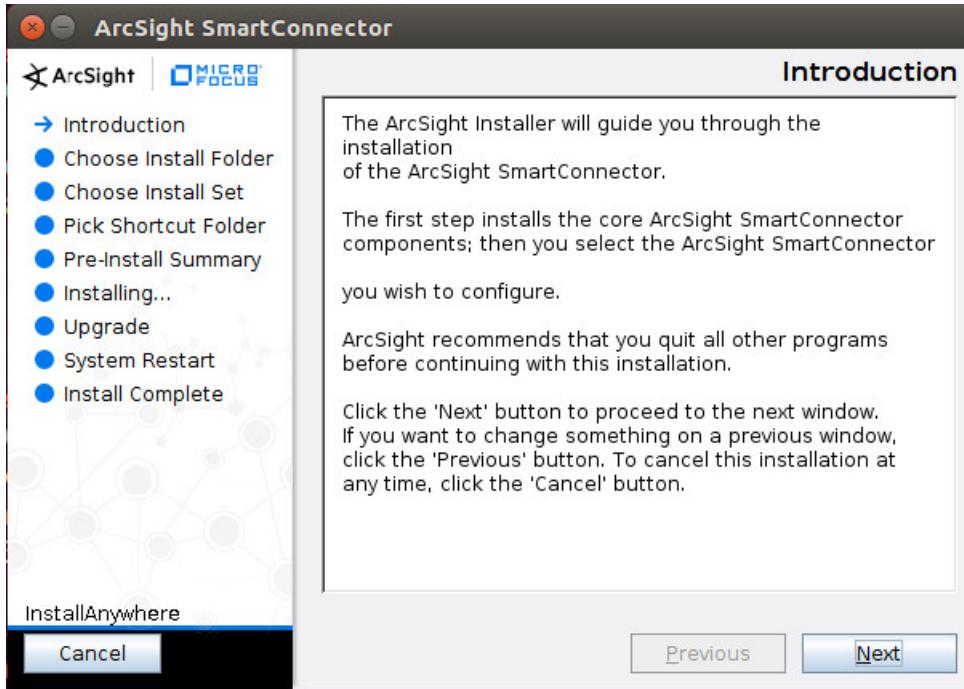
1501

1502 28. Click **Done**.1503 **2.11.3 Install Individual ArcSight Ubuntu Connectors**

1504 1. From the command line, run:

1505 > sudo ./ArcSight-7.9.0.8084.0-Connector-Linux64.bin

1506 2. Enter the password if prompted.



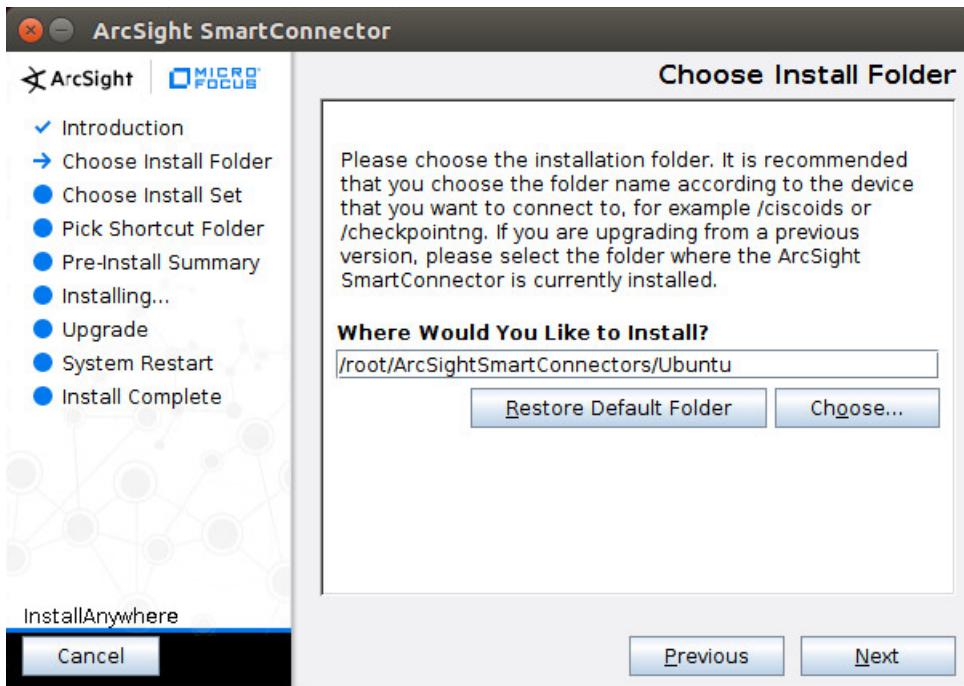
1507

1508

3. Click **Next**.

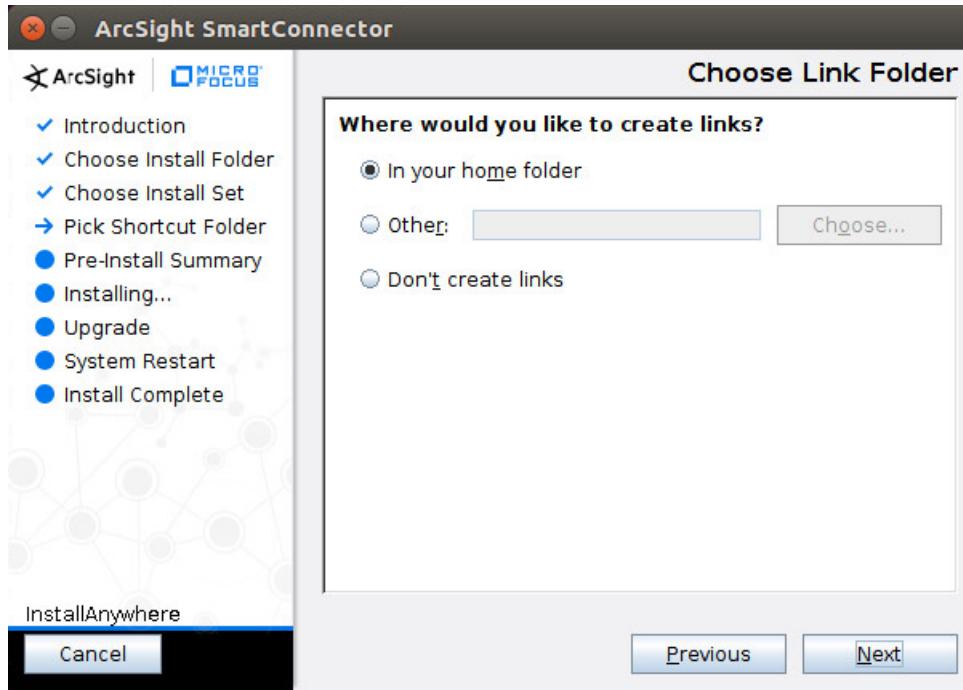
1509

4. Enter /root/ArcSightSmartConnectors/Ubuntu.



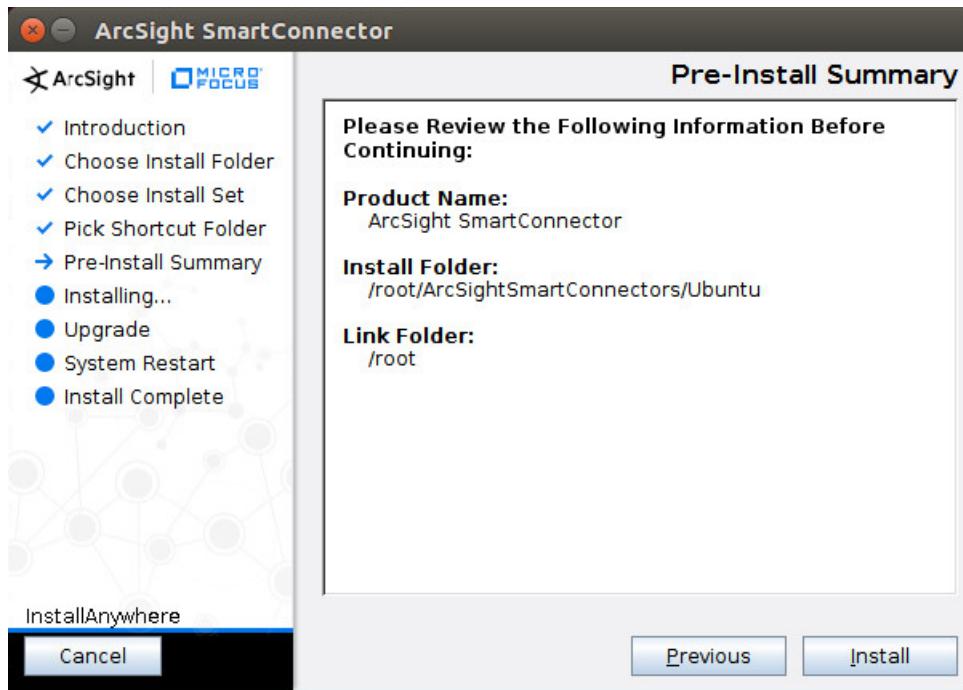
1510

1511 5. Click **Next**.



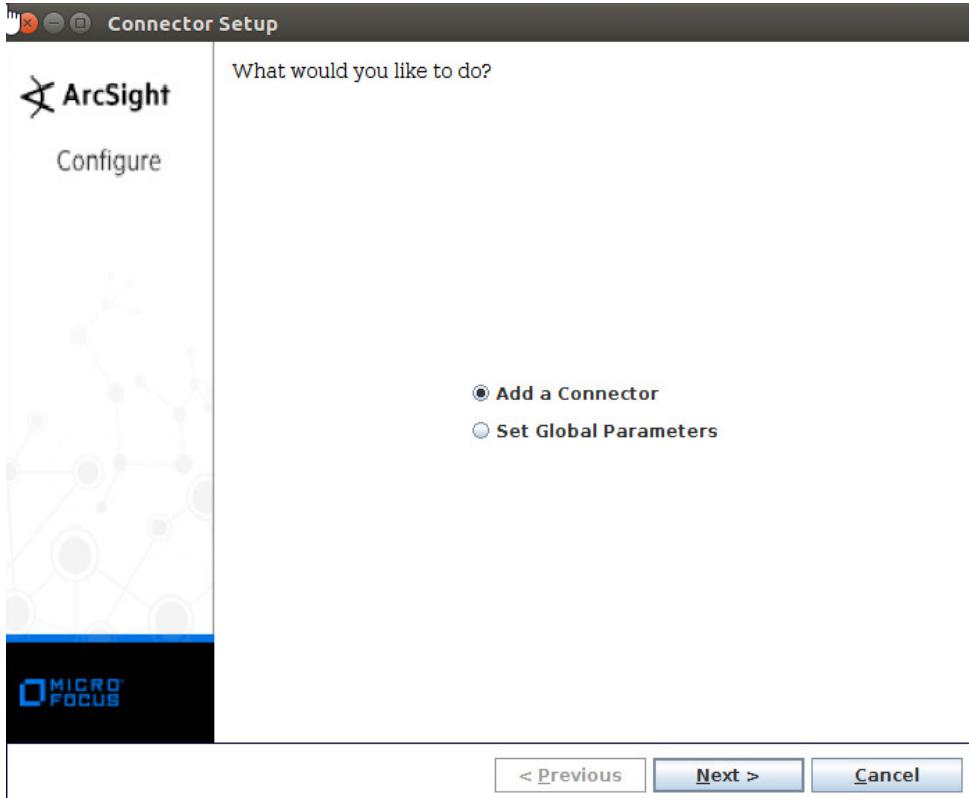
1512

1513 6. Click **Next**.

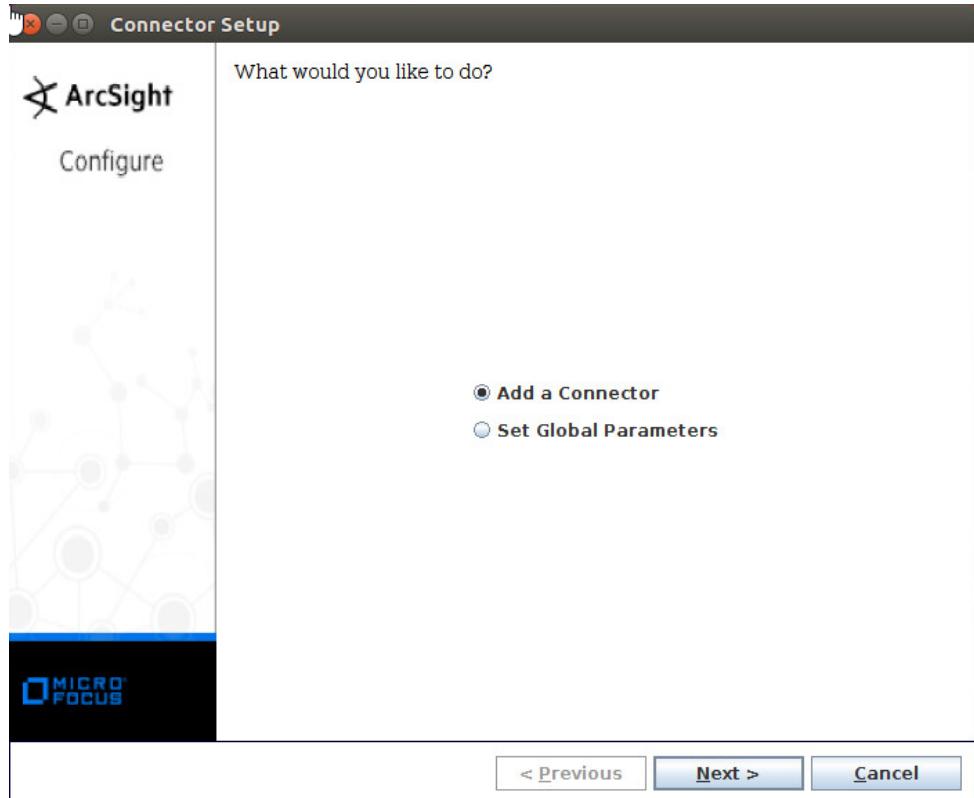


1514

- 1515 7. Click **Install**.
1516 8. Select **Add a Connector**.

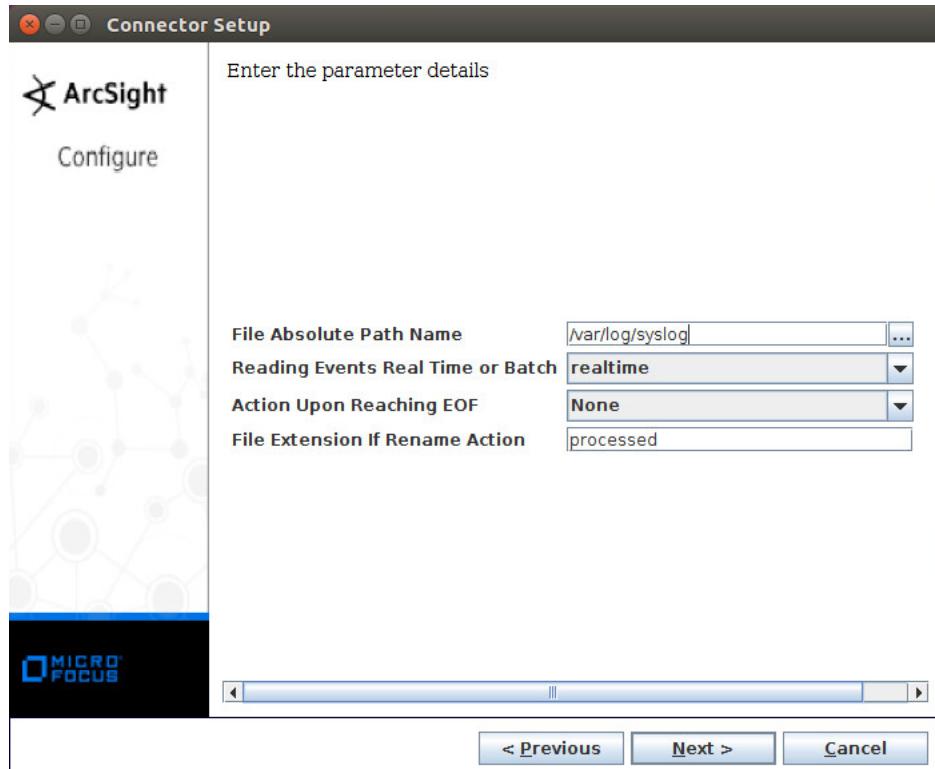


- 1517
1518 9. Click **Next**.
1519 10. Select **Syslog File**.



1520

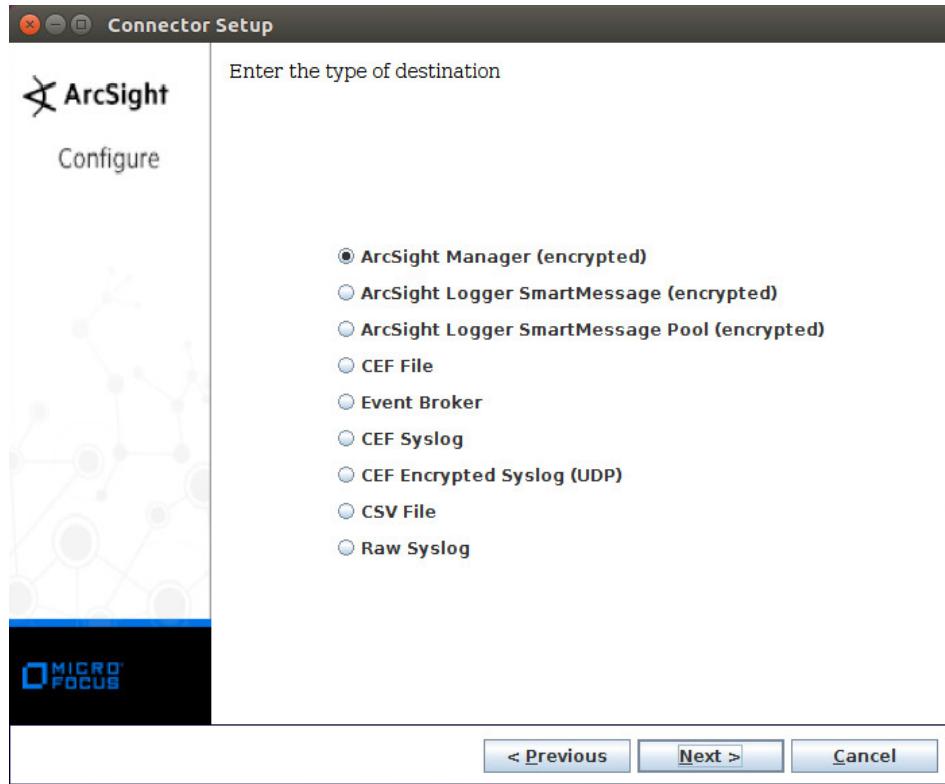
11. Click **Next**.
12. Enter /var/log/syslog for the File Absolute Path Name.



1523

1524 13. Click **Next**.

1525 14. Select **ArcSight Manager (encrypted)**.



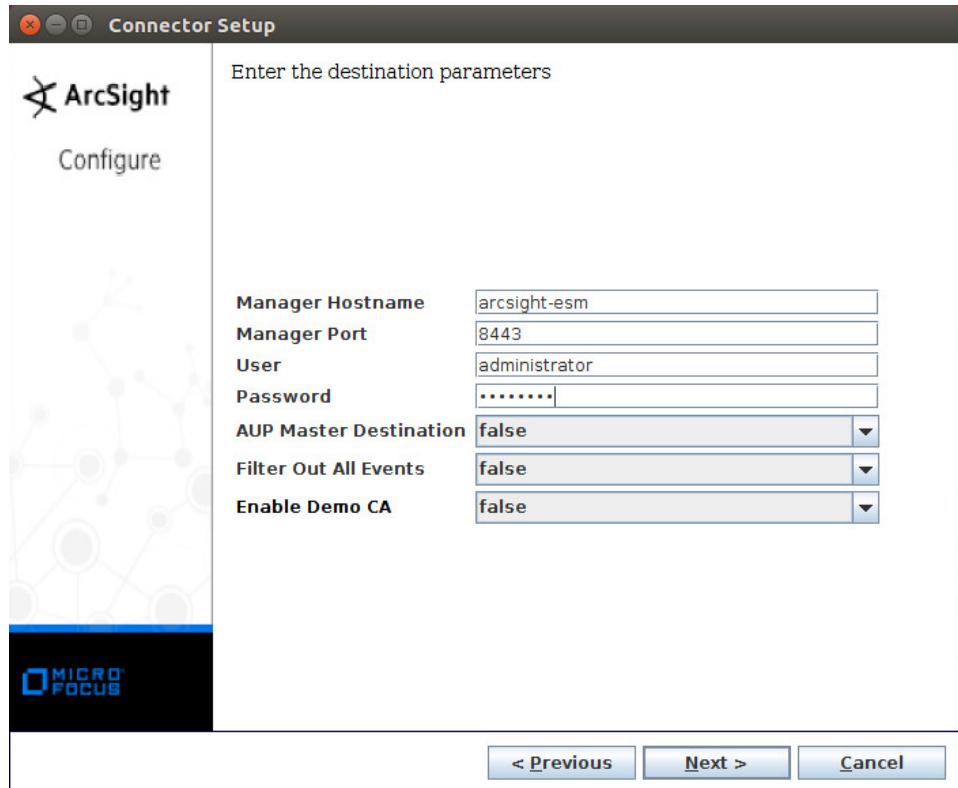
1526

1527

1528

15. Click **Next**.

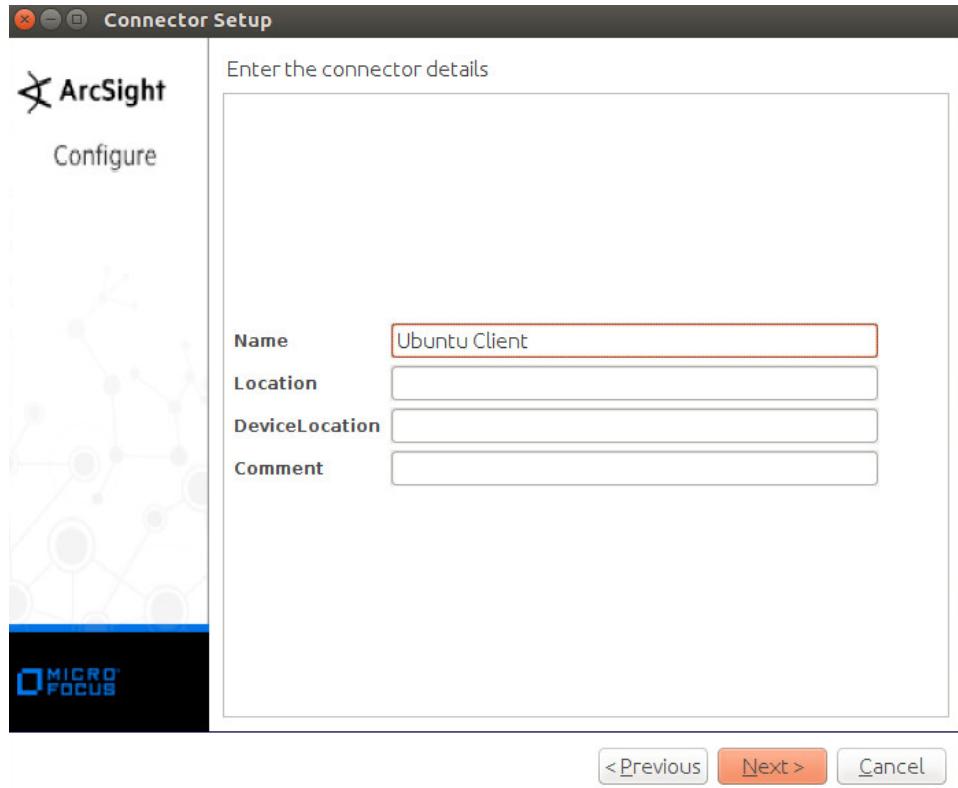
16. Enter the **hostname**, **port**, **username**, and **password** for ArcSight ESM.



1529

1530

1531 17. Click **Next**.18. Enter identifying details about the system (only **Name** is required).



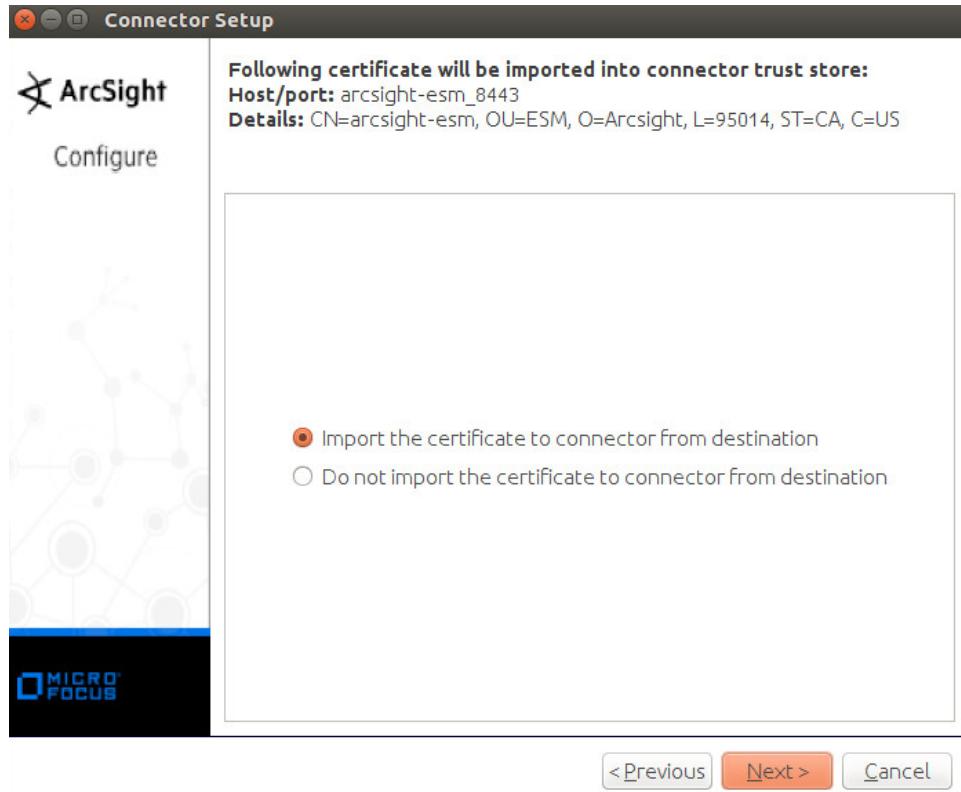
1532

1533

1534

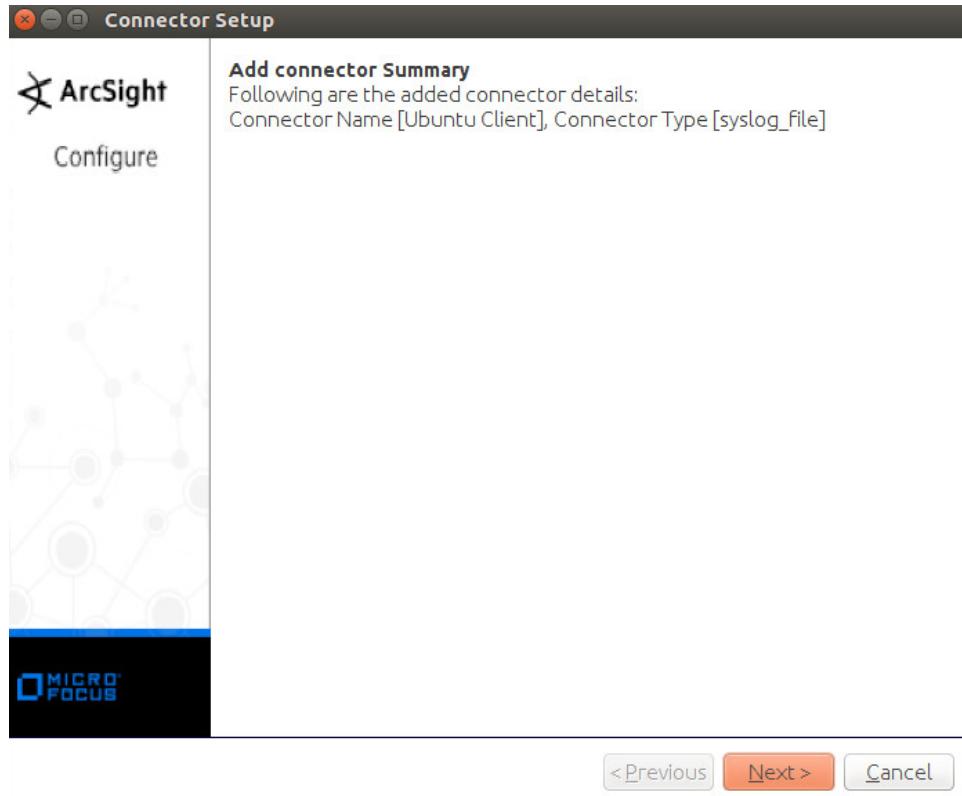
19. Click **Next**.

20. Select **Import the certificate to connector from destination**.



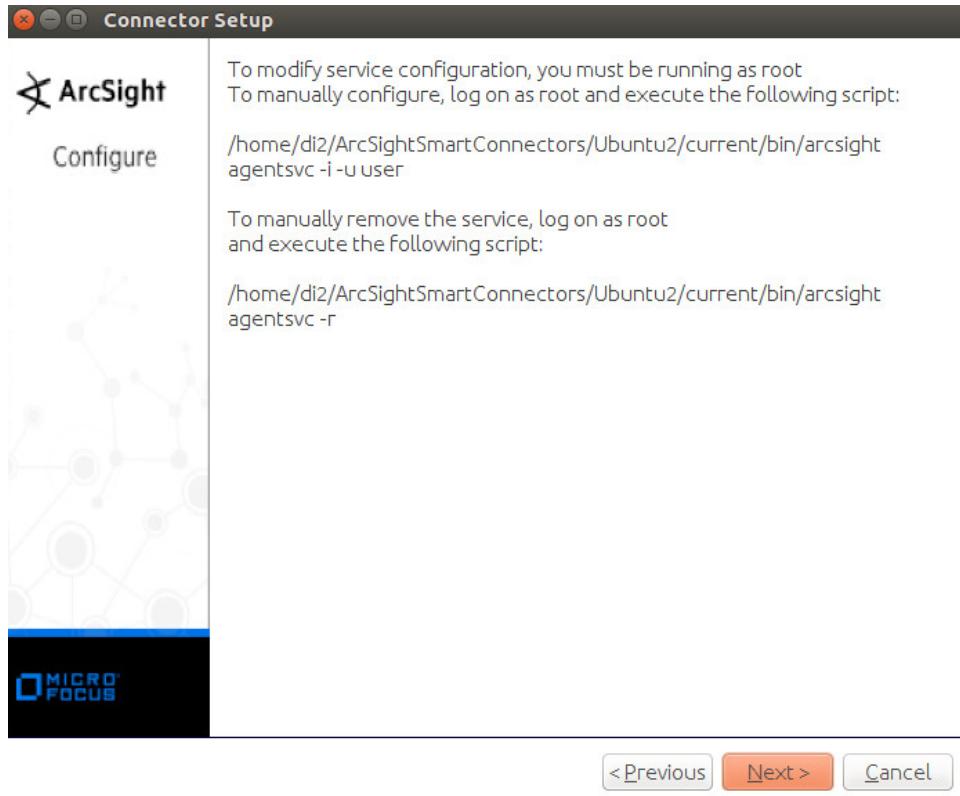
1535
1536

21. Click **Next**.



1537
1538

22. Click **Next**.

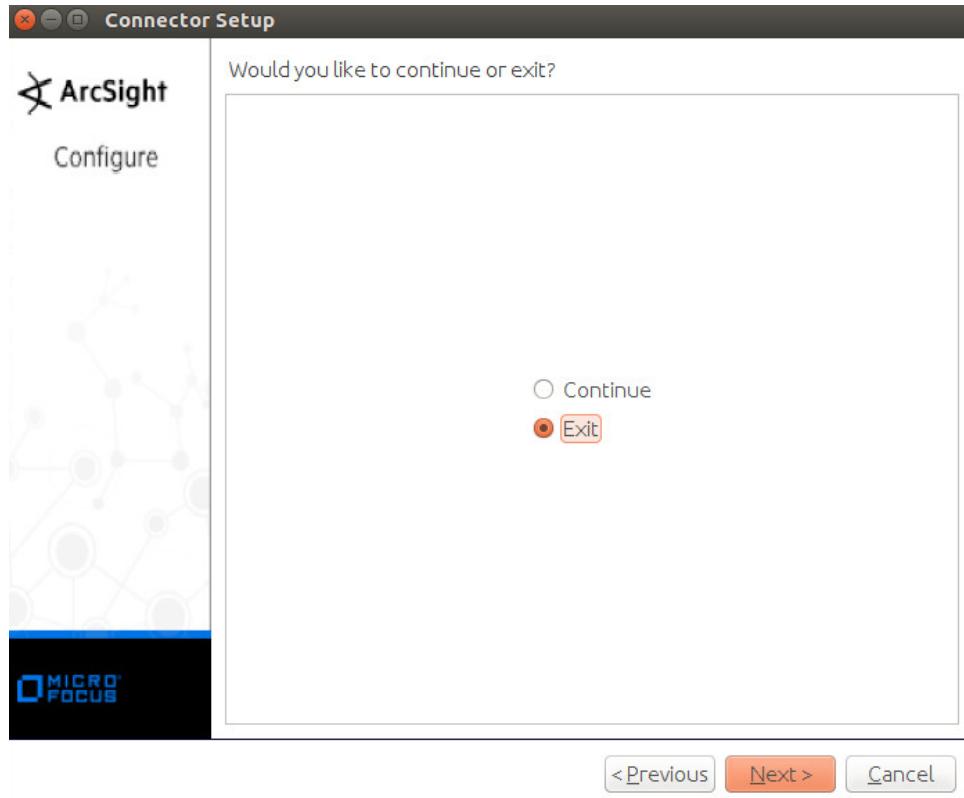


1539

1540

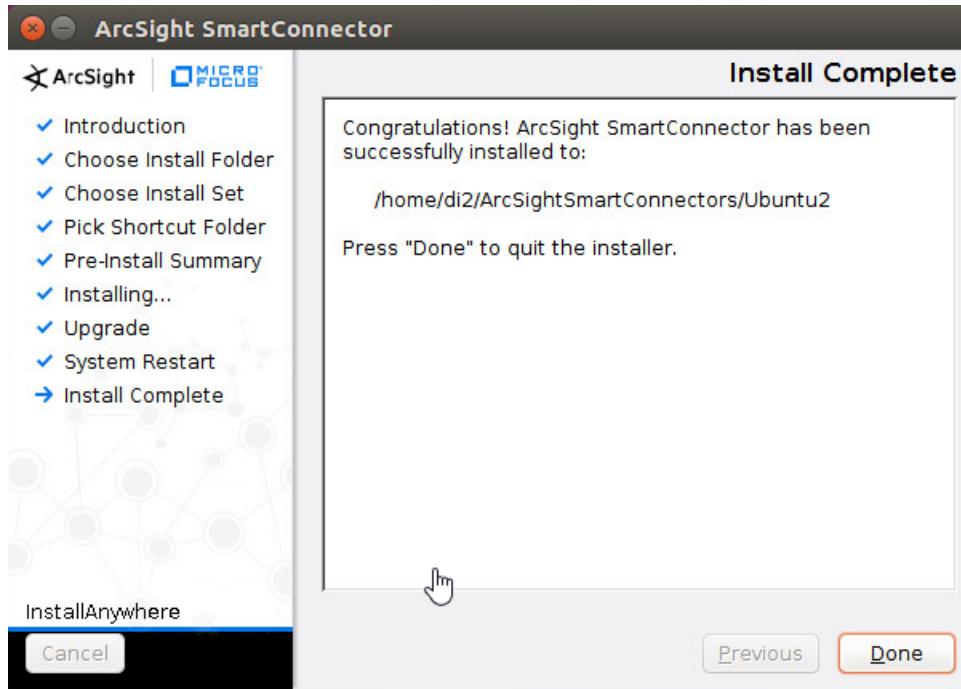
1541

23. Click **Next**.24. Select **Exit**.



1542
1543

25. Click **Next**.

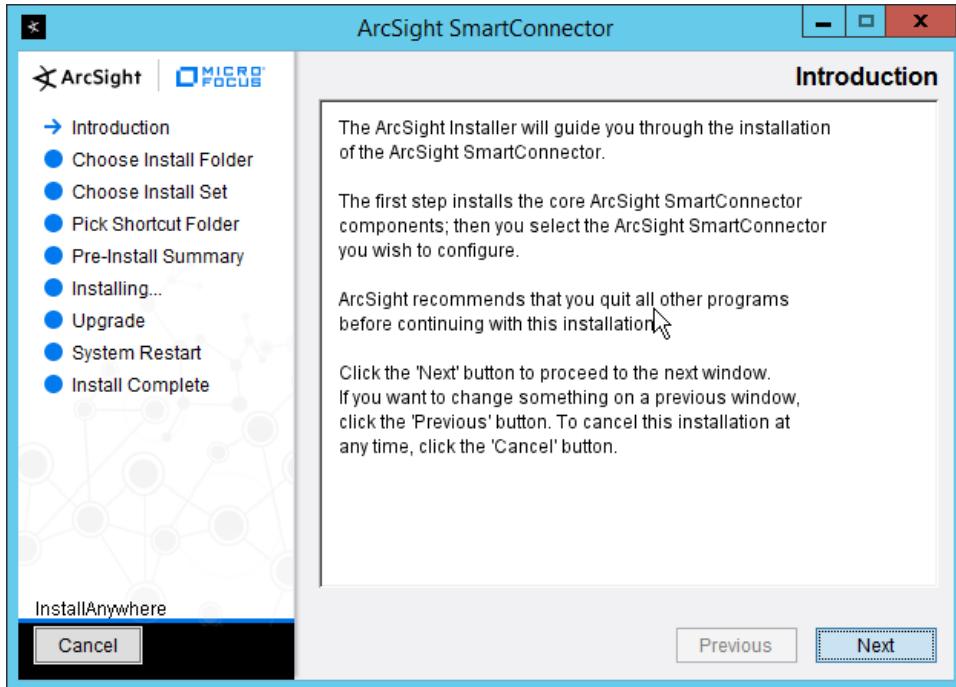


1544

1545 26. Click **Done**.

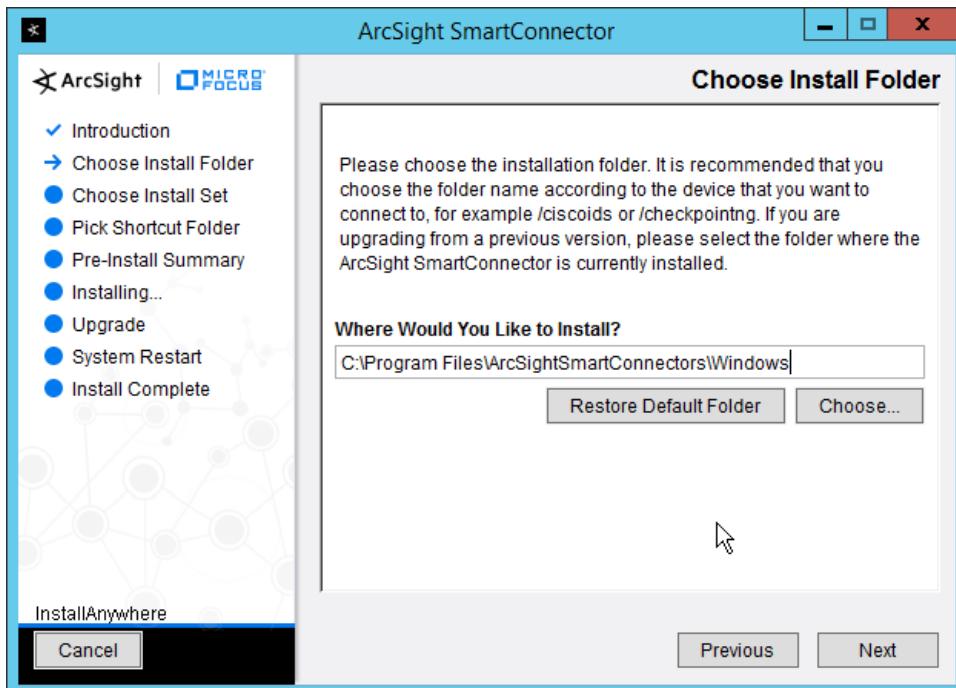
1546 2.11.4 Install a Connector Server for ESM on Windows 2012 R2

1547 1. Run **ArcSight-7.9.0.8084.0-Connector-Win64.exe**.



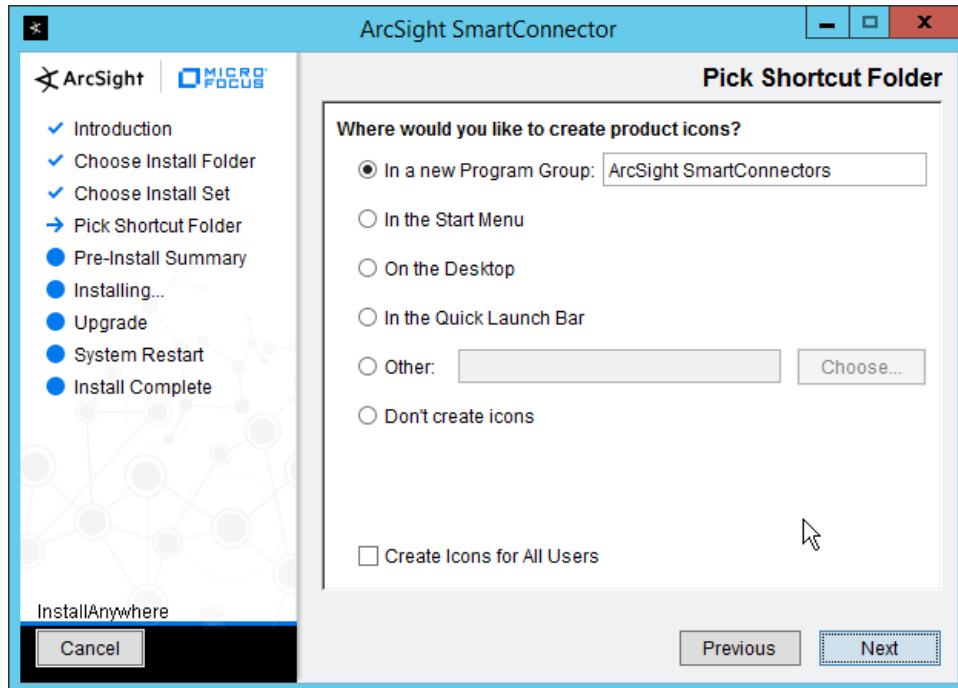
1548

- 1549 2. Click **Next**.
- 1550 3. Enter C:\Program Files\ArcSightSmartConnectors\Windows.



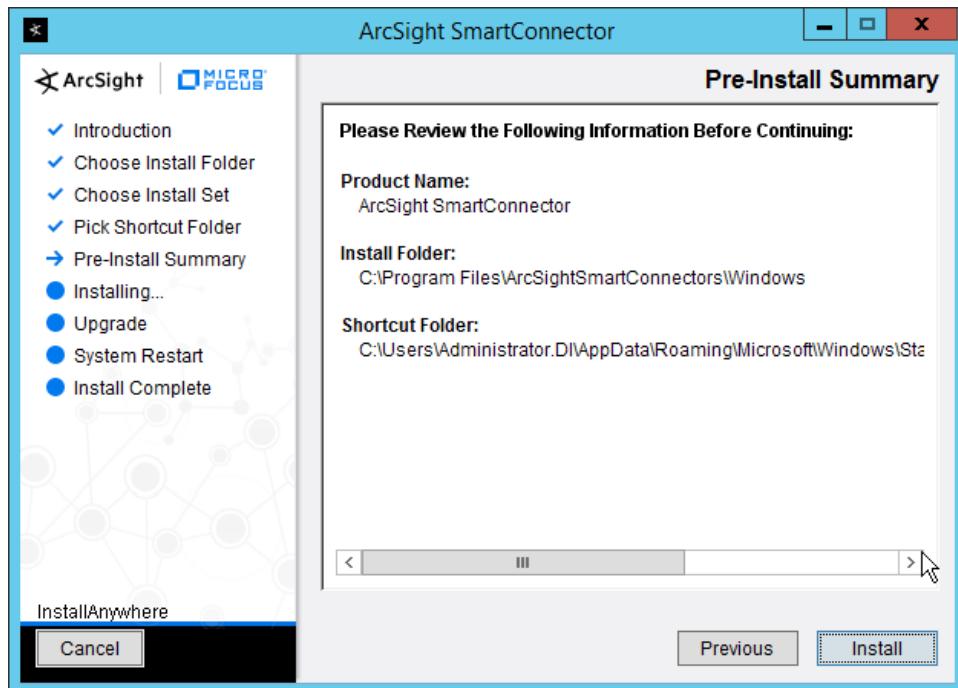
1551

1552 4. Click **Next**.



1553

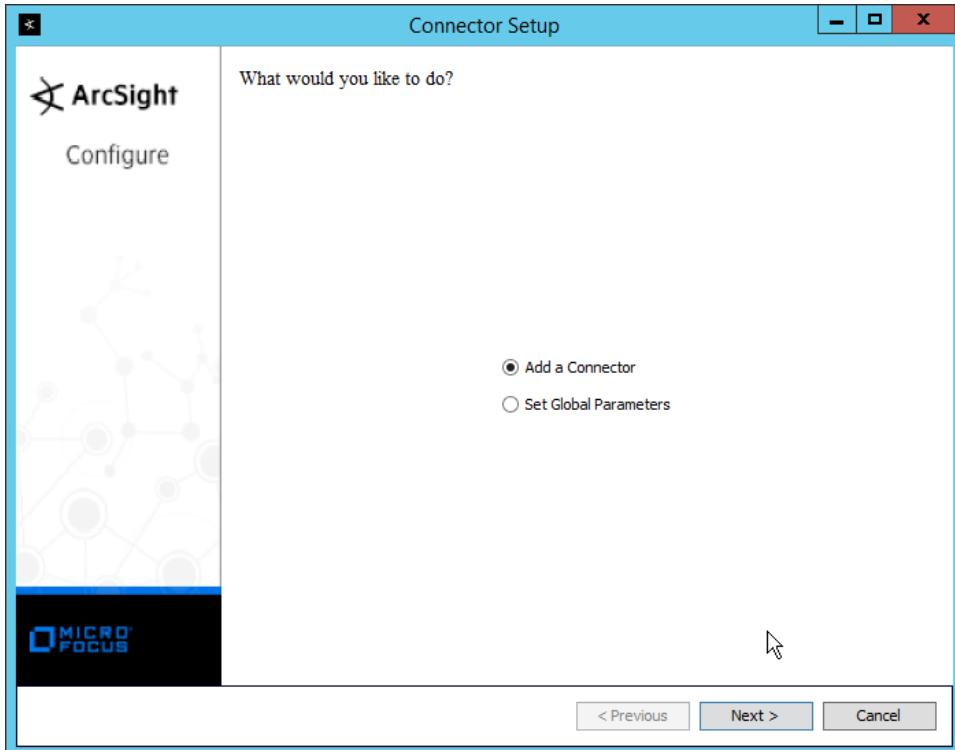
1554 5. Click **Next**.



1555

1556 6. Click **Install**.

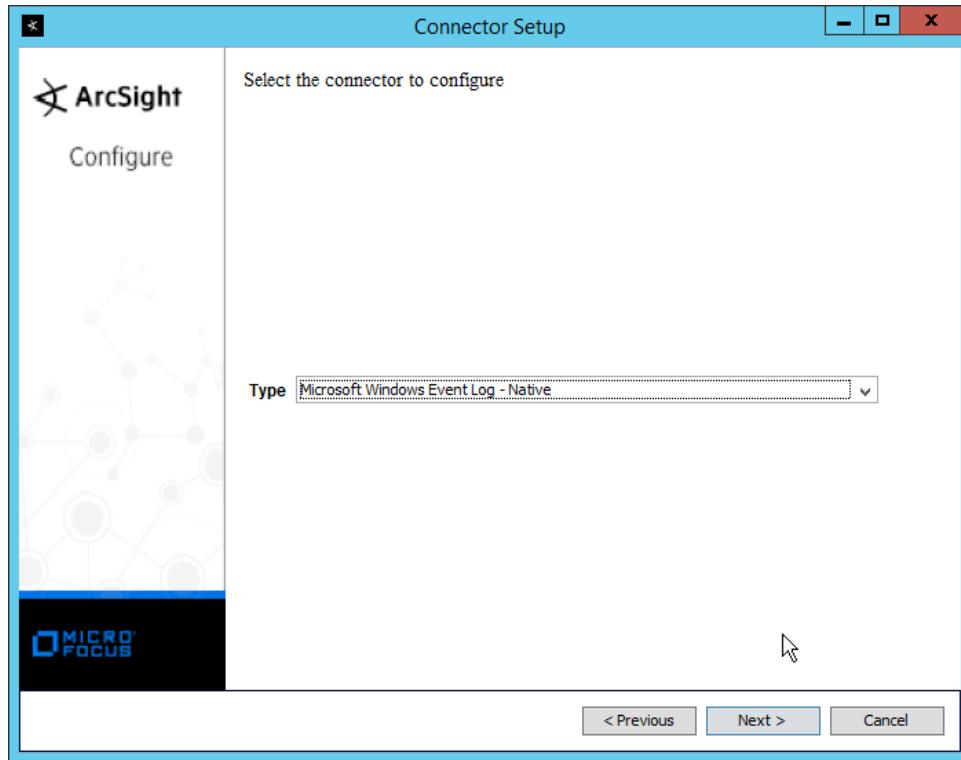
1557 7. Select **Add a Connector**.



1558

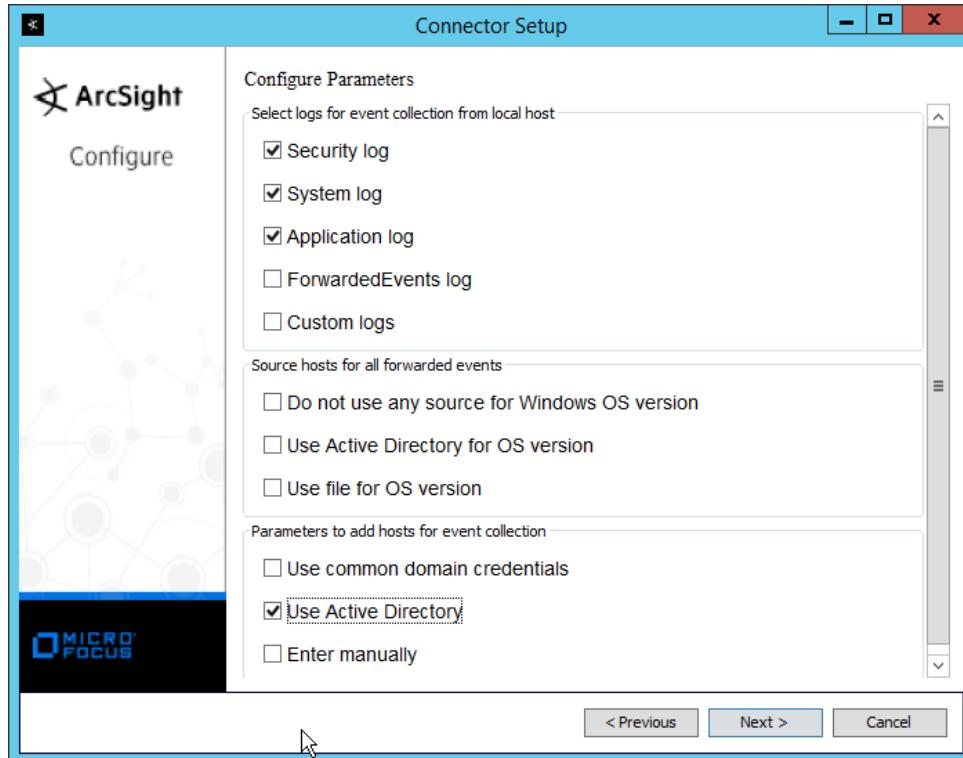
1559 8. Click **Next**.

1560 9. Select **Microsoft Windows Event Log—Native**.



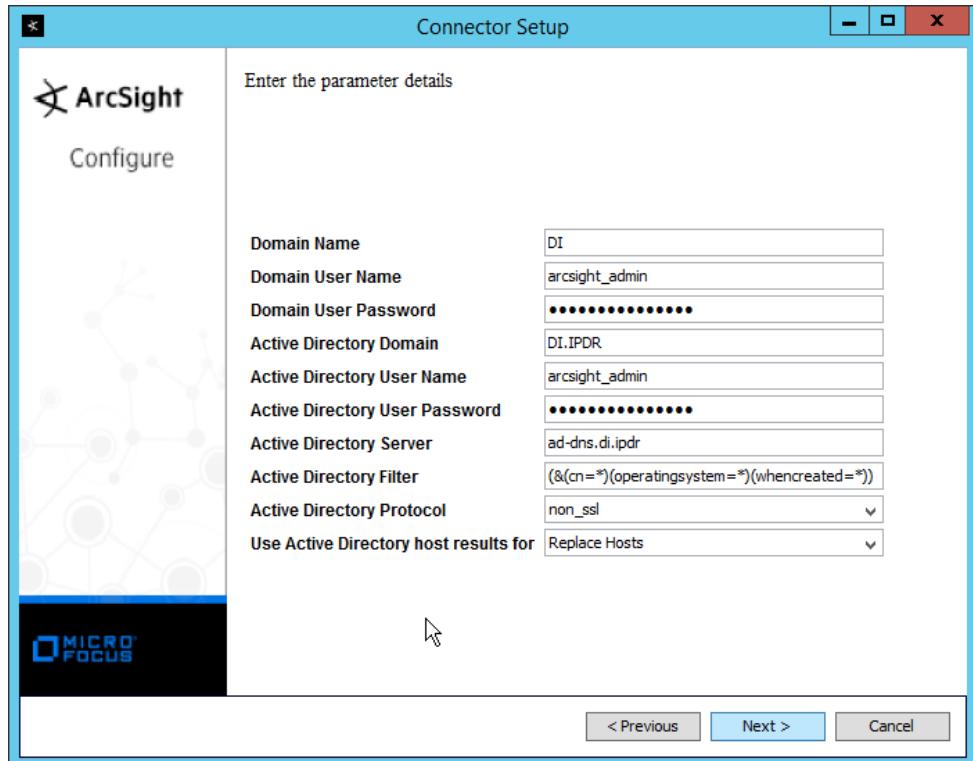
1561
1562
1563

10. Click **Next**.
11. Check the box next to **Use Active Directory**.



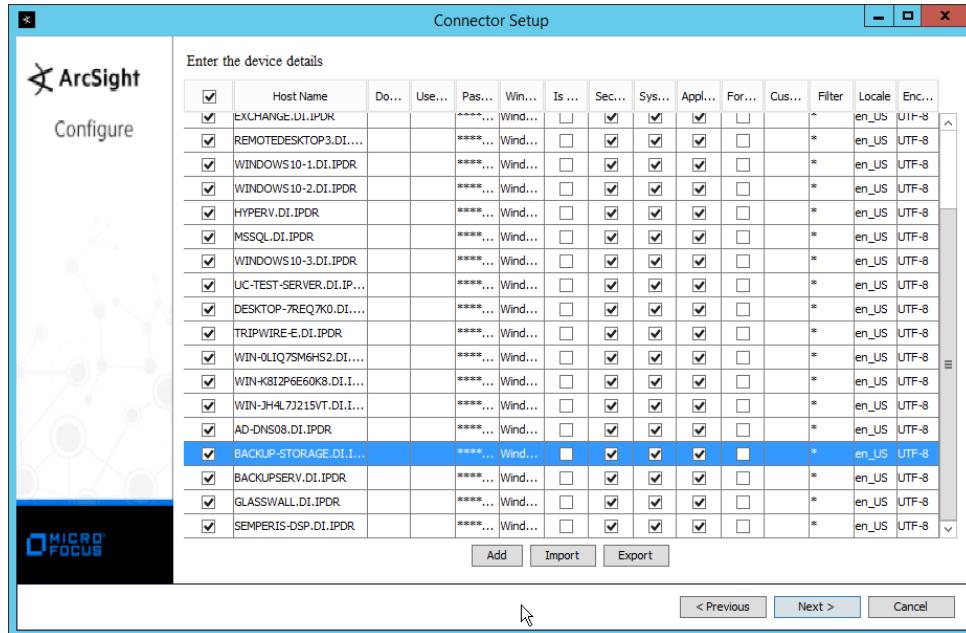
1564

- 1565 12. Click **Next**.
- 1566 13. Enter information about your Active Directory server. (It is recommended to create a new
- 1567 administrator account for ArcSight to use.)
- 1568 14. Set **Use Active Directory host results for** to **Replace Hosts**.

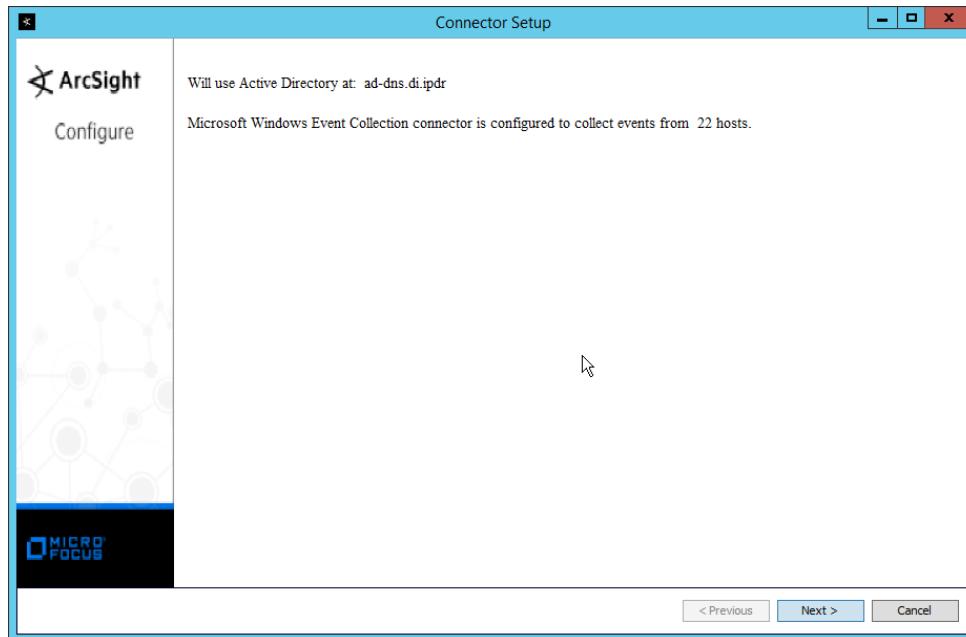


1569

- 1570 15. Click **Next**.
- 1571 16. Check the boxes under any event types that should be forwarded to this connector, for each
1572 individual host, e.g., **Security, System, Application**.

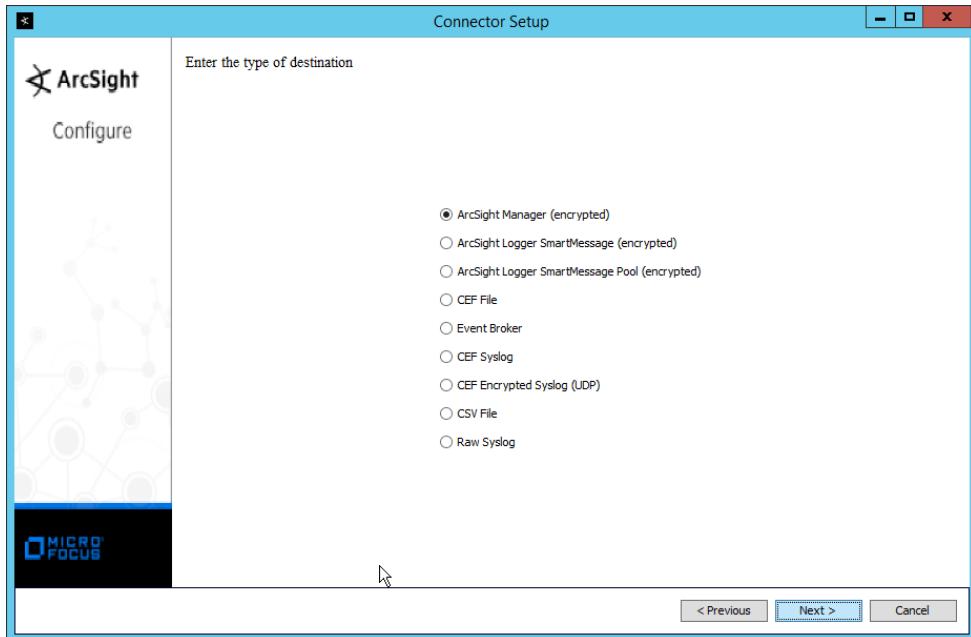
1573
1574

17. Click Next.

1575
1576
1577

18. Click Next.

19. Select ArcSight Manager (encrypted).



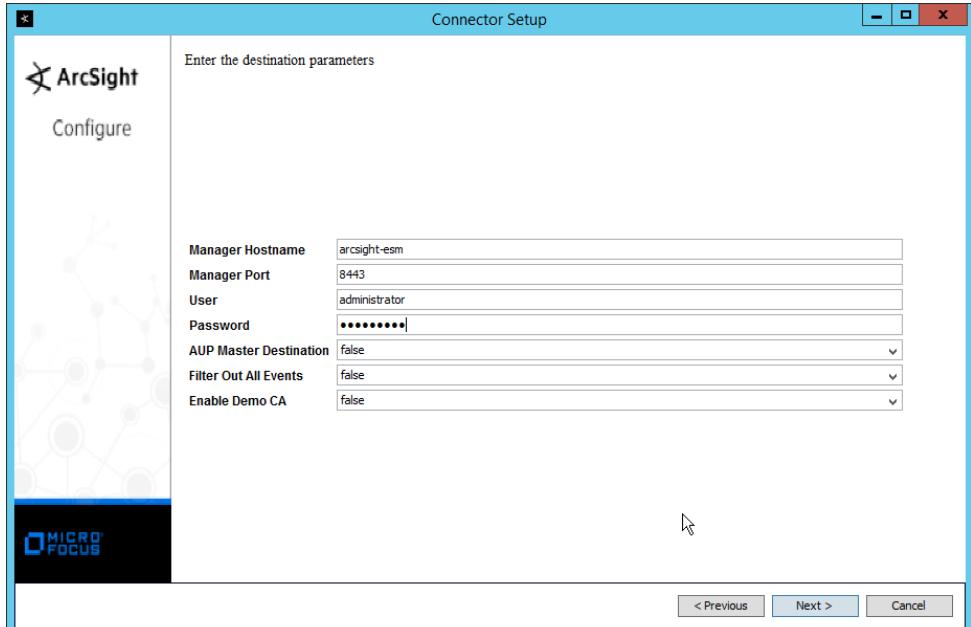
1578

1579

1580

20. Click **Next**.

21. Enter the **hostname**, **port**, **username**, and **password** for the ArcSight ESM server.



1581

1582

22. Click **Next**.

1583

23. Enter identifying details about the system (only **Name** is required).

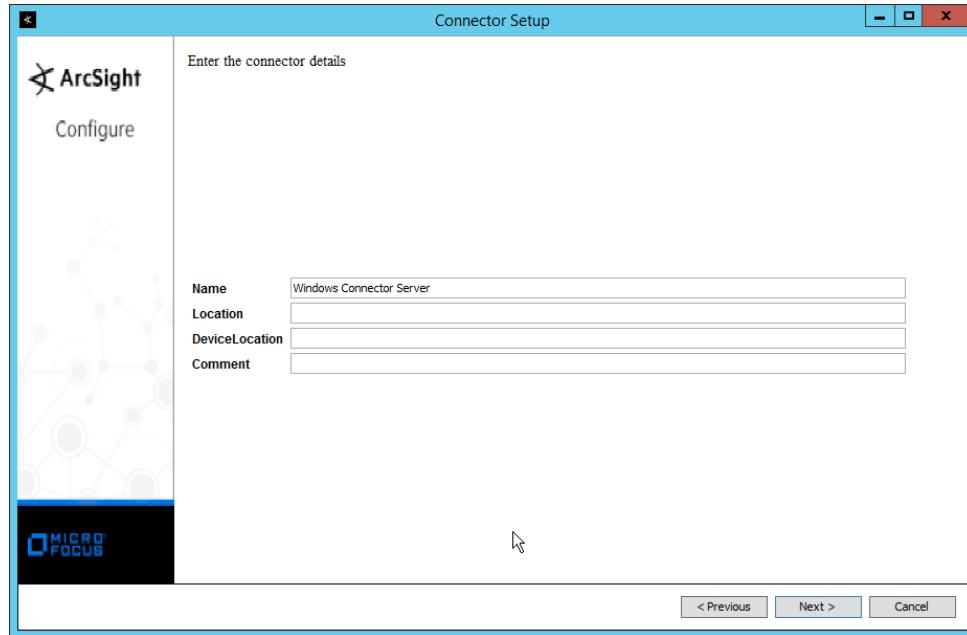
1584

1585

1586

24. Click **Next**.

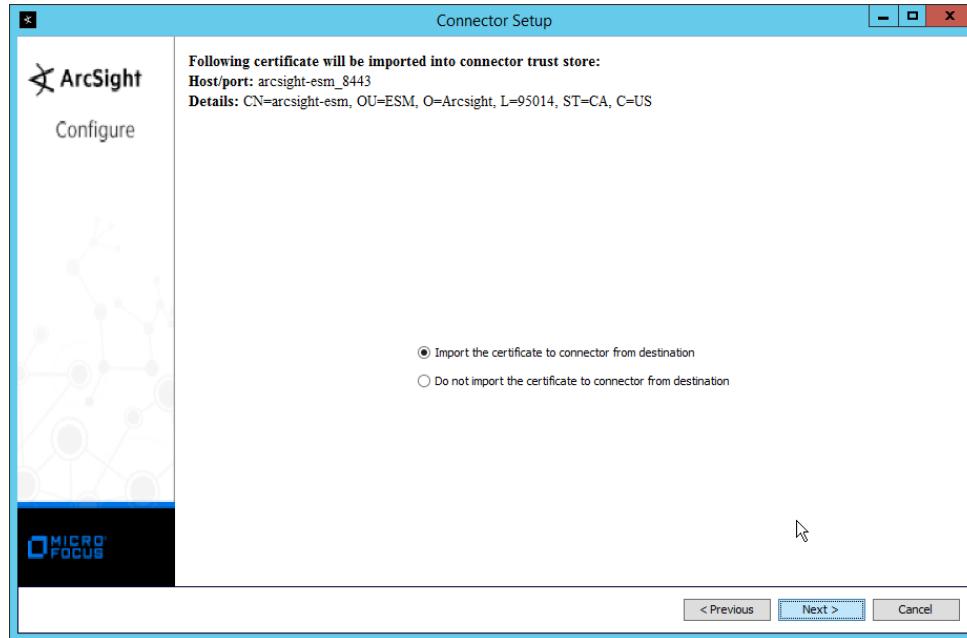
25. Select **Import the certificate to connector from destination**.

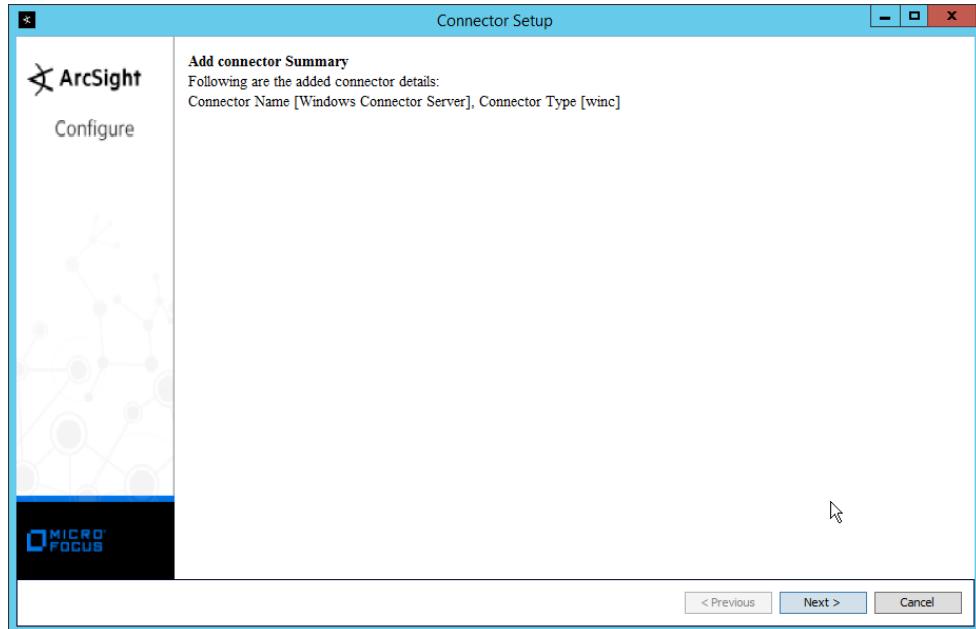


1587

1588

26. Click **Next**.





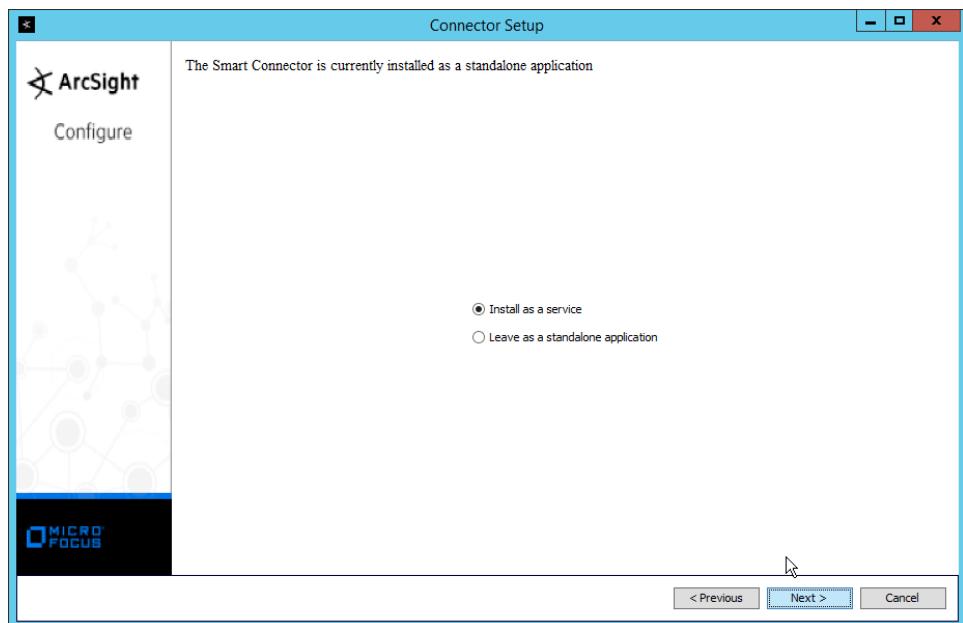
1589

1590

1591

27. Click **Next**.

28. Select **Install as a service**.



1592

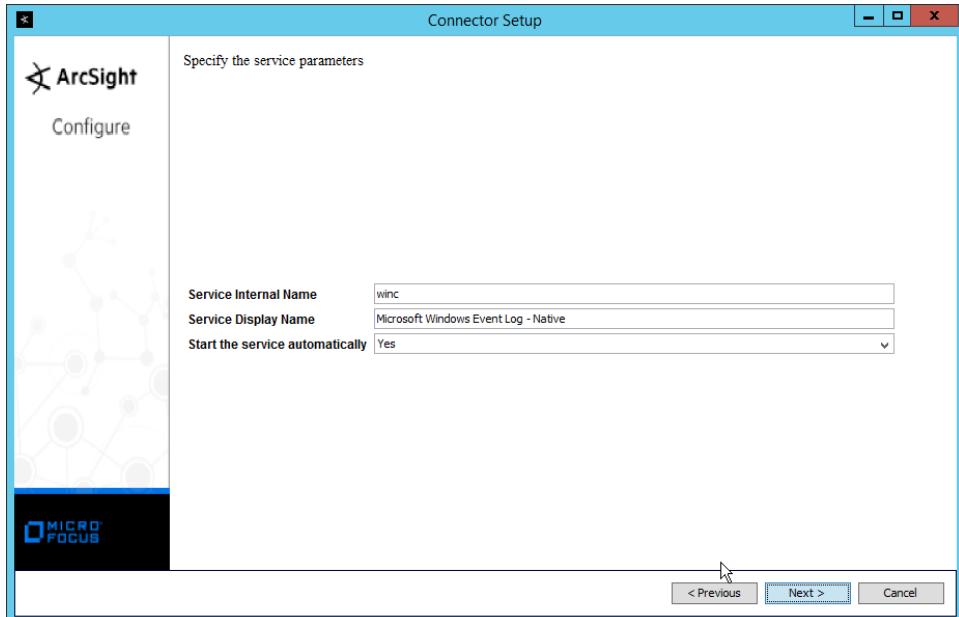
1593

29. Click **Next**.

1594

1595

30. Click **Next**.



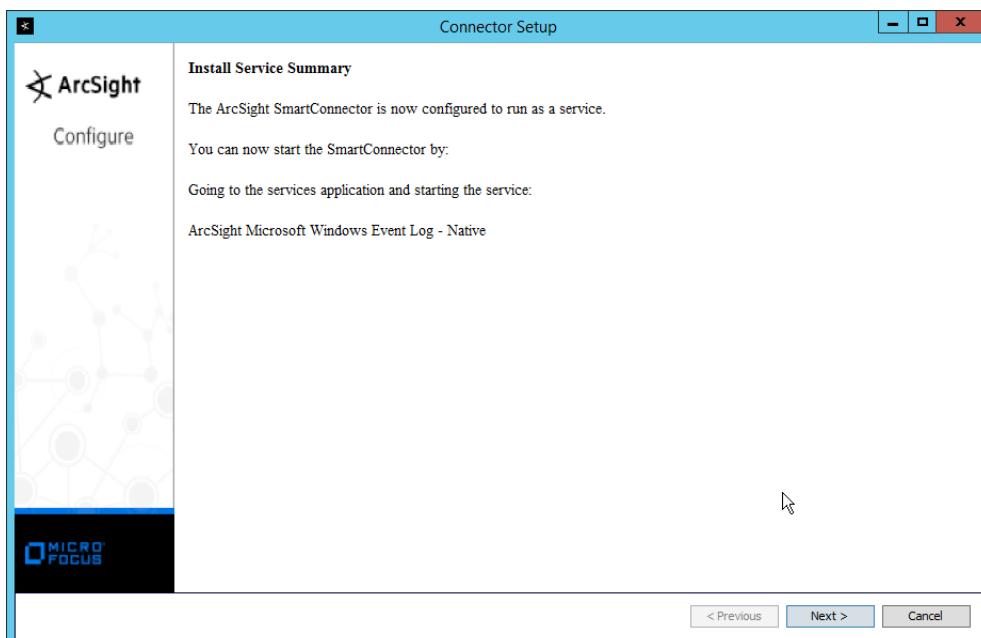
1596

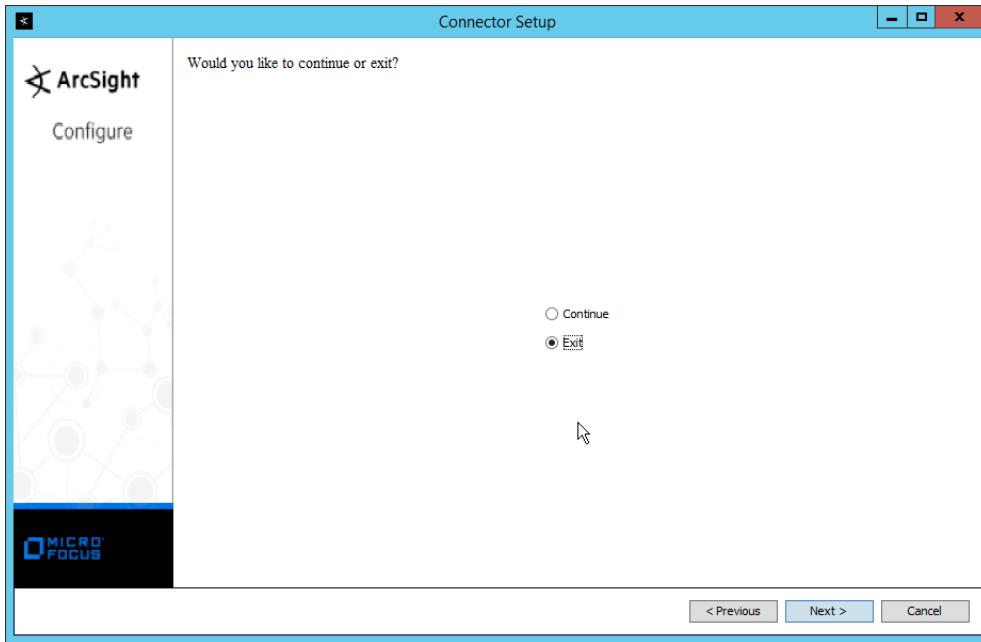
1597

31. Click **Next**.

1598

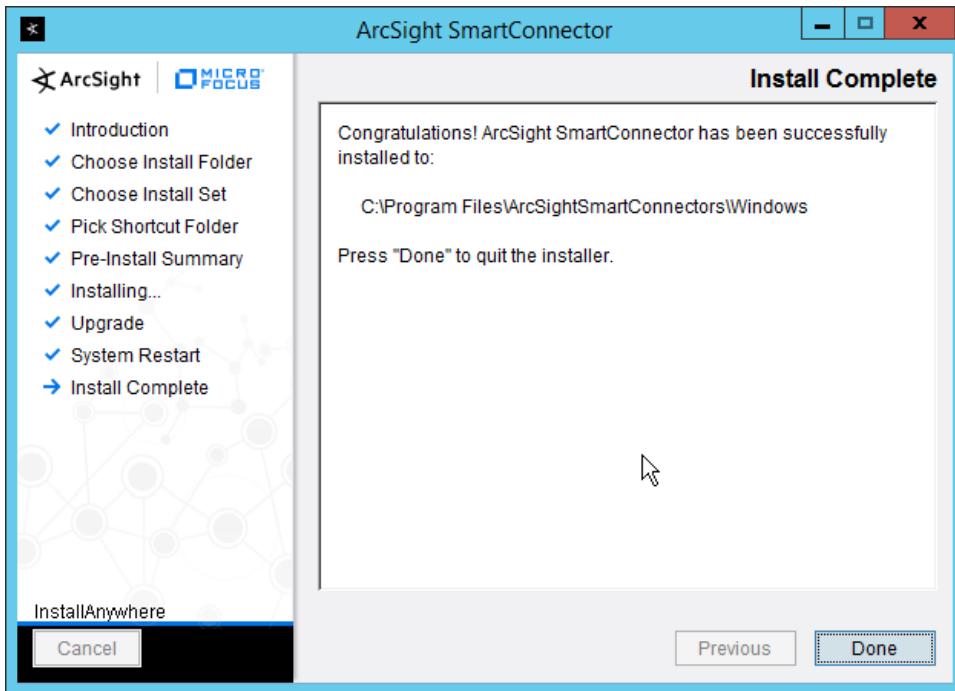
32. Select **Exit**.





1599
1600

33. Click **Next**.



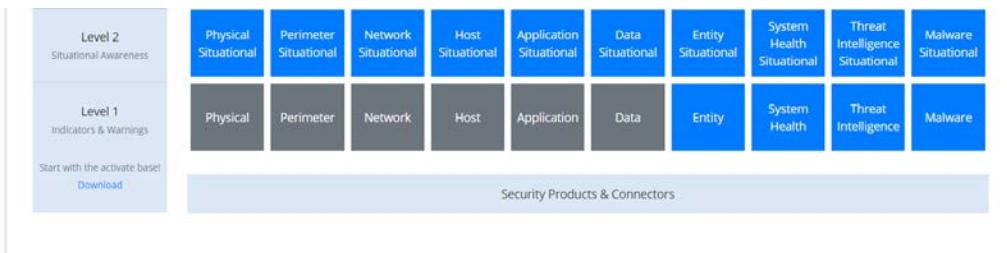
1601
1602
1603
1604

34. Click **Done**.

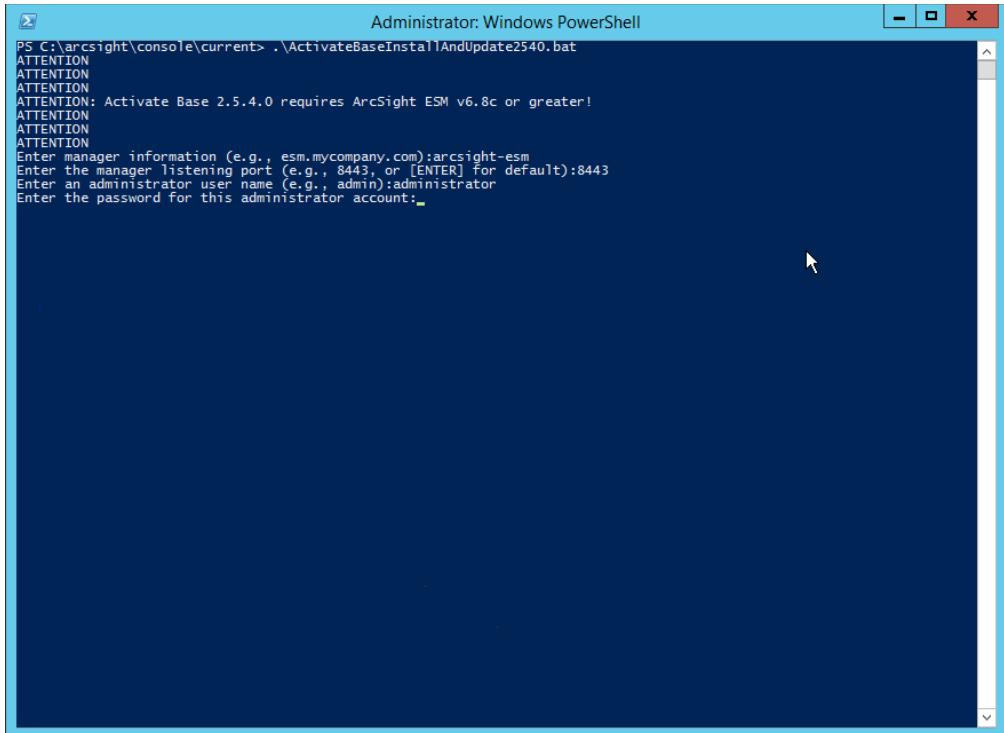
35. Note: Ensure that all machines selected do not block traffic from this device through their firewalls.

1605 **2.11.5 Install Preconfigured Filters for ArcSight**1606 ***2.11.5.1 Install/Activate Base***

- 1607 1. Go to the ArcSight Content Brain web application (<https://arcsightcontentbrain.com/app/>) and
1608 log in. This page allows you to keep track of packages to be installed—what packages should be
1609 installed depends on the needs of the organization, but the “Activate Base” is required for all
1610 products.



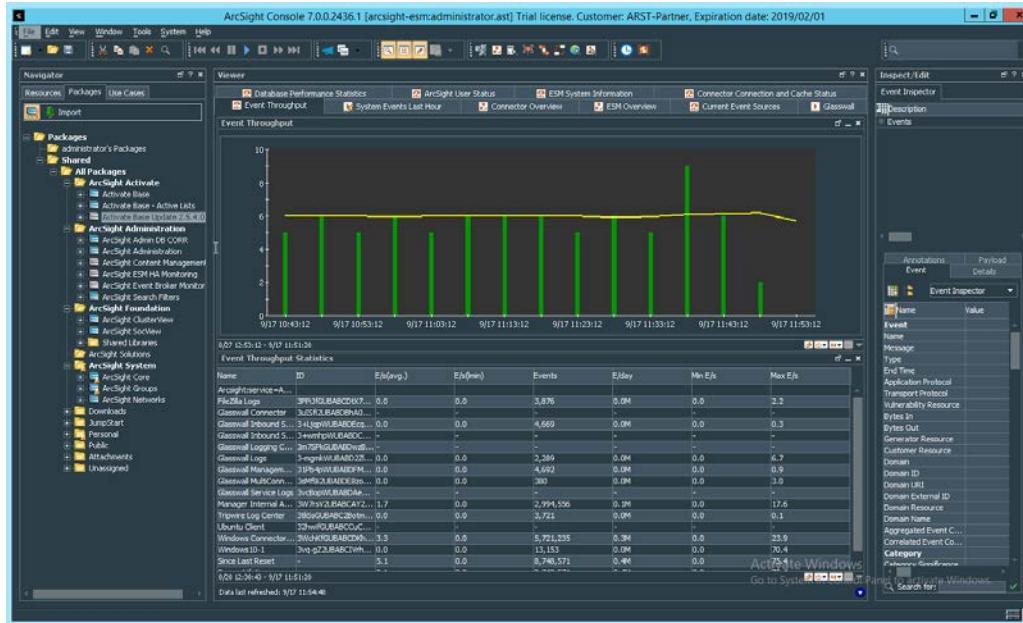
- 1611 2. Click the **Download** link for the Activate Base. (Note: This package should be installed on the
1612 ArcSight Console, not on the ESM.)
1613 3. Copy the contents of the zip file to ARCSIGHT_HOME. The default for this is C:\arcsight\Console\Con-
1614 sole\current, assuming a Windows Server.
1615 4. In PowerShell, navigate to the ARCSIGHT_HOME directory (C:\arcsight\Console\current) and
1616 run:
1617 > .\ActivateBaseInstallAndUpdate2540.bat



The screenshot shows a Windows PowerShell window titled "Administrator: Windows PowerShell". The command entered is ".\ActivateBaseInstallAndUpdate2540.bat". The output from the script includes several "ATTENTION" messages, a warning about requiring ArcSight ESM v6.8c or greater, and a prompt for connection information: "Enter manager information (e.g. esm.mycompany.com):arcSight-esm", "Enter the manager listening port (e.g., 8443, or [ENTER] for default):8443", "Enter an administrator user name (e.g., admin):administrator", and "Enter the password for this administrator account:_____". The password field is redacted.

1619

- 1620 5. Enter the **hostname** of the ArcSight machine, the **port** (default: 8443), and the **username** and
1621 **password** used to connect to the **ESM**.
1622 6. Delete **Activate_Base_Updated_2.5.4.0.arb** from the ARCSIGHT_HOME directory.
1623 7. Log in to **ArcSight Console**.



1624

- 1625 8. Under **Packages > Shared > All Packages > ArcSight Activate**, right-click **Activate Base Update**
1626 **2.5.4.0**, and select **Delete Package**.

1627 *2.11.5.2 Install Packages*

1628 Once the Activate Base is installed, packages can be installed to monitor for specific types of events. As
1629 an example, find below instructions for the Malware Monitoring package.

- 1630 1. Navigate to the **ArcSight Content Brain** web application.
1631 2. Select the **Level 1** box labeled **Malware**.

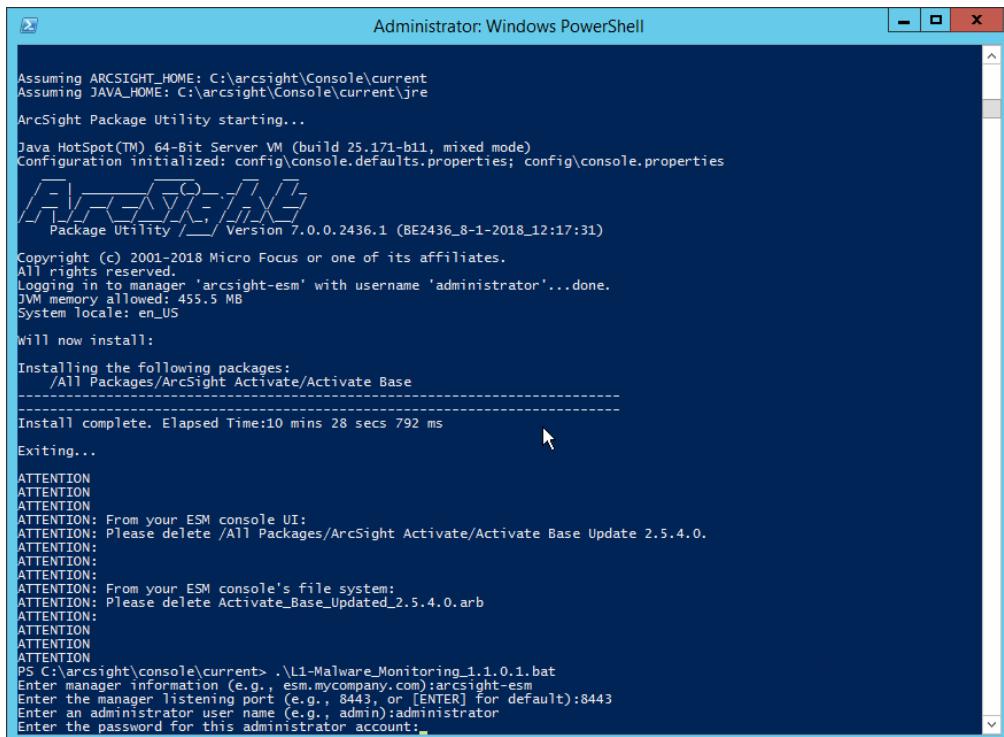


1632

- 1633 3. In the Track Execution section, under Associated Packages, you can see the list of packages used
1634 to address the challenge of Malware Monitoring. In this case, there is just one package, L1–

Track Execution				Devices	?
Business Challenges	Associated Packages	Status	Attack Vector Solutions	Expand All	Search
Malware Monitoring	L1 - Malware Monitoring - Indicators and Warnings		23 Solutions		

1635 Malware Monitoring—Indicators and Warnings. Click the link to be taken to a download page for
 1636 the package, and download it. (Note: This package should be installed on the ArcSight Console,
 1637 not on the ESM.)
 1638 4. Copy the contents of the zip file to ARCSIGHT_HOME. The default for this is C:\arcsight\Console\Con-
 1639 sole\current, assuming a Windows Server.
 1640 5. In PowerShell, navigate to the ARCSIGHT_HOME directory (C:\arcsight\Console\current) and
 1641 run:
 1642 > .\L1-Malware_Monitoring_1.1.0.1.bat



```

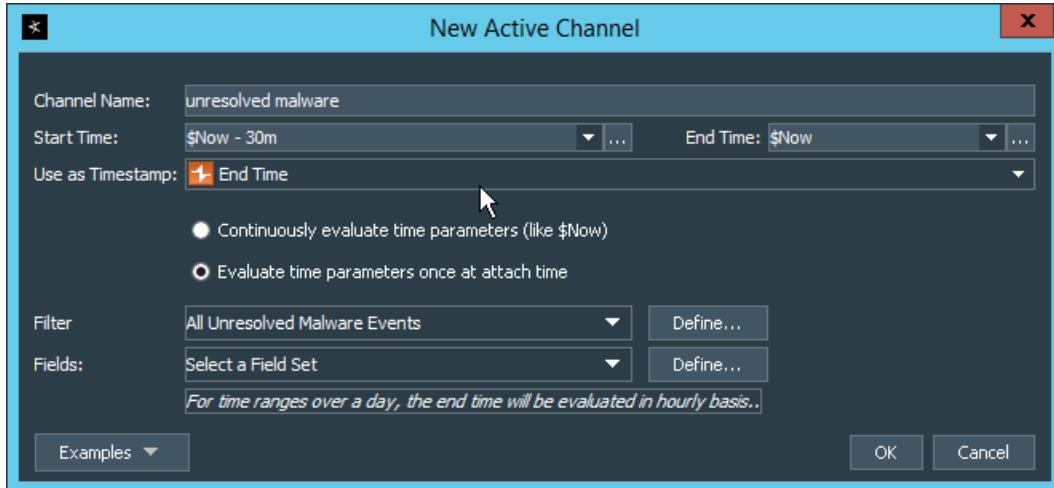
Administrator: Windows PowerShell
Assuming ARCSIGHT_HOME: C:\arcsight\Console\current
Assuming JAVA_HOME: C:\arcsight\Console\current\jre
ArcSight Package Utility starting...
Java HotSpot(TM) 64-Bit Server VM (build 25.171-b11, mixed mode)
Configuration initialized: config\console.defaults.properties; config\console.properties
[Path] / [File] [Utility] Version 7.0.0.2436.1 (BE2436_8-1-2018_12:17:31)
Copyright (c) 2001-2018 Micro Focus or one of its affiliates.
All rights reserved.
Logging in to manager 'arcsight-esm' with username 'administrator'...done.
JVM memory allowed: 455.5 MB
System locale: en_US
Will now install:
Installing the following packages:
  /All Packages/ArcSight Activate/Activate Base
-----
Install complete. Elapsed Time:10 mins 28 secs 792 ms
Exiting...
ATTENTION
ATTENTION
ATTENTION
ATTENTION: From your ESM console UI:
ATTENTION: Please delete /All Packages/ArcSight Activate/Activate Base Update 2.5.4.0.
ATTENTION:
ATTENTION:
ATTENTION:
ATTENTION: From your ESM console's file system:
ATTENTION: Please delete Activate_Base_Updated_2.5.4.0.arb
ATTENTION:
ATTENTION:
ATTENTION
ATTENTION
PS C:\arcsight\Console\current> .\L1-Malware_Monitoring_1.1.0.1.bat
Enter manager information (e.g., esm.mycompany.com):arcsight-esm
Enter the manager listening port (e.g., 8443, or [ENTER] for default):8443
Enter an administrator user name (e.g., admin):administrator
Enter the password for this administrator account:_

```

1643
 1644 6. Enter the **hostname** of the ArcSight machine, the **port** (default: 8443), and the **username** and
 1645 **password** used to connect to the **ESM**.

1646 2.11.6 Apply Filters to a Channel

- 1647 1. In the **ArcSight Console**, click **File > New > Active Channel**.
 1648 2. Enter a **name** for the channel.
 1649 3. Select a time frame.
 1650 4. For **Filter**, select one the filters that was imported from the packages you installed.



- 1651
- 1652 5. Click **OK**. All events that match the filter can be displayed in the newly created channel. Filters from imported packages can be found under **Filters > Shared > All Filters > ArcSight Activate > Solutions.**
- 1653
- 1654

1655 2.12 Tripwire Enterprise

1656 Notes:

1657 This installation requires MSSQL to be installed on a remote server and configured according to the
1658 instructions in the ***Tripwire Enterprise 8.6.2 Installation and Maintenance Guide***.

1659 2.12.1 Install Tripwire Enterprise

- 1660 1. Ensure that you have an up-to-date version of Oracle Java. You must install both the Java
1661 Runtime Environment (JRE) and the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE).
- 1662 2. Download and run the **JRE installer**.



1663

1664

3. Click **Install**.

1665

4. Download the JCE and extract the files.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
local_policy	12/20/2013 1:54 PM	JAR File	3 KB
README	12/20/2013 1:54 PM	Text Document	8 KB
US_export_policy	12/20/2013 1:54 PM	JAR File	3 KB

1666

1667

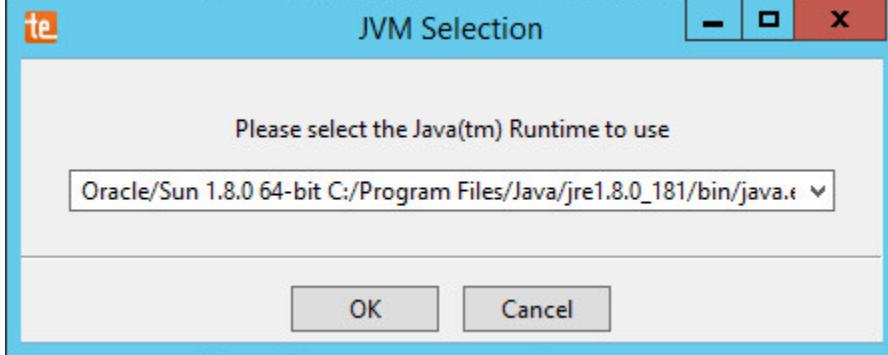
5. Copy the **local_policy.jar** and **US_export_policy.jar** files to /lib/security/Unlimited/ and /lib/security/Limited in the Java installation directory.

1668

6. Run **install-server-windows-amd64**.

1669

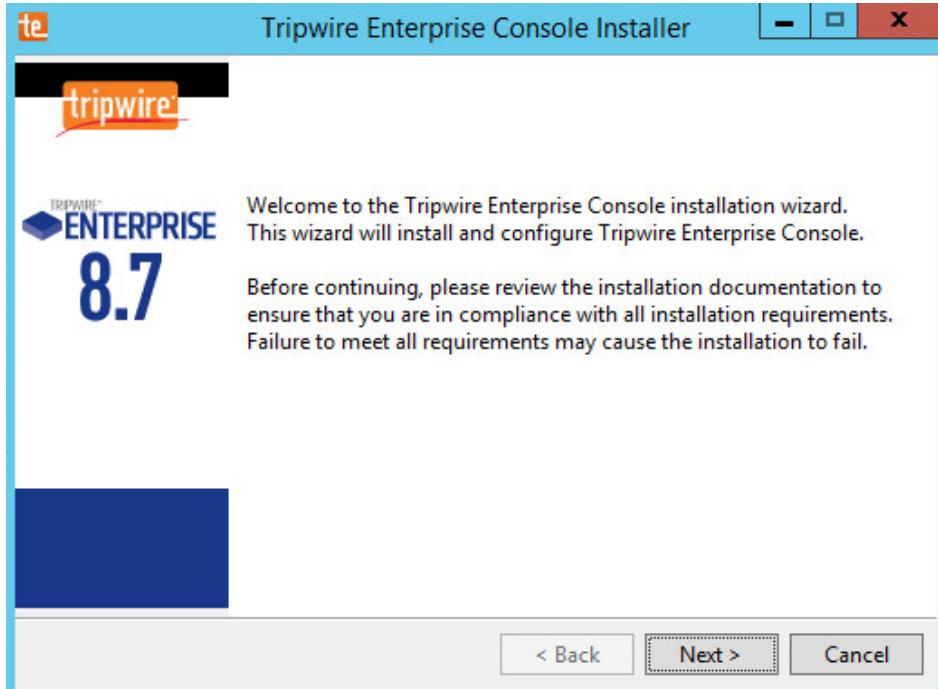
7. Select the Java runtime that was just installed.



1670

1671

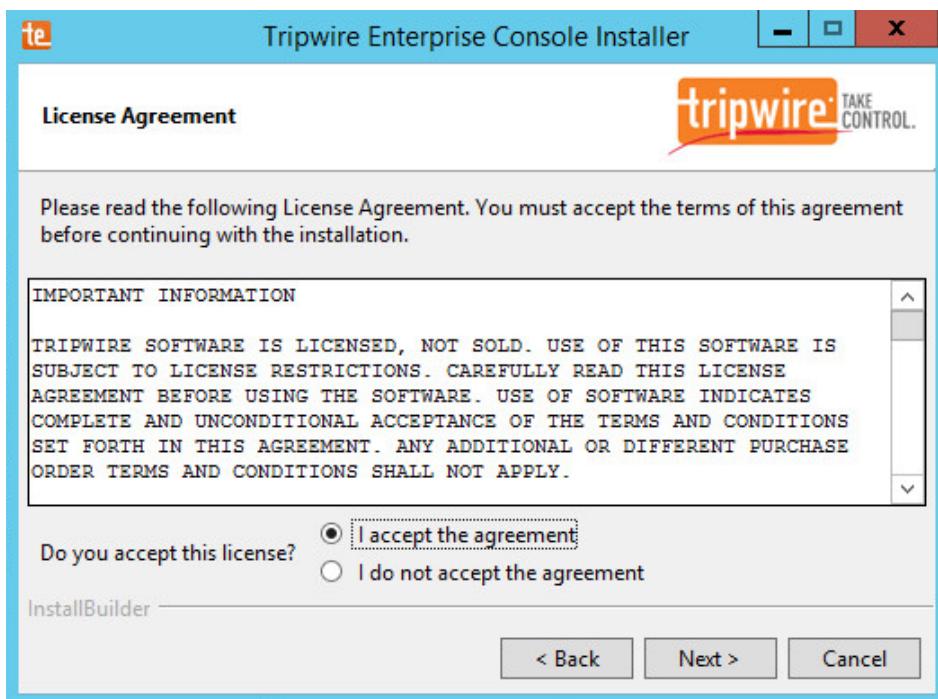
8. Click **OK**.



1673

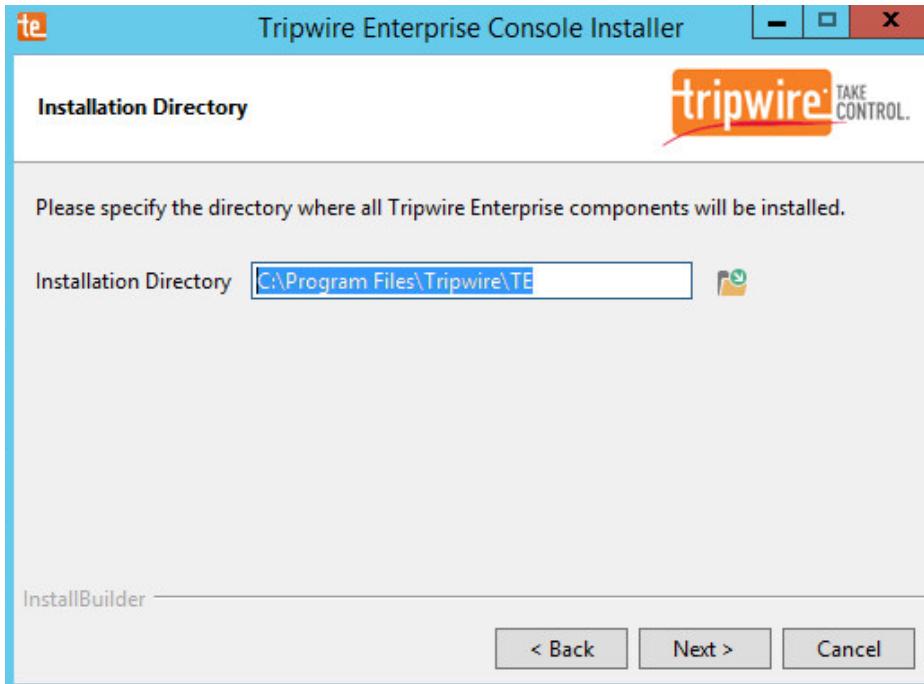
1674 9. Click Next.

1675 10. Select I accept the agreement.



1676

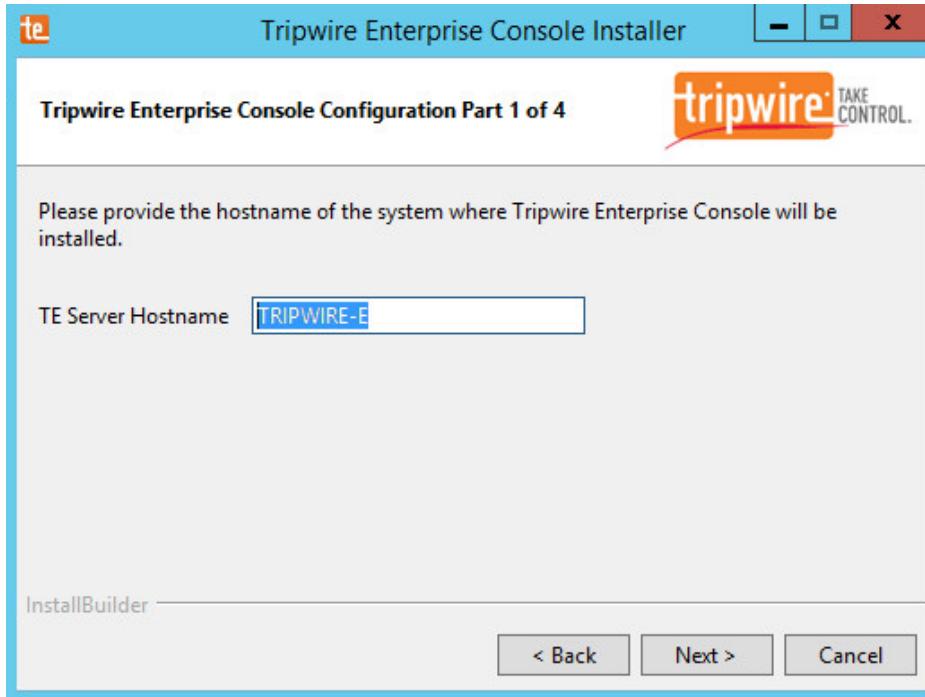
1677 11. Click **Next**.



1678

1679 12. Click **Next**.

1680 13. The installer should automatically detect the hostname of the system on which Tripwire
1681 Enterprise is being installed. If it does not, enter the hostname here.

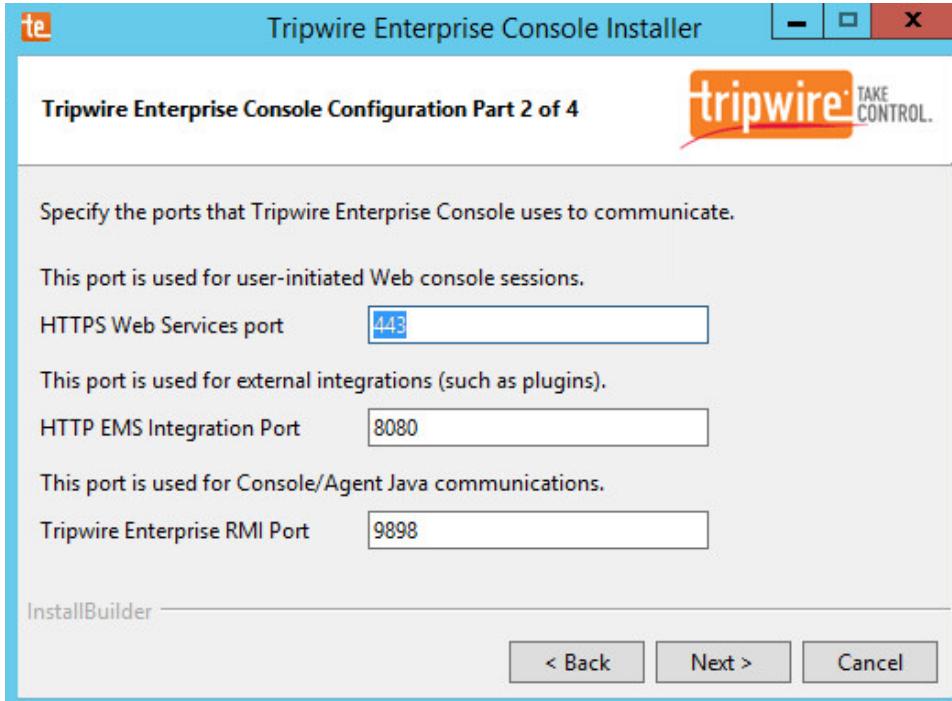


1682

1683 14. Click **Next**.

1684

1685 15. Enter each port number to use for the HTTPS Web Services port, HTTP EMS Integration Port,
1686 and Tripwire Enterprise RMI port. The RMI port is used for inbound communication from
1687 Tripwire agents to the server, so ensure that it is allowed through the firewall.

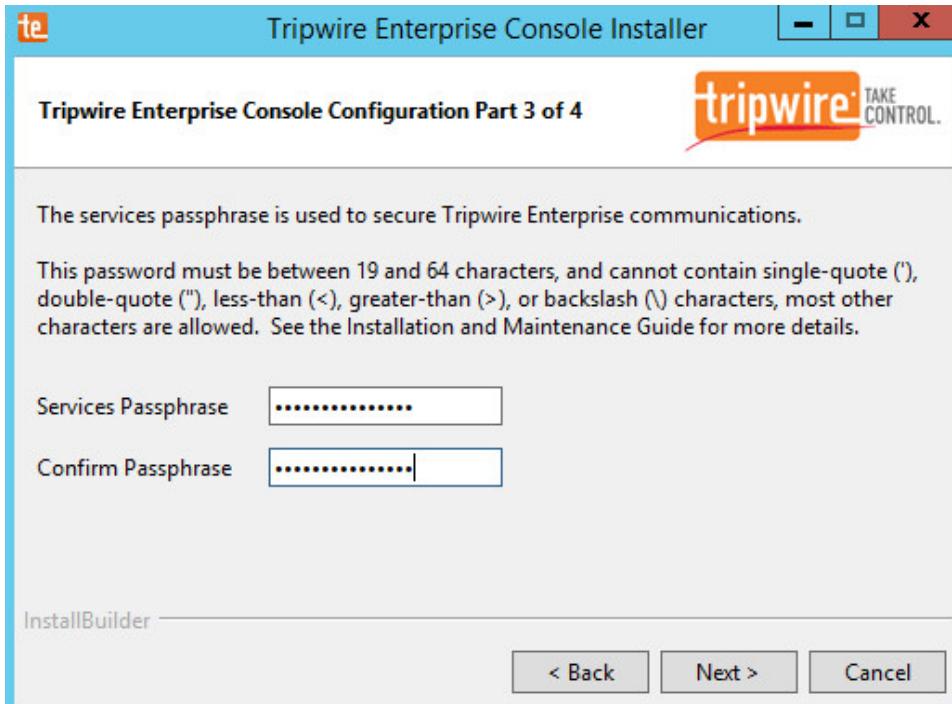


1687

1688 16. Click **Next**.

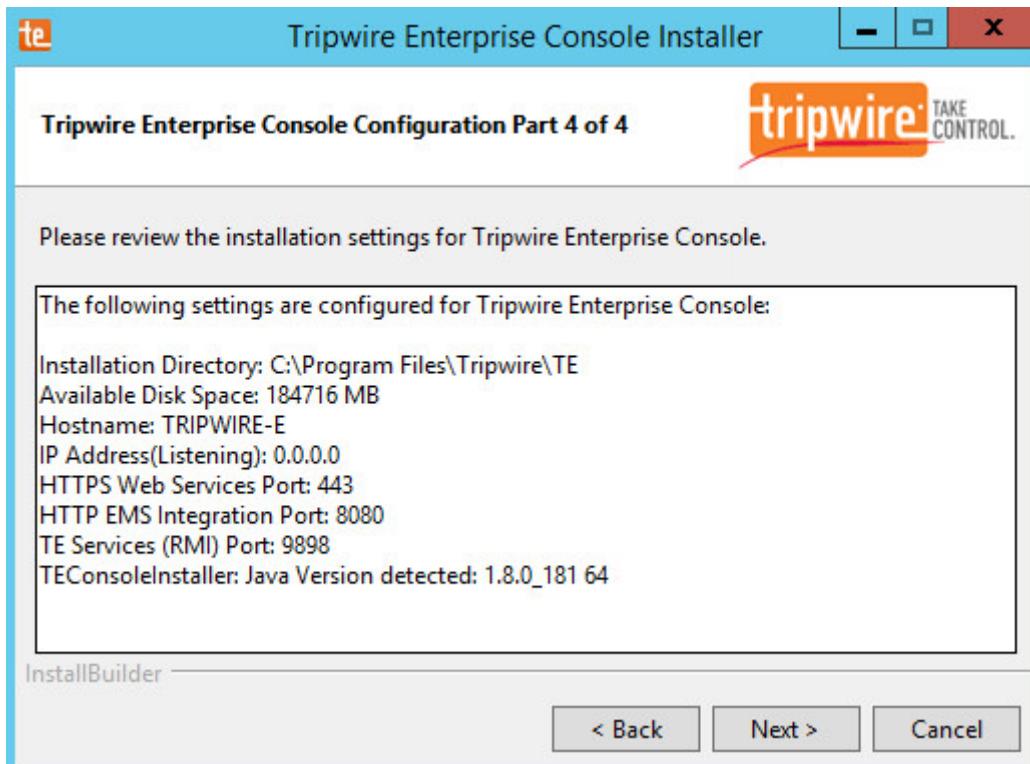
1689

17. Enter a passphrase to use.



1690

1691 18. Click **Next**.



1692

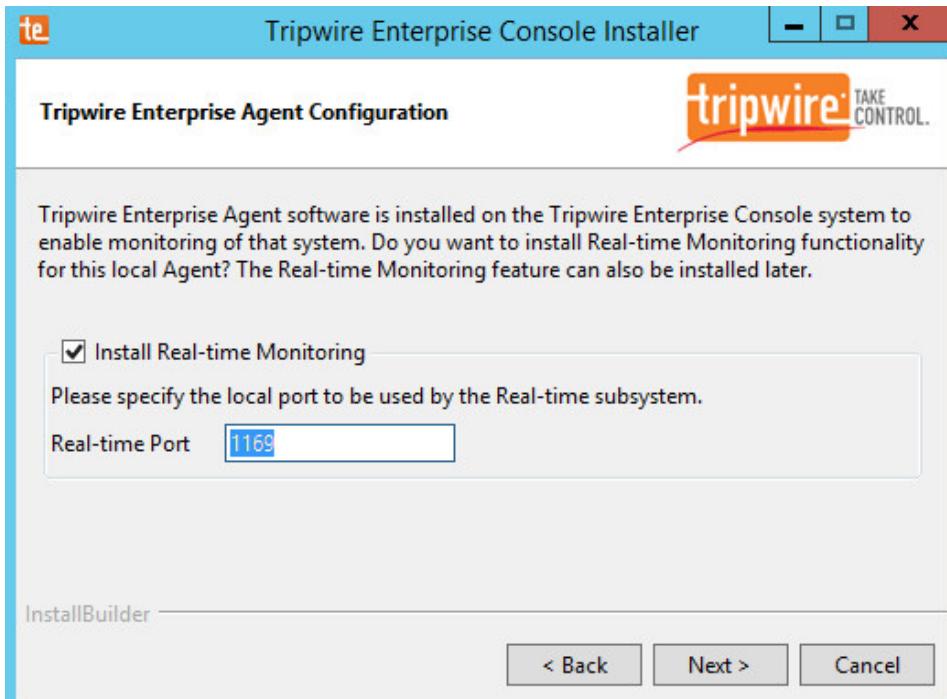
1693 19. Click **Next**.

1694

20. Check the box next to **Install Real-time Monitoring**.

1695

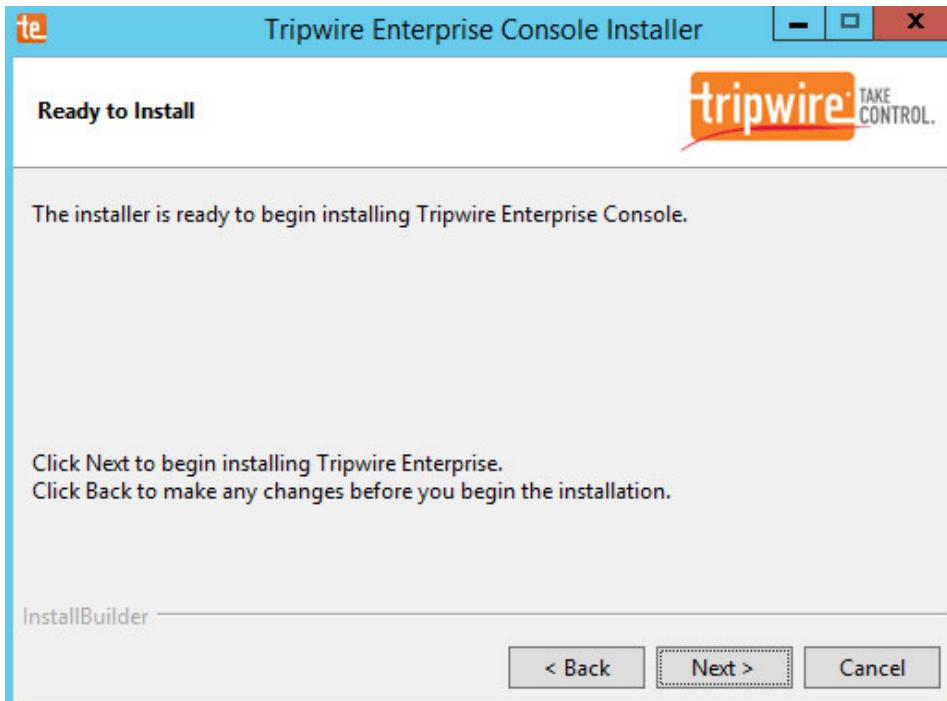
21. Enter **1169** for **Real-time Port**.



1696

1697

22. Click **Next**.

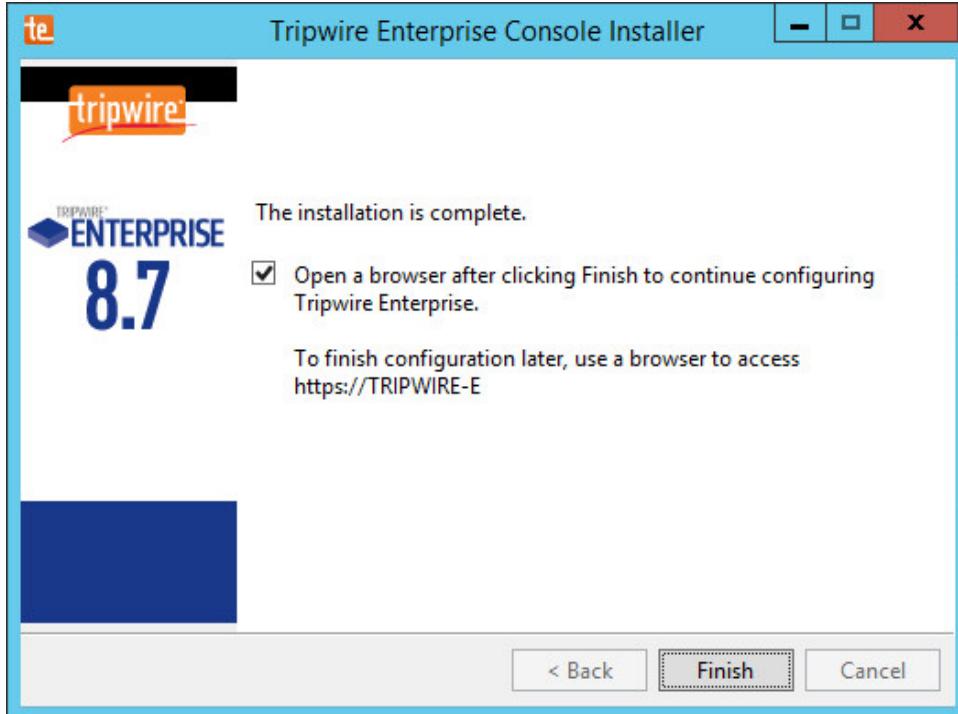


1698

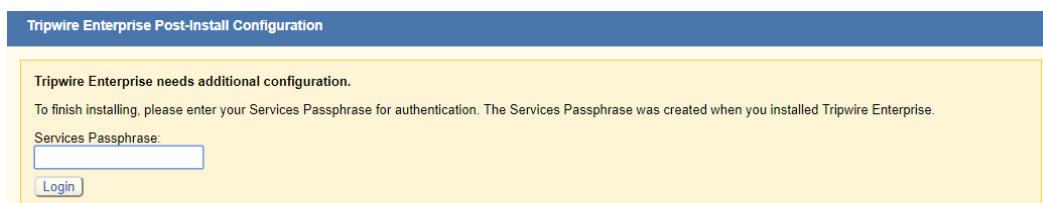
1699

23. Click **Next**.

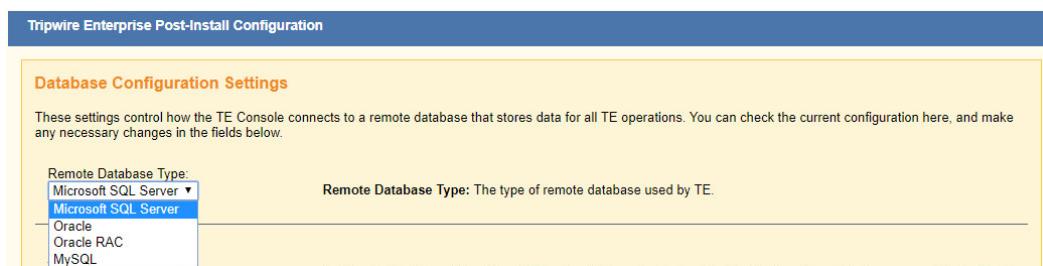
- 1700 24. Check the box next to **Open a browser after clicking Finish to continue configuring Tripwire**
 1701 **Enterprise.**



- 1702
 1703 25. Click **Finish**.
 1704 26. Once at the web address, enter the **Services passphrase** chosen earlier.



- 1705
 1706 27. Click **Login**.



1707

- 1708 28. Select **Microsoft SQL Server** for **Remote Database Type**.
- 1709 29. Select **SQL Server** for **Authentication Type**.
- 1710 30. Enter login details for the account created during the MSSQL setup.
- 1711 31. Enter the **hostname** or **IP** of the database server.
- 1712 32. Enter the **port** on which the database is operating.
- 1713 33. Enter the **name** of the database to be used for Tripwire Enterprise.
- 1714 34. Select the appropriate setting for **SSL** according to your organization's needs.

Authentication Type: SQL Server

Authentication Type: Specifies whether the database login should authenticate using a Windows account (typically of the format domain\user), or an SQL Server account (an account defined only in SQL Server). With the Windows authentication type, NTLMv2 should be used, as it is cryptographically superior to the first version of NTLM. However, as NTLMv2 is configured in the operating system, not in the database or application, TE can be used with NTLM to ensure compatibility.

Login Name: twadmin

Login Name: The login name that TE will use to authenticate with the database.

Password: *****

Password: The password that TE will use to authenticate with the database.

Database Host: 192.168.78.125

Database Host: The fully qualified domain name, hostname or IP address of the system where the database is installed.

Port (default 1433): 1433

Port: The TCP port that the database is listening on. If an Instance Name is specified here, then the database connection will use UDP 1434 to connect to the SQL Server Browser Service, and this Port field will be disabled. The SQL Server Browser service listens for incoming connections to a named instance and provides the client the TCP port number that corresponds to that named instance.

Database Name: TE_DB

Database Name: The name of the database that TE should use when connecting to the remote database. Note that the login name in SQL Server should have this database set as the default, and the login name should be mapped to this database.

Instance Name (Optional):

Instance Name (Optional): The location/name of the database instance on the server. Ask your DBA if a non-default instance should be used for TE.

SSL: Off

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer): Specifies whether the database connection should request, require or authenticate SSL.

- Request - SSL will be used if available.
- Require - SSL will always be used, and an error will occur if SSL is not available for the database.
- Authenticate - SSL will always be used, and an error will occur if SSL is not available for the database. In addition, the certificate chain of the database server's public key will be authenticated using TE's trust store. If the certificate chain does not originate from a trusted source, an error will occur.
- Off - SSL will never be used. This setting is not recommended.

[Activate Windows](#)
[Go to System in Control Panel](#)

Test Database Login ✓

- 1715 35. Click **Test Database Login** to ensure the connection is functional.

Test Database Login ✓

Test Results: Connection Succeeded.

[Activate Windows](#)
[Go to System in Control Panel](#)

Tripwire Enterprise 8.7.0 b8.7.0 r20180606173604-e215728 b40

[Save Configuration and Restart Console](#) [Logout](#)

- 1717
- 1718 36. Click **Save Configuration and Restart Console**.
- 1719 37. After the reboot, enter a new administrator **password**.

Tripwire Enterprise Post-Install Configuration

Configuration Steps Needed:

Tripwire administrator account password needs to be changed from the default.

Create Administrator Password

Passwords must:
 Be between 8 and 128 characters in length
 Contain at least 1 numeric character
 Contain at least 1 uppercase character
 Contain at least 1 non-alphanumeric character
 Supported characters: `~!@#\$%^&*()_-_=+[{}]\\";<,>/?

Password:
 Confirm Password:

Support Information

Still having problems with your installation?
 Contact Tripwire Support: <https://secure.tripwire.com/customers/contact-support.cfm>
 Or open a Support ticket: <https://secure.tripwire.com/customers/>

For faster assistance from Support, please generate a support bundle to collect information about your system and this installation. Attach the support bundle file to your web ticket or email. [What is a Support Bundle?](#)

[Generate Support Bundle](#)

1720

[Logout](#)

1721

38. Click Confirm and Continue.

Tripwire Enterprise Fast Track

Welcome to Tripwire Enterprise Fast Track!



Fast Track will help you to configure Tripwire Enterprise for Change Auditing, Policy Management, or an integrated Security Configuration Management (SCM) solution. It only takes a few minutes to complete the setup questionnaire. After you do, Fast Track will use your answers to install the components that you need.

Step 1: Add your license file and describe your environment. This includes the platforms you want Tripwire Enterprise to monitor, the policies you want to enforce, and the schedule that Tripwire Enterprise should use.

Step 2: Review the items that will be configured and save the manifest for your records.

Step 3: Apply the configuration and let Fast Track do the rest.

Note: After Fast Track configures Tripwire Enterprise, you can always make changes to your configuration later from the Tripwire Enterprise user interface.

[Configure Tripwire Enterprise](#) [Private Windows](#) [Cancel](#)

1722

1723

39. Click Configure Tripwire Enterprise.

1724

- 1725 40. Click **Choose File** and select the Tripwire Enterprise license file, which should be a *.cert* file.
- 1726 41. Check the boxes next to **Change Auditing** and **Policy Management**.

Step 1: Add your Tripwire Enterprise license (*.cert)

No file chosen

1727
1728

42. Select any available policies desired.

Step 2: Configure Change Auditing and/or Policy Management

Monitoring Solutions	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Change Auditing <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Policy Management
Available Policies	<input type="checkbox"/> CIS <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PCI <input type="checkbox"/> DISA <input type="checkbox"/> NIST 800-53 (FISMA)

Step 3: Specify the platforms to monitor

Note: You are licensed for the **Highlighted** platforms.

Available Platforms:	Selected Platforms:																
<table border="1"> <tr><th>Operating System</th></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2</td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2</td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Oracle Solaris 10</td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Oracle Solaris 11</td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6</td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7</td></tr> <tr><th>Virtual Infrastructure</th></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VMware ESXi 5.5 Server</td></tr> </table>	Operating System	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Oracle Solaris 10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Oracle Solaris 11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7	Virtual Infrastructure	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VMware ESXi 5.5 Server	<table border="1"> <tr><td>Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2</td></tr> <tr><td>Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2</td></tr> <tr><td>Oracle Solaris 10</td></tr> <tr><td>Oracle Solaris 11</td></tr> <tr><td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6</td></tr> <tr><td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7</td></tr> <tr><td>VMware ESXi 5.5 Server</td></tr> </table>	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2	Oracle Solaris 10	Oracle Solaris 11	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7	VMware ESXi 5.5 Server
Operating System																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Oracle Solaris 10																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Oracle Solaris 11																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7																	
Virtual Infrastructure																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VMware ESXi 5.5 Server																	
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2																	
Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2																	
Oracle Solaris 10																	
Oracle Solaris 11																	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6																	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7																	
VMware ESXi 5.5 Server																	

1729
1730

43. Select all the operating systems that you wish to monitor with Tripwire Enterprise.

Step 4: Set up a schedule for running checks and reports

Change Audit Scheduling	Reports
Checks How frequently would you like to run checks on your assets? <input type="button" value="Daily"/> Run the checks at <input type="button" value="1:00"/> <input type="button" value="AM"/>	Reports How frequently would you like to run reports on your assets? <input type="button" value="Daily"/> Run the reports at <input type="button" value="4:00"/> <input type="button" value="AM"/>
Policy Scheduling	Reports
Checks How frequently would you like to run checks on your assets? <input type="button" value="Weekly"/> on <input type="button" value="Sundays"/> Run the checks at <input type="button" value="1:00"/> <input type="button" value="AM"/>	Reports How frequently would you like to run reports on your assets? <input type="button" value="Weekly"/> on <input type="button" value="Sundays"/> Run the reports at <input type="button" value="4:00"/> <input type="button" value="AM"/>

Enable Checks and Reports (Optional)

Note: Tripwire does not recommend enabling checks and reports until after you have installed Tripwire Agent software on the systems that you want to monitor.

1731

- 1732 44. Set up a schedule for running checks and reports according to your organization's needs. Leave
 1733 the box next to **Enable Checks and Reports** unchecked for now.

Step 5: Configure an email server for sending reports and alerts

Set up the email server now
 Set up the email server at another time

Before Tripwire Enterprise can deliver alerts or reports, an email server must be created. You can set up the server now, or you can wait and do it later using the Tripwire Enterprise Console.

- 1734
- 1735 45. Select **Set up the email server at another time**.

Step 6: Create an administrator account for Tripwire Enterprise Console access

Passwords must:
 Be between 8 and 128 characters in length
 Contain at least 1 numeric character
 Contain at least 1 uppercase character
 Contain at least 1 non-alphanumeric character
 Supported characters: `~!@#\$%^&*()_-+=[]{}\\|;':\"<,>./?

User Name:	admin	✓
Password:	*****	✓
Confirm Password:	*****	✓
Email Address:		

- 1736
- 1737 46. Enter a **username** and **password** for a new administrator account for Tripwire Enterprise
 1738 Console.



- 1739
- 1740 47. Click **Preview Configuration**.

These tasks will be applied to your configuration

- Critical Change Audit Check - RHEL 6
- Critical Change Audit Check - RHEL 7
- Critical Change Audit Check - Solaris 10
- Critical Change Audit Check - Solaris 11
- Critical Change Audit Check - Windows
- Policy Check - RHEL 6
- Policy Check - RHEL 7
- Policy Check - Solaris 10
- Policy Check - Solaris 11
- Policy Check - VMware ESX
- Policy Check - Windows
- Report Task - Daily File System Changes by Node
- Report Task - Daily File System Changes by Rule
- Report Task - Test Result Summary - Red Hat - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Test Result Summary - Solaris - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Test Result Summary - VMware ESX - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Test Result Summary - Windows - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Test Results by Node - Red Hat - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Test Results by Node - Solaris - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Test Results by Node - VMware ESX - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Test Results by Node - Windows - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Top 5 Nodes with Daily Changes
- Report Task - Waivers - Red Hat - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Waivers - Solaris - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Waivers - VMware ESX - PCI v3.1
- Report Task - Waivers - Windows - PCI v3.1

These home pages will be applied to your configuration

Change Audit

Customer Center Home Page

PCI Overview - Red Hat

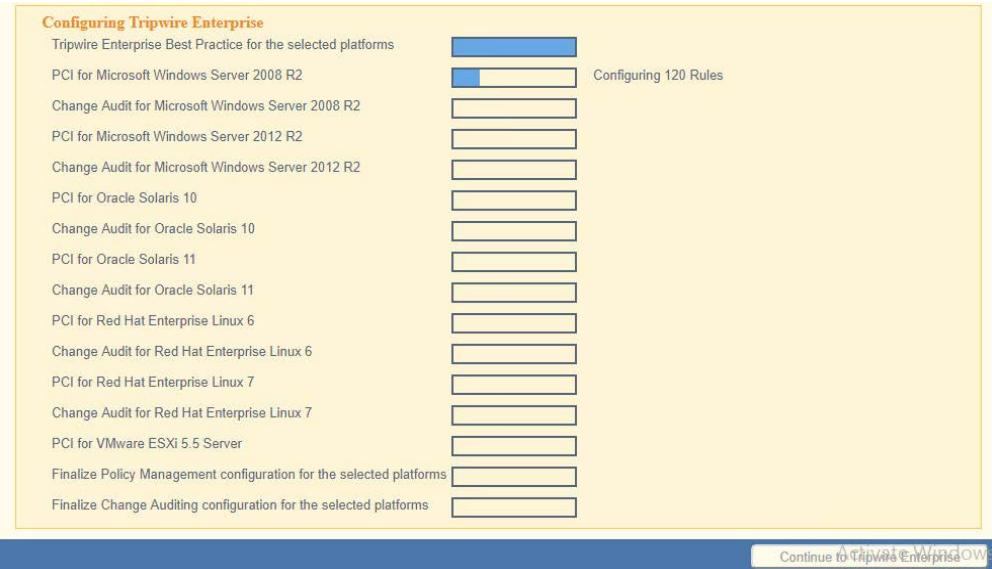
PCI Overview - Solaris

PCI Overview - VMware ESX

PCI Overview - Windows

Tripwire Enterprise Administrator

- 1741
- 1742 48. Click **Apply Configuration**.



1743

1744 49. Click **Continue to Tripwire Enterprise** when the installation finishes.

1745 2.12.2 Install the Axon Bridge

- 1746 1. Ensure that TCP traffic on port 5670 is allowed through the firewall.
- 1747 2. Navigate to the Tripwire Enterprise Console installation directory to the /server/data/config folder. Copy *bridge_sample.properties* to *bridge.properties*.
- 1748 3. In the *bridge.properties* file, find the line that says:
#tw.cap.bridge.registrationPreSharedKey=
1749 Remove the “#” character. After the “=” character, enter a **password**. The password has some
1750 restrictions, so ensure that it meets the requirements in case the connection fails later.
- 1751 4. Restart the TE console by running the following command from an administrative command
1752 prompt, where <te_root> is the TE installation directory:
1753
1754 > <te_root>/server/bin/twserver restart

1756 2.12.3 Install the Axon Agent (Windows)

- 1757 1. Download the Axon Agent zip file from the Tripwire customer website
(<https://tripwireinc.force.com/customers>), under the Product Downloads tab.
- 1758 2. Unzip the file.
- 1759 3. To begin the installation, double-click the *.msi* file in the extracted folder. Note: No installation
1760 wizard will appear; the installation happens automatically.

- 1762 4. After the Axon Agent is installed, navigate to C:\ProgramData\Tripwire\agent\config, and copy
 1763 *twagent_sample.conf* to *twagent.conf*.

```
# HOST based agent configuration:  

# Instead of using a DNS SRV record, the agent may be configured  

# to talk to a specific host, or list of hosts. Lists use a comma separator and  

# can optionally specify a port. The default of port 5670 will be used if a port  

# is not specified.  

#  

# Example: host1, host2:5900, 10.123.0.15, [feac:ba80:6fff:93fe]:7582  

#  

# The agent may be configured to connect to hosts in a randomized or textual order  

# (default: true)  

#  

bridge.host=192.168.1.136  

#bridge.port=5670  

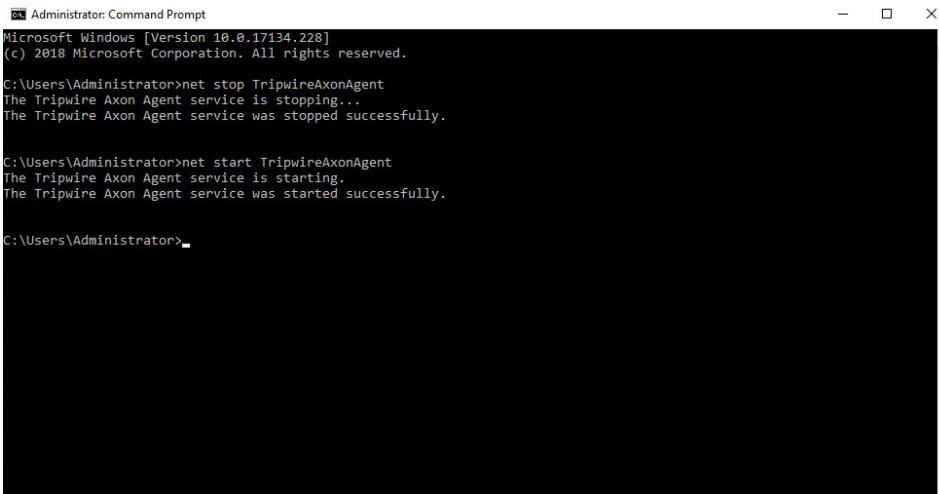
#bridge.randomize.hosts=true  

#
```

- 1764
 1765 5. Open ***twagent.conf*** and find the line that says *bridge.host*. Remove the “#” character, and
 1766 enter the hostname or IP address of the Axon Bridge server.
 1767 6. In a file called ***registration_pre_shared_key***, enter the value of the preshared key that was set
 1768 in the Axon Bridge.
 1769 7. Restart the Axon Agent Service by opening a command prompt and running the following
 1770 commands:

```
> net stop TripwireAxonAgent  

> net start TripwireAxonAgent
```



1773

1774 2.12.4 Install the Axon Agent (Linux)

- 1775 1. Download the Axon Agent .tgz file from the Tripwire customer website
 1776 (<https://tripwireinc.force.com/customers>), under the Product Downloads tab.
 1777 2. To install the software, run the following commands:

1778 RHEL or CentOS: > rpm -ivh <installer_file>
1779 Debian or Ubuntu: > dpkg -i <installer_file>
1780 3. Navigate to /etc/tripwire/ and copy **twagent_sample.conf** to **twagent.conf**.
1781 4. Open **twagent.conf** and find the line that says bridge.host. Remove the “#” character and
1782 enter the hostname or IP address of the Axon Bridge server.
1783 5. In a file called **registration_pre_shared_key.txt**, enter the value of the preshared key that was
1784 set in the Axon Bridge.
1785 6. Restart the Axon Agent Service by opening a command prompt and running the following
1786 commands:
1787 RHEL or CentOS:
1788 > /sbin/service tripwire-axon-agent stop
1789 > /sbin/service tripwire-axon-agent start
1790
1791 Debian or Ubuntu:
1792 > /usr/sbin/service tripwire-axon-agent stop
1793 > /usr/sbin/service tripwire-axon-agent start

1794 [2.12.5 Configure Tripwire Enterprise](#)

1795 [2.12.5.1 Terminology](#)

1796 **Note:** a monitored system, such as a file system, directory, network device, database, or virtual
1797 infrastructure component
1798 **Element:** a monitored object, which is a component or property of a node being audited by TE
1799 **Element Version:** a record of an element’s state at specific points in time. Multiple element versions
1800 create a historical archive of changes made to the element.
1801 **Rule:** A rule identifies one or more elements to the TE Console.
1802 **Action:** an object that initiates a response to either changes detected by TE or by failures generated
1803 from policy tests
1804 **Task:** a TE operation that runs on a scheduled or manual basis
1805 **TE Policy:** a measurement of the degree to which elements comply with a policy

- 1806 **Policy Test:** a determination of whether elements comply with the requirements of a policy
- 1807 **Baseline:** the act of creating an element that reflects the current state of a monitored object (also called
1808 the **current baseline**). When a node's baseline is promoted, TE saves the former baseline as a **historic
1809 baseline**.
- 1810 **Version Check:** a check on monitored objects/elements. It is a comparison of the current state of the
1811 element against its already recorded baseline for changes.

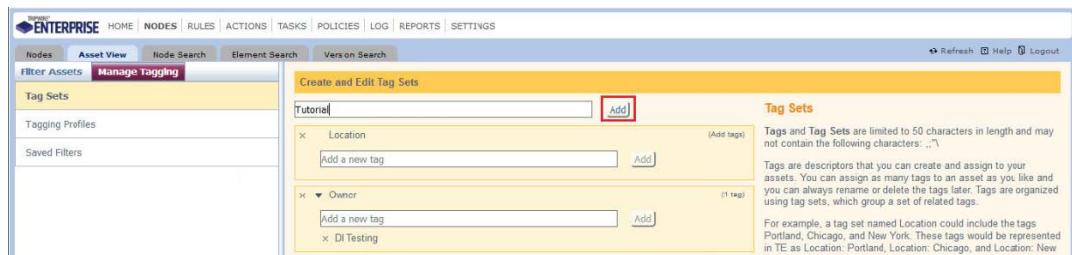
1812 2.12.5.2 Tags

1813 In Tripwire Enterprise, tags can be used to label and target specific nodes. Tags are not required but
1814 allow for targeting nodes more granularly than by the operating system. This section describes how to
1815 create and assign tags.

- 1816 1. Navigate to the TE Console in your browser.
- 1817 2. Click Asset View.



- 1818 3. Click the **Manage Tagging** tab.
- 1819 4. Enter the name of a tag set, or use one of the four existing ones (Location, Owner, Platform
1820 Family, Primary Function). Click **Add** if adding your own tag set.



- 1822 5. Under the tag set to which you wish to add a tag, enter the name of the tag.

Create and Edit Tag Sets

Add a new tag set

Location (Add tags)

Add a new tag Add

Owner (1 tag)

Add a new tag Add

DI Testing

Platform Family (4 tags)

Add a new tag Add

Red Hat
Solaris
VMware ESX
Windows

Primary Function (1 tag)

Add a new tag Add

Domain Controller

Tutorial (Add tags)

Tutorial tag Add

1824

- 1825 6. Click **Add**.
- 1826 7. Navigate to **Nodes > Asset View > Filter Assets**.
- 1827 8. Check the boxes next to the nodes to which you wish to add this tag.

Selected: 3 | Clear

Edit Tags | Health Check ▾

- WINDOWS10-1.DI.IPDR
- WINDOWS10-2.DI.IPDR
- WINDOWS10-3.DI.IPDR

1828

1829

9. Click **Edit Tags**.

1830

10. Check the boxes next to any tags you wish to add to these nodes.

Edit Tags

For 3 Assets

Tag Sets

Location (0 tags)

Owner (1 tag)

DI Testing

Platform Family (4 tags)

Red Hat

Solaris

VMware ESX

Windows

Primary Function (1 tag)

Domain Controller

Tutorial (1 tag)

Tutorial tag

Close

1831

1832

11. Click **Close**.

1833

2.12.5.3 Rules

1834

This section describes how to create a rule.

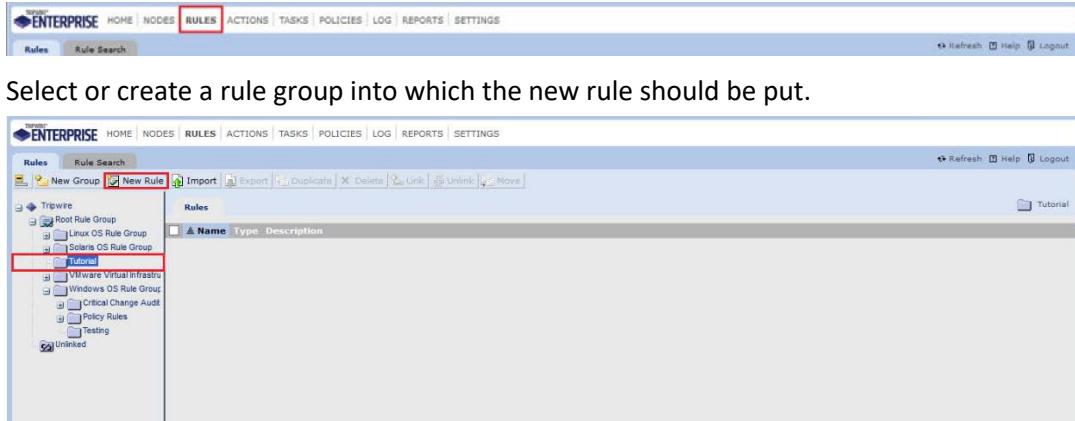
1835

1. Click **Rules**.

1836

1837

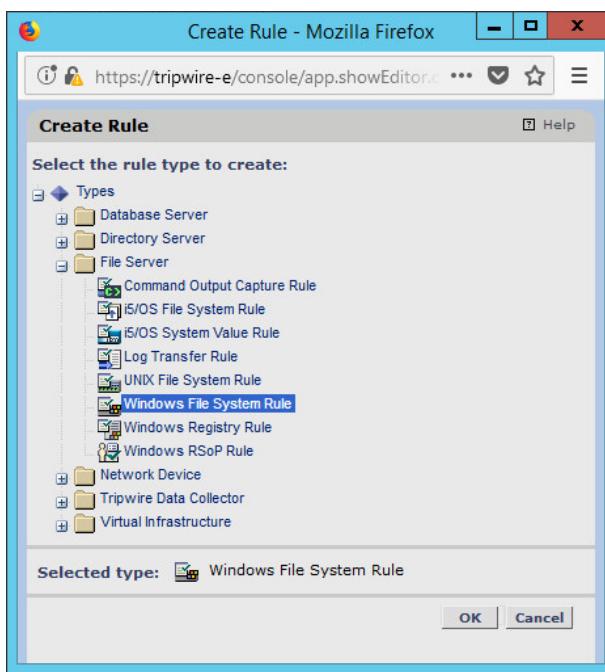
2. Select or create a rule group into which the new rule should be put.



1838

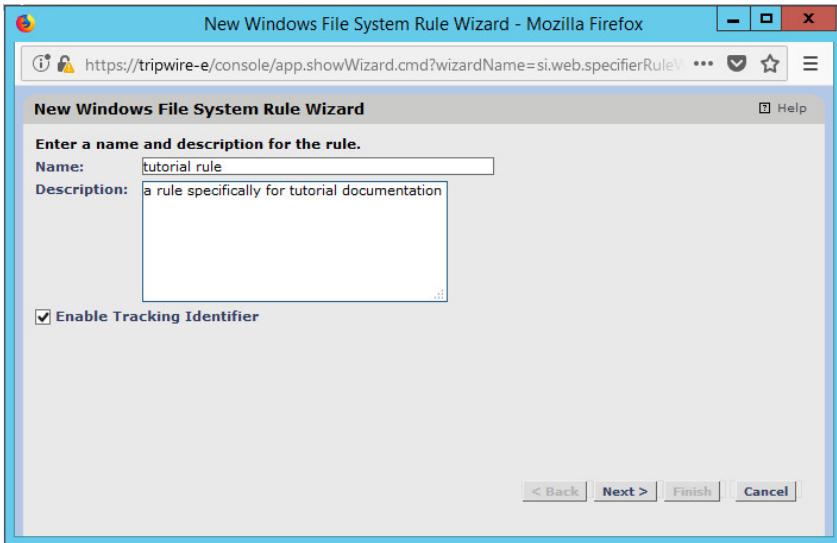
3. Click **New Rule**.
 4. Select the type of rule. For monitoring Windows file systems, we choose **Windows File System Rule**.

1842



1843

5. Click **OK**.
 6. Enter a **name** and **description** for the rule.



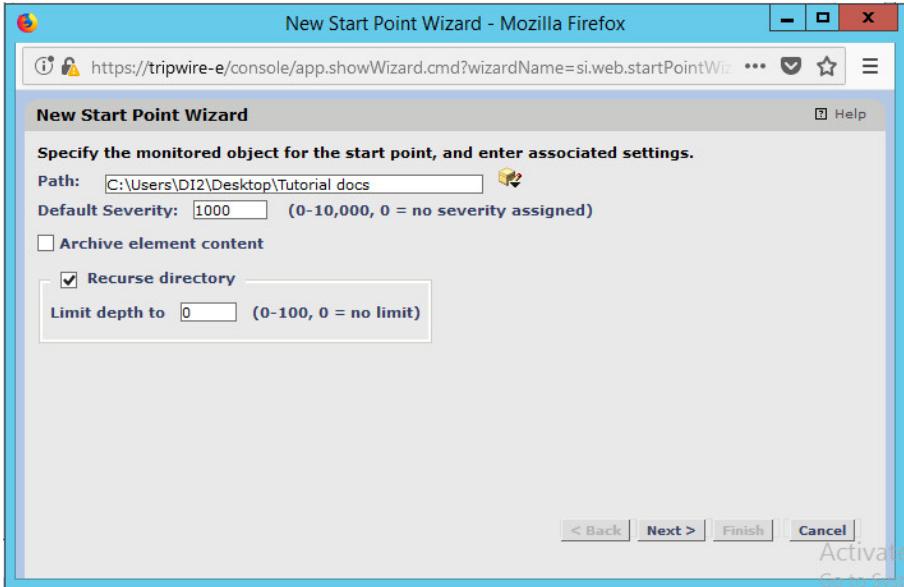
1846
1847

7. Click **Next**.

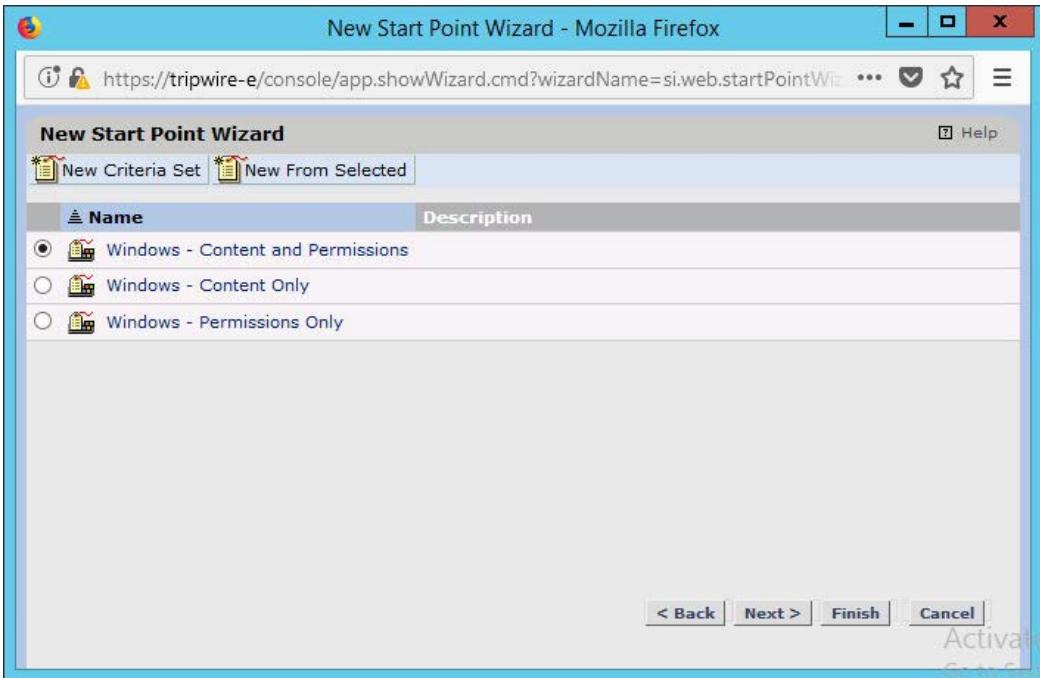


1848
1849
1850
1851
1852
1853

8. Click **New Start Point**.
9. For **Path**, enter a directory that represents the scope of the scan. It can be limited to the documents folder or be wide enough to encompass all the files on a system. Note that the latter will take much longer to scan.
10. Check the box next to **Recurse directory** if you also wish to scan all subfolders.

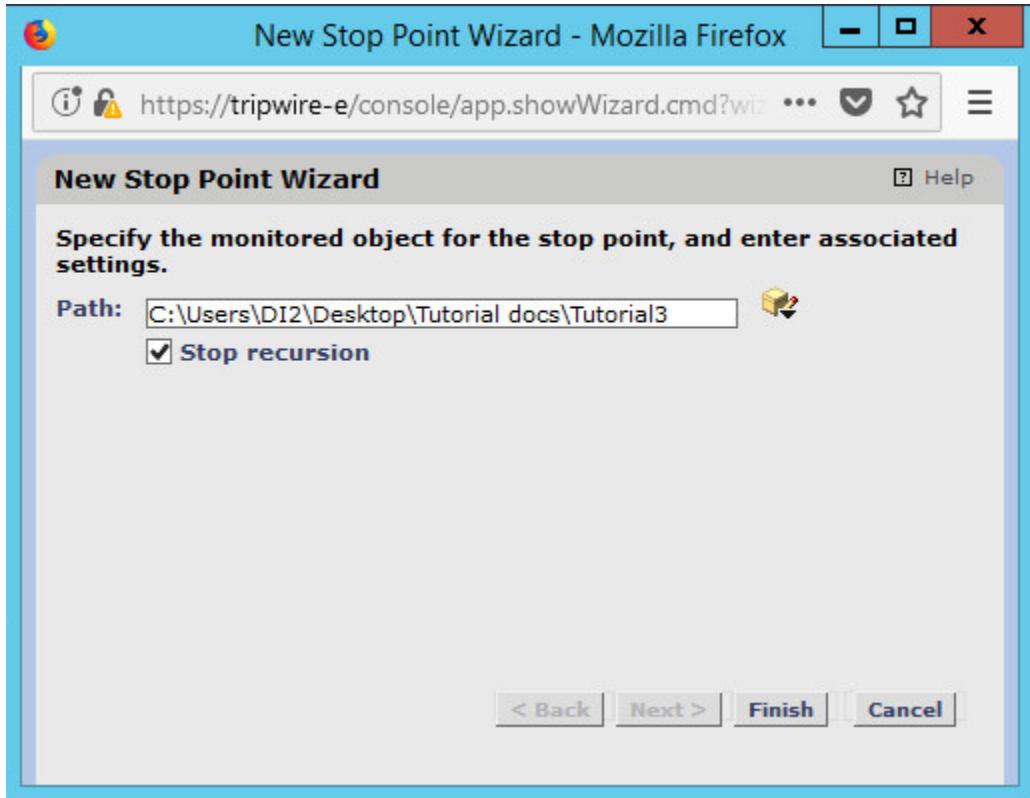


1854

1855 11. Click **Next**.1856 12. Select **Windows Content and Permissions**.

1857

1858 13. Click **Finish**.1859 14. Click **New Stop Point**.1860 15. Enter the path of any folders or files that should not be included in the scan, and indicate
1861 whether they should end the recursion.

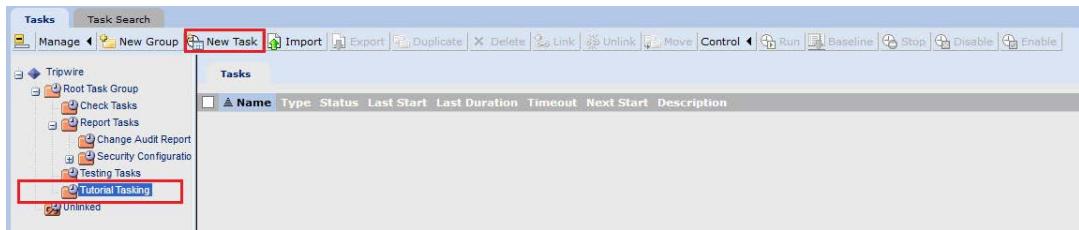


1862

1863 16. Click **Finish**.1864 17. Click **Next**.1865 18. Click **Next**.1866 19. Click **Finish**.1867 *2.12.5.4 Tasks*1868 This section describes how to create a task on a schedule. These tasks can also be run manually if
1869 necessary.1870 1. Click **Tasks**.

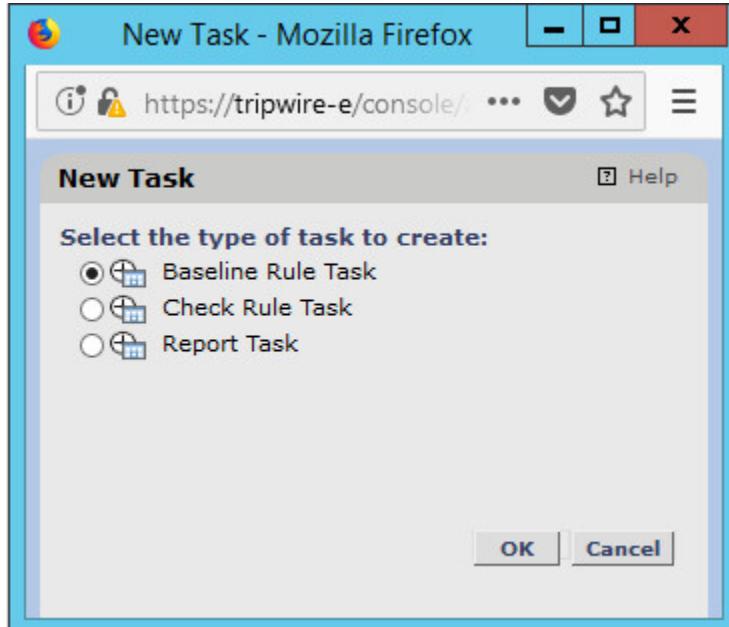
1871 2. Select a folder for a new task, or create one.

1873



1874

3. Click **New Task**.
4. Select **Baseline Rule Task** or **Check Rule Task**. (Note: Both are needed—baseline creates the initial state of the monitored object, and check updates the state and reports any changes.)

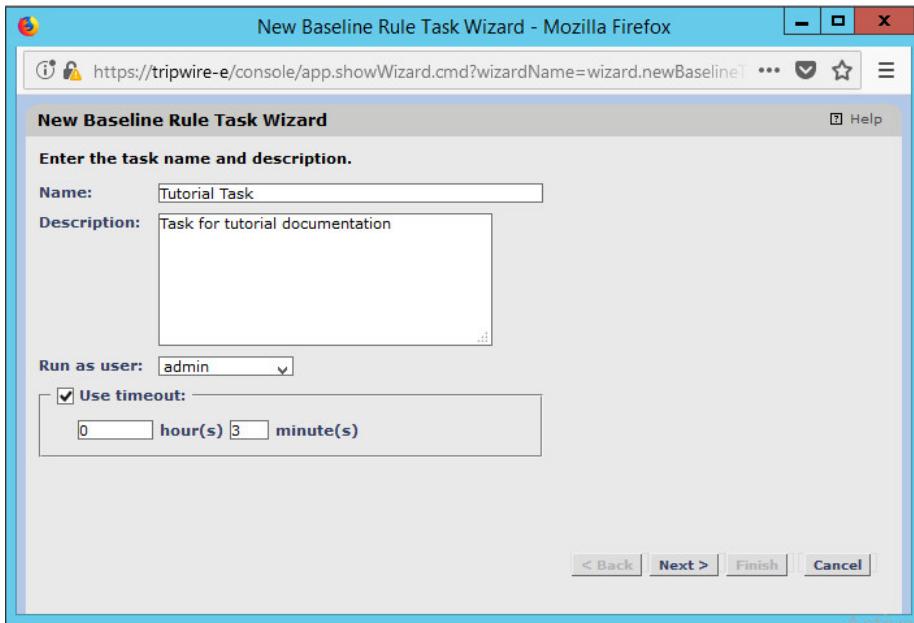


1877

1878

1879

5. Click **OK**.
6. Enter a **name** and **description** for the task.



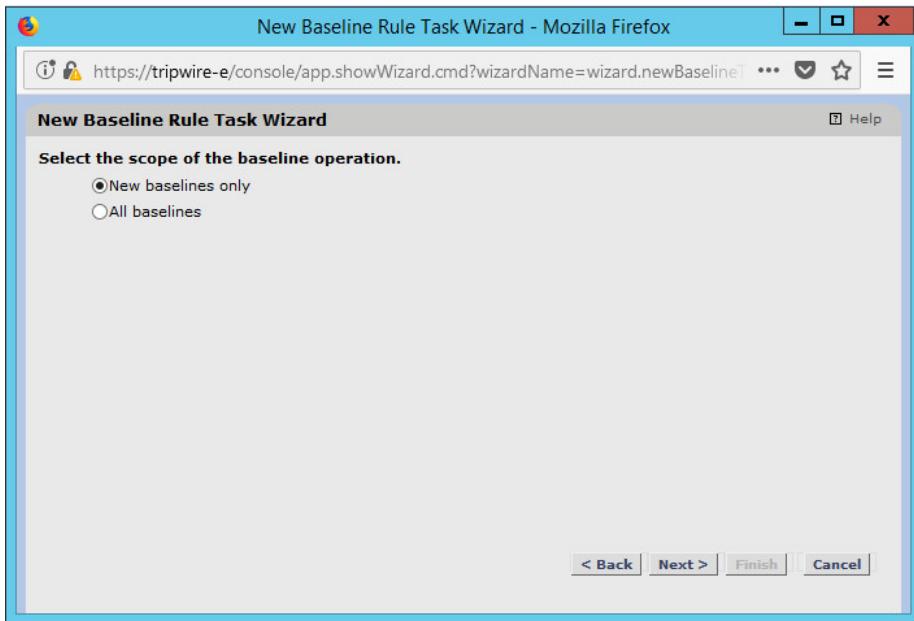
1880

1881

7. Click **Next**.

1882

8. Select whether you want all baselines to be updated or to only create new baselines.



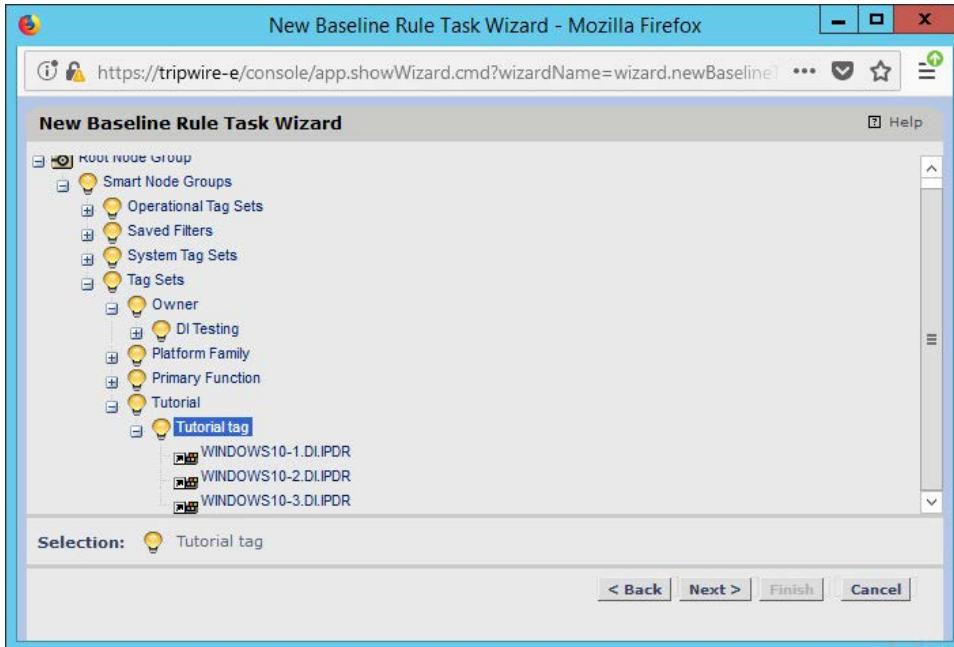
1883

1884

9. Click **Next**.

1885

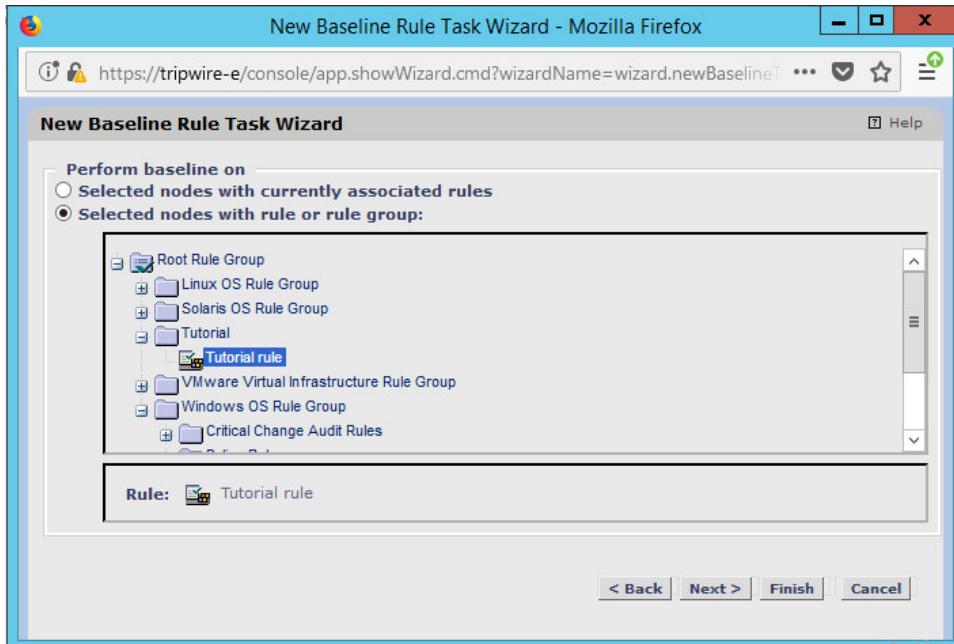
1886 10. Select the systems to be included in the task. You can use tags or select by operating system (or other defaults).



1887

1888 11. Click **Next**.

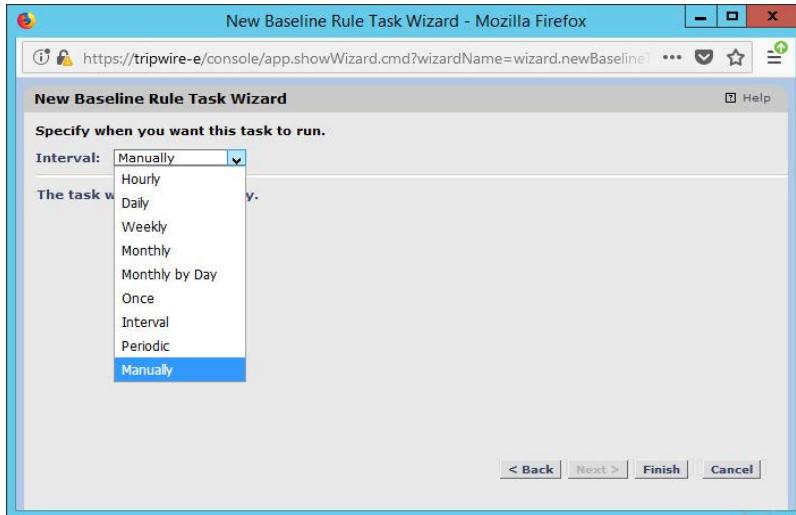
1889 12. Select the rule created earlier.



1890

1891 13. Click **Next**.

1892 14. Set the schedule of this task according to your organization's needs.



1893

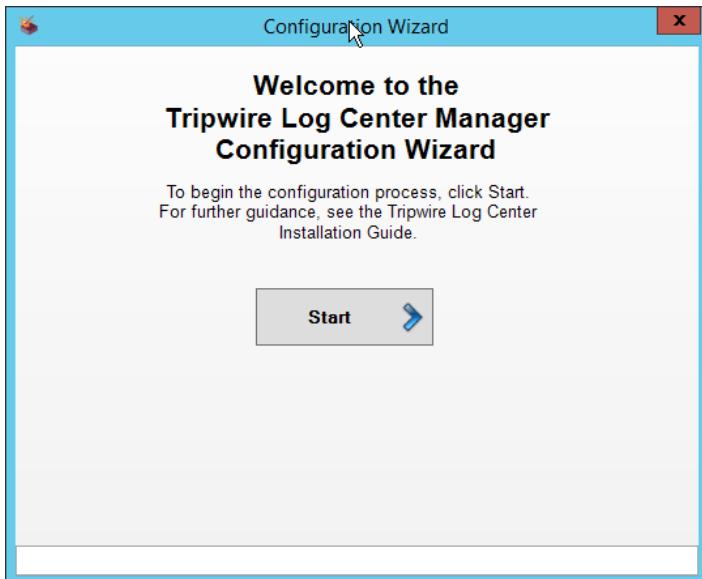
1894

15. Click **Finish**.

1895

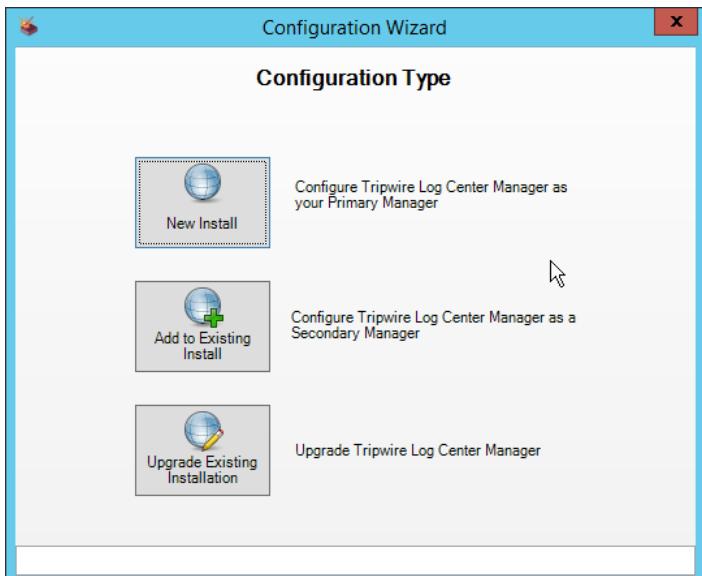
2.13 Tripwire Log Center

- 1896 **2.13.1 Install Tripwire Log Center Manager**
- 1897 See the *Tripwire Log Center 7.3.1 Installation Guide*, which should accompany the installation media, for
1898 instructions on how to install **Tripwire Log Center**. Use the **Tripwire Log Center Manager** installer.
- 1900 Notes:
- 1901 a. It is recommended that you install **Tripwire Log Center** on a separate system from **Tripwire Enterprise**.
- 1902 b. You will need to install **JRE8** and the **Crypto** library. Instructions are also in the *Tripwire Log Center 7.3.1 Installation Guide*.
- 1903 c. .NET Framework 3.5 is required for this installation—install this from the Server Manager.
- 1904 d. You may need to unblock port 9898 on your firewall for the Tripwire Enterprise agents.
- 1905 e. Do not install PostgreSQL if you wish to use a database on another system—this guide will use a local PostgreSQL database, however.
- 1906 f. When it finishes installing, there should be a configuration wizard (see below for configuration steps).
- 1910 **2.13.2 Configure Tripwire Log Center Manager**
- 1911 1. The configuration wizard should start after the installation is complete.



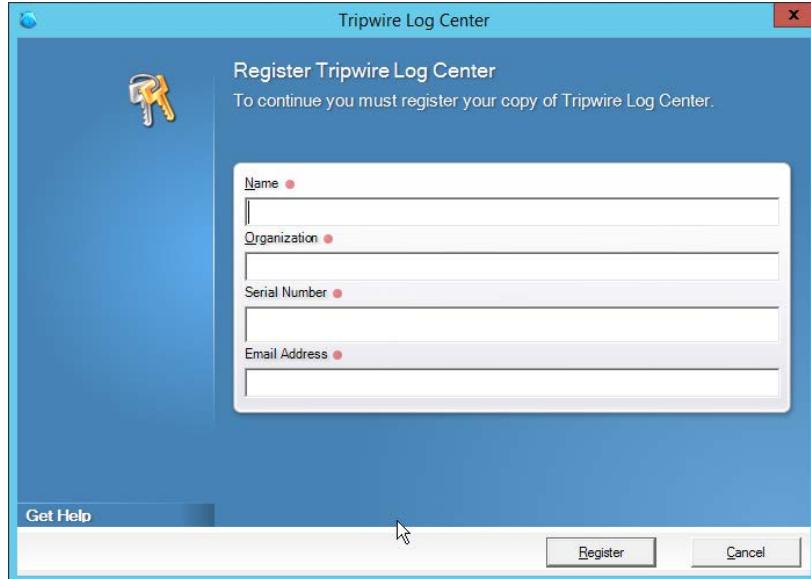
1912
1913

2. Click **Start**.



1914
1915
1916

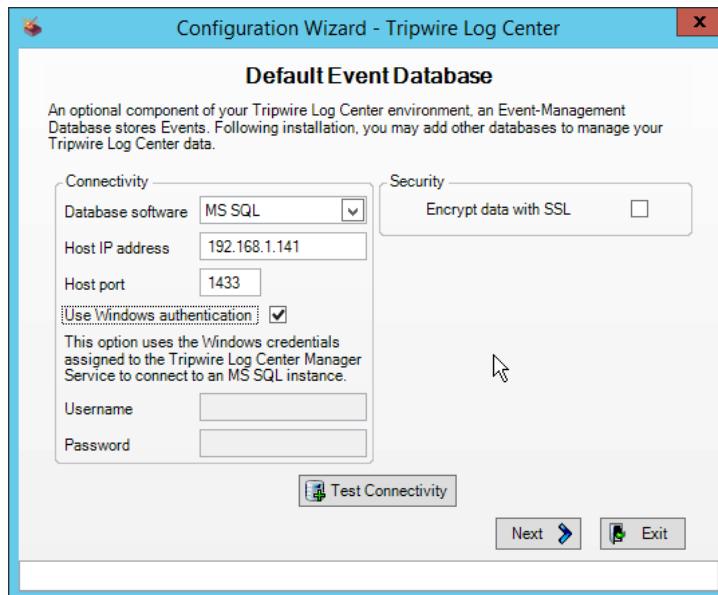
3. Click **New Install**.
4. Enter the registration details for your **Tripwire Log Center** license.



1917

1918

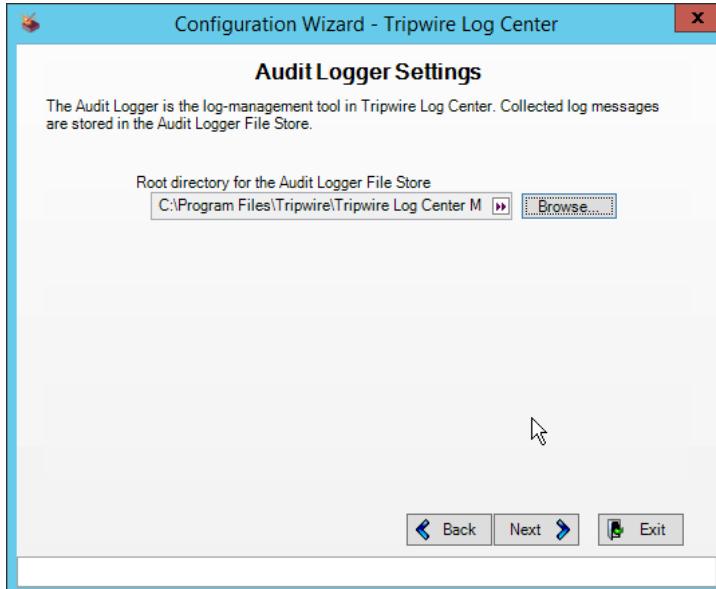
5. Click **Register**.
6. Enter details about the database that **Tripwire Log Center** should use.



1920

1921

7. Click **Next**.
8. Select a directory in which to store log messages, such as C:\Program Files\Tripwire\Tripwire Log Center Manager\Logs\AUDIT.



1924

1925

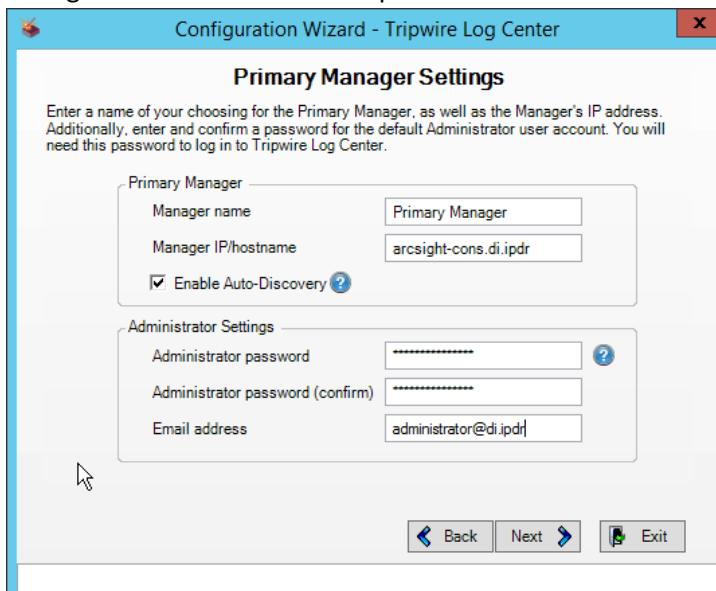
9. Click **Next**.

1926

10. Enter a **password** and an **email**.

1927

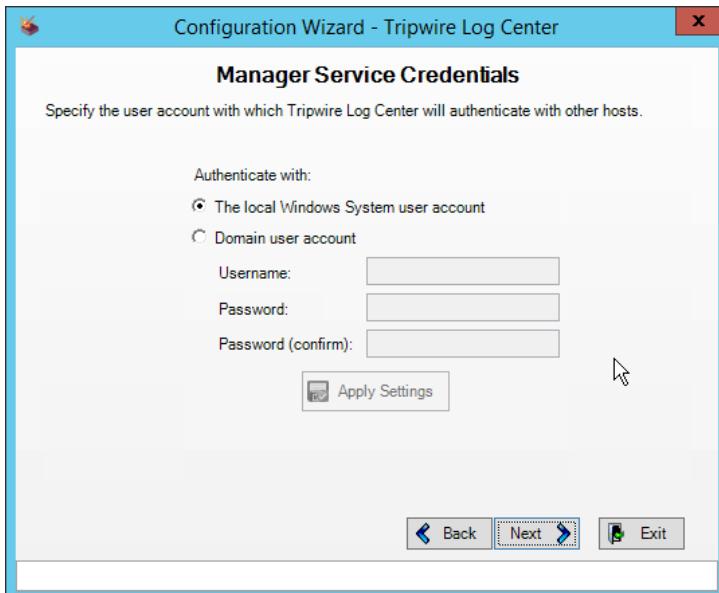
11. Change the IP to a hostname if preferred.



1928

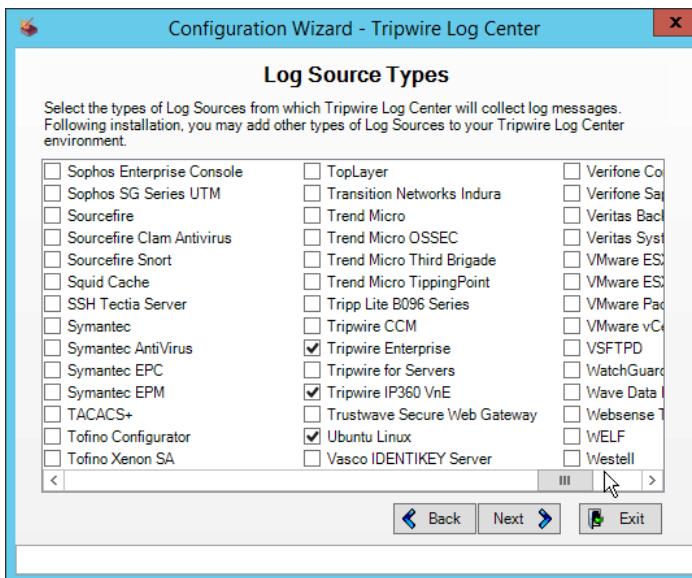
1929

12. Click **Next**.



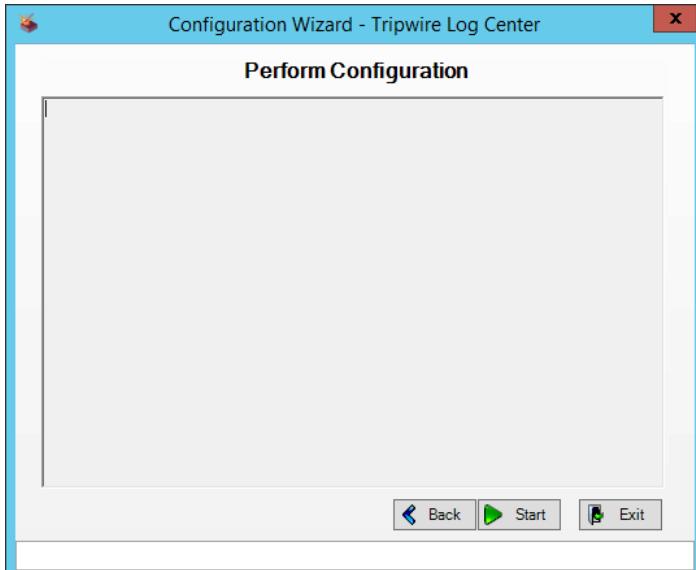
1930
1931
1932
1933
1934

13. Click **Next**.
14. Select any log sources that you expect to collect with **Tripwire Log Center**. Examples: Tripwire Enterprise, Microsoft Windows 10, Tripwire IP360 VnE, Linux Debian, Ubuntu Linux, Microsoft Exchange, Microsoft SQL Server.



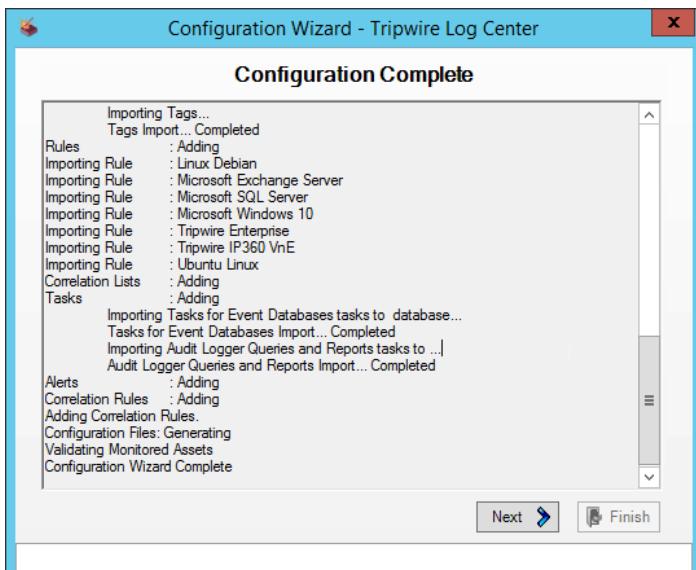
1935
1936

15. Click **Next**.



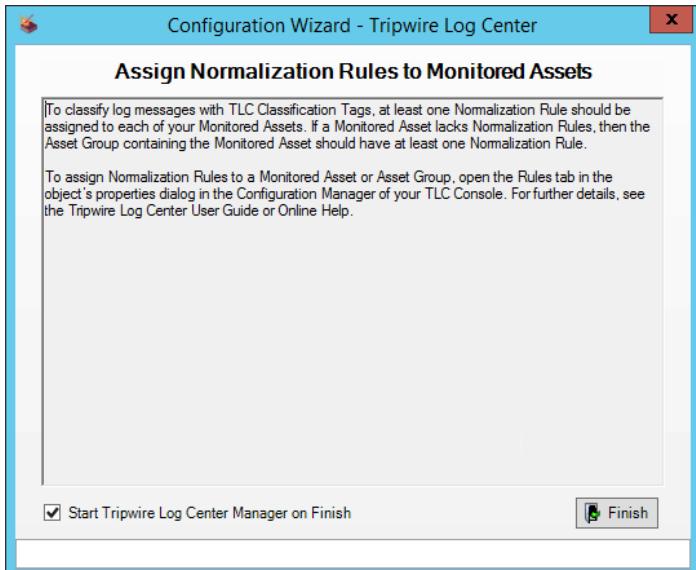
1937

1938 16. Click Start.



1939

1940 17. Click Next.



1941

1942 18. Click **Finish**.1943 **2.13.3 Install Tripwire Log Center Console**1944 Chapter 4 of the *Tripwire Log Center 7.3.1 Installation Guide* details installation of the **Tripwire Log**
1945 **Center Console**. Use the **Tripwire Log Center Console** installer.

1946 You can install this on the same machine as the Tripwire Log Center Manager, if desired.

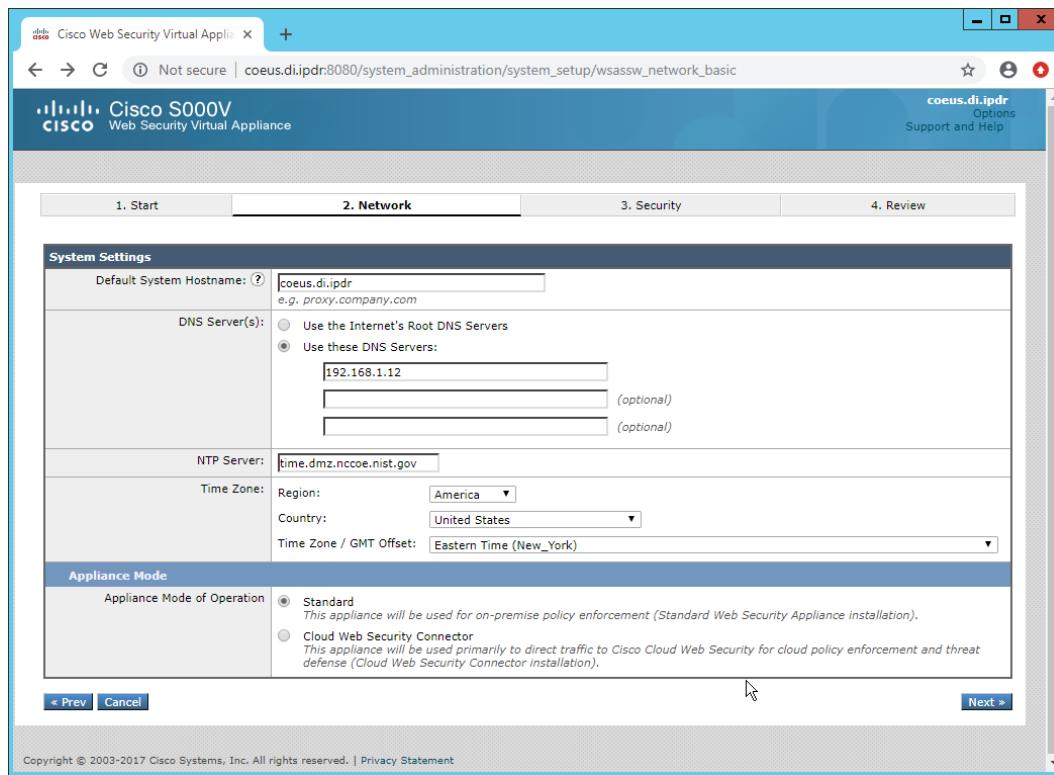
1947 **2.14 Cisco Web Security Appliance**1948 This section details installation and some configurations for the Cisco Web Security Appliance (WSA). It
1949 assumes the use of the WSA virtual machine.1950 **2.14.1 Network Configuration**

- 1951 1. Log in to WSA by using the default **username** and **password** (admin/ironport).
- 1952 2. Use the command `sethostname` to set the hostname of the machine.
- 1953 3. Use the command `dnsconfig` to set the DNS server. Enter **SETUP** when prompted, and then
1954 enter DNS information specific to your organization's needs.
- 1955 4. Use the command `interfaceconfig` to set the IP of the machine. Enter **EDIT** when
1956 prompted, and then enter IP information specific to your organization's needs.
- 1957 5. Use the command `passwd` to change the default password of the machine.

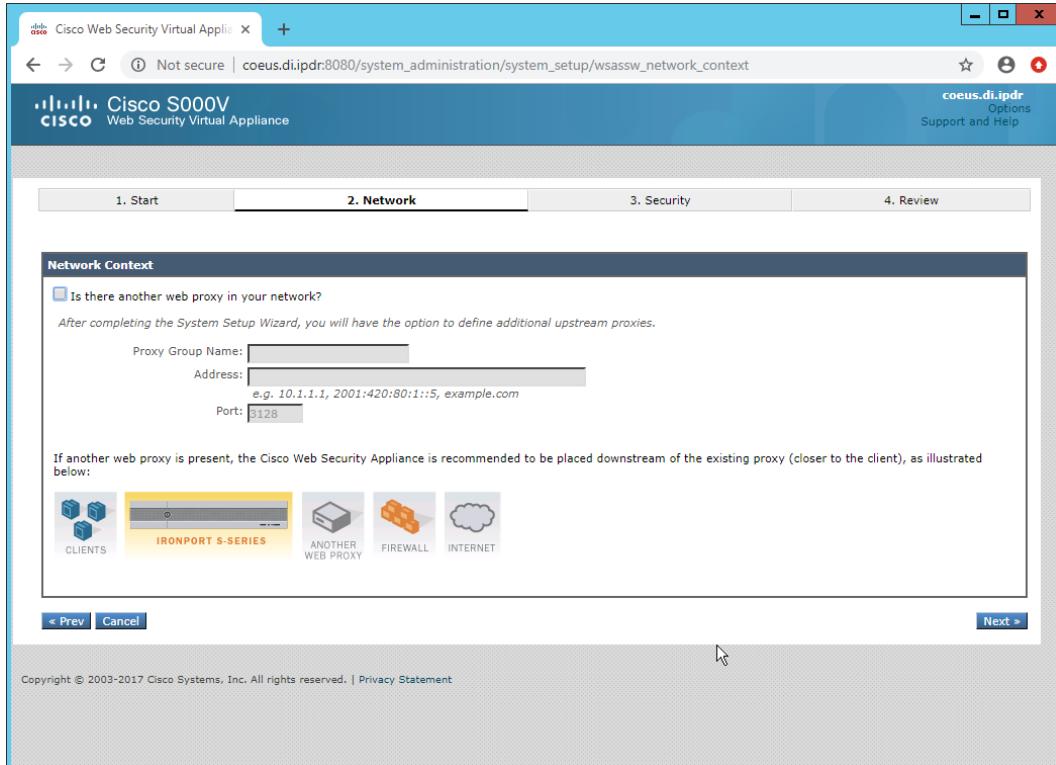
- 1958 6. Use the command `commit` to commit all of these changes.
 1959 7. Use the command `reboot` to reboot the machine.
 1960 8. Use the command `loadlicense` to either paste the license file contents or select a license
 1961 file uploaded via FTP. You can enable FTP in the `interfaceconfig` command.
 1962 9. You should be prompted at the console to visit a web page in the browser, usually
 1963 `http://<ip_address>:8080`. The setup wizard will be here.

1964 **2.14.2 System Setup**

- 1965 1. In the web console, click **System Administration > System Setup Wizard**.
 1966 2. Verify that the hostname matches the desired hostname.
 1967 3. Enter the desired **DNS servers**.
 1968 4. Enter a **time server** if desired.
 1969 5. Select the time zone.
 1970 6. Select **Standard** for an on-premise setup.

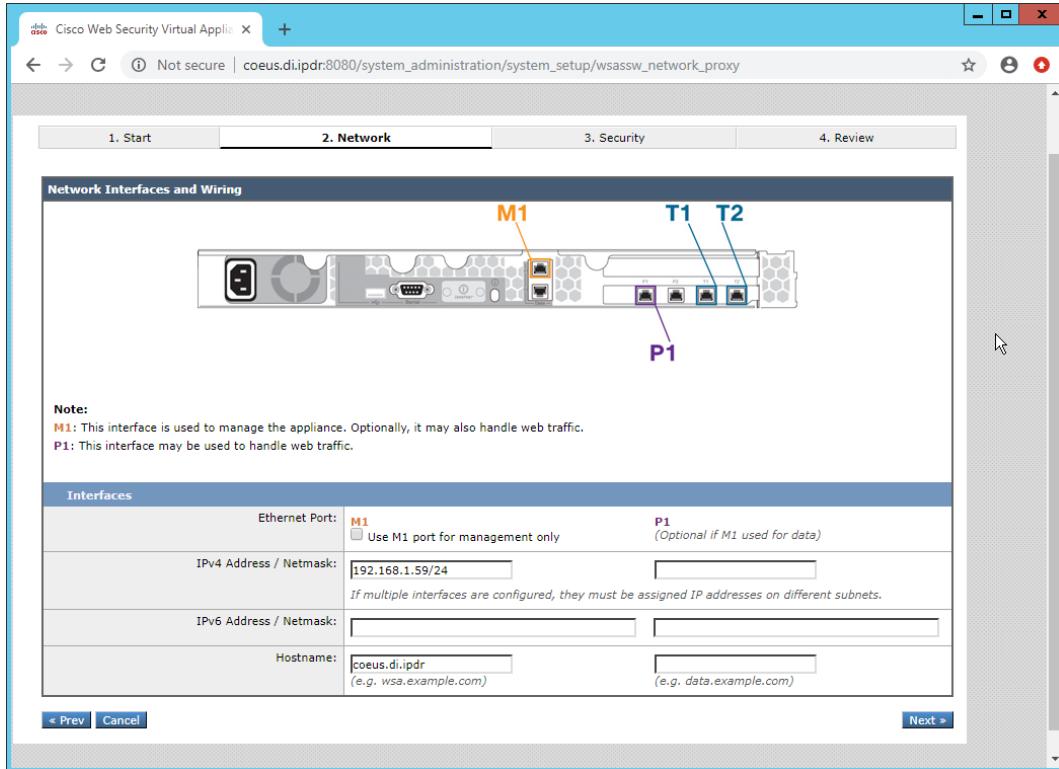


- 1971
 1972 7. Click **Next**.



1973

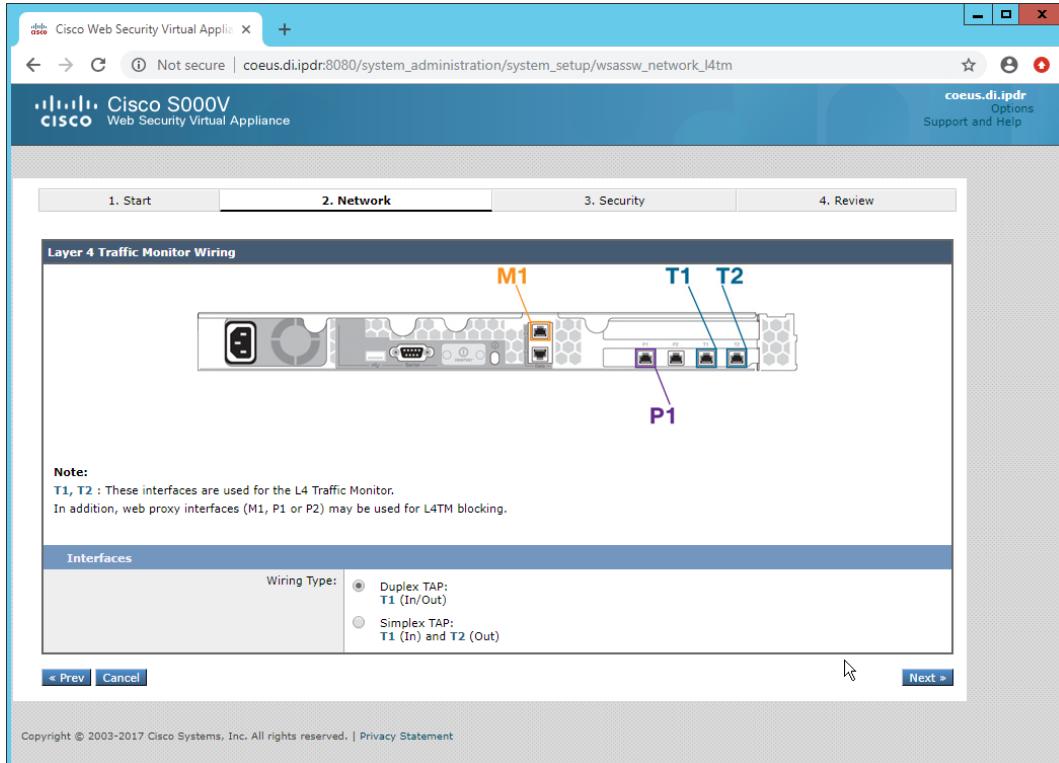
- 1974 8. Click **Next**.
- 1975 9. Verify that the interface is correctly configured.



1976

1977

10. Click **Next**.



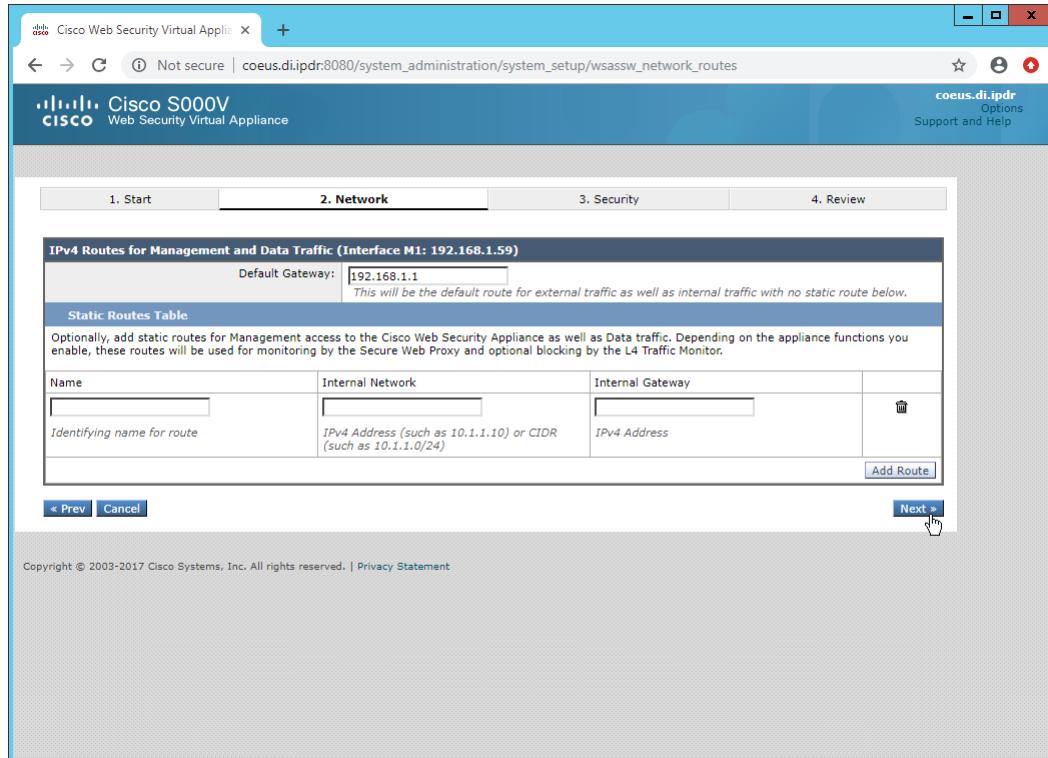
1978

1979

11. Click **Next**.

1980

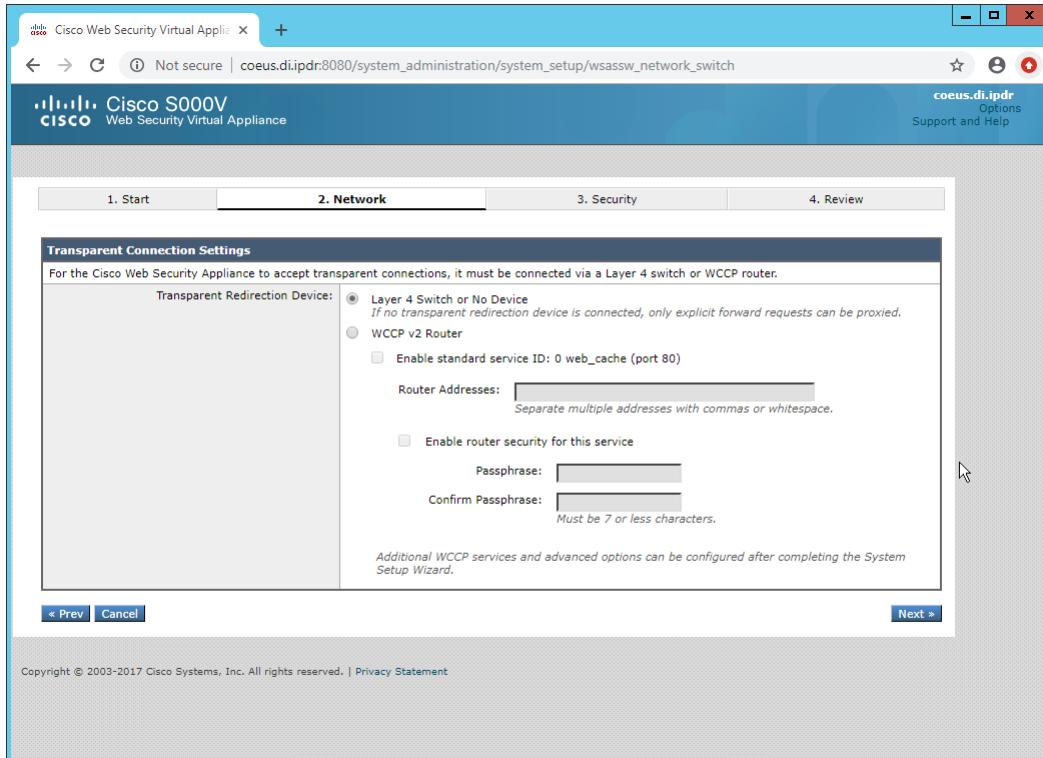
12. Enter the **default gateway** and any additional gateways to use for routing.



1981

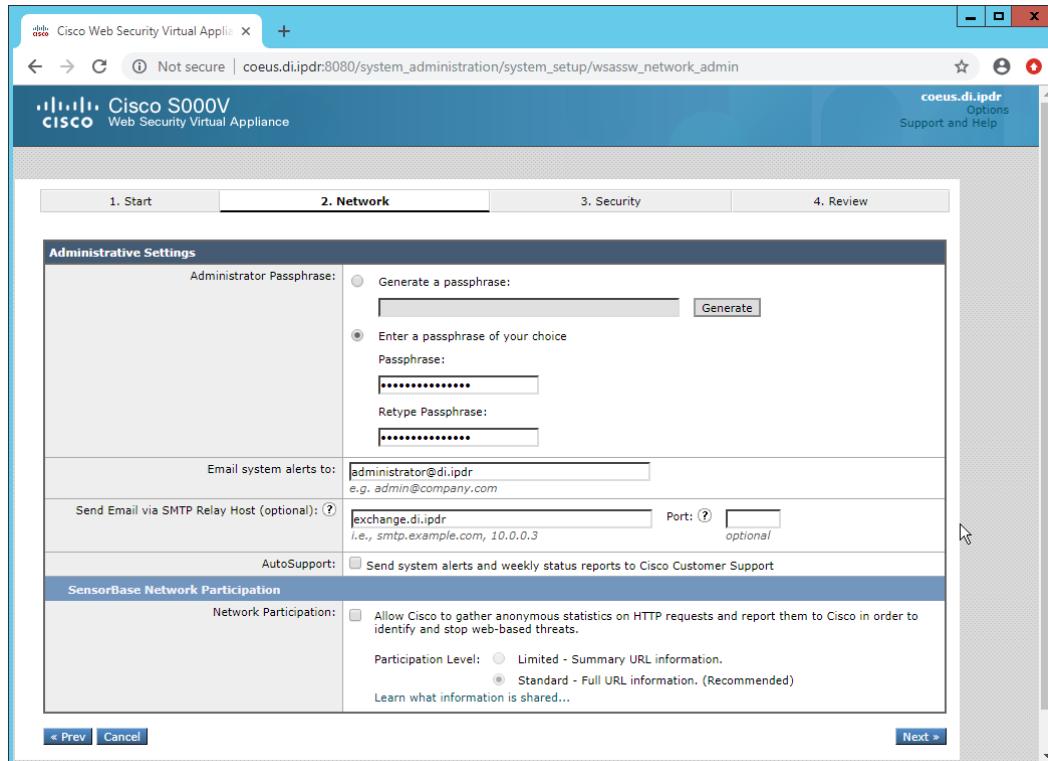
1982

13. Click **Next**.



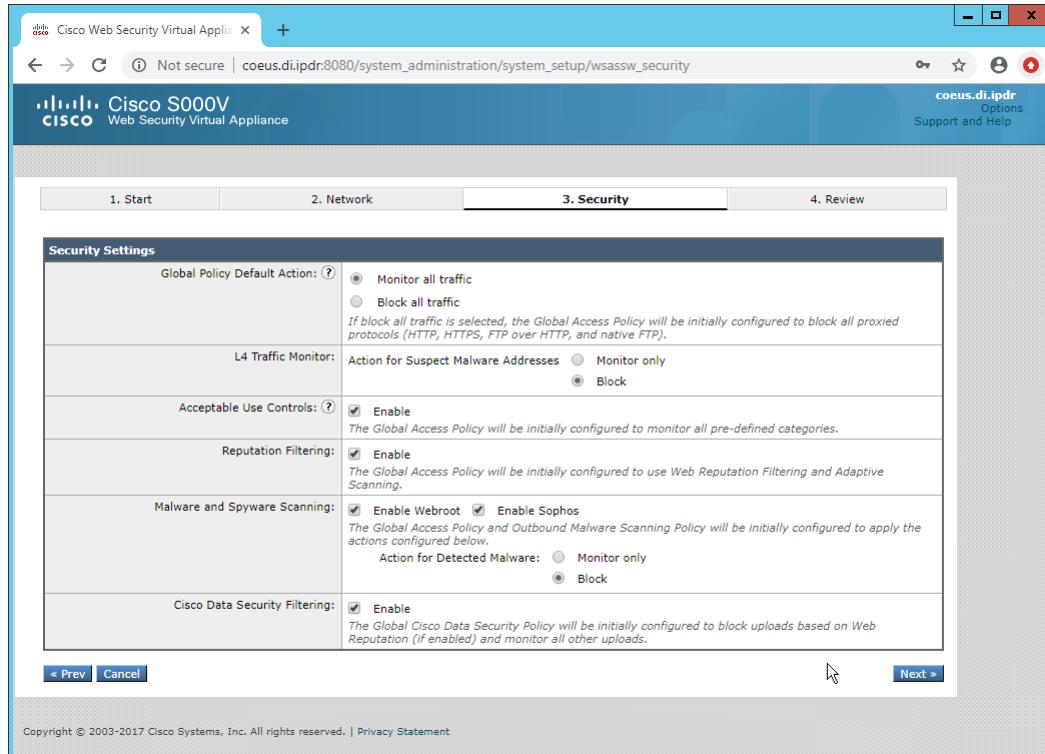
1983

- 1984 14. Click **Next**.
- 1985 15. Set a **passphrase** for the administrator.
- 1986 16. Enter an **email address** to which alerts should be sent.
- 1987 17. Enter the **hostname** of the email server.
- 1988 18. Decide whether to forward alerts and reports to Cisco Customer Support, as well as whether to share anonymous statistics based on the needs of your organization.
- 1989



1990

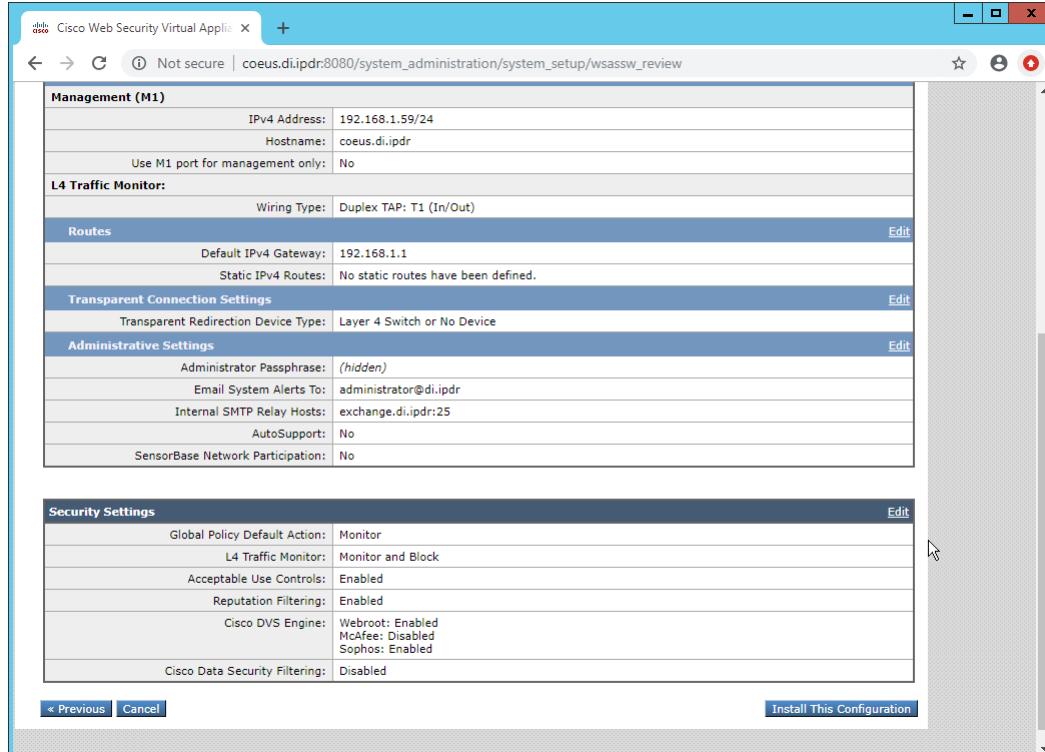
- 1991 19. Click **Next**.
- 1992 20. Select **Monitor All Traffic**.
- 1993 21. Select **Block for Action for Suspect Malware Addresses**.
- 1994 22. Select **Block for Action for Detected Malware**.
- 1995 23. Configure the rest of the malware policy according to your organization's needs.



1996

1997

24. Click **Next**.



1998

1999 25. Click **Install This Configuration**.2000 **2.14.3 Using WSA to Proxy Traffic**

2001 Cisco WSA is intended to act as a proxy between clients and the internet, to prevent malicious traffic
 2002 and software from reaching the client systems before they can do any damage. The appliance must
 2003 have a way of intercepting traffic from the clients to the internet.

2004 To achieve this, we used a Proxy Auto Config (PAC) file on our DNS server (Windows 2012 DNS), and this
 2005 section details how to set up a simple PAC file to forward all traffic to WSA. This may not be an ideal
 2006 setup for every environment, particularly in environments that use an external DNS server.

2007 ***2.14.3.1 Creating a PAC File***

- 2008 1. Create a new file named **wpad.dat** and enter the following JavaScript function:

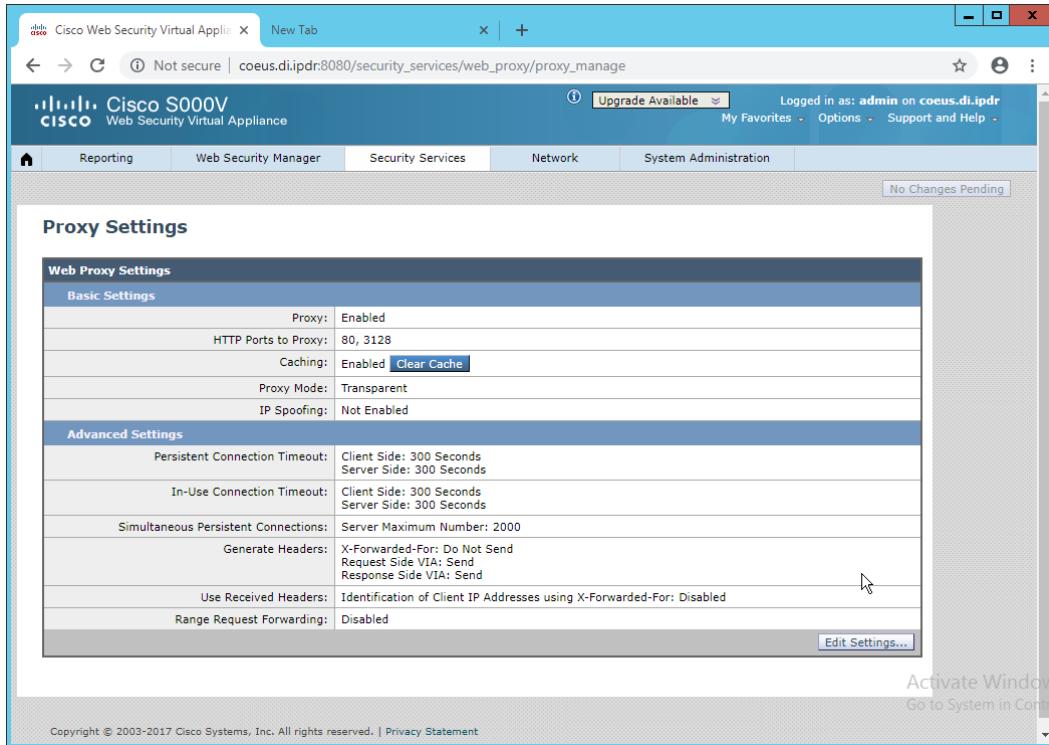
```
function FindProxyForURL(url, host) {
    return "PROXY coeus.di.ipdr:3128";
}
```

2009

2010 This is the most basic template for a proxy that directs all traffic to the host coeus.di.ipdr. The
 2011 return value of this function can take the form “PROXY <hostname1>; PROXY
 2012 <hostname2>” if you wish to have fail-over proxies, or “DIRECT” to not use any proxy. You can
 2013 also add rules to allow certain types of traffic through the proxy or direct them to other proxies. For
 2014 more information, see <https://findproxyforurl.com>.

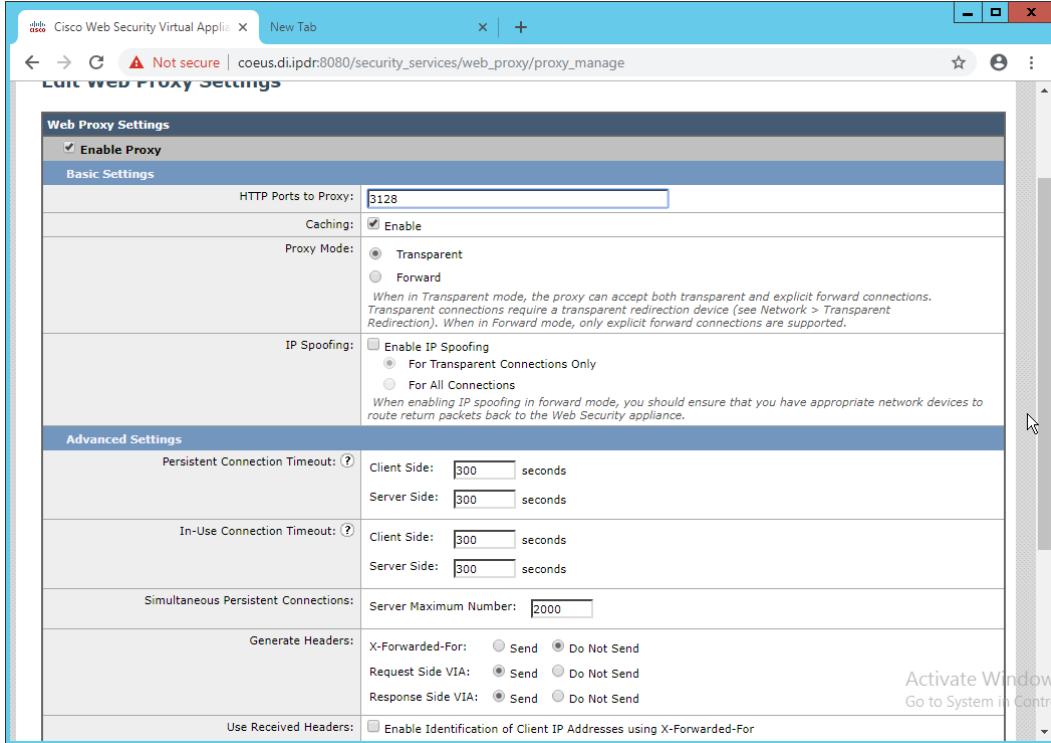
2015 For the purposes of our setup, we will simply direct all traffic to Cisco WSA, but be aware that PAC
 2016 files can be more complex and designed according to the needs of the organization.

- 2017 2. In the web console, navigate to **Security Services > Web Proxy**.

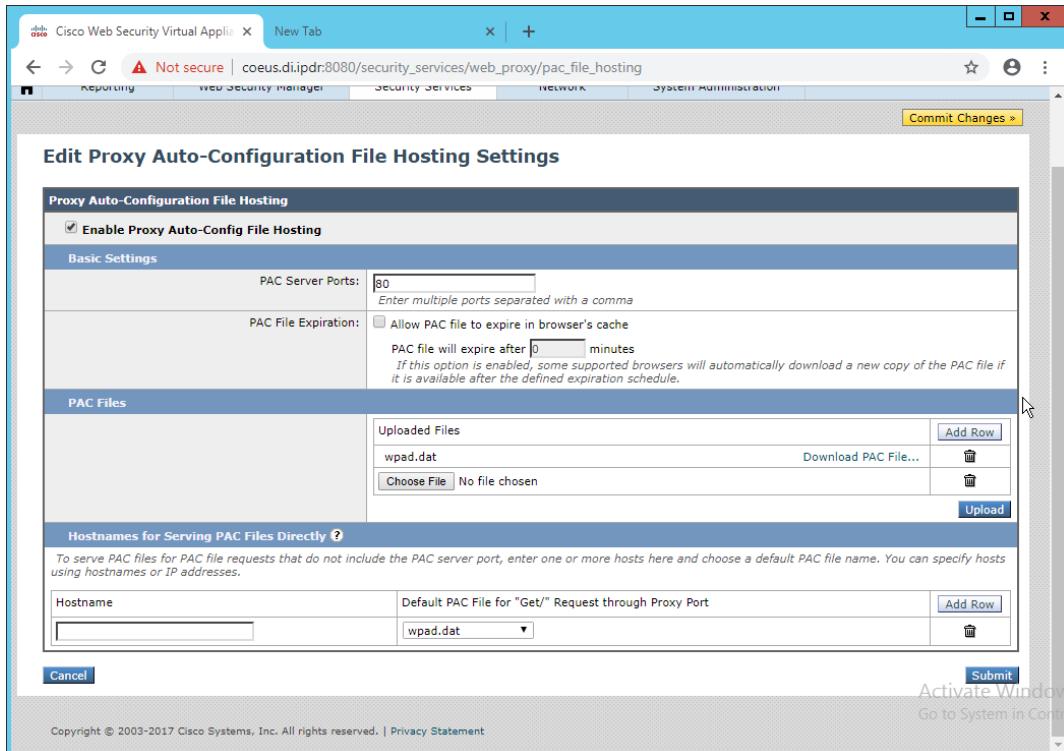


2018

- 2019 3. Click **Edit Settings**.
 2020 4. Remove port 80 from **HTTP Ports to Proxy** (ensure that **3128** is in this field).

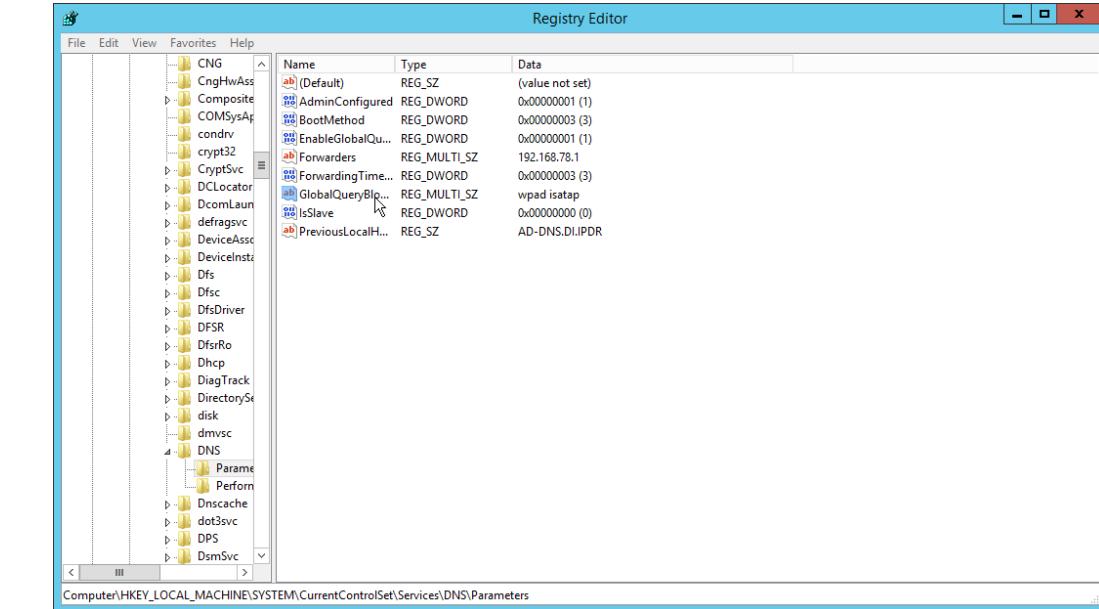


- 2021
 2022 5. Click **Submit**.
 2023 6. Navigate to **Security Services > PAC File Hosting**.
 2024 7. Click **Enable and Edit Settings**.
 2025 8. Under **PAC Files**, click **Choose File**.
 2026 9. Select the **wpad.dat** file created earlier.
 2027 10. Click **Open**.
 2028 11. Click **Upload**.
 2029 12. Enter **80** for **PAC Server Ports**.



- 2030
 2031 13. Click **Submit**.
 2032 14. Click **Commit Changes**.
 2033 15. Enter a comment if desired.
 2034 16. Click **Commit Changes**.
- 2035 *2.14.3.2 Setting Up Web Proxy Auto Discovery (WPAD)*
- 2036 1. On the DNS server, open **regedit.exe**.
 2037 2. Navigate to **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE > SYSTEM > CurrentControlSet > Services > DNS > Parameters**.

2039

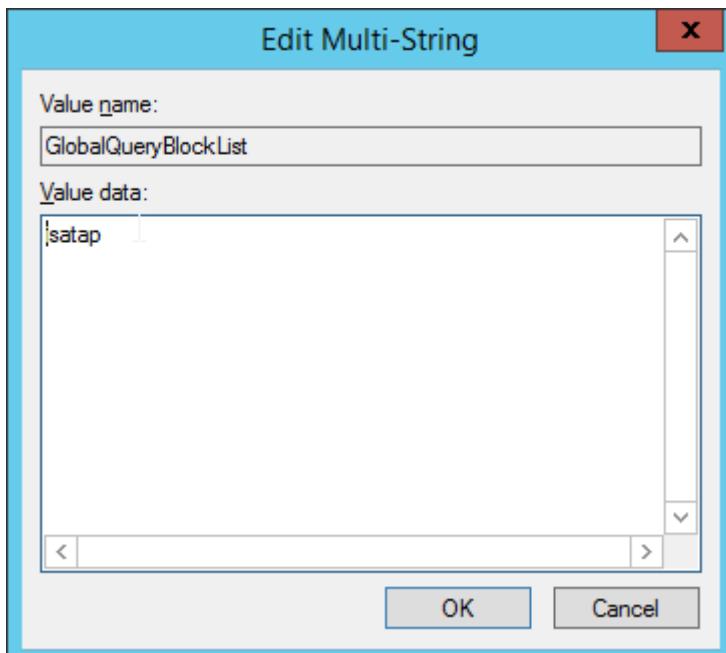


2040

3. Double-click **GlobalQueryBlockList**.

2041

4. Remove wpad from the list but leave isatap on the list.



2042

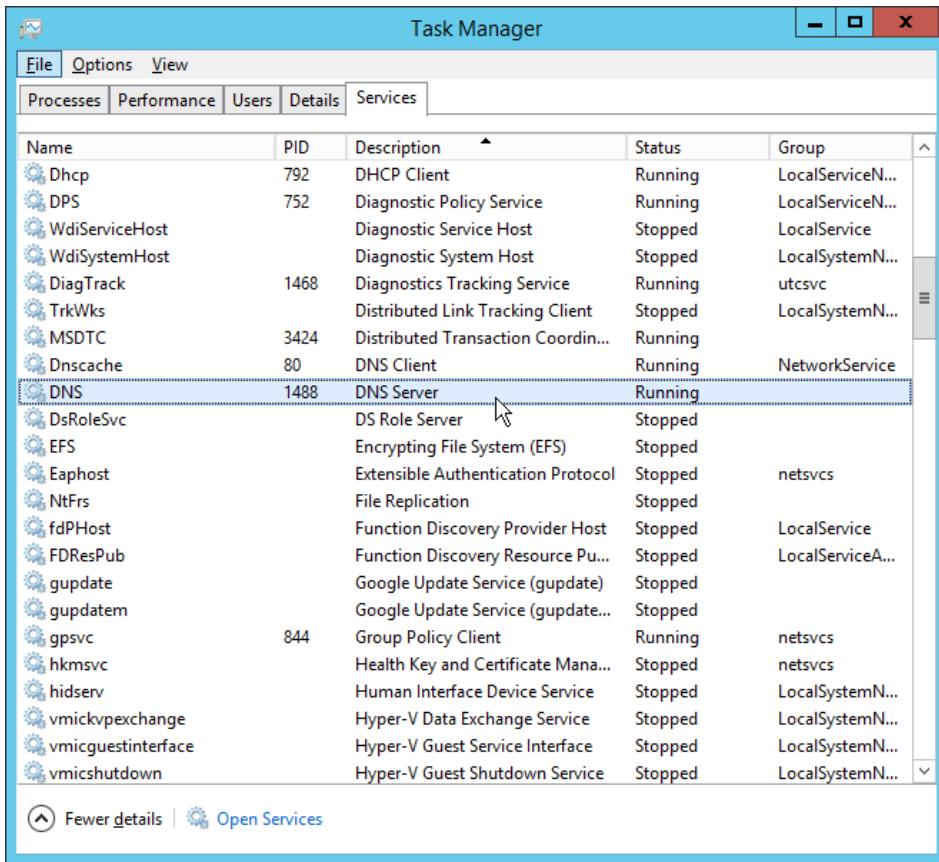
5. Click **OK**.

2043

6. Open **Task Manager**.

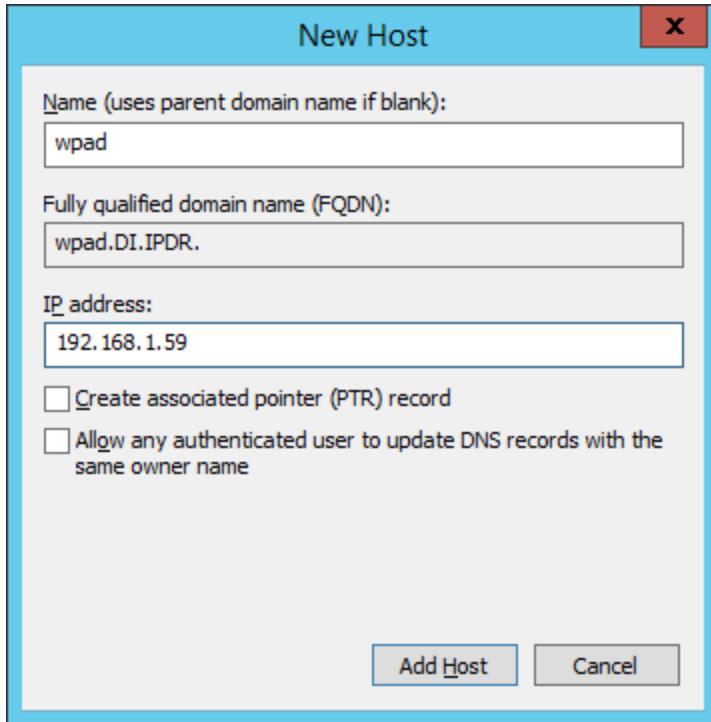
2044

7. Click **Services**.



2046

8. Restart the **DNS Server** service.
9. Open **DNS Manager**.
10. Right-click on your enterprise's domain, and click **New Host (A or AAAA)**.
11. Enter **wpad** for **Name**.
12. Enter the **IP address** of WSA.



2052

2053 13. Click **Add Host**.

2054 This will set up the WPAD proxy file as the default proxy—so browsers that are using “Automatically
2055 detect settings” for their proxy setting will find this file. Be aware that this is not sufficient for a
2056 secure setup but will allow you to quickly test the proxy’s functionality.

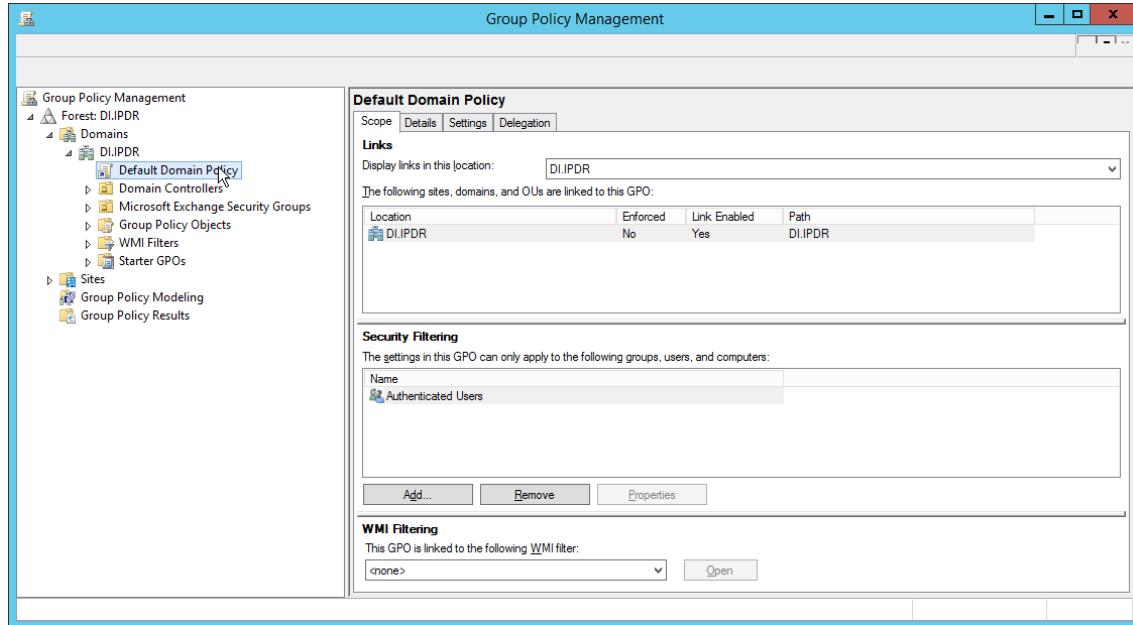
2057 *2.14.3.3 Configure Group Policy to Use Explicit Proxy*

2058 Note that, at this point, WPAD is vulnerable to an attack where the server hosting WPAD is brought
2059 down and the browser automatically attempts to find the next WPAD proxy, which may be
2060 controlled by an attacker.

2061 To mitigate this vulnerability, we explicitly point to this proxy file with any browsers used by clients.
2062 For Internet Explorer and Google Chrome, it is sufficient to change group policy in Active Directory
2063 to direct the change across all systems.

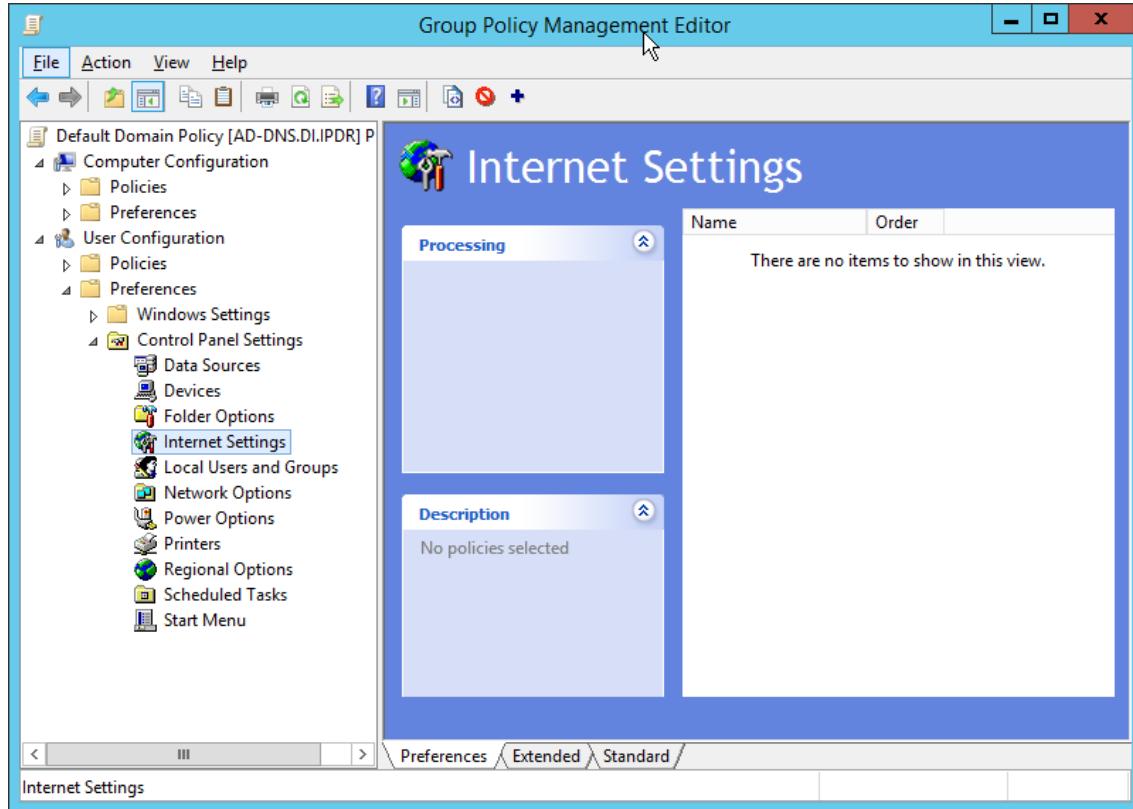
2064 For Mozilla Firefox, see this link (<https://support.mozilla.org/en-US/kb/connection-settings-firefox>)
2065 for configuration, including how to set it to “Use system proxy settings.”

2066 1. In **Group Policy Management**, right-click the **Default Domain Policy** and click **Edit**.



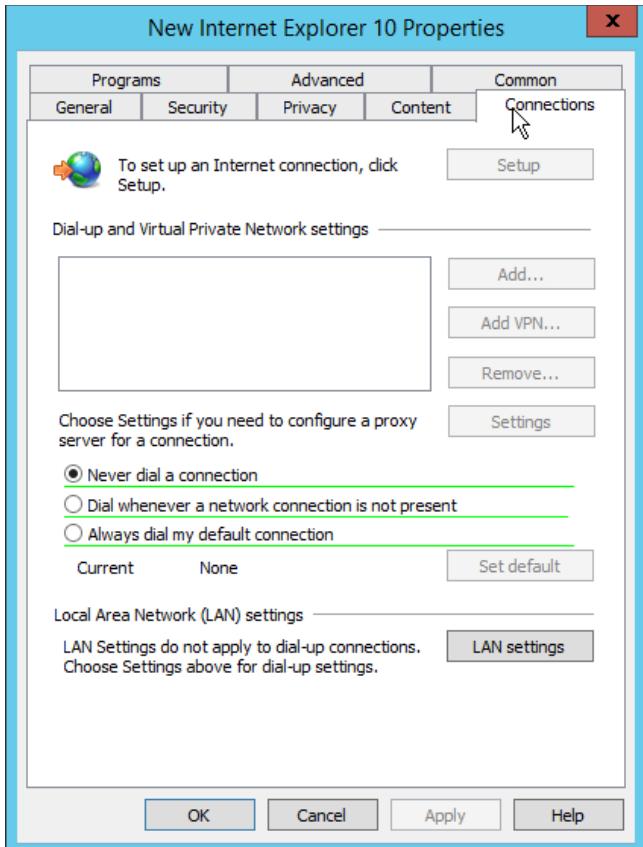
2067

2. In **Group Policy Management Editor**, navigate to **User Configuration > Preferences > Control Panel Settings > Internet Settings**.



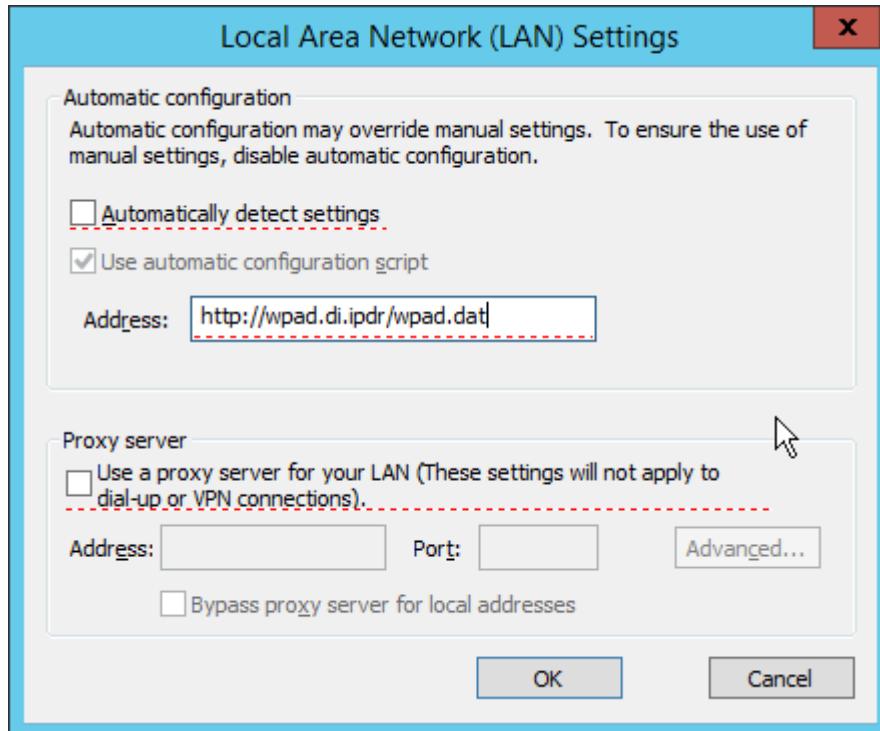
2070

- 2071 3. Right-click **Internet Settings** and select **New > Internet Explorer 10**.
2072 4. Click the **Connections** tab.



2073

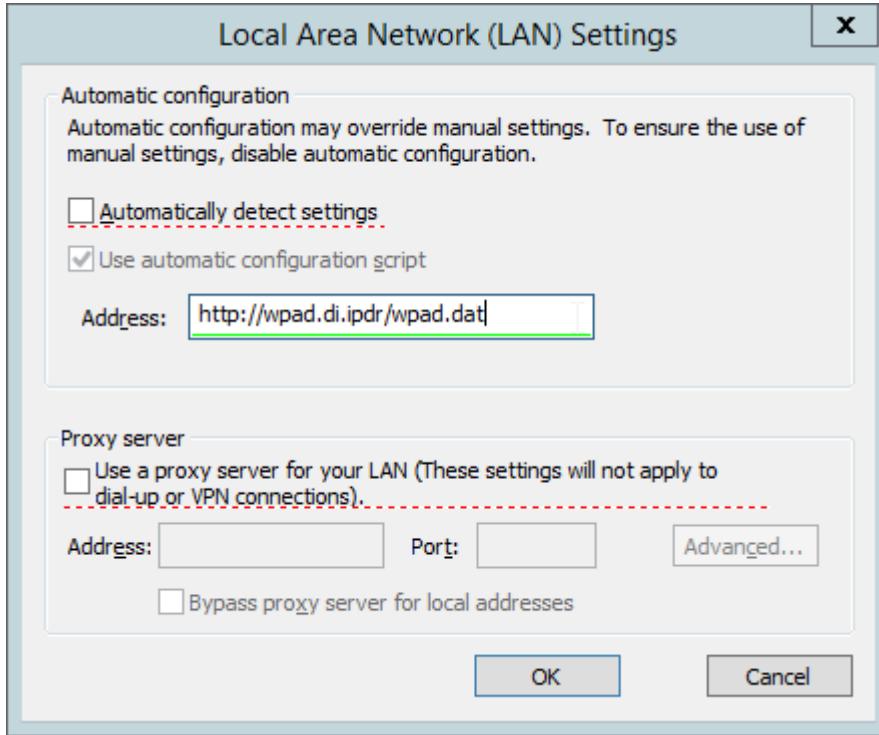
- 2074 5. Click **LAN Settings**.
- 2075 6. Enter the **address** of the WPAD file for address. This will likely take the form
- 2076 <http://wpad.my.domain/wpad.dat> if you followed these instructions for configuring the proxy
- 2077 file.
- 2078 7. Press the **F8** key to disable all settings in this dialogue box. (Note: This should underline
- 2079 everything in the box in red.)



2080

2081

8. Select the **Address** you just entered.



2082

2083 9. Press **F6** to enable this setting. (Note: The explicit WPAD address should now be underlined in
2084 green.)

2085

10. Click **OK**.

2086

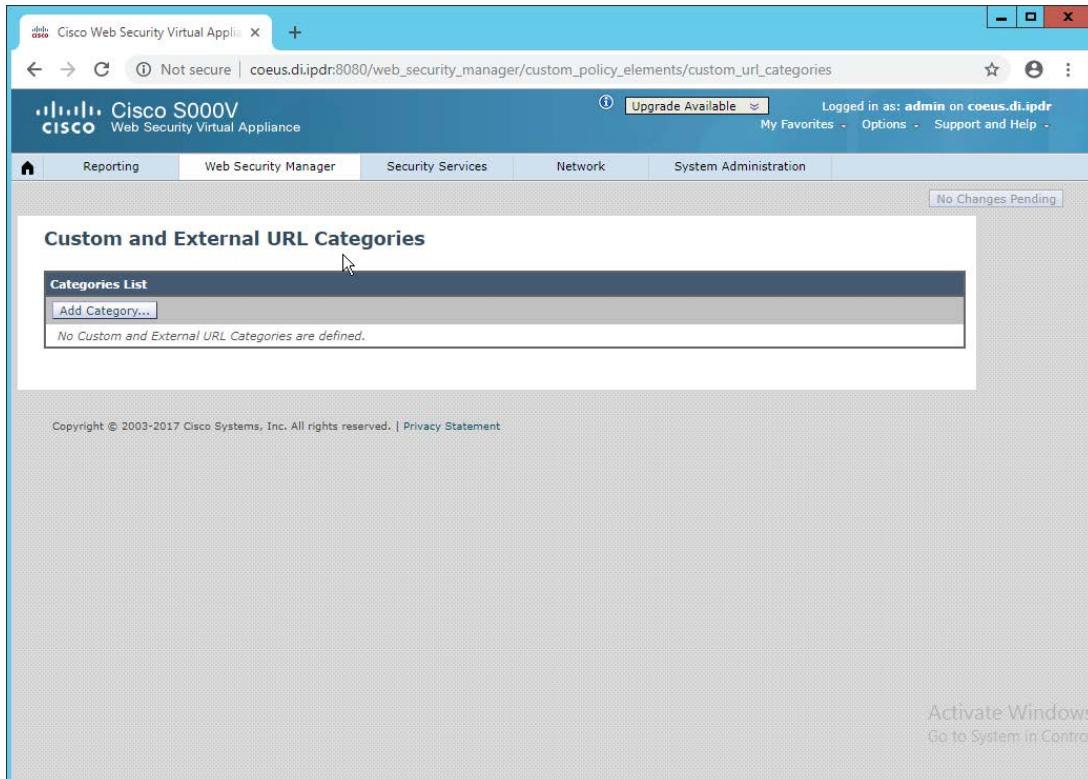
11. Click **OK**.

2087

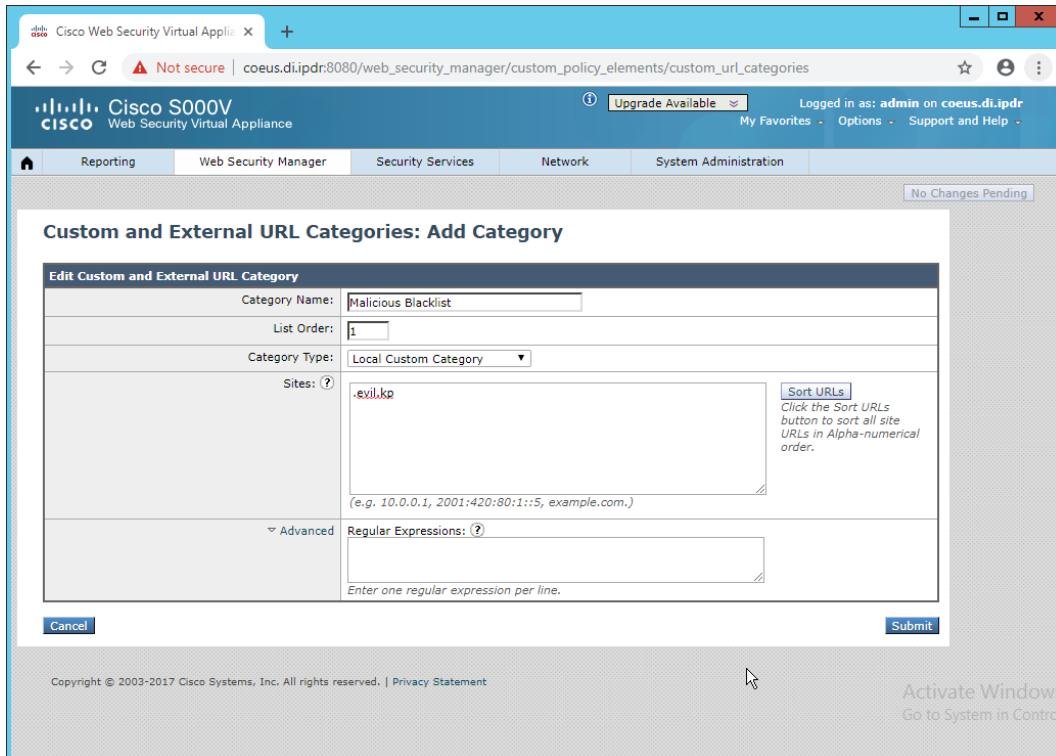
This Group Policy Object will update across all Windows systems whenever gpupdate.exe runs. An
insider or technically capable user could manually disable this to avoid using the proxy, but benign
2088 clients who do not attempt to circumvent it will be protected from external (internet-based) threats
2089 by Cisco WSA. Protection from insiders and local threats on the network is provided by other
2090 products in the architecture, such as the network protection component (CryptoniteNXT).

2092 2.14.4 Blacklisting

2093 1. Navigate to **Web Security Manager > Custom and External URL Categories**.



2094
2095 2. Click **Add Category**.
2096 3. Enter a **name** for **Category Name**.
2097 4. Select **Local Custom Category**. (The other option, **External Live Feed Category**, allows WSA to
2098 use a list of websites hosted somewhere else, potentially externally. For this demonstration we
2099 will simply enter websites in the **Sites** field, but note that this other option is available for
2100 convenience.)
2101 5. For **Sites**, enter any sites to blacklist. (Note: Entering **.mysite.abc** will include any subdomains of
2102 **mysite.abc**.)



2103
2104
2105

6. Click **Submit**.
7. Navigate to **Web Security Manager > Access Policies**.

The screenshot shows the Cisco Web Security Virtual Appliance interface. The title bar reads "Cisco Web Security Virtual Appliance" and the URL is "coeus.di.ipdr:8080/web_security_manager/proxy_security/policy_groups". The top menu bar includes "Reporting", "Web Security Manager", "Security Services", "Network", "System Administration", and "Commit Changes". The main content area is titled "Access Policies" and displays a table of policies. The table has columns: Order, Group, Protocols and User Agents, URL Filtering, Applications, Objects, Anti-Malware and Reputation, and Delete. A single row is visible, labeled "Global Policy Identification Profile: All". Under "URL Filtering", it says "Monitor: 86". A cursor arrow points to this "Monitor" link. The bottom of the screen shows copyright information and activation links.

2106

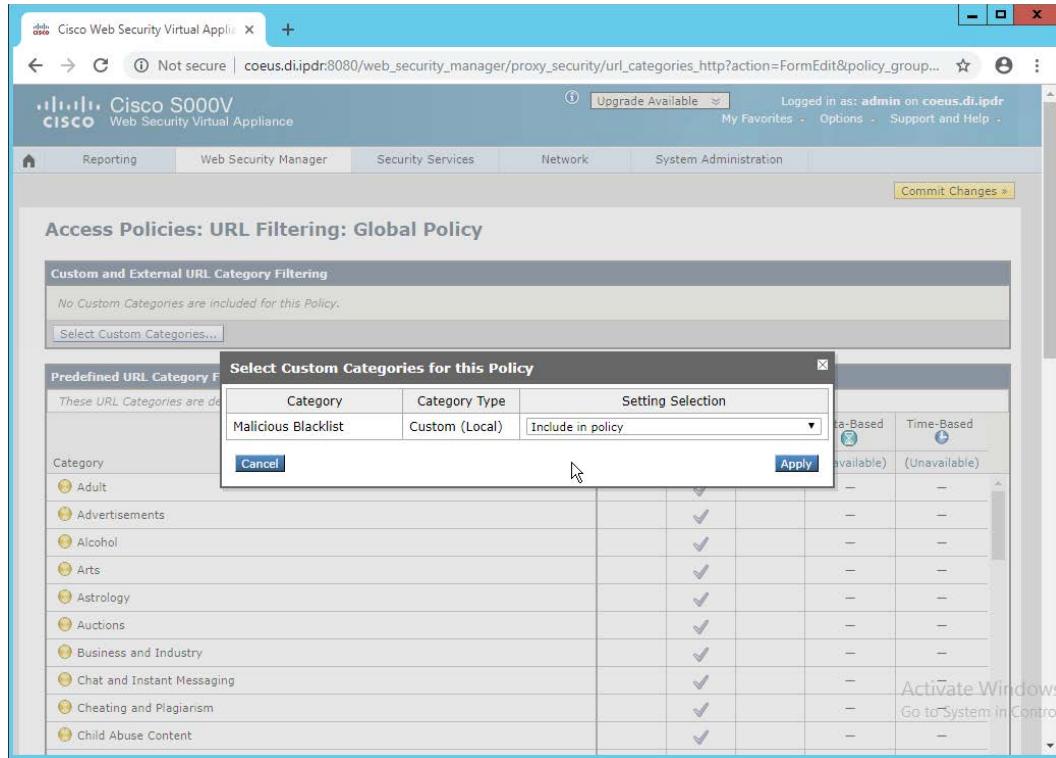
2107

8. Click the link under **URL Filtering**.

The screenshot shows the Cisco Web Security Virtual Appliance interface. The title bar reads "Cisco Web Security Virtual Appliance" and "Cisco S000V Web Security Virtual Appliance". The top menu includes "Reporting", "Web Security Manager" (selected), "Security Services", "Network", "System Administration", and "Commit Changes". The main content area is titled "Access Policies: URL Filtering: Global Policy". It has two sections: "Custom and External URL Category Filtering" (empty) and "Predefined URL Category Filtering". The "Predefined URL Category Filtering" section contains a table with columns for Category, Block, Monitor, Warn, Quota-Based, and Time-Based. The categories listed are Adult, Advertisements, Alcohol, Arts, Astrology, Auctions, Business and Industry, Chat and Instant Messaging, Cheating and Plagiarism, and Child Abuse Content. All categories have the "Block" and "Monitor" checkboxes checked.

2108

- 2109 9. Click **Select Custom Categories**.
- 2110 10. For the category just created, select **Include in policy** under **Setting Selection**.



2111
2112

11. Click **Apply**.

The screenshot shows the Cisco Web Security Virtual Appliance interface. The title bar reads "Cisco Web Security Virtual Appliance". The main menu includes "Reporting", "Web Security Manager", "Security Services", "Network", and "System Administration". A "Commit Changes" button is visible in the top right.

The current page is "Access Policies: URL Filtering: Global Policy". It displays two sections: "Custom and External URL Category Filtering" and "Predefined URL Category Filtering".

Custom and External URL Category Filtering:

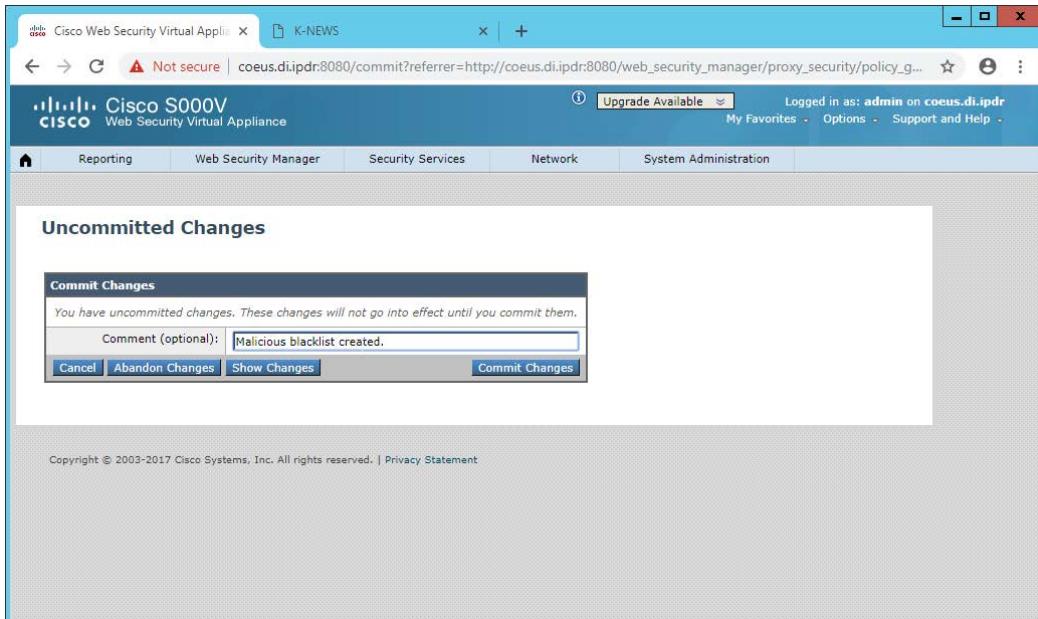
Category	Category Type	Block	Redirect	Allow	Monitor	Warn	Quota-Based	Time-Based
		Select all	Select all	Select all	Select all	Select all	(Unavailable)	(Unavailable)
Malicious Blacklist	Custom (Local)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						
Select Custom Categories...								

Predefined URL Category Filtering:

Category	Block	Monitor	Warn	Quota-Based	Time-Based
	Select all	Select all	Select all	(Unavailable)	(Unavailable)
Adult	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
Advertisements		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			
Alcohol		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			
Arts		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			
Astrology		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			
Auctions		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			

2113

- 2114 12. The category should now show under **Custom and External URL Category Filtering**. Put a
2115 checkmark in the **Block** box. (Selecting **Allow** lets you white-list domains that are being
2116 incorrectly classified as malicious.)
2117 13. Click **Submit**.
2118 14. Click **Commit Changes**.
2119 15. Enter a comment if desired.



2120

2121 16. Click **Commit Changes**.

2122

2123

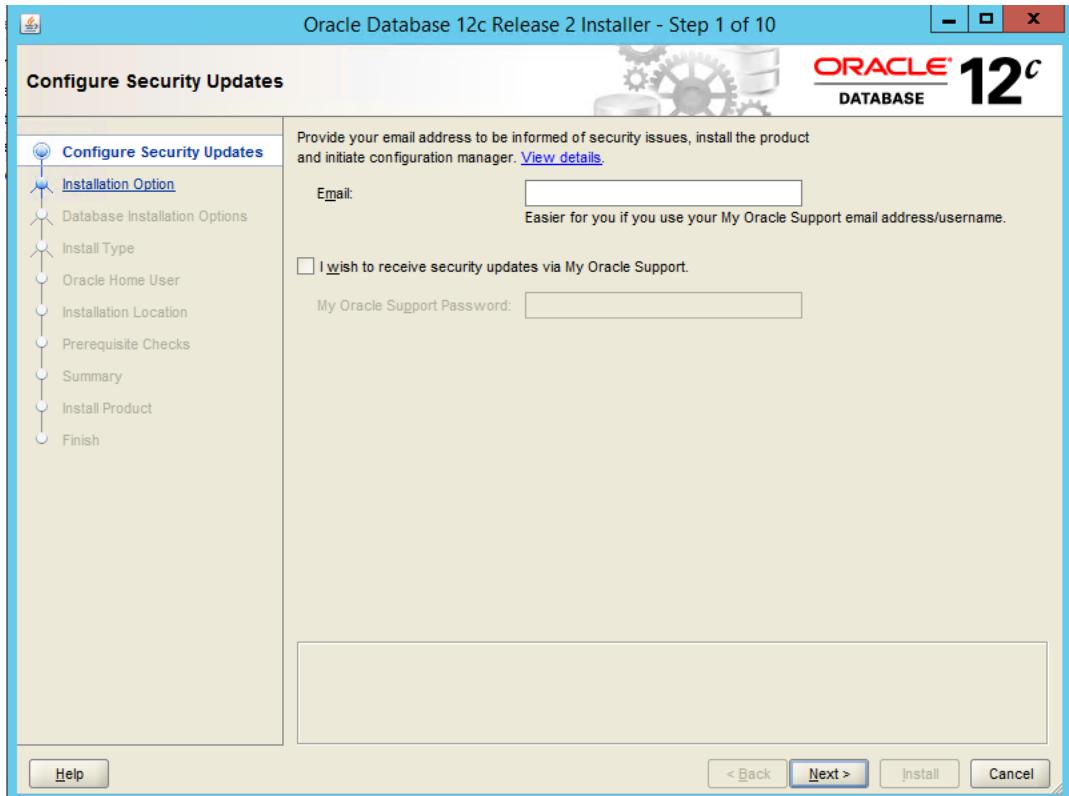
2.15 Symantec Data Loss Prevention

2124

2.15.1 Install Oracle 12c Enterprise

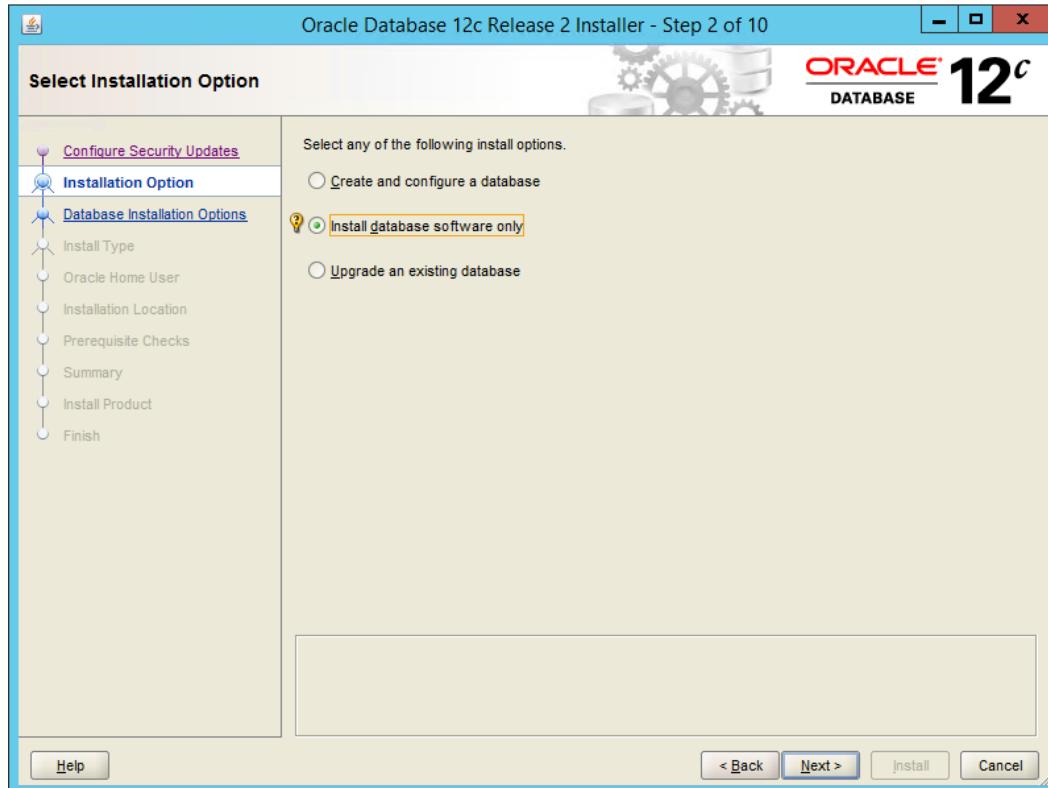
- 2125 1. Unzip the Symantec DLP installation files.
- 2126 2. Download the Oracle 12c installation files from <https://www.oracle.com> if they are not included with the Symantec DLP installation files.
- 2128 3. Move both sets of installation files to a temporary directory, such as **C:\temp**.
- 2129 4. Copy the Symantec **12.2.0.1_64_bit_Installation_Tools** folder to **C:\temp\Oracle\tools**.
- 2130 5. From a command prompt, navigate to **C:\temp\Oracle\database**, assuming the Oracle installation files were unzipped to **C:\temp\Oracle**.
- 2131 6. Run the following command:

```
> C:\temp\Oracle\database\setup.exe -noconfig -responsefile
C:\temp\Oracle\tools\responsefiles\Oracle_12.2.0.1_Enterprise_Edi
tion_Installation_WIN.rsp
```
- 2136 7. Once the wizard opens, you will be asked to configure security updates. If you do not possess a My Oracle Support account, leave the box unchecked and provide an **email**.



2138
2139
2140

8. Click **Next**.
9. Select **Install database software only**.



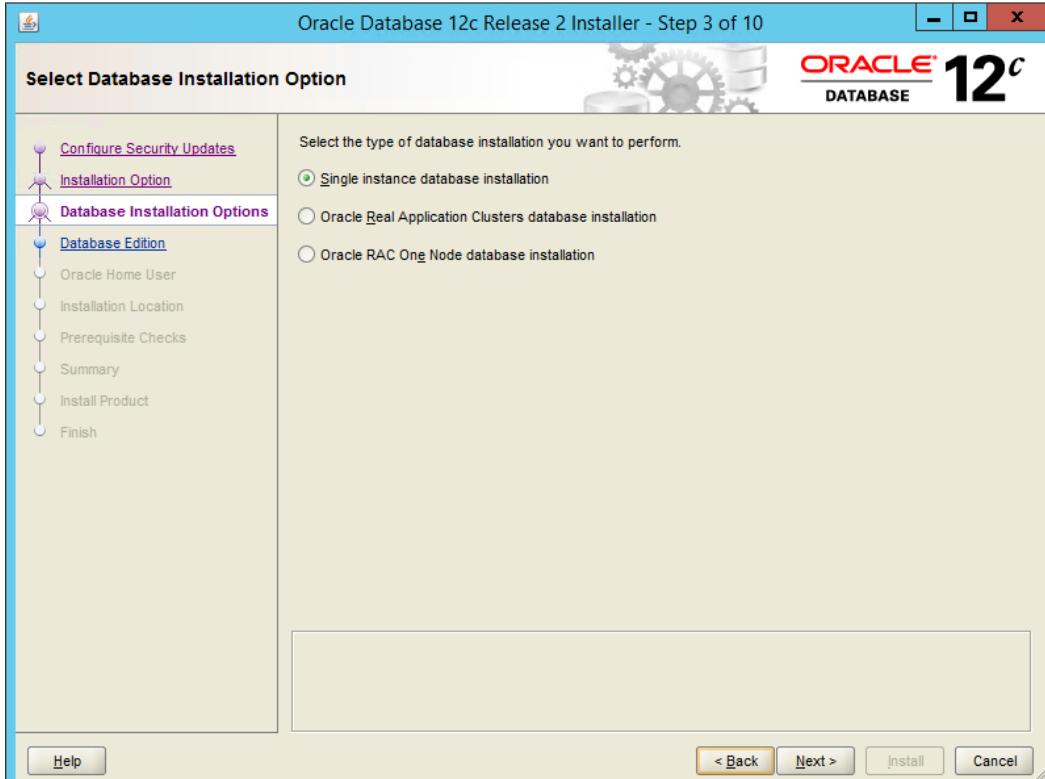
2141

2142

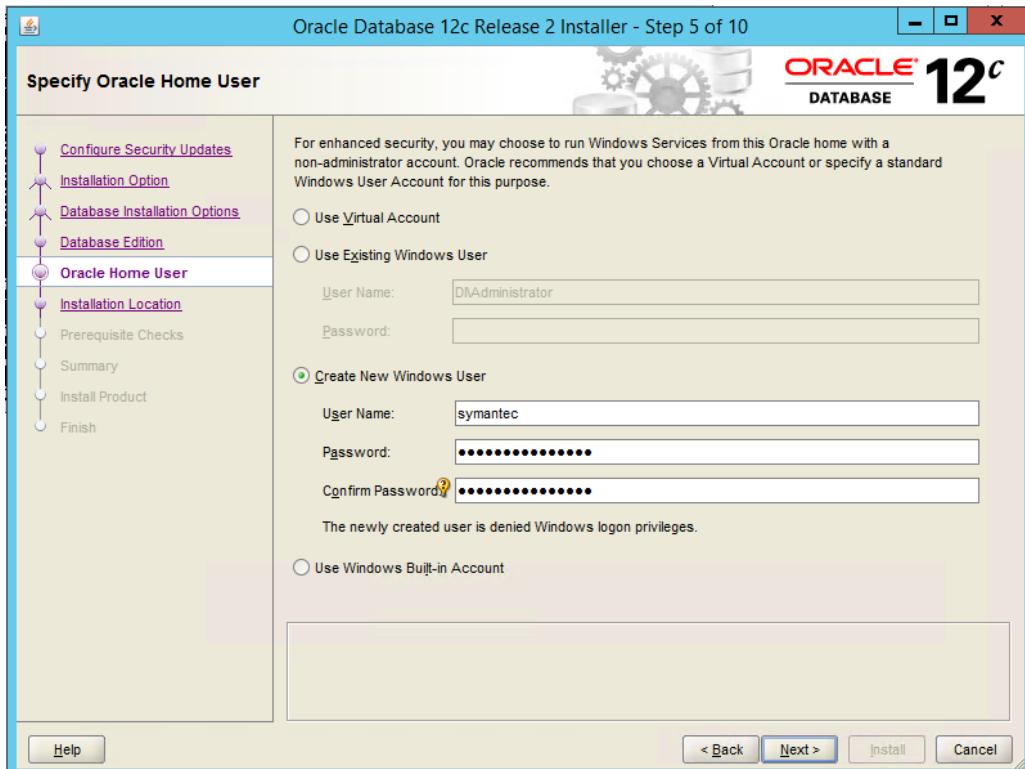
10. Click **Next**.

2143

11. Select **Single instance database installation**.



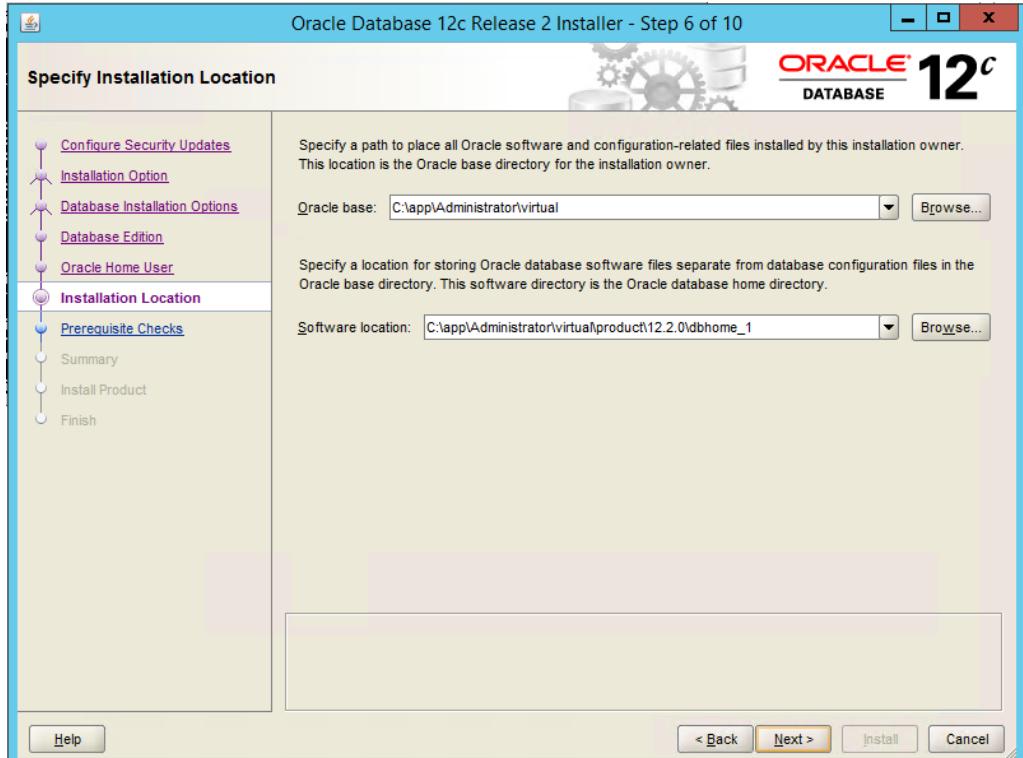
2144
2145 12. Click **Next**.
2146 13. Select **Standard Edition**.
2147 14. Click **Next**.
2148 15. Select **Create New Windows User**.
2149 16. Enter the **username** and **password** of a new user for Active Directory.



2150

2151 17. Click **Next**.

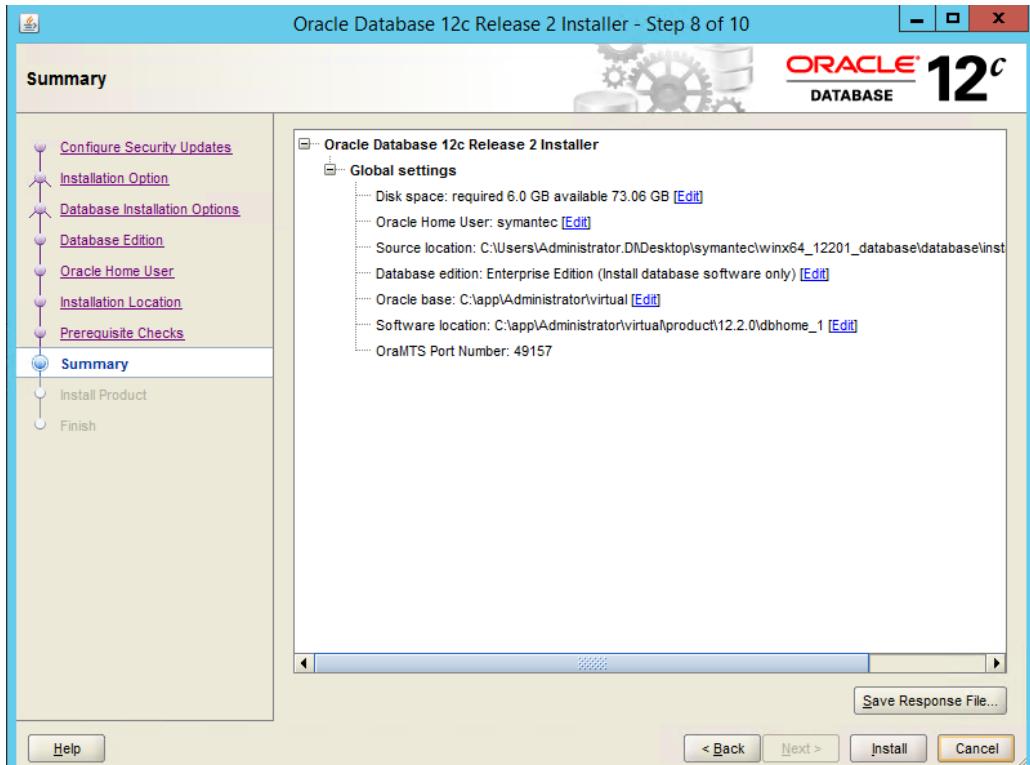
2152 18. Select a location to install the software, if desired.



2153

2154

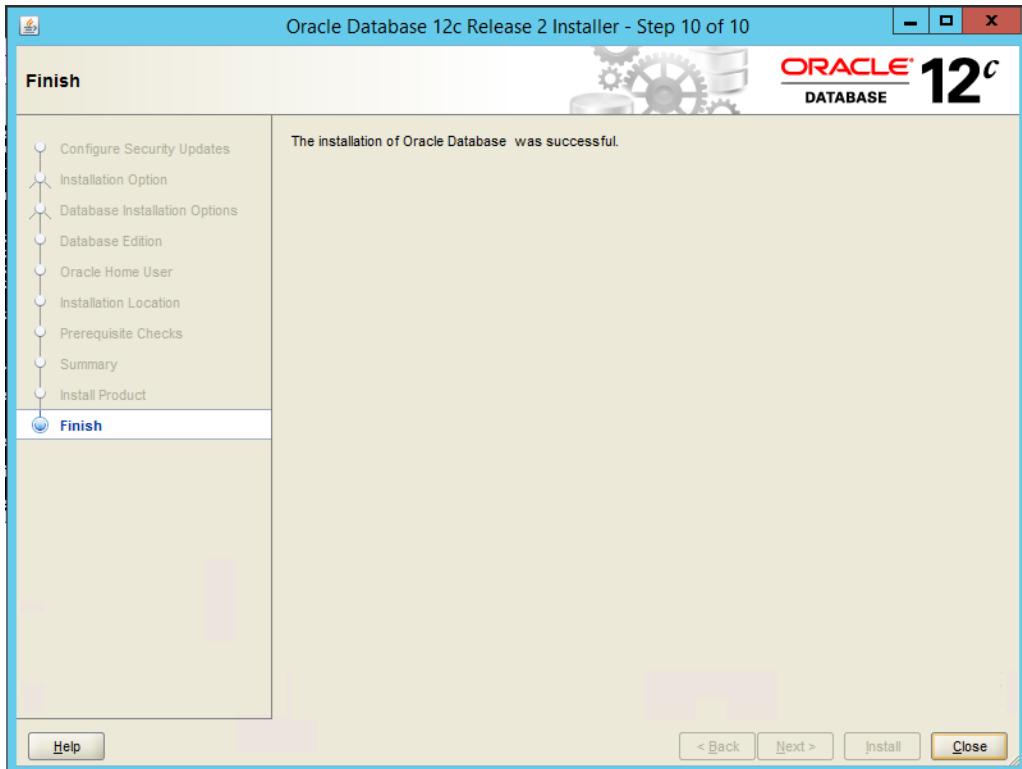
19. Click **Next**.



2155

2156

20. Verify the information and click **Install**. The installation may take a long time.



2157

2158 21. Click **Close** when the installation is complete.

2159 2.15.2 Create an Oracle Database for Symantec DLP

2160 1. Set the ORACLE_HOME environment variable by running the following command. Adjust the
2161 path accordingly if using a version other than 12.2.0.

2162 > set

2163 ORACLE_HOME=C:\app\Administrator\virtual\product\12.2.0\dbhome_1

2164 2. Copy the Oracle database template named **Oracle_12.2.0.1_Template_for_64_bit_WIN.dbt**
2165 from the Symantec DLP zip file into

2166 **C:\app\Administrator\virtual\product\12.2.0\dbhome_1\assistants\dbca\templates.**

2167 3. Ensure that the response file **Oracle_12.2.0.1_DBCA_WIN.rsp** is located in the folder
2168 **C:\temp\Oracle\database\tools\responsefiles.**

2169 4. Run the following command.

2170 > %ORACLE_HOME%\bin\dbca -createDatabase -progressOnly -
2171 responseFile

2172 C:\temp\Oracle\database\tools\responsefiles\Oracle_12.2.0.1_DBCA_
2173 WIN.rsp

- 2174 5. Enter a **password** for the **SYS** user. (Only the special characters _, #, or \$ are allowed.)
2175 6. Enter a **password** for the **SYSTEM** user. (Only the special characters _, #, or \$ are allowed.)
2176 7. Enter a **password** for the **Oracle Home User**.

2177 2.15.3 Configuring the Oracle Listener

- 2178 1. Ensure that the database services OracleServicePROTECT and
2179 DistributedTransactionCoordinator are running.
2180 2. In the file %ORACLE_HOME%\network\admin\sqlnet.ora, change the line
2181 SQLNET.AUTHENTICATION_SERVICES=(NTS) to SQLNET.AUTHENTICATION_SERVICES=(none).
2182 3. Navigate to **Start > All Programs > Oracle 12.2.0 > Configuration and Migration Tools > Net**
2183 **Configuration Assistant** and run the program.
2184 4. Select **Listener configuration**.

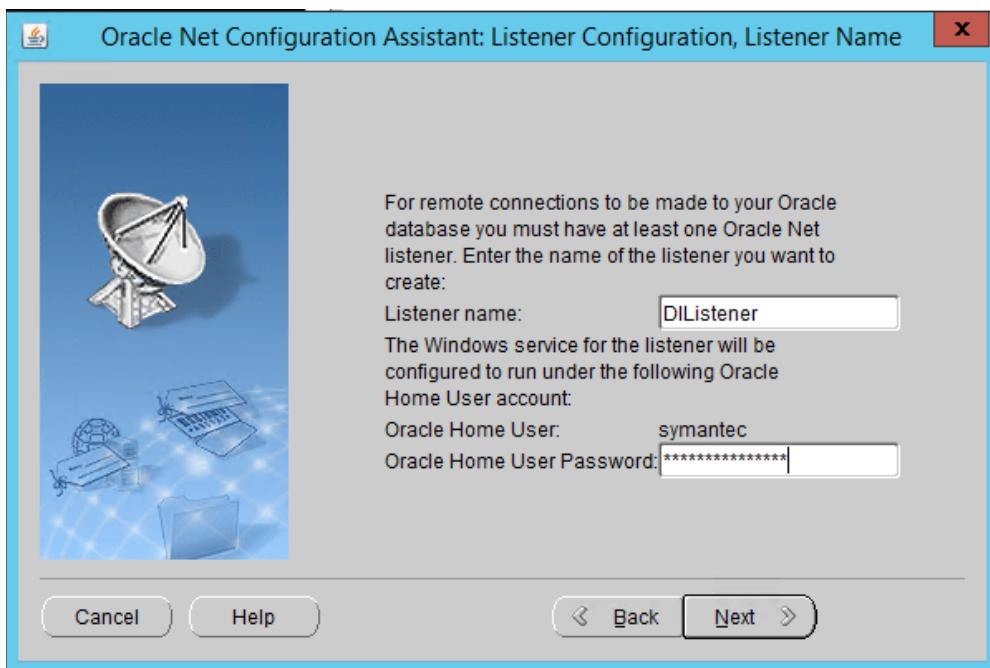


- 2185 5. Click **Next**.
2186 6. Select **Add**.



2188
2189
2190
2191

7. Click **Next**.
8. Enter a **name** for the listener.
9. Enter a **password**.



2192
2193

10. Click **Next**.

2194

11. Move the **TCP** protocol to the **Selected Protocols** column.

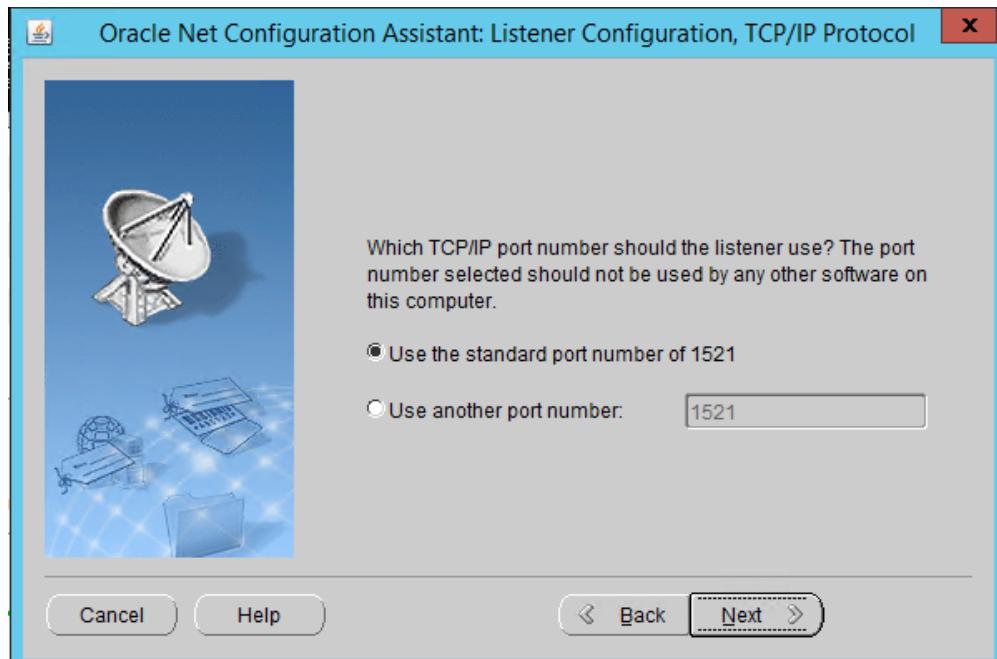


2195

12. Click **Next**.

2196

13. Select **Use the standard port number of 1521**.



2198

14. Click **Next**.

2200

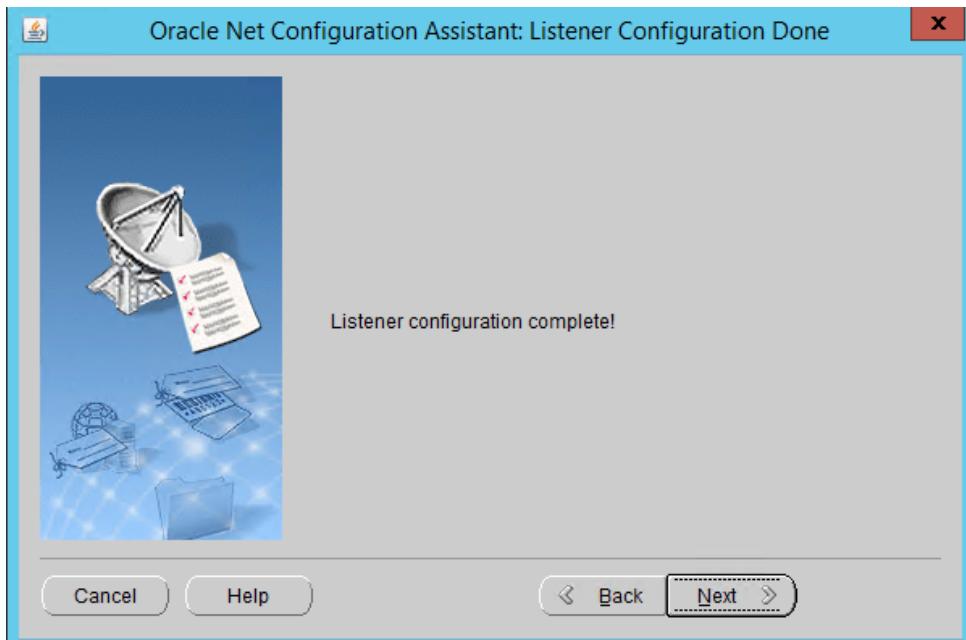
15. Select **No**.



2201

2202

16. Click **Next**.



2203

2204

17. Click **Next**.

2205

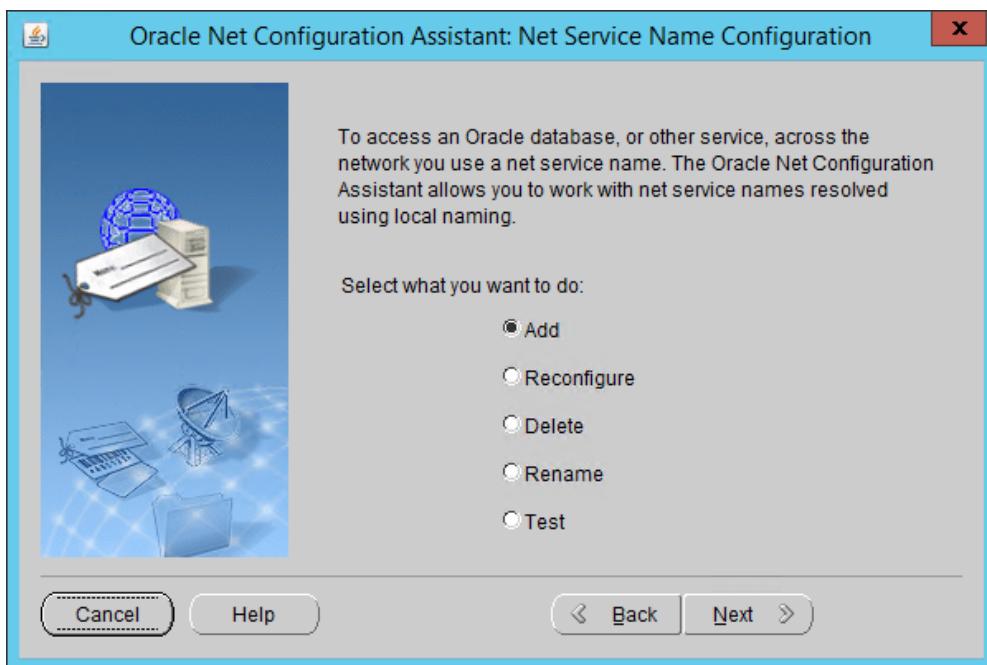
18. Select **Local Net Service Name configuration**.



2206

19. Click **Next**.

2207

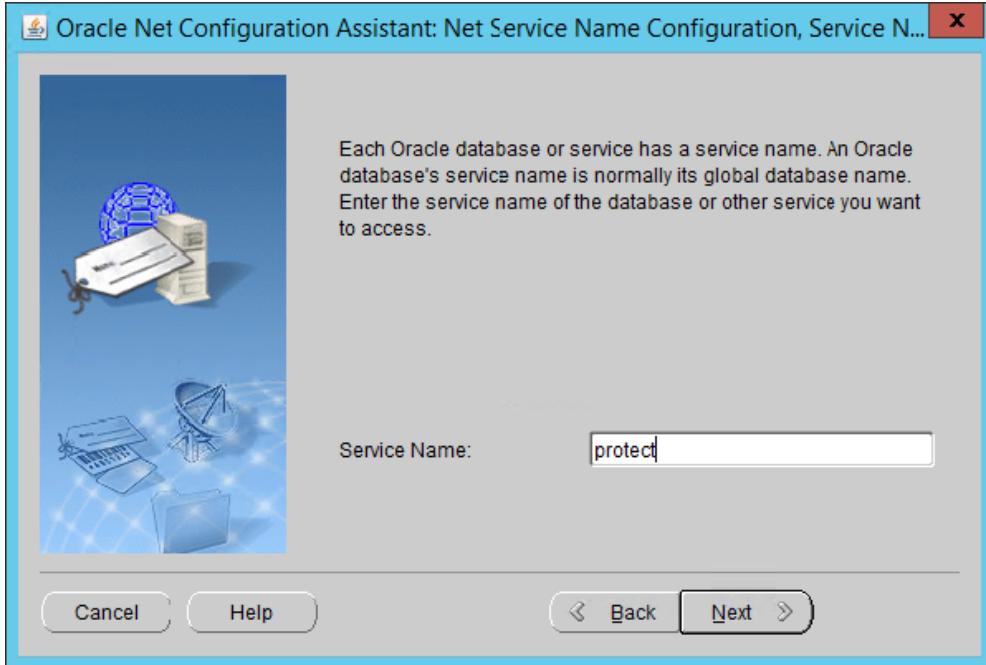
20. Select **Add**.

2209

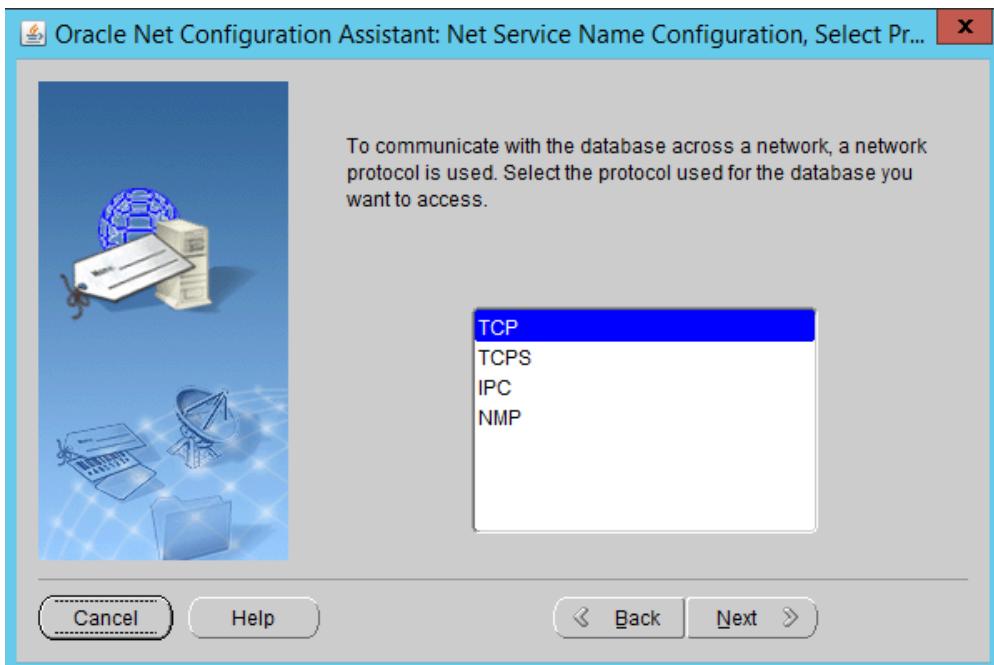
21. Click **Next**.

2211

22. Enter the word "protect" for the **name**.



2212

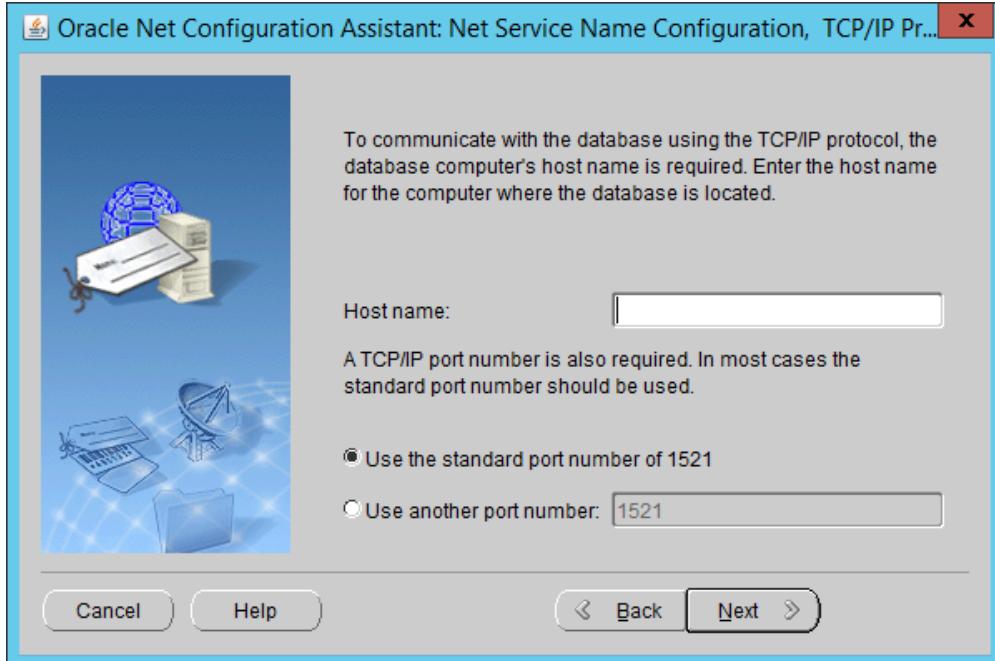
2213 23. Click **Next**.2214 24. Select **TCP**.

2215

2216 25. Click **Next**.2217 26. Enter the **IP address** of the system hosting the Oracle Database.

2218

27. Select **Use the standard port number of 1521**.

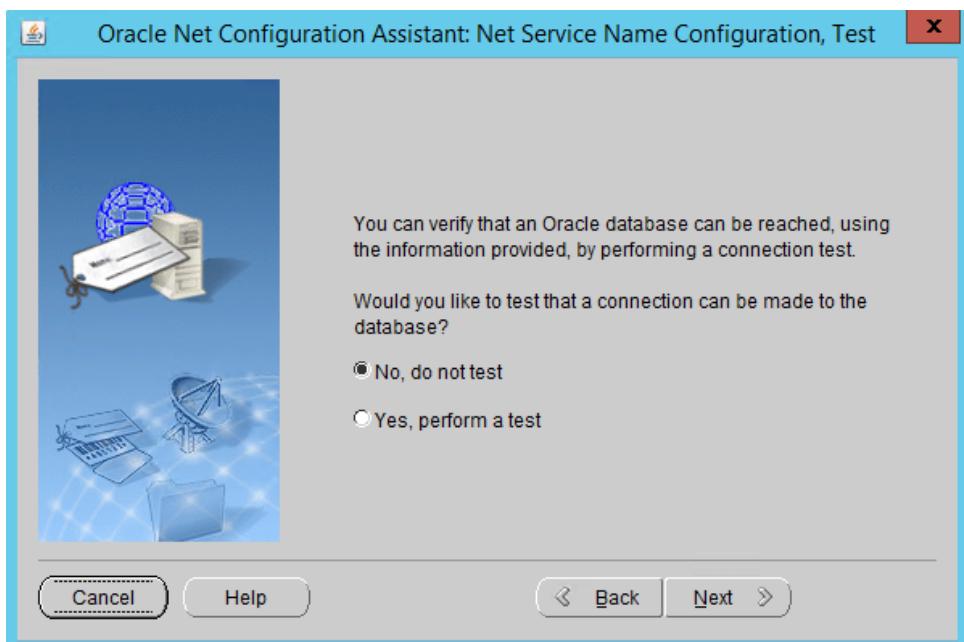


2219

28. Click **Next**.

2220

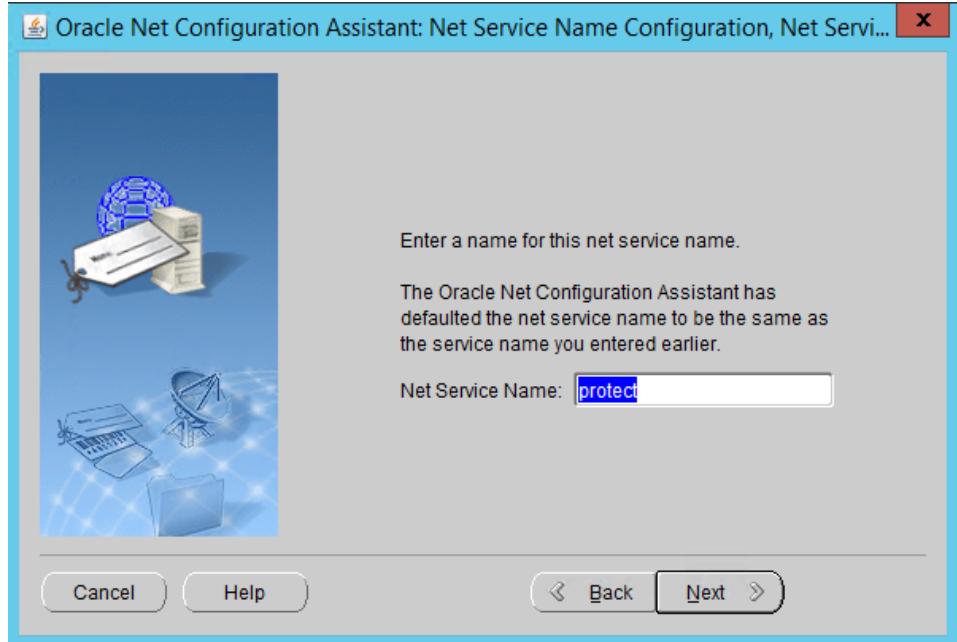
29. Select **No, do not test**.



2222

2223

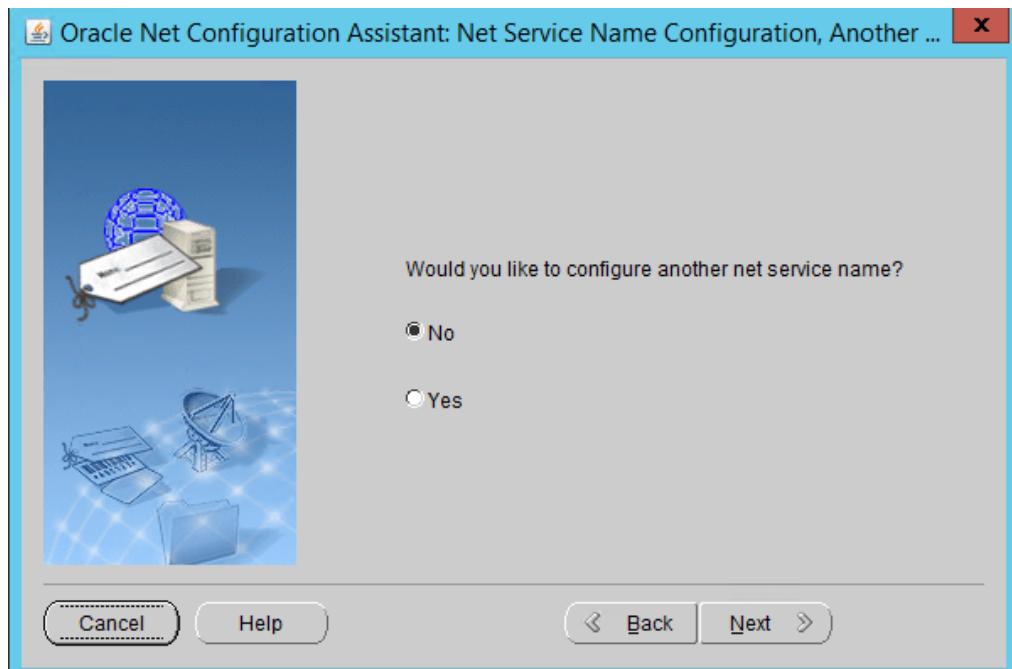
30. Click **Next**.



2224

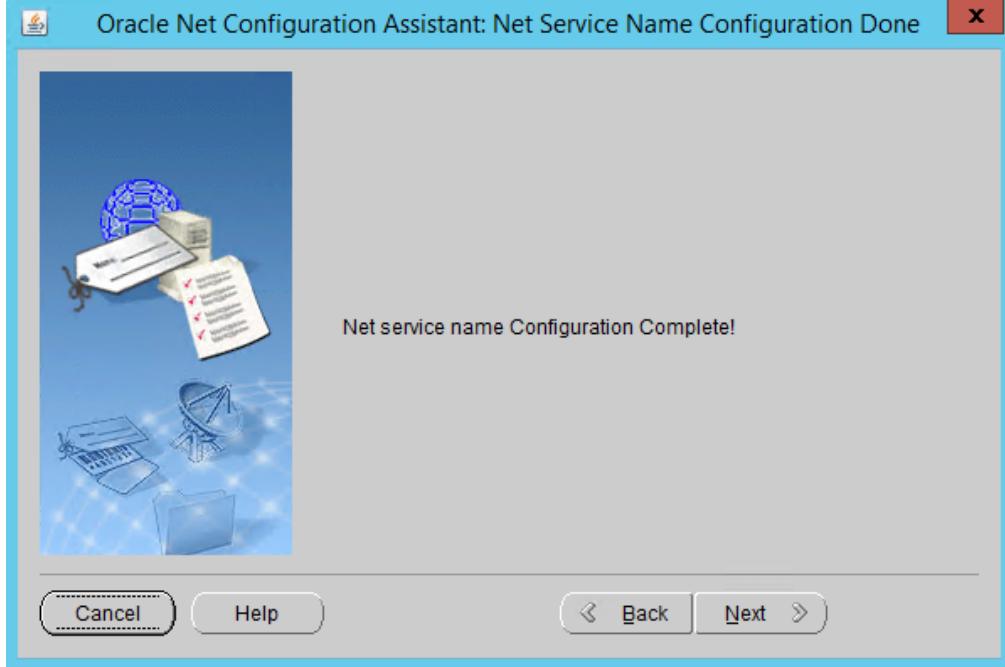
2225 31. Click **Next**.

2226 32. Select **No**.



2227

2228 33. Click **Next**.



2229
2230

34. Click **Next**.



2231
2232
2233

35. Click **Finish**.
36. In an administrative command prompt, run the following command to stop the listener.

2234 > lsnrctl stop

2235 37. Open the file %ORACLE_HOME%\network\admin\listener.ora.

2236 38. Change (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC)(KEY = <key_value>)) to (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC)(KEY = PROTECT)).

2237 39. Add the line SECURE_REGISTER_LISTENER=(IPC) to the end of the file.

```

File Edit Format View Help
# listener.ora Network Configuration File: C:\app\Administrator\virtual\product\12.2.0\dbhome_1\network\admin\listener.ora
# Generated by Oracle configuration tools.

SID_LIST_DILISTENER =
  (SID_LIST =
    (SID_DESC =
      (SID_NAME = CLRExtProc)
      (ORACLE_HOME = C:\app\Administrator\virtual\product\12.2.0\dbhome_1)
      (PROGRAM = extproc)
      (ENVS = "EXTPROC_DLLS=ONLY:C:\app\Administrator\virtual\product\12.2.0\dbhome_1\bin\oracldr12.dll")
    )
    (SID_DESC =
      (SID_NAME = CLRExtProc)
      (ORACLE_HOME = C:\app\Administrator\virtual\product\12.2.0\dbhome_1)
      (PROGRAM = extproc)
      (ENVS = "EXTPROC_DLLS=ONLY:C:\app\Administrator\virtual\product\12.2.0\dbhome_1\bin\oracldr12.dll")
    )
  )
  DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = SYMANTEC-DLP.DI.IPDR)(PORT = 1521))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC)(KEY = PROTECT))
    )
)
SECURE_REGISTER_LISTENER = (IPC)

```

2239

2240 40. Save the file and exit the editor.

2241 41. Ensure that OracleServicePROTECT and OracleVssWriterPROTECT services are running in Task Manager.

2242 42. In an administrative command prompt, run the following command to start the listener. Replace dilistener with the name given to your listener.

2243 > lsnrctl start dilistener

2244

2245 43. Run the following commands to connect the listener to the database using SQL Plus. Replace password with the password used for the SYS user.

2246 > sqlplus /nolog

2247

2248 > conn sys/password as sysdba

2249

2250 44. Run the following commands in the SQL prompt. (Note: If errors occur relating to the SPFILE, try replacing ORACLE_HOME or ORACLE_base values in %ORACLE_HOME%\dbs\init.ora with the

2251

2252 absolute path. Then run CREATE SPFILE FROM PFILE=''%ORACLE_HOME%\ dbs\init.ora' and CRE-
 2253 ATE PFILE FROM SPFILE=''%ORACLE_HOME%\ dbs\init.ora'. Restart the database after doing
 2254 this.)

```
2255 > ALTER SYSTEM SET local_listener = '(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PRO-  

2256 TOCOL=ipc)(KEY=PROTECT)))' SCOPE=both;  

2257 > ALTER SYSTEM REGISTER;  

2258 > exit
```

2259 45. Run the following command to verify the status of the listeners:

```
2260 > lsnrctl services
```

```
Administrator: Command Prompt  

Copyright <c> 1991, 2016, Oracle. All rights reserved.  

Connecting to <DESCRIPTION=<ADDRESS=<PROTOCOL=TCP><HOST=SYMANTEC-DLP.DI.IPDR><PORT=1521>>>  

Services Summary...  

Service "CLRExtProc" has 1 instance(s).  

  Instance "CLRExtProc", status UNKNOWN, has 1 handler(s) for this service...  

    Handler(s):  

      "DEDICATED" established:0 refused:0  

        LOCAL SERVER  

Service "protect" has 1 instance(s).  

  Instance "protect", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this service...  

    Handler(s):  

      "DEDICATED" established:78 refused:0 state:ready  

        LOCAL SERVER  

Service "protectXDB" has 1 instance(s).  

  Instance "protect", status READY, has 1 handler(s) for this service...  

    Handler(s):  

      "D000" established:0 refused:0 current:0 max:1022 state:ready  

        DISPATCHER <machine: SYMANTEC-DLP, pid: 3936>  

          <ADDRESS=<PROTOCOL=tcp><HOST=SYMANTEC-DLP.DI.IPDR><PORT=51687>>  

The command completed successfully
```

2261

2262 46. Open a new administrative command window.

2263 47. Navigate to C:\Temp\Oracle\database\tools.

2264 48. Run the following command:

```
2265 > sqlplus /nolog  

2266 > @oracle_create_user.sql
```

2267 49. Enter the **password** for the **SYS** user.

2268 50. For **sid**, enter “protect”.

2269 51. For a **username**, enter “protect”.

- 2270 52. Enter a **password** for the “protect” user. (The special characters &, \$, and # are not allowed.)
2271 53. When this process is finished, open a new administrative command window and run the follow-
2272 ing command.

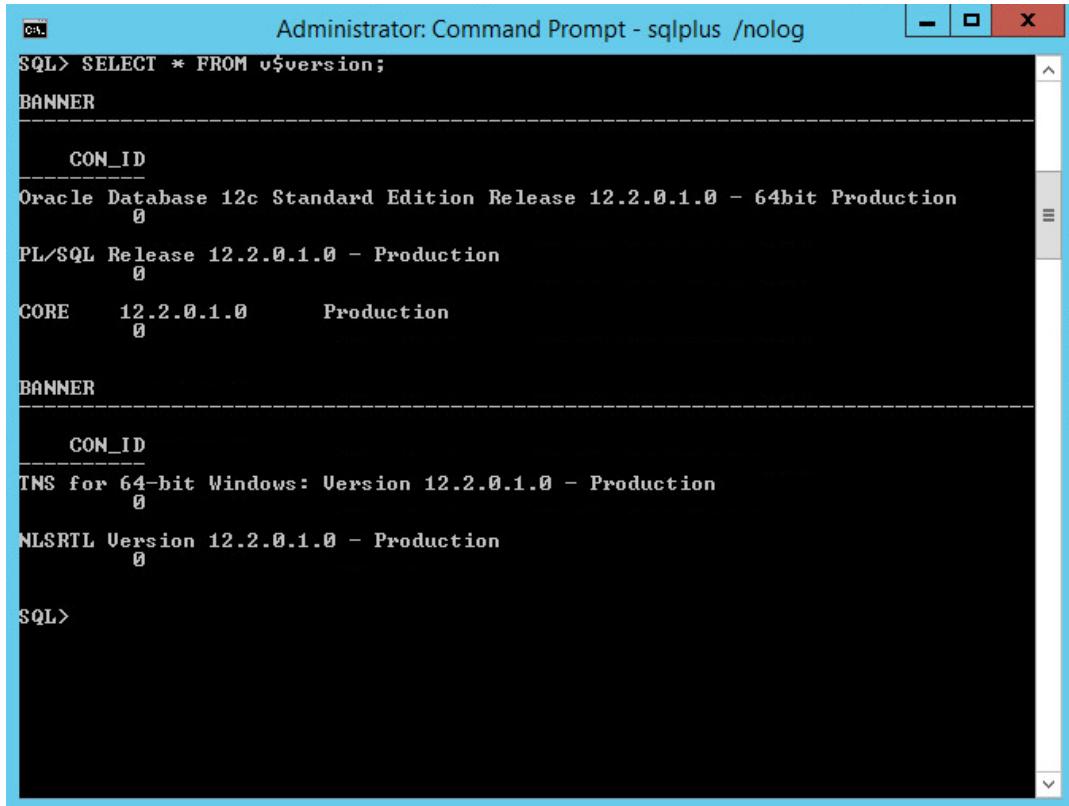
2273 > sqlplus /nolog

2274 54. Log in as the **SYS** user with the following command (replace “password” with the password for
2275 the **SYS** user).

2276 > connect sys/password@protect as sysda

2277 55. Verify the version information with the following command.

2278 > SELECT * FROM v\$version;



The screenshot shows a Windows Command Prompt window titled "Administrator: Command Prompt - sqlplus /nolog". The window displays the results of a SQL*Plus command. The output is as follows:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM v$version;
BANNER
CON_ID
Oracle Database 12c Standard Edition Release 12.2.0.1.0 - 64bit Production
PL/SQL Release 12.2.0.1.0 - Production
CORE    12.2.0.1.0      Production

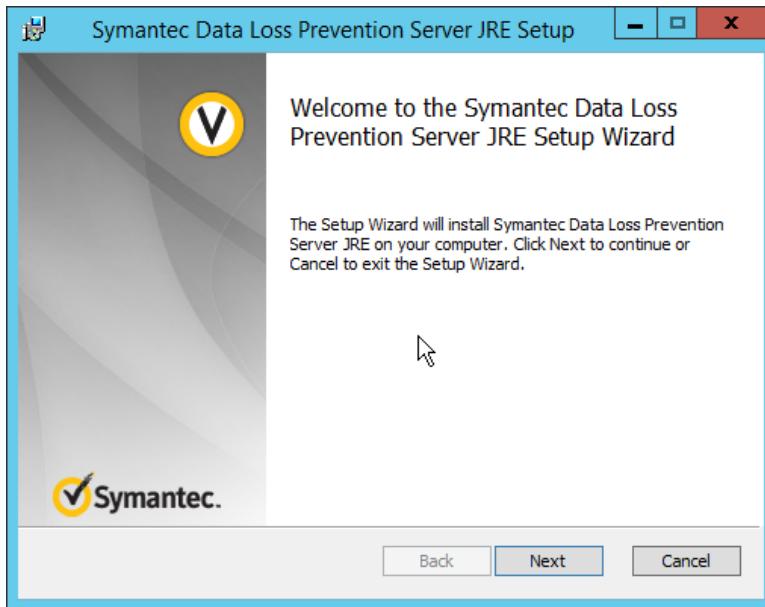
BANNER
CON_ID
TNS for 64-bit Windows: Version 12.2.0.1.0 - Production
NLSRTL Version 12.2.0.1.0 - Production

SQL>
```

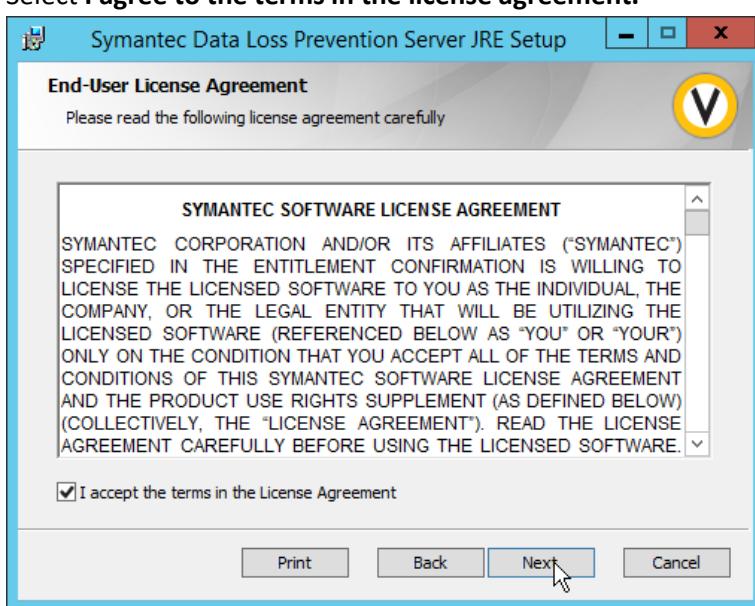
2279

2280 2.15.4 Install Symantec DLP

- 2281 1. In the folder **DLP Installs\DLPI 15.1\Symantec_DLP_15.1_Platform_Win-**
2282 **IN_15.1.0.25021\DLPI\15.1\New_Installs\x64\Release**, located in the download folder for the
2283 DLP files, run **ServerJRE.msi**.

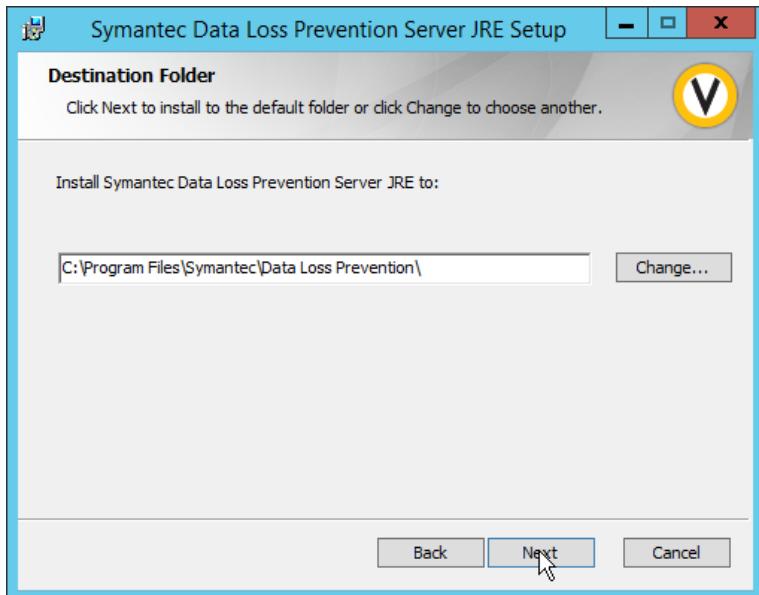


- 2284
2285 2. Click **Next**.
2286 3. Select **I agree to the terms in the license agreement**.

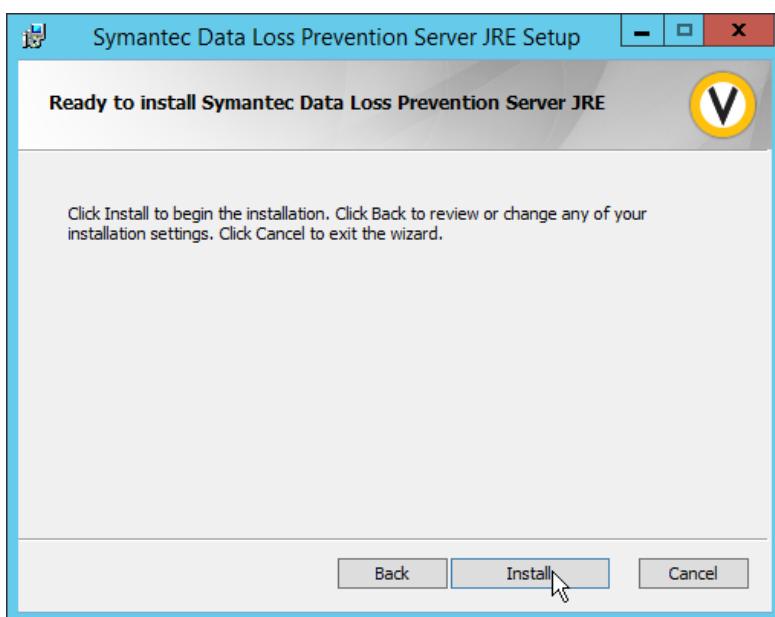


2287

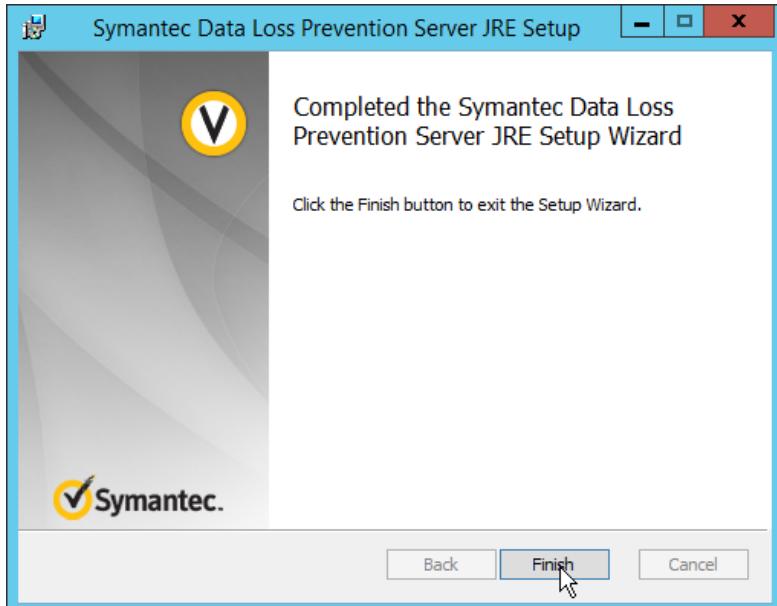
2288 4. Click **Next**.



2289
2290 5. Click **Next**.



2291
2292 6. Click **Install**.



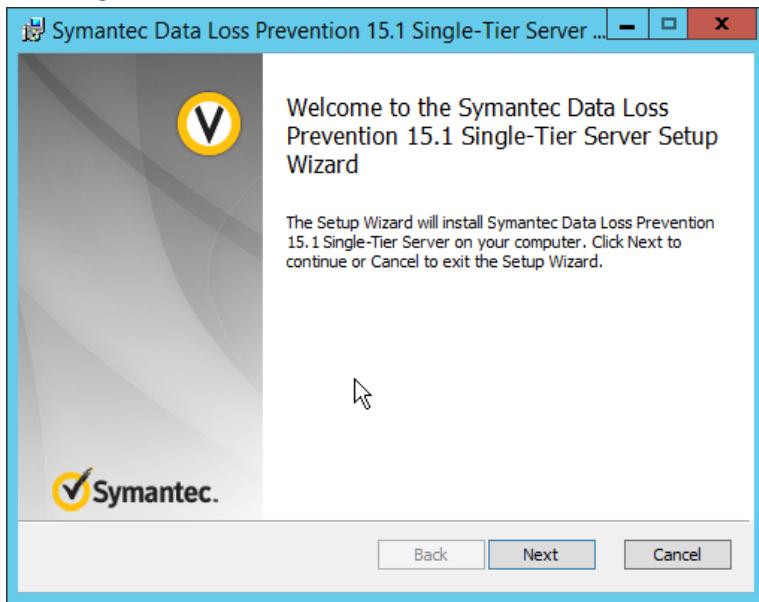
2293

2294

7. Click **Finish**.

2295

8. Run **SingleTierServer.msi** (located in the same folder as **ServerJRE.msi**).



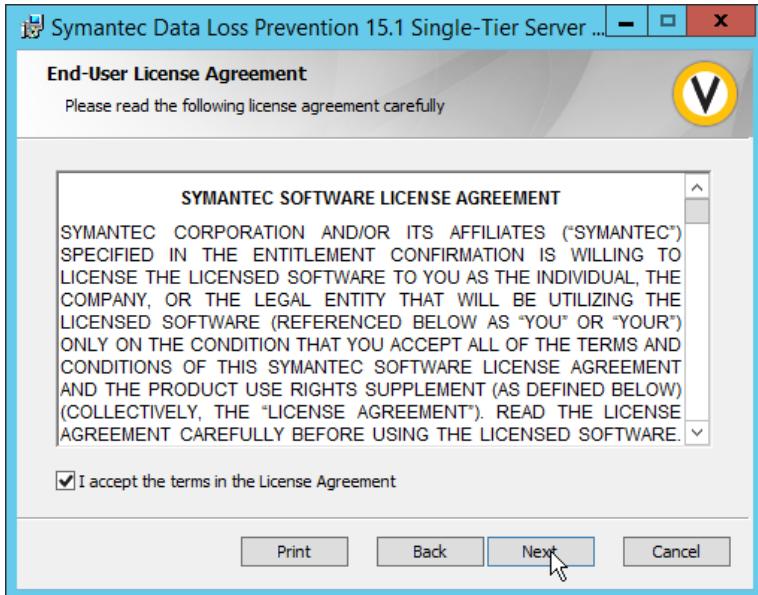
2296

2297

9. Click **Next**.

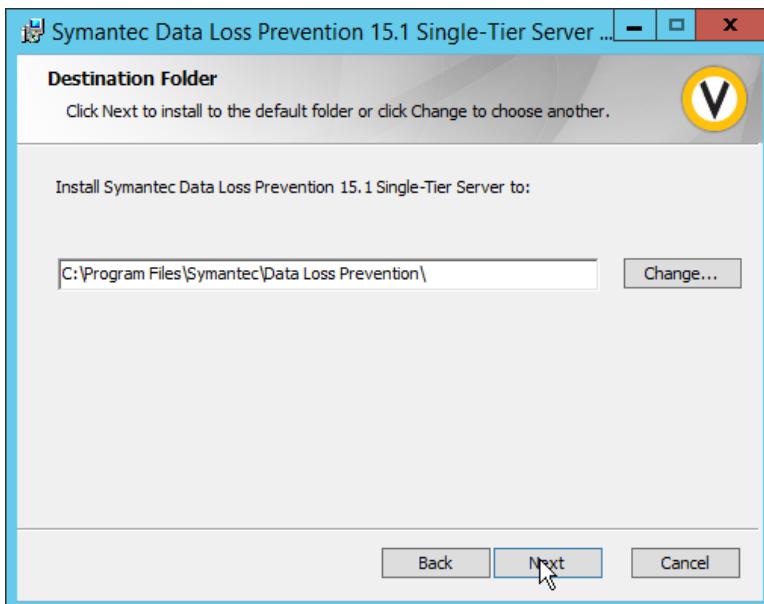
2298

10. Check the box to accept the license agreement.



2299
2300

11. Click Next.



2301
2302
2303

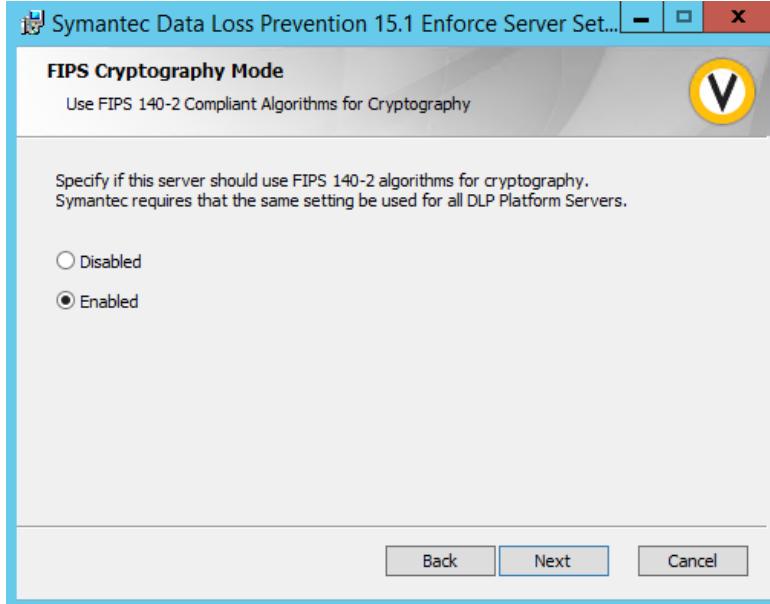
12. Click Next.

13. Select Enabled for FIPS 140-2 Compliant Algorithms.

2304

2305

14. Click **Next**.



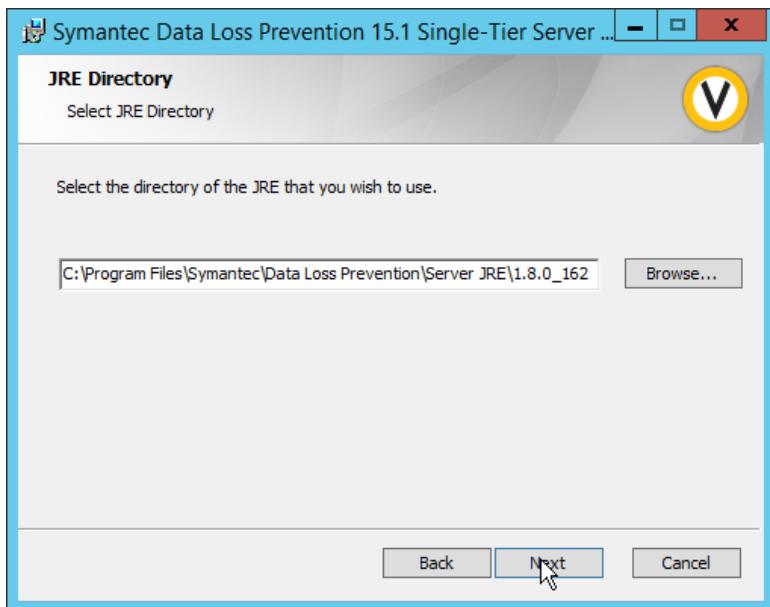
2306

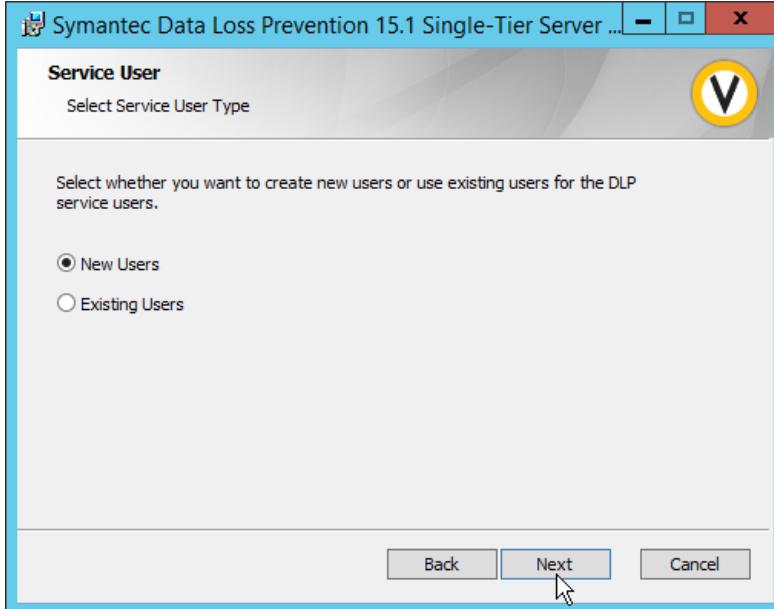
2307

15. Click **Next**.

2308

16. Click on **New Users**.



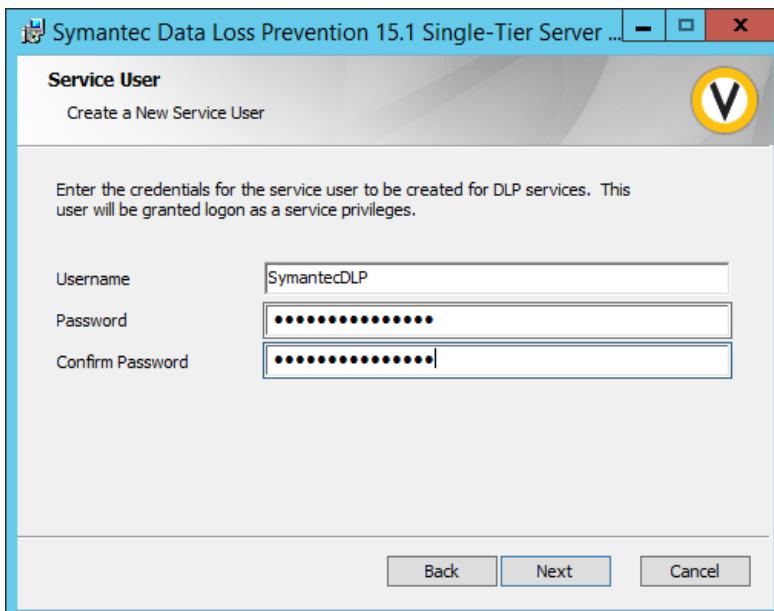


2309

2310

17. Click **Next**.

2311

18. Enter a **password** and optionally a **username**.

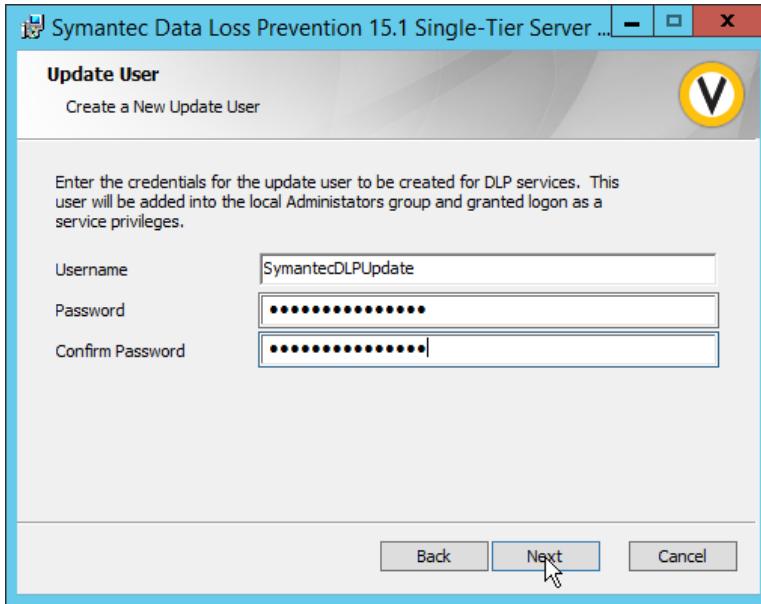
2312

2313

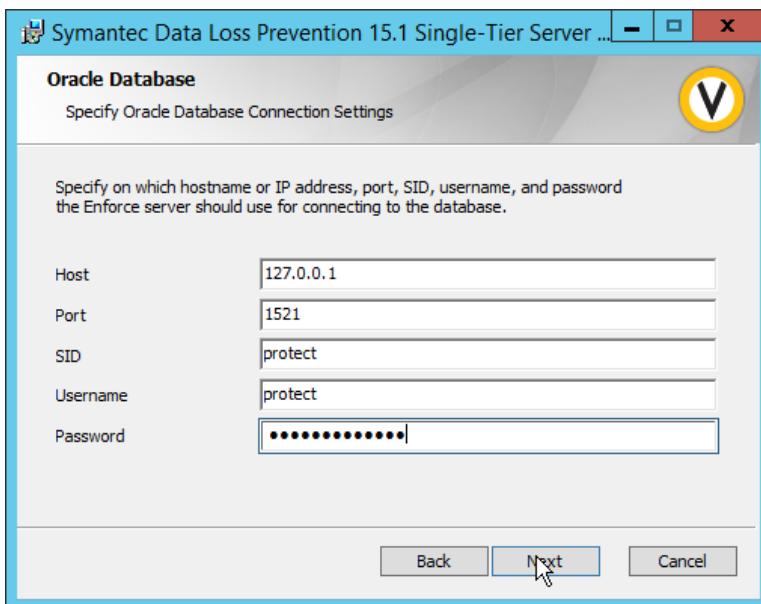
19. Click **Next**.

2314

20. Enter a **password** and optionally a **username**.

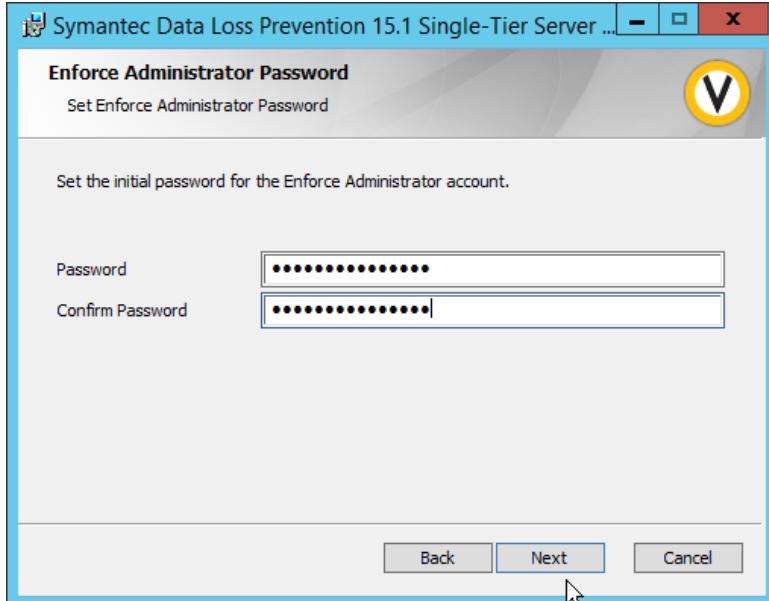


2315

2316 21. Click **Next**.2317 22. Enter the **password** used for the “protect” user.

2318

2319 23. Click **Next**.2320 24. Select **Initialize Database**.2321 25. Click **Next**.2322 26. Set the initial **password** for logging into the Enforce Administrator account.



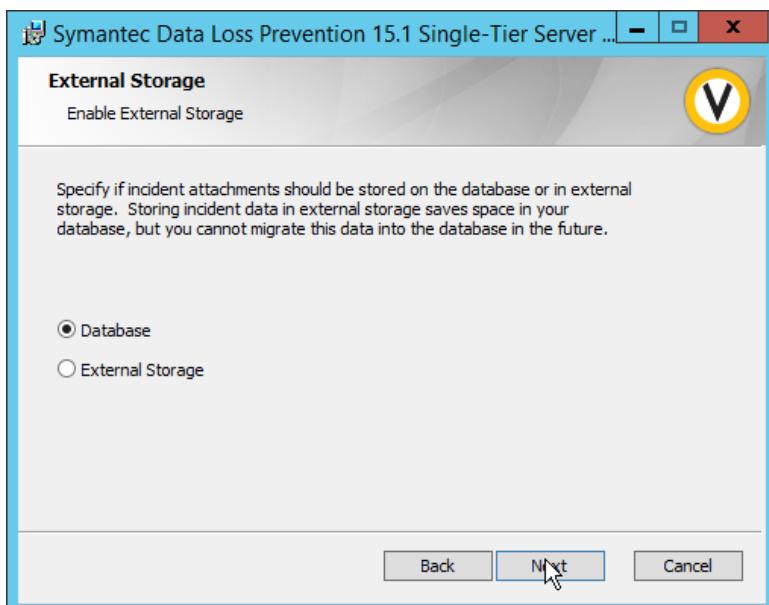
2323

2324

27. Click **Next**.

2325

28. Select **Database**.



2326

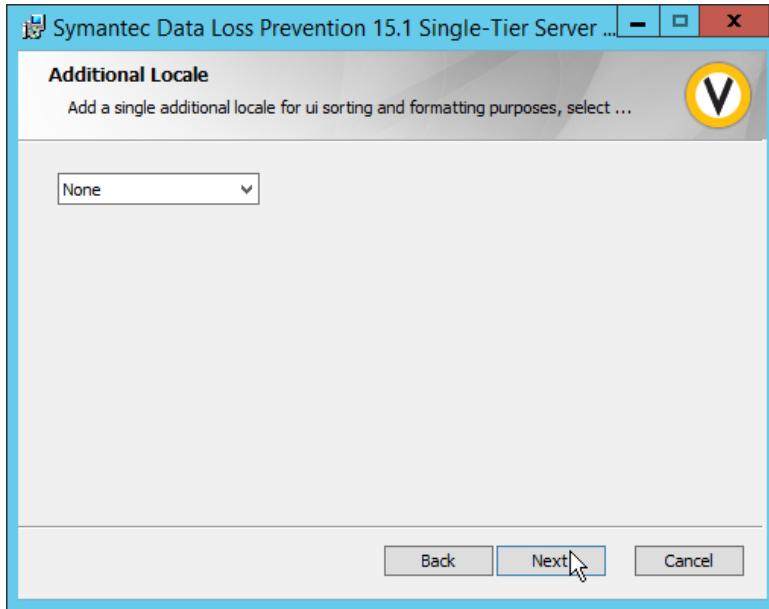
2327

29. Click **Next**.

2328

30. Select **None**.

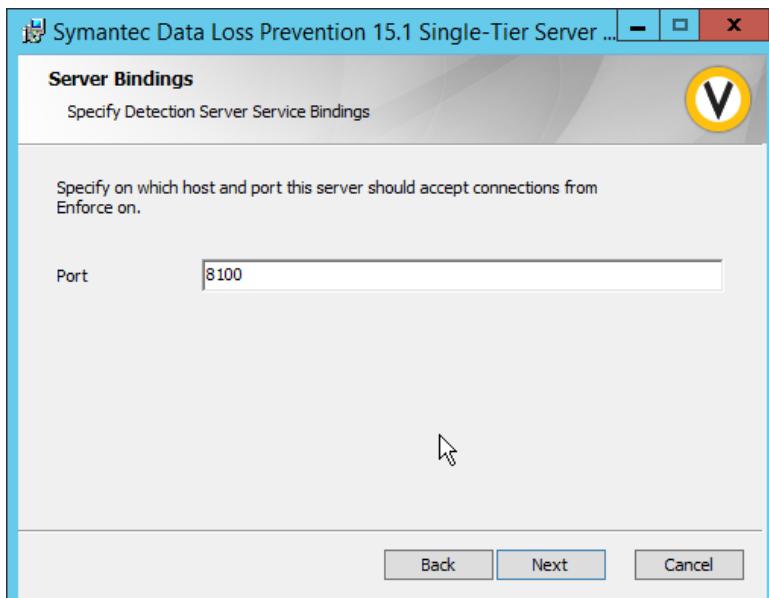
2329



2330

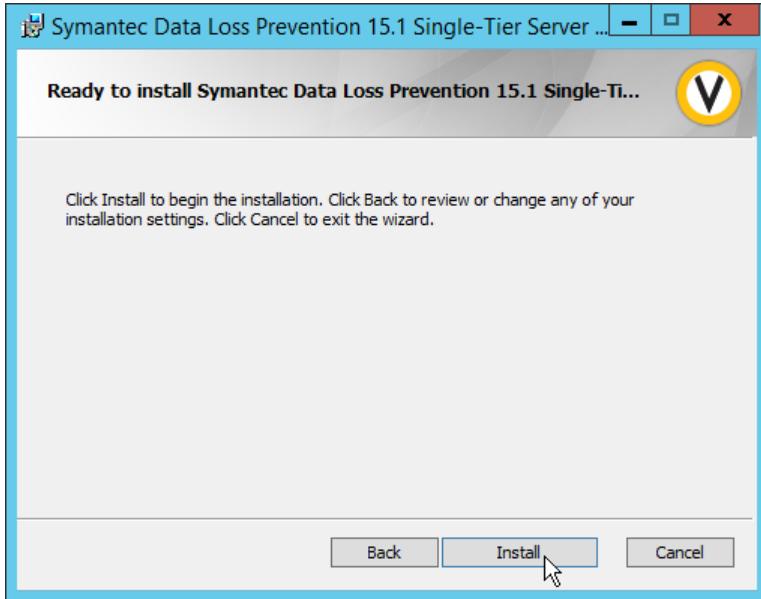
31. Click **Next**.

2331



2332

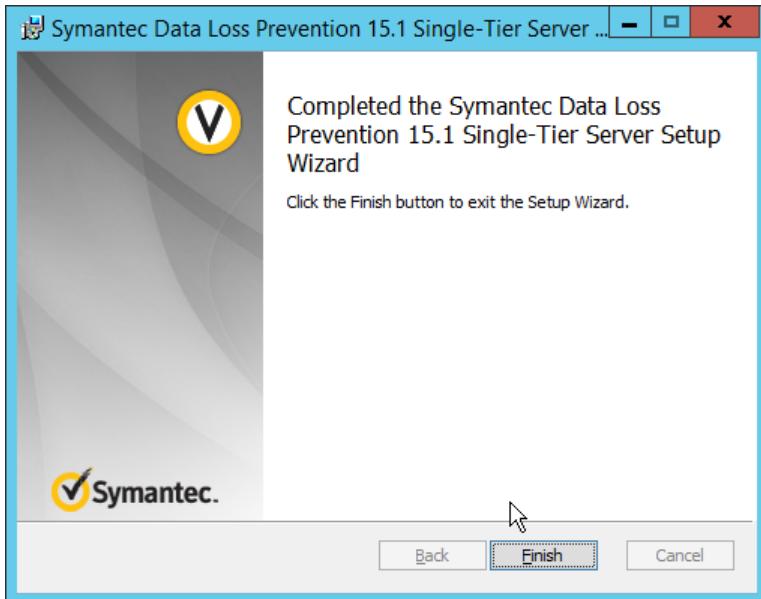
32. Click **Next**.



2333

2334

33. Click **Install**.



2335

2336

34. Click **Finish**.

2337

35. Ensure that the services are running in Task Manager:

2338

a. SymantecDLPManager

2339

b. SymantecDLPIncidentPersister

2340

c. SymantecDLPNotifier

2341 d. SymantecDLPDetectionServer

2342 **2.15.5 Configure Symantec DLP**

- 2343 1. Navigate to <https://127.0.0.1> in the browser to get to the Symantec DLP web console.
- 2344 2. Navigate to **System > Settings > General** and click **Configure**.
- 2345 3. In the **Edit General Settings** screen, upload your license file provided by Symantec.
- 2346 4. Click **Save**.
- 2347 5. In Task Manager, stop the **SymantecDLPManager** service.
- 2348 6. Copy the *classpath.txt* file located in <DLP Download Home>\DLP\15.1\Solution_Packs\ and
2349 overwrite the *classpath.txt* located at C:\Program Files\Symantec\Data Loss
2350 Prevention\Enforce Server\15.1\Protect\Config\SolutionPackInstaller.
- 2351 7. In an administrative command window, use the following commands to import the chosen
2352 solution pack. For example, to import the financial solution pack, use:

2353 > cd "C:\Program Files\Symantec\Data Loss Prevention\Enforce
2354 Server\15.1\protect\bin"

2355 > .\SolutionPackInstaller.exe import "C:\Program
2356 Files\Symantec\Data Loss Prevention\Financial_v15.1.vsp"
- 2357 8. After this is installed, restart the **SymantecDLPManager** service.
- 2358 9. Log on to the Enforce Web Console as Administrator.
- 2359 10. Navigate to **System > Servers > Overview**.
- 2360 11. Click **Add Server**.
- 2361 12. Select the type of Detection Server to add.
- 2362 13. Click **Next**.
- 2363 14. Enter a **name**.
- 2364 15. Enter the **hostname** of the DLP server.
- 2365 16. Enter **8100** for the **port**.
- 2366 17. Navigate to **System > Settings > General**.

Process Control

Advanced Process Control



2367

- 2368 18. Check the box next to **Advanced Process Control**.
- 2369 19. Specify any configuration options according to the needs of your organization.
- 2370 20. Click **Save**.

2371 2.16 Cisco Identity Services Engine

2372 This section details the installation and some configurations for the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
2373 It assumes the use of the ISE virtual machine.

2374 2.16.1 Initial Setup

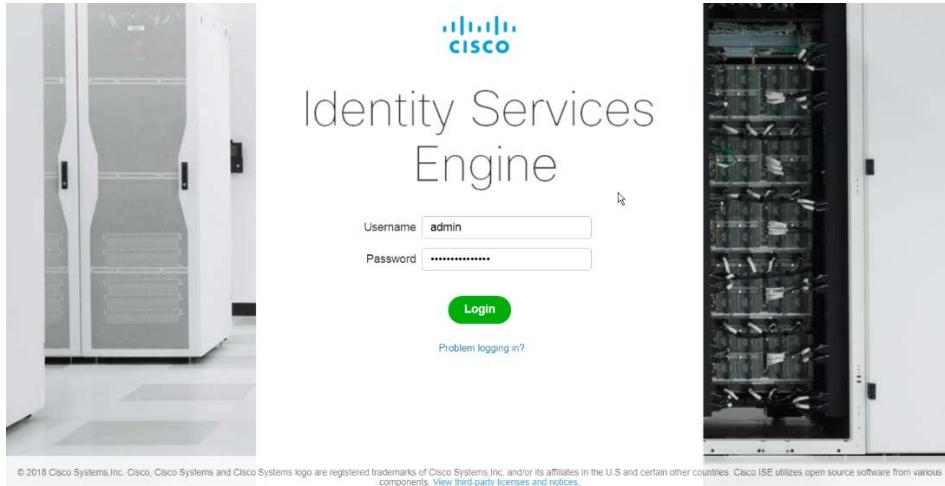
- 2375 1. When prompted to log in for the first time, enter `setup`. (You can use the command `reset-config` to change these values later.)
- 2376 2. Enter the desired **hostname** for the machine.
- 2377 3. Enter the desired **IP address** for the machine. (Ensure that the specified hostname is associated with this IP address in your DNS.)
- 2378 4. Enter the **netmask** for the machine.
- 2379 5. Enter the **default gateway**.
- 2380 6. Enter the **default DNS domain** (the name of your domain).
- 2381 7. Enter the **primary nameserver** (the IP address of your DNS).
- 2382 8. Enter a second nameserver if desired.
- 2383 9. Enter a **Network Time Protocol (NTP) time server**.
- 2384 10. Enter the **timezone**.
- 2385 11. Enter **Y** for **SSH service**.
- 2386 12. Enter an administrator **username** for the machine.
- 2387 13. Enter a **password** twice.

2390 2.16.2 Inventory: Configure SNMP on Routers/Network Devices

2391 See the corresponding vendor documentation for the correct way to enable Simple Network
2392 Management Protocol (SNMP) on your network device. Ensure that the community string you choose is
2393 considered sensitive, like a password.

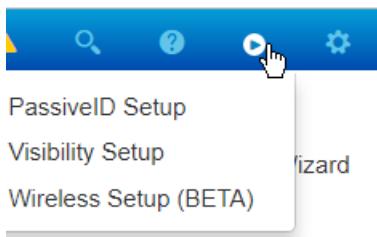
2394 2.16.3 Inventory: Configure Device Detection

- 2395 1. Log in to the web client by visiting <https://hostname/admin> but replace **hostname** with the
2396 hostname of the ISE machine.



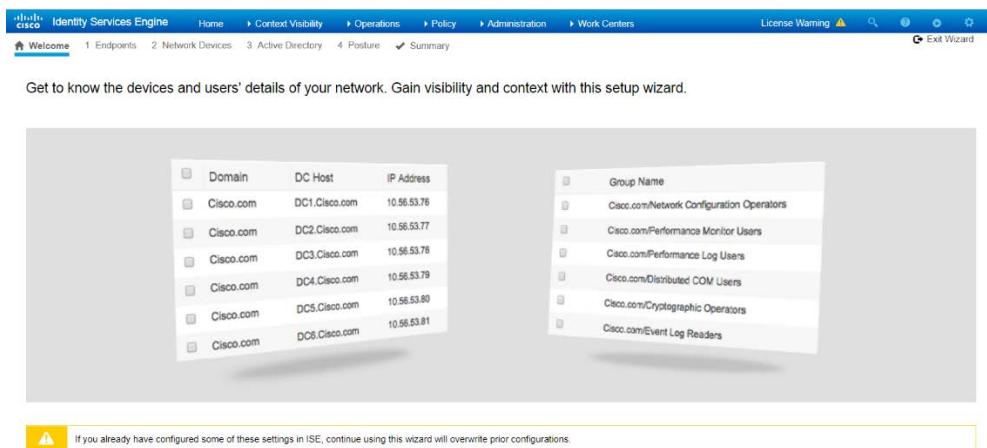
2397

- 2398 2. On the top right, use the small Play button to select **Visibility Setup**.



2399

- 2400 3. Click **Next**.



2401

- 2402 4. Enter the range of IP addresses to add to ISE's inventory.

- 2403 5. Ensure that **Active Scanning** is checked.

Endpoints Discovery

We are going to discover the endpoints using the IP range(s) below.

IP Address Range *
e.g. 10.10.10.0/24

Active Scanning

Add another range

Skip Back Next

2404

- 2405 6. Click **Next**.
- 2406 7. Click the **Add Device Manually** link.
- 2407 8. Enter a **name**.
- 2408 9. Enter the **IP address** of the network device you configured for SNMP.
- 2409 10. Select **1** for **SNMP version**.
- 2410 11. Enter the **community string** you created.

ISE VISIBILITY SETUP WIZARD

Welcome 1 Endpoints 2 Network Device

Network Device Discovery

Total Added (0) Failed (0)

Scan Add Remove

Name	IP Address
You have not added any network access devices.	

Add Network Device

Name * GATEWAYROUTER

IP Address * 192.168.1.1

Location

Device Type

Description

SNMP Settings

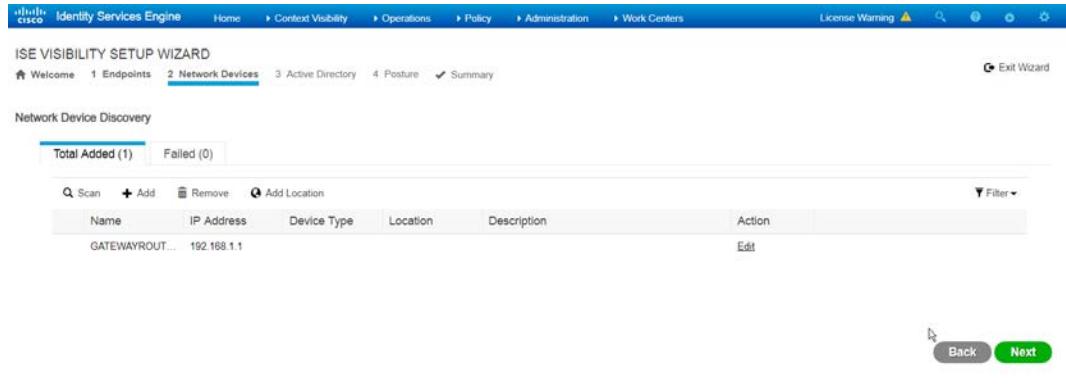
SNMP Version * 1

RO Community * Show

Cancel OK

2411

- 2412 12. Click **OK**.



2413

13. Click **Next**.
14. Enter a **display name**.
15. Enter the **domain name**.
16. Enter the **hostname of Cisco ISE**.
17. Enter a **username** and **password**.
18. Click **Test Connection** to ensure that this works.

2420

19. Click **Next**.
20. Enter a **username** and **password**.
21. Check the box next to **Enable Endpoint Logging**.
22. Check the box next to **Include Range**.

ISE VISIBILITY SETUP WIZARD

Welcome 1 Endpoints 2 Network Devices 3 Active Directory 4 Posture ✓ Summary

Posture Discovery

Discover posture on endpoints using common administrative account and same IP range(s) from step 1

Username * Administrator

Password *

Enable Endpoint Logging

IP Address Range * 192.168.0.0/16

Include Range

Skip Back Next

2425

2426

23. Click **Next**.

ISE VISIBILITY SETUP WIZARD

Active Scanning true

Network Device Discovery

Total Devices Added 1

Active Directory Information

Display Name AD0NS

Domain FQDN DI IPDR

ISE Node cisco-ise-di.ipdr

Username

Test Connection Successfully Connected

Posture Discovery

IP Scanning Range 192.168.0.0/16

Included true

Edit Back Done

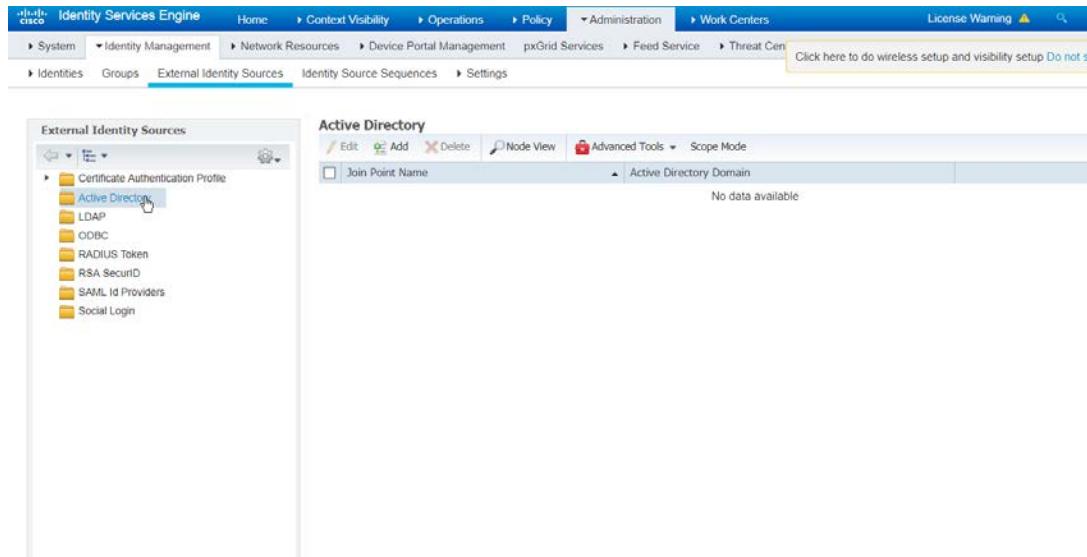
2427

2428

24. Verify the settings and click **Done**. (This should begin importing endpoints connected to the network device, and they will be visible on the ISE dashboard.)

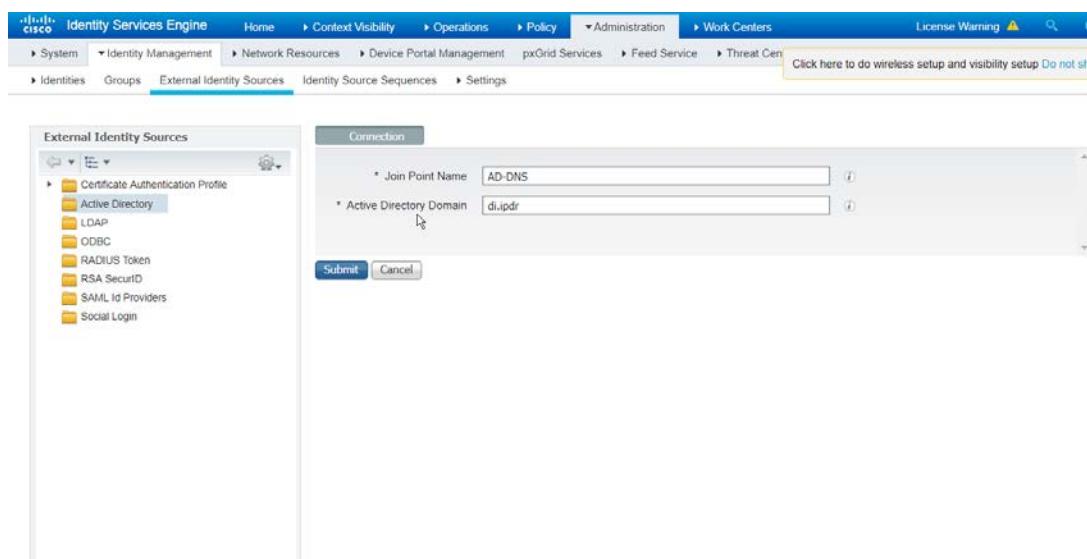
2.16.4 Policy Enforcement: Configure Active Directory Integration

1. Navigate to **Administration > Identity Management > External Identity Sources > Active Directory**.



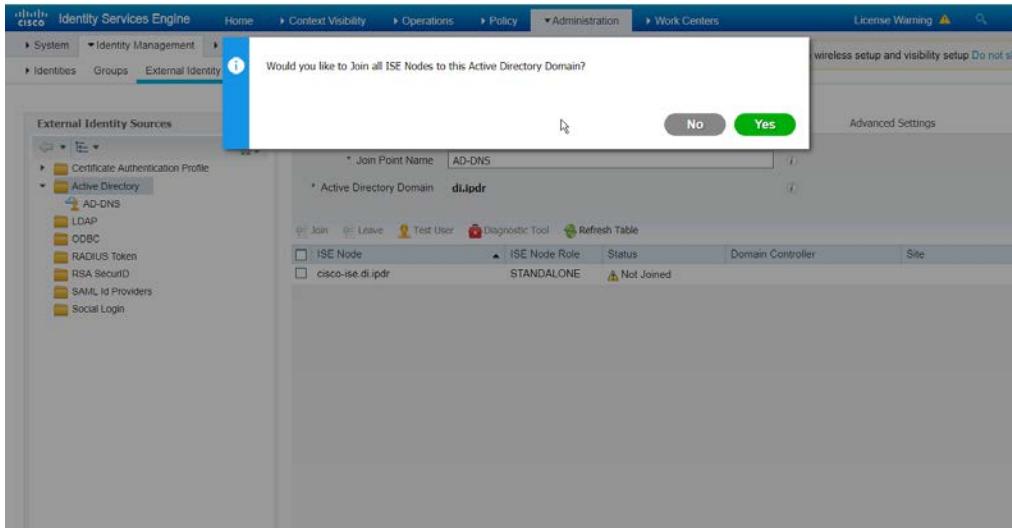
2433
2434
2435
2436

2. Click **Add**.
3. Enter a **name**.
4. Enter the **domain**.



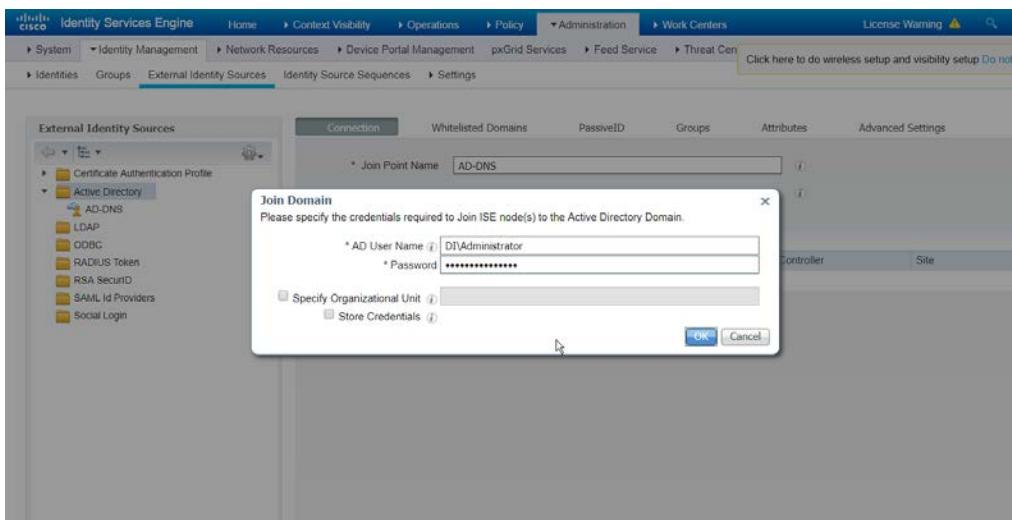
2437
2438

5. Click **Submit**.



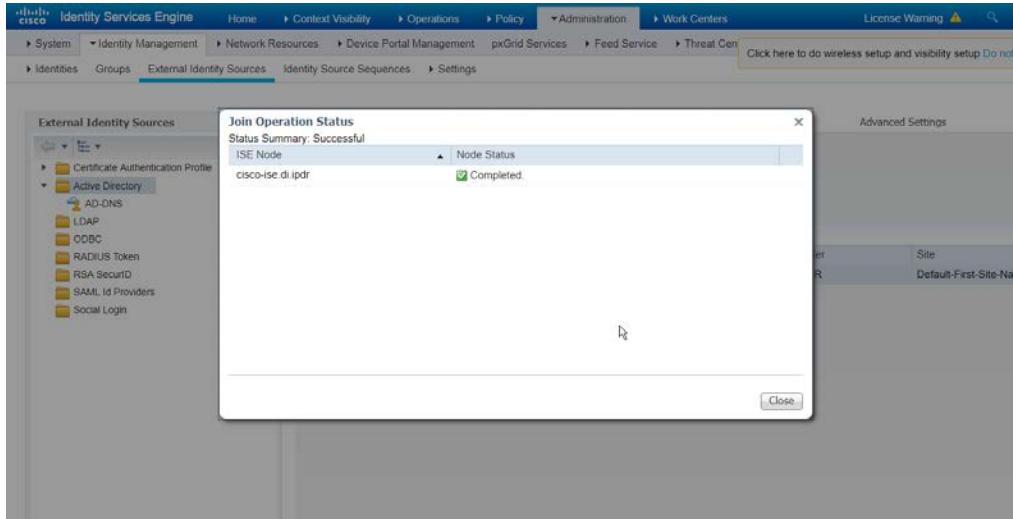
2439

- 2440 6. Click Yes.
- 2441 7. Enter a **username** and **password** to join ISE to the domain.



2442

- 2443 8. Click OK.



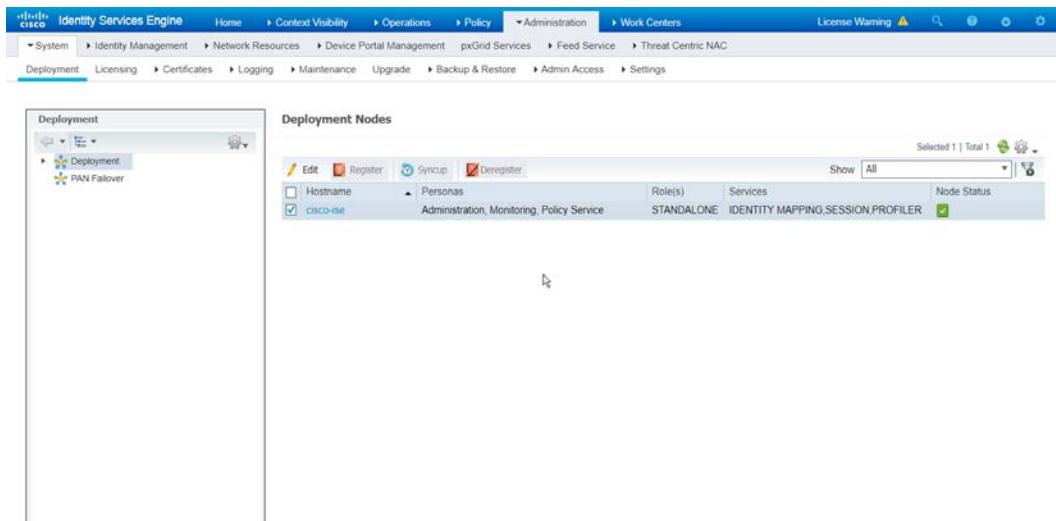
2444

2445 9. Click **Close** when the join is finished.

2.16.5 Policy Enforcement: Enable Passive Identity with AD

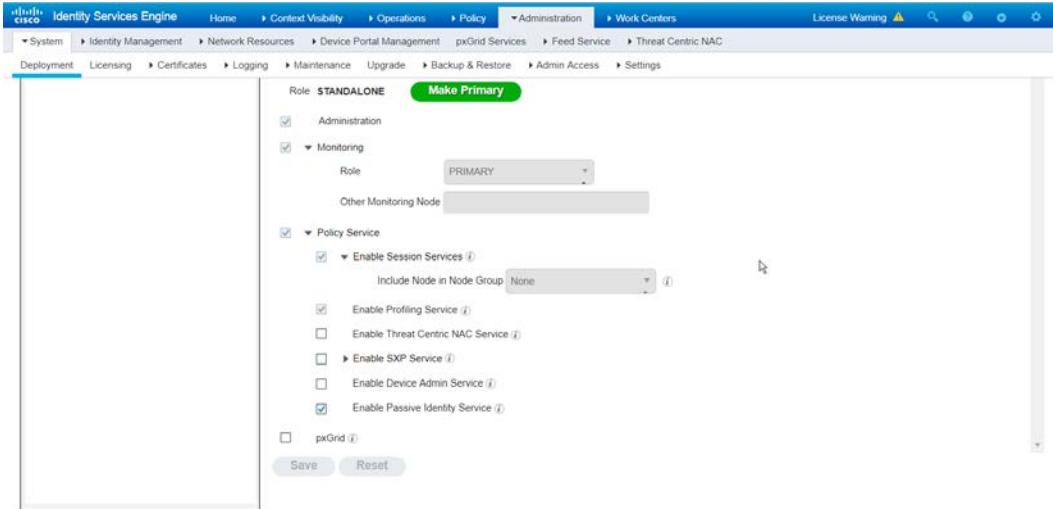
2447 This configuration allows users to use Active Directory usernames/passwords as authentication for the
2448 portal. The web portal will allow clients to download profiling software to ensure that clients have up to
2449 date software and can be trusted on the network.

- 2450 1. Navigate to **Administration > System > Deployment**.
2451 2. Check the box next to ISE.

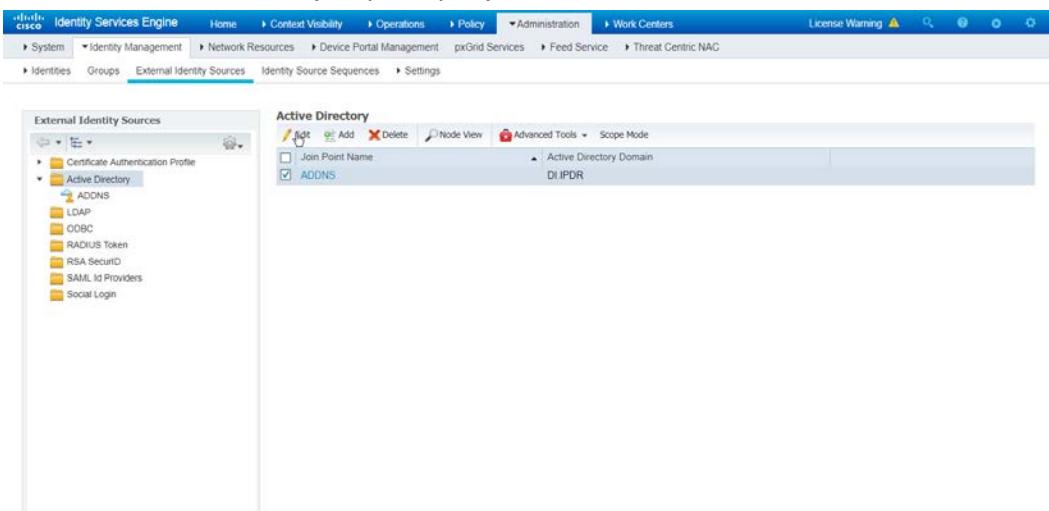


2452
2453 3. Click **Edit**.

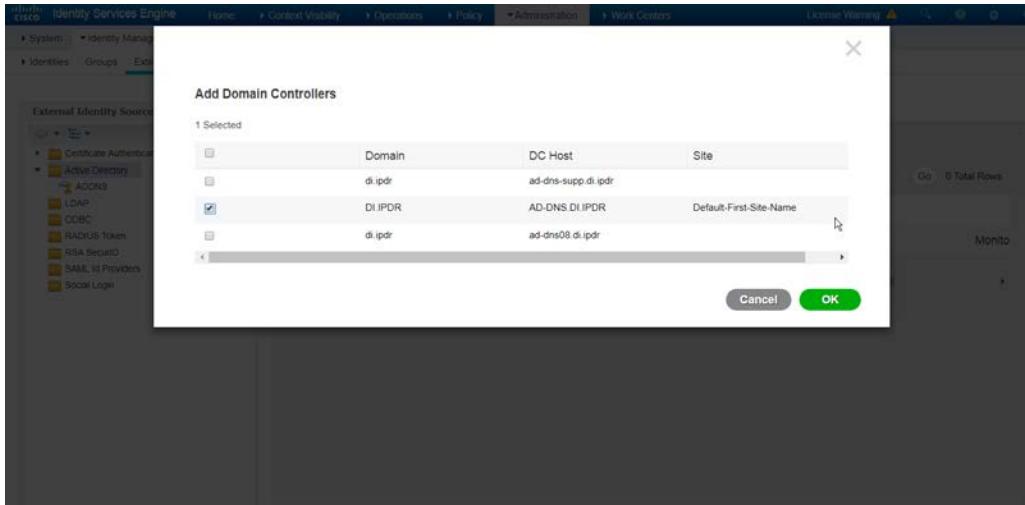
- 2454 4. Check the box next to **Enable Passive Identity Service**.



- 2455
2456 5. Click **Save**.
2457 6. Navigate to **Administration > Identity Management > External Identity Sources > Active Directory**.
2458 7. Click the name of the Active Directory machine.
2459 8. Check the box next to the join point you just created.

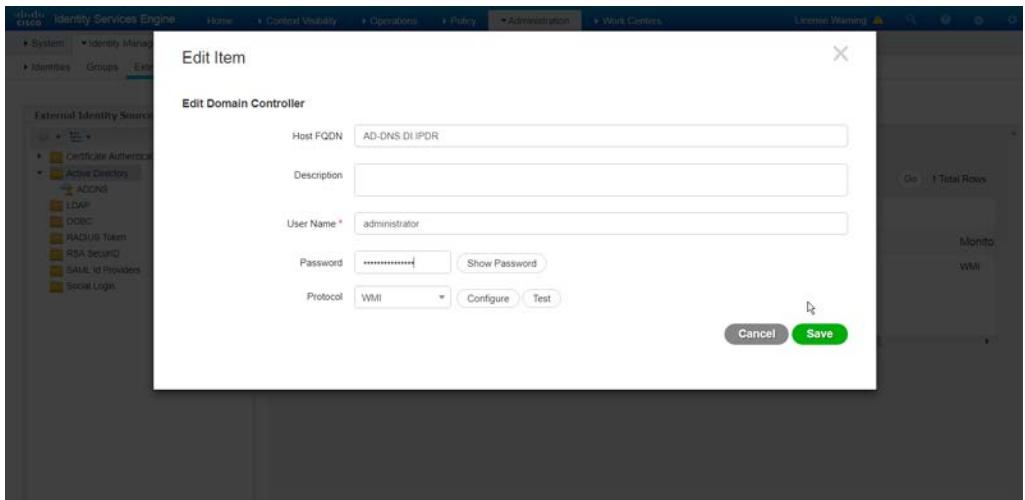


- 2461
2462 9. Click **Edit**.
2463 10. Click the **PassiveID** tab.
2464 11. Click **Add DCs** if there are no domain controllers listed.



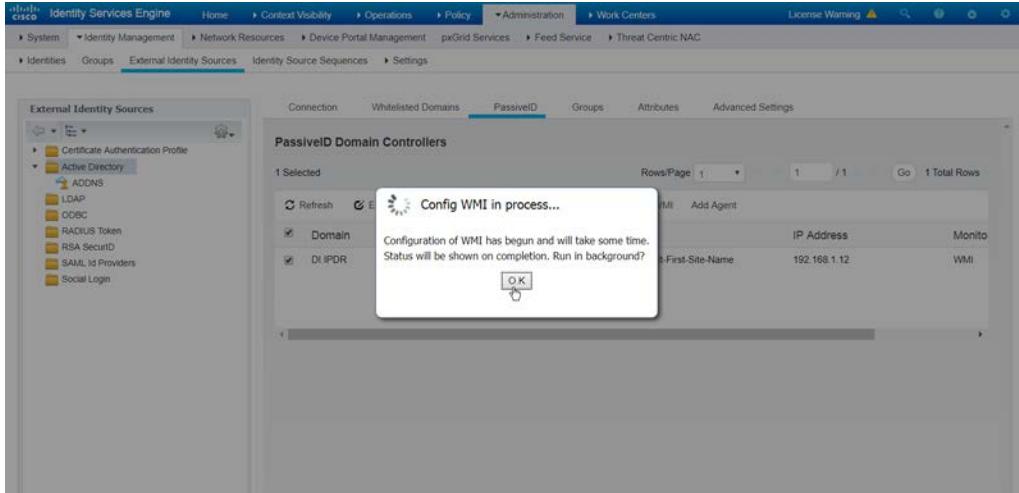
2465

- 2466 12. Select the Active Directory domain controller.
- 2467 13. Click **OK**.
- 2468 14. Check the box next to the selected domain controller.
- 2469 15. Click **Edit**.
- 2470 16. Enter credentials for an administrator account.



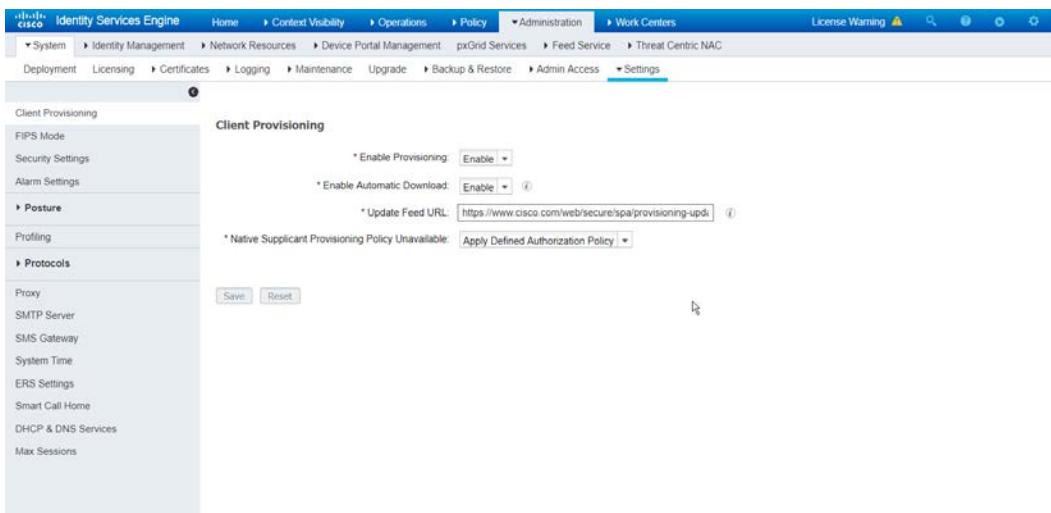
2471

- 2472 17. Click **Save**.
- 2473 18. Click **Config WMI**.
- 2474 19. Click **OK**.



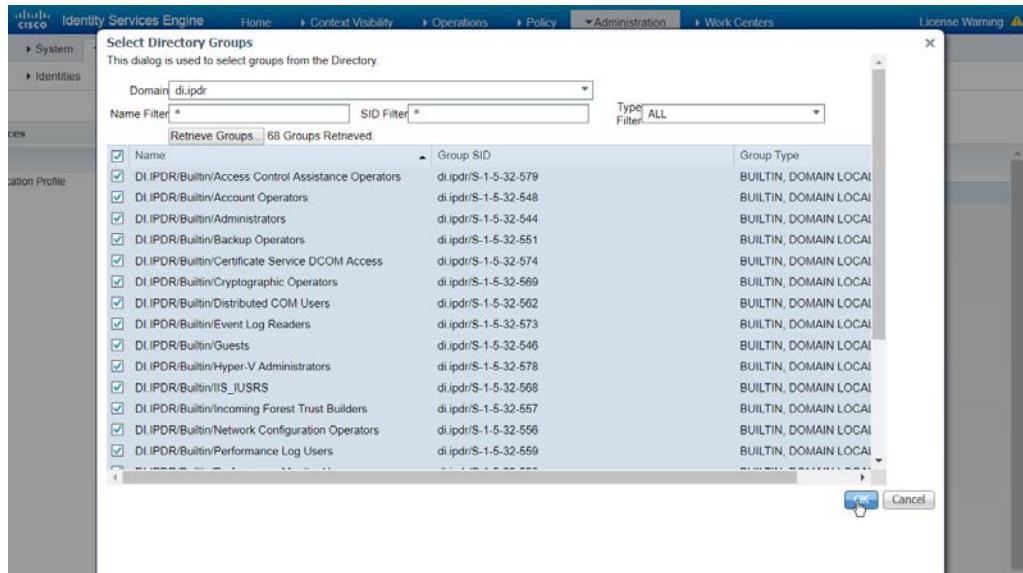
2475

- 2476 20. Click **OK** when this configuration finishes.
- 2477 21. Navigate to **Administration > System > Settings > Client Provisioning**.
- 2478 22. Set **Enable Automatic Download** to **Enable**.



2479

- 2480 23. Click **Save**.
- 2481 24. Navigate to **Administration > Identity Management > External Identity Sources > Active Directory**.
- 2482 25. Click the **Groups** tab.
- 2483 26. Click **Add > Select Groups from Directory**.
- 2484 27. Click **Retrieve Groups**. (This should populate the window with the groups from Active Directory.)
- 2485 28. Select them all.



2488

2489 29. Click **OK**. (If you add more groups to Active Directory they can be imported in the same way in
2490 the future.)

2491 30. Click the **Attributes** tab.

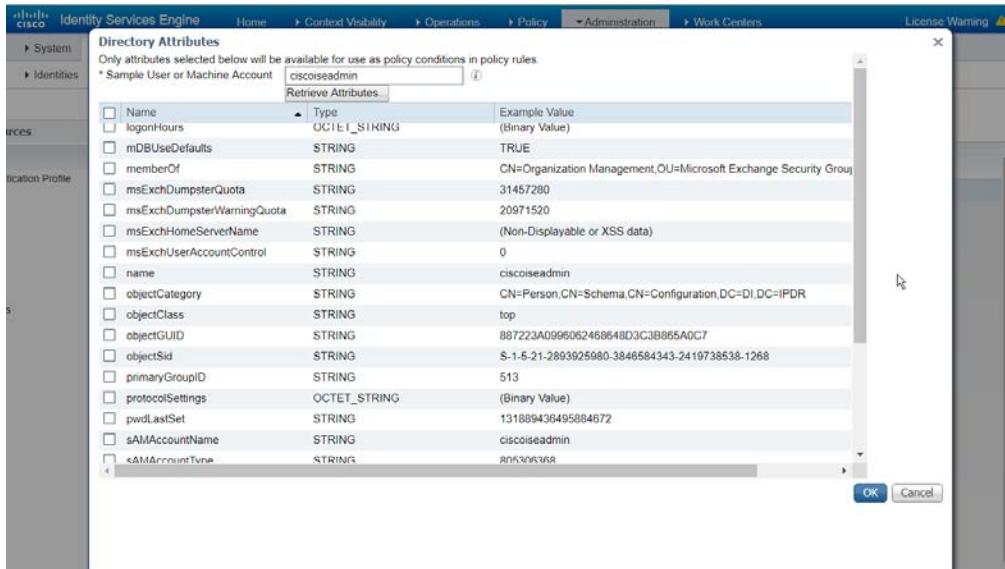
2492 31. Click **Add > Select Attributes from Directory**.

2493 32. Enter a **username**.

2494 33. Click **Retrieve Attributes**. (This will populate the window with Active Directory's available
2495 attributes, so they can be used for policy in Cisco ISE.)

2496 34. Click **OK**.

2497 35. Select any desired attributes.



2498

2499 36. Click **OK**.2500 37. Click **Save**.

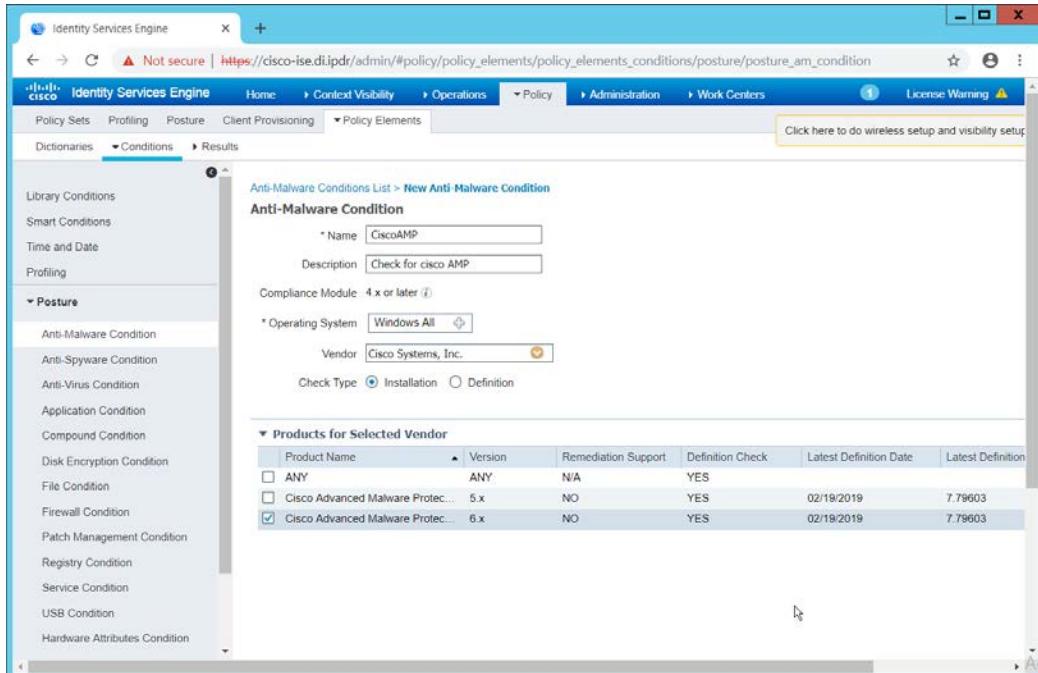
2501 2.16.6 Policy Enforcement: Developing Policy Conditions

- 2502 1. Navigate to **Policy > Policy Elements > Conditions > Posture**.
- 2503 2. Expand the **Posture** section. This will reveal a list of categories for conditions. (Note: These
2504 conditions allow you to select or define requirements that endpoints should meet. In typical
2505 enterprises, these conditions can be used as requirements to gain network access—however,
2506 this strongly depends on the capabilities of your network device.)
- 2507 3. As an example, we will require that Cisco AMP be installed on all Windows devices. If you are
2508 using a different anti-malware software, locate that instead. Click **Anti-Malware Condition**.

Name	Description
<input type="checkbox"/> ANY_am_win_inst	Any AM installation check on Win...
<input type="checkbox"/> ANY_am_win_def	Any AM definition check on Wind...
<input type="checkbox"/> ANY_am_mac_inst	Any AM installation check on Mac
<input type="checkbox"/> ANY_am_mac_def	Any AM definition check on Mac
<input type="checkbox"/> Cisco-AMP	Requires Cisco AMP

2509

- 2510 4. Click **Add**.
- 2511 5. Enter a **name**.
- 2512 6. Enter a **description** if desired.
- 2513 7. Select **Windows All** for **Operating System**.
- 2514 8. Select **Cisco Systems, Inc.** for **Vendor**.
- 2515 9. Under **Products for Selected Vendor**, check the box next to **Cisco Advanced Malware Protection** with the version number you have installed.
- 2516



2517
2518

10. Click **Submit**.

2.16.7 Policy Enforcement: Developing Policy Results

- 2520 1. Navigate to **Policy > Policy Elements > Results > Posture > Requirements**.
- 2521 2. Click one of the black arrows next to the **Edit** link, and select **Insert New Requirement**.
- 2522 3. Enter a **name**.
- 2523 4. Select **Windows All** for **Operating Systems**.
- 2524 5. Select **4.x or later** for **Compliance Module**.
- 2525 6. Select **Temporal Agent** for **Posture**.
- 2526 7. Select **User Defined Conditions > Anti-Malware Condition > Cisco AMP** (substitute Cisco AMP with the name of the condition you just created).
- 2527 8. Select **Message Text Only** for the **Remediation Action**. (Other remediation actions can be defined by going to **Policy > Policy Elements > Results > Posture > Remediation Actions**, but there is not an option for Cisco AMP to be installed, so we leave the default for now.)
- 2528 9. Enter a **Message** to inform the user that they must install Cisco AMP.

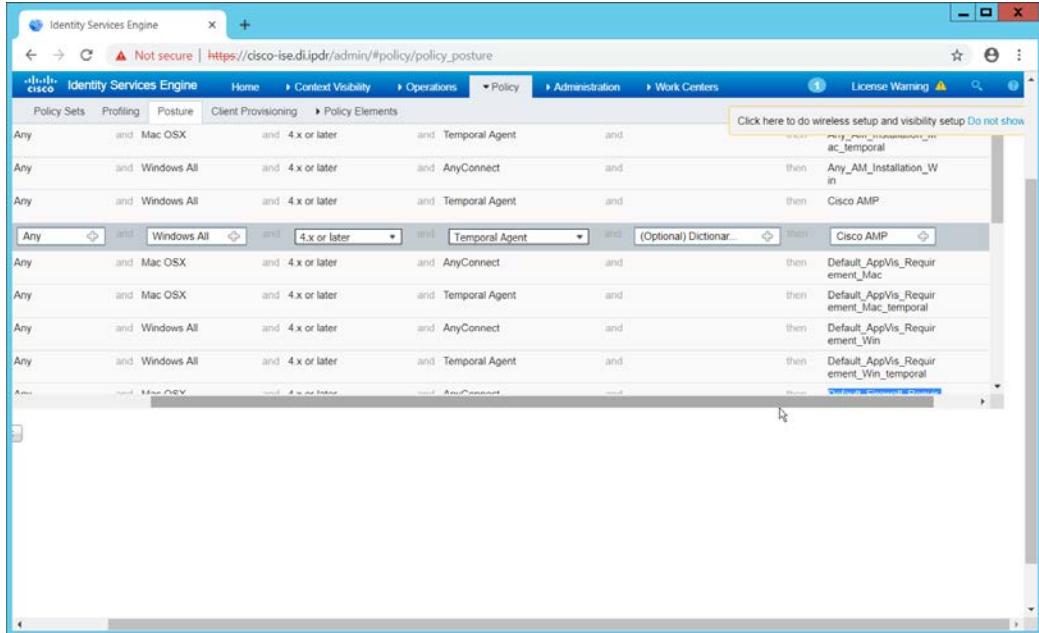
The screenshot shows the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) Policy Elements interface. The left sidebar navigation includes 'Policy Sets', 'Profiling', 'Posture', 'Client Provisioning', 'Dictionary', 'Conditions', and 'Results'. Under 'Posture', there are sections for 'Authentication', 'Authorization', 'Profiling', 'Remediation Actions', and 'Requirements'. The 'Requirements' section is expanded, showing a list of policy elements. One element is selected, displaying its details: 'AMP_CHECK' condition, 'for Windows All' operating system, 'using 4.x or later' compliance module, and 'using Temporal Agent' posture type. The requirement is named 'Cisco-AMP'.

2532
2533

10. Click Save.

2.16.8 Policy Enforcement: Enforcing a Requirement in Policy

- 2535 1. Navigate to **Policy > Posture**.
- 2536 2. Click one of the black arrows next to the **Edit** link, and select **Insert New Policy**.
- 2537 3. Enter a **name**.
- 2538 4. Select **Windows All** for **Operating Systems**.
- 2539 5. Select **4.x or later** for **Compliance Module**.
- 2540 6. Select **Temporal Agent** for **Posture Type**.
- 2541 7. Select **Cisco AMP** (substitute Cisco AMP with the name of the requirement you just created).



2542

8. Click **Done**.

2543

9. Ensure that the green checkboxes next to the rules you wish to apply are the only checkboxes enabled, as anything enabled will be enforced.

2544

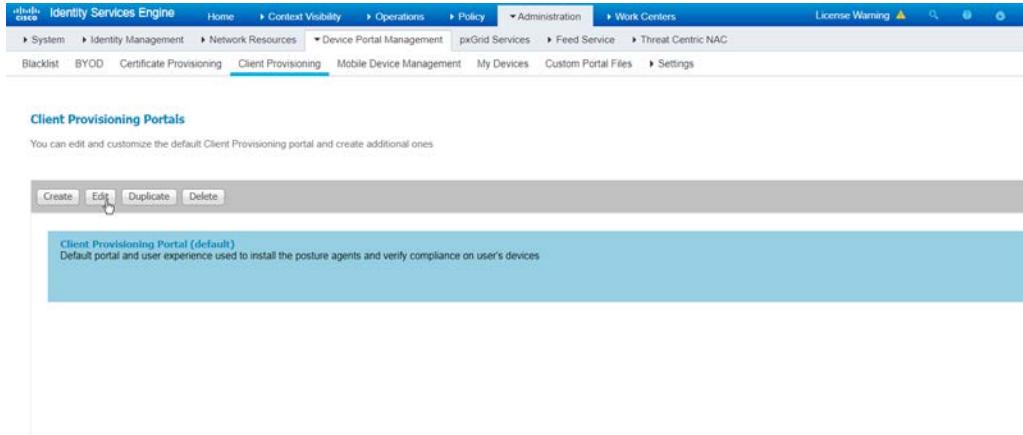
2545

2.16.9 Policy Enforcement: Configuring a Web Portal

2546

1. Navigate to **Administration > Device Portal Management > Client Provisioning**.

2547

2. Select the **Client Provisioning Portal (default)**.

2548

2549

3. Click **Edit**.

- 2551 4. Under **Portal Settings**, go to **Configure authorized groups** and select the groups that should
 2552 require a Cisco ISE client.
 2553 5. Enter a domain name for **FQDN**, and add it to your DNS.

- 2554
 2555 6. Click **Save**.

2.16.10 Configuring RADIUS with Your Network Device

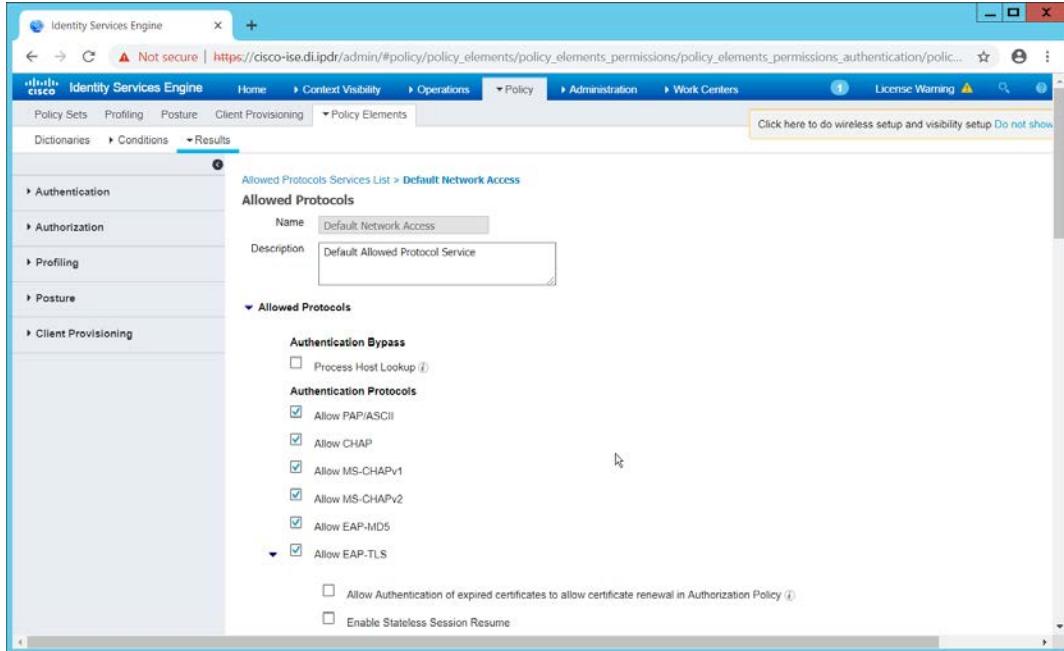
2557 Cisco ISE requires a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) session for posture to
 2558 function. Posture refers to ISE's ability to check that a machine complies with a specified policy, which
 2559 may be based on the operating system (OS) and may contain requirements such as installation of
 2560 certain security applications or the presence of configuration files. Machines that are not in compliance
 2561 can be kept separated from the network. The process for setting this up varies widely among machines,
 2562 but the overall requirements have commonalities among systems.

- 2563 • The **Network Device** (i.e., the router or switch) must support RADIUS functions, specifically
 2564 **Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting**. Furthermore, it must also support **CoA**, which
 2565 is **Change of Authorization**. To configure this, you must configure your network device to use
 2566 Cisco ISE as a RADIUS server. What this means is that your network device will forward
 2567 authentication requests to Cisco ISE, and Cisco ISE will respond with an “accept” or “reject.”
- 2568 • The **Network Device** must support some form of **802.1x**. Note that this is not supported on
 2569 certain routers, even if RADIUS is supported. **802.1x** is a mechanism for authenticating the end
 2570 workstation to the network device, potentially over wireless or through Ethernet.

- 2571 a. This can take various forms, such as a captive web portal, MAC address authentication,
2572 or user authentication. A captive web portal, if the device supports it, may be ideal for
2573 configuration without the correct hardware.
- 2574 b. There are also many switches that provide direct 802.1x username/password
2575 authentication. Note that if you choose to use this mechanism, a client is still required,
2576 and it will not be in the web browser. Windows has a built-in 802.1x client, which can be
2577 configured on network adapters under the **Authentication** tab. To enable it, you must
2578 first start the service **Wired AutoConfig**, and then the **Authentication** tab will become
2579 available for configuration.
- 2580 c. Whatever form of 802.1x is chosen, the request for authentication must be forwarded
2581 to Cisco ISE. Cisco ISE will process the request for authentication.
- 2582 • The two steps above detail the **authentication** phase. Once authenticated, the network device
2583 must redirect the user to the client provisioning portal (or to a guest portal), depending on the
2584 setup. The URL for this can be acquired from the active **Authorization Profile** in ISE.
- 2585 • The user will then authenticate to the **Guest Portal** or **Client Provisioning Portal** (depending on
2586 your setup). The portal will prompt the user to download an executable, which will run posture.
- 2587 • The executable will *first* check for the existence of a RADIUS session in Cisco ISE for the user
2588 who downloaded the executable. It will primarily check the MAC address that visited the ISE
2589 web portal against the MAC addresses of existing sessions. *If and only if a session exists*, it will
2590 run posture based on the policy you set up. You can verify that a session exists by navigating to
2591 **Operations > RADIUS > Live Sessions**.

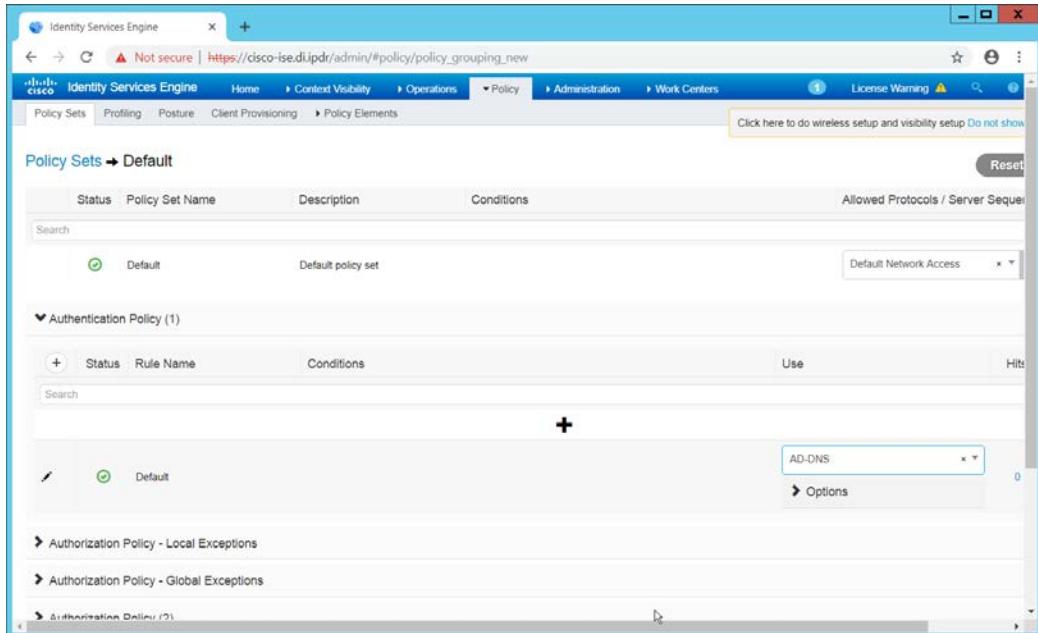
2592 2.16.11 Configuring an Authentication Policy

- 2593 1. Navigate to **Policy > Policy Elements > Results > Authentication > Allowed Protocols**.
- 2594 2. Select the **Default Network Access** protocol or create your own.
- 2595 3. Ensure that any protocols that need to be supported for your network setup are allowed. In
2596 particular, if using 802.1x, it is likely that you should check the box next to **Allow MS-CHAPv2**.



2597

- 2598 4. Click **Save**.
- 2599 5. Navigate to **Policy > Policy Sets**.
- 2600 6. Select the default policy.
- 2601 7. Ensure that the **Allowed Protocol** selection matches the allowed protocol you just created/edited.
- 2602 8. Expand the **Authentication Policy** section, and select the ID stores from which to authenticate users. For example, if you set up an Active Directory integration, it may be desirable to authenticate users from there.
- 2603
- 2604
- 2605

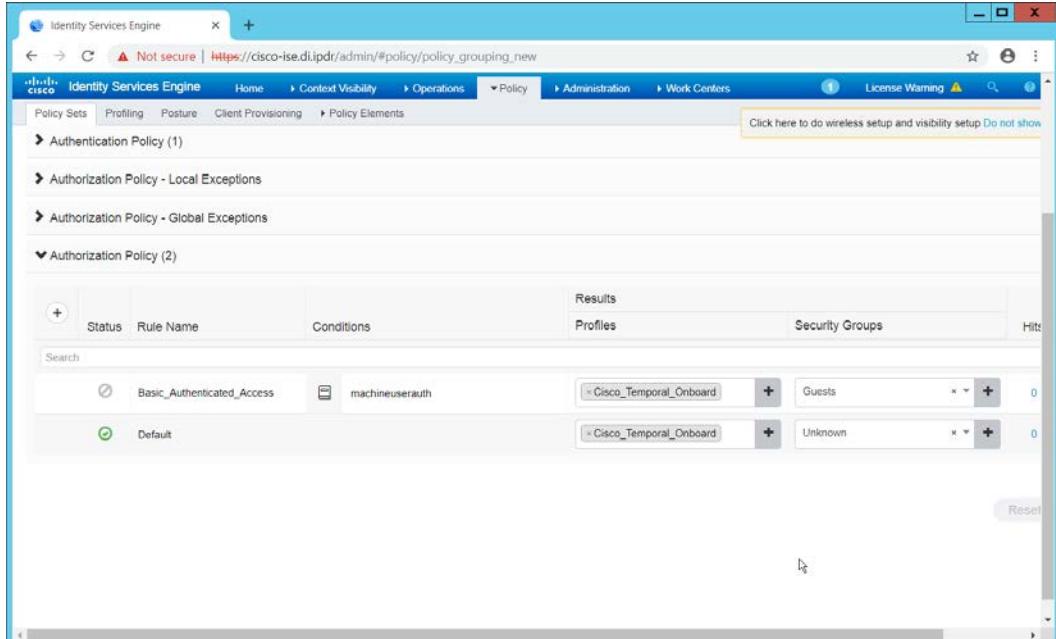


2606
2607

9. Click **Save**.

2.16.12 Configuring an Authorization Policy

1. The Authorization Profile is likely dependent on your network device, but it is possible that the **Cisco_Temporal_Onboard** profile will work even for non-Cisco devices. You can edit the authorization policy by navigating to **Policy > Policy Elements > Results > Authorization > Authorization Profiles**.
2. The temporal onboard profile will attempt to redirect the user to a client-provisioning portal. This redirection will most likely happen only automatically on compatible Cisco network devices. If another device is used, the device may need to manually redirect the user to the client-provisioning portal after authentication. (We accomplished this in pfSense for our build by using a “post-authentication redirection” feature in the Captive Portal.)
3. Once you are finished configuring the **Authorization Profile**, navigate to **Policy > Policy Sets**.
4. Select the default policy.
5. Expand the **Authorization Policy** section.
6. Note that you can configure this for as many groups and conditions as desired, potentially specifying different authorization profiles for various user groups or levels of authentication, including unauthenticated access. Under **Results > Profiles**, you can select the authorization profiles you configured.



2625

2626 7. Click **Save**.2627

2.17 Tripwire IP360

2628 This section details installation and configuration for Tripwire IP360.

2629

2.17.1 Installation

- 2630 1. Move or copy the Tripwire IP360 Virtual Machine into your virtual environment; start Virtual
2631 Machine and observe its successful start-up.

2632

2. Log in using default admin credentials.

```

Running airs-firstboot: [ OK ]
Starting postfix: [ OK ]
Running vnc-airs-firstboot: [ OK ]
Installing Ontology: [ 2789.687610] sched: RT throttling activated [ OK ]
Calling the system activity data collector (sadc)... .
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point...
Tripwire Axon Access Point is already running.
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway...
Waiting for Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway..... .
running: PID:27875
Starting HNL daemon: [ OK ]
Starting ched: [ OK ]
Starting cheserver: [ OK ]
Configuring PostgreSQL Memory
Starting dbd: [ OK ]
Starting hostd: [ OK ]
Starting objectapiix: [ OK ]
Starting reportd: [ OK ]
Starting vnc-php-fpm: [ OK ]
Starting vnc-air: [ OK ]
Starting eventd: [INFO] IP368 Event Daemon build # starting up [ INFO ]
[INFO] nclib: 07.40 and libche: 04.6
Starting imageserver: [ OK ]
Starting httpd: [ OK ]
Starting axon-agent-supervisor: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-loader: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-transformer: [ OK ]
Starting axon-stream-listener: [ OK ]
Starting crond: [ OK ]
Digest_proxy does not need to start
Starting lifeguard: [ OK ]
Starting loader: [ OK ]
Starting incrdn: [ OK ]
Starting monit: Cannot translate 'vnc-934358a2' to FQDN name -- Name or service not known
Generated unique Monit id fdc3ed1c4764a7a1c25183b99c9e12ba and stored to '/var/monit/id'
Starting Monit 5.14 daemon with http interface at [localhost]:2012 [ OK ]
Starting ntlmssp:
Tripwire Appliance
vnc-934358a2 login:
Tripwire Appliance
vnc-934358a2 login: admin
Password: -

```

2633

2634

3. When prompted after initial login, set a new password and record it in a safe location.

```

Installing Ontology: [ 2789.687610] sched: RT throttling activated [ OK ]
Calling the system activity data collector (sadc)... .
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point...
Tripwire Axon Access Point is already running.
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway...
Waiting for Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway..... .
running: PID:27875
Starting HNL daemon: [ OK ]
Starting ched: [ OK ]
Starting cheserver: [ OK ]
Configuring PostgreSQL Memory
Starting dbd: [ OK ]
Starting hostd: [ OK ]
Starting objectapiix: [ OK ]
Starting reportd: [ OK ]
Starting vnc-php-fpm: [ OK ]
Starting vnc-air: [ OK ]
Starting eventd: [INFO] IP368 Event Daemon build # starting up [ INFO ]
[INFO] nclib: 07.40 and libche: 04.6
Starting imageserver: [ OK ]
Starting httpd: [ OK ]
Starting axon-agent-supervisor: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-loader: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-transformer: [ OK ]
Starting axon-stream-listener: [ OK ]
Starting crond: [ OK ]
Digest_proxy does not need to start
Starting lifeguard: [ OK ]
Starting loader: [ OK ]
Starting incrdn: [ OK ]
Starting monit: Cannot translate 'vnc-934358a2' to FQDN name -- Name or service not known
Generated unique Monit id fdc3ed1c4764a7a1c25183b99c9e12ba and stored to '/var/monit/id'
Starting Monit 5.14 daemon with http interface at [localhost]:2012 [ OK ]
Starting ntlmssp:
Tripwire Appliance
vnc-934358a2 login:
Tripwire Appliance
vnc-934358a2 login: admin
Password:
You must change your password.
This will also change the password for ip368@tripwire.com.
New password:

```

2635

- 2636 4. Use the command **system hostname update <hostname>** to update the system's hostname in
 2637 accordance with your environment's naming scheme.

```
[ 1.647488] [drm] Max dedicated hypervisor surface memory is 8 kB
[ 1.647586] [drm] Maximum display memory size is 29400 kB
[ 1.647799] [drm] UBRM at 0xe0000000 size is 29400 kB
[ 1.647995] [drm] MMIO at 0xd0000000 size is 256 kB
[ 1.648127] [drm] global init.
[ 1.648373] [TTM] Zone kernel: available graphics memory: 6214352 kB
[ 1.648541] [TTM] Zone dma32: available graphics memory: 2897152 kB
[ 1.648694] [TTM] initializing pool allocator
[ 1.648837] [TTM] initializing DMA pool allocator
[ 1.649381] [drm] Supports vblank timestamp caching Rev 2 (21.10.2013).
[ 1.649451] [drm] vblank timestamp support for vblank timestamp query.
[ 1.650539] [drm] SceCntr Target Display device initialized
[ 1.650551] [drm] height 1280
[ 1.650661] [drm] width 1280
[ 1.650811] [drm] bpp 32
[ 1.651637] [drm] FIFO max 0x00040000 min 0x000001000 cap 0x0000007f
[ 1.652583] [drm] Using command buffers with DRAM pool.
[ 1.652695] [drm] DX: no.
[ 1.656728] fbcon: sgadramfb (fb0) is primary device
[ 1.657053] [drm] Initialized sgadramfb colour frame buffer device 160x48
[ 1.657263] [drm] Initialized vgasifx 2.12.0 29176221 for 0000:00:0f.0 on minor 0
[ 1.716976] random: fast init done
[ 1.728649] Floppy drive(s): fd0 is 1.44M
[ 1.733327] FDC 0 is a post-1991 82077
[ 1.817166] EXT4-fs (sda2): mounted filesystem with ordered data mode. Opts: (null)
[ 1.822938] dracut: Mounted root filesystem /dev/sda2
[ 1.881043] dracut: Switching root
[ 1.881043]   Welcome to Tripwire Appliance
Starting udev: [ 2.251929] udevd[147] starting version 147
[ 2.352284] shpchp: Standard Hot Plug PCI Controller Driver version: 8.4
[ 2.562032] random: crng init done
[ 3.043626] pixl_sabus 0000:00:07.3: SMBus Host Controller not enabled!
[ 3.851650] vna vnci 0000:00:07.7: Found UMC1 PCI device at 0x10000, irq 16
[ 3.851728] vna vnci 0000:00:07.7: Using capabilities 8x
[ 3.851843] Guest personality initialized and is active
[ 3.851989] UMC1 host device registered (name=vnci, major=10, minor=57)
[ 3.862695] Initialized host personality
[ 3.869249] input: PC Speaker as /devices/platform/pcspkr/input/input5
[ 3.870515] Intel(R) PRO/1000 MT Desktop Network Adapter - version 1.1 - Copyright (c) 2015 FUJITSU LIMITED
[ 3.952777] e1000: Intel(R) PRO/1000 Network Driver version 7.3.21-k8-NAPI
[ 3.953655] e1000: Copyright (c) 1999-2006 Intel Corporation
[ 3.538522] e1000 0000:00:02:00.0 eth0: (PCIe 64MHz 32-bit) 00:58:56:b2:3a:b1
[ 3.538615] e1000 0000:00:02:00.0 eth0: Intel(R) PRO/1000 Network Connection
[ 3.557727] pudev: user-space parallel port driver
Setting hostname localhost.localdomain: [ OK ]
Checking filesystems
```

- 2638 5. Use command **network interface update <interface> <IP>/<Broadcast IP>** to update network
 interface information in accordance with your environment's network.

```
Stopping eventd: [ OK ]
Stopping hostd: [FAILED]
Stopping reportd: [ OK ]
Stopping cheserver: [ OK ]
Calling the system activity data collector (sadc)...
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point...
Tripwire Axon Access Point is already running.
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway...
Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway is already running.
Retrigger failed udev events [ OK ]
Digest_proxy does not need to start
Calling the system activity data collector (sadc)...
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point...
Tripwire Axon Access Point is already running.
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway...
Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway is already running.
Retrigger failed udev events [ OK ]
Starting cheserver: [ OK ]
Configuring PostgreSQL Memory
Starting hostd: [ OK ]
Starting reportd: [ OK ]
Starting eventd: [INFO] IP368 Event Daemon build # starting up
[INFO] nc1ib: U7.48 and libche: U4.6
Starting axon-agent-supervisor: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-loader: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-transformer: [ OK ]
Starting axon-stream-listener: [ OK ]
Starting crond: [ OK ]
Digest_proxy does not need to start
Starting lifeguard: [ OK ]
Starting monit: Cannot translate 'one-934358a2' to FQDN name -- Name or service not known
Starting Monit 5.14 daemon with http interface at [localhost]:2812 [ OK ]
Tripwire Appliance
one-934358a2 login: admin
Password:
Last login: Tue Sep 11 17:05:12 on ttys1
one-934358a2 system hostname update tw368.d1.ipdr
Command succeeded.
one-934358a2> network interface update eth0 192.168.1.144/255.255.255.0
(552868.264771) eth0: eth0 NIC Link is Up 1000 Mbps Full Duplex, Flow Control: None
(552868.264774) IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): eth0: link is not ready
(552868.275441) IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_CHANGE): eth0: link becomes ready
Command succeeded.
one-934358a2> _
```

6. Use command **network route_default create <gateway>** to update the system's default gateway information in accordance with your environment's network.

```

Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point...
Tripwire Axon Access Point is already running.
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway...
Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway is already running.
[ OK ]
Retrigger failed iudev events
[ OK ]
Digest proxy does not need to start
Calling the system activity data collector (sadc)...
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point...
Tripwire Axon Access Point is already running.
Starting Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway...
Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway is already running.
[ OK ]
Retrigger failed iudev events
[ OK ]
Starting cheserver:
[ OK ]
Configuring PostgreSQL Memory
Starting hostd:
[ OK ]
Starting reportd:
[ OK ]
Starting eventd: [INFO] IP360 Event Daemon build # starting up
[INFO] nclib: U7.40 and libche: U4.6
[ OK ]
Starting axon-agent-supervisor:
[ OK ]
Starting axon-data-loader:
[ OK ]
Starting axon-data-transformer:
[ OK ]
Starting axon-stream-listener:
[ OK ]
Starting crond:
[ OK ]
Digest proxy does not need to start
Starting lifeguard:
[ OK ]
Starting monit: Cannot translate 'vne-934358a2' to FQDN name -- Name or service not known
Starting Monit 5.14 daemon with http interface at [localhost]:2812
[ OK ]

Tripwire Appliance
vne-934358a2 login: admin
Password:
Last login: Tue Sep 11 17:05:12 on ttys1
vne-934358a2> system hostname update tw360.d1.ipdr
Command succeeded.
vne-934358a2> network interface update eth0 192.168.1.144/255.255.255.0
[552116.5989511] e1000: eth0 NIC Link is Up 1000 Mbps Full Duplex, Flow Control: None
[552116.5989511] e1000: eth0 NIC Link is Up 1000 Mbps Full Duplex, Flow Control: None
[552116.6039581] IP6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): eth0: link is not ready
[552116.6087881] IP6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_CHANGE): eth0: link becomes ready
Command succeeded.
vne-934358a2> network route_default create 192.168.1.1
[552116.5989511] e1000: eth0 NIC Link is Up 1000 Mbps Full Duplex, Flow Control: None
[552116.6039581] IP6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): eth0: link is not ready
[552116.6087881] IP6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_CHANGE): eth0: link becomes ready
Command succeeded.
vne-934358a2>

```

7. Use command **system nameserver create <nameserver IP>** to set up the DNS server.

```

Tripwire Axon Access Point Gateway is already running.
Retrigger failed udev events [ OK ]
Starting cheserver: [ OK ]
Configuring PostgreSQL Memory
Starting hostd: [ OK ]
Starting reportd: [ OK ]
Starting eventd: [INFO] IP360 Event Daemon build # starting up
[INFO] nclib: V7.49 and libche: V4.6
Starting axon-agent-supervisor: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-loader: [ OK ]
Starting axon-data-transformer: [ OK ]
Starting axon-stream-listener: [ OK ]
Starting crond: [ OK ]
Digest proxy does not need to start
Starting lifeguard: [ OK ]
Starting monit: Cannot translate 'vne-934358a2' to FQDN name -- Name or service not known
Starting Monit 5.14 daemon with http interface at [localhost]:2812 [ OK ]

Tripwire Appliance
vne-934358a2 login: admin
Password:
Last login: Tue Sep 11 17:05:12 on ttys1
vne-934358a2> system hostname update tu360.di.ipdr
Command succeeded.
vne-934358a2> network interface update eth0 192.168.1.144/255.255.255.0
(552868_2647711) e1000: eth0 NIC Link is Up 1000 Mbps Full Duplex, Flow Control: None
(552868_2647741) IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): eth0: link is not ready
(552868_2754411) IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_CHANGE): eth0: link becomes ready
Command succeeded.
vne-934358a2> network route_default create 192.168.1.1
(552116_5985511) e1000: eth0 NIC Link is Up 1000 Mbps Full Duplex, Flow Control: None
(552116_6039581) IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): eth0: link is not ready
(552116_6087881) IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_CHANGE): eth0: link becomes ready
Command succeeded.
vne-934358a2> system name server create 192.168.1.12
Add nameserver.

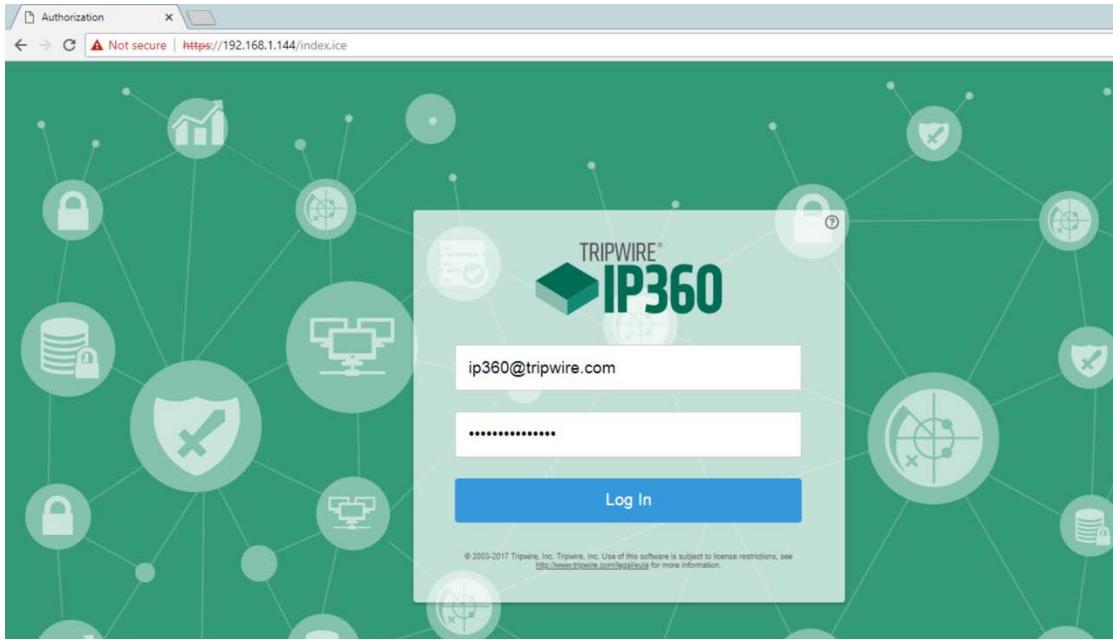
Usage:
system nameserver create <ip>

Example:
system nameserver create 192.168.1.2
tu360.di.ipdr> system nameserver create 192.168.1.12
Command succeeded.
tu360.di.ipdr> _

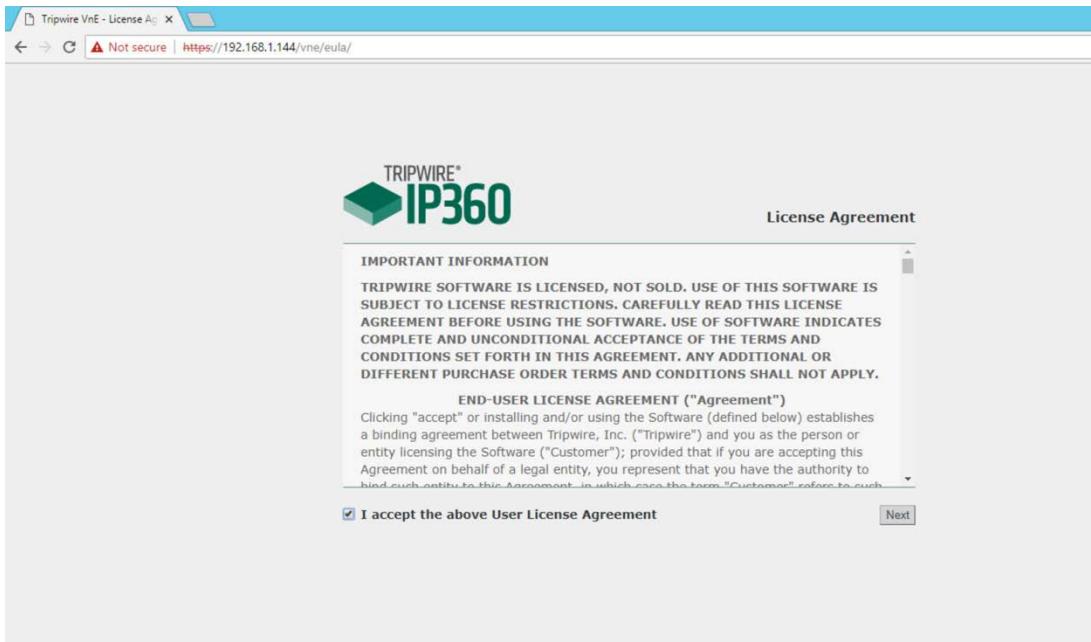
```

2639 2.17.2 Web Portal

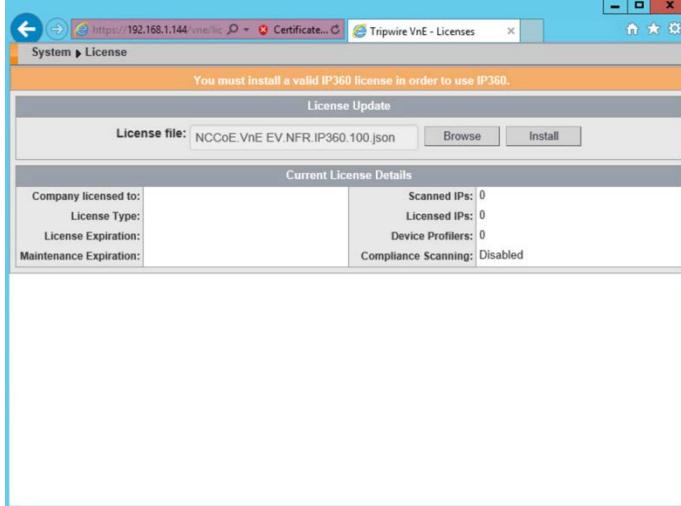
- 2640 1. From a web browser that can access the newly installed machine's IP address, navigate to the IP
 2641 address and log in using the updated credentials from the setup process.



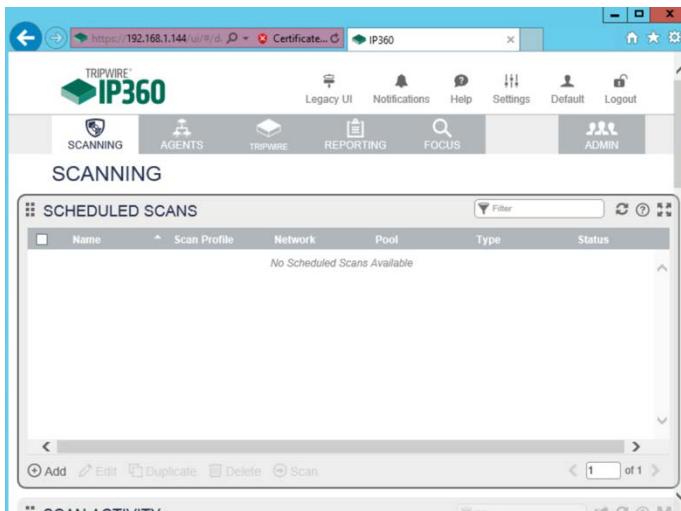
- 2642 2. Check the box next to I accept the above User License Agreement.



- 2644 3. Click **Next**.
- 2645 4. Browse to location of downloaded license file.



- 2646
- 2647 5. Click **Install**.
- 2648 6. Tripwire IP360 should now be installed and running.

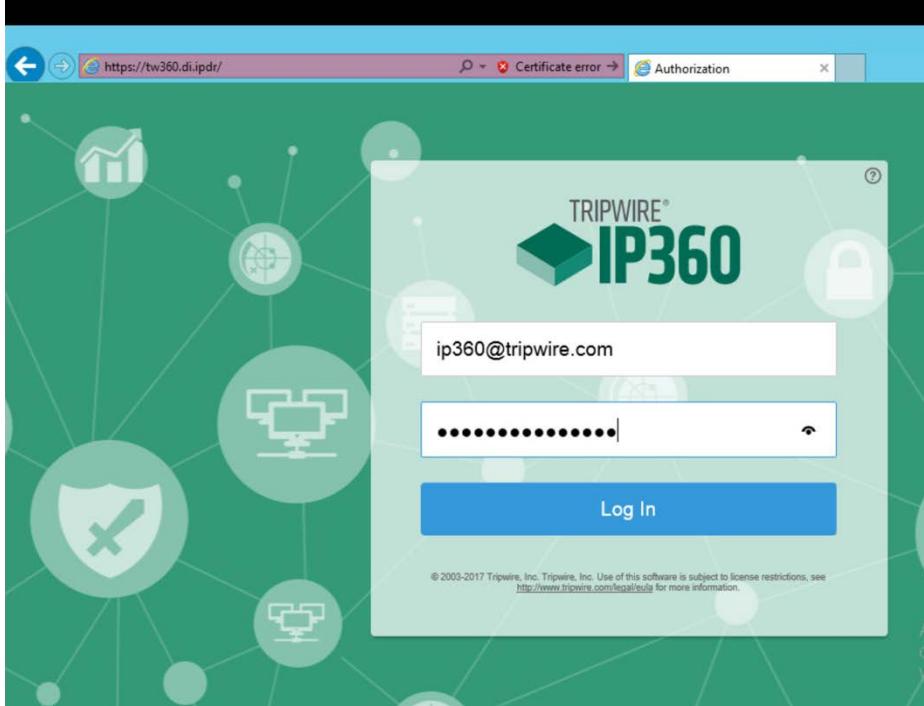


2649

2650 2.17.3 Scanning

- 2651 This section details instructions for using Tripwire IP360 to run a scan on enterprise systems. The
2652 specific details of the scan will vary based on each enterprise's security needs.

- 2653 1. Navigate to the web interface and log in.



2654
2655

2. Navigate to the **Scanning** tab.

Name	Scan Profile	Network	Pool	Type	Status
windows10-1	Tripwire: Standard Profile	windows10-1	tw360	Recurring	✓

- 2656
2657 3. Click **Add**.
2658 4. Complete the information regarding the new scan according to the preferences of your organization.
2659

2660
2661

Add New Scan

Name (defaults to Network Name if unspecified)
ad-dns

Status
On

Scan Profile *
Tripwire: Deep Scan Profile Vulnerability

Network *
ad-dns 192.168.1.12

Appliance Pool *
tw360 1 appliance

On Demand
Off

Scheduled Start Start Date Start Time Retry (HH:mm)
Off PDT

Restrict IP Space Debug Scan Off

Cancel Finish

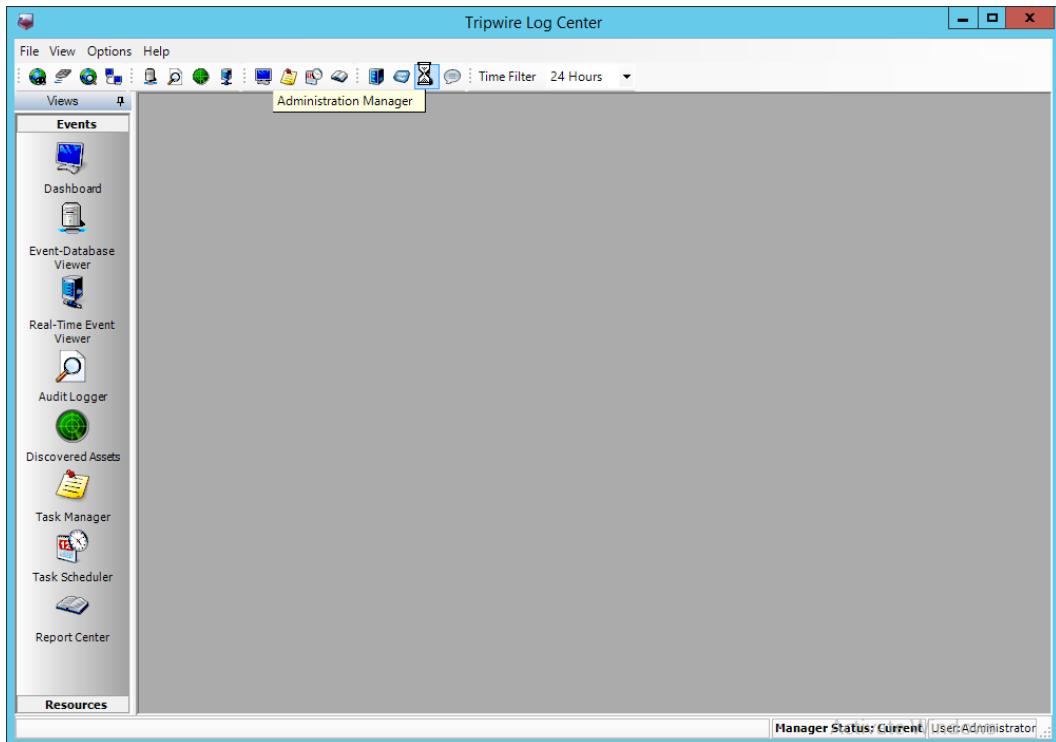
5. Observe successful scan activity.

Name	Duration	End Date	Hosts	Score	Result
ad-dns	1 minute	-	-	-	In Progress (1%)
windows10-1	5 minutes	-	-	-	Paused (0%)
scanning-ping-port	3 minutes	7/9/19	1	0	Finished
scanning-ping-port	2 minutes	7/9/19	1	0	Finished
scanning-ping-port	2 minutes	7/9/19	1	0	Finished
scanning-ping-port	1 minute	7/9/19	1	0	Finished
scanning-ping-port	-	7/9/19	-	-	Failed

Name	IP/CIDR	Asset Value	Status
ad-dns	192.168.1.12	-	-
windows10-1	192.168.1.138	-	-

2662 **2.18 Integration: Tripwire Log Center and Tripwire Enterprise**

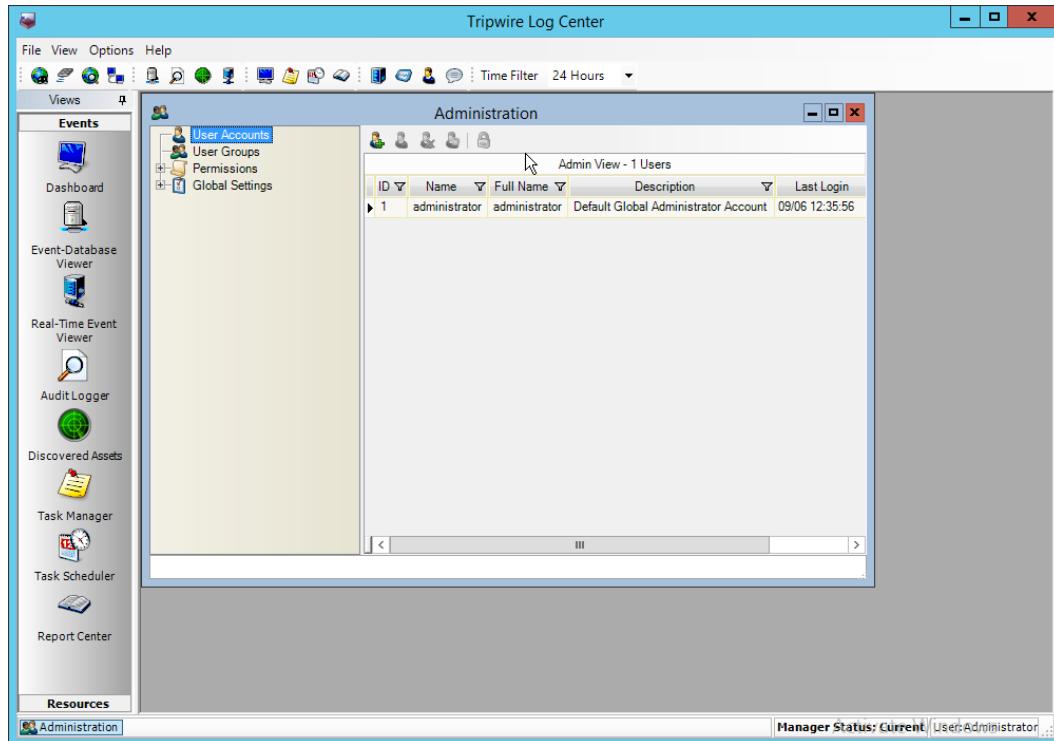
2663 1. Create a user account in **Tripwire Log Center** by logging into **Tripwire Log Center Console**.



2664

2665 2. Click the **Administration Manager** button.

2666 3. Click **User Accounts**.



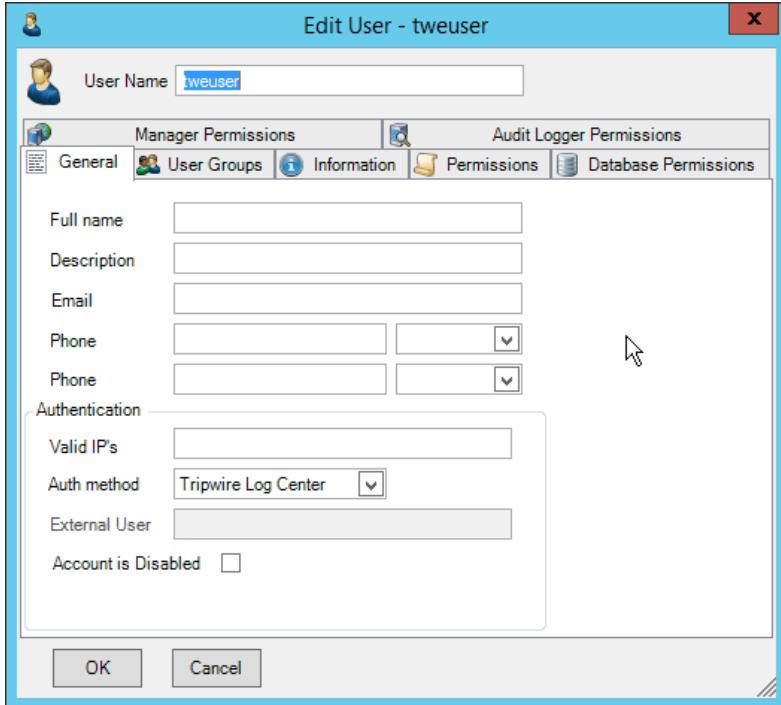
2667

4. Click the **Add** button.
5. Enter the details of the user.

The screenshot shows the 'Add New User' dialog box. It has a 'Username' field containing 'tweuser'. Below it is a 'Settings' tab with fields for 'Full name', 'Description', and 'Authentication method'. The 'Authentication method' dropdown is set to 'Tripwire Log Center'. At the bottom are 'Password' and 'Password Verify' fields, both containing masked text. There are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

2670

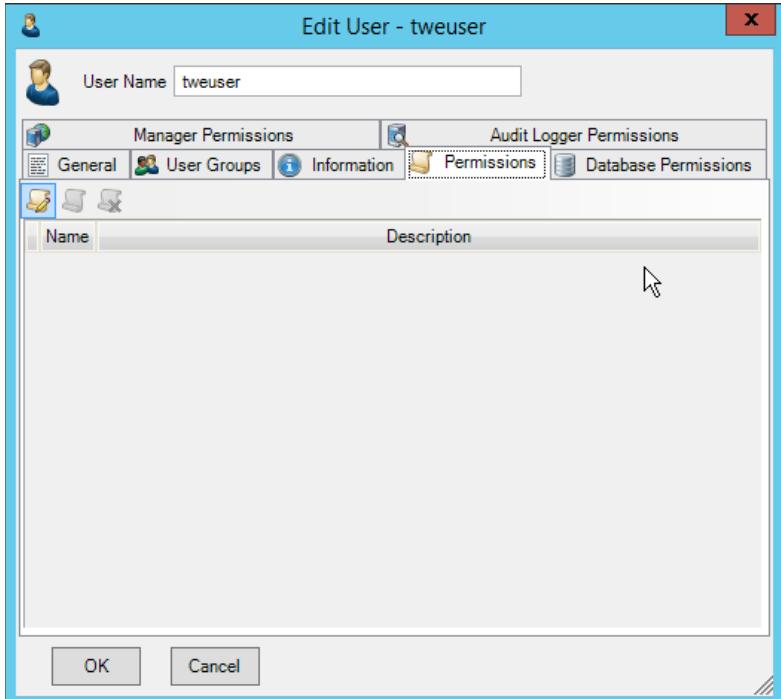
6. Click **Add**.
7. Double-click the user account.



2673

2674

8. Click the **Permissions** tab.

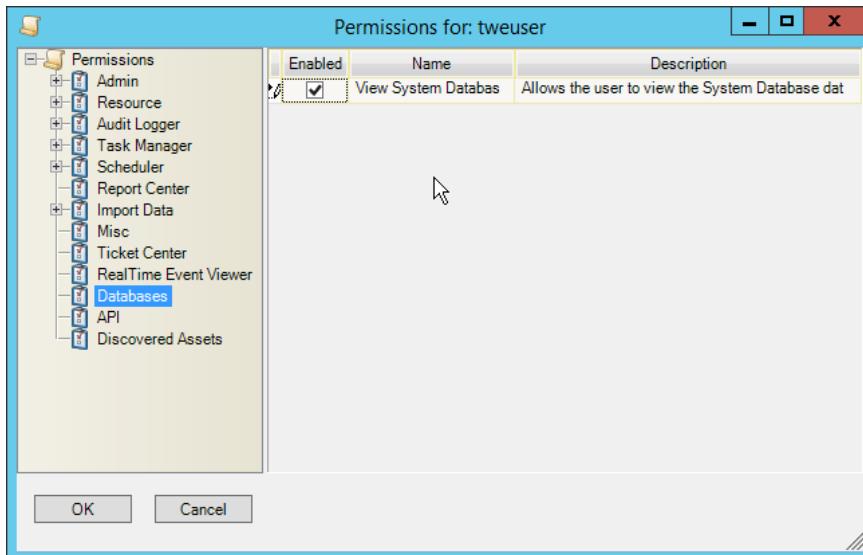


2675

2676

9. Click **Edit list of permissions**.

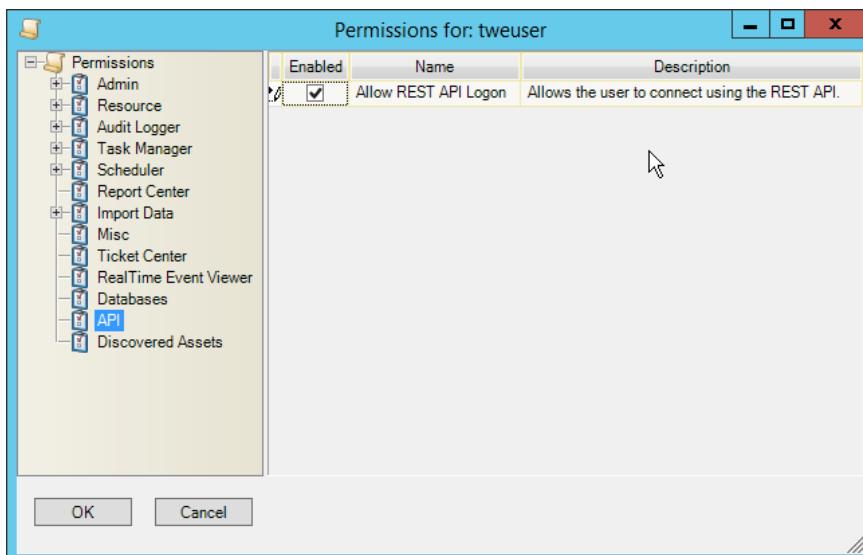
2677

10. Select Databases.

2678

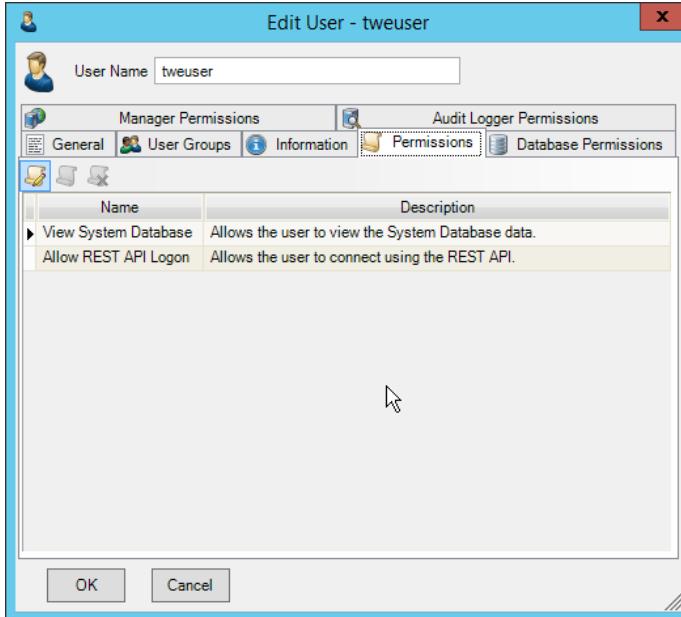
11. Check the box next to View System Database.

2679

12. Select API.

2680

13. Check the box next to Allow REST API Logon.



2683

14. Click **OK**.
15. Click **OK**.
16. Log in to the Tripwire Enterprise web console.
17. Click **Settings**.

User Preferences

Table page size: 150 (1-500)
 Refresh rate: 30 (5-3,600 seconds, 0 to disable)
 Max version display: 50 (Kbytes)
 Max element name display width: 0 (characters, 0 to disable)
 Max description display width: 0 (maximum display for description columns, 0 to view first line)

Always login to Home Page
 Display exact table count

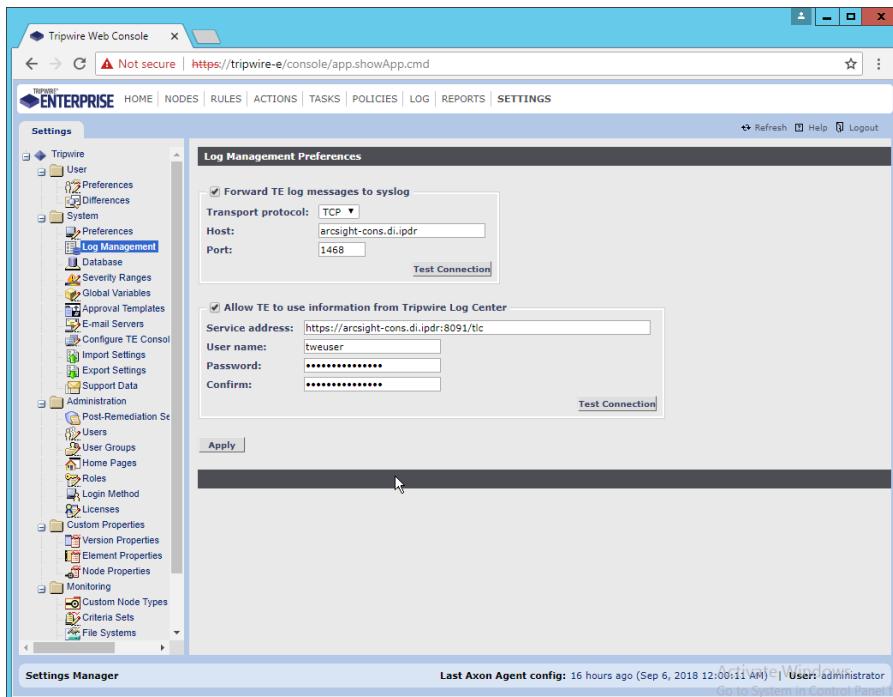
Only within node property editors
 Only within the Node Manager
 In both locations

Animation
 Disable Multi-Expand
 Enable Tree Filter Field

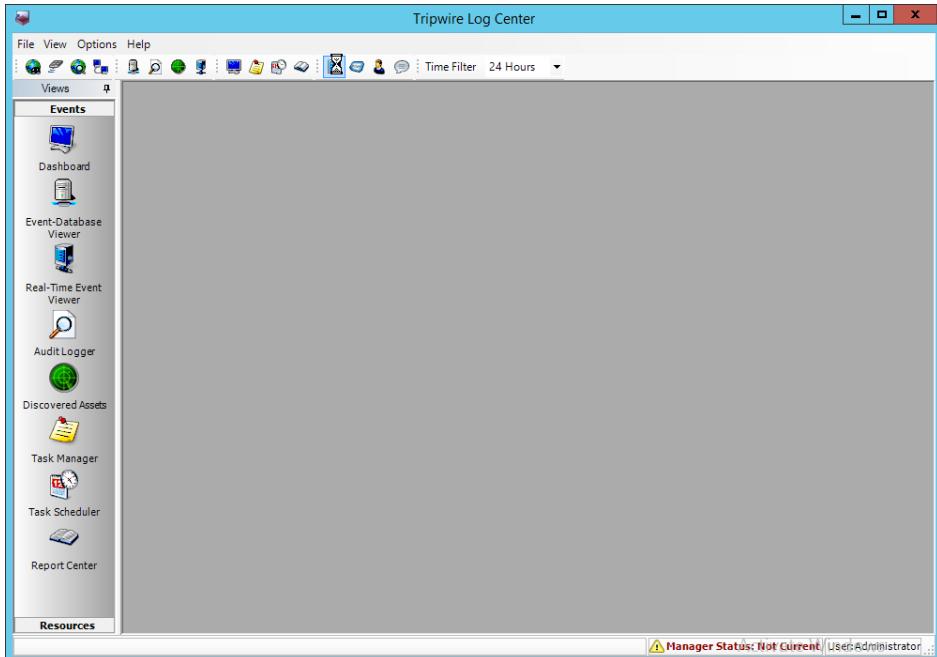
Detailed node view
 Open property editors to the last sheet visited
 Display remediation disclaimer in popup
 Display automated remediation disclaimer in popup

Apply

- 2688 18. Go to **System > Log Management**.
- 2689 19. Check the box next to **Forward TE log messages to syslog**.
- 2690 20. Enter the **hostname** and **port** of the **Tripwire Log Center** server. The default port is 1468.
- 2691 21. Check the box next to **Allow TE to use information from Tripwire Log Center**.
- 2692 22. Enter the **service address** like this: <https://arcsight-cons.di.ipdr:8091/tlc>. Replace the **hostname** with the hostname of your **Tripwire Log Center** server.
- 2694 23. Enter the account information of the account just created for **Tripwire Log Center**.
- 2695 24. You can use **Test Connection** to verify that the connection is working.



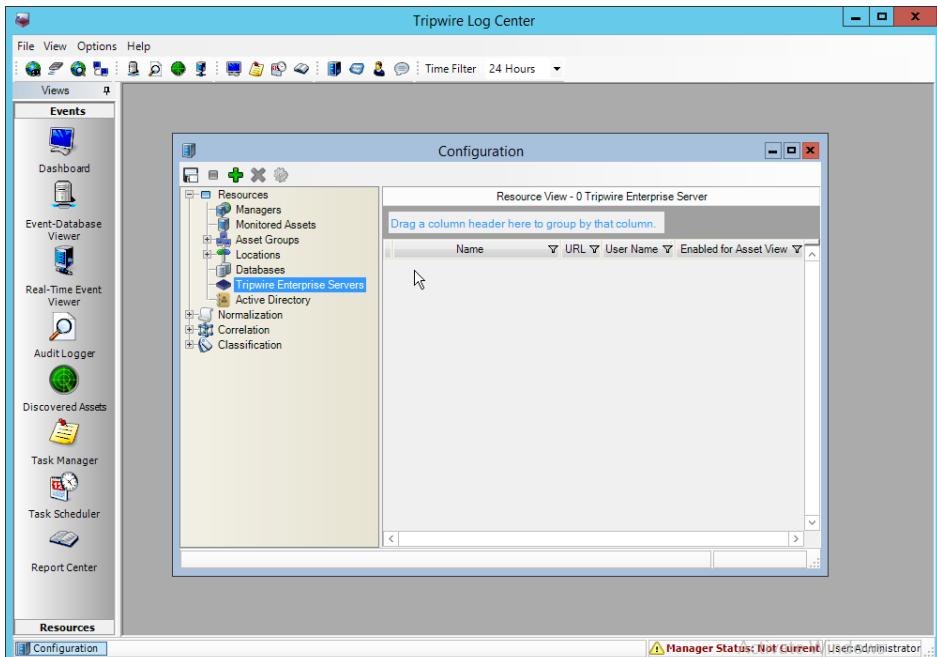
- 2696
- 2697 25. Click **Apply** when finished.
- 2698 26. Go back to the **Tripwire Log Center Console**.



2699

2700 27. Click Configuration Manager.

2701 28. Click Resources > Tripwire Enterprise Servers.

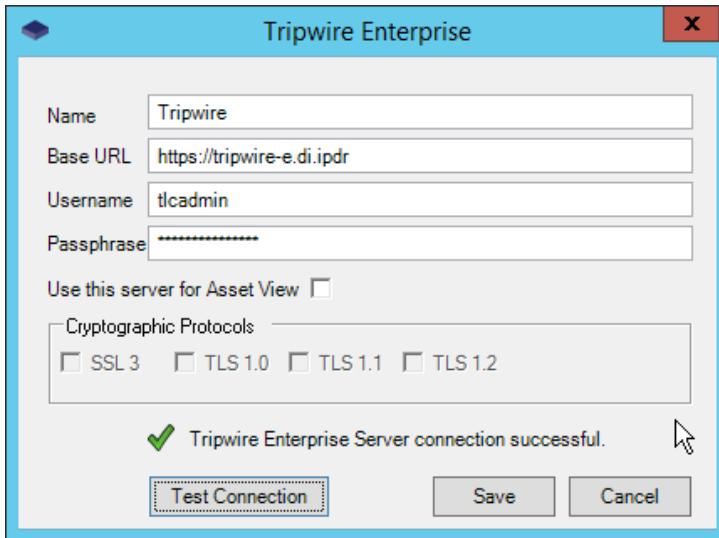


2702

2703 29. Click Add.

2704 30. Enter a name for the server.

- 2705 31. Enter the **URL** of the Tripwire Enterprise server.
- 2706 32. Enter the **name** of a user account on the Tripwire Enterprise server. The account must have the
2707 following permissions: create, delete, link, load, update, view.



- 2708
- 2709 33. Click **Save**.

2710 2.19 Integration: Tripwire Log Center and Tripwire IP360

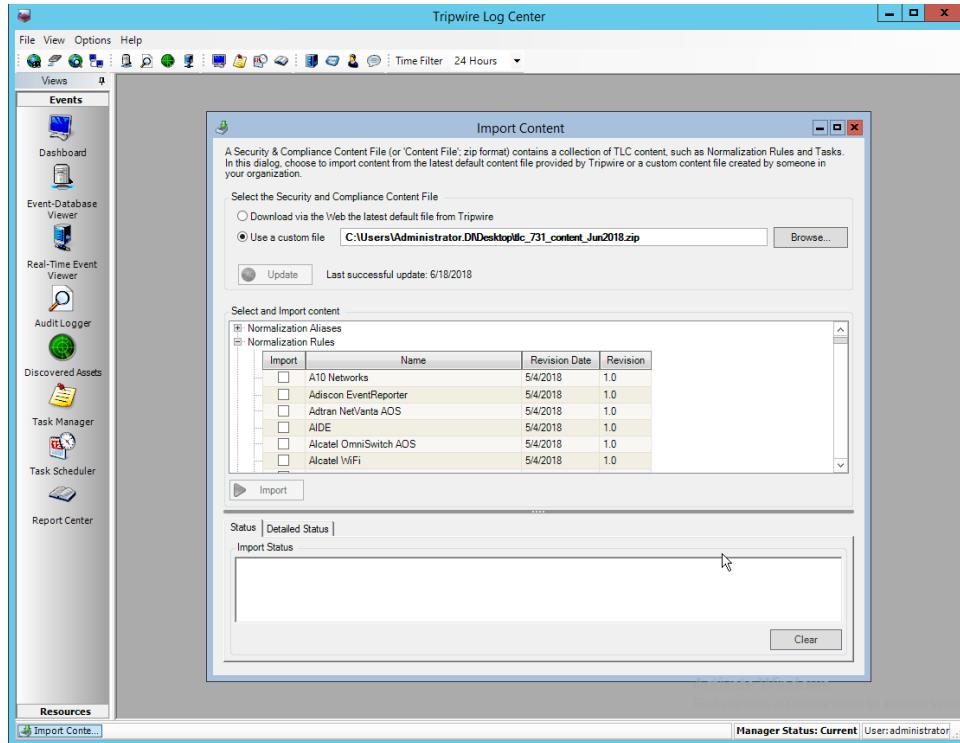
2711 2.19.1 Configure IP360 and Log Center

- 2712 1. On the **Tripwire Log Center Manager** machine, navigate to C:\Program Files\Tripwire\Tripwire Log Center Manager\Agent Services\config.
- 2713
- 2714 2. Copy **bridge_sample.properties** to **bridge.properties**.
- 2715 3. Modify the Pre-Shared Key to use a password by changing the following line (be sure to remove the "#" sign):
2716 tw.cap.bridge.registrationPreSharedKey=newpasswordhere
- 2717
- 2718 4. Save the file.
- 2719 5. From the command line, run the following two commands:
2720 > net stop TripwireBridge
2721 > net start TripwireBridge
- 2722 6. On the Tripwire IP360 machine, from the command line, enter the following command to
2723 specify the hostname of the Tripwire Log Center (TLC) machine:
2724 > tlc config bridge host update <hostname>

- 2725 7. Enter the following command using the preshared key specified earlier:
2726 > tlc config bridge password update <password>
2727 8. Enter the following command to start the TLC service on the IP360 machine (this will use port
2728 5670 on the TLC machine by default):
2729 > system service tlc enable
2730 9. Download the “Content update–June 2018” package from the **Tripwire Customer Center**.
2731 10. Open the **Tripwire Log Center Console**.
2732 11. Enter the **username** and **password**.



- 2733 12. Click **Login**.
2734 13. Click **Options > Import TLC Content > Content**.
2735 14. Select **Use a custom file**.
2736 15. Click **Browse**, and locate the zip file downloaded from the **Tripwire Customer Center**.



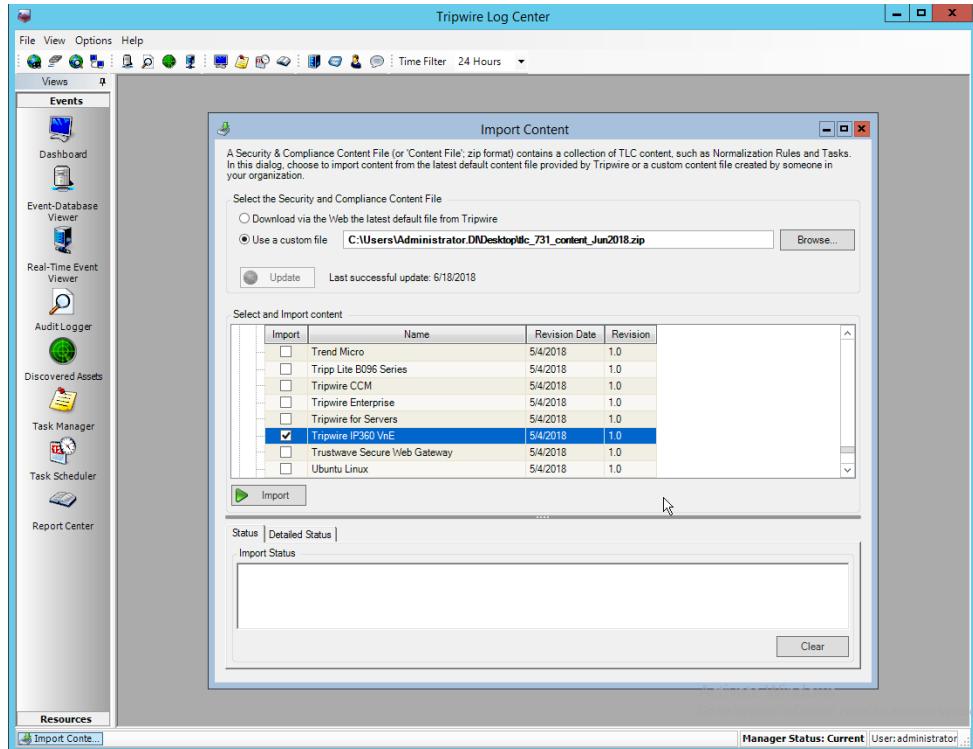
2738

2739

2740

16. Expand the **Normalization Rules** section.

17. Check the box next to **Tripwire IP360 VnE**.

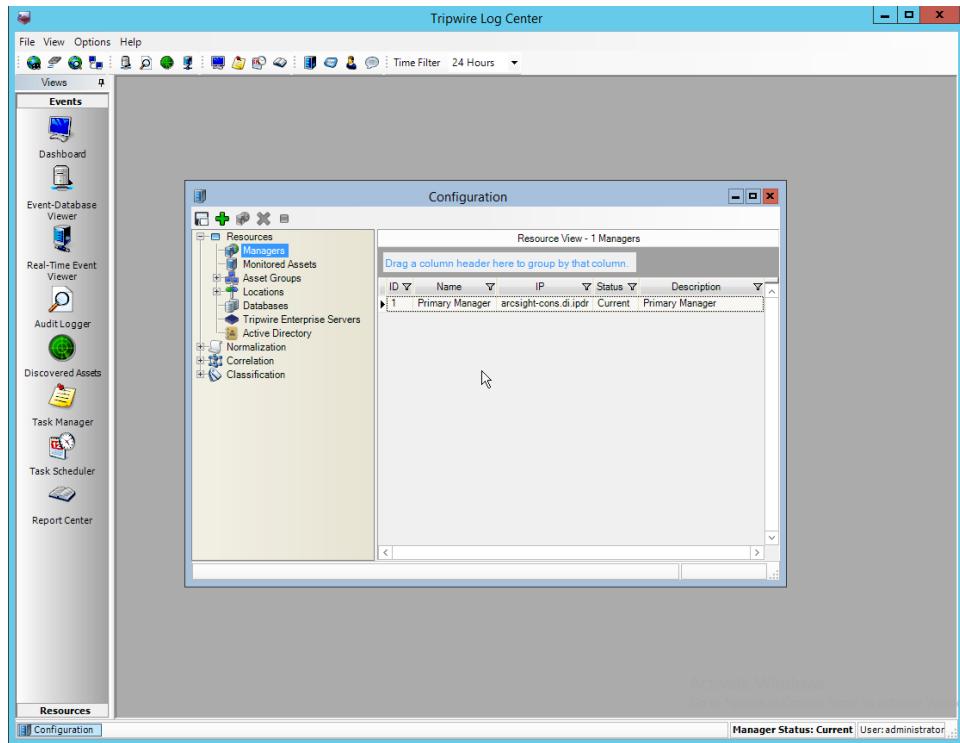


2741
2742

18. Click **Import**.

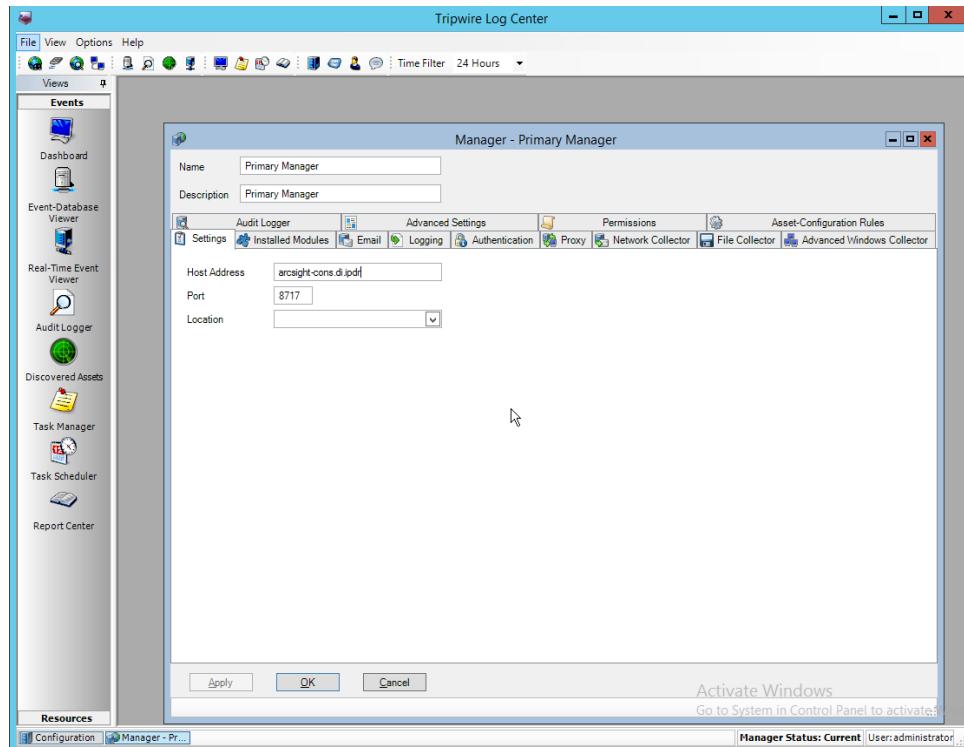
2.19.2 Collect Tripwire IP360 Operational Logs

- 2743 1. Click **Configuration Manager**.
2744 2. Click **Resources > Managers**.



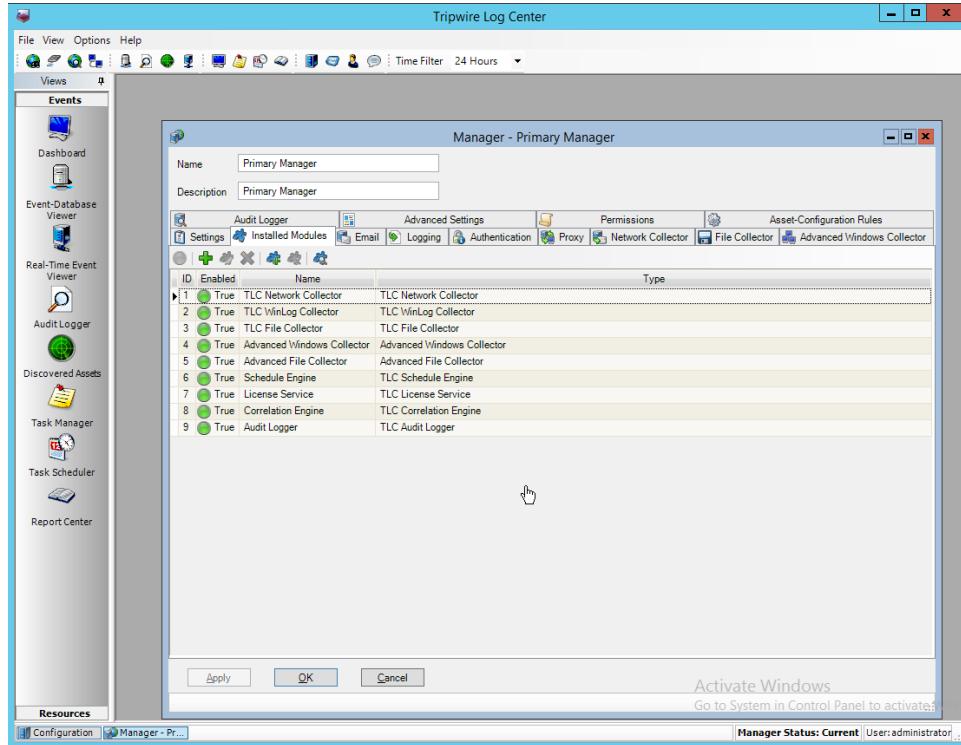
2746

2747 3. Double-click the **Primary Manager**.

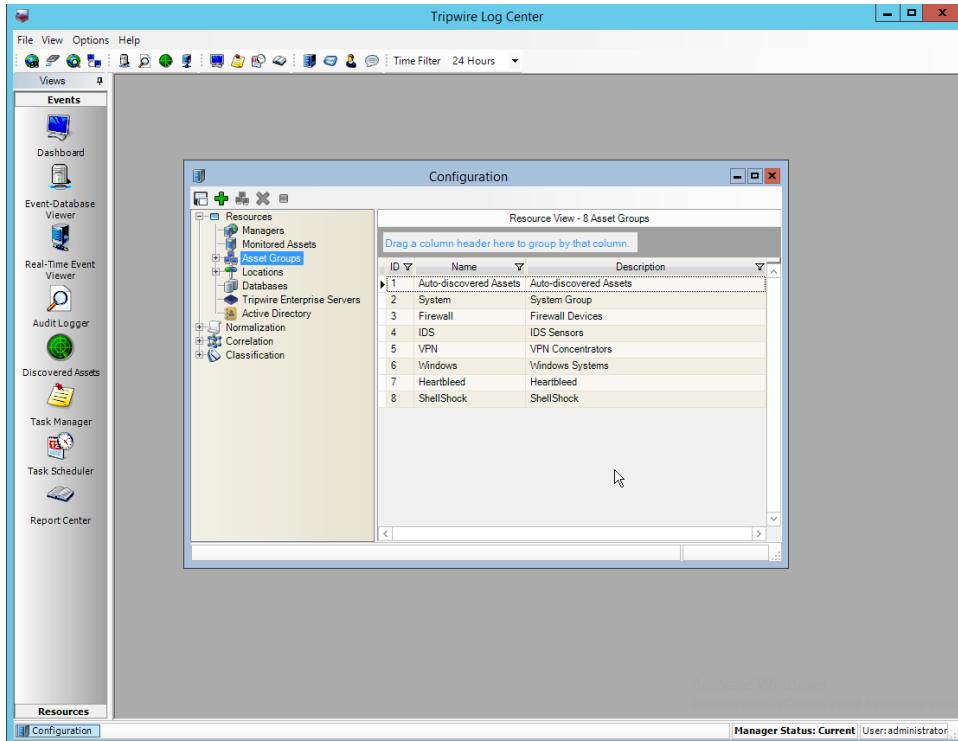


2748
2749

4. Click the **Installed Modules** tab.

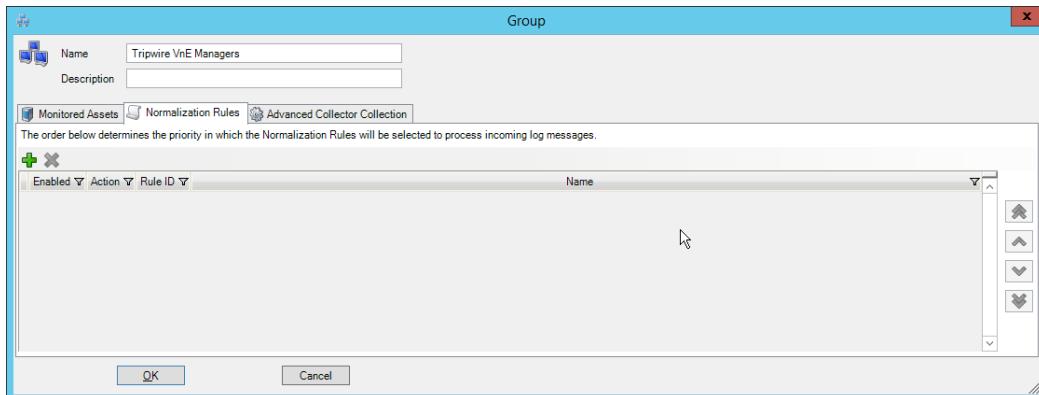


2750
2751 5. Ensure that there is an **Advanced File Collector**. If not, click the **Create new module** button, and
2752 specify a **name**. Set the type to **Advanced File Collector**. If there is an **Advanced File Collector**,
2753 skip this step.
2754 6. Click **OK**.
2755 7. Click **Resources > Asset Groups**.



2756

8. Click Add.
9. Enter **Tripwire VnE Managers** in the **Name** field.
10. Click the **Normalization Rules** tab.



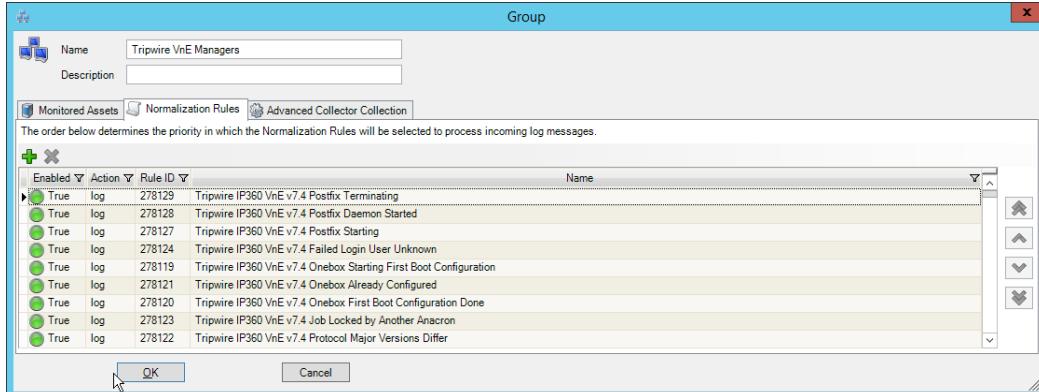
2760

11. Click Add.
12. Expand the **Tripwire IP360 VnE** group.
13. Click the **Check selected rows** button at the top to check the box next to everything in this section.

2765

2766

14. Click **OK**.



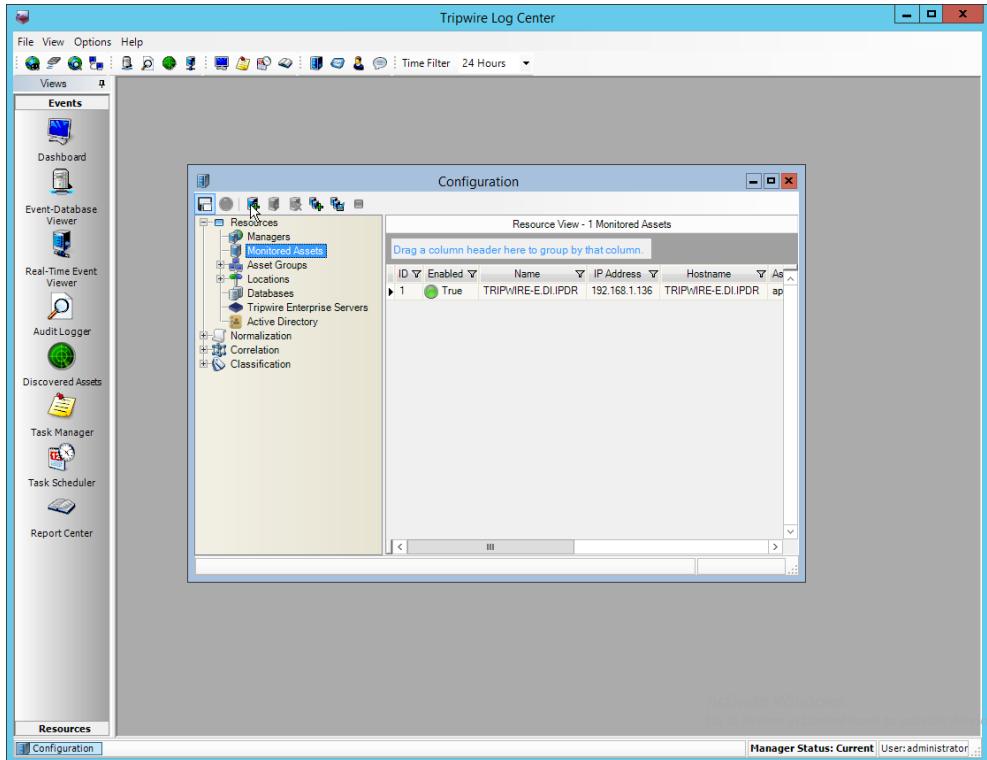
2767

2768

15. Click **OK**.

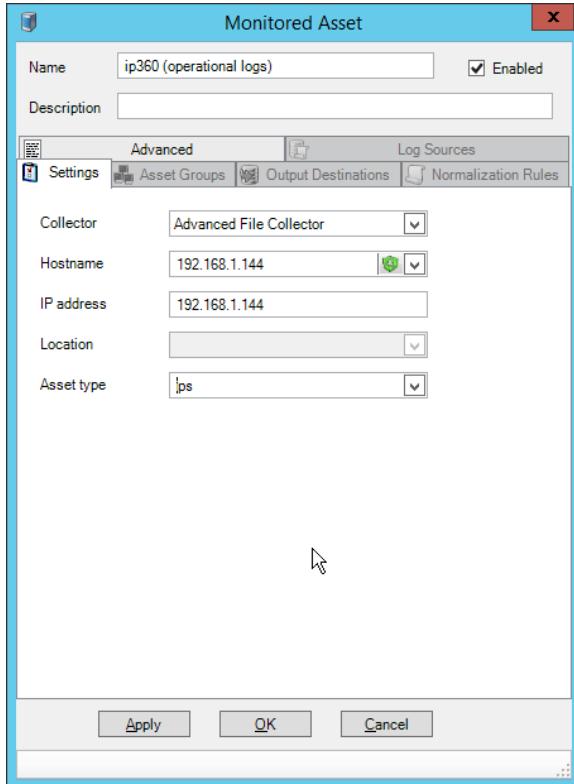
2769

16. Click **Resources > Monitored Assets**.



2770

- 2771 17. Click **Add Monitored Asset**.
- 2772 18. Enter a **name**.
- 2773 19. Select **Advanced File Collector** for **Collector**.
- 2774 20. Select the IP360 server from the **Hostname** drop-down. It may appear as an IP address.
- 2775 21. Enter the **IP address** of the server.
- 2776 22. Select **ips** for **Asset type**.



2777

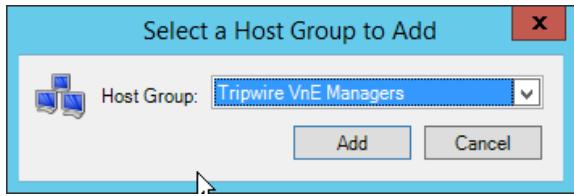
2778 23. Click the **Asset Groups** tab.

2779

24. Click **Add**.

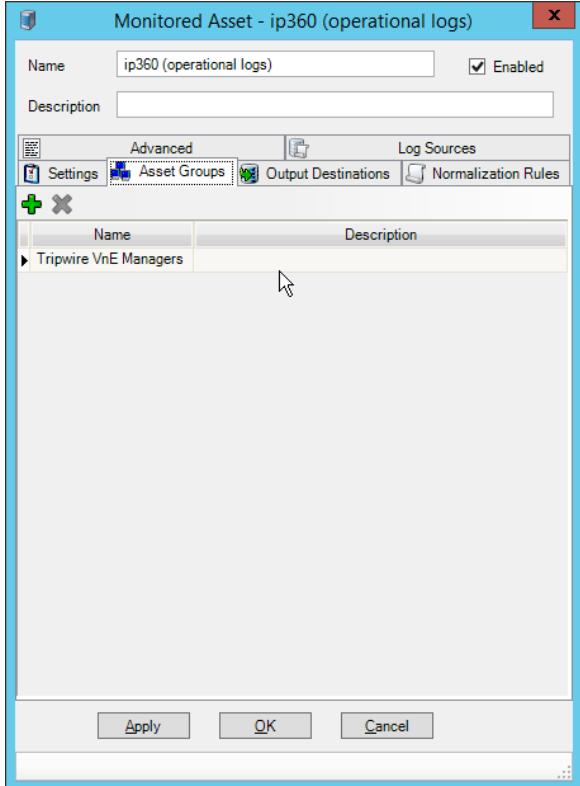
2780

25. Select **Tripwire VnE Managers**.



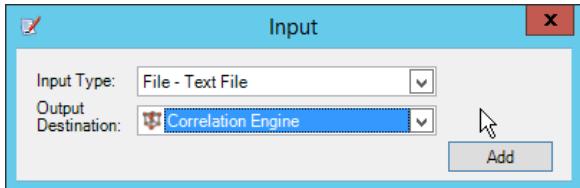
2781

2782 26. Click **Add**.



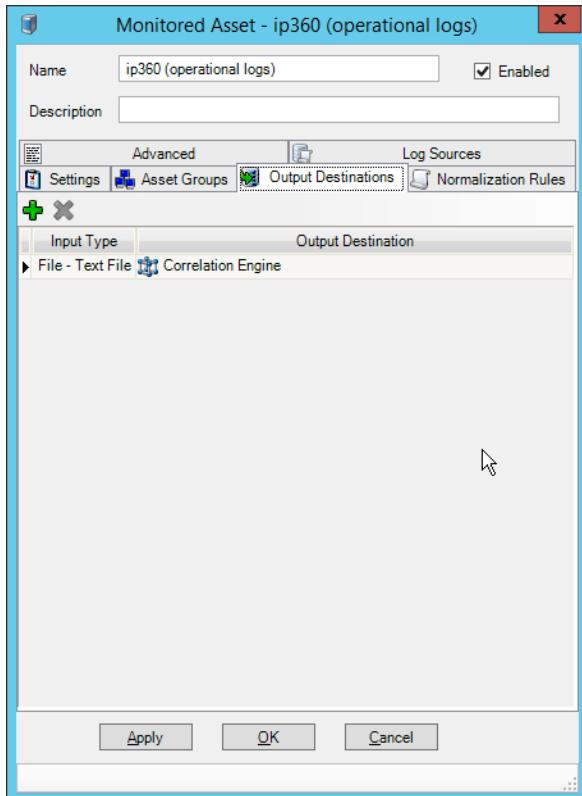
2783

- 2784 27. Click the **Output Destinations** tab.
2785 28. Click **Add**.
2786 29. Select **File–Text File** for **Input Type**.
2787 30. Select **Correlation Engine** for Output Destination.



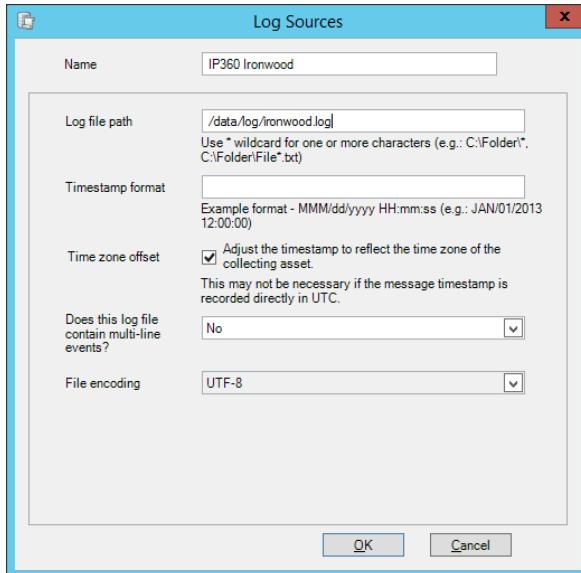
2788

- 2789 31. Click **Add**.



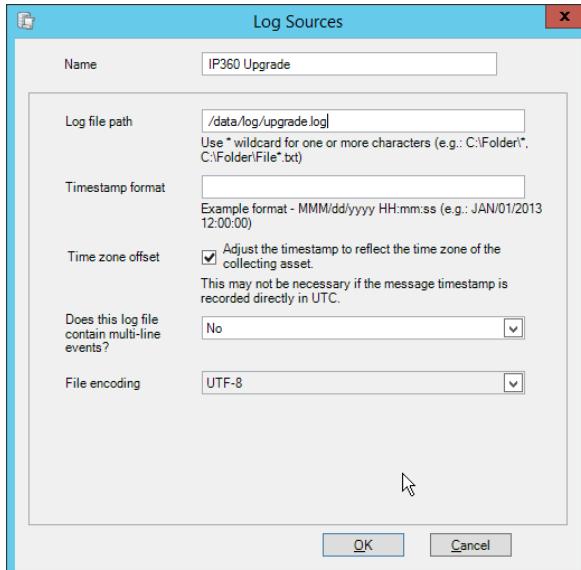
2790
2791
2792
2793
2794

32. Click the **Log Sources** tab.
33. Click **Add**.
34. Enter a **name** for the log.
35. Enter **/data/log/ironwood.log** for **Log file path**.



2795

- 2796 36. Click **OK**.
- 2797 37. Click **Add**.
- 2798 38. Enter a **name** for the log.
- 2799 39. Enter **/data/log/upgrade.log** for **Log file path**.

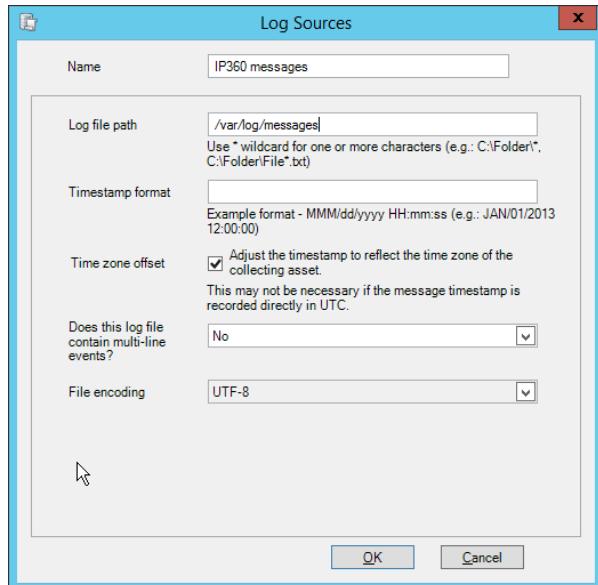


2800

- 2801 40. Click **OK**.
- 2802 41. Click **Add**.
- 2803 42. Enter a **name** for the log.
- 2804 43. Enter **/var/log/messages** for **Log file path**.

2805
2806

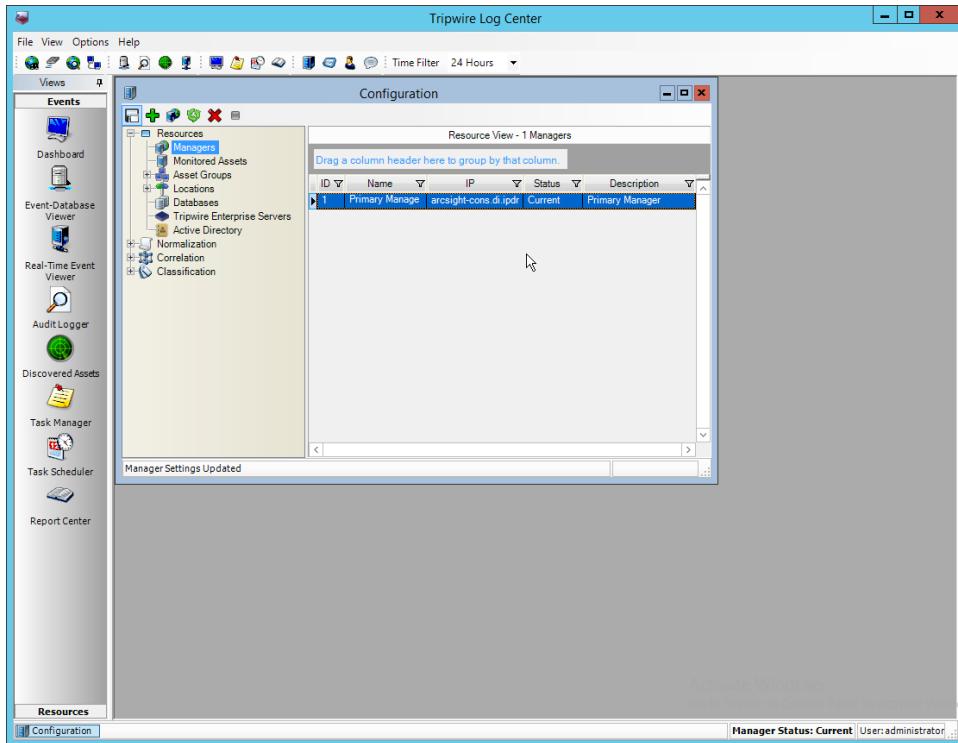
44. Click OK.



2807
2808
2809

45. Click OK.

46. Click Resources > Managers.

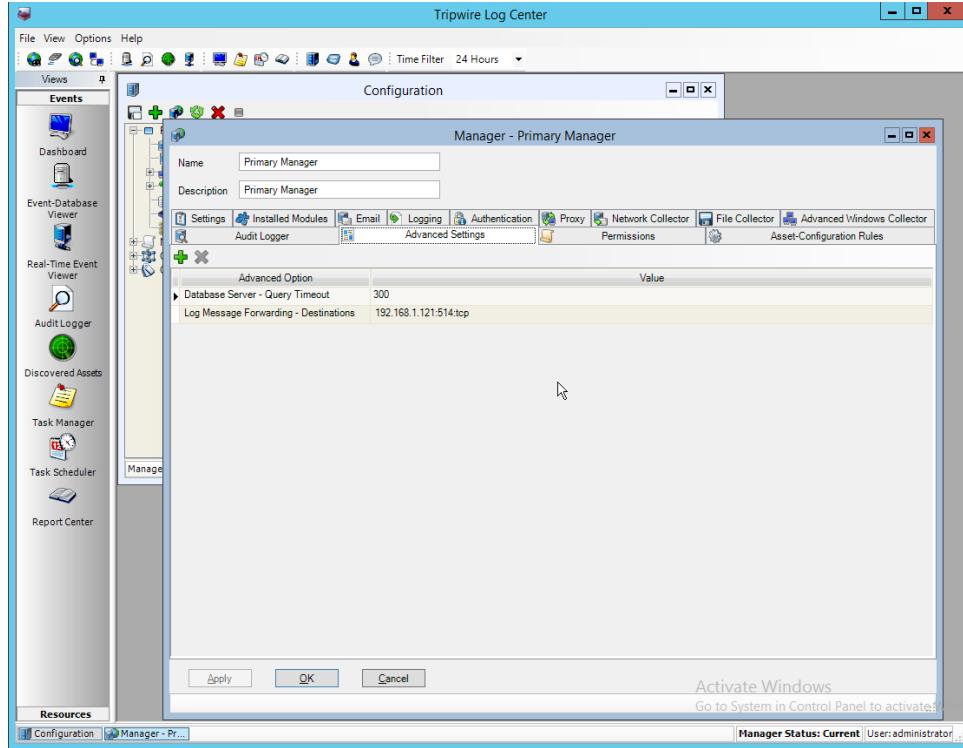


2810

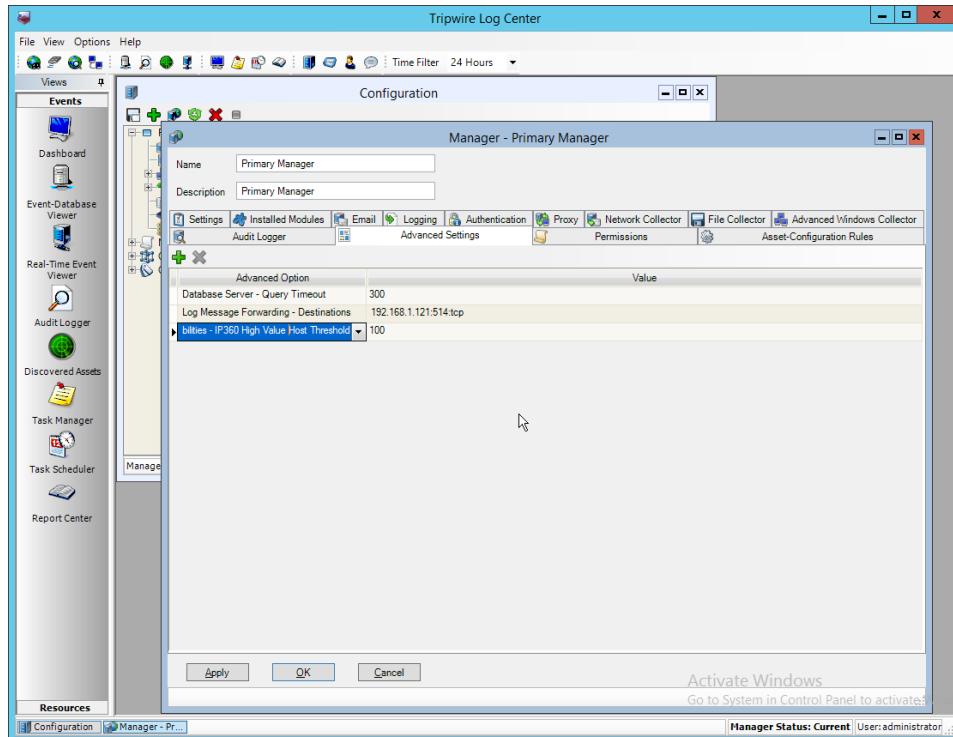
2811 47. Select the **Primary Manager** and click **Push Updates to Manager**.

2.19.3 Configure Tripwire IP360 Scan Results Forwarding

- 2813 1. Click **Configuration Manager**.
- 2814 2. Click **Resources > Manager**.
- 2815 3. Double-click the **Primary Manager**.
- 2816 4. Click the **Advanced Settings** tab.

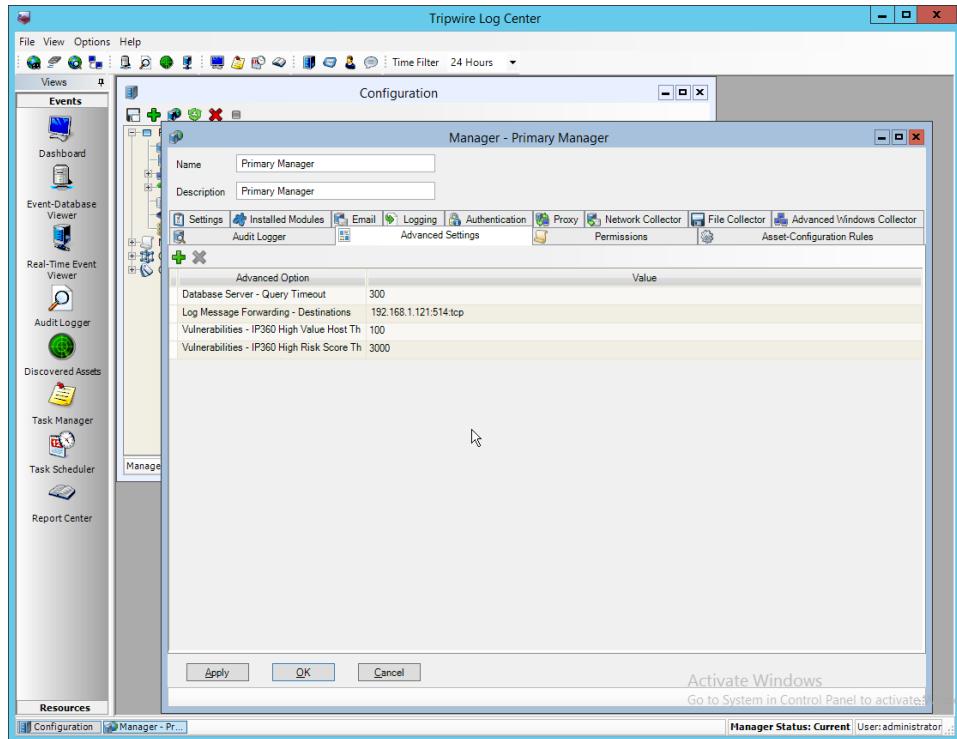


- 2817
2818 5. Click Add.
2819 6. Select **Vulnerabilities–IP360 High Value Host Threshold** for the **Advanced Option**.
2820 7. Enter a number between 0 and 999,999,999 for the **Value**. This number corresponds to the
2821 priority level of the host system being scanned. The value entered will be the minimum value
2822 for a host machine to be considered high priority. Half of this value will be the minimum value
2823 for a host machine to be considered medium priority.



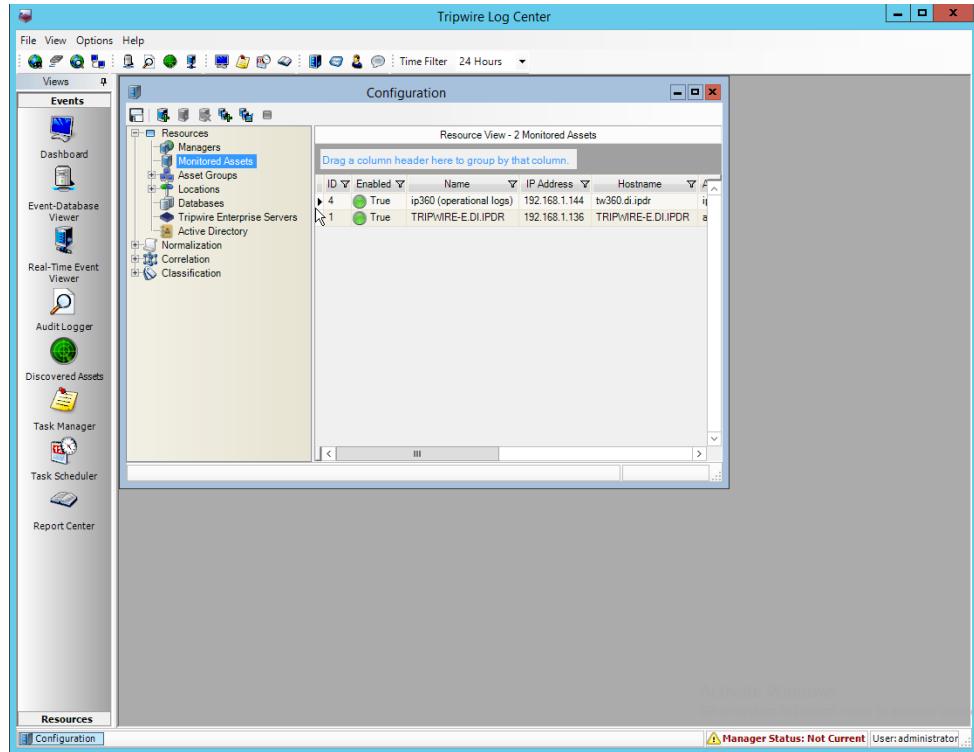
2824

- 2825 8. Click Add.
- 2826 9. Select **Vulnerabilities–IP360 High Risk Score Threshold** for the **Advanced Option**.
- 2827 10. Enter a number between 0 and 999,999,999 for the **Value**. This number corresponds to the risk level of a vulnerability event. The value entered will be the minimum value for an event to be considered high risk. Half of this value will be the minimum value for an event to be considered medium risk.

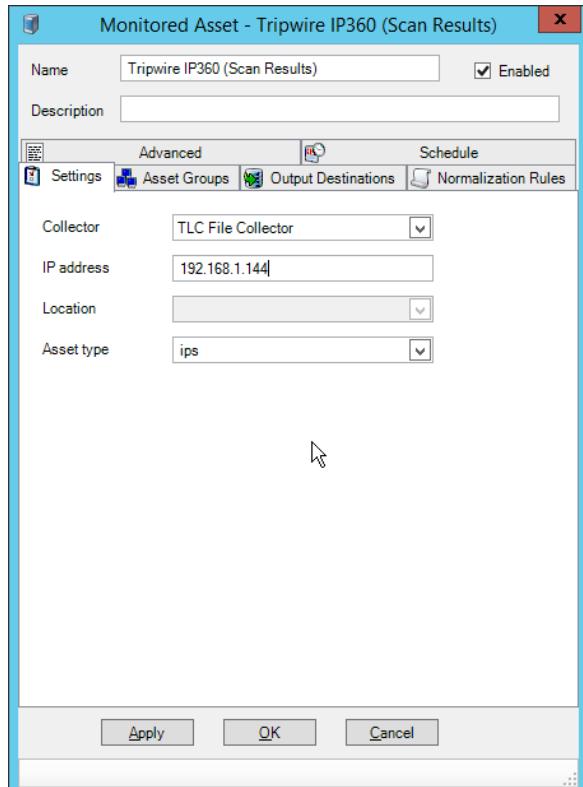


2831

11. Click **Apply**.
12. Click **OK**.
13. Click **Resources > Monitored Assets**.

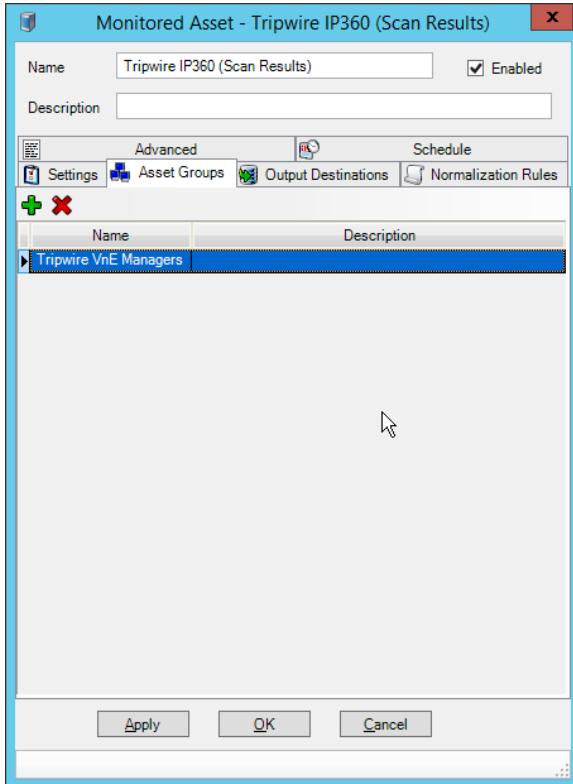


- 2835
2836 14. Click **Add Asset**.
2837 15. Select **TLC File Collector** for **Collector**.
2838 16. Enter the **IP address** of the **IP360** machine.
2839 17. Select **ips** for **Asset type**.



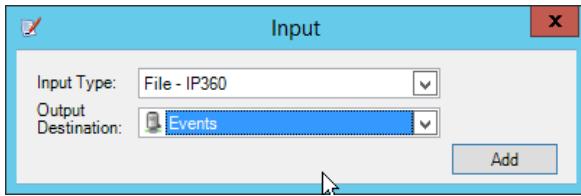
2840
2841
2842
2843
2844

18. Click the **Asset Groups** tab.
19. Click **Add**.
20. Select **Tripwire VnE Managers** for **Host Group**.
21. Click **Add**.



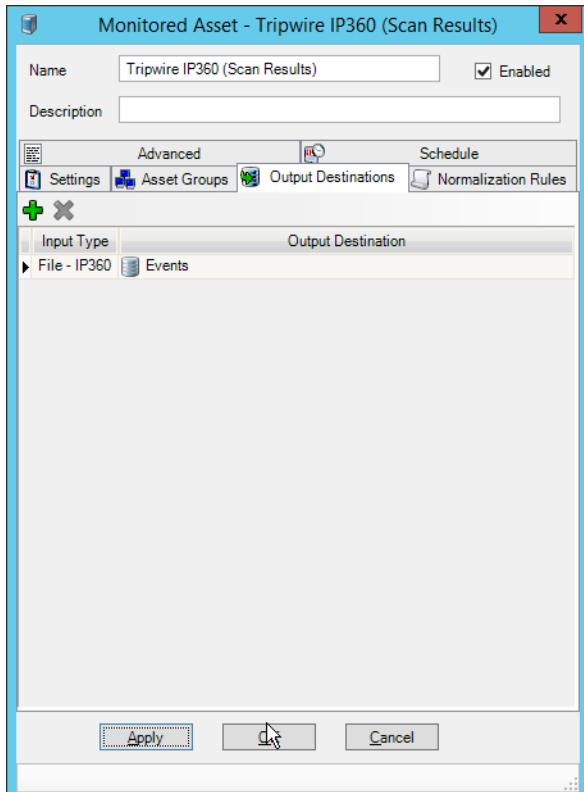
2845
2846
2847
2848

22. Click the **Output Destinations** tab.
23. Select **File-IP360** for **Input Type**.
24. Select **Events** for **Output Destination**.



2849
2850

25. Click **Add**.



2851

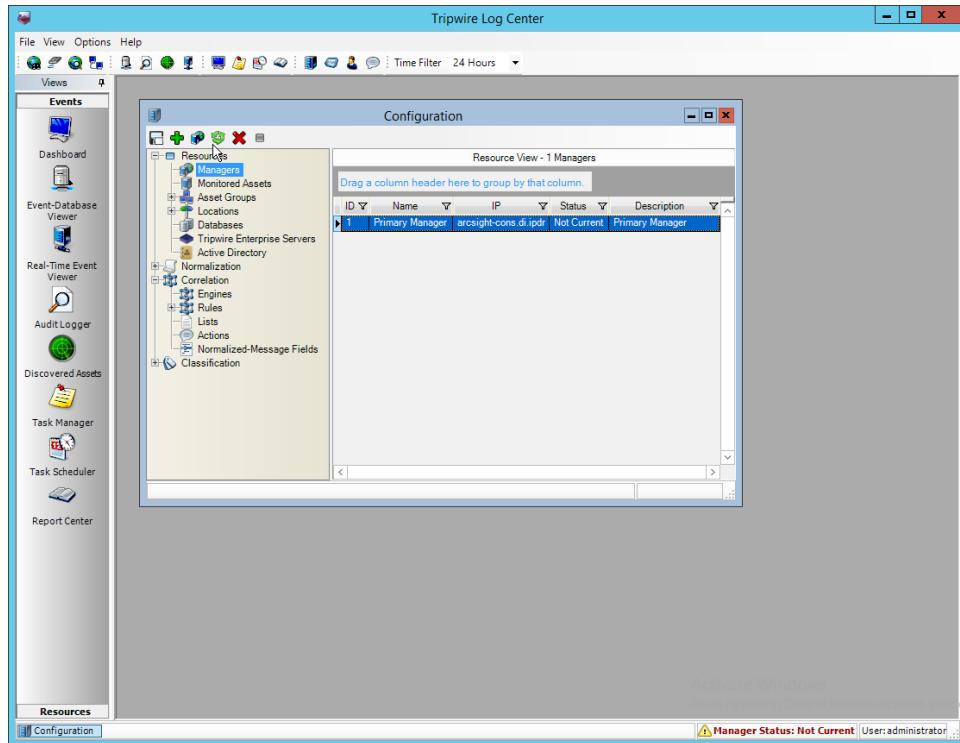
26. Click **OK**.

2852

27. Click **Resources > Managers**.

2853

28. Select the **Primary Manager**.



2855

29. Click Push Update to Manager.
30. Log in to the Tripwire IP360 Web Console.

2858

2859

31. Click **Legacy UI** at the top.

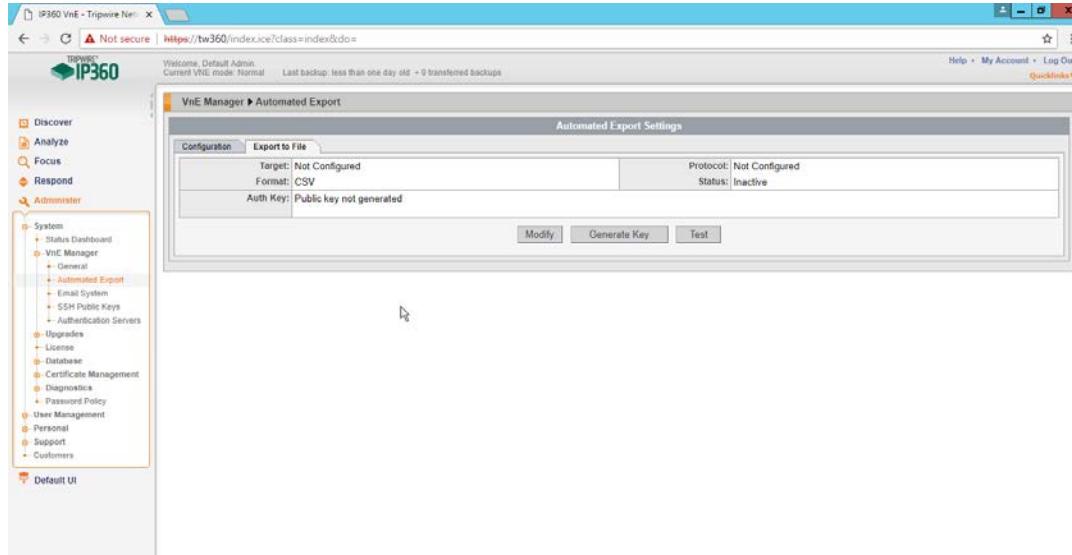
2860

32. On the left, click **Administer > System > VnE Manager > Automated Export**.

2861

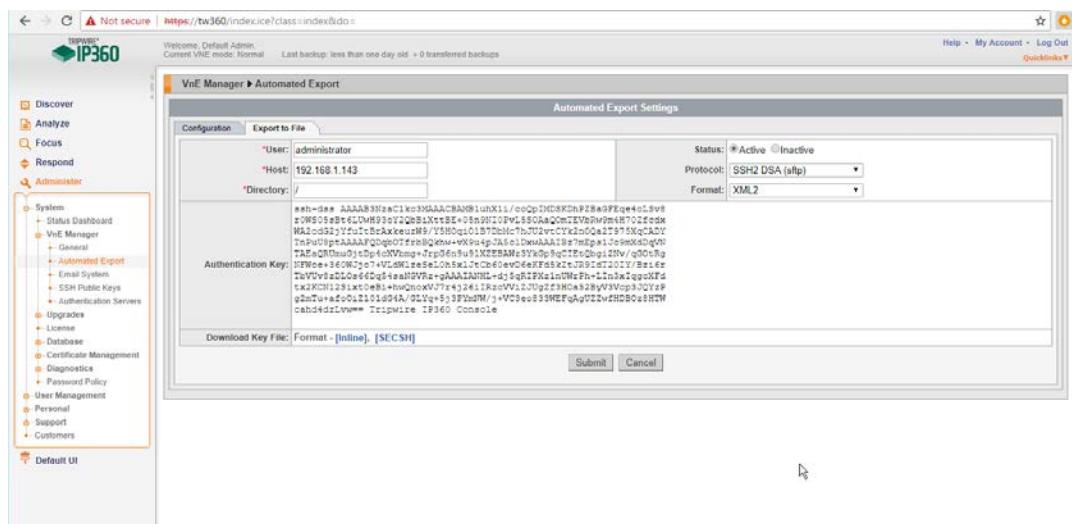
2862

33. Click the **Export to File** tab.



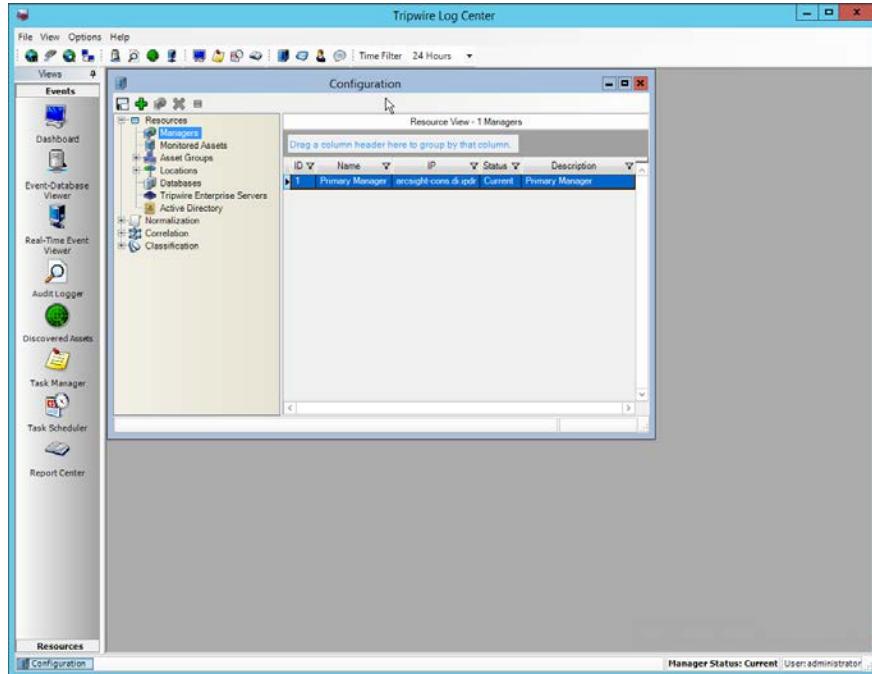
2863

- 2864 34. Click **Modify**.
- 2865 35. Enter the **username** of a TLC user account for **User**.
- 2866 36. Enter the **IP address** of the TLC Manager for **Host**.
- 2867 37. Enter “/” for the **directory**.
- 2868 38. Select **Active**.
- 2869 39. Select **SSH2 DSA (sftp)** for **Protocol**.
- 2870 40. Select **XML2** for **Format**.



- 2871
- 2872 41. Click **Submit**.
- 2873 42. Download the generated key by clicking [**Inline**].

- 2874 43. In **TLC Console**, click **Configuration Manager**.
2875 44. Click **Resources > Managers**.



- 2876
2877 45. Double-click the **Primary Manager**.
2878 46. Click the **File Collector** tab.
2879 47. Ensure that the **Collect log messages via FTP and SSH** option is enabled.
2880 48. Enter **22** for the **port**. (Note: The **IP360 Integration Guide** says to use a different port, but the
2881 IP360 system appears to be unable to use a port other than 22.)
2882 49. Click **Add**.
2883 50. Under **Users**, select the user for whom the key was generated.
2884 51. Under **Key Path**, enter the path to the downloaded key.

2885

52. Click **OK**.

2886

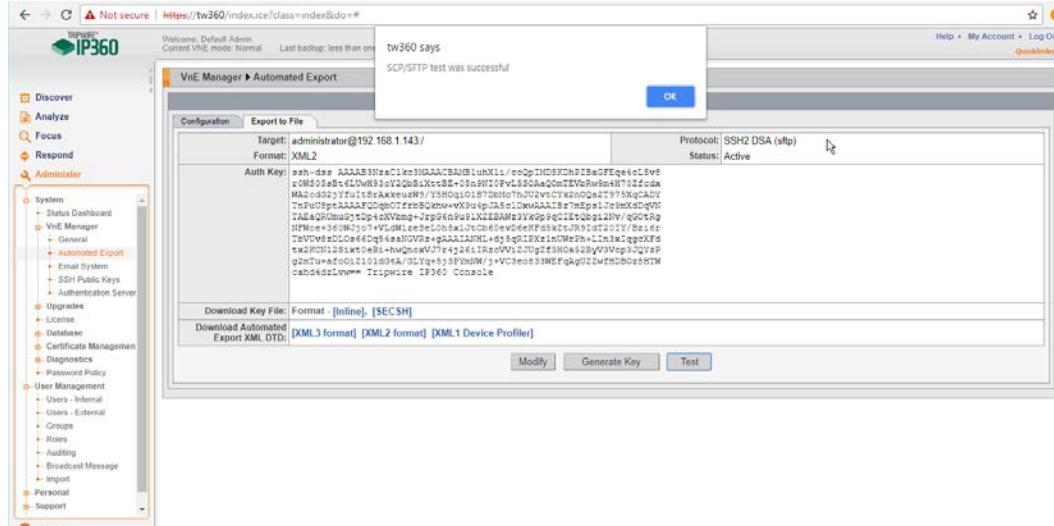
53. Select the **Primary Manager**.

2887

54. Click **Push Updates to Manager**.

2888

55. On the **IP360** web console, click **Test** to ensure that the connection is successful.



2889

56. Any recurring scans will now forward the scan results to **Tripwire Log Center**. To ensure that a scan is recurring, select a scan in **Scan Profiles** on the main dashboard of the **IP360** web console.

2893

2894

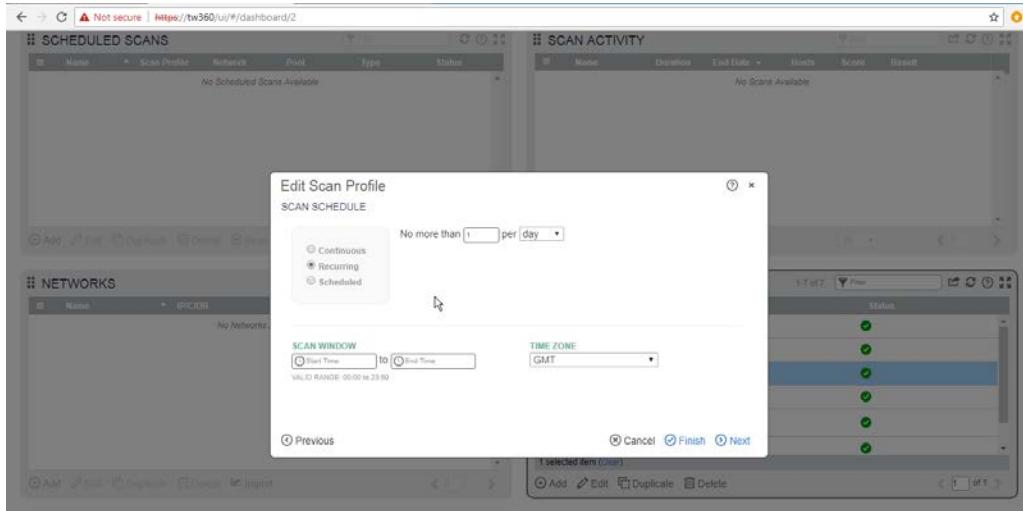
57. Click **Edit**.

2895

58. Click **Next** until the **Scan Schedule** page.

2896

59. Select **Recurring**, and set a schedule for the scan according to the needs of the organization.



2897

60. Click **Finish**.

2899

2.20 Integration: Tripwire Enterprise and Backups

2900

This section details how to back up **Tripwire Enterprise** configuration data.

2901

To back up **Tripwire Enterprise** integrity information, refer to the database vendor's documentation for backing up data.

2903 **2.20.1 Export Configuration from Tripwire Enterprise**

- 2904 1. On the Tripwire Enterprise server, navigate to C:\Program Files\Tripwire\TE\Server\bin.
2905 2. Run the following command to stop **Tripwire Services**.
2906 > twservices stop
2907 3. Run the following command to export the configuration files to a backup (replace config.bak
2908 with the desired name of the backup).
2909 > tetool backup config.bak
2910 4. Run the following command to restart **Tripwire Services**.
2911 > twservices start

2912 **2.20.2 Back Up the Tripwire Enterprise Configuration**

2913 The configuration backup will be stored in the file specified in step 3 of the previous section. To back
2914 this up to the enterprise backup server through a **Duplicati** client, see the documentation in Section
2915 2.8.4 for how to set up a **Duplicati** instance on the **Tripwire Enterprise** server, and then simply select
2916 the configuration file.

2917 **2.21 Integration: Cisco ISE and CryptoniteNXT**

2918 This section details an integration between **Cisco ISE** and **CryptoniteNXT**, allowing ISE to dictate the
2919 Cryptonite registration process based on the posture of the client machine. Please see the
2920 *CryptoniteNXT Generic RADIUS Integration Guide* for more details about the integration.

2921 **2.21.1 Requirements for Integrating Cisco ISE and CryptoniteNXT**

2922 As described in the ISE installation section, ISE requires RADIUS to be configured to perform posture. As
2923 such, this guide assumes the use of some sort of switch to provide RADIUS functionality.

2924 CryptoniteNXT requires the switch to use L2 technologies for the RADIUS server, which means a captive
2925 portal will not work for this scenario. The feasibility of this depends on your networking setup.

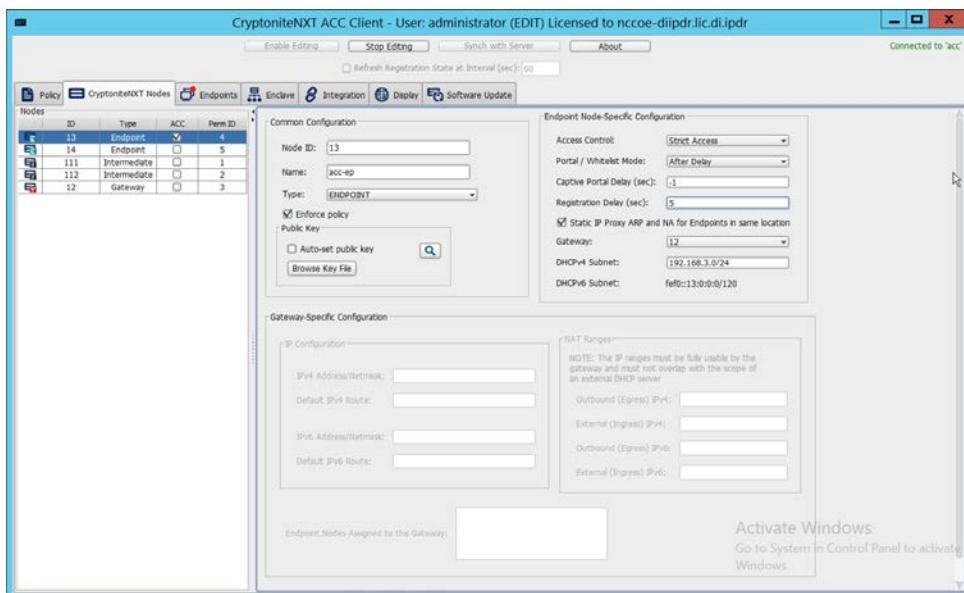
2926 This integration requires the following:

- 2927 1. The switch is bridged to CryptoniteNXT.
2928 2. Cryptonite is configured to accept RADIUS packets from the switch (detailed below).
2929 3. Clients on the switch's Local Area Network (LAN) authenticate to the switch via 802.1x (see your
2930 switch's documentation).

- 2931 4. The switch is configured to accept CoA packets from ISE (see ISE installation).
 2932 5. The switch sends RADIUS accounting and authentication packets to Cisco ISE (see ISE
 2933 installation).
 2934 6. ISE sends an authentication response to the switch and then later uses CoA to modify the
 2935 authorization based on posture (see ISE installation).
 2936 7. If the authorization is successful, the switch tells the client and forwards the accounting packets
 2937 to the CryptoniteNXT ACC node (see your switch's documentation).

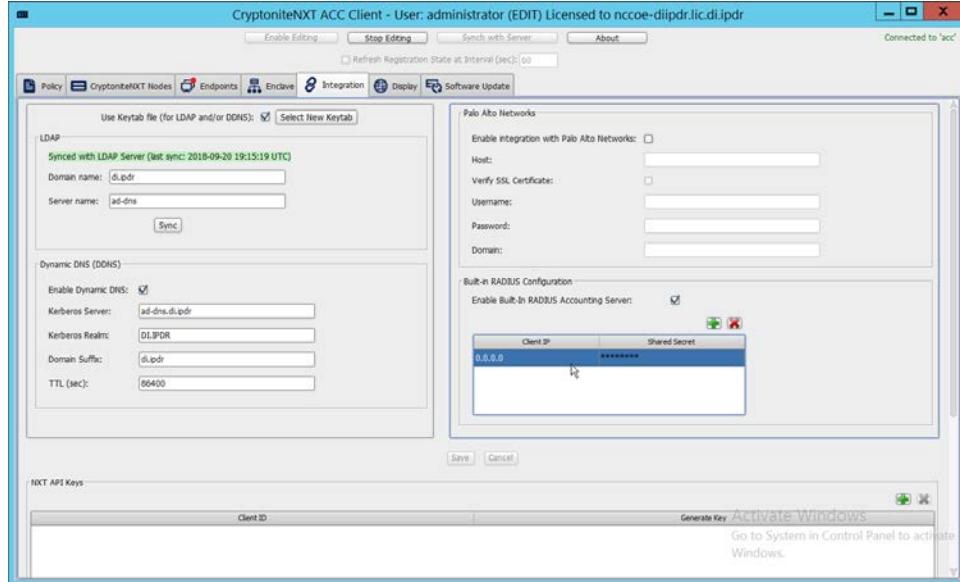
2938 **2.21.2 Configuring CryptoniteNXT for RADIUS**

- 2939 1. Open the CryptoniteNXT GUI and log in.
 2940 2. Navigate to the **CryptoniteNXT Nodes** tab.
 2941 3. Click **Enable Editing**.
 2942 4. Select the **Endpoint** node, which will have your switch attached to it.
 2943 5. Under **Endpoint Node-Specific Configuration**, select **Strict Access** for **Access Control**.
 2944 6. Select **After Delay** for the **Portal/Whitelist Mode**.
 2945 7. Enter **-1** for **Captive Portal delay**.
 2946 8. Enter **5** for the **Registration delay**.
 2947 9. Select the **Gateway** node.



- 2948 10. Click **Save**.
 2949 11. Navigate to the **Integration** tab.

2951 12. Under **Built-In RADIUS Configuration**, check the box next to Enable Built-In RADIUS Accounting
 2952 Server.



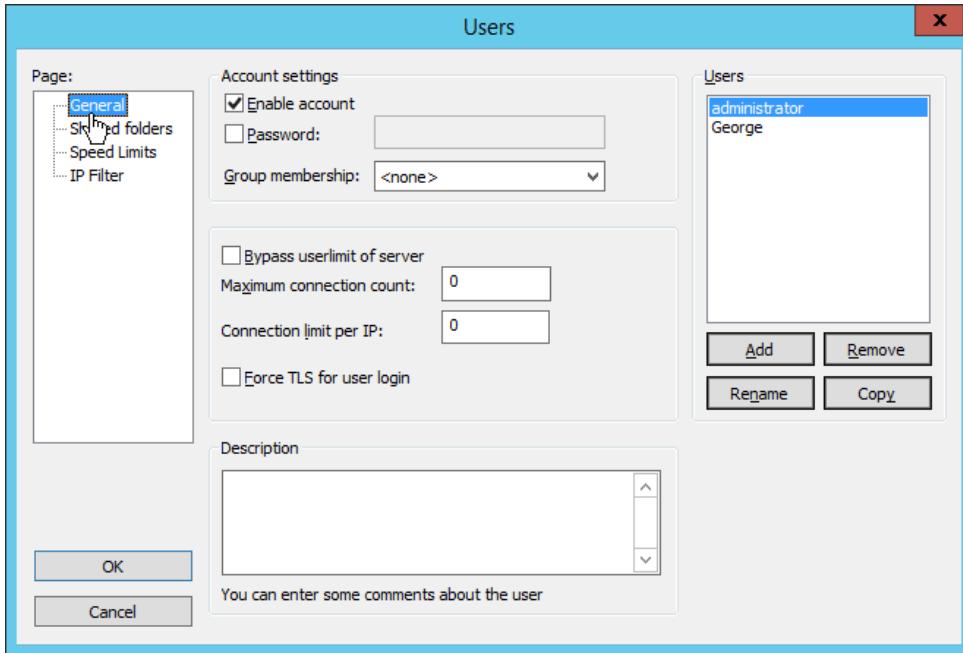
2953 13. Click the **plus button** to add the IP of the switch as well as a shared secret. You can use 0.0.0.0/0
 2954 as the IP to accept RADIUS Accounting packets from all IPs, however this is not recommended in
 2955 production.

2956 2.22 Integration: Backups and GreenTec

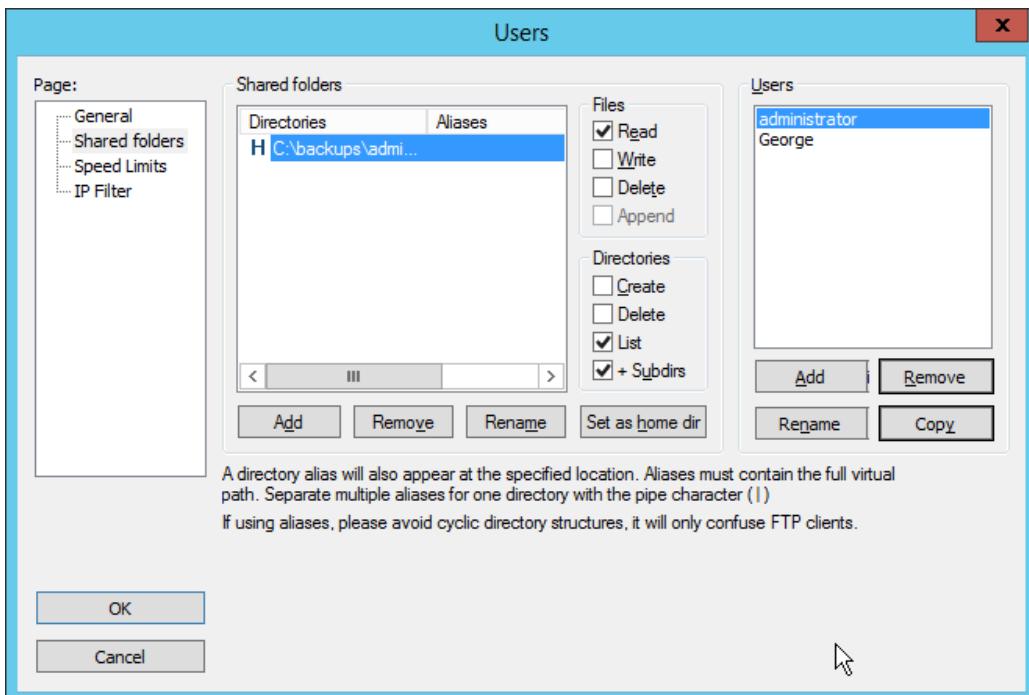
2957 This section details integration between the backup capability and **GreenTec WORMdisks**. Because
 2958 **GreenTec WORMdisks** provide write protection for files on the disk, they are an ideal place to store
 2959 important backups. There are a couple options for this integration, but before these backups can be
 2960 replicated onto secure storage, it is important to be able to identify the location of backups to be
 2961 replicated.

2962 2.22.1 Locate Backups with FileZilla and Duplicati

- 2963 1. To locate backups in **FileZilla**, open the **FileZilla Server** console.
 2964 2. Click **Edit > Users**.

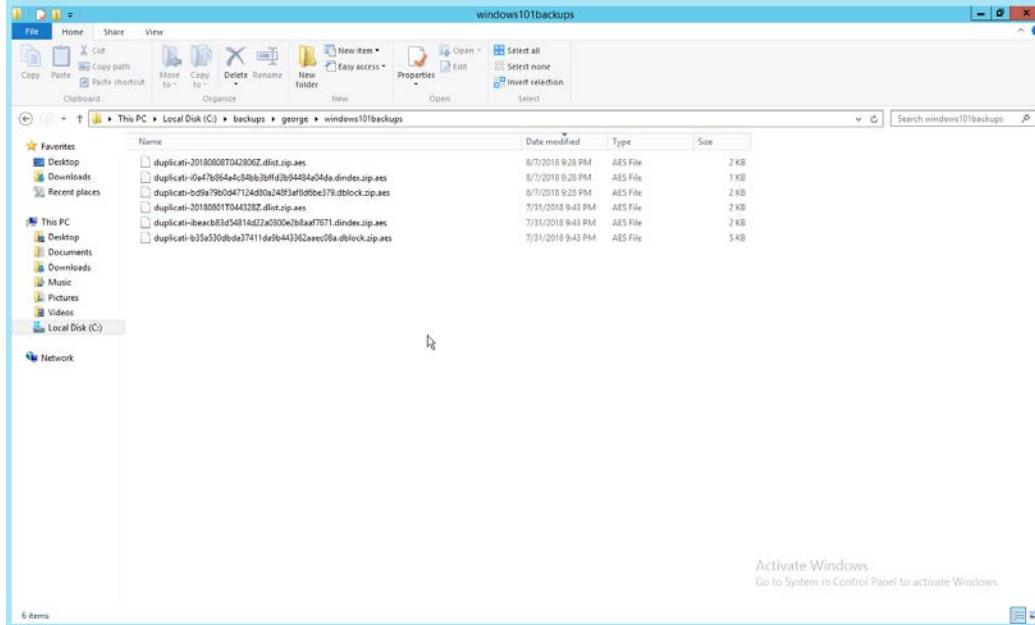


- 2965 3. Click **Shared folders** in the left pane.



- 2966 4. Under **Directories** is a list of directories in which the selected user can store backups. The one marked **H** is the default home directory.
2967

- 2968 5. The path to the backups from the home directory is specified in the **Path on server** field in
 2969 **Duplicati** (see Section 2.8.6).



- 2970 6. Each backup should have three associated files. An easy way to determine what files belong
 2971 together is to check the **Date Modified** field. These files are encrypted.

2.22.2 Back Up to a GreenTec Disk

2973 The first, most flexible option involves backing up the backup server to a separate server with **GreenTec**
 2974 **WORMdisks**. Simply set up a **FileZilla** server on the **GreenTec** storage server and a **Duplicati** client on
 2975 the backup server (see Section 2.8 for these installation processes). When choosing where to store files
 2976 on FileZilla, indicate a folder on the **GreenTec WORMdisk**. Sectors of the disk can be locked using the
 2977 mechanism in Section 2.6.4, providing firmware-level write security for any backups in the locked
 2978 sectors.

2979 There are some considerations when doing this. First, if this is done on a schedule and permanent locks
 2980 are used, space will be consumed quickly and the **WORMdisks** will need replacements as the space
 2981 cannot be reused. The trade-off between space and backup frequency must be considered—a lower
 2982 backup frequency inevitably means more data loss in the event of a restoration, while higher backup
 2983 frequency increases the cost of maintaining secure storage.

2984 Alternatively, secure storage can be used for specific types of backups, such as “golden disks”—which
 2985 would contain backups of the basic level of functionality required for the enterprise without necessarily

2986 utilizing a backup schedule. This would afford protection for some basic functionality but would forfeit
2987 the secure storage capability for day-to-day data.

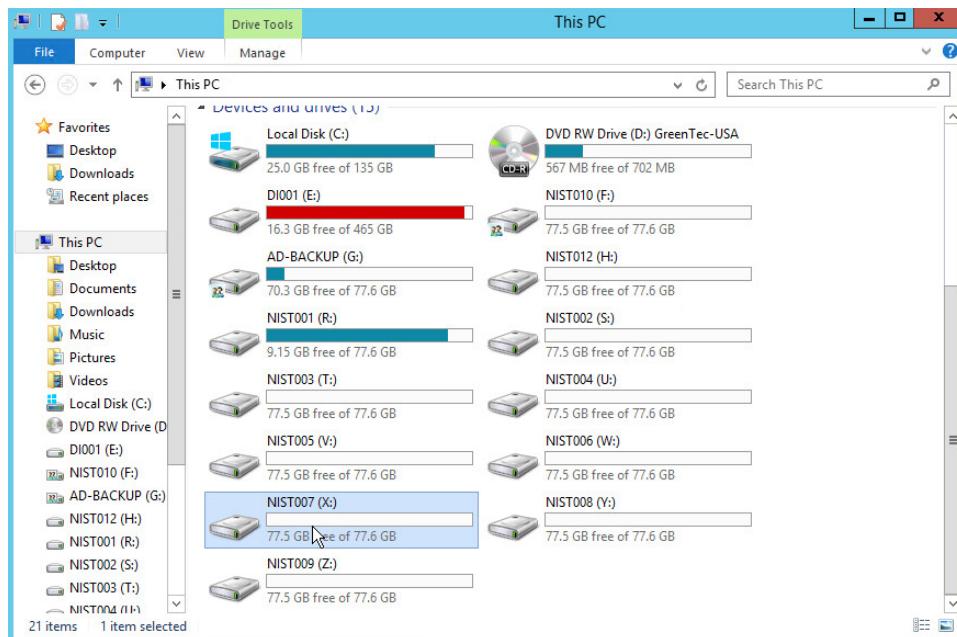
2988

2989 In addition to the options above, there are other ways to minimize wasted space on a GreenTec disk.
2990 Temporary Locks, or TLocks, can be employed after the data is backed up to a GreenTec disk to protect
2991 data integrity while making less space unavailable for future use. After the drive is full, a permanent lock
2992 should still be executed. Wasted space can also be minimized with the use of dynamic partitions, or
2993 with the Force-Field Write-Once File System, which can also reduce the overhead administration of the
2994 GreenTec disk.

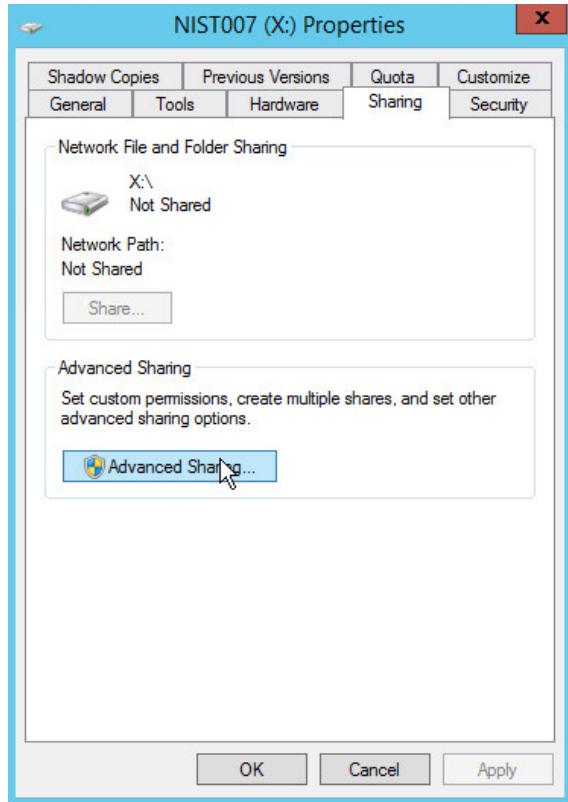
2995 2.2.2.3 Configure Network-Accessible GreenTec Disk

2996 Another option for GreenTec disks is to make them network accessible. This allows them to be used
2997 specifically in situations where secure storage protection is desired, and it makes them options for
2998 backup locations even on servers to which they are not necessarily physically connected.

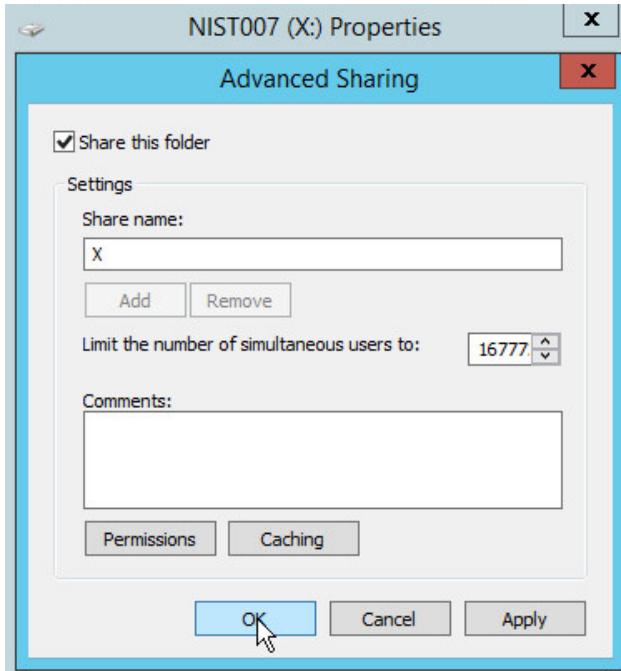
2999 1. To configure a GreenTec disk to be network accessible, right-click the disk on the GreenTec
3000 server.



3001 2. Click Share With > Advanced Sharing.



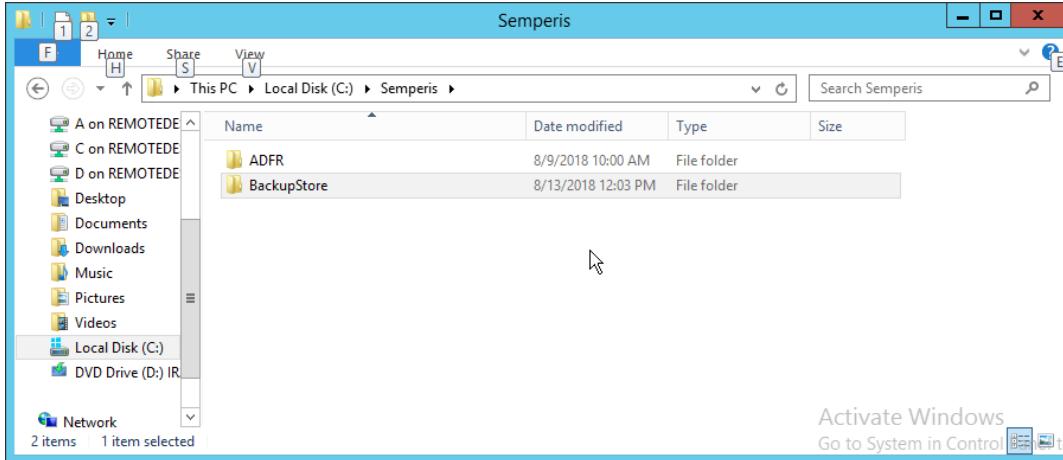
- 3002 3. Click **Advanced Sharing**.
3003 4. Check the box next to **Share this folder**.
3004 5. Enter a name for the drive if desired.



- 3005 6. Click **OK**.
 3006 7. Click **Close**.
 3007 8. The drive should now be accessible at **//SERVER-NAME/X**.

3008 2.22.4 Secure Storage for Semperis ADFR

- 3009 1. On the Semperis ADFR server, the default backup location is C:\Semperis.
 3010 2. In this folder there is metadata for the backups (C:\Semperis\ADFR) as well as the backups themselves (C:\Semperis\BackupStore).



3012 It is important to consider the limitations of the backup software when considering whether to replicate
 3013 backups to secure storage. Ideally, the replication of backups ensures that they can be used on a
 3014 separate server when the original server is affected by an incident. The replication of backups in this
 3015 case can offer some write protection for these specific backup files, but if the entire server is lost, it is
 3016 not guaranteed that the backups will be usable on a new instance of ADFR. This risk can be mitigated by
 3017 exporting the configuration of the ADFR server for the purpose of building a failover ADFR server.

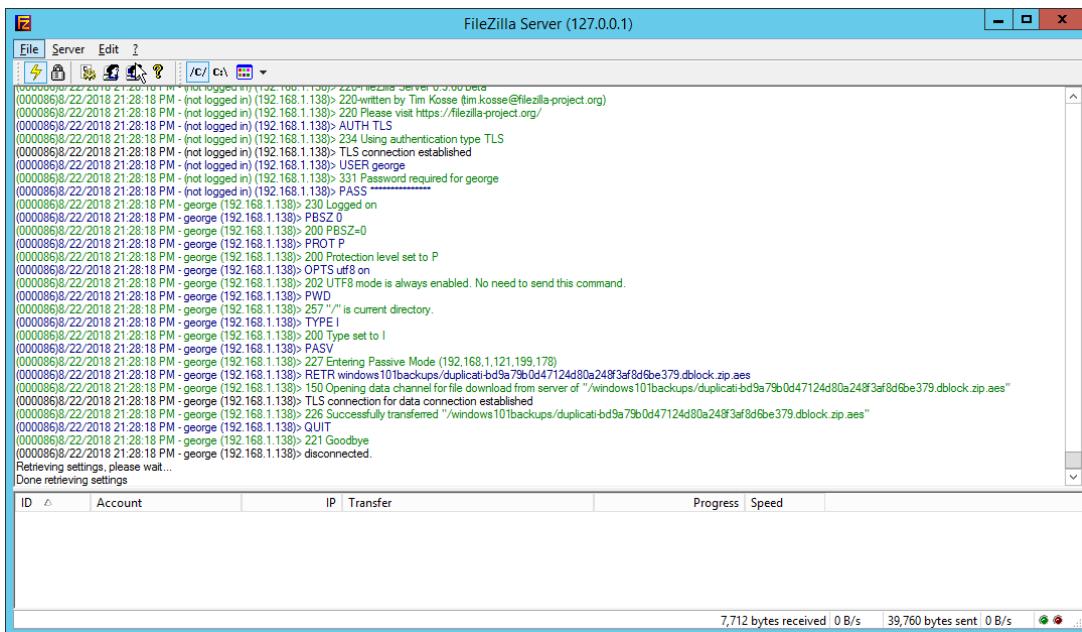
3018 Though these backups can be replicated to WORMdisks, this is currently not supported by Semperis
 3019 ADFR. Instead, Semperis ADFR offers a different type of “secure storage” by not joining to the domain,
 3020 allowing the machine to be taken offline and brought online only during creation/application of a
 3021 backup.

3022 **2.23 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and FileZilla**

3023 In this section an integration between ArcSight and FileZilla is detailed so that logs from FileZilla are
 3024 forwarded to ArcSight by using an ArcSight syslog file connector.

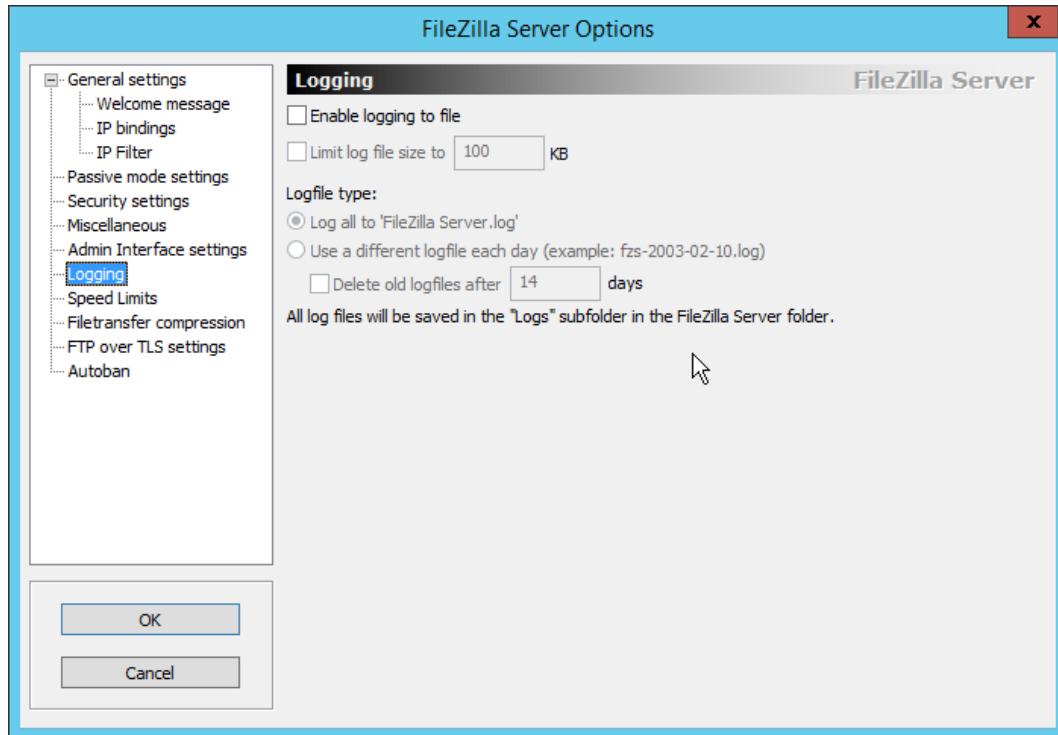
3025 **2.23.1 Enable Logs in FileZilla**

3026 1. On the server with **FileZilla** installed, open **FileZilla Server**.



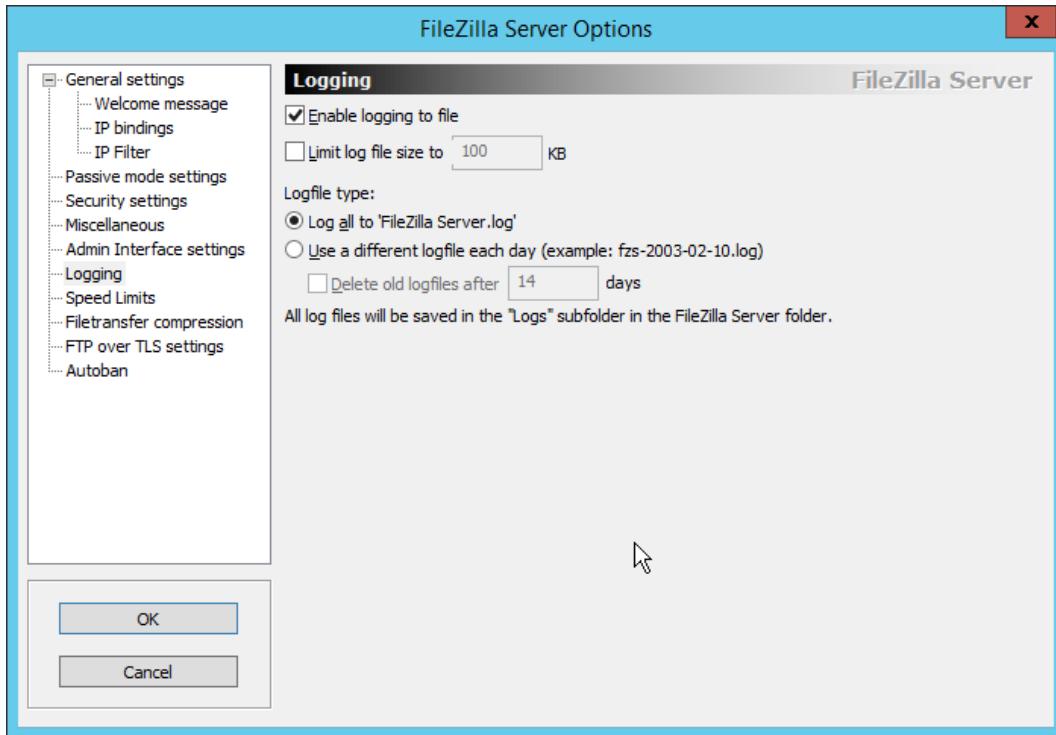
3027 2. Click **Edit > Settings**.

3028

3. Click **Logging**.

3029

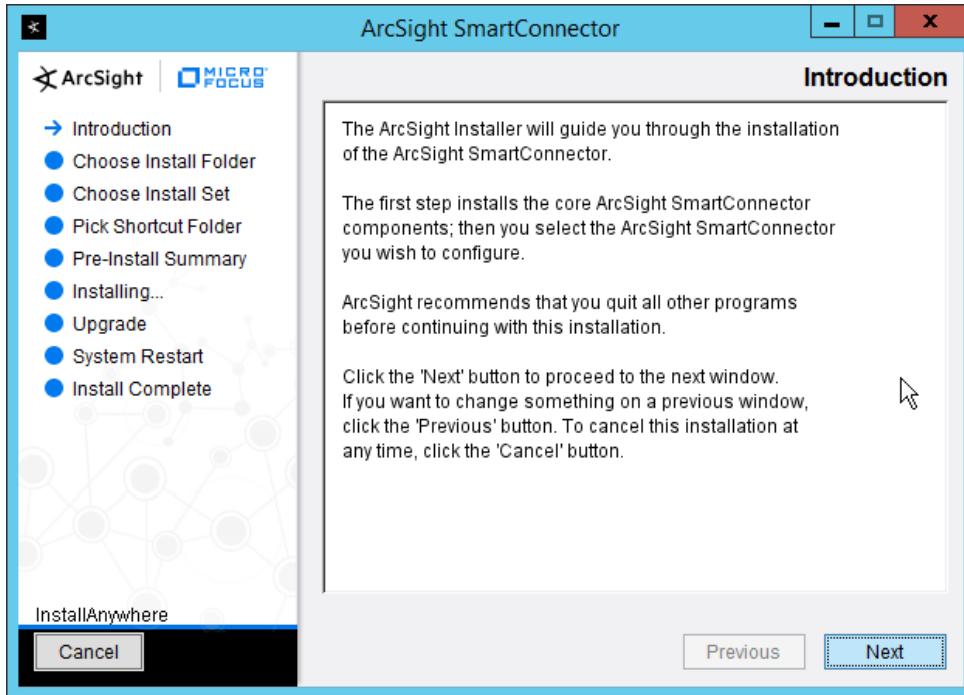
4. Check the box next to **Enable logging to file**.



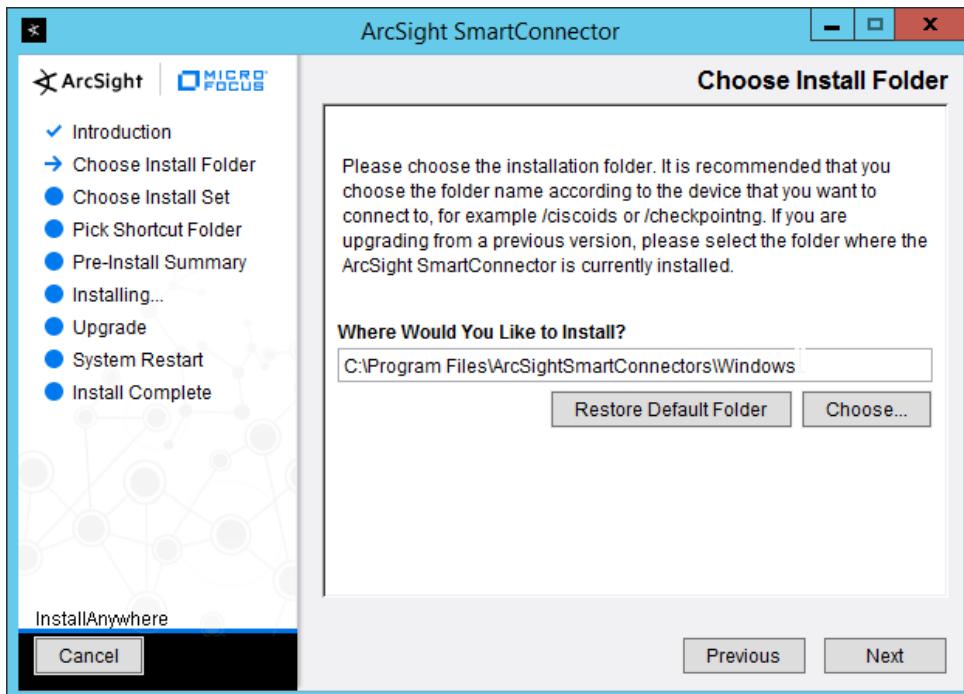
3030 5. Click **OK**.

3031 2.23.2 Install Micro Focus ArcSight

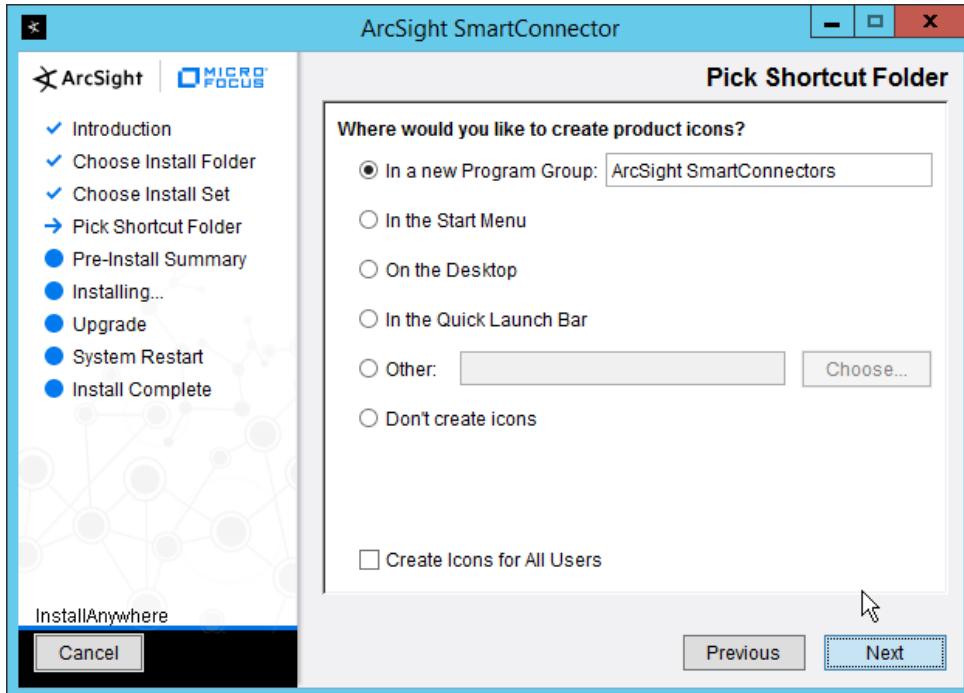
3032 1. Run **ArcSight-7.9.0.8084.0-Connector-Win64.exe**.



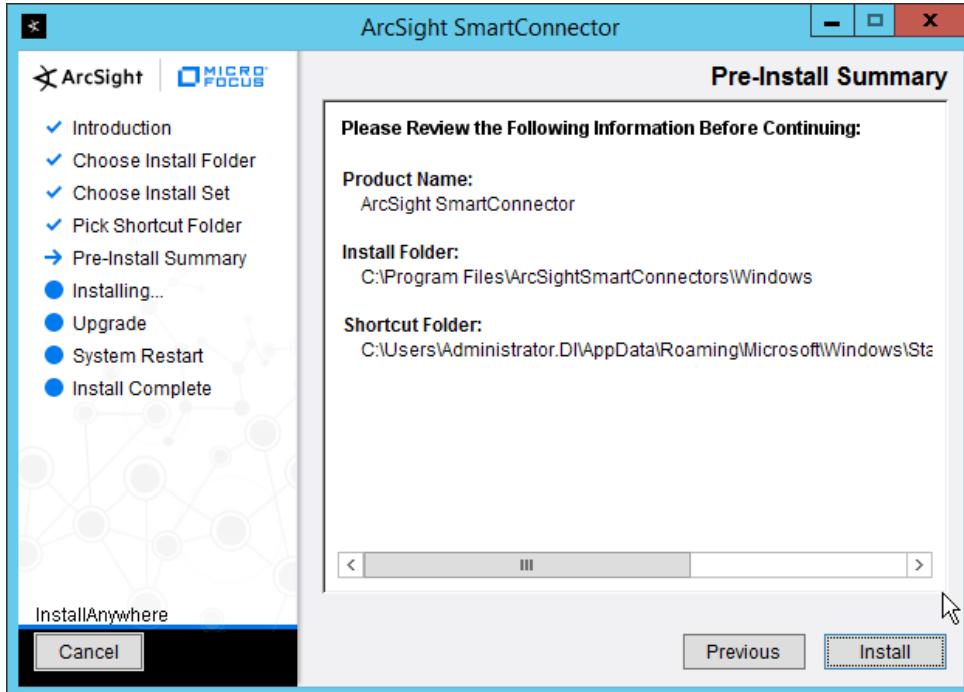
- 3033 2. Click **Next**.
- 3034 3. Enter C:\Program Files\ArcSightSmartConnectors\Windows.



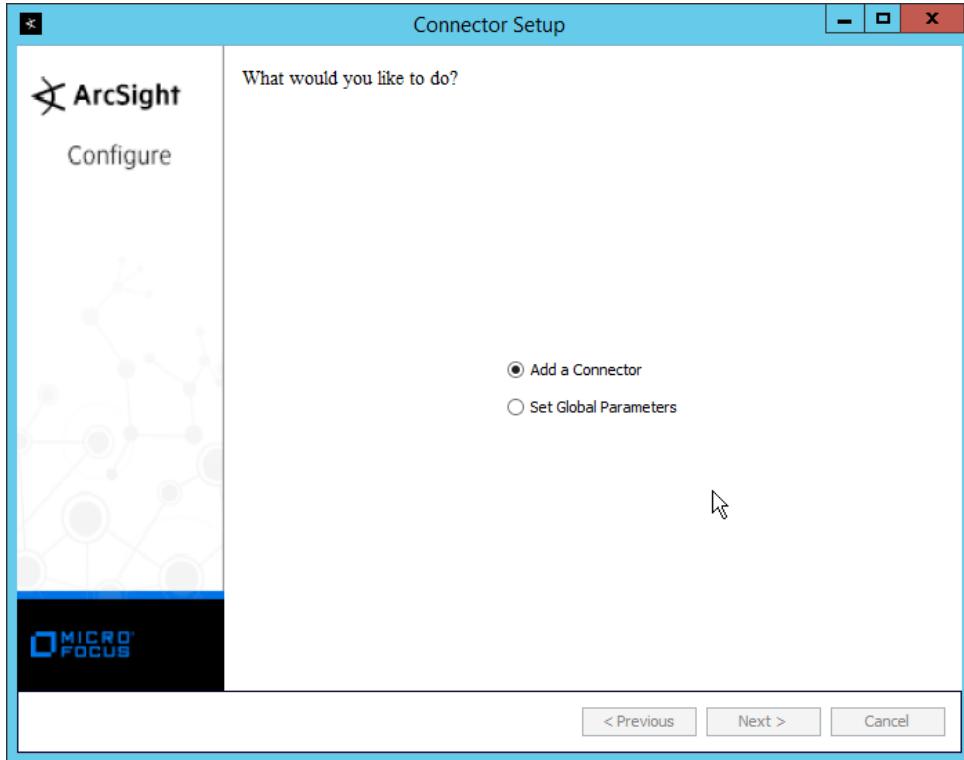
3035 4. Click **Next**.



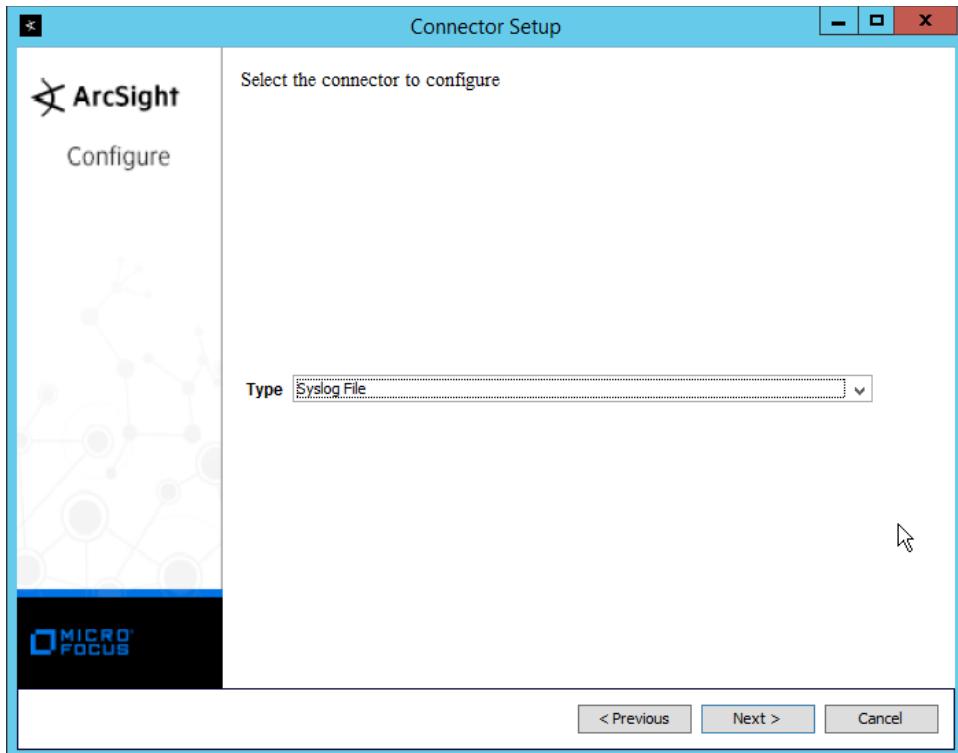
3036 5. Click **Next**.



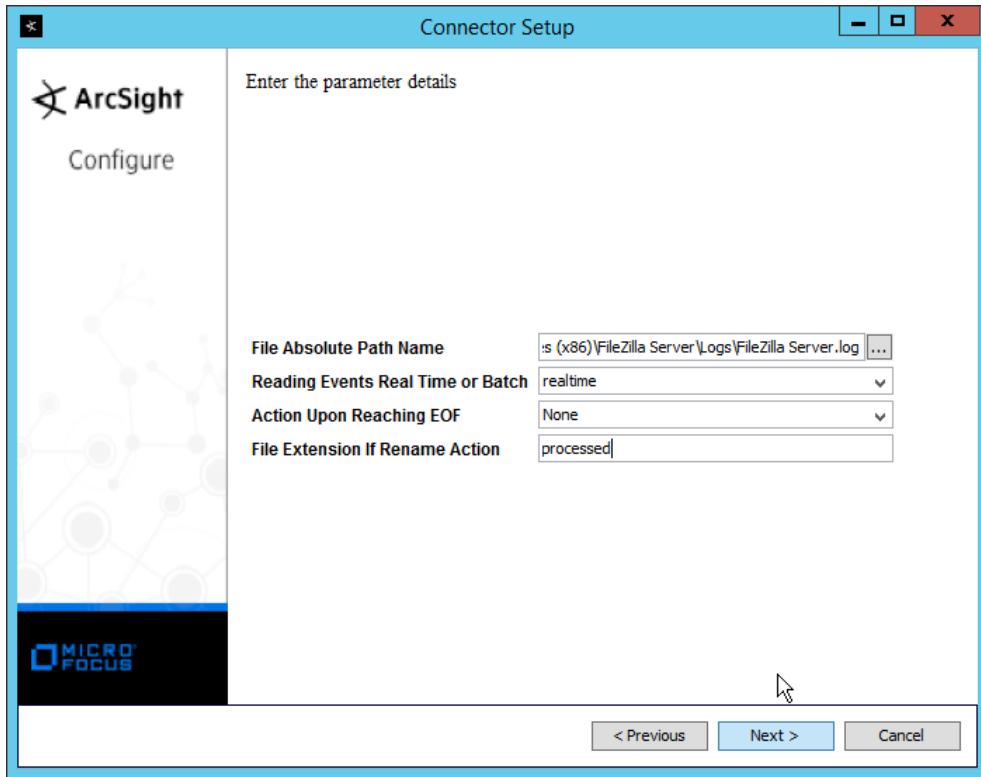
- 3037 6. Click **Install**.
3038 7. Select **Add a Connector**.



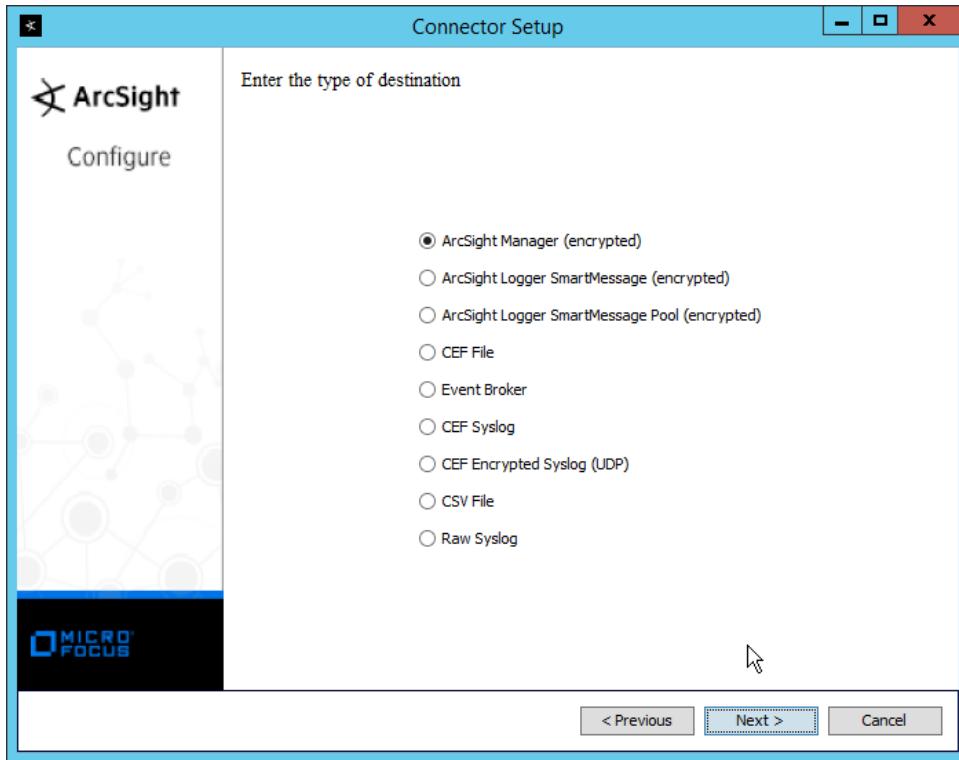
- 3039 8. Click **Next**.
3040 9. Select **Syslog File**.



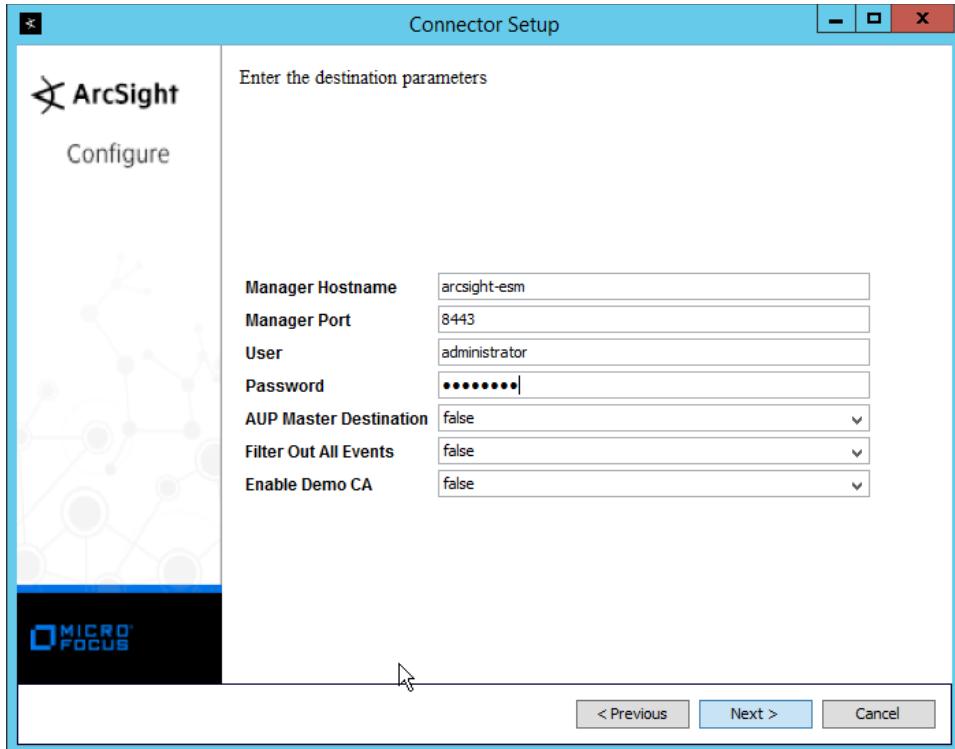
- 3041 10. Click **Next**.
- 3042 11. Enter C:\Program Files (x86)\FileZilla Server\Logs\FileZilla Server.log for **File Absolute Path**
- 3043 **Name.**



- 3044 12. Click **Next**.
3045 13. Select **ArcSight Manager (encrypted)**.

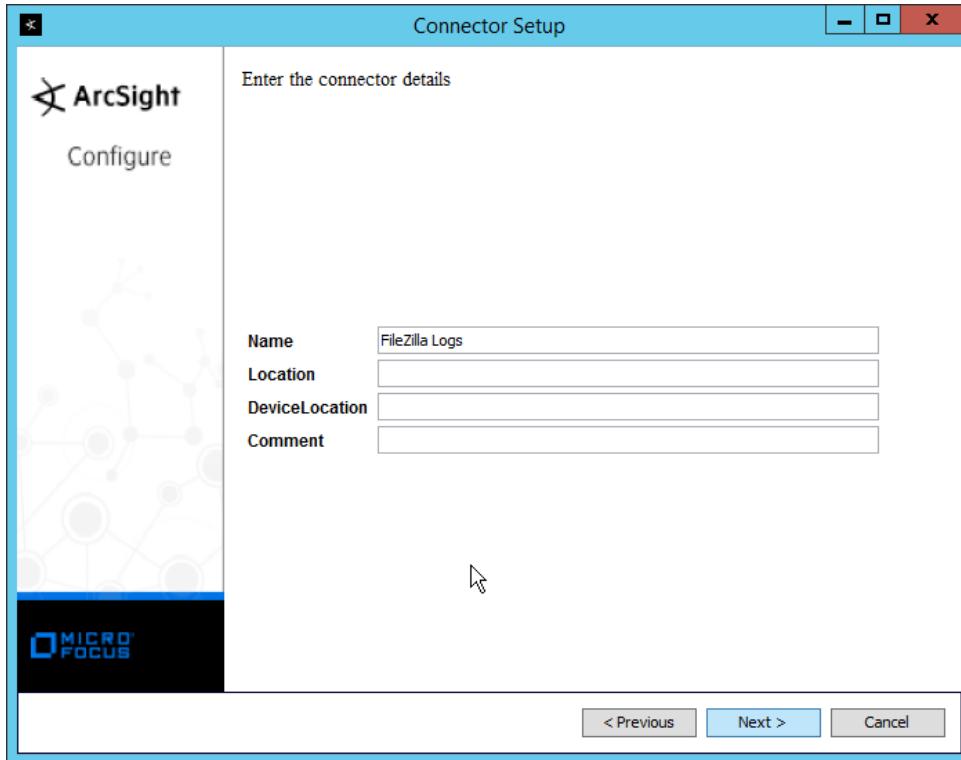


- 3046 14. Click **Next**.
- 3047 15. Enter the **hostname**, **port**, **username**, and **password** for the ArcSight ESM server.

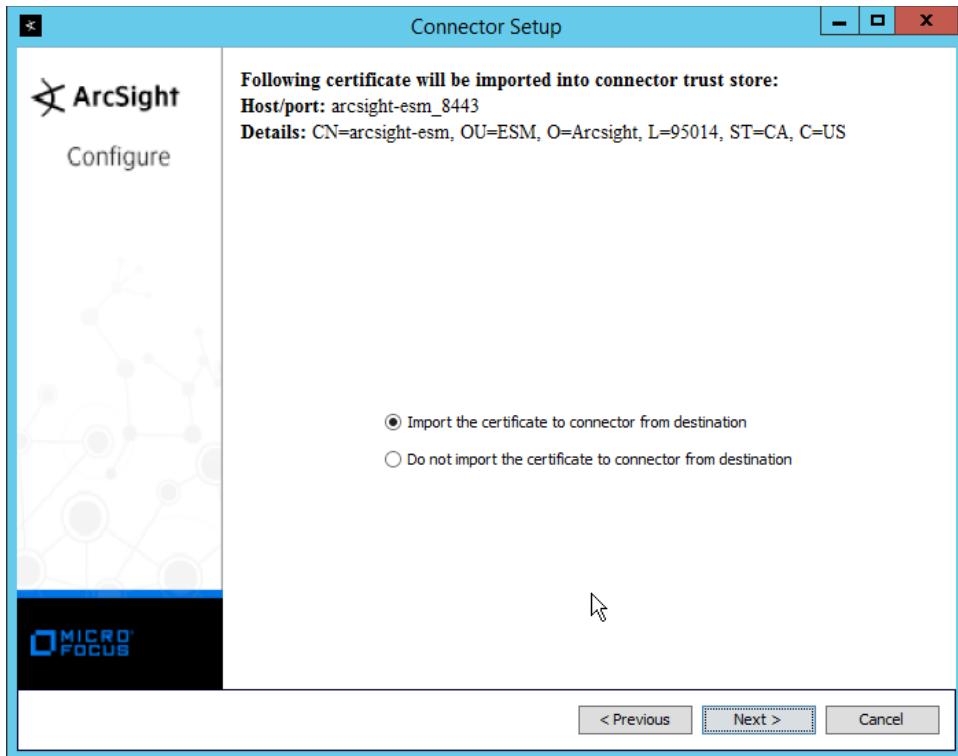


3048
3049

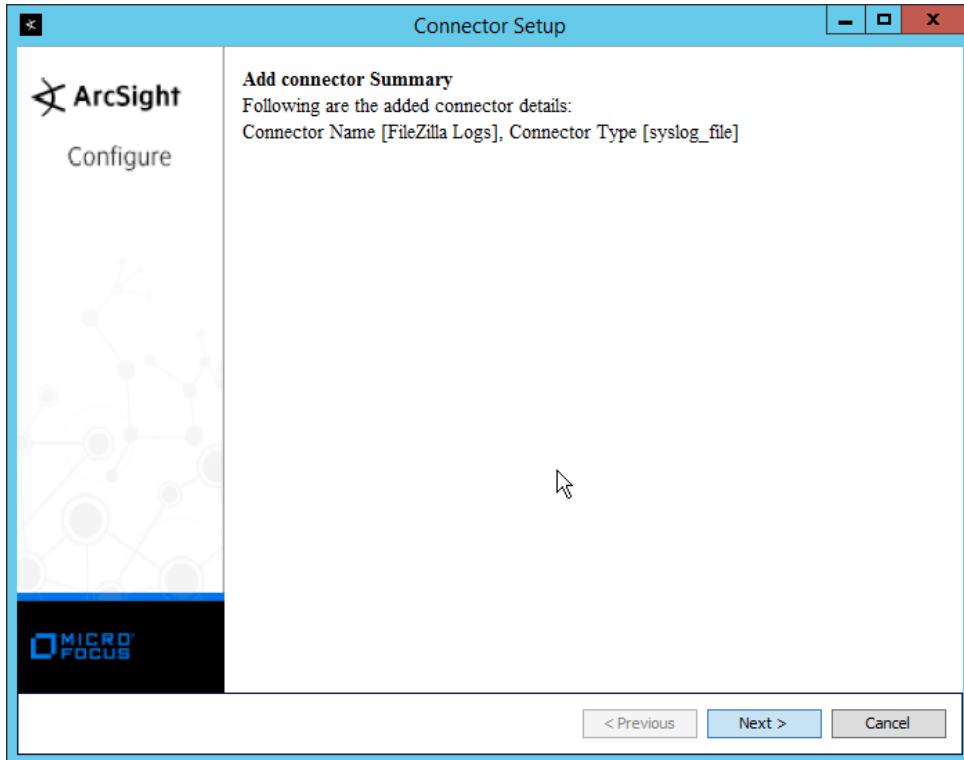
16. Click **Next**.
17. Enter identifying details about the system (only **Name** is required).



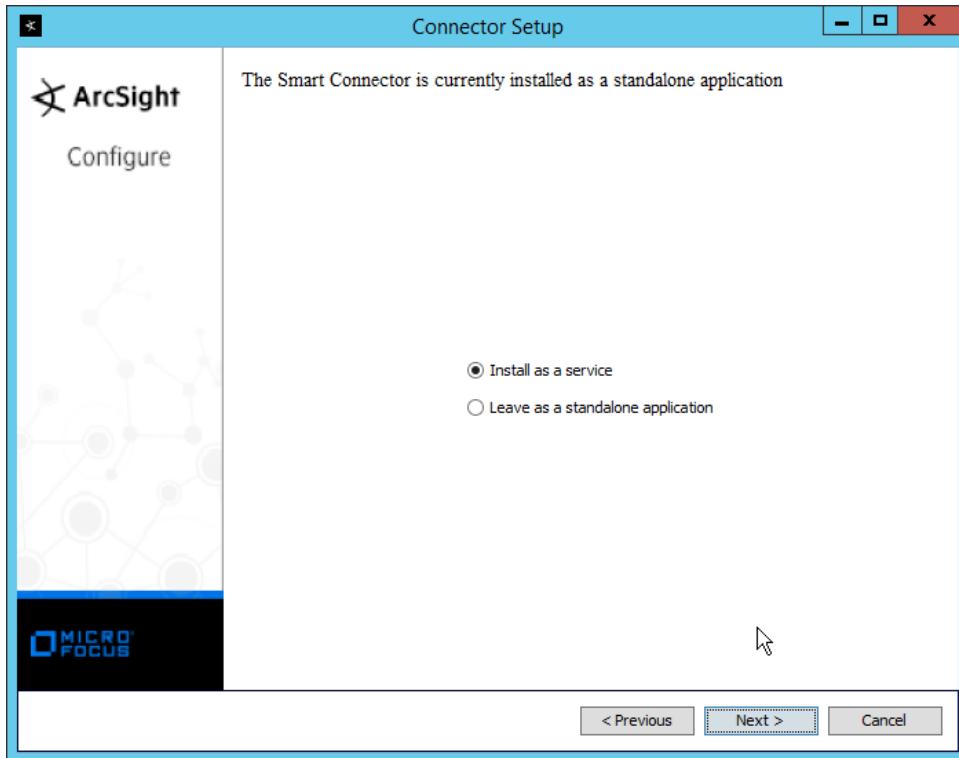
- 3050 18. Click **Next**.
3051 19. Select **Import the certificate to connector from destination**.



3052 20. Click **Next**.

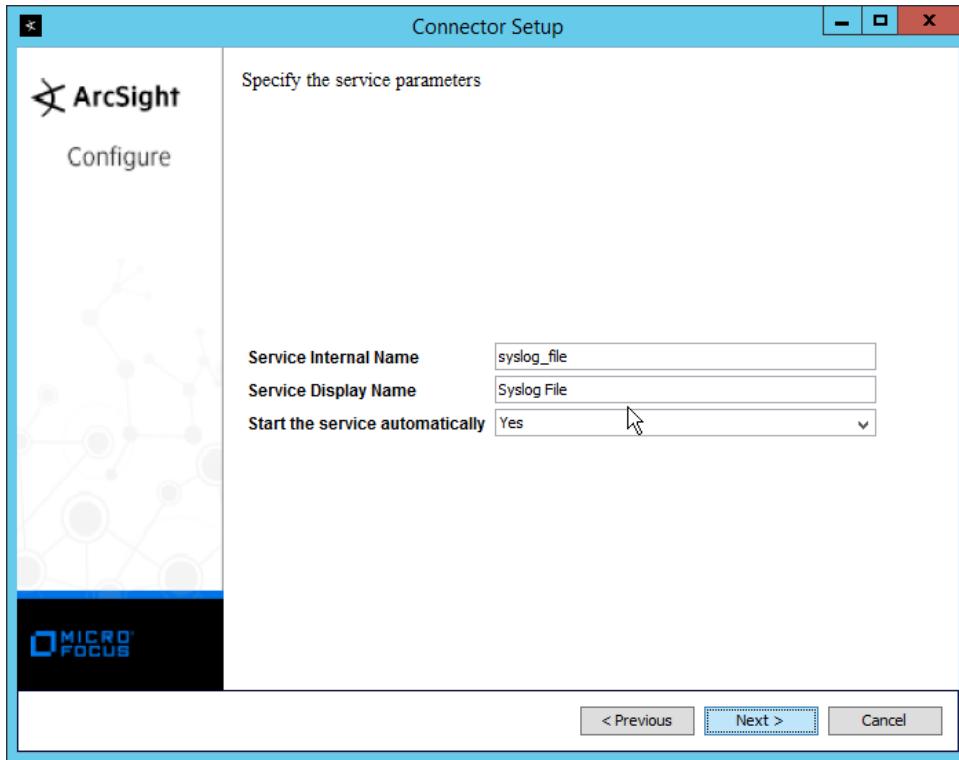


- 3053 21. Click **Next**.
3054 22. Select **Install as a service**.



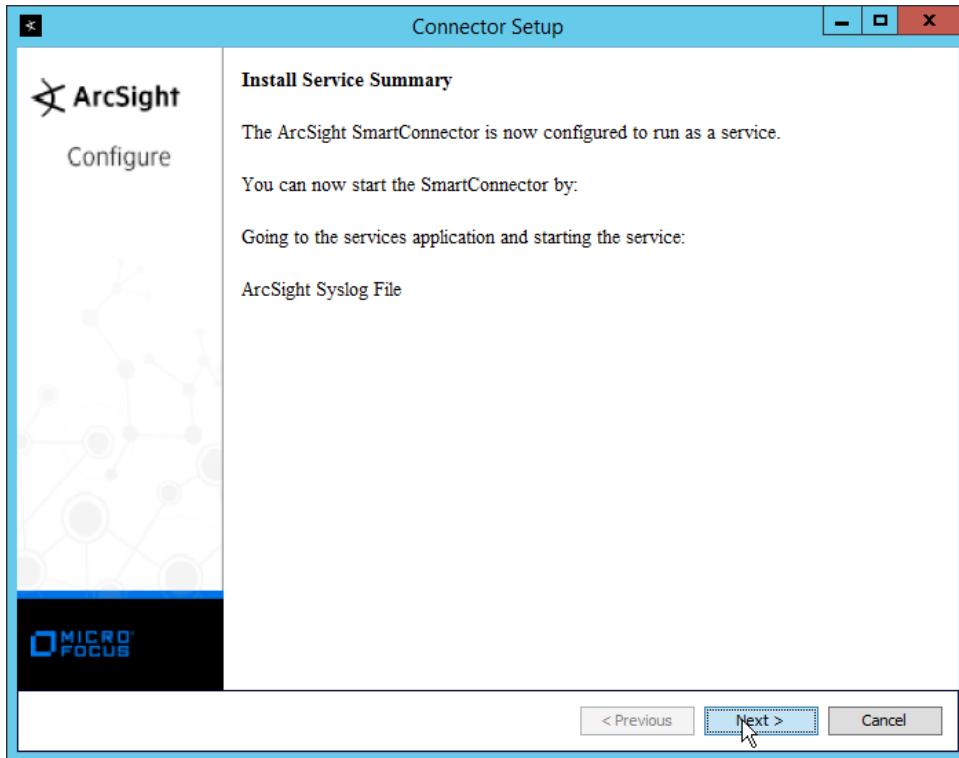
3055

23. Click **Next**.

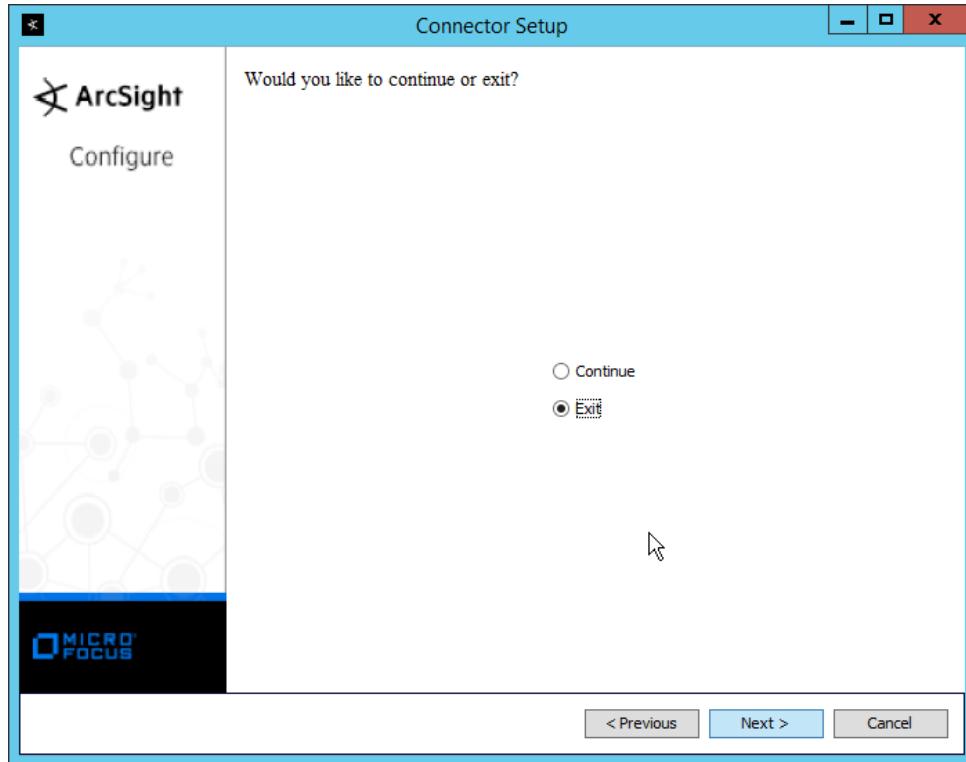


3056

24. Click **Next**.

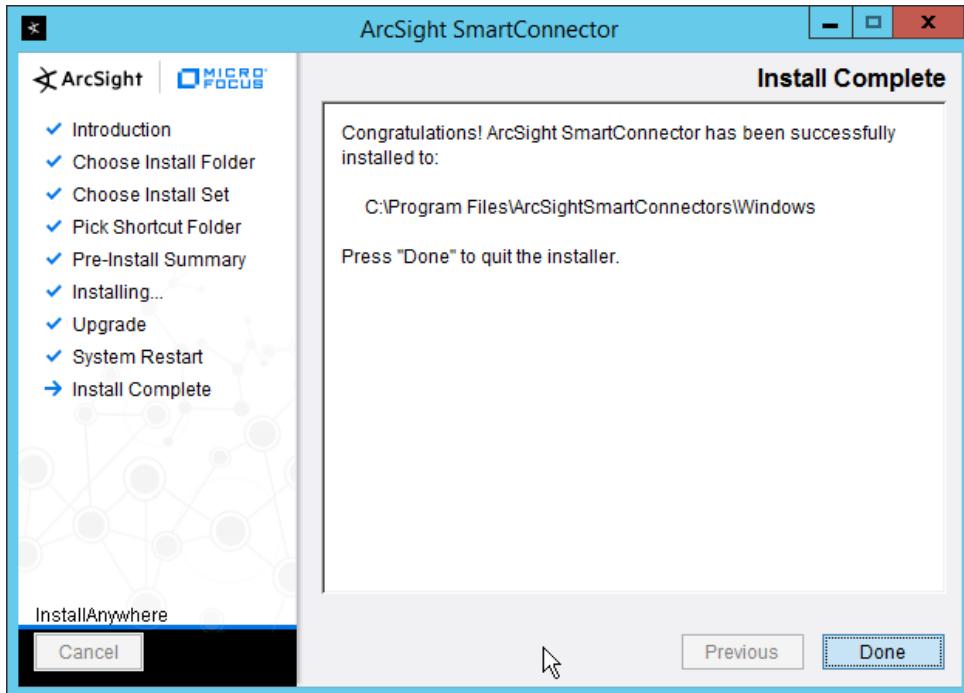


- 3057 25. Click **Next**.
3058 26. Select **Exit**.



3059

27. Click **Next**.



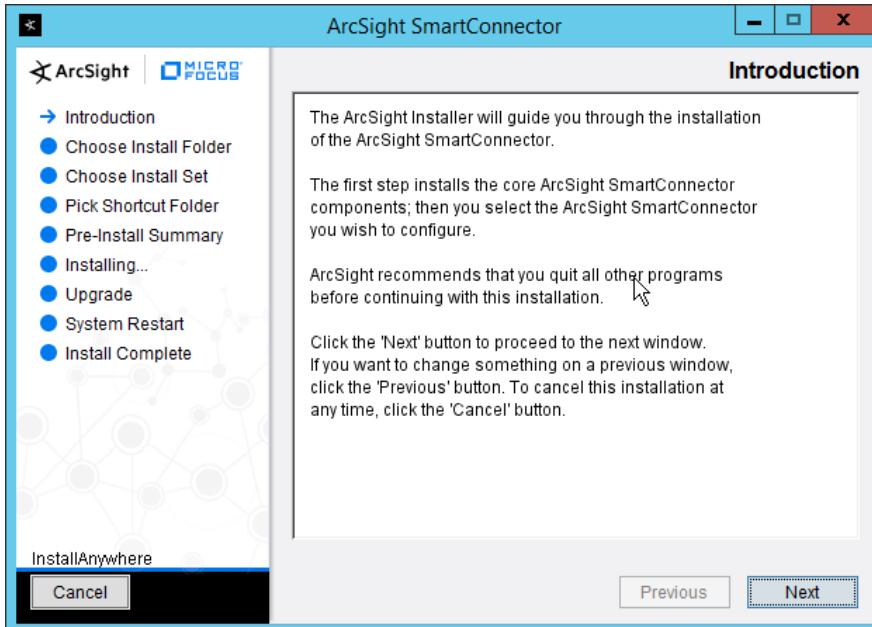
3060 28. Click **Done**.

2.24 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Tripwire

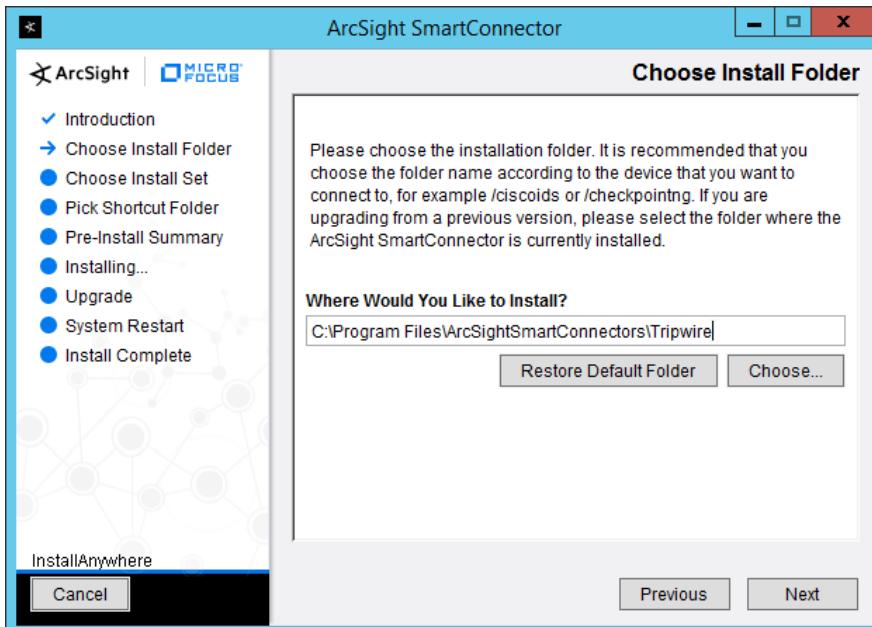
3062 This section details forwarding logs from **Tripwire Log Center** to **Micro Focus ArcSight**. This will forward
3063 **Tripwire IP360** and **Tripwire Enterprise** logs to **ArcSight**, assuming those logs are being collected by
3064 **Tripwire Log Center**.

2.24.1 Install Micro Focus ArcSight

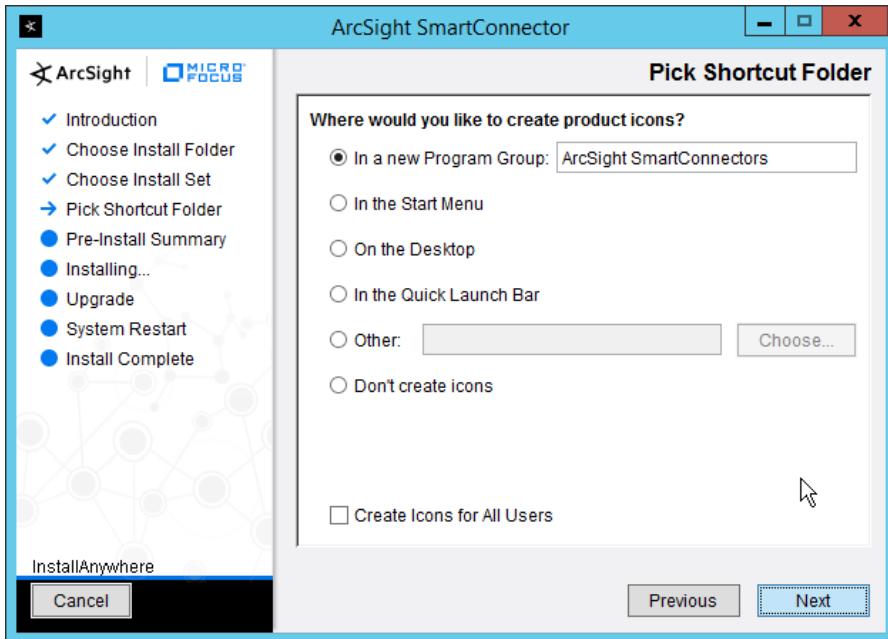
3066 1. Run **ArcSight-7.9.0.8084.0-Connector-Win64.exe** on any server except the one running Tripwire
3067 Log Center.



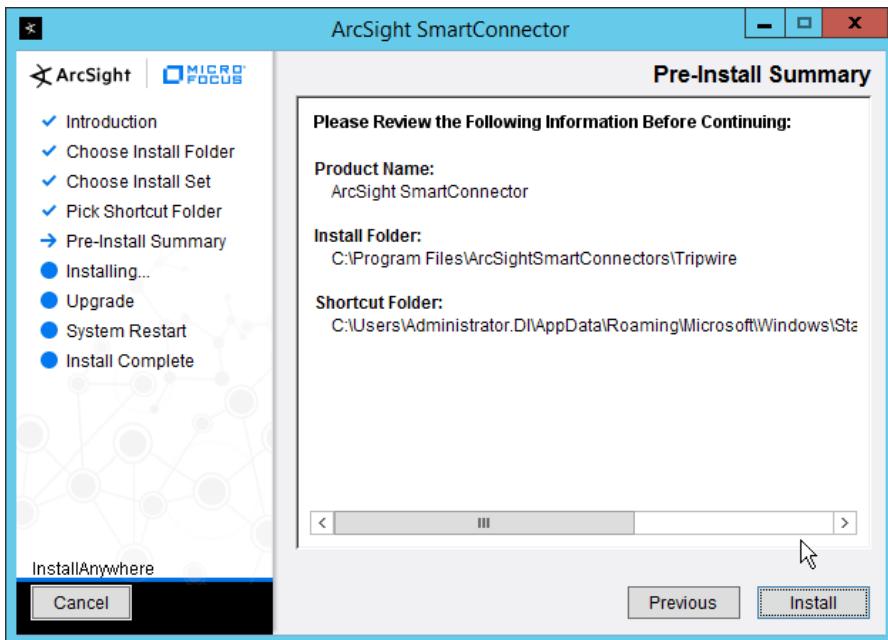
- 3068 2. Click **Next**.



- 3069 3. Enter C:\Program Files\ArcSightSmartConnectors\Tripwire.

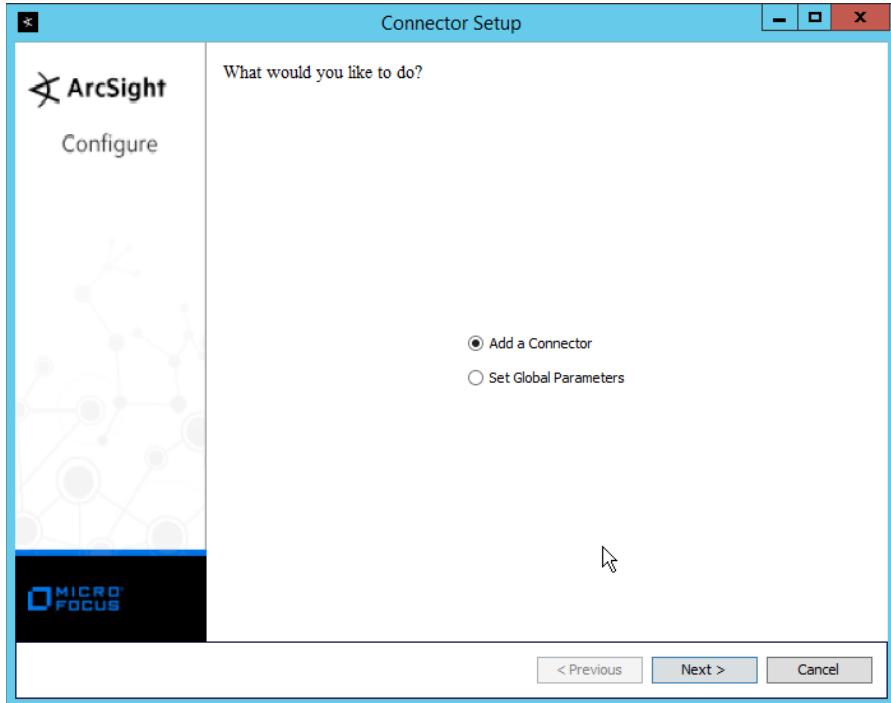


- 3070 4. Click **Next**.



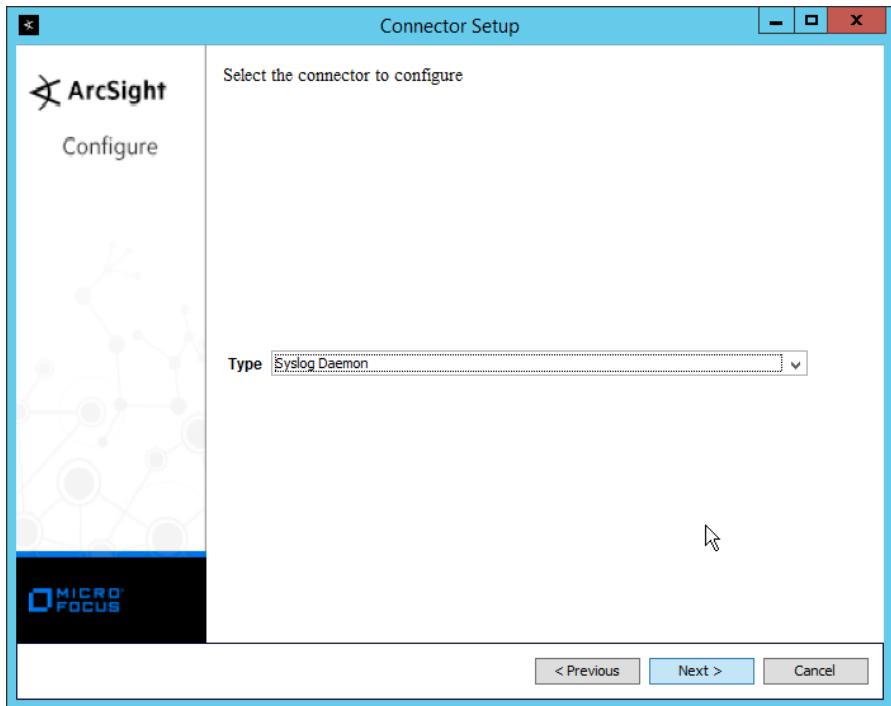
- 3071 5. Click **Install**.

- 3072 6. Select **Add a Connector**.

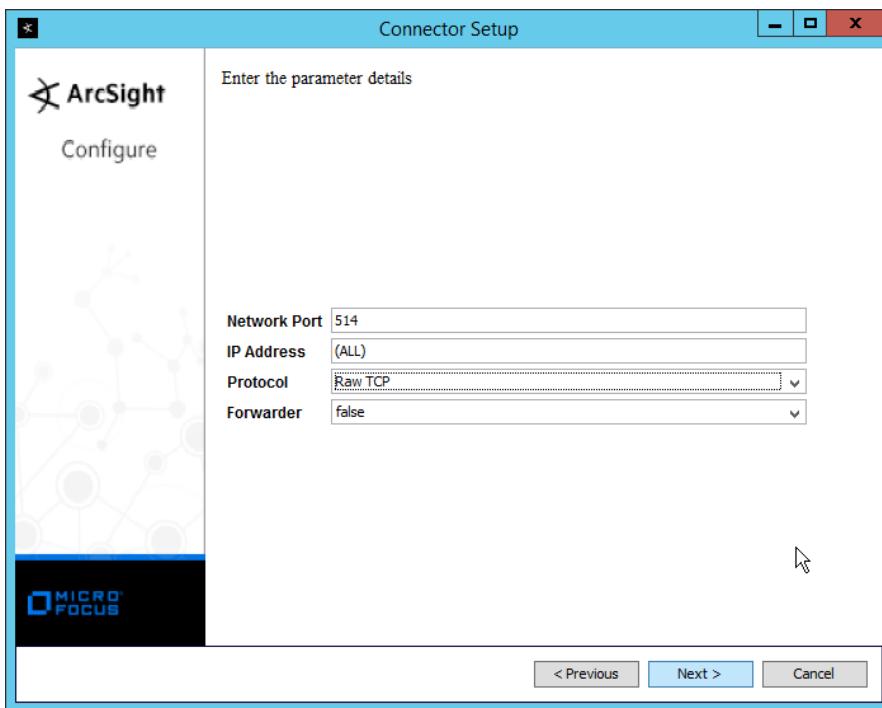


3073 7. Click **Next**.

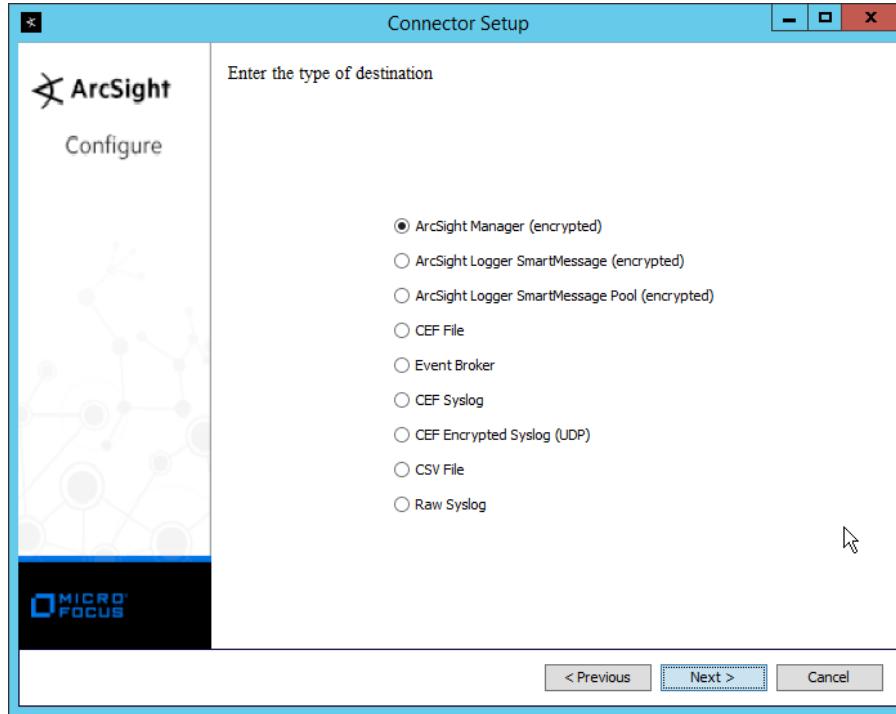
3074 8. Select **Syslog Daemon**.



- 3075 9. Click **Next**.
3076 10. Enter a port for the daemon to run on.
3077 11. Select **Raw TCP** for **Protocol**.



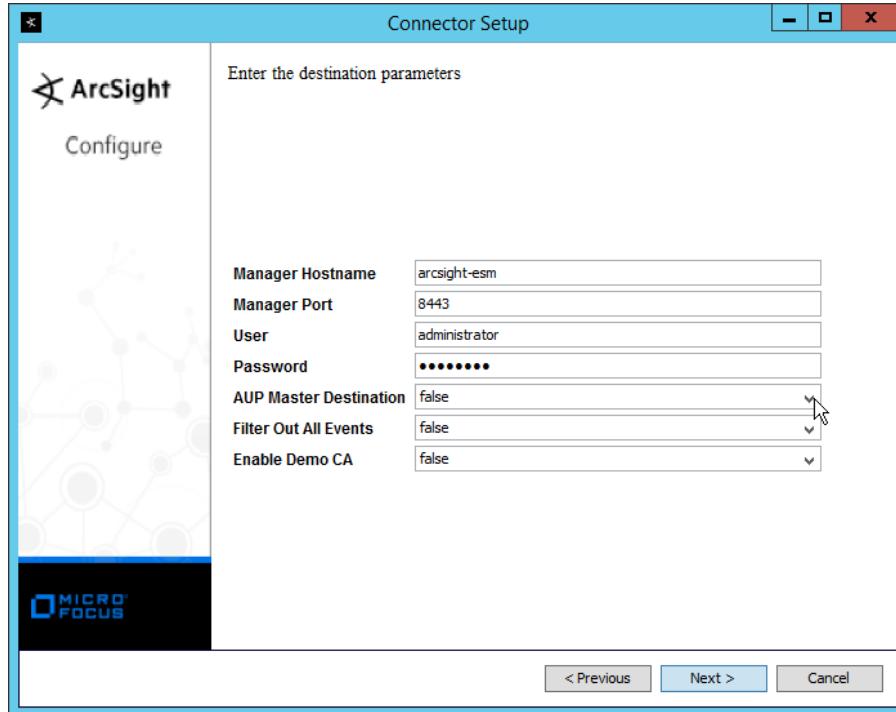
- 3078 12. Click **Next**.
3079 13. Select **ArcSight Manager (encrypted)**.



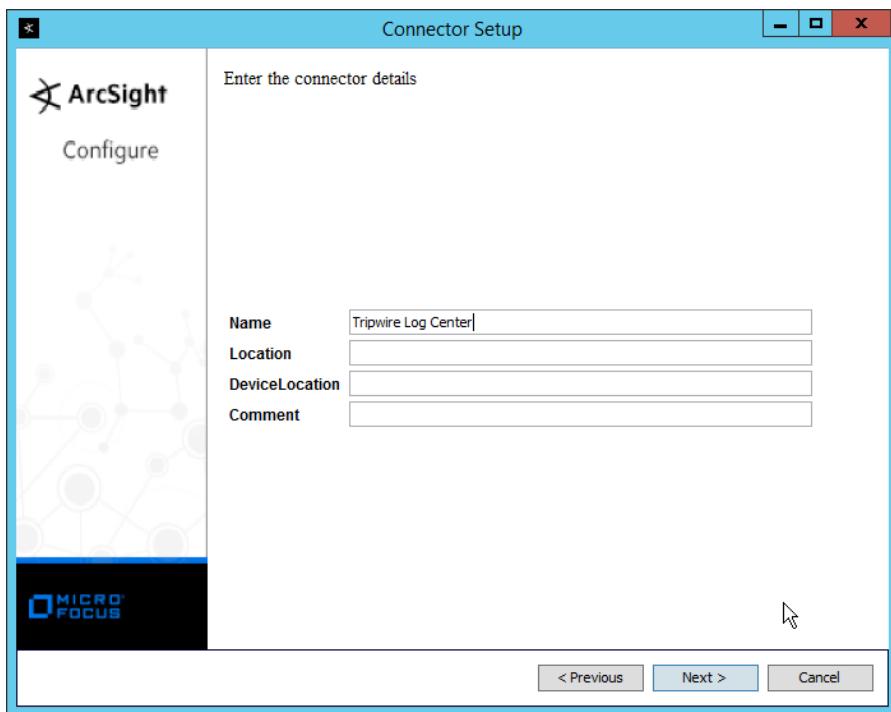
3080

14. Click Next.

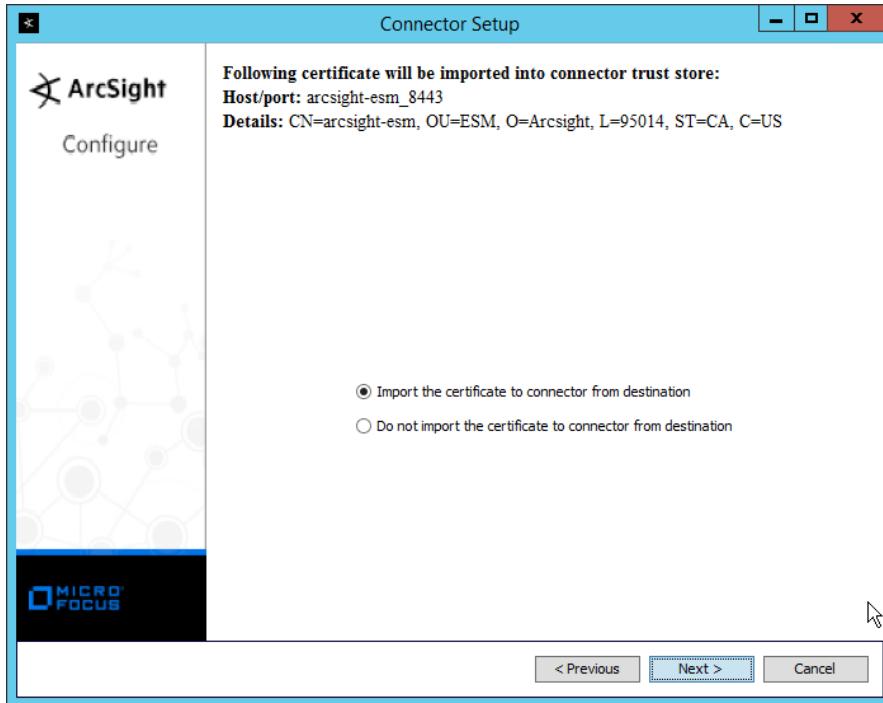
3081

15. Enter the **hostname**, **port**, **username**, and **password** for the ArcSight ESM server.

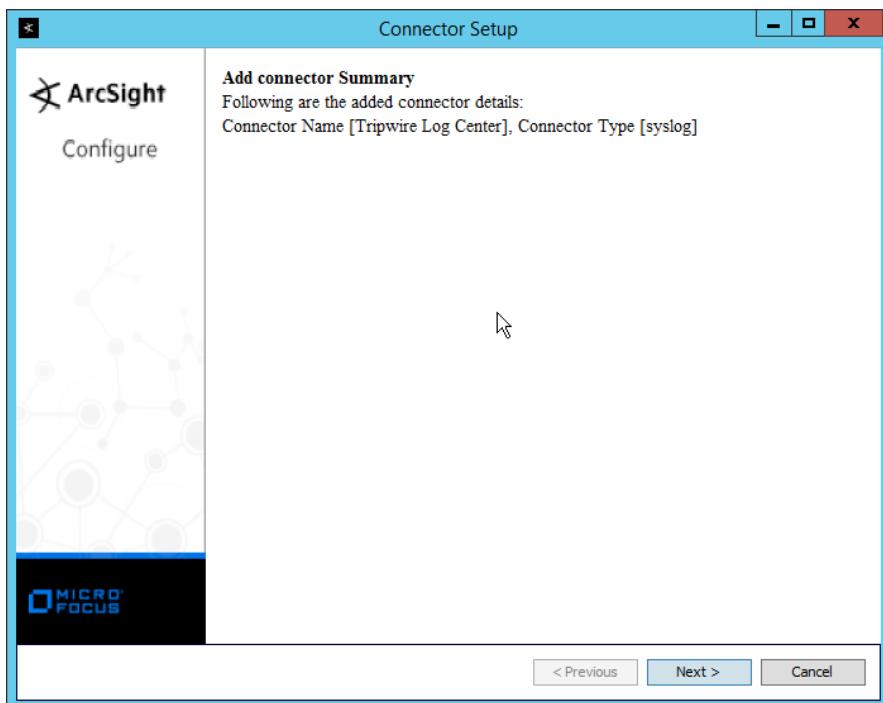
3082 16. Click **Next**.
3083 17. Enter identifying details about the system (only **Name** is required).



3084 18. Click **Next**.
3085 19. Select **Import the certificate to connector from destination**.

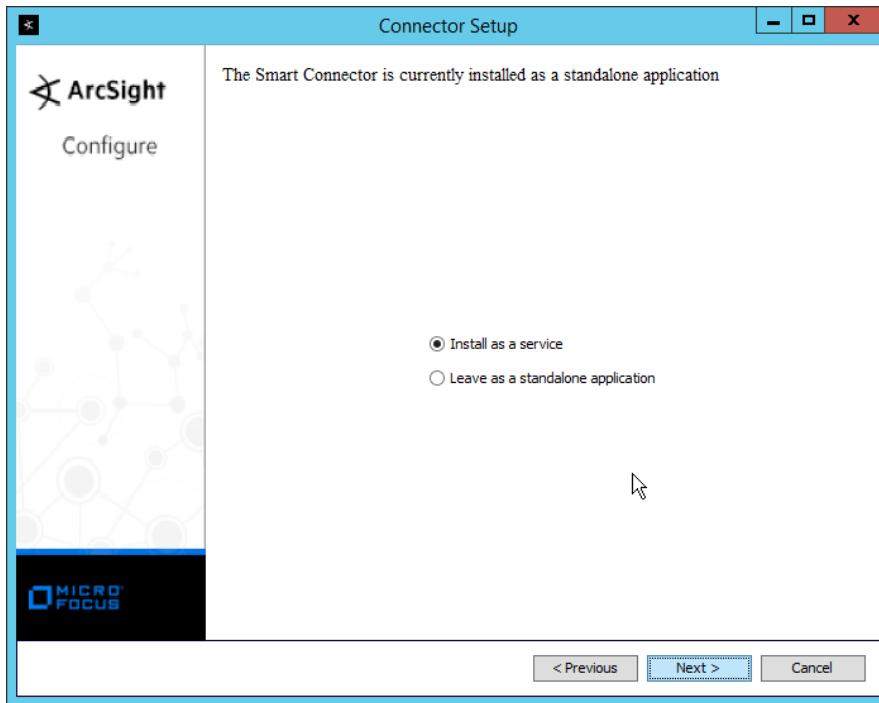


3086 20. Click Next.

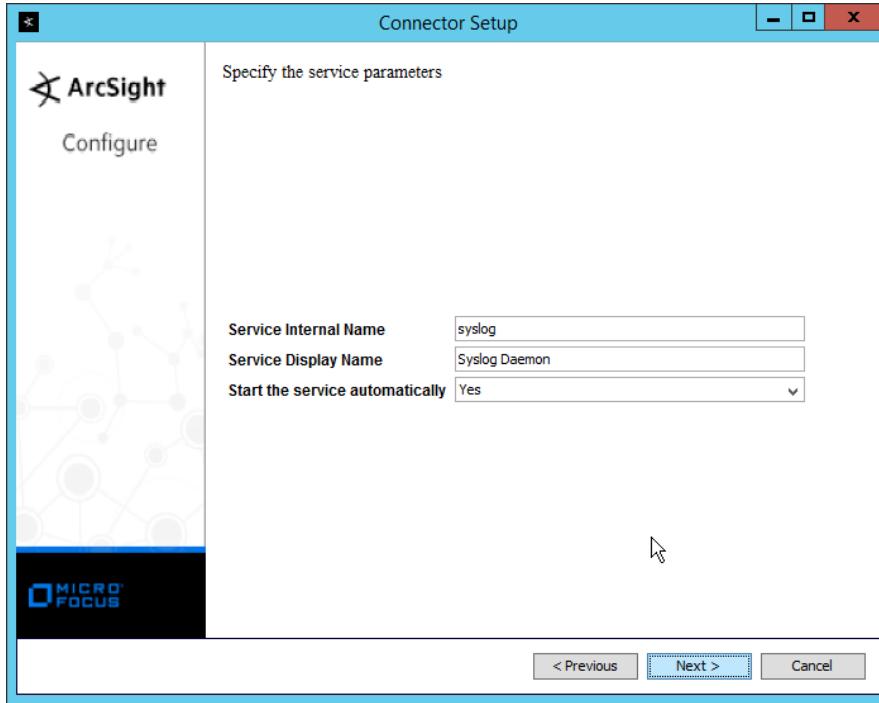


3087 21. Click Next.

3088 22. Select **Install as a service**.

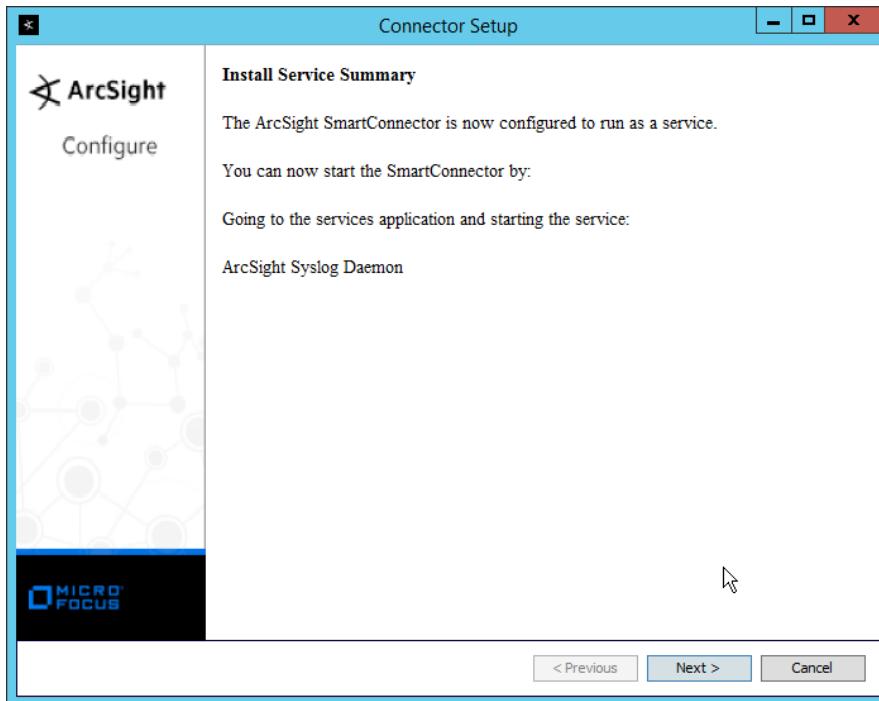


3089 23. Click **Next**.



3090

24. Click **Next**.

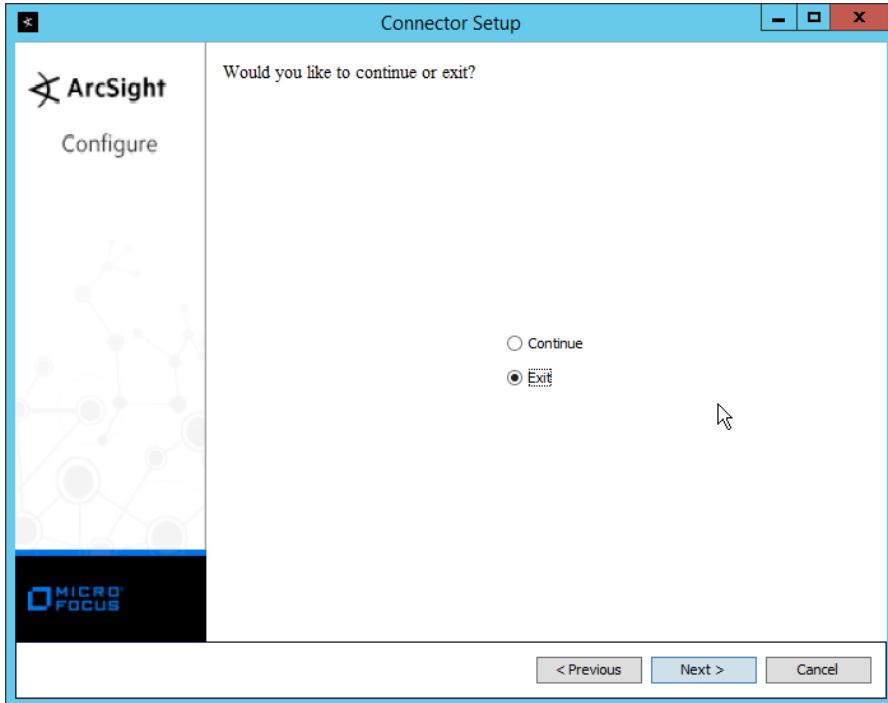


3091

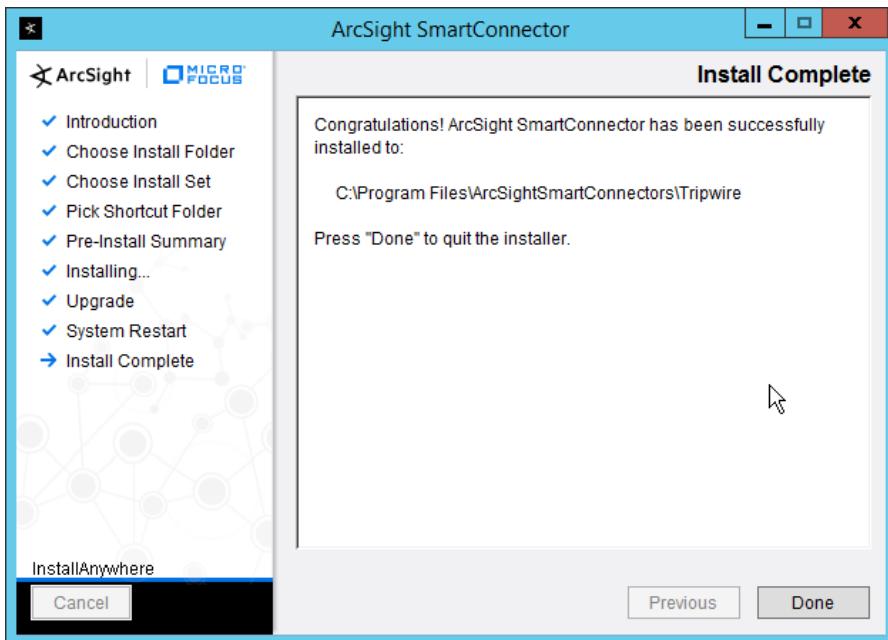
25. Click **Next**.

3092

26. Select **Exit**.



3093 27. Click **Next**.

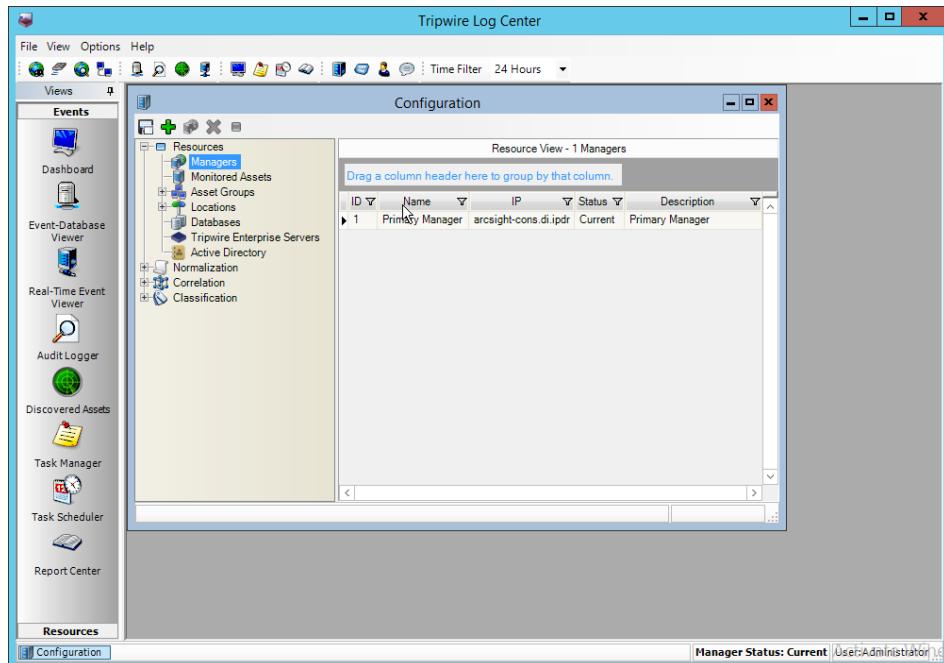


3094 28. Click **Done**.

3095 29. Open the **Tripwire Log Center Console**.

3096

30. Go to the Configuration Manager.



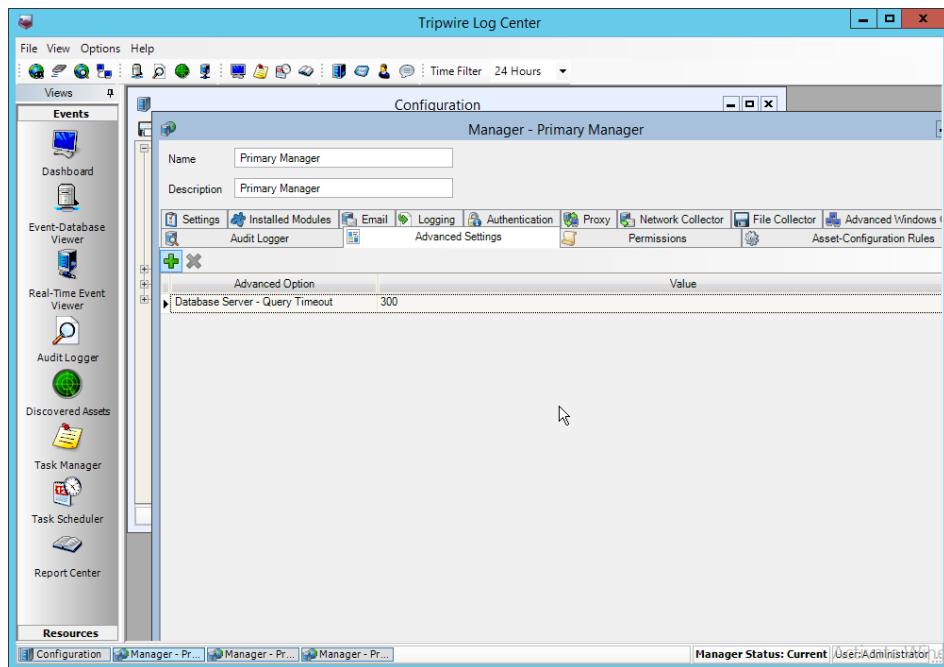
3097

31. Select Resources > Managers.

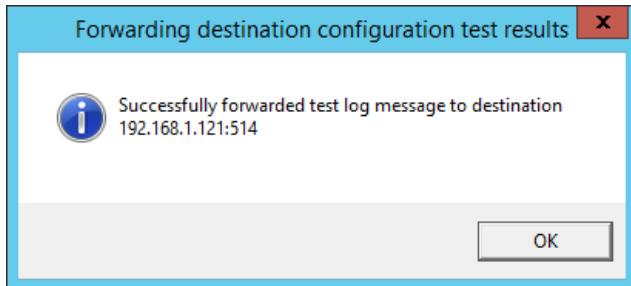
3098

32. Double-click the Primary Manager.

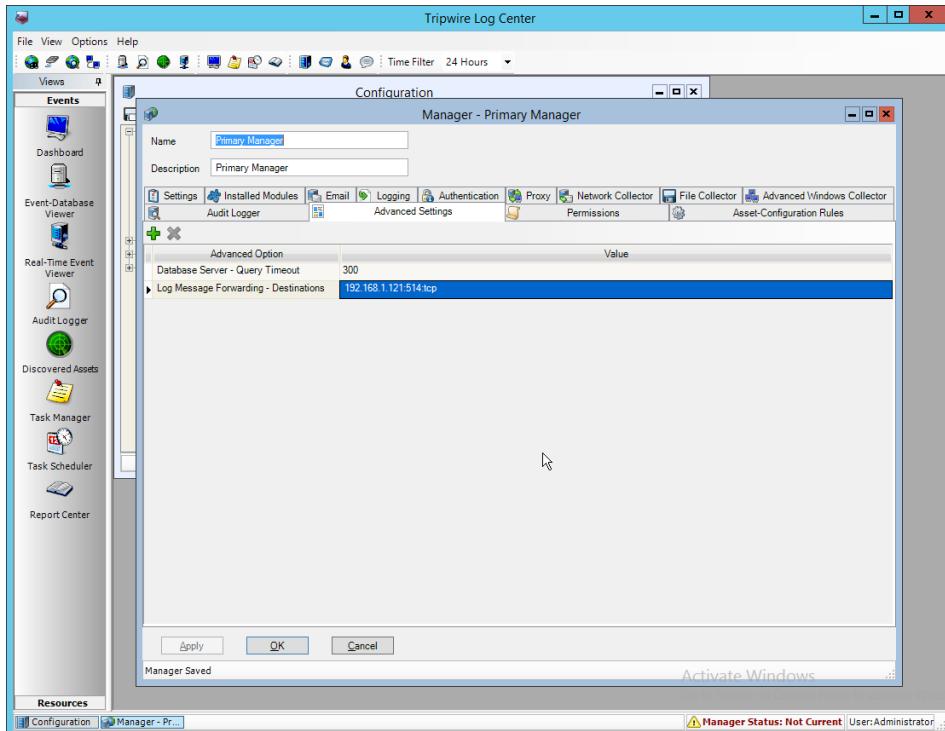
33. Click the Advanced Settings tab.



- 3099 34. Click the **Add** button.
3100 35. In the **Advanced Option** box select **Log Message Forwarding–Destinations**.
3101 36. In the Value box next to it, type <ip_address>:<port>:tcp with the **IP address** and **port** of the
3102 syslog daemon just created.



- 3103 37. Click **OK**.



- 3104 38. Click **OK**.
3105 39. Restart the **Tripwire Log Center Manager**.

3106 2.25 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Cisco WSA

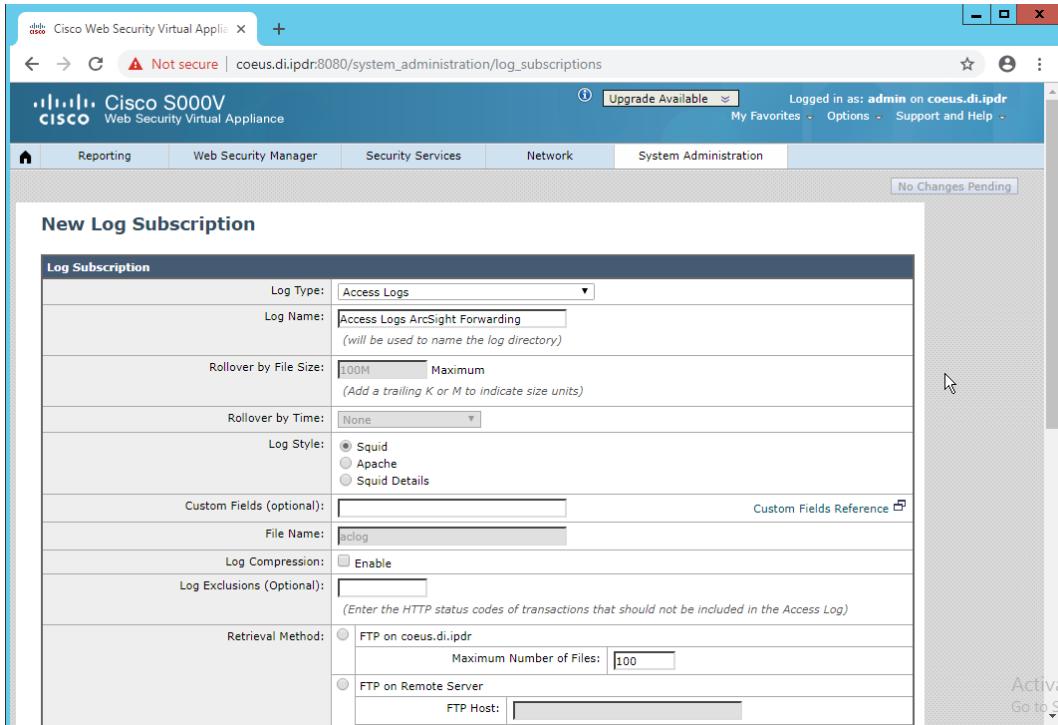
3107 This integration briefly details how to send logs to an ArcSight syslog collector from Cisco WSA. Please
 3108 see Section 2.24 for instructions for setting up an ArcSight syslog collector. If a server is already
 3109 configured, you do not need to install a new one—simply forward logs to the address of that server.

3110 2.25.1 Configure Cisco WSA to Forward Logs

- 3111 1. In the Cisco WSA web client, navigate to **System Administration > Log Subscriptions**.

Configured Log Subscriptions					
Add Log Subscription...					
Log Name	Type	Log Files	Rollover Interval	All Rollover	Delete
accesslogs	Access Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/accessiblelogs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
amp_logs	AMP Engine Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/amp_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
archiveinspect_logs	ArchiveInspect Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/archiveinspect_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
audit_logs	Audit Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/audit_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
authlogs	Authentication Framework Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/authlogs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
avc_logs	AVC Engine Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/avc_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
bypasslogs	Proxy Bypass Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/bypasslogs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
cli_logs	CLI Audit Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/cli_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
configurefraud_logs	Configuration Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/configurefraud_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
dca_logs	DCA Engine Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/dca_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
external_auth_logs	External Authentication Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/external_auth_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
feedback_logs	Feedback Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/feedback_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
feedsd_logs	Feedsd Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/feedsd_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
fips_logs	FIPS Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/fips_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
ftpd_logs	FTP Server Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/ftpd_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
gui_logs	GUI Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/gui_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
haystackd_logs	Haystack Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/haystackd_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
idsdatabase_logs	Data Security Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/idsdatabase_logs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
logderrorlogs	Logging Logs	http://coeus.d1.ipdr/logderrorlogs	None	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- 3112 2. Click **Add Log Subscription**.
 3113 3. Select **Access Logs** for **Log Type**. (These are the logs of client web requests that have gone through the proxy.)
 3114 4. Enter a **name** for **Log Name**.



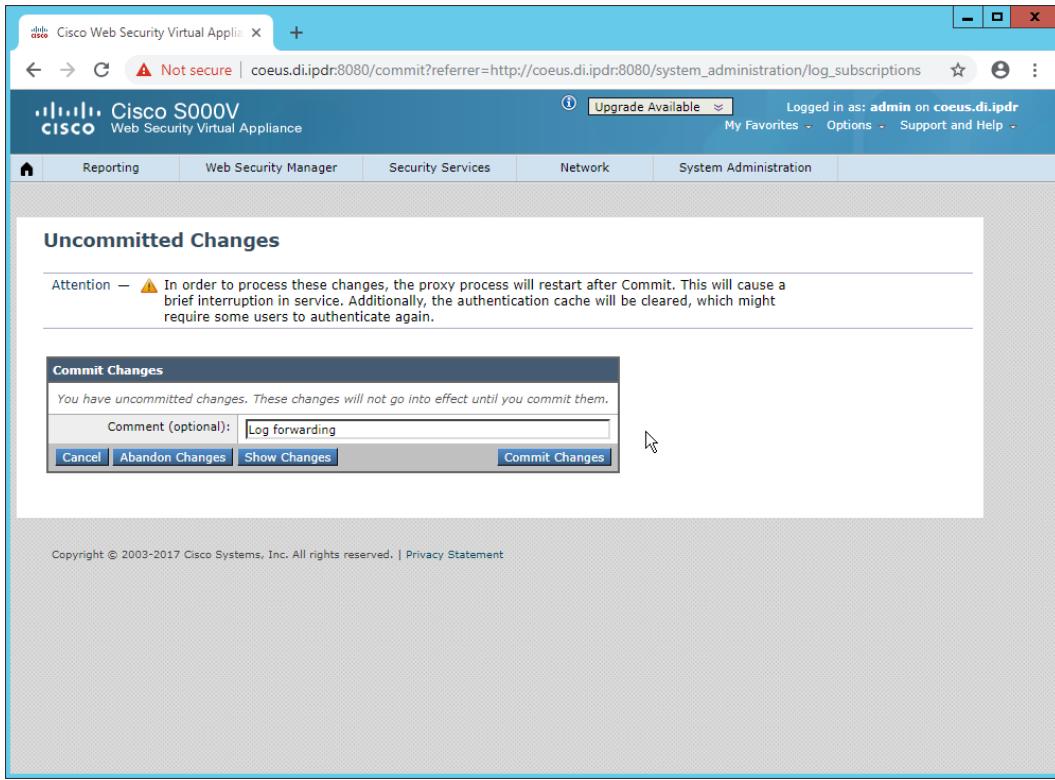
- 3116 5. Select **Syslog Push**.
- 3117 6. Enter the **hostname** of the ArcSight syslog collector server.
- 3118 7. Select **TCP**. (Ensure that your syslog collector server is configured to use TCP.)
- 3119 8. Enter **8192** or a custom message-size limit.

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for log subscriptions. The top navigation bar includes the Cisco logo, 'Cisco Web Security Virtual Appliance', and a URL 'coeus.di.ipdr:8080/system_administration/log_subscriptions?action=Edit&CSRFKey=3a09cb45-15fa-cc...'. The main content area is titled 'Log Subscriptions' and contains several configuration sections:

- Retrieval Method:**
 - FTP on coeus.di.ipdr**: Maximum Number of Files: 100
 - FTP on Remote Server**: FTP Host, Directory, Username, Passphrase
 - SCP on Remote Server**: SCP Host, SCP Port (set to 22), Directory, Username
- Enable Host Key Checking**: Radio buttons for 'Automatically Scan' (selected) and 'Enter Manually'.
- Syslog Push**: Hostname: backupserv.di.ipdr, Protocol: UDP (radio button selected), TCP (radio button selected), Maximum message size: 8192, Facility: user

At the bottom are 'Cancel' and 'Submit' buttons, and a copyright notice: 'Copyright © 2003-2017 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. | Privacy Statement'.

- 3120 9. Click **Submit**.
3121 10. Click **Commit Changes**.
3122 11. Enter a **comment** if desired.



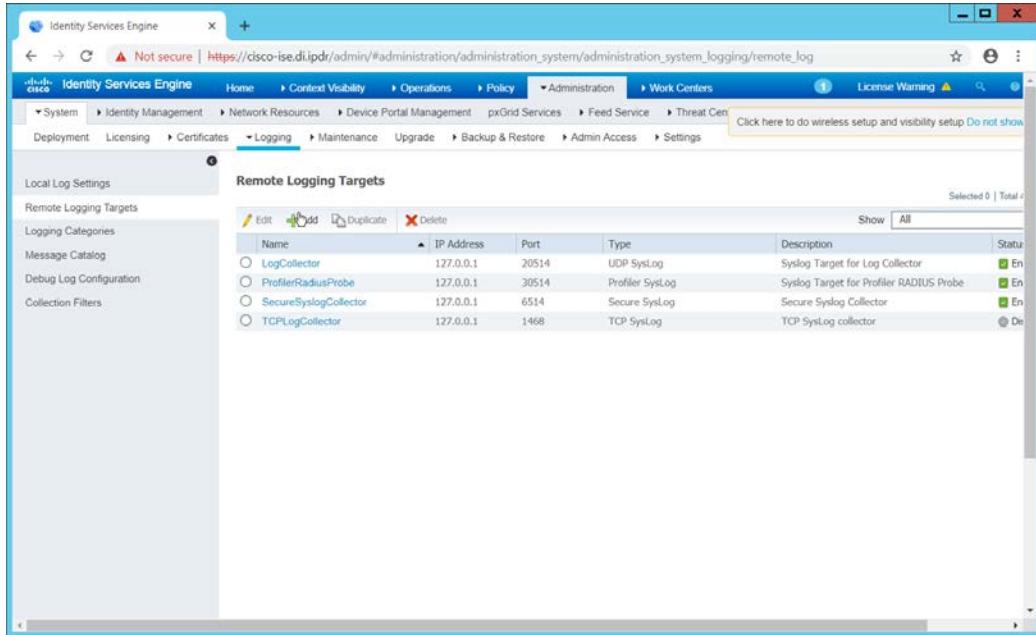
3123 12. Click **Commit Changes**. The server will restart, so the web page connection will be temporarily
3124 lost.

3125 2.26 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Cisco ISE

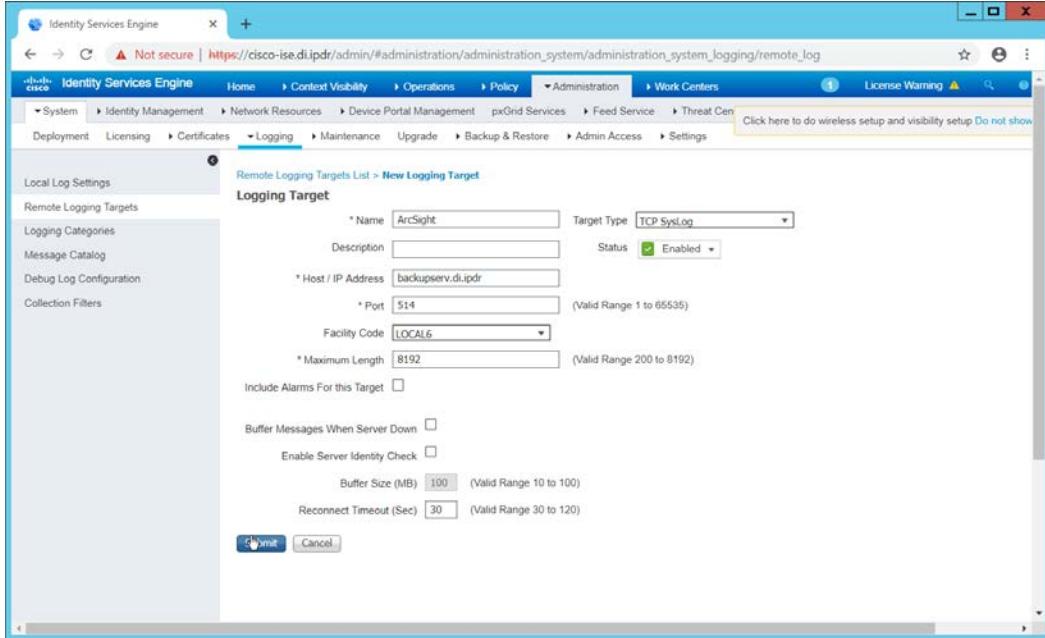
3126 This integration briefly details how to send logs to an ArcSight syslog collector from Cisco ISE. Please see
3127 Section 2.24 for instructions for setting up an ArcSight syslog collector. If a server is already configured,
3128 you do not need to install a new one—simply forward logs to the address of that server.

3129 2.26.1 Configure Cisco ISE to Forward Logs

3130 1. In the Cisco ISE web client, navigate to **Administration > System > Logging > Remote Logging**
3131 Targets.

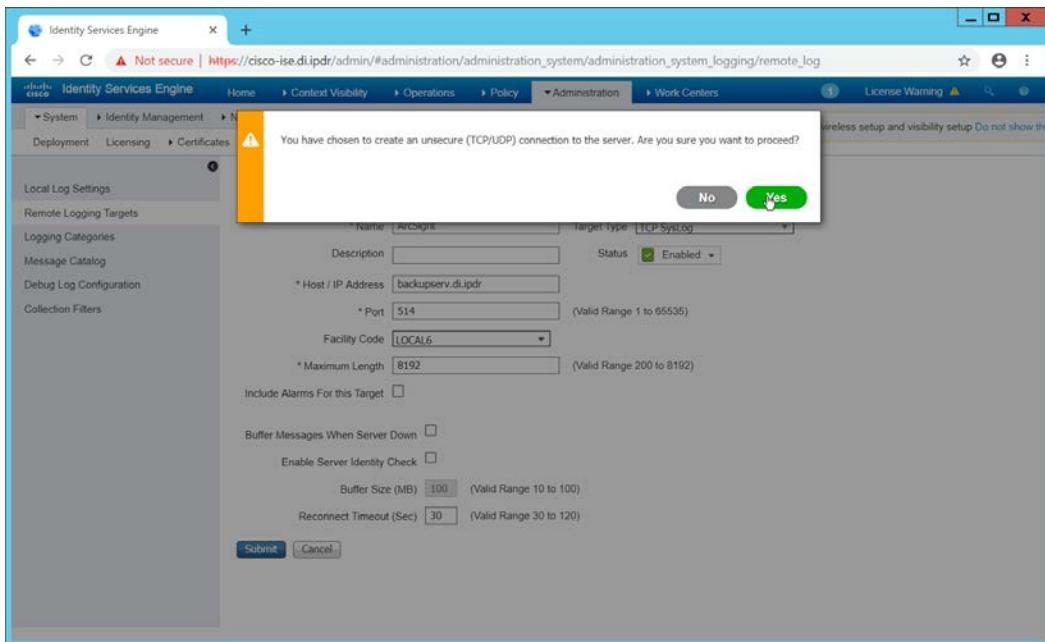


- 3132 2. Click **Add**.
- 3133 3. Enter a **Name**.
- 3134 4. Enter the **hostname** of the ArcSight syslog collector server for **Host/IP Address**.
- 3135 5. Select **TCP SysLog** for Target Type. (Ensure that your syslog collector server is configured to use TCP.)
- 3136 6. Enter **514** or the port used on the syslog server.
- 3137 7. Enter **8192** or a custom message-size limit for **Maximum Length**.
- 3138 8. Ensure that **Status** is set to **Enabled**.



3140

9. Click Submit.



3141

10. Click Yes.

3142 2.26.2 Select Logs for Forwarding

3143 1. Navigate to System > Logging > Logging Categories.

The screenshot shows the ISE Administration interface under the 'System' tab. The 'Logging' sub-tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar lists 'Local Log Settings', 'Remote Logging Targets', 'Logging Categories' (which is selected), 'Message Catalog', 'Debug Log Configuration', and 'Collection Filters'. The main pane displays a list of logging categories with their corresponding log collectors. The 'Accounting' category is highlighted with a blue selection bar and has a cursor icon over it. Other categories listed include AAA Audit, AAA Diagnostics, RADIUS Accounting, TACACS Accounting, and Administrative and Operational Audit.

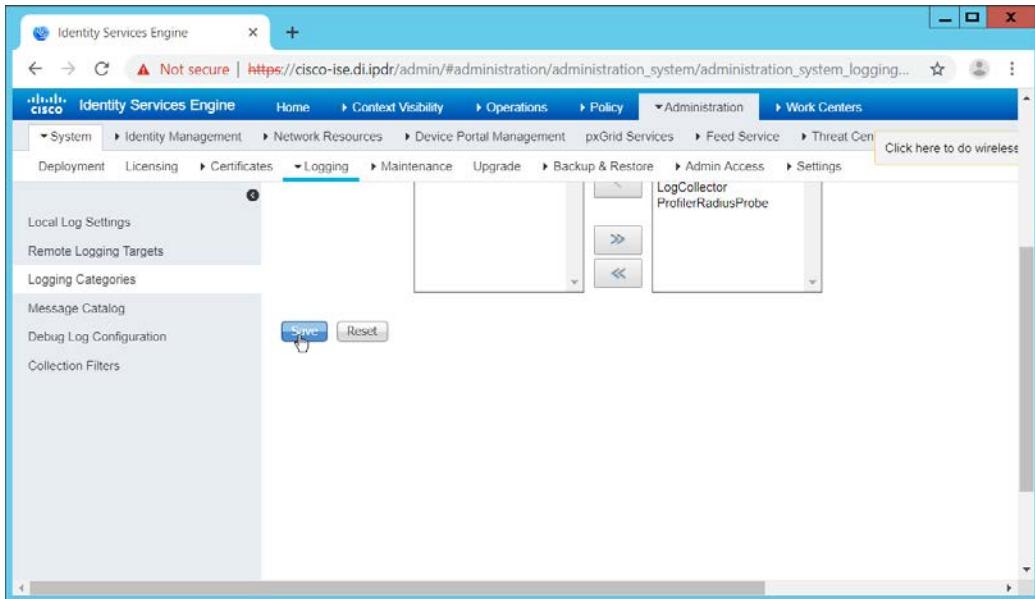
Category	Log Collector
AAA Audit	LogCollector
AAA Diagnostics	LogCollector
RADIUS Accounting	cryptonite,cryptonite2,LogColl
TACACS Accounting	LogCollector
Administrative and Operational Audit	LogCollector

3144 2. Select a log file to forward to ArcSight.

3145 3. Click Edit.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Logging Category' dialog for 'RADIUS Accounting'. The 'Name' field is set to 'RADIUS Accounting'. The 'Log Severity Level' is set to 'INFO'. Under 'Local Logging', there is a checked checkbox. In the 'Targets' section, the 'Available' list contains 'SecureSyslogCollector'. The 'Selected' list contains 'ArcSight', 'cryptonite', 'cryptonite2', 'LogCollector', and 'ProfilerRadiusProbe'. There are four double-headed arrows between the two lists: a top-left arrow, a bottom-left arrow, a top-right arrow, and a bottom-right arrow.

3146 4. Move the ArcSight logging target you just created to the Selected box.



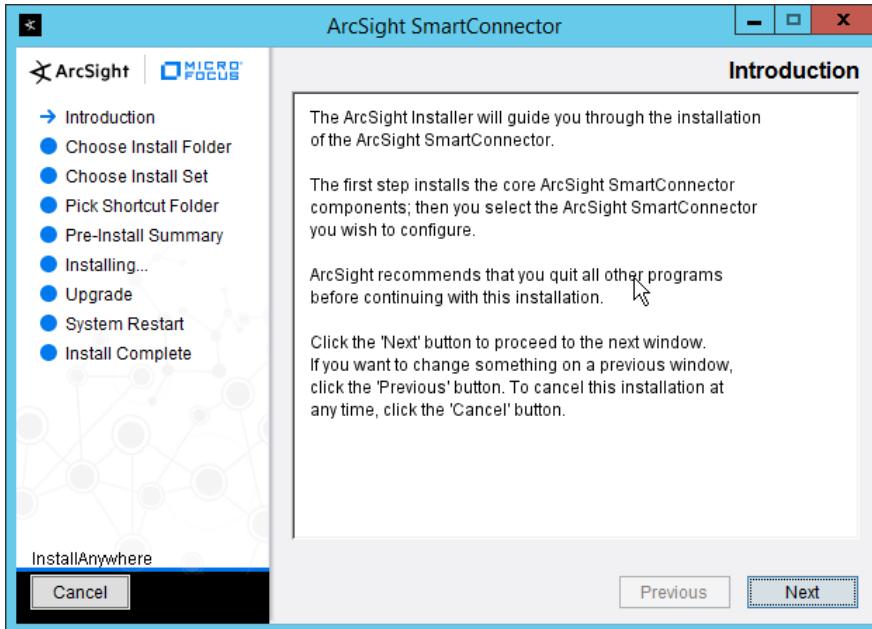
- 3147 5. Click **Save**.
3148 6. Repeat steps 1–5 for any log files you wish to forward to ArcSight.

3149 2.27 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Symantec DLP

3150 This integration briefly details how to send logs to an ArcSight syslog collector from Symantec DLP. If a
3151 server is already configured, you do not need to install a new one—simply forward logs to the address of
3152 that server. It is important to note that DLP requires a UDP server, so a TCP syslog server will not work.

3153 2.27.1 Install Micro Focus ArcSight

- 3154 1. Run **ArcSight-7.9.0.8084.0-Connector-Win64.exe** on any server except the one running Cisco
3155 Stealthwatch.

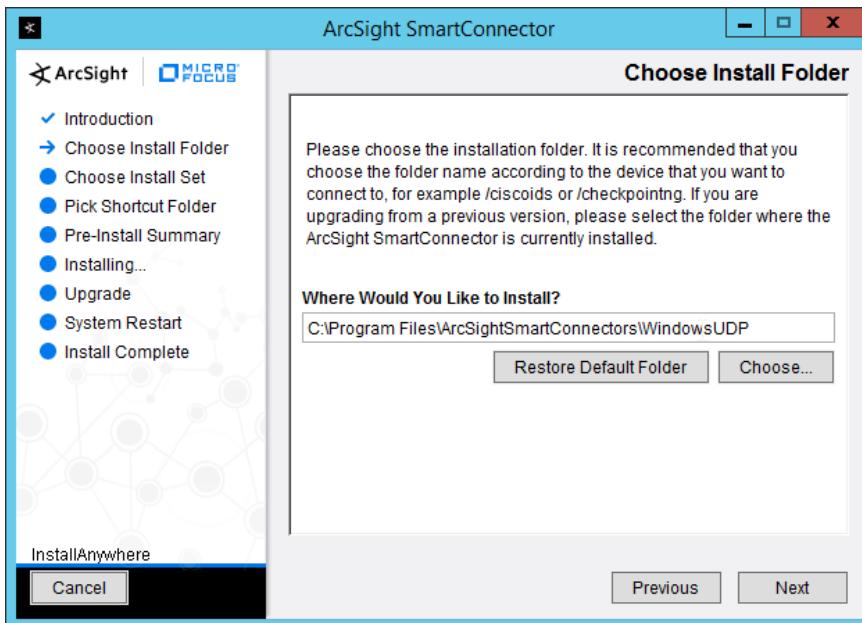


3156

2. Click **Next**.

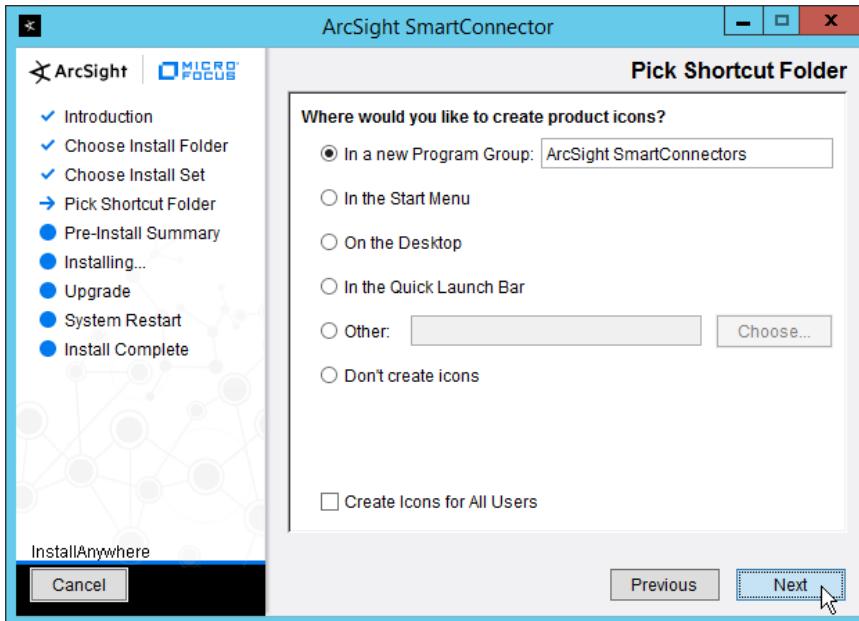
3157

3. Enter C:\Program Files\ArcSightSmartConnectors\WindowsUDP.

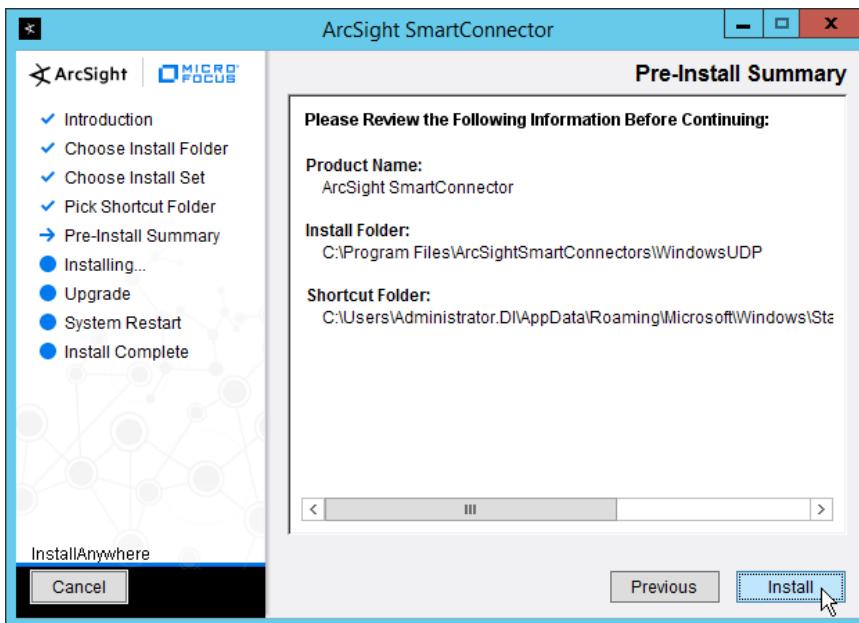


3158

4. Click **Next**.

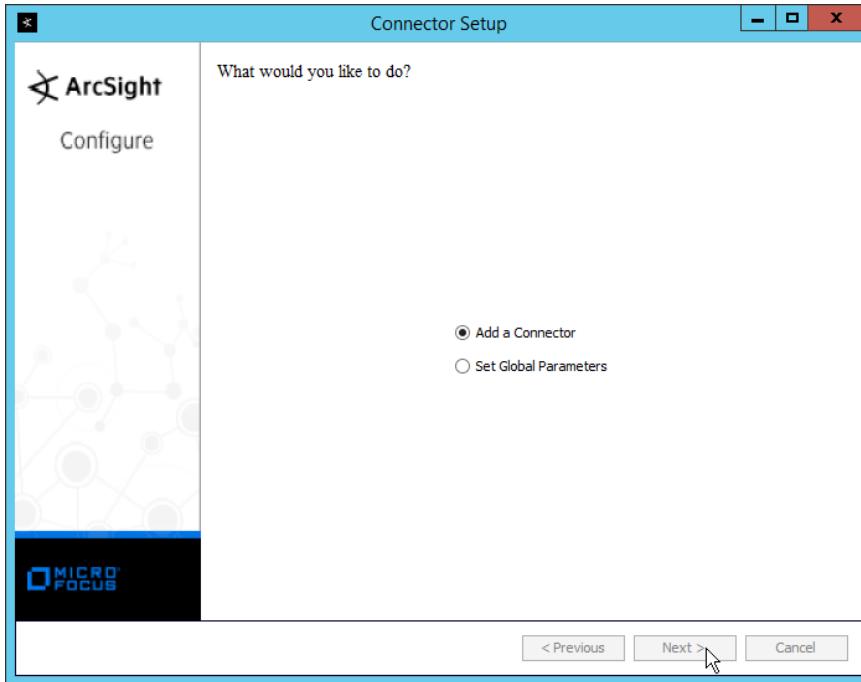


- 3159 5. Click **Next**.



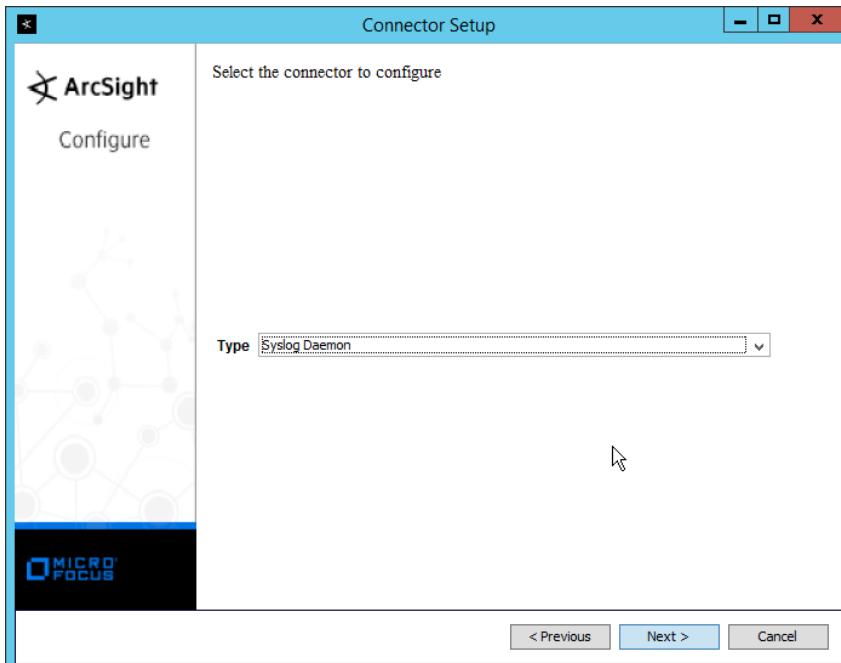
- 3160 6. Click **Install**.

- 3161 7. Select **Add a Connector**.



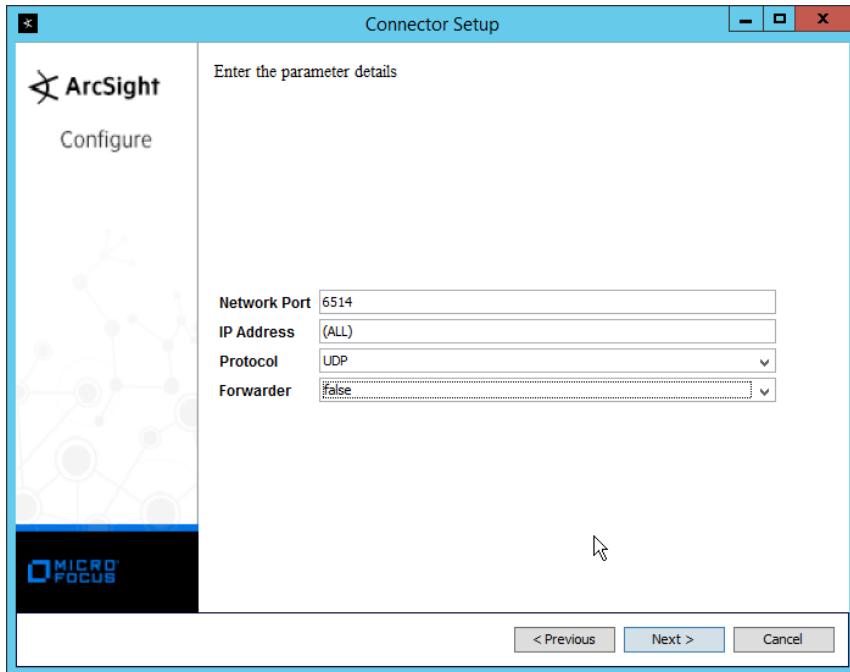
3162 8. Click **Next**.

3163 9. Select **Syslog Daemon**.

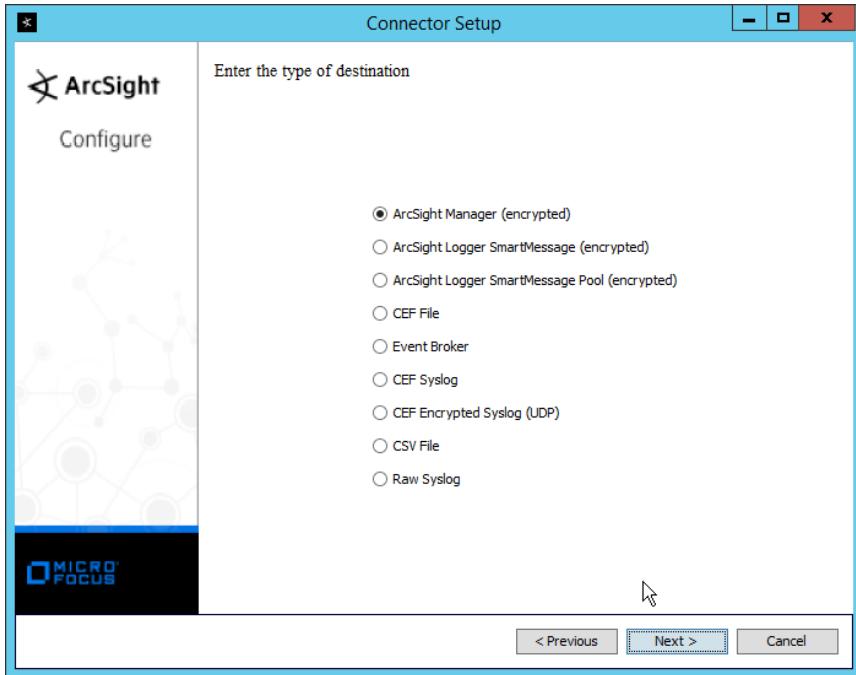
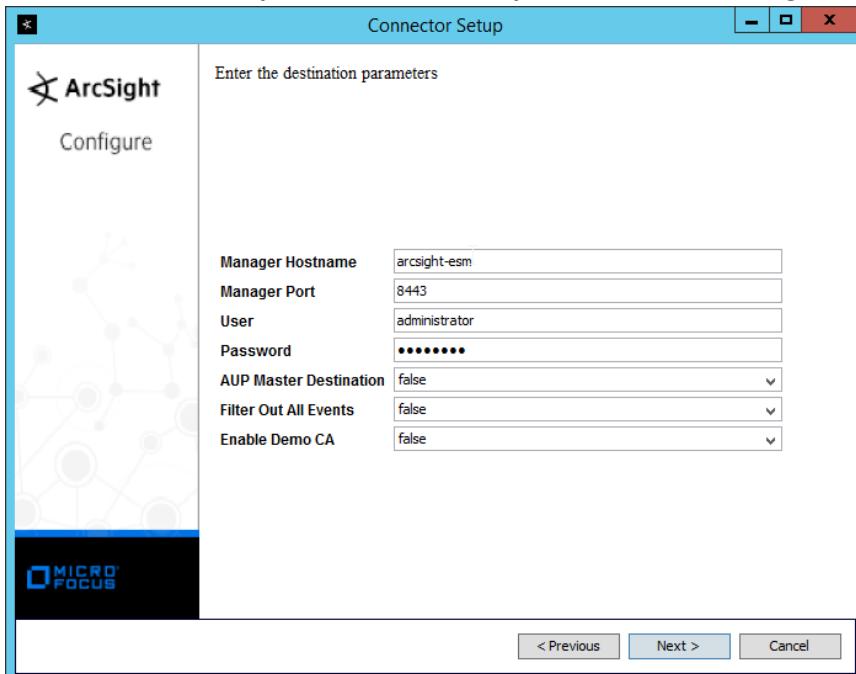


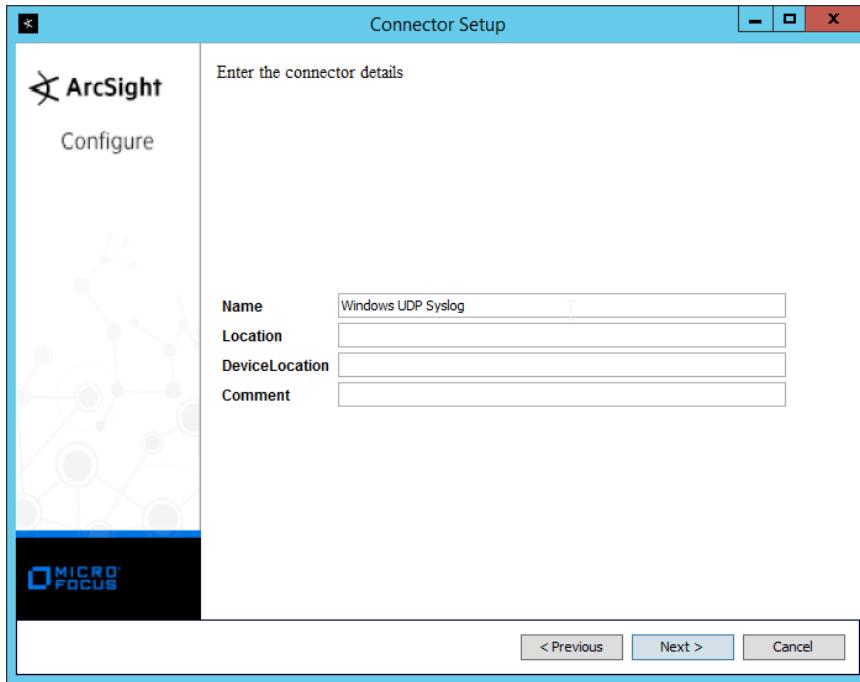
3164 10. Click **Next**.

- 3165 11. Enter an unused port on which the daemon can run. (Ensure that this port is allowed through
3166 the firewall.)
3167 12. Select **UDP** for Protocol.



- 3168 13. Click **Next**.
3169 14. Select **ArcSight Manager (encrypted)**.

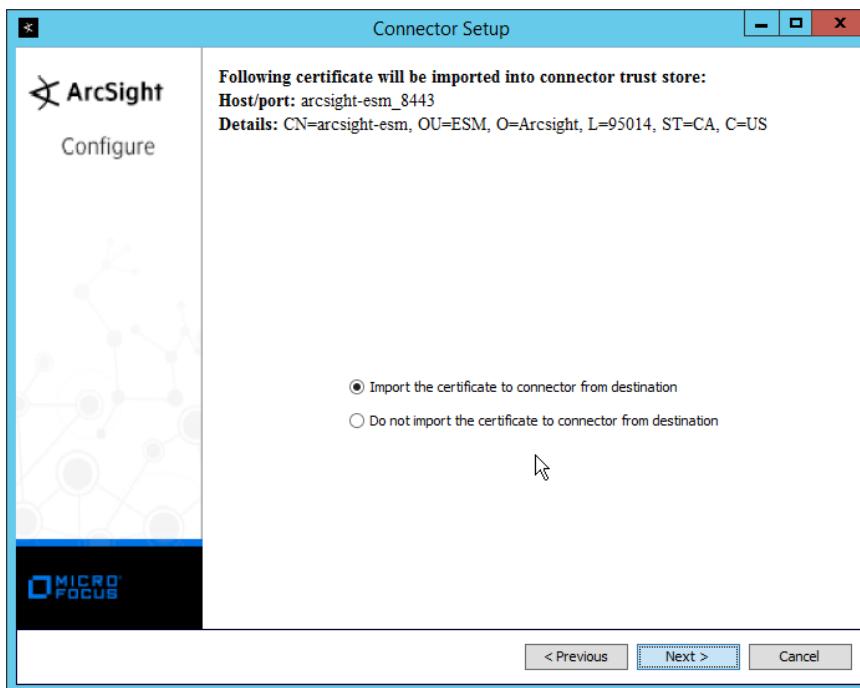
3170 15. Click **Next**.3171 16. Enter the **hostname**, **port**, **username**, and **password** for the ArcSight ESM server.3172 17. Click **Next**.3173 18. Enter identifying details about the system (only **Name** is required).



3174

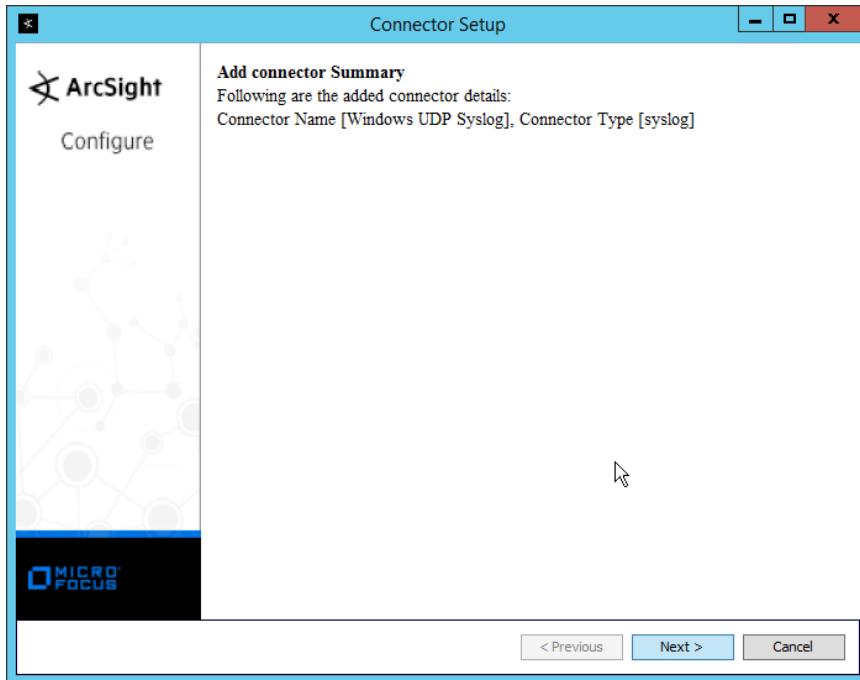
19. Click **Next**.

3175

20. Select **Import the certificate to connector from destination**.

3176

21. Click **Next**.

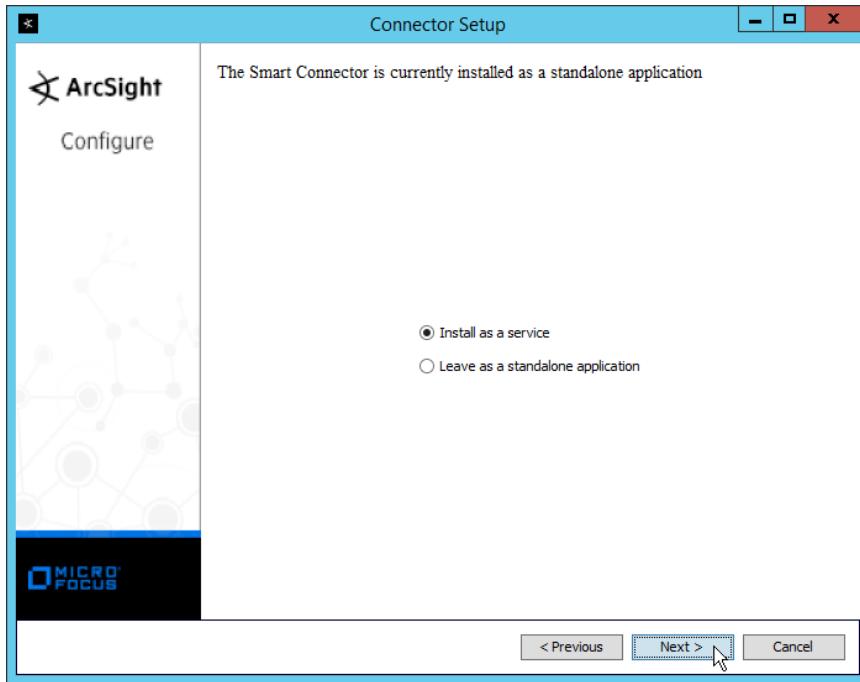


3177

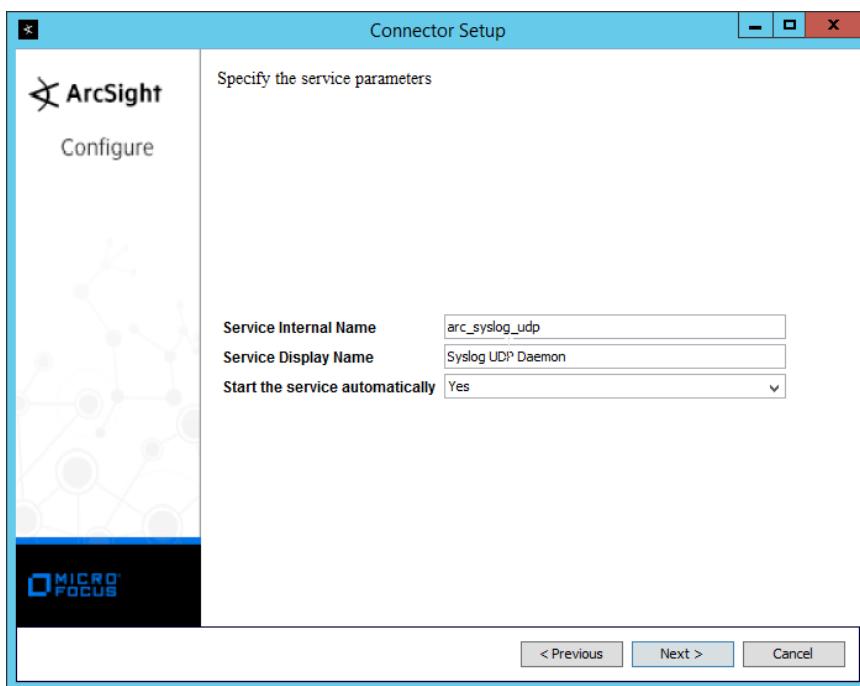
22. Click **Next**.

3178

23. Select **Install as a service**.

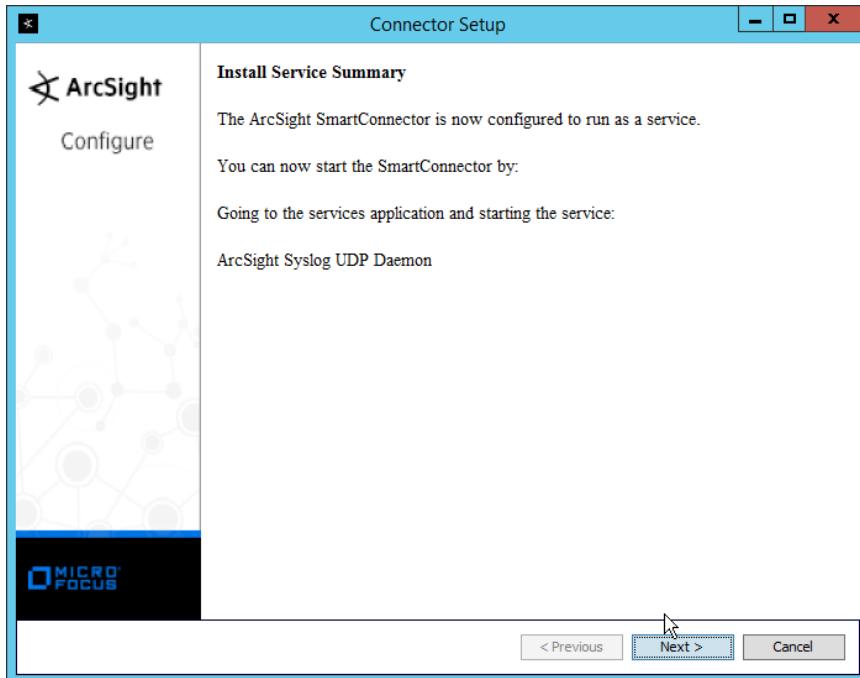


3179 24. Click **Next**.
3180 25. Enter a **service name** and **display name**.



3181

26. Click **Next**.

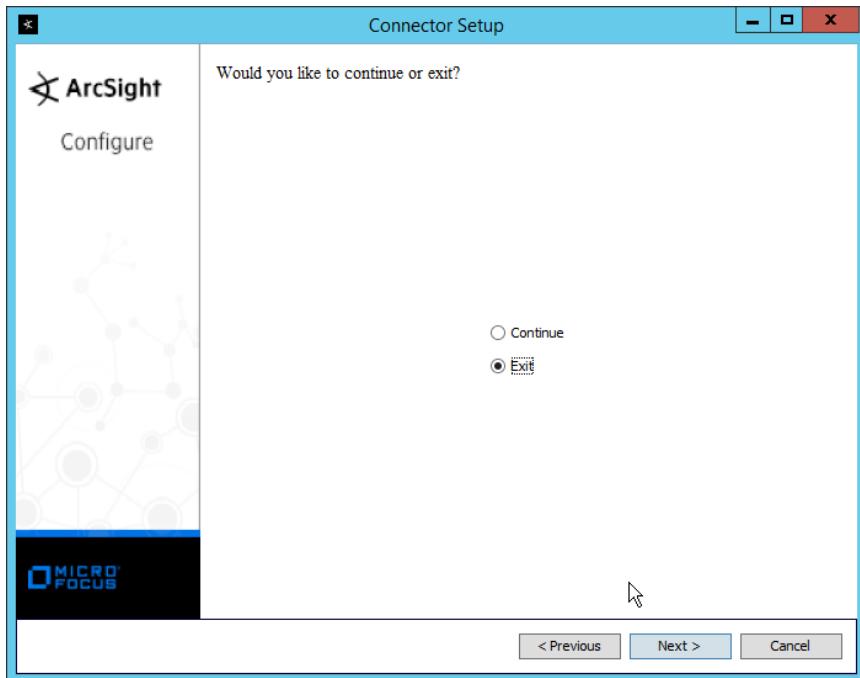


3182

27. Click **Next**.

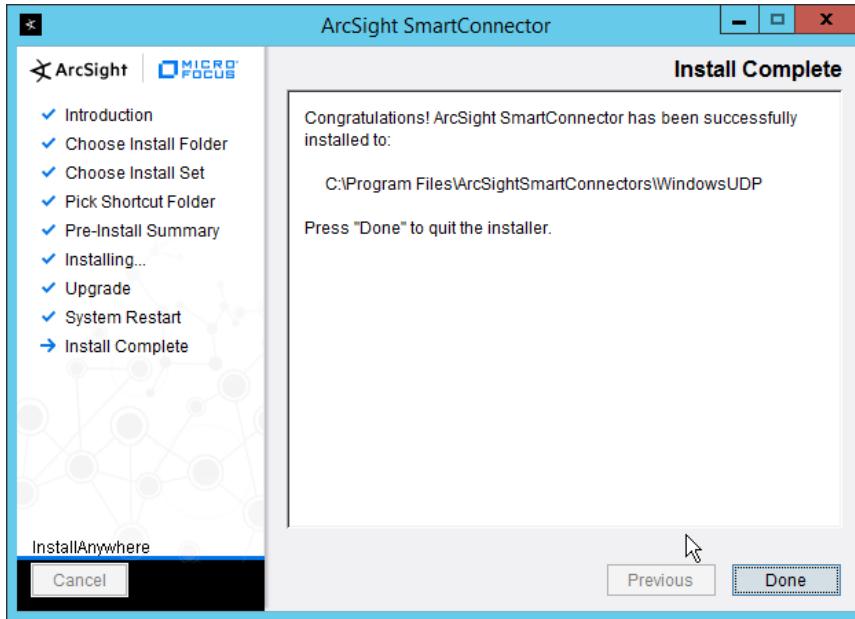
3183

28. Select **Exit**.



3184

29. Click **Next**.



3185

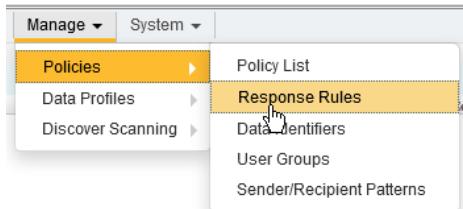
30. Click **Done**.

3186

2.27.2 Configure Symantec DLP to Forward Logs

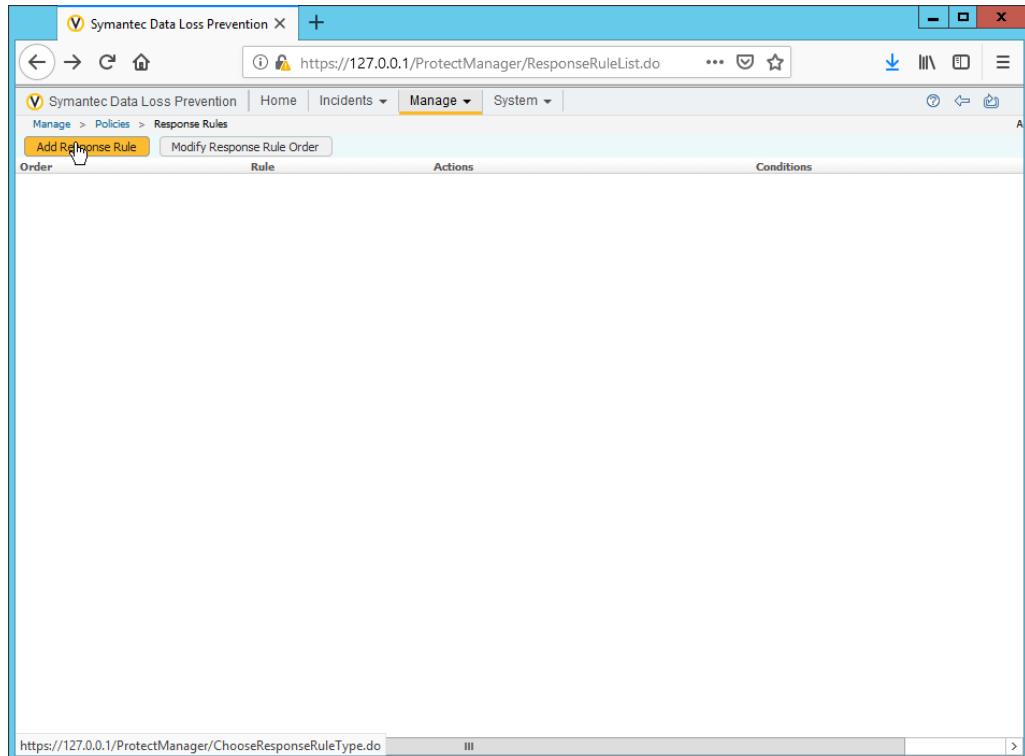
3187

1. Log in to the Symantec DLP web console.



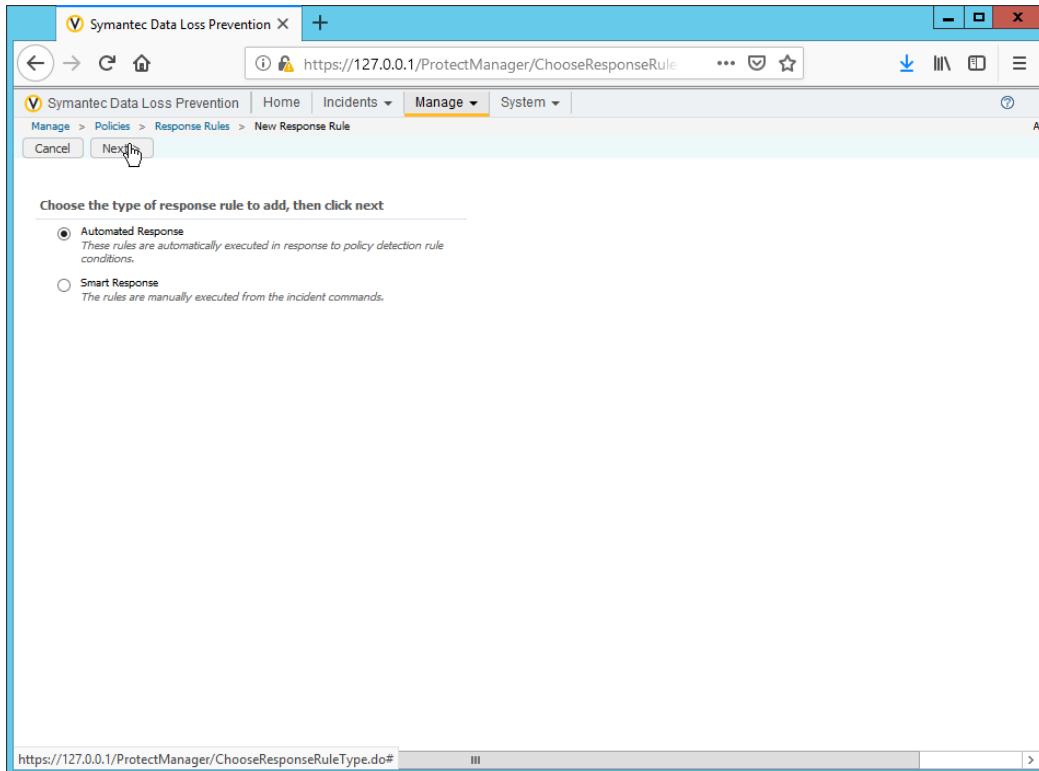
3188

2. Navigate to **Manage > Policies > Response Rules**.

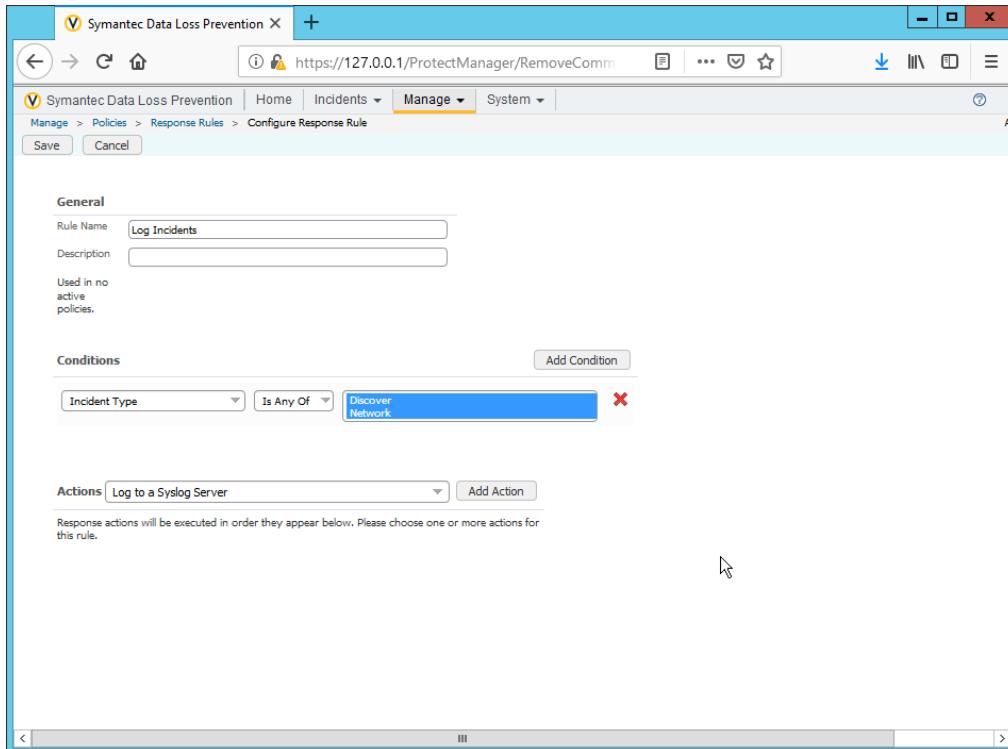


3189

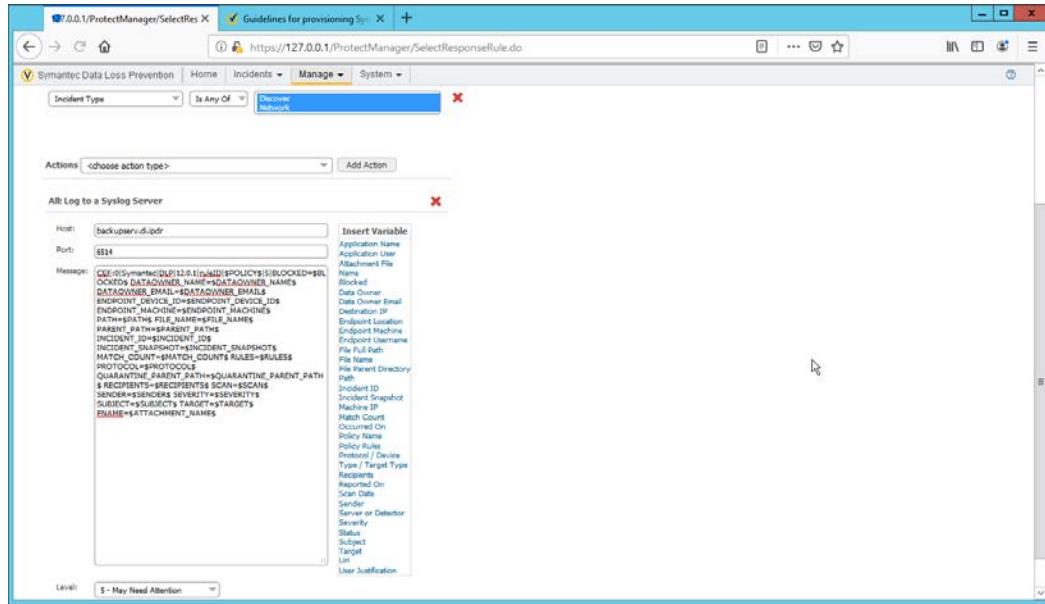
3. Click **Add Response Rule**.



- 3190 4. Click **Next**.
- 3191 5. Enter a **name** for the rule.
- 3192 6. Set any conditions for sending syslog messages. If you do not add conditions, all incidents will
- 3193 be forwarded.
- 3194 7. Select **Log to a Syslog Server** for Actions.



- 3195 8. Click **Add Action**.
- 3196 9. Enter the **IP address** of the ArcSight syslog server.
- 3197 10. Enter the **port** of the ArcSight syslog UDP server.
- 3198 11. Select variables and format a log message to include all the information desired to be sent to
3199 the ArcSight server. Below is a sample format for the syslog message, which can potentially be
3200 parsed according to the needs of your organization.
- 3201
- 3202 CEF:0 | Symantec | DLP | 12.0.1 | ruleID|\$POLICY\$ | 5 | BLOCKED=\$BLOCKED\$
 3203 DATAOWNER_NAME=\$DATAOWNER_NAME\$ DATAOWNER_EMAIL=\$DATAOWNER_EMAIL\$
 3204 ENDPOINT_DEVICE_ID=\$ENDPOINT_DEVICE_ID\$
 3205 ENDPOINT_MACHINE=\$ENDPOINT_MACHINE\$ PATH=\$PATH\$
 3206 FILE_NAME=\$FILE_NAME\$ PARENT_PATH=\$PARENT_PATH\$
 3207 INCIDENT_ID=\$INCIDENT_ID\$ INCIDENT_SNAPSHOT=\$INCIDENT_SNAPSHOT\$
 3208 MATCH_COUNT=\$MATCH_COUNT\$ RULES=\$RULES\$ PROTOCOL=\$PROTOCOL\$
 3209 QUARANTINE_PARENT_PATH=\$QUARANTINE_PARENT_PATH\$
 3210 RECIPIENTS=\$RECIPIENTS\$ SCAN=\$SCAN\$ SENDER=\$SENDER\$
 3211 SEVERITY=\$SEVERITY\$ SUBJECT=\$SUBJECT\$ TARGET=\$TARGET\$
 3212 FNAME=\$ATTACHMENT_NAME\$



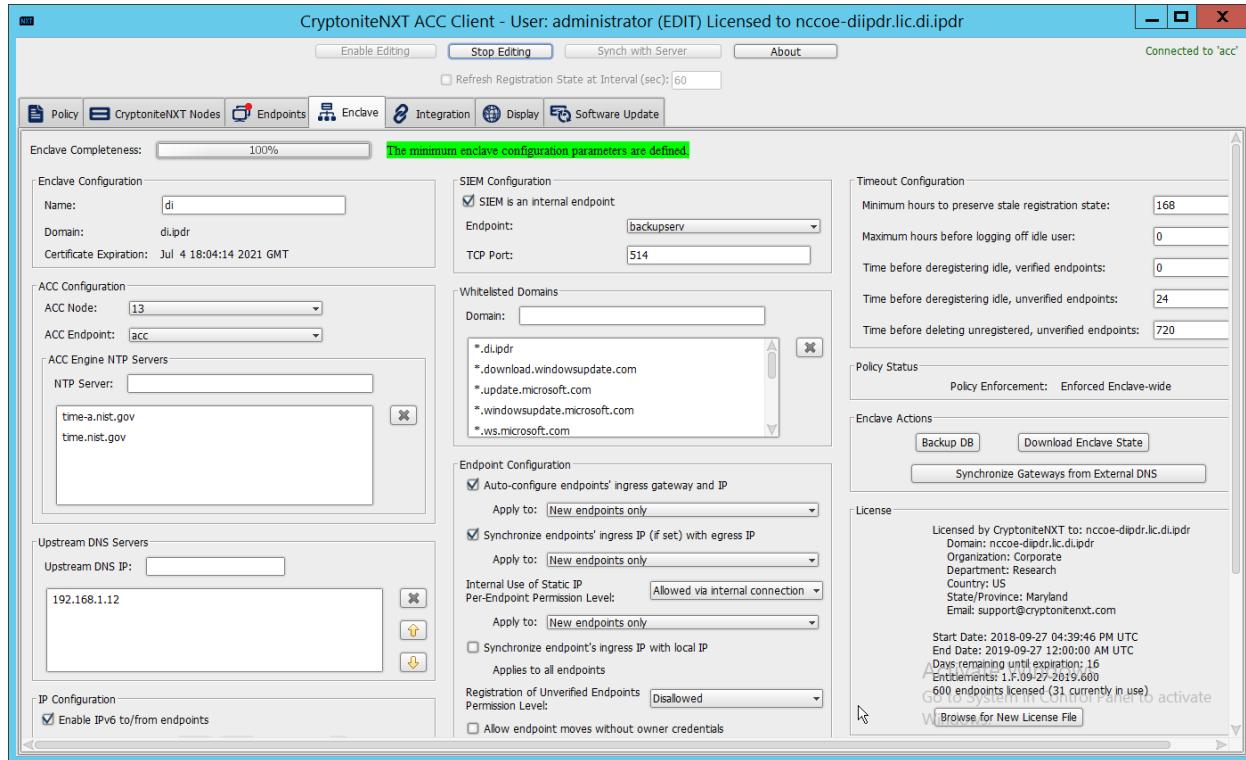
3213 12. Click **Save**.

3214 2.28 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and CryptoniteNXT

3215 This integration briefly details how to send logs to an ArcSight syslog collector from CryptoniteNXT.
 3216 Please see Section 2.24 for instructions for setting up an ArcSight syslog collector. If a server is already
 3217 configured, you do not need to install a new one—simply forward logs to the address of that server.
 3218 Ensure that you are using a TCP syslog collector. This section assumes that the collector is already under
 3219 CryptoniteNXT’s network protection.

3220 2.28.1 Configure CryptoniteNXT to Forward Logs to ArcSight

- 3221 1. Navigate to the **Enclave** tab in the **CryptoniteNXT ACC GUI**.
- 3222 2. Under **SIEM Configuration**, check the box next to **SIEM is an internal endpoint**.
- 3223 3. Select the endpoint running the TCP syslog collector.
- 3224 4. Enter the port used.



3225 5. Click **Save**.

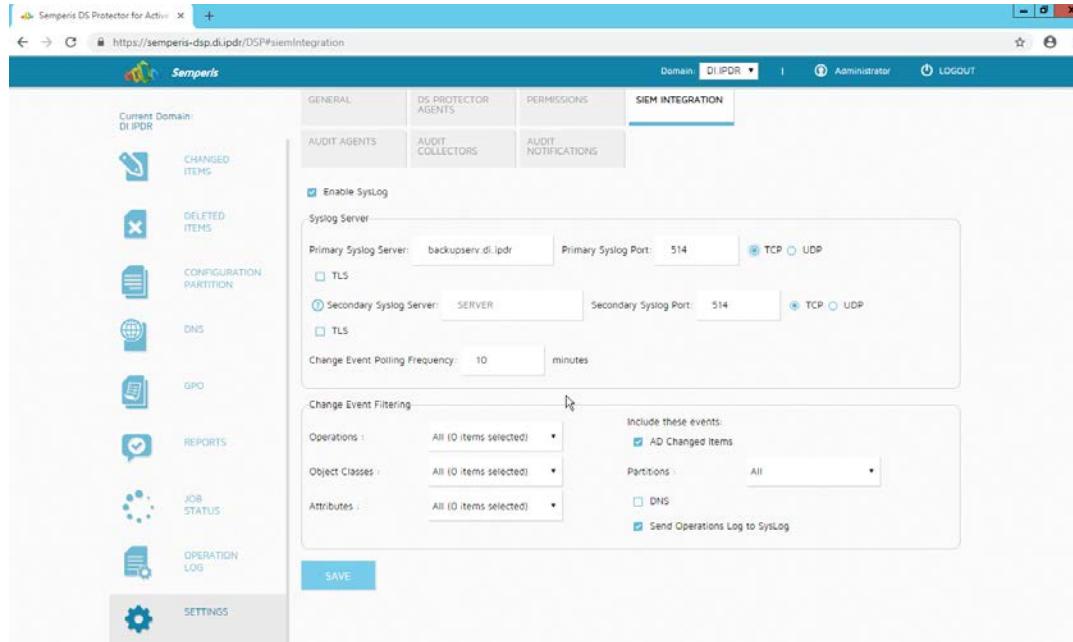
3226 2.29 Integration: Micro Focus ArcSight and Semperis DSP

3227 This integration briefly details how to send logs to an ArcSight syslog collector from Semperis DSP.
 3228 Please see Section 2.24 for instructions for setting up an ArcSight syslog collector. If a server is already
 3229 configured, you do not need to install a new one—simply forward logs to the address of that server.
 3230 Note: This integration requires Semperis DSP version 2.6.

3231 2.29.1 Configure Semperis DSP to Forward Logs

- 3232 1. In Semperis DSP, navigate to **Settings > SIEM Integration**.
- 3233 2. Check the box next to **Enable SysLog**.
- 3234 3. Under **Syslog Server**, enter the **hostname** for the ArcSight syslog collector, as well as the **port**.
- 3235 4. Select **TCP**.
- 3236 5. Enter a value for **Change Event Polling Frequency** based on the needs of your organization—this
 3237 is how often it will poll for new logs to forward.

- 3238 6. Under **Change Event Filtering**, select **AD Changed Items**, and **Send Operation Log to SysLog**.
 3239 Ensure that **All** is selected for **Partitions**.
- 3240 7. You can also select any specific **operations**, **classes**, and **attributes** to be forwarded or simply
 3241 leave as **All**.



- 3242 8. Click **Save**.



- 3243 9. Click **Close**.

3244 2.30 Integrations: CryptoniteNXT

- 3245 For the architecture, it is necessary to create the following source groups. If your organization's desired
 3246 architecture is different from the one described in this document, it is necessary to adapt the following
 3247 instructions to avoid loss of network or security function. This section will describe the creation of
 3248 source groups and destination groups used in this enterprise.

3249 Create the following destination groups and source groups and apply them to the correct endpoints to
 3250 allow these products and integrations to communicate under CryptoniteNXT.

3251 2.30.1 Active Directory and DNS

3252 This guide assumes the use of Active Directory and DNS on the same Windows 2012 server. The
 3253 following ports may vary for other products.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	389
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	389
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	53
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	88
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	88
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	25
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	42
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	137
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	139
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	53
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	636
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	3268:3269
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	445
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	445
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	9389
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	5722
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	464
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	464
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	123
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	137:138
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	67
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	2535
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	UDP	49152:65535
ad-dns	ad-dns-clients	TCP	49152:65535

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(all endpoints that need access to AD/DNS)	ad-dns-clients	
AD/DNS server		ad-dns

3254 2.30.2 Microsoft Exchange

3255 This guide assumes the use of Microsoft Exchange. The following ports may vary for other products.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	443
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	80
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	25
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	379
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	3268:3269
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	636
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	143
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	993
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	110
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	995
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	119
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	563
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	465
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	443691
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	102
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	135
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	389:390
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	53
exchange	exchange-clients	UDP	53
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	2525
exchange	exchange-clients	TCP	475

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
MS Exchange	exchange-clients	exchange
(all email clients)	exchange-clients	
AD/DNS server	exchange-clients	

3256 2.30.3 FileZilla

3257 The default port for FileZilla is 21.

- 3258 1. To determine the ports being used for your instance, open the FileZilla console.
- 3259 2. Navigate to **Edit > Settings > General Settings > Listen on these ports**, and allow any ports listed here.
- 3260 3. If your server listens in passive mode, navigate to **Edit > Settings > Passive mode settings > Use custom port range**, and allow any ports listed here.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
FileZilla	BackupClients	TCP	21 (default—see instructions)
FileZilla	BackupClients	TCP	51120-511230 (passive mode—see instructions)

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints that need to perform backups)	BackupClients	
FileZilla server		FileZilla

3263 2.30.4 GreenTec

3264 If GreenTec is configured to use a FileZilla server, refer to the above section. If GreenTec is configured to 3265 use Windows Network Share, see below for ports required.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
NetworkShare	GreenTecClients	TCP	80
NetworkShare	GreenTecClients	TCP	135-139
NetworkShare	GreenTecClients	TCP	445

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints that need access to GreenTec disks)	GreenTecClients	
GreenTec server		NetworkShare

3266 2.30.5 Tripwire Enterprise

3267 In Tripwire, the Axon Bridge is used for Tripwire Enterprise to contact endpoints. Therefore, the port
 3268 5670 must be allowed on endpoints to allow TE to initiate communications. Furthermore, TE requires
 3269 MSSQL to function, so it must be granted access to that as well.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
TripwireEnterprise	TEClients	TCP	443
TripwireEnterprise	TEClients	TCP	8080
TripwireEnterprise	TEClients	TCP	9898
TripwireEnterprise	TEClients	TCP	1169
TEAxon	TripwireE	TCP	5670
MSSQL	MSSQLClients	TCP	1433

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints that need to be monitored by Tripwire Enterprise)	TEClients	TEAxon
Tripwire Enterprise server	TripwireE, MSSQLClients	TripwireEnterprise
MSSQL server		MSSQL

3270 2.30.6 ArcSight ESM

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ArcSight	ArcSightConnectors	TCP	8443

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints with an ArcSight Connector installed)	ArcSightConnectors	
ArcSight ESM server		ArcSight

3271 2.30.7 Cisco ISE

- 3272 Please see the *CryptoniteNXT Generic RADIUS Integration Guide* for instructions on how ISE should be integrated with CryptoniteNXT.
- 3273 To access the web console for ISE, allow port 443 for any machines that should be able to access the ISE administrative console.
- 3274 To access the portal for ISE, allow port 8443 (default) for any machines that will need to access the portal. You can find this value by looking at your portal configuration in ISE.
- 3275 Furthermore, if RADIUS is configured for the posture integration, you will need to add any ports used in RADIUS for both ISE and the internal switch. The default for these is 1812 (Authentication), 1813 (Accounting), and 1700 (CoA). RADIUS can be TCP or UDP, so you can restrict this to your organization's configuration.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ISE	ISEConsole	TCP	443
ISE	ISEClients	TCP	8443
radius	ISESwitch, ISEServer	TCP	1812
radius	ISESwitch, ISEServer	UDP	1812
radius	ISESwitch, ISEServer	TCP	1813
radius	ISESwitch, ISEServer	UDP	1813
radius	ISESwitch, ISEServer	TCP	1700
radius	ISESwitch, ISEServer	UDP	1700

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints that need to do posture under ISE)	ISEClients	

(any endpoints that need to access the ISE web console)	ISEConsole	
ISE server	ISEServer	ISE, radius
(internal switches or RADIUS servers used for ISE Posture)	ISESwitch, ISEClients	radius
Cryptonite ACC Node		radius

3282 2.30.8 Semperis DSP

3283 Semperis DSP recommends allowing full network access during the initial database sync. After that, the
 3284 following ports should be left open for communication.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
dsp	dsp-admin	TCP	443
dsp	dsp-agents	TCP	8903
dsp	dsp-agents	TCP	135
dsp	dsp-agents	TCP	445
dsp	dsp-agents	TCP	1024:1034
ad-dsp	dsp-client	TCP	8772
ad-dsp	dsp-client	TCP	8750
ad-dsp	dsp-client	ICMP	0:255

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints that need admin access to DSP)	dsp-admin	
Semperis DSP	ad-dns-clients, dsp-client, exchange-clients	dsp
Active Directory server	dsp-agents	ad-dsp

3285 2.30.9 Symantec DLP

3286 This largely depends on how distributed the setup of DLP is. See here for a list of ports required by
 3287 Symantec DLP: <https://support.symantec.com/us/en/article.tech220846.html>.

3288 For this build, we used a single server that contained the database, so only the agents and
 3289 administrative clients needed to be allowed to communicate through Cryptonite.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
dlp	dlp-admin	TCP	443
dlp	dlp-clients	TCP	10443

3290 2.30.10 Cisco WSA

3291 WSA uses a proprietary command line, which means it does not have a way of authenticating to the
 3292 CryptoniteNXT portal. For devices such as this, there are two options.

- 3293 1. The device can be left outside CryptoniteNXT.
- 3294 2. The device can be placed under CryptoniteNXT on a CryptoniteNXT Endpoint Node with the
 3295 portal disabled.

3296 To prevent MAC spoofing, by default Cryptonite pins MAC addresses to the port + VLAN (Virtual LAN) to
 3297 which a device is connected, so a malicious device connecting to the end-point node with the same
 3298 MAC as an already connected IP360 would still be required to authenticate. Physical security for the
 3299 end-point node can further mitigate concerns about MAC spoofing.

3300 If you can find a way to authenticate WSA to CryptoniteNXT or decide to use the disabled portal option
 3301 with strong physical security, we provide the ports below for integration.

3302 To access the web console for WSA, allow port 8080 for any machines that should be able to access the
 3303 ISE administrative console.

3304 To access the proxy, allow port 80 and port 3128 for any machines that will need to go through the
 3305 proxy, which will likely be most clients in the enterprise. Port 80 is for the *wpad.dat* file, and port 3128
 3306 is for the proxy itself.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
wsa	wsa-clients	TCP	80
wsa	wsa-clients	TCP	3128
wsa	wsa-admin	TCP	8080

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints that need to use the proxy to connect to the internet)	wsa-clients	
(any endpoints that need to access the WSA web console)	wsa-admin	
Cisco WSA		wsa

3307 2.30.11 Tripwire IP360

3308 IP360 uses a proprietary command line, which means it does not have a way of authenticating to the
 3309 CryptoniteNXT portal. For devices such as this, there are two options.

3310 3. The device can be left outside CryptoniteNXT.
 3311 4. The device can be placed under CryptoniteNXT on a CryptoniteNXT Endpoint Node with the
 3312 portal disabled.

3313 To prevent MAC spoofing, by default Cryptonite pins MAC addresses to the port+VLAN to which a
 3314 device is connected, so a malicious device connecting to the end-point node with the same MAC as an
 3315 already connected IP360 would still be required to authenticate. Physical security for the end-point
 3316 node can further mitigate concerns about MAC spoofing.

3317 If you can find a way to authenticate IP360 to CryptoniteNXT or decide to use the disabled portal option
 3318 with strong physical security, we provide the ports below for integration.

3319 To access the web console for IP360, allow port 443 for any machines that should be able to access the
 3320 IP360 administrative console.

3321 IP360 should have access to all ports of the client machines it needs to scan. Another option is to simply
 3322 add IP360 to all the source groups present in your enterprise, and it will give an overview of the
 3323 vulnerabilities of clients on ports that CryptoniteNXT is not actively protecting. Alternatively, you can
 3324 disable policy enforcement temporarily on the CryptoniteNXT Endpoint Node to which IP360 is
 3325 connected, but you should do this only during scans.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ip360	ip360admin	TCP	443
scantarget	ip360scanner	TCP	1:65535

scantarget	ip360scanner	UDP	1:65535
scantarget	ip360scsanner	ICMP	0:255

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
(any endpoints need to access the IP360 web console)	ip360admin	
(any endpoints to be fully scanned by IP360)		scantarget
IP360	ip360scanner	ip360

3326 2.30.12 Tripwire Log Center, Tripwire IP360, Tripwire Enterprise, and ArcSight ESM

3327 The guide details an integration among Tripwire IP360, Tripwire Enterprise, Tripwire Log Center, and
 3328 ArcSight ESM. This section describes the ports needed to allow the integrations through Cryptonite.

3329 First, traffic must be allowed from Tripwire Log Center to the MSSQL server. To do this, ensure that
 3330 Tripwire Log Center can access 1433 on the MSSQL server. (Note: Tripwire Enterprise also has access to
 3331 this port, as described above in the Tripwire Enterprise section.)

3332 Then traffic from Tripwire Enterprise to Tripwire Log Center should be allowed on ports 8091 and 1468.

3333 Traffic from IP360 to Tripwire Log Center should be allowed on port 22 for the SFTP (Secure FTP)
 3334 transfer. Also, traffic from Tripwire Log Center to 5670 on Tripwire IP360 should be allowed. If you
 3335 chose to leave IP360 out of the Cryptonite NXT enclave, Tripwire Log Center will need to be able to
 3336 reach it externally.

3337 Traffic from Tripwire Log Center to the machine containing the ArcSight TCP syslog container should be
 3338 allowed on the port configured (in the guide, we use port 514). As a last note, the server running the
 3339 ArcSight syslog connector requires an IP and not a hostname for its integration with Tripwire Log
 3340 Center—you must set a static IP for the connector server in Cryptonite and enter this IP in the
 3341 appropriate place in Tripwire Log Center’s configuration.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
MSSQL	MSSQLClients	TCP	1443
TLC	TLCClients	TCP	8091
TLC	TLCClients	TCP	1468

TLC	TLCClients	TCP	22
ArcSightTCPSysConn	TCPSysClients	TCP	514
ip360	ip360admin	TCP	5670

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
Tripwire Log Center	TCPSysClients, MSSQLClients, ip360admin	TLC
Tripwire Enterprise	TLCClients	
(server running ArcSight TCP syslog connector)		ArcSightTCPSysConn
MSSQL		MSSQL
IP360	TLCClients	ip360

3342 2.30.13 FileZilla and ArcSight

3343 The guide details an integration between FileZilla and ArcSight ESM to forward logs from FileZilla to
 3344 ArcSight. This section describes the ports needed to allow the integrations through Cryptonite.

3345 Because this integration involves the use of an ArcSight Connector directly on the FileZilla server, only
 3346 one port is needed. The FileZilla server should be able to directly communicate with 8443 on the
 3347 ArcSight ESM server.

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ArcSight	ArcSightConnectors	TCP	8443

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
FileZilla	ArcSightConnectors	
ArcSight ESM		ArcSight

3348 2.30.14 Cisco ISE and ArcSight

3349 The guide details an integration between Cisco ISE and ArcSight ESM to forward logs from ISE to
 3350 ArcSight. This section describes the ports needed to allow the integrations through Cryptonite.

3351 Traffic from Cisco ISE to the machine containing the ArcSight TCP syslog container should be allowed on
 3352 the port configured (in the guide, we use port 514).

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ArcSightTCPSysConn	TCPSysClients	TCP	514

3353

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
Cisco ISE	TCPSysClients	
(server running ArcSight TCP syslog connector)		ArcSightTCPSysConn

3354

3355 [2.30.15 Cisco WSA and ArcSight](#)

3356 The guide details an integration between Cisco WSA and ArcSight ESM to forward logs from WSA to
 3357 ArcSight. This section describes the ports needed to allow the integrations through Cryptonite.

3358 Traffic from Cisco WSA to the machine containing the ArcSight TCP syslog container should be allowed
 3359 on the port configured (in the guide, we use port 514).

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ArcSightTCPSysConn	TCPSysClients	TCP	514

3360

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
Cisco WSA	TCPSysClients	
(server running ArcSight TCP syslog connector)		ArcSightTCPSysConn

3361

3362 [2.30.16 Semperis DSP and ArcSight](#)

3363 The guide details an integration between Semperis DSP and ArcSight ESM to forward logs from DSP to
 3364 ArcSight. This section describes the ports needed to allow the integrations through Cryptonite.

3365 Traffic from Semperis DSP to the machine containing the ArcSight TCP syslog container should be
 3366 allowed on the port configured (in the guide, we use port 514).

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ArcSightTCPSysConn	TCPSysClients	TCP	514

3367

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
Semperis DSP	TCPSysClients	
(server running ArcSight TCP syslog connector)		ArcSightTCPSysConn

3368

3369 [2.30.17 Symantec DLP and ArcSight](#)

3370 The guide details an integration between Symantec DLP and ArcSight ESM to forward logs from DLP to
 3371 ArcSight. This section describes the ports needed to allow the integrations through Cryptonite.

3372 Traffic from Symantec DLP to the machine containing the ArcSight UDP syslog container should be
 3373 allowed on the port configured (in the guide, we use UDP and port 6514).

Destination Group Name	Source Group Name	Protocol	Port Range
ArcSightTCPSysConn	TCPSysClients	UDP	6514

3374

Endpoint	Source Groups	Destination Groups
Symantec DLP	TCPSysClients	
(server running ArcSight TCP syslog connector)		ArcSightTCPSysConn

3375 **Appendix A—List of Acronyms**

ACC	Administration Control Center
AD	Active Directory
ADFR	Active Directory Forest Recovery
CoA	Change of Authorization
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
DSP	Directory Services Protector
ESM	Enterprise Security Manager
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
FTPS	File Transfer Protocol over TLS
GUI	Graphical User Interface
IIS	Internet Information Services
ISE	Identity Services Engine
IT	Information Technology
JCE	Java Cryptography Extension
JRE	Java Runtime Environment
LAN	Local Area Network
MSSQL	Microsoft SQL
NAT	Network Address Translation
NCCoE	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
OS	Operating System
PAC	Proxy Auto Config
RADIUS	Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service
SFTP	Secure FTP
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
TE	Tripwire Enterprise
TLC	Tripwire Log Center
VLAN	Virtual LAN
WDV	WORM Disk Volume
WORM	Write Once Read Many
WPAD	Web Proxy Auto Discovery
WSA	Web Security Appliance